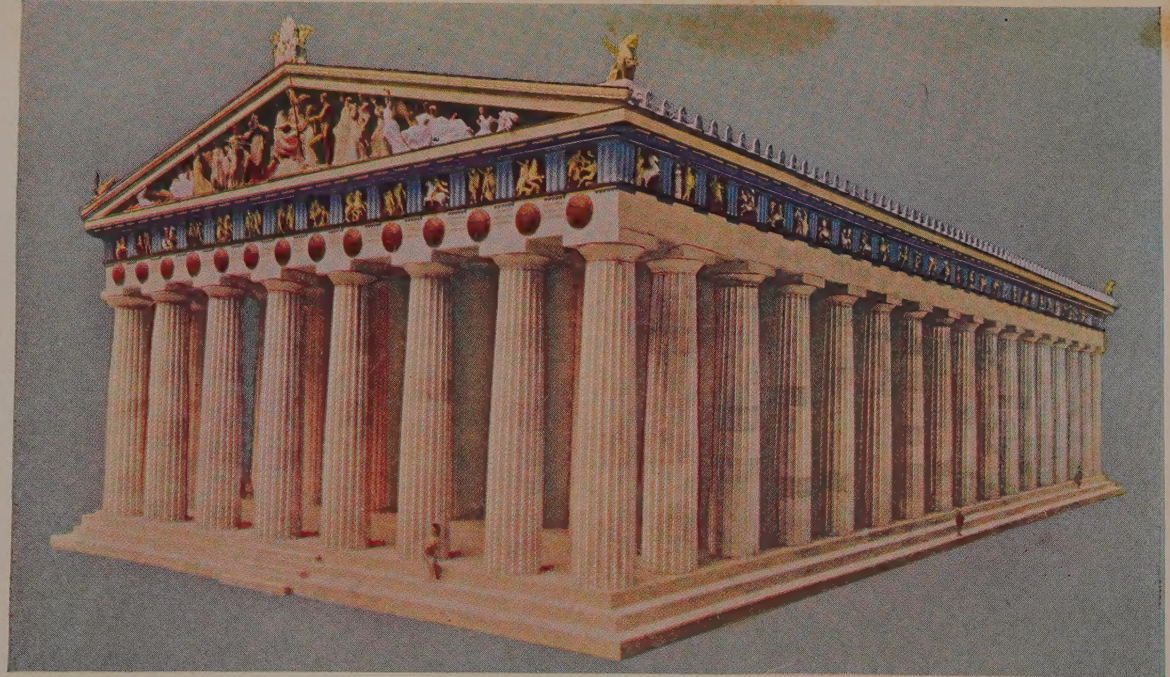
HISTORY OF THE MODERN WORLD

WEBSTER



A Restoration of the Parthenon

After the model in the Metropolitan Museum of Art, New York. The temple of the Virgin Athena (Athena Parthenos) was erected on the Acropolis of Athens in the 5th century B.C., under the superintendence of the architect Ictinus and the sculptor Phidias. After serving as a pagan temple for hundreds of years the Parthenon was turned into a Christian church and later into a Mohammedan mosque. It remained almost intact until 1687. The Venetians in that year bombarded Athens and sent a shell into the center of the building, then used as a powder magazine. The result was an explosion which threw down much of the side walls and many columns. Some of the sculptures that survived the catastrophe were secured by Lord Elgin, from whom they passed to the British Museum, London. They are still known as the Elgin Marbles.

HISTORY OF THE MODERN WORLD

BY

HUTTON WEBSTER, PH.D.

PROFESSOR IN THE UNIVERSITY OF NEBRASKA
AUTHOR OF "ANCIENT HISTORY," "MEDIEVAL AND MODERN HISTORY," "EARLY EUROPEAN HISTORY," "MODERN EUROPEAN HISTORY," "WORLD HISTORY," ETC.

"The growth of nations, the achievements of men of action, the rise and fall of parties remain among the most engrossing themes of the historian; but he now casts his net wider and embraces the whole record of civilization. The influence of nature, the pressure of economic factors, the origin and transformation of ideas, the contribution of science and art, religion and philosophy, literature and law, the material conditions of life, the fortunes of the masses — such problems now claim his attention in no less degree." — G. P. GOOCH, *History and Historians in the Nineteenth Century.*

D. C. HEATH AND COMPANY

BOSTON NEW YORK CHICAGO
ATLANTA DALLAS SAN FRANCISCO LONDON

COPYRIGHT, 1920, 1925 AND 1930
BY D. C. HEATH AND COMPANY
3 C 1

PRINTED IN U.S.A.

PREFACE

My *Modern European History*, published in 1920 (revised edition, 1925), was intended as a textbook for the second year of a two-year historical course. It has also found use as the basis of a one-year course, where the emphasis is placed on recent times and contemporary problems. When so used as a general or universal history, it seems to require something by way of introduction, lest students be plunged abruptly into the seventeenth century, with which the book begins. I have tried to provide such an introduction in four chapters, outlining the growth of civilization from the earliest times. The revised edition of the *Modern European History*, as enlarged by the addition of these preliminary chapters, constitutes the work now offered to teachers and pupils in the high schools.

The selection of collateral reading, always a difficult problem in the secondary school, is doubly difficult when so much ground must be covered in a single course. I venture, therefore, to call attention to my *Readings in Ancient History* and *Readings in Medieval and Modern History*. They consist of extracts from the sources, chiefly of a biographical or narrative character. Their purpose is to provide immature students with a variety of extended, unified, and interesting extracts on matters which a textbook treats with necessary, though none the less deplorable, condensation. A third work — *Historical Source Book* — includes a number of documents ranging from Magna Carta to the Covenant of the League of Nations. These collections supply abundant material, not only for outside reading, but also for oral reports in class and for essays. References to the three volumes are inserted in footnotes.

This book, like its predecessors, contains a variety of aids. The "Suggestions for Further Study" provide extended bibli-

ographies. The "Studies" at the end of each chapter may be used either in the daily recitation or for review after the entire chapter has been read. The "Table of Events and Dates," forming the appendix, should be consulted frequently, and pupils should be required to explain and elaborate the brief statements there given concerning the significance of each dated event. Care ought also to be taken that pupils acquire a correct pronunciation of all proper names mentioned in the text and incorporated in the index and pronouncing vocabulary.

HUTTON WEBSTER

LINCOLN, NEBRASKA
June, 1925.

CONTENTS

PAGE

List of Illustrations xii

List of Maps xvi

List of Plates xx

Suggestions for Further Study xxii

CHAPTER

I. The Beginnings of History

1. History and Prehistory 1
2. The Dawn of Civilization 5
3. Races and Languages 8
4. Lands and Peoples of the East 10
5. The Far East in Antiquity 12
6. The Near East in Antiquity 17

II. Ancient Times in Europe

7. Lands and Peoples of the West 25
8. The Greeks 29
9. Athens 35
10. The Graeco-Oriental World 41
11. The Romans 46
12. The Græco-Oriental-Roman World 52
13. The Decline of the Roman Empire 57
14. Christianity and Its Influence 60
15. The German Invasions and Their Results . . . 64

III. Medieval Times in Europe

16. The Early Middle Ages 69
17. Feudalism 75
18. The Church 80
19. Country Life 86
20. City Life 91
21. National States 101
22. The Culture of the Later Middle Ages . . . 106

IV. The Transition to the Modern World

23. The Revival of Learning and Art 114
24. The Revival of Science and Invention . . . 119

CHAPTER PAGE

25. Geographical Discovery 123
26. Colonial Empires 130
27. Europe and America 133
28. Reformation and Counter Reformation . . . 135
29. The Wars of Religion 144
30. European Politics 150

V. Constitutional Monarchy in England, 1603–1714

31. Absolutism of the Stuarts, 1603–1642 . . . 154
32. Cromwell and the Puritan Revolution, 1642–1649 . 160
33. The Commonwealth and the Protectorate, 1649–1660 165
34. The Restoration and the "Glorious Revolution," 1660–1689 168
35. William III and Anne, 1689–1714 172
36. England during the Seventeenth Century . . . 174

VI. Absolute Monarchy in France, 1610–1715

37. Absolutism of Louis XIV 179
38. The Wars of Louis XIV 183
39. War of the Spanish Succession, 1702–1713 . . 186
40. France during the Seventeenth Century . . . 189

VII. The European Balance of Power, 1715–1789

41. Statecraft and Diplomacy 194
42. Rise of Russia 195
43. Russia under Peter the Great, 1689–1725 . . . 198
44. Sweden 202
45. Russia under Catherine II, 1762–1796; the Decline of Turkey 205
46. Austria and Maria Theresa 207
47. The Rise of Prussia 209
48. Prussia under Frederick the Great, 1740–1786 . . 212
49. Poland 215
50. Great Britain and George III 221

VIII. Commerce and Colonies during the Seventeenth and Eighteenth Centuries

51. Mercantilism and Trading Companies . . . 226
52. The Dutch Colonial Empire 228
53. Rivalry of France and England in India (to 1763) . 231
54. Virginia and Massachusetts 235
55. The Thirteen Colonies 242
56. Transit of Civilization from England to America . 246

CHAPTER PAGE

57. Economic Development of the Colonies . . . 249
58. Political Development of the Colonies . . . 253
59. Canada and Louisiana 256
60. Rivalry of France and England in North America (to 1763) 259
61. The American Revolution, 1776–1783 . . . 263
62. Formation of the United States 270
63. Progress of Geographical Discovery 272

IX. The Old Régime in Europe

64. Reform 276
65. The Privileged Classes 277
66. The Unprivileged Classes 280
67. The Church 282
68. Liberal Ideas of Industry and Commerce; the Economists 284
69. Liberal Ideas of Religion and Politics; the English Philosophers 286
70. The French Philosophers 288
71. The Enlightened Despots 292

X. The French Revolution, 1789–1799

72. Preparation for the French Revolution . . . 296
73. Eve of the French Revolution 298
74. The Estates-General, 1789 301
75. Outbreak of the French Revolution 304
76. The National Assembly, 1789–1791 309
77. The First French Republic, 1792 312
78. The National Convention, 1792–1795 . . . 317
79. The Directory, 1795–1799 322
80. The Revolutionary Era 326

XI. Napoleon Bonaparte, 1799–1815

81. The Consulate, 1799–1804 329
82. The First French Empire, 1804 334
83. Napoleon at War with Europe, 1805–1807 . . 335
84. Napoleon's Reorganization of Europe . . . 338
85. The Continental System 340
86. Revolt of the Nations, 1808–1814 341
87. Downfall of Napoleon, 1814–1815 347
88. The Napoleonic Era 349

XII. Reconstruction and Reaction, 1815–1830

89. The Congress of Vienna 352
90. Restoration of the Dynasties 353

CHAPTER PAGE

91. Territorial Readjustments 355
92. "Metternichismus" 358
93. The Concert of Europe 361

XIII. The Democratic Movement in Europe, 1830–1848

94. Modern Democracy 366
95. France and the "July Revolution," 1830 . . . 369
96. The "July Revolution" in Europe 371
97. The "February Revolution" and the Second French Republic, 1848 378
98. The "February Revolution" in Austria and Italy . 380
99. The "February Revolution" in Germany . . 384

XIV. The National Movement in Europe, 1848–1871

100. Modern Nationalism 387
101. Napoleon III and the Second French Empire, 1852 . 389
102. France under Napoleon III, 1852–1870 . . . 392
103. Disunited Italy 394
104. Victor Emmanuel II and Cavour 398
105. United Italy, 1859–1870 400
106. Disunited Germany 404
107. William I and Bismarck 408
108. United Germany, 1864–1871 411

XV. The United Kingdom and the British Empire

109. Great Britain 418
110. Parliamentary Reform, 1832 421
111. Political Democracy, 1832–1867 425
112. Political Democracy, 1867–1918 429
113. Government of the United Kingdom . . . 431
114. Ireland and the Irish Question 437
115. Extension of the British Empire 443
116. Organization of the British Empire 444
117. Imperial Federation 448

XVI. The Third French Republic

118. Land and People of France 452
119. Republican France, 1871–1914 455
120. Government of France 460
121. Colonial Expansion of France 463

XVII. Italy, Spain, and the Minor Countries of Western Europe

122. Italy 466
123. Spain 470

CHAPTER PAGE

124. Portugal 473
125. Switzerland 474
126. Belgium 476
127. Holland 478
128. Denmark, Norway, and Sweden 479

XVIII. The German Empire and the Dual Monarchy

129. Land and People of Germany 482
130. The German Constitution 484
131. Imperial Germany, 1871–1914 488
132. Colonial Expansion of Germany 492
133. Constitution of Austria-Hungary 493
134. Nationalities in Austria-Hungary 496

XIX. Russia

135. The Russians 500
136. The Non-Russians 501
137. Alexander I, 1801–1825 504
138. Nicholas I, 1825–1855 506
139. Alexander II, 1855–1881 508
140. Alexander III, 1881–1894 511
141. Nicholas II, 1894–1914 513

XX. Turkey and the Balkan States

142. The Balkan Peoples 516
143. The Ottoman Turks 518
144. Montenegro and Serbia 519
145. Greece 521
146. The Crimean War, 1854–1856, and Treaty of Paris . 523
147. Rumania 526
148. Russo-Turkish War, 1877–1878, and Treaty of Berlin 527
149. Bulgaria 528
150. Balkan Wars, 1912–1913, and Treaty of Bukharest . 529

XXI. Expansion of Europe in the Old World

151. Greater Europe 532
152. Imperialism 533
153. The Opening-up of Africa 535
154. The Partition of Africa 538
155. The Opening-up and Partition of Asia . . . 547
156. India 550
157. China 555
158. Japan 559
159. The Opening-up and Partition of Oceania . . 563

CHAPTER PAGE

160. Australia and New Zealand 566
161. Inter-Racial Problems 568

XXII. Expansion of Europe in the New World

162. South America 572
163. Central America and Mexico 578
164. The West Indies 580
165. The United States 581
166. Canada 585
167. Close of Geographical Discovery 588

XXIII. The Industrial Revolution

168. Nature of the Industrial Revolution . . . 592
169. The Great Inventions 594
170. Effects of the Great Inventions 601
171. Improvements in Transportation 605
172. Improved Communications 611
173. Modern Industrialism 615

XXIV. Economic and Social Progress

174. Commerce 619
175. Commercial Organization 621
176. Commercial Policies 625
177. Agriculture and Land Tenure 629
178. The Labor Movement 634
179. Government Regulation of Industry . . . 636
180. Public Ownership 641
181. Socialism 643
182. Poverty and Progress 648

XXV. Modern Civilization

183. Internationalism 652
184. Social Betterment 654
185. Emancipation of Women and Children . . . 660
186. Popular Education and the Higher Learning . 663
187. Religious Development 665
188. Science 670
189. Philosophy and Literature 675
190. Music and the Fine Arts 678
191. Historic and Artistic Paris 681
192. Historic and Artistic London 690

XXVI. International Relations, 1871–1914

193. The Triple Alliance 700
194. The Dual Alliance and the Triple Entente . . 703

CHAPTER PAGE

195. Colonial Problems 707
196. The Eastern Question 709
197. Militarism 713
198. Pan-Germanism 717

XXVII. The World War, 1914–1918

199. Beginning of the War, 1914 721
200. The Western Front 729
201. The Eastern Front 735
202. The Balkan and Italian Fronts 736
203. The War outside of Europe and on the Sea, 1914–1917 741
204. Intervention of the United States 744
205. The Russian Revolution 750
206. War Aims of the Allies 753
207. End of the War, 1918 756

XXVIII. The World Settlement, 1919–1920

208. The Peace Conference 763
209. Peace with Germany 768
210. Peace with Austria, Hungary, and Bulgaria . . 772
211. Peace with Turkey 774
212. The New Nations in Central and Eastern Europe . 778
213. Socialist Germany 782
214. Soviet Russia 784
215. Contemporary European Politics 788

XXIX. The World To-day

216. The Cost of the World War 795
217. Lessons of the World War 801
218. The Peace Movement 803
219. International Organization 806
220. The League of Nations 809
221. The "World Court" and the Locarno Pacts . . 815
222. Disarmament and the Abolition of War . . 817
223. Contemporary International Politics . . . 819

Supplementary Chapter 828
Appendix — Table of Events and Dates 851
Index and Pronouncing Vocabulary 857

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGE
Deposits in a Swiss Cave	3
A Mammoth	4
Head of a Girl	5
Neolithic Ships	5
Chinese Picture Writing and Later Conventional Characters	14
The Great Wall of China	15
Hindu Conception of the Earth	16
Assyrian Soldiers	18
Tax Collecting in Ancient Egypt	19
Characters of the Alphabet	20
Egyptian Royal Diadem	22
A Babylonian Demon	23
A Cretan Woman	31
An Athenian Trireme	32
Plan of the Parthenon	38
Orders of Greek Architecture	39
Socrates and Plato	40
Alexander the Great	42
Lighthouse of Alexandria (Restored)	45
Early Roman Bar Money	49
Youth Reading a Papyrus Roll	54
Latin Inscription	55
Terra-Cotta Savings Bank	59
Romans Destroying a German Village	65
Charlemagne	71
Champions Fighting	79
Mounted Knight	80
A Monk Copyist	84
Sulgrave Manor House	87
Plan of a Manor	89
Serf Warming his Hands	90
Carcassonne	92
A Fair in the Fifteenth Century	97
Florentine Bankers Settling Accounts	100
Great Seal of Henry II (Obverse)	102
Deathbed of a King	105
Plan of Salisbury Cathedral, England	108
Master, Usher, and Boys	109
A University Lecture	110
A Ballad Singer	112
Shakespeare's Signature	117
A Fifteenth Century Organ	118
Galileo's Telescopes	120
An Alchemist in his Laboratory	121
An Early Printing Press	122
The Unicorn	124
The *Santa Maria*, Flagship of Columbus	129
Zwingli	139
The Spanish Armada in the English Channel	147
Gold Coin of James I	155
A Puritan Family	156
London Tradesmen	157
John Hampden	158
Execution of the Earl of Strafford	159
Interior of Westminster Hall	163
Great Seal of England under the Commonwealth	167
Silver Crown of Charles II	168
The Triumph of William III	171

	PAGE
A London Bellman	175
Coach and Sedan Chair	175
Death Mask of Sir Isaac Newton	176
John Milton	177
Specimen of Cromwell's Handwriting	178
Cardinal Richelieu	179
Cardinal Mazarin	180
Versailles	181
Marlborough	187
Gibraltar	188
Jean-Baptiste Colbert	190
Medal of Louis XIV	191
Molière	192
Cradle of Charles XII	202
Catherine II	205
Maria Theresa	209
Frederick the Great	213
The Partition of Poland	217
Tadeusz Kosciusko	219
A Politician	222
William Pitt, Earl of Chatham	223
George III	224
Frederick, Lord North	225
New Amsterdam in 1655	230
A Mogul Emperor	234
Ruins of the Brick Church at Jamestown	237
The *Mayflower*	239
The Mayflower Compact	240
First Page of Penn's *Account of Pennsylvania*	243
A Title-page of *Poor Richard's Almanac*	246
A Page from the *New England Primer*	247
Harvard College in the Eighteenth Century	248
A Redemptioner's Indenture	251
New York Colonial Paper Money	252
Benjamin Franklin	254
"Join or Die"	255
Montcalm	260
James Wolfe	262
Quebec	263
A Stamp of 1765	265
Opening Lines of the Declaration of Independence	266
The "Liberty Bell"	267
Signatures of the Treaty of Paris, 1783	269
The *Discovery*	273
"Ridiculous Taste, or the Ladies' Absurdity"	279
John Wesley	283
Adam Smith	286
Montesquieu	289
Voltaire	290
Jean Jacques Rousseau	291
Joseph II	293
Canvassing for Votes	295
The French Peasant under Taille, Tax, and Corvée	299
Turgot	300
Costumes of the Orders	301
Mirabeau	302
Emmanuel Joseph Sieyès	303
Storming the Bastille	305
Soldier of the National Guard	306
The Destruction of Feudalism	307
The Louvre and the Tuileries	308
An Assignat	310
Danton	314
Robespierre	315
The Lion of Lucerne	316
Louis XVI, Marie Antoinette, and the Dauphin	318
Execution of Louis XVI	319
Lazare Carnot	320
Napoleon's Birthplace, Ajaccio	323
Horatio, Lord Nelson	325
Seal of the French Republic	327
A French Dragoon	328
Napoleon's Mother	330

	PAGE
La Madeleine	333
Cross of the Legion of Honor	335
A Napoleonic Medal	336
The *Victory*	337
The Duke of Wellington	342
Joséphine	343
Baron vom Stein	345
Hardenberg	346
The Tomb of Napoleon	350
Talleyrand	353
George Canning	364
No. 10, Downing St.	365
Louis Philippe	370
Colonne Juillet	372
Caricature of Louis Philippe	379
Louis Kossuth	382
"France is Tranquil"	391
Napoleon III and Eugénie	393
Giuseppe Mazzini	396
Pius IX	397
Victor Emmanuel II	398
"The Right Leg in the Boot at Last"	403
William I	408
Albrecht von Roon	409
"Væ Victis!"	416
The Union Jack	421
Queen Victoria	426
Interior of the House of Commons	433
House of Commons Mace	435
Charles Stewart Parnell	441
The Place de la Concorde	454
Colonne Vendôme	456
Chamber of Deputies, Paris	461
Leo XIII	467
The Vatican	468
Francesco Crispi	470
The King and Queen of Spain	472
King Albert I	476
Palais de Justice, Brussels	477
The Reichstagsgebäude, Berlin	485
The German National Monument	489
Francis Joseph I	495
The Kremlin, Moscow	505
Nicholas I	507
Alexander II	508
Church of the Resurrection of Christ, Petrograd	510
Nicholas II	513
"What Nicholas Heard in the Shell"	523
Florence Nightingale	525
David Livingstone	537
Henry M. Stanley	538
Paul Kruger	541
Lord Kitchener	544
Cecil Rhodes	545
Count Ferdinand de Lesseps	546
The Potala, Lhasa	549
"The Lion's Vengeance on the Bengal Tiger"	552
Empress Dowager of China	557
Li Hung Chang	558
Sign Manual and Seal of Mutsuhito	561
Buddhist Prayer Wheel	571
Simón Bolívar	574
Dom Pedro II	575
The Christ of the Andes	577
The Earl of Durham	586
Robert E. Peary	589
A Spinning Wheel	595
Hargreaves's Spinning Jenny	596
Arkwright's Spinning Machine	596
Crompton's Spinning Mule	597
Cartwright's First Power Loom	597
Whitney's Cotton Gin	598
Watt's Steam-engine	598
An Eighteenth Century Stage Coach	605
The *Great Western*	606
The *Clermont*	607

	PAGE
George Stephenson	607
The *Rocket*, 1830	608
A Precursor of the Automobile	609
Morse's First Telegraph Instrument (1837)	611
Cyrus W. Field	612
The Original Atlantic Cable	612
The First Phonograph (1877)	613
First Adhesive Penny Postage Stamp	613
The First Copy of the New York *Sun*	614
McCormick Reaper (1834)	618
Sir Robert Peel	625
Richard Cobden	626
John Bright	626
The Earl of Shaftesbury	637
Robert Owen	644
Karl Marx	646
First Singer Sewing Machine (1851)	651
Petty Offenders in the Pillory	656
Elizabeth Fry	656
A Lunatic	657
William Booth	659
Henri Dunant	659
Mary Lyon	661
Susan B. Anthony	661
Sir Charles Lyell	671
Herbert Spencer	676
Victor Hugo	677
Mozart's Spinet	678
Ludwig van Beethoven	679
The Opéra, Paris	680
Arc de Triomphe	682
Notre Dame	684
Hôtel des Invalides	685
The Panthéon	686
The Tower of London	692
St. Paul's Cathedral	694
The Nelson Monument, Trafalgar Square	695
Westminster Abbey	696
The Lord Mayor's Show in London	699
"Dropping the Pilot"	702
The Marquis of Salisbury	704
Edward VII	706
"The Blessings of Peace"	716
William II	726
Facsimile of Article VII of the Treaty of 1839	728
Herbert H. Asquith	728
"The Advance on Paris and Berlin"	731
British Recruiting Poster	733
Guild Hall, Ypres	734
The Grand Duke Nicholas	735
Hindenburg	736
The Victoria Cross	738
The Iron Cross	738
Eleutherios Venizelos	739
The *Lusitania*	745
The German *Lusitania* Medal	746
U. S. Declaration of War	747
"Von Pot und Von Kettle"	757
Eric von Ludendorff	758
Raymond Poincaré	763
Georges Clemenceau	765
Signatures on the Peace Treaty with Germany	767
Powder Gate, Prague	780
President Ebert	783
Lenin	787
Hugo Grotius	805
The Peace Palace at the Hague	816

LIST OF MAPS

	PAGE
Centers of Civilization in the East	7
The Dispersal of Mankind	9
Distribution of the White Race in Antiquity, about 1000–500 B.C.	*Facing* 10
Physical Map of Asia	*Facing* 12
Chinese Empire under the T'ang Dynasty	13
Colonization of the Mediterranean	*Facing* 18
Physical Features of Europe	*Between* 26 *and* 27
Racial Types in Western Europe	28
The Mediterranean Basin	30
The Near East and Greece	*Facing* 32
Vicinity of Athens	35
The Athenian Empire about 450 B.C.	*Facing* 36
Empire of Alexander the Great, 336–323 B.C.	*Facing* 42
The Kingdoms of Alexander's Successors	*Facing* 42
The World according to Ptolemy	44
Italy before the Rise of Rome	*Facing* 46
Vicinity of Rome	48
The Roman Empire, 98–117 A.D.	*Between* 52 *and* 53
St. Paul's Travels	61
Teutonic Migrations and Conquests	*Facing* 66
Europe in the Age of Charlemagne, 800 A.D.	*Facing* 70
Europe in the Age of Otto the Great, 962 A.D.	72
Discoveries and Settlements of the Northmen	74
Possessions of the Count of Champagne, 12th Century	77
Trade Routes between Northern and Southern Europe in the 13th and 14th Centuries	99
The British Isles during the Middle Ages	104
Plan of Salisbury Cathedral, England	108
The Peoples of Europe at the Beginning of the Tenth Century	*Facing* 110
Asia under the Mongols	*Facing* 124
Portuguese Explorations of the African Coast	126
Behaim's Globe	127
Portuguese and Spanish Colonial Empires in the 16th Century	*Between* 130 *and* 131

	PAGE
The Spaniards in the Caribbean and on the Mainland	132
Extent of the Reformation, 1524–1572 A.D.	141
The Peace of Westphalia, 1648 A.D.	149
Europe at the End of the Thirty Years' War, 1648 A.D.	*Facing* 150
England and Wales — The Civil Wars of the Seventeenth Century.	161
Ireland	165
Acquisitions of Louis XIV and Louis XV	184
Europe after the Peace of Utrecht, 1713 A.D.	*Facing* 186
Growth of Russia to the End of the Eighteenth Century	196
Scandinavia in the Seventeenth Century	203
The Ottoman Empire to 1683 A.D.	*Facing* 206
Hapsburg Possessions, 1526–1789 A.D.	208
Growth of Prussia to End of Eighteenth Century	*Facing* 214
Poland in the Sixteenth and Seventeenth Centuries	216
Partitions of Poland, 1772, 1793, 1795 A.D.	218
English Trading Companies	*Facing* 228
The East Indies	229
India in 1783 A.D.	232
Virginia	236
Captain John Smith's Map of New England	238
New England in the Seventeenth Century	241
The Middle Colonies	242
The Settlement of North America by the Middle of the Seventeenth Century	244
La Salle's Explorations	257
North America after the Peace of Utrecht, 1713 A.D.	259
North America after the Peace of Paris, 1763 A.D.	261
North America after the Peace of Paris, 1783 A.D.	268
Colonial Empires (double page)	*Between* 272 *and* 273
Europe at French Revolution, 1789 A.D.	*Facing* 298
Revolutionary France and Italy	*Facing* 322
Napoleon's Egyptian and Syrian Campaigns	324
The First French Empire, 1812 A.D.	*Facing* 338
Napoleon's Russian Campaign	344
Theater of the Waterloo Campaign	348
Europe after the Congress of Vienna, 1815 A.D.	*Facing* 356
The Netherlands in the Nineteenth Century	373
Poland in the Nineteenth Century	375
Unification of Italy, 1815–1870 A.D.	402
The Germanic Confederation, 1815–1866 A.D.	*Facing* 406
The Zollverein	407
Denmark and Schleswig-Holstein	411
Alsace-Lorraine	415

	PAGE
The Unification of Germany, 1815–1871 A.D.	*Facing* 416
Physical Map of the British Isles	*Facing* 420
Growth of the English Empire	*Facing* 442
The British Empire (double page)	*Between* 446 *and* 447
Hapsburg Possessions, 1815–1914 A.D.	494
Peoples of Austria-Hungary (1914)	498
Russia in Europe during the Nineteenth Century	502
Peoples of the Balkan Peninsula and Asia Minor	*Facing* 518
The Ottoman Empire, 1683–1914 A.D.	*Facing* 522
The Crimean Campaign	524
Balkan States, 1878 and 1913 A.D.	*Facing* 528
Constantinople	529
World Powers in 1815 A.D.	*Facing* 532
The Peoples of Africa	*Facing* 536
The Religions of Africa	539
The Union of South Africa	542
The Exploration and Partition of Africa (double page)	*Between* 544 *and* 545
The Suez Canal	546
The Peoples of Asia	*Facing* 548
Extension of British Rule in India	551
The Peoples of India	553
The European Advance in Asia (double page)	*Between* 554 *and* 555
The Great Powers in China	*Facing* 556
Theater of the Russo-Japanese War	562
The Expansion of Japan	*Facing* 562
The World Powers (double page)	*Between* 564 *and* 565
The Pacific Ocean	*Facing* 566
The Australian Commonwealth	567
The Races of Man	569
Exclusion of Spain and Portugal from South America	*Facing* 574
North America since 1783 A.D.	*Facing* 582
Relief Map of the Panama Canal	584
Commercial Languages of America	*Facing* 588
Discoveries in the Polar Regions	590
Economic Europe (double page)	*Between* 594 *and* 595
Industrial England in the Twentieth Century	603
Density of the World's Population	*Facing* 616
The Occupations of Mankind	*Facing* 618
Commercial Development of the World (double page)	*Between* 622 *and* 623
Inclosures in England in the Eighteenth Century	630
Languages of the World	*Facing* 652
Religions of the World	668
Vicinity of Paris	688

PAGE

Plan of Paris 689
Vicinity of London 697
Plan of London 698
Europe in 1871 A.D. . . . . *Facing* 702
Berlin-to-Bagdad Railway 710
Europe in 1914 A.D. . . . . *Facing* 720
Plan of the Battle of the Marne 730
The Western Front 732
The Eastern Front 737
The Italian Front 740
German Barred Zone, February 1, 1917 744
North Sea Mine Fields 749
The World War in 1918 A.D. 754
Dismemberment of the Austro-Hungarian Empire 773
Europe after the Peace Conference at Paris, 1919–1920 A.D. (double page) . . . . . *Between* 778 *and* 779
Dismemberment of the Russian Empire 785
Governments of the World . . . . . *Facing* 792
The League of Nations 810
The Partition of the Caribbean 821
The Moslem World 825
Expansion of Buddhism 826

LIST OF PLATES

	PAGE
A Restoration of the Parthenon	*Frontispiece*
Queen Nefertiti	*Facing* 21
Pottery of the Ægean Age	30
Acropolis of Athens from the Southwest	38
Greek Tombstone	56
The Triumph of Constantine in the Roman Forum, 312 A.D.	57
The Antioch Chalice	62
Campanile and Doge's Palace, Venice	100
Magdalen College and Bridge, England	101
Reims Cathedral	106
Choir of Westminster Abbey	107
Oliver Cromwell	166
Louis XIV	182
Peter the Great	200
Frederick the Great	201
The "Tennis Court Oath"	304
Napoleon as First Consul	330
"1807"	331
The Congress of Vienna, 1814–1815	354
Prince Metternich	355
Napoleon III	392
Cavour	393
Garibaldi	393
Bismarck	412
Moltke	412
Gladstone	428
Disraeli	428
Thiers	456
Gambetta	456
The Congress of Berlin, 1878	526
Constantinople and the Bosporus	527
James Watt	606
Robert Fulton	606
Early Passenger Trains	607
Marie Curie	674
Louis Pasteur	674

PAGE

View of Paris from an Airplane 690
Houses of Parliament, London 691
Marshal Joffre 758
Marshal Foch 758
Sir Douglas Haig 758
General Pershing 758
The Peace Conference 768
Hall of Mirrors, Versailles 769
Woodrow Wilson 812
Lloyd George 812

SUGGESTIONS FOR FURTHER STUDY

Periodicals

Students of history should have access to the *American Historical Review* (N. Y., 1895 to date, quarterly, $4.00 a year). This journal, the organ of the American Historical Association, contains articles by scholars, critical reviews of all important works, and notes and news. The *Historical Outlook* is edited in coöperation with committees of the American Historical Association and the National Council for the Social Studies (Philadelphia, 1909 to date, monthly, $2.00 a year). Every well-equipped school library should contain the files of the *National Geographic Magazine* (Washington, 1890 to date, monthly, $3.00 a year) and of *Art and Archæology* (Washington, 1914 to date, monthly, $5.00 a year). These two periodicals make a special feature of illustrations. *Current History* (N. Y., 1914 to date, monthly, $3.00 a year) contains much matter of contemporary interest.

Works on the study and teaching of history

Useful books for the teacher's library include H. E. Bourne, *The Teaching of History and Civics in the Elementary and the Secondary School* (N. Y., 1902, Longmans, Green & Co., $1.90), Henry Johnson, *The Teaching of History* (N. Y., 1915, Macmillan, $1.40), R. M. Tryon, *The Teaching of History in Junior and Senior High Schools* (Boston, 1921, Ginn & Co., $1.48), H. B. George, *Historical Evidence* (N. Y., 1909, Oxford University Press, American Branch, $1.80), Frederic Harrison, *The Meaning of History and Other Historical Pieces* (new ed., N. Y., 1900, Macmillan, $2.00), J. H. Robinson, *The New History* (N. Y., 1912, Macmillan, $2.00), and H. B. George, *The Relations of History and Geography* (new ed., N. Y., 1910, Oxford University Press, American Branch, $2.25). The following reports are indispensable:

Historical Sources in Schools. Report to the New England History Teachers' Association by a Select Committee (N. Y., 1902, out of print).

A History Syllabus for Secondary Schools. Report by a Special Committee of the New England History Teachers' Association (N. Y., 1904, Heath, $1.60).

A Bibliography of History for Schools and Libraries. Published under the auspices of the Association of History Teachers of the Middle States and Maryland (2d ed., N. Y., 1915, Longmans, Green & Co., 60 cents).

Dictionaries and encyclopedias

For chronology, genealogies, lists of sovereigns, and other data the most valuable works are Arthur Hassall, *European History, 476–1920* (new ed., N. Y., 1920, Macmillan, $4.00), G. P. Putnam, *Tabular Views of Universal History* (new ed., N. Y., 1915, Putnam, $3.00), and K. J. Ploetz, *A Handbook of Universal History*, translated by W. H. Tillinghast (new ed., Boston, 1915, Houghton Mifflin Co., $3.75).

Atlases

An admirable collection of maps for school use is W. R. Shepherd, *Historical Atlas* (new ed., N. Y., 1923, Holt, $3.90), with about two hundred and fifty maps covering the historical field. Other valuable works are E. W. Dow, *Atlas of European History* (N. Y., 1907, Holt, $2.50), and Ramsay Muir, *Hammond's New Historical Atlas for Students* (2d ed., N. Y., 1914, Hammond, $4.00). Much use can be made of the *Literary and Historical Atlas of Europe*, by J. G. Bartholomew, in "Everyman's Library" (N. Y., 1910, Dutton, $1.00). Other atlases in the same collection are devoted to Asia, Africa and Australasia, and America, respectively.

Wall maps and charts

The *Webster-Knowlton-Hazen European History Maps*, prepared by Hutton Webster, D. C. Knowlton, and C. D. Hazen, include eighteen maps for ancient history and twenty-six for medieval and modern history (Chicago, A. J. Nystrom & Co., complete set in chart form with tripod, $87.50). These maps may also be had separately. The maps in this series are on a very large scale, omit all irrelevant detail, present place names in the modern English form, and deal with cultural as well as with political subjects. They are accompanied by a Teacher's Manual for each of the two sections. A somewhat similar series of wall maps, forty-three in number, size 44 × 32 inches, has been prepared by J. H. Breasted, C. F. Huth, and S. B. Harding (Chicago, Denoyer-Geppert Co.).

Outline maps

The "Studies" following each chapter of this book include various exercises for which small outline maps are required. Such maps are sold by D. C. Heath and Company, Boston, New York, Chicago. Atlases of outline maps are also to be had of the McKinley Publishing Co., Philadelphia, Atkinson, Mentzer and Grover, Chicago, A. J. Nystrom & Co., Chicago, and of other publishers.

Illustrations

Photographs of ancient works of art may be obtained from the foreign publishers in Naples, Florence, Rome, Munich, Paris, Athens, and London, or from their American agents. In addition to photographs and lantern slides, a collection of stereoscopic views is very helpful in giving vividness and interest to historical instruction. The Keystone stereographs, pre-

pared by the Keystone View Company, Meadville, Penn., are cordially recommended. Notable collections include Lehmann's *Geographical Pictures*, *Historical Pictures*, and *Types of Nations*, and Cybulski's *Historical Pictures* (Chicago, A. J. Nystrom & Co., and Denoyer-Geppert Co.; each picture separately mounted on rollers).

Works of travel and description

To vitalize the study of geography and history there is nothing better than the reading of modern books of travel. In addition to the volumes mentioned below, the school library should contain Hammerton's, *Wonders of the Past* (Putnam, 4 vols.) and Johnston and Guest's *The World of To-day* (Putnam, 4 vols.). These two series are written in a popular style, are accurate, and are very well illustrated.

Allinson, F. G., and Allinson, Anne C. E. *Greek Lands and Letters.*
Barrows, S. J. *The Isles and Shrines of Greece.*
Clark, F. E. *The Holy Land of Asia Minor.*
Dwight, H. G. *Constantinople, Old and New.*
Edwards, Amelia B. *A Thousand Miles up the Nile.*
Forman, H. J. *The Ideal Italian Tour.*
Jackson, A. V. W. *Persia, Past and Present.*
Kinglake, A. W. *Eothen.*
Taylor, Bayard. *Views A-Foot.*
Warner, C. D. *In the Levant.*

Historical fiction

The following works of historical fiction comprise only a selection from a very large number of books suitable for supplementary reading. For extended bibliographies see E. A. Baker, *A Guide to Historical Fiction*, and Jonathan Nield, *A Guide to the Best Historical Novels and Tales*. An excellent list of historical stories, especially designed for children, will be found in the *Bibliography of History for Schools and Libraries*, parts viii–ix.

Blackmore, R. D. *Lorna Doone.* Monmouth's Rebellion, 1685.
Bulwer-Lytton, Edward. *The Last Days of Pompeii.*
Dickens, Charles. *The Tale of Two Cities.* London and Paris at the time of the French Revolution.
Eliot, George. *Romola.* Florence in the latter part of the fifteenth century.
Hugo, Victor. *Ninety-Three.* Insurrection in La Vendée, 1793.
—— *Notre Dame de Paris.* Paris, late fifteenth century.
Irving, Washington. *The Alhambra.* Sketches of the Moors and Spaniards.
Kingsley, Charles. *Hypatia.* Alexandria, 391 A.D.
—— *Westward Ho!* Voyages of Elizabethan seamen and the struggle with Spain.
Kipling, Rudyard. *Puck of Pook's Hill.* Roman occupation of Britain.

LEVER, CHARLES. *Charles O'Malley.* The Peninsula War.
—— *Tom Bourke of "Ours."* The French wars of the Consulate and Empire.
READE, CHARLES. *The Cloister and the Hearth.* Eve of the Reformation.
SCOTT, (SIR) WALTER. *The Talisman.* Reign of Richard I, 1193.
—— *Ivanhoe.* Richard I, 1194.
SHORTHOUSE, J. H. *John Inglesant.* Life in England and Italy during the seventeenth century.
SIENKIEWICZ, HENRYK. *With Fire and Sword.* Poland in the seventeenth century.
THACKERAY, W. M. *Henry Esmond.* England during the reigns of William III and Queen Anne.
TOLSTOY, (COUNT) L. N. *War and Peace.* Napoleon's campaigns in Russia.
—— *Sevastopol.* Crimean War.
WALLACE, LEW. *Ben Hur; a Tale of the Christ.*
WATERLOO, STANLEY. *The Story of Ab.* Prehistoric life.

Historical poetry

It is unnecessary to emphasize the value, as collateral reading, of historical poems and plays. To the brief list which follows should be added the material in M. E. Windsor and J. Turral, *Lyra Historical* (Oxford University Press) and Katharine Lee Bates and Katharine Coman, *English History told by English Poets* (Macmillan).

BROWNING, ELIZABETH B. *The Cry of the Children*, and *The Forced Recruit.*
BROWNING, ROBERT. *Pheidippides, Hervé Riel*, and *An Incident of the French Camp.*
BURNS, ROBERT. *The Battle of Bannockburn.*
BYRON (LORD). *Song of Saul before His Last Battle, The Destruction of Sennacherib, Belshazzar's Feast*, "The Isles of Greece" (*Don Juan*, canto iii, between stanzas 86–87), "The Eve of Waterloo" (*Childe Harold*, canto iii, stanzas 21–28), and *Ode to Napoleon Buonaparte.*
CAMPBELL, THOMAS. *Hohenlinden, The Battle of the Baltic, Rule Britannia*, and *Ye Mariners of England.*
COWPER, WILLIAM. *Loss of the "Royal George."*
DRYDEN, JOHN. *Alexander's Feast.*
HALLECK, FITZ-GREENE. *Marco Bozzaris.*
HEMANS, FELICIA. *The Landing of the Pilgrims.*
KIPLING, RUDYARD. *Recessional*, and *The White Man's Burden.*
LONGFELLOW, H. W. *The Skeleton in Armor, The Norman Baron, The Belfry of Bruges, Nuremberg*, and *The White Czar.*
LOWELL, J. R. *Kossuth* and *Villafranca.*
MACAULAY, T. B. *Lays of Ancient Rome, The Armada, The Battle of Ivry*, and *The Battle of Naseby.*
MCCRAE, JOHN. *In Flanders Fields.*
MILLER, JOAQUIN. *Columbus.*
MILTON, JOHN. *Ode on the Morning of Christ's Nativity*, and *To the Lord General Cromwell.*

ROSSETTI, D. G. *The White Ship.*
SCHILLER, FRIEDRICH. *The Maid of Orleans, William Tell, Maria Stuart,* and *Wallenstein.*
SCOTT, (SIR) WALTER. "Flodden Field" (*Marmion,* canto vi, stanzas 19–27, 33–35).
SHAKESPEARE, WILLIAM. *Coriolanus, Julius Cæsar, Antony and Cleopatra, King John, Richard the Second, Henry the Fourth,* parts i and ii, *Henry the Fifth, Henry the Sixth,* parts i, ii, and iii, *Richard the Third, Henry the Eighth,* and *The Merchant of Venice.*
TAYLOR, BAYARD. *The Song in Camp.*
TENNYSON, ALFRED. *Ulysses, Boadicea, St. Telemachus, St. Simeon Stylites, Sir Galahad, "The Revenge": A Ballad of the Fleet, Ode on Death of the Duke of Wellington, The Charge of the Light Brigade,* and *The Defense of Lucknow.*
THACKERAY, W. M. *King Canute.*
WOLFE, CHARLES. *The Burial of Sir John Moore.*

Sources

Full information regarding the best translations of the sources of history may be found in one of the Reports previously cited — *Historical Sources in Schools,* parts ii–iv. Hutton Webster's *Readings in Ancient History* (D. C. Heath and Company, $1.60) and *Readings in Medieval and Modern History* (Heath, $1.64) provide narrative and biographical selections from the sources, while the same editor's *Historical Source Book* (Heath, $1.60) furnishes the text of important documents with introductions and notes.

Use may also be made of the following collections:

BOTSFORD, G. W., and BOTSFORD, LILLIE S. *Source Book of Ancient History* (N. Y., 1912, Macmillan, $2.00).
DAVIS, W. S. *Readings in Ancient History* (Boston, 1912, Allyn & Bacon, 2 vols., $2.80).
OGG, F. A. *A Source Book of Medieval History* (N. Y., 1907, American Book Co., $1.72).
ROBINSON, J. H. *Readings in European History* (abridged ed., Boston, 1906, Ginn, $2.50).
Translations and Reprints from the Original Sources of European History (N. Y., 1894–1899, Longmans, Green & Co., 6 vols., each $2.00).

Modern works

Most of the books in the following list are inexpensive, easily procured and well adapted in style and choice of topics to the needs of high-school pupils. A few more elaborate and costly volumes, especially suitable for teachers, are indicated by an asterisk*. For detailed bibliographies, often accompanied by critical estimates, see C. K. Adams, *A Manual of Historical Literature,* and the *Bibliography of History for Schools and Libraries,* parts ii–v.

GENERAL

*Abbott, W. C. *The Expansion of Europe, 1415–1789* (N. Y., 1918, Holt, 2 vols., $8.00). Emphasizes cultural aspects of modern European history.

Cheyney, E. P. *Introduction to the Industrial and Social History of England* (new ed., N. Y., 1920, Macmillan, $2.60).

Cunningham, William. *An Essay on Western Civilization in its Economic Aspects (Ancient Times)* (N. Y., 1898, Putnam, $1.35). "Cambridge Historical Series."

—— *An Essay on Western Civilization in its Economic Aspects (Medieval and Modern Times)* (N. Y., 1901, Putnam, $1.35). "Cambridge Historical Series."

Day, Clive. *A History of Commerce* (new ed., N. Y., 1923, Longmans, Green & Co., $2.50). The most scholarly treatment in English.

Goodyear, W. H. *Roman and Medieval Art* (2d ed., N. Y., 1897, Macmillan, $2.00).

—— *Renaissance and Modern Art* (N. Y., 1894, $2.00).

Gras, S. N. B. *An Introduction to Economic History* (N. Y., 1922, Harper, $2.25).

*Hayes, C. J. H. *A Political and Social History of Modern Europe* (N. Y., 1916, Macmillan, 2 vols., $7.25). A college textbook, covering the period 1500–1915.

Herrick, C. A. *History of Commerce and Industry* (N. Y., 1917, Macmillan, $1.80).

Jacobs, Joseph. *The Story of Geographical Discovery* (N. Y., 1898, Appleton, $1.00).

Jenks, Edward. *The State and the Nation* (N. Y., 1919, Dutton, $2.00). A simply written work on the development of social institutions.

Libby, Walter. *An Introduction to the History of Science* (Boston, 1917, Houghton Mifflin Co., $2.35).

Marvin, F. S. *The Living Past* (new ed., N. Y., 1915, Oxford University Press, American Branch, $2.00). Suggestive survey of intellectual history.

Pattison, R. P. D. *Leading Figures in European History* (N. Y., 1912, Macmillan, $2.00). Biographical sketches of European statesmen from Charlemagne to Bismarck.

Reinach, Salomon. *Apollo; an Illustrated Manual of the History of Art throughout the Ages*, translated by Florence Simmonds (new ed., N Y., 1914, Scribner, $2.00). The best work on the subject.

Seignobos, Charles. *History of Ancient Civilization*, edited by A. H. Wilde (N. Y., 1906, Scribner, $1.48).

—— *History of Medieval and Modern Civilization*, edited by J. A. James (N. Y., 1907, Scribner, $1.48).

—— *History of Contemporary Civilization*, edited by J. A. James (N. Y., 1909, Scribner, $1.48).

Van Loon, H. *The Story of Mankind* (N. Y., 1920, Boni & Liveright, $5.00).

Webster, Hutton. *History of the Far East* (N. Y., 1923, Heath, $1.40).

—— *History of Latin America* (N. Y., 1924, Heath, $1.64).

*Wells, H. G. *A Short History of the World* (N. Y., 1922, Macmillan, $4.00).

PREHISTORIC TIMES

Myres, J. L. *The Dawn of History* (N. Y., 1912, Holt, 90 cents). "Home University Library."

*Osborn, H. F. *Men of the Old Stone Age* (N. Y., 1915, Scribner, $5.00). An authoritative, interesting, and amply illustrated work.

Tyler, J. M. *The New Stone Age in Northern Europe* (N. Y., 1921, Scribner, $3.00).

Wilder, H. H. *Man's Prehistoric Past* (new ed., N. Y., 1924, Macmillan, $5.00).

THE ANCIENT ORIENT

Baikie, James. *The Story of the Pharaohs* (N. Y., 1908, Macmillan, $4.25). A popular work; well illustrated.

*Breasted, J. H. *A History of Egypt from the Earliest Times to the Persian Conquest* (new ed., N. Y., 1909, Scribner, $7.00). The standard work on Egyptian history.

Clay, A. T. *Light on the Old Testament from Babel* (new ed., Philadelphia, 1915, Sunday School Times Co., $2.00).

*Hall, H. R. *Ancient History of the Near East* (new ed., N. Y., 1920, Macmillan, $7.00).

Hogarth, D. G. *The Ancient East* (N. Y., 1915, Holt, 90 cents), "Home University Library."

*Jastrow, Morris. *The Civilization of Babylonia and Assyria* (Philadelphia, 1915, Lippincott, $7.50). A finely illustrated work by a great scholar.

Maspero, (Sir) Gaston. *Life in Ancient Egypt and Assyria* (N. Y., 1892, Appleton, $2.50). Fascinating and authoritative.

*Olmstead, A. T. *History of Assyria* (N. Y., 1923, Scribner, $7.50).

GREECE AND ROME

Baikie, James. *The Sea-Kings of Crete* (new ed., N. Y., 1912, Macmillan, $4.25). A clear and vivid summary of Cretan archæology.

Bailey, Cyril (editor). *The Legacy of Rome* (N. Y., 1923, Oxford University Press, American Branch, $3.00). Essays on Roman civilization by distinguished scholars.

*Botsford, G. W. *Hellenic History* (N. Y., 1922, Macmillan, $4.00).

*Botsford, G. W., and Sihler, E. G. *Hellenic Civilization* (N. Y., 1915, Columbia University Press, $4.00). Lengthy extracts from the sources, with commentary and bibliographies.

Fowler, W. W. *Social Life at Rome in the Age of Cicero* (N. Y., 1909, Macmillan, $3.00).

*Frank, Tenney. *A History of Rome* (N. Y., 1923, Holt, $3.50). "American Historical Series."

Gayley, C. M. *The Classic Myths in English Literature and in Art* (new ed., Boston, 1911, Ginn, $1.92).

GULICK, C. B. *The Life of the Ancient Greeks* (N. Y., 1902, Appleton, $2.00). Well illustrated.

HOPKINSON, (MISS) L. W. *Greek Leaders* (Boston, 1918, Houghton Mifflin Co., $1.75). Simple biographies of eleven makers of Greek history.

LIVINGSTONE, R. W. (editor). *The Legacy of Greece* (N. Y., 1921, Oxford University Press, American Branch, $2.50). Essays on Greek civilization by distinguished scholars.

MAHAFFY, J. P. *What have the Greeks done for Modern Civilization?* (N. Y. 1909, Putnam, $2.50).

*MAU, AUGUST. *Pompeii: Its Life and Art*, translated by F. W. Kelsey (N. Y., 1899, out of print).

OMAN, CHARLES. *Seven Roman Statesmen of the Later Republic* (N. Y., 1902, Longmans, Green & Co., $2.25). A biographical presentation of Roman history.

ROBINSON, C. E. *The Days of Alkibiades* (N. Y., 1916, Longmans, Green & Co., $2.00). A picture of Greek life and culture in the Age of Pericles.

*STOBART, J. C. *The Glory that was Greece: A Survey of Hellenic Culture and Civilization* (new ed., Philadelphia, 1915, Lippincott, $7.50).

*—— *The Grandeur that was Rome: A Survey of Roman Culture and Civilization* (new ed., Philadelphia, 1920, Lippincott, $7.50).

TARBELL, F. G. *A History of Greek Art* (new ed., N. Y., 1905, Macmillan, $2.00).

TUCKER, T. G. *Life in Ancient Athens* (N. Y., 1906, Macmillan, $2.40). The most attractive treatment of the subject.

—— *Life in the Roman World of Nero and St. Paul* (N. Y., 1910, Macmillan, $3.50).

ZIMMERN, A. E. *The Greek Commonwealth* (new ed., N. Y., 1922, Oxford University Press, American Branch, $3.80).

MIDDLE AGES

ADAMS, G. B. *Civilization during the Middle Ages* (new ed., N. Y., 1914, Scribner, $2.75).

BATESON, MARY. *Medieval England* (N. Y., 1903, Putnam, $2.50). Deals with economic and social life; "Story of the Nations."

*BRYCE, JAMES (VISCOUNT). *The Holy Roman Empire* (new ed., N. Y., 1904, Macmillan, $3.75). A famous work, originally published in 1864.

CUTTS, E. L. *Scenes and Characters of the Middle Ages* (London, 1872, De La More Press, 7*s.* 6*d.*).

DAVIS, H. W. C. *Medieval Europe* (N. Y., 1911, Holt, 90 cents). "Home University Library."

EMERTON, EPHRAIM. *An Introduction to the Study of the Middle Ages* (Boston, 1888, Ginn, $1.92).

FOORD, EDWARD. *The Byzantine Empire* (N. Y., 1911, out of print). The most convenient short treatment; lavishly illustrated.

GUERBER, H. A. *Legends of the Middle Ages* (N. Y., 1896, American Book Co., $2.00).

*Hearnshaw, F. J. C. (editor). *Medieval Contributions to Modern Civilization* (London, 1921, Harrap, 10*s.* 6*d.*).

*Luchaire, Achille. *Social France at the Time of Philip Augustus*, translated by E. B. Krehbiel (London, 1912, Murray, 10*s.* 6*d.*). A historical masterpiece.

*Munro, D. C. *The Middle Ages* (N. Y., 1921, Century Co., $3.50). "Century Historical Series."

*Munro, D. C., and Sellery, G. C. *Medieval Civilization* (new ed., N. Y., 1907, Century Co., $2.50). Translated selections from standard works by French and German scholars.

Tappan, Eva M. *When Knights were Bold* (Boston, 1912, Houghton Mifflin Co., $3.00). An economic and social study of the Feudal Age; charmingly written for young people.

*Thorndike, Lynn. *The History of Medieval Europe* (Boston, 1917, Houghton Mifflin Co., $3.50). An admirable college textbook.

TRANSITION TO MODERN TIMES

Bourne, E. G. *Spain in America, 1450–1580* (N. Y., 1904, Harper, $2.25). "American Nation Series."

Cheyney, E. P. *European Background of American History, 1300–1600* (N. Y., 1904, Harper, $2.25). "American Nation Series."

Hudson, W. H. *The Story of the Renaissance* (N. Y., 1912, Holt, $2.50). A well-written volume.

*Hulme, E. M. *The Renaissance, the Protestant Revolution, and the Catholic Reformation in Continental Europe* (new ed., N. Y., 1915, Century Co. $3.50). The best work on the subject by an American scholar.

Seebohm, Frederic. *The Era of the Protestant Revolution* (N. Y., 1875, Scribner, $1.75). "Epochs of Modern History."

*Smith, Preserved. *The Age of the Reformation* (N. Y., 1920, Holt, $5.00). "American Historical Series."

THE SEVENTEENTH AND EIGHTEENTH CENTURIES

Firth, C. H. *Oliver Cromwell and the Rule of the Puritans in England* (N. Y., 1900, Putnam, $2.50). "Heroes of the Nations."

Hassall, Arthur. *Louis XIV and the Zenith of the French Monarchy* (N. Y., 1895, Putnam, $2.50). "Heroes of the Nations."

Lowell, E. J. *The Eve of the French Revolution* (new ed., Boston, 1893, Houghton Mifflin Co., $3.00). A satisfactory account of the Old Régime in France.

Reddaway, W. F. *Frederick the Great and the Rise of Prussia* (N. Y., 1904, Putnam, $2.50). "Heroes of the Nations."

Thwaites, R. G. *France in America* (N. Y., 1905, Harper, $2.25). "American Nation Series."

Tyler, L. G. *England in America* (N. Y., 1904, Harper, $2.25). "American Nation Series."

THE REVOLUTIONARY AND NAPOLEONIC ERAS

*Bourne, H. E. *The Revolutionary Period in Europe, 1763–1815* (N. Y., 1914, Century Co., $3.50). "Century Historical Series."

Fisher, Herbert. *Napoleon* (N. Y., 1913, Holt, 90 cents). "Home University Library."

Johnston, R. M. *The French Revolution* (N. Y., 1909, Holt, $2.00).

—— *Napoleon* (N. Y., 1909, Holt, $2.00).

Mathews, Shailer. *The French Revolution* (new ed., N. Y., 1923, Longmans, Green & Co., $2.00). Extends to 1815; probably the best short survey of the Revolutionary and Napoleonic eras.

THE NINETEENTH AND TWENTIETH CENTURIES

*Andrews, C. M. *The Historical Development of Modern Europe* (N. Y., 1896–1898, Putnam, two volumes in one, $4.50). Covers the period 1815–1897.

Bassett, J. S. *Our War with Germany* (N. Y., 1920, Knopf, $4.00). A scholarly history.

*Bowman, Isaiah. *The New World Problems in Political Geography* (N. Y., 1922, World Book Co., $6.00).

Davis, W. S., Anderson, William, and Tyler, M. W. *The Roots of the War* (N. Y., 1918, Century Co., $2.50). A non-technical, yet scholarly, history of Europe, 1870–1914.

Gibbins, H. de B. *Economic and Industrial Progress of the Century* (Edinburgh, 1903, Chambers, 5*s*.).

Gibbons, H. A. *The New Map of Europe, 1911–1914* (new ed., N. Y., 1915, Century Co., $3.00).

Gooch, G. P. *History of Our Time, 1885–1911* (N. Y., 1911, Holt, 90 cents). "Home University Library."

Hayes, C. J. H. *A Brief History of the Great War* (N. Y., 1920, Macmillan, $2.75).

*Hazen, C. D. *Europe since 1815* (new ed., N. Y., 1923, Holt, 2 vols., $8.50). Probably the most satisfactory political history of the last century; "American Historical Series."

Hearnshaw, F. J. C. *Main Currents of European History, 1815–1915* (N. Y., 1917, Macmillan, $2.50). Illuminating comment; not a continuous historical narrative.

Hornbeck, S. K. *Contemporary Politics in the Far East* (N. Y., 1916, Appleton, $3.50).

Johnston, (Sir) H. H. *The Opening-Up of Africa* (N. Y., 1911, Holt, 90 cents). "Home University Library."

Marvin, F. S. *The Century of Hope* (N. Y., 1919, Oxford University Press, American Branch, $3.00). A sketch of intellectual and social history between 1815 and 1914.

*Ogg, F. A. *The Governments of Europe* (new ed., N. Y., 1920, Macmillan, $3.90).

—— *Economic Development of Modern Europe* (N. Y., 1917, Macmillan, $3.50).

PHILLIPS, W. A. *Modern Europe, 1815–1899* (5th ed., N. Y., 1915, Macmillan, $2.90). "Periods of European History."

*ROSE, J. H. *The Development of the European Nations, 1870–1914* (new ed., N. Y., 1916, Putnam, two vols. in one, $4.50).

SCHAPIRO, J. S. *Modern and Contemporary European History* (Boston, 1918, Houghton Mifflin Co., $3.75). An admirable college textbook covering the period from the French Revolution to the present time.

SEYMOUR, CHARLES. *The Diplomatic Background of the War, 1870–1914* (New Haven, 1916, Yale University Press, $2.00).

SHEPHERD, W. R. *Latin America* (N. Y., 1914, Holt, 90 cents). "Home University Library."

SLATER, GILBERT. *The Making of Modern England* (Boston, 1914, Houghton Mifflin Co., $2.50). Traces the economic development of England during the nineteenth century.

TURNER, E. R. *Europe, 1789–1920* (N. Y., 1921, Doubleday, Page & Co., $3.50). An interesting and scholarly volume, with many maps.

HISTORY OF THE MODERN WORLD

CHAPTER I

THE BEGINNINGS OF HISTORY[1]

1. History and Prehistory

HISTORY, the narrative of what civilized peoples have thought or done in past times, is based on written records. Some of these are inscriptions cut in stone, or painted over the surface of a wall, or stamped upon metal tablets. Other written records are documents of various sorts. The Babylonians in antiquity used tablets of soft clay, on which signs were impressed with a metal instrument. The tablets were then baked hard in an oven, thus forming almost indestructible brick "books." The ancient Egyptians wrote with a pen and a dark pigment upon a kind of paper made from the papyrus, a river reed native to the Nile Valley. The Greeks and Romans also used papyrus paper, as well as the more durable parchment prepared from sheepskin. Linen paper seems to have been a Chinese discovery, which the Arabs introduced into Europe during the Middle Ages. Printing, by means of movable type, was also known in the Far East before the first presses were set up in European lands about five hundred years ago.

Written records

Inscriptions and documents preserve the memory of human achievements. As long as all information has to be handed down by word of mouth from one generation to the next — the method of oral tradition — a genuine history is impossible. Traditional information soon becomes unreliable and often quite false, like a piece of village gossip that has been many times retold. Written records

Written records and history

[1] Webster, *Readings in Ancient History*, chapter i, "Three Oriental Peoples as Described by Herodotus."

alone enable men widely separated in space and time to share a common knowledge and transmit it to future ages. Men now have a narrative of the past that is exact, comprehensive, and ever growing with the growth of civilization.

Beginnings of history

History, based on written records, begins in different countries at different dates. Some inscriptions found in Egypt and Babylonia belong to the fourth millennium B.C. Trustworthy records in China and India do not extend beyond 1000 B.C., while those of Greece and Rome are still later by several centuries. It was only after the opening of the Christian era that most parts of Europe entered the historic age. And it was not until the time of the Columbian discovery that the New World emerged into the light of history.

Prehistory

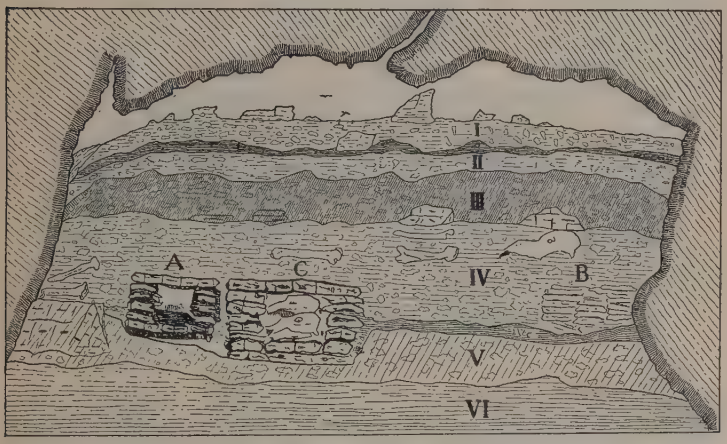
Back of history lies prehistory. Our knowledge of the prehistoric period is derived, not from written records, but from objects discovered in caves, refuse mounds, graves, and other sites. Such objects include a few human bones, many bones of animals, and a great variety of tools, weapons, utensils, ornaments, paintings, carvings, and stone monuments. Various European countries, including England, France, Denmark, Switzerland, Spain, and Italy, are particularly rich in prehistoric remains.

The Palæolithic Age

The earlier and much the longer division of prehistory is known as the Old Stone, or Palæolithic, Age. This name refers to the chipped flints or other hard stones which were then commonly used as tools and weapons. Almost every region of the world has had a Palæolithic Age. We know most about it in Europe. Men lived there at a time when gigantic icefields and glaciers covered a large part of the continent; when land-bridges connected what are now the British Isles with the mainland, Spain and Italy with Africa, and the Balkan Peninsula with Asia Minor; and when such animals as the woolly mammoth, woolly rhinoceros, saber-tooth tiger, cave bear, bison, reindeer, and wild steppe horse ranged through the forests and over the plains. The duration of this age in Europe must be reckoned by tens of thousands, possibly by hundreds of thousands, of years.

Palæolithic men, at first, were naked, fireless, houseless, without tools or weapons, and with nothing but their hands and brains to secure food and protect themselves from the wild animals on every side. There are no living savages so low as this, for all have implements, make fire, construct shelters against wind and rain, and possess other elements of culture. Palæolithic men, who started without any culture, had to acquire it by their own

Progress during the Palæolithic Age

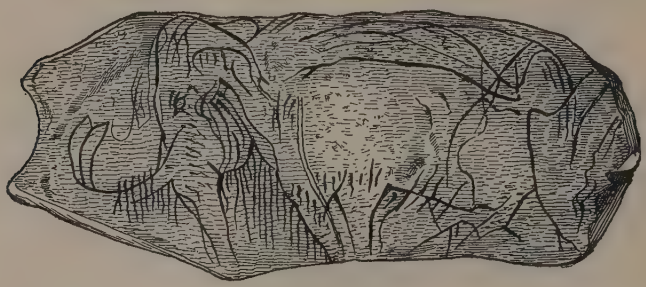


Deposits in a Swiss Cave

The cave of Drachenloch, near Ragatz, Switzerland, contains four layers of relic-bearing deposits. The layers are numbered II, III, IV, and V in the drawing. At A were hearths with charcoal; at B an assemblage of flat stones; and at C an altar on which the skulls of cave bears were piled. Stone and bone implements found in the cave testify to its occupancy by man at a remote epoch, tens of thousands of years ago.

unaided efforts. The remains that have survived from this age in Europe show them doing so. They chipped flints to serve as hatchets, knives, saws, chisels, borers, scrapers, and spear-heads. They made needles, fishhooks, barbed harpoons, and spear-throwers out of wood, bone, mammoth ivory, and reindeer horn. Bone and wooden handles were devised by them, thus adding immensely to the effectiveness of tools and weapons. They learned how to make fire, how with fire to cook food and warm their cave homes, and how to use the skins of animals for clothing. Some of these men were talented artists, who deco-

rated their stone and bone implements with engravings, modeled figures in clay, carved stone and ivory statuettes, and covered the walls of caves with brightly colored paintings. The subjects are generally animals, though a few representations of the human form have been found. The cave dwellers seem to have had a rude religion, since they sometimes deposited tools, weapons, and ornaments in graves with their dead, doubtless for use in another life. We may also surmise, from what is known of existing savages, that even in the Palæolithic Age there was some form of marriage and the family, some kind of government,



A Mammoth

An engraving on a piece of ivory tusk. Found in the rock shelter of La Madeleine, France. Represents a woolly mammoth charging. Comparison with the remains of mammoths completely preserved in the ice of Siberia shows that the Palæolithic artist accurately delineated the animal's protuberant forehead, hairy covering, and huge, curved tusks.

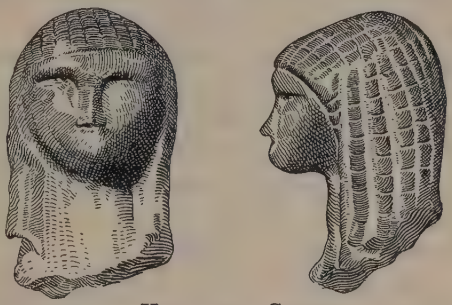
and some coöperation between groups for hunting and for defense against animal and human foes. The social life of man is very ancient, as well as his religion, art, and industries.

The Neolithic Age

The New Stone, or Neolithic, Age is so called because by this time men had begun to grind and polish some of their stone implements after chipping them. A Neolithic Age has existed in many parts of the world, but again we know most about it in Europe. The map of Europe by this time was much the same as it is to-day, for the great ice-sheets had retreated toward the Arctic and the former land-bridges had sunk beneath the North Sea and the Mediterranean. Nearly all the animals characteristic of Palæolithic times had disappeared, some having become extinct and others having mi-

grated. The Neolithic Age began in Europe probably about ten thousand years ago.

The Neolithic Age covered only a brief space of time, as compared with its predecessor, but it was an age of rapid advance in culture. **Progress during the Neolithic Age** Implements, though still of stone, bone, and wood, were often of exceeding beauty and finish, particularly arrowheads (testifying to the invention of the bow). The men of this age made pottery, chiefly for cooking vessels, plaited baskets, spun and wove textiles, prepared leather, built boats, and used wheeled carts. They domesticated dogs, goats, sheep, swine, and oxen. Most important of all, they cultivated the cereals. Some of these arts were probably borrowed by them from Egypt and Western Asia. Neolithic men, in short, were not savages; they had passed from savagery to barbarism.



HEAD OF A GIRL

Musée St.-Germain, Paris

A small head of a young girl carved from mammoth ivory. Found at Brassempouy, France, in cave deposits belonging to the Old Stone Age. The hair is arranged somewhat after the early Egyptian fashion. Of the features the mouth alone is wanting.

NEOLITHIC SHIPS

2. The Dawn of Civilization

Civilization depends on the use of the metals. Stone, as the material for tools and weapons, is not pliable; it is apt to split in use; it cannot be ground to a sharp edge. No wonder that

substitutes for stone were sought in the metals, which alone give to men a real mastery of nature. Credit for the invention of metallurgy seems to belong to the Egyptians. At least as early as 4000 B.C. they were working the copper mines on the peninsula of Sinai. The Babylonians probably obtained copper from the same region. Another source of copper was the island of Cyprus, which is rich in that metal. Ancient smiths in time discovered that the addition of a small quantity of tin to copper produced the much harder and tougher alloy called bronze. This appeared in Egypt and Babylonia about 3000 B.C. and somewhat later in Cyprus, Crete, Asia Minor, and Greece. Traders subsequently carried the new metal throughout Europe.

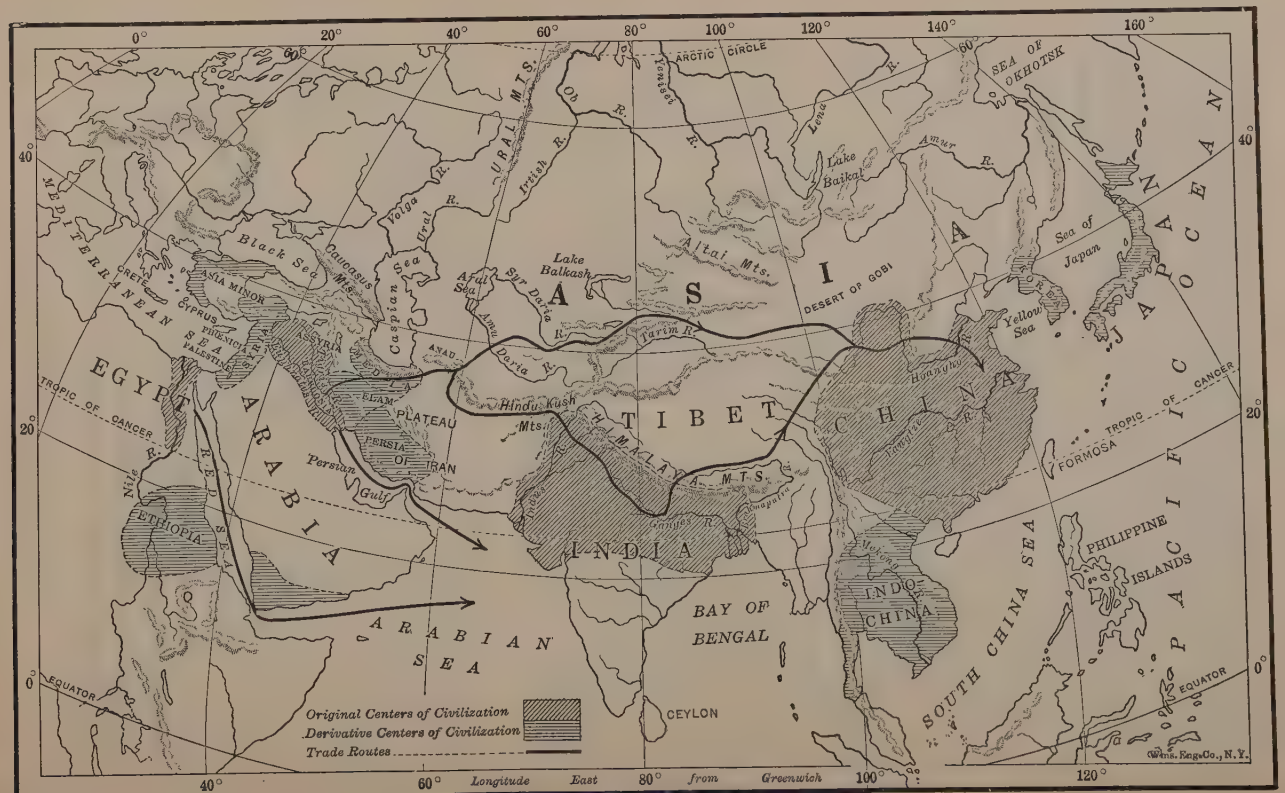
The Copper-Bronze Age

The introduction of iron occurred at quite a late period, and in some countries after the beginning of historic times. The Egyptians and Babylonians made little use of iron before 1500 B.C., and the inhabitants of Europe became acquainted with it at a later date. There are still some peoples without any knowledge of iron. The savage Australian tribes, for instance, continue to make stone implements as rude as those of Palæolithic men in Europe. The American Indians, before the discovery of the New World, knew nothing of iron. Most of them had stone implements like those of Neolithic Europe, but in Mexico, Central America, and Peru copper and bronze were also used. India and China afford evidence of the regular succession in those regions of copper, bronze, and iron.

The Iron Age

Civilization, resting on the metals, thus arose only a few thousand years ago in certain isolated areas. Those in the Old World were principally Egypt, Babylonia (the Tigris-Euphrates Valley), northern India, and central China. Those in the New World were Mexico, Central America, and Peru. The areas mentioned have certain features in common. They are, or were, fertile regions, where food could be easily produced, wealth multiplied, and large populations supported by agriculture and trade. They are, or were, regions with a favorable climate, where excessive cold did not stunt body or mind nor enervating heat sap human

Centers of early civilization


0°
20°
40°
60°
80°
100°
120°
140°
160°
ARCTIC CIRCLE
Yenisei R.
Ob R.
Lena R.
SEA OF OKHOTSK
URAL MTS.
Irtish R.
Volga R.
Ural R.
Lake Baikal
Amur R.
Caucasus Mts.
Black Sea
Caspian Sea
Aral Sea
Sea of Japan
Altai Mts.
Lake Balkash
Syr Daria R.
DESERT OF GOBI
Amu Daria R.
Tarim R.
Yellow Sea
Hwang-ho R.
Yangtse-Kiang R.
TROPIC OF CANCER
FORMOSA
Hindu Kush Mts.
PLATEAU OF IRAN
Persian Gulf
Nile R.
Ganges R.
Indus R.
MALAYA MTS.
Irrawaddy R.
Mekong R.
PHILIPPINE ISLANDS
SOUTH CHINA SEA
BAY OF BENGAL
ARABIAN SEA
RED SEA
EQUATOR
CEYLON
INDO-CHINA
EGYPT
ARABIA
TIBET
CHINA
INDIA
ASIA
PACIFIC OCEAN
Original Centers of Civilization
Derivative Centers of Civilization
Trade Routes
Longitude East from Greenwich
Wms. Reg. Co., N. Y.

energies. They are also well protected regions, surrounded by seas, mountains, or deserts, so that access to them by ruder peoples was not easy. Hence their inhabitants enjoyed opportunities not found elsewhere to develop the arts of civilized life.

Civilization during the last few thousand years has spread from its original centers until now it covers the greater part of the habitable globe. Uncivilized peoples, who once occupied all the world, have been exterminated or else have been pushed off to remote and inaccessible regions, such as the interior of Australia, equatorial Africa, northern Siberia, tropical America, and the islands of the Pacific. History, from the widest point of view, forms a record of the displacement of savagery and barbarism by civilization.

Spread of early civilization

3. Races and Languages

The vast size of Asia, its widely varying life conditions, and its central location in respect to all other land masses indicate that this continent was the birthplace of mankind. The different races arose at a remote period, as man made his way from Asia into other parts of the world. Three primary races are recognized: the Black (Negro) race; the Yellow (Mongolian) race; and the White (Caucasian) race. This classification is not altogether satisfactory. The Australians, among whom Negroid traits preponderate, nevertheless resemble Caucasians in some respects, and the Mongoloid Polynesians also possess Caucasian resemblances; while important physical differences separate both Malays and American Indians from other members of the Yellow race. No race, indeed, is pure. Repeated migrations, raids, and conquests have brought about racial intermixture almost everywhere.

Classification of races

When history opens, each of the three races occupied quite distinct geographical areas. The Black race held most of Africa, south of the Sahara, southern India, New Guinea and the adjacent islands, and Australia. The Yellow race held the north, east, and center of Asia, whence it spread over the Malay Archipelago, the islands of the Pacific, and the New World. The White race was limited to Europe,

Distribution of races

northern Africa, and southwestern Asia. Recent centuries have seen a wonderful expansion of the White race, which now forms the bulk of the population of North America, South America, South Africa, Australia, and New Zealand.

The Dispersal of Mankind

Excepting the American negroes, the Black race is still in the savage or the barbarian stage of culture. The same holds true of the Yellow race, with the important exceptions of the Chinese, Indo-Chinese, and Japanese. Civilization has been developed and history has been made chiefly by the White race.

Race and civilization

The languages of the White race belong, with some exceptions, to one or other of three families. Least important, historically, is the Hamitic family, named after Ham, a son of Noah (*Genesis* x, 1, 6). Hamitic languages are

Hamitic languages

still spoken in northern and eastern Africa, some of them by peoples who have more or less mixed with negroes. Ancient Egyptian was a Hamitic language.

The second family is that of the Semitic languages, so called from Shem, another son of Noah (*Genesis* x, 1, 22). Semitic-speaking peoples in antiquity included Babylonians, Assyrians, Hebrews, Phœnicians, and Arabs. To these must be added the Abyssinians of eastern Africa. The Semites, as the map shows, originally formed a compact group, but Arabs are now found everywhere in northern Africa, while Hebrews (Jews) have spread over all the world.

Semitic languages

The third family is that of the Indo-European [1] languages. This name indicates that they are found in both India and Europe. The peoples using Indo-European languages in ancient times formed a widely extended group, which reached from India across Asia and Europe to the British Isles and Scandinavia. Hindus in India, Medes and Persians on the plateau of Iran, Greeks and Italians, and the inhabitants of eastern and western Europe spoke related tongues. Their likeness is illustrated by the common words for relationship. Terms such as "father," "mother," "brother," and "daughter" occur with slight changes in form in nearly all the Indo-European languages. Thus, "father" in Sanskrit (the old Hindu language) is *pitar*, in ancient Persian, *pidar*, in Greek, *patĕr*, in Latin, *pater*, and in German, *Vater*. There must have been at one time a single speech from which all the Indo-European languages have descended. But where it was first spoken, whether in Europe or in Asia, we cannot determine.

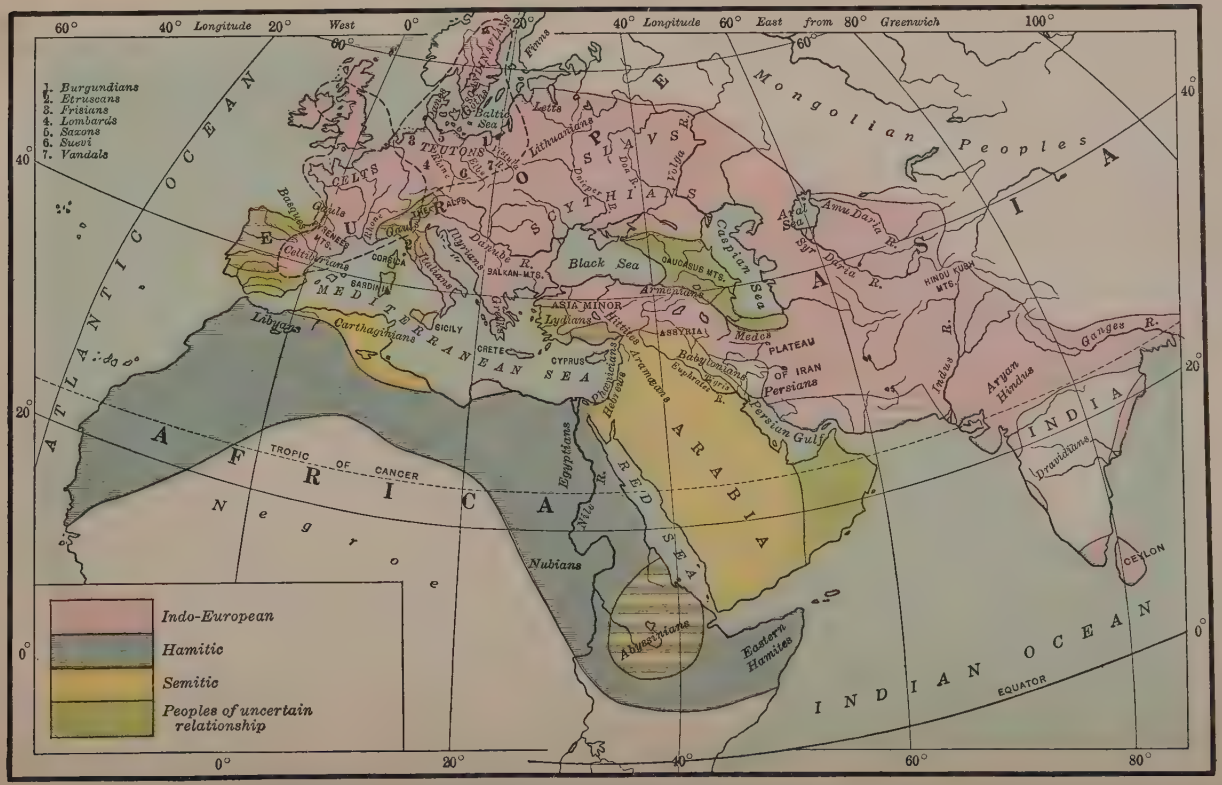
Indo-European languages

4. Lands and Peoples of the East

History begins in the East — in Asia, and in that part of Africa called Egypt, which was formerly considered as belonging to Asia. This great continent comprises almost one third of the land surface of the globe. Its boundaries on the north, east, and south are easily traced. On

Boundaries of Asia

[1] The alternative name "Aryan" is accurately applied only to the languages of the Hindus and the ancient Medes and Persians (Iranians).



Distribution of the White Race in Antiquity, about 1000–500 B.C.

the west the Mediterranean, Black, and Caspian seas, together with the Caucasus and Ural mountains, separate Asia from Europe. It should be noticed, however, that the broad, low range of the Urals provides no continuous crest between Siberia and Russia, while between these mountains and the Caspian the Asiatic steppe merges insensibly into the European plain. Europe has thus been always open to the nomadic tribes of central and northern Asia.

Asia reaches from near the equator to a point halfway between the Arctic Circle and the North Pole. It has, therefore, a wide variety of climates. Some of the highest temperatures known are registered in southern Asia and some of the lowest in northern Asia. The differences in altitude, ranging from the Caspian basin below sea-level to the table-land of Tibet, whose mean elevation is about fifteen thousand feet above the sea, also profoundly affect climatic conditions. The mountains of central Asia are so high that they drain the winds from the ocean of their moisture, with the result that the interior of the continent has little rainfall and is often completely arid.

Climatic conditions in Asia

The sea, which washes only the remote edges of Asia, penetrates deeply into Europe and forms an extremely irregular coast-line, with numerous gulfs and bays. The mighty mountains of Asia present barriers to intercourse such as are not afforded by the lower ranges of Europe. Extensive deserts and barren table-lands, which form so characteristic a feature of Asia, are unknown in Europe. Asia, in proportion to its size, is not as well supplied as Europe with navigable streams, facilitating travel from one region to another. The climate of Asia is far less mild and equable than that of Europe. The two land masses thus present striking contrasts in their physical features.

Asia and Europe compared

At least eight hundred million people, or almost half of the world's population, live in Asia. Yet most of the continent is sparsely settled, for the mountain slopes, the steppes, the deserts, the forests, and the tundras support few inhabitants. The bulk of the population is found

Population of Asia

in southern and southeastern Asia, where agriculture, and not hunting and herding, forms the principal means of livelihood.

All the races of man are found in Asia, but by far the largest part of the continent is occupied by the Mongolian or Yellow race. The Black race is represented by the dwarf blacks found in the Malay Peninsula. The Dravidians of southern India form a large group also with Negroid characteristics. Northern India, the greater part of western Asia, and Egypt have been occupied since prehistoric times by members of the Caucasian or White race.

Asiatic races

5. The Far East in Antiquity

A physical map of Asia shows that the continent consists of two very unequal divisions separated by an almost continuous mass of mountains and deserts. These two divisions are the Far East and the Near East, respectively. The Far East begins in central Asia with a series of elevated table-lands, which rise into the lofty plateaus known as the "Roof of the World." Here two tremendous mountain chains diverge. The Altai range, with its continuations, runs to the northeast and reaches the Pacific near Bering Strait. The Himalaya range, with its continuations, extends southeast to the Malay Peninsula. In the angle formed by their intersection lies the high, cold, and barren region of East Turkestan and Tibet. From these mountains and plateaus the ground sinks gradually toward the west and north into the lowlands of West Turkestan and Siberia, and toward the east and south into the plains of China, Indo-China, and India.

The Far East

The fertile territory of central China, watered by the two streams Yangtze and Hoangho, was settled at a remote period by wandering tribes. They must have been little better than savages, if we may accept Chinese traditions, which refer to a time when the people lived in caves, ate uncooked food, and wore the skins of animals. Later they grew less rude. We are told how fire was created by the friction of two pieces of dry wood; how the first houses were built by

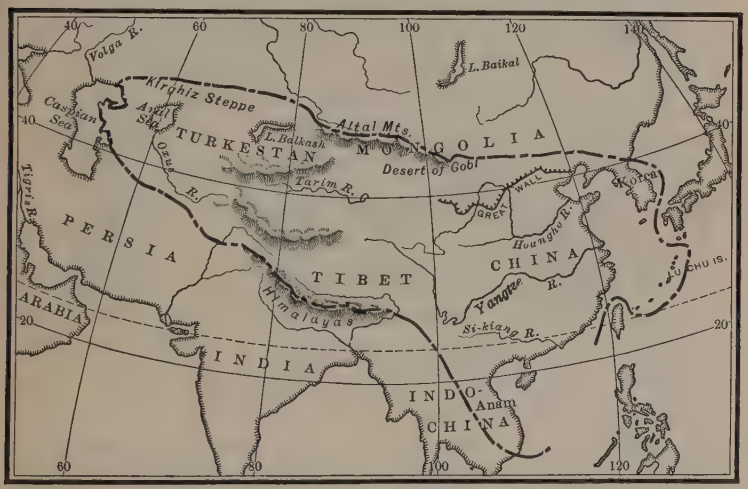
Prehistoric China

PHYSICAL MAP OF ASIA
Below Ocean Level
0 to 500 Ft.
500 to 3,000 Ft.
3,000 to 9,000 Ft.
9,000 to 15,000 Ft.
over 15,000 Ft.
Deserts
ARCTIC OCEAN
Siberian Plain
Ob R.
Yenisei R.
Lena R.
Bering Sea
Sea of Okhotsk
Great Ob R.
Irtish R.
Amur R.
Sea of Japan
Ural Mts.
EUROPE
Black Sea
Caucasus Mts.
Caspian Sea
Aral Sea
ASIA MINOR
Mt. Elbruz 18,470
Mt. Ararat 16,916
Mediterranean Sea
Altai Mts.
Thian Shan Mts.
Turfan Depression
Desert of Gobi
Mt. Demavend
Mustagh Ata. 24,400
Mt. Godwin Austen 28,250
Hoang-ho R.
CHINA
Isthmus of Suez
Nile R.
Red Sea
Plateau of Iran
Plateau of Tibet
Himalaya Mts.
Indus R.
Yangtze R.
Si R.
Mt. Everest 29,002
Brahmaputra R.
Ganges R.
Plateau of Arabia
INDIA
Plateau of the Deccan
ARABIAN SEA
BAY OF BENGAL
SOUTH CHINA SEA
PACIFIC OCEAN
AFRICA
CEYLON
Scale of Miles
0 200 400 600 800 1000
Section along Line A-B.
Plains of Siberia
Altai Mts. 10,980
Thian Shan 13,124
Turfan Depression -427
Mt. Godwin Austen 28,200
Mustagh Ata. 24,400
Plateau of Tibet
Mt. Everest 29,002
Deccan
30,000 Ft.
25,000 Ft.
20,000 Ft.
15,000 Ft.
10,000 Ft.
5,000 Ft.
THE M. N. WORKS, BUFFALO, N. Y.

intertwining the boughs of trees; how wise rulers taught their subjects to smelt and forge metals, to tame wild animals, and to cultivate the soil. Then came the art of writing and an advance to the historic age.

The annals of the Chinese, according to native authorities, begin nearly five thousand years ago, but we do not reach firm historical ground until about 1000 B.C. The Chinese after that date not only developed an orderly, progressive civilization of their own, but they also exerted great

Historic China



CHINESE EMPIRE UNDER THE T'ANG DYNASTY

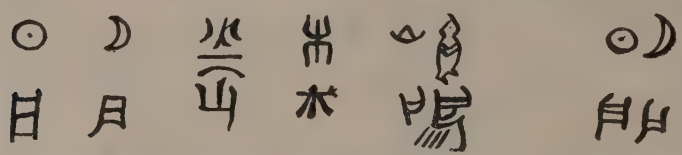
China, under the T'ang dynasty (618–907 A.D.), was the largest and most powerful state in the world. The frontiers of the empire reached as far as Persia and the Caspian Sea on the west, and on the southeast to Burma and the Himalaya Mountains.

influence on neighboring peoples. The once-barbarous inhabitants of Korea, Indo-China, and Japan copied the arts, the literature, and even to some extent the religion and government of China, while many rude tribes of central and eastern Asia received from China whatever measure of civilized life they now enjoy. On the other hand, the Chinese remained practically isolated from the rest of the civilized world from the earliest times until our own day. Their sole connection with the Near

East and with Europe was through foreign trade, chiefly in silks, which were sent overland or by water routes to European markets. The ancients knew of China as Serica, the Silk Land.

Stability of China

The most striking feature of Chinese civilization is its long, unbroken development through so many centuries. Other civilizations, with equal and possibly superior claims to permanency, have disappeared, for instance, those of ancient Egypt, Babylonia, Greece, and Rome. The stability of China may be ascribed, in part, to the existence of a written language common to the entire country; in part, to the emphasis on ancestor worship and the family tie; and, in great part, to the moral and social teachings of Confucius (551–478 B.C.), which are accepted by the whole people. There



Chinese Picture Writing and Later Conventional Characters

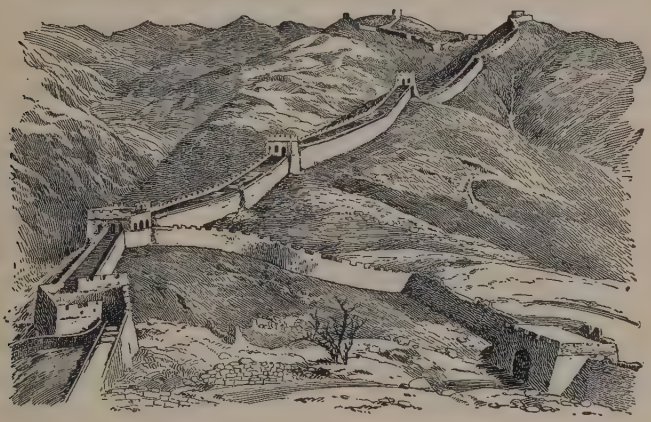
It is possible in some cases to recognize the original pictures out of which Chinese writing developed. Thus the sun, originally a large circle with a dot in the center, became a crossed oblong, which the painter found easier to make with his brush. Chinese is the only living language in which such pictures have survived and still denote what they denoted in the beginning.

are, of course, many other influences making for stability. China has always lived largely by agriculture, that most conservative of occupations, and the system of small holdings in vogue from time immemorial gives the inhabitants a proprietary interest in the soil. The great personal freedom which prevails in Chinese society and the absence of caste and rigid class distinctions have also contributed to make the Chinese well satisfied with their civilization. Finally, China is so big and populous that it has always been able to absorb foreign invaders, such as the Mongols in the thirteenth century A.D. and the Manchus four hundred years later. "China," as an old writer well said, "is a sea that salts all the rivers flowing into it."

The map shows India as the middle of three great peninsulas

which reach southward from the mainland of Asia. It has the form of a triangle, with the base resting upon the Himalaya Mountains and the apex projecting far into the Indian Ocean. Relatively to the rest of Asia, India looks small, but the peninsula is larger than Europe without Russia.

India



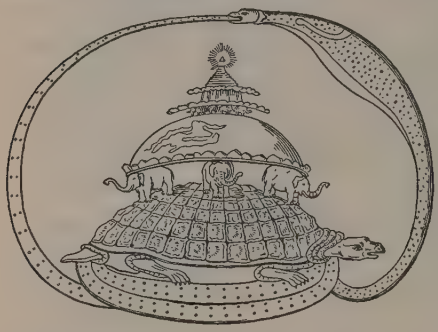
THE GREAT WALL OF CHINA

The wall was begun in 214 B.C. to protect the northern frontier of China from the inroads of Tatar tribes, and was gradually extended until it reached a length of 1500 miles. It consists of two ramparts of brick, resting upon granite foundations. The space within is filled with stones and earth. The breadth of the wall is about 25 feet; its height is between 20 and 30 feet. Watch towers, 40 feet high, occur every 200 yards. In places of strategic importance there are sometimes as many as five huge loops, with miles of country between, so that if one loop were captured the next might still be defended. Many parts of this colossal fortification are even now in good repair.

India early attracted immigrants. The very fertile region now known as the Punjab, where the Indus River receives the waters of five great streams, began to be settled by the Aryans probably during the second millenium B.C. They came in successive waves through the mountain passes on the northwest, occupied the Indus Valley, and then spread over the plain of the Ganges. All northern India thus became the Aryan land that it remains to-day. The earliest documents which throw light on their history are the hymns of the *Rigveda*, composed about 1000 B.C. or later. The Aryans

The Aryans in India

are there represented as a hardy, vigorous people; familiar with agriculture, though more given to pastoral pursuits; having chiefs, but no real kings; and worshiping the "bright gods" of nature, with prayer and hymn and offering. The Aryans mingled more or less with the dark-skinned aboriginals (Dravidians), whose lands they seized and whom they made serfs and slaves. Rigid social classes, or castes, such as still exist in India, gradually developed. Petty tribal chieftainships gave place to powerful monarchies. The simple Vedic faith became the religion of Brahmanism, with its priests called Brahmans, its grotesque idolatry, its huge temples, and its elaborate sacrifices. India also produced the religion of Buddhism, which was first taught by the great reformer, Gautama Buddha (about 568–488 B.C.). Buddhism afterward spread from India throughout the Far East.



HINDU CONCEPTION OF THE EARTH

The earth as represented by a Brahman priest. The abode of men is situated between that of the gods above and the infernal regions below. The whole is supported by four elephants on the back of a tortoise, the symbol of force and creative power. The great serpent, shown at the bottom, is the emblem of eternity.

India and the West

The Punjab was conquered by the Persians in the sixth century B.C. It formed for nearly two hundred years the richest and most prosperous province of the Persian Empire. Alexander the Great, the Macedonian conqueror of Persia, then added it to his newly formed empire. The year of Alexander's invasion, 326 B.C., is the first exact date in the history of India. After the end of foreign rule the peninsula continued to be of importance through its commerce, which introduced such luxuries as precious stones, ivory, spices, and fine cotton stuffs among the Western peoples. India always remained, however, outside the "Circuit of the Lands" (*Orbis Terrarum*) familiar to the ancients.

6. The Near East in Antiquity

The smaller of the two grand divisions of Asia is the Near East. It is the region between the Black and Caspian seas on the north, the Red Sea, Persian Gulf, and Indian Ocean on the south, the Indus River on the east, and the Mediterranean and the Nile on the west. This part of Asia consists of several vegetation belts. First come the forests in the mountainous districts of Asia Minor, Armenia, and Iran. Next succeed the steppe lands, including a large part of the plateaus of Asia Minor, Iran, and Arabia. Finally, as the rainfall diminishes, the steppes become more and more arid and pass into semi-deserts and deserts, such as those of Syria and inner Arabia. The forest belt nourished in antiquity a migratory, hunting folk. The steppe belt formed the home of nomadic, pastoral tribes. As for the desert belt, that was habitable only in oases. Men could settle down and adopt an agricultural life only where they were assured of a constant water supply and enduring sunlight. They found such assurance particularly in the valleys of the Tigris-Euphrates and the Nile. The one valley was Babylonia; the other valley was Egypt.

The Near East

Everything made it easy for men to live and thrive in Babylonia and Egypt. The soil, when properly irrigated, yielded abundant harvests. The fruit of the date palm provided a cheap and nutritious food. The hot but dry climate made little shelter or clothing necessary. The clay of the valleys and (in the case of Egypt) easily worked stone from the near-by mountains furnished building materials. The rivers served as natural highways for intercourse. All these favorable circumstances permitted the inhabitants to increase rapidly in numbers and to gather in populous communities. Their rude tribes now gave way to city-states, that is, to small, independent communities, each one centering about a town or a city. The city-states afterward combined into kingdoms. During the thousand years between 4000 and 3000 B.C. the Babylonians and the Egyptians thus began to lead civilized lives, while all the rest of mankind still

Origin of civilization in the Near East

lagged behind as Neolithic barbarians or as Palæolithic savages. Such was the origin of civilization in the Near East.

After 3000 B.C. the Babylonians and the Egyptians overran the lands of their neighbors and built up the first empires. The time came when they themselves were subdued by the warlike Assyrians, whose power culminated during the eighth and seventh centuries B.C. The still more warlike Persians in the sixth century B.C. conquered all the Near East, with the exception of Arabia. Conquest, by forcibly uniting different peoples, broke down their isolation. Commerce, which led to the exchange between peoples of ideas, as well as of goods, had the same result. The Babylonians and the Egyptians at an early date conducted an extensive foreign trade. The first seagoing ships were built by the Egyptians for use on the eastern Mediterranean and the Red Sea. The inhabitants of Crete, between 3000–1000 B.C., carried Near-Eastern products to Greece and even farther west to southern Italy, Sicily, and the coast of Spain. The Cretans were followed by the Phœnicians, whose commercial dealings extended over much of the known world. By 500 B.C. a substantial unity of civilization prevailed throughout the Near East.

Unity of civilization throughout the Near East

ASSYRIAN SOLDIERS

A relief from the palace of King Ashurbanipal (669–625 B.C.); now in the British Museum, London.

What did the Babylonians, Egyptians, Assyrians, Cretans, Phœnicians, Persians, and other peoples of the Near East achieve during the thirty-five centuries between 4000 and 500 B.C.?

BRITAIN
TIN ISLANDS (CASSITERIDES)
ATLANTIC OCEAN
Seine
Loire
Rhine
GAUL
THE ALPS
Po
ILLYRIA
Adriatic Sea
ITALY
Rhone
Douro
Pyrenees Mts.
SPAIN
Tagus
Saguntum
Marseilles (Massilia)
Ancona
Alalia
CORSICA
Cumæ
Naplcs (Neapolis)
Tarento (Tarentum)
Præstum
Tiber
Tyrrhenian Sea
BALEARIC IS.
SARDINIA
Carales
Sybaris
Thuri
Corcyra
Croton
MAGNA GRÆCIA
Ionian Sea
EPIRUS
Palermo (Panormus)
Messina
Segesta
SICILY
Locri
Regium
Tarshish (Tartessus)
Cadiz (Gades)
Cartagena (New Carthage)
Strait of Gibraltar (Pillars of Hercules)
Icosium
Utica
Carthage
Hippo
Tangier (Tingis)
Atlas Mts.
Agrigentum
Syracuse
Ruspæ
MALTA (MELITA)
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
Durazzo (Dyrrhachium)
Epidaurus
MACEDONIA
Amphipolis
Olynthus
Potidæa
Balkans
THRACE
Dniester
Dnieper
Don
Azov (Tanais)
Olbia
Tomi
Heraclea Chersonesus
BLACK SEA (EUXINE)
COLCHIS
Danube
Apollonia
Byzantium
Chalcedon
Sinope
Trebizond (Trapezus)
Heraclea Pontica
HOLY
Cyzicus
Abydus
Troy (Ilium)
Ægean Sea
Mytilene
Phocæa
Smyrna
Ephesus
ASIA MINOR
Miletus
Halicarnassus
Athens
Corinth
Sparta
Rhodes
RHODES
Phaselis
Tarsus
Antioch
CYPRUS
Byblus
Sidon
Tyre
CRETE
Jaffa (Joppa)
Cyrene
Barca
CYRENAICA
Leptis
Alexandria
Naucratis
Memphis
EGYPT
Nile
RED SEA
COLONIZATION of the MEDITERRANEAN
Phœnicia
Phœnician Colonies 1000-850 B. C.
Carthaginian Possessions, 850-146 B. C.
Greece
Greek Colonies, 750-146 B. C.
Phœnician Water Routes
Scale of Miles
0 100 200 300 400 500
THE M.-N. WORKS BUFFALO, N. Y.
10° 5° 0° 5° 10° 15° 20° 25° 30° 35° 40°
45° 40° 35° 30°
5° Longitude West 0° Longitude 5° East from 10° Greenwich 15° 20° 25° 30° 35°

They smelted metals, before this was done anywhere else in the world. They domesticated such animals as the cow, ass, goat, sheep, and camel, and converted them into useful servants. They transformed wild seed-grasses and plants into the great cereals — wheat, barley, and millet. Men could henceforth raise cereals for food and so could pass from the life of wandering hunters or shepherds to the life of settled farmers. Along with agriculture went manufacturing. There were blacksmiths, carpenters, stone-cutters, weavers, potters, and glass-blowers in every metropolis of the Near East. The development of the handicrafts called into existence a class of merchants and shopkeepers to collect manufactured products

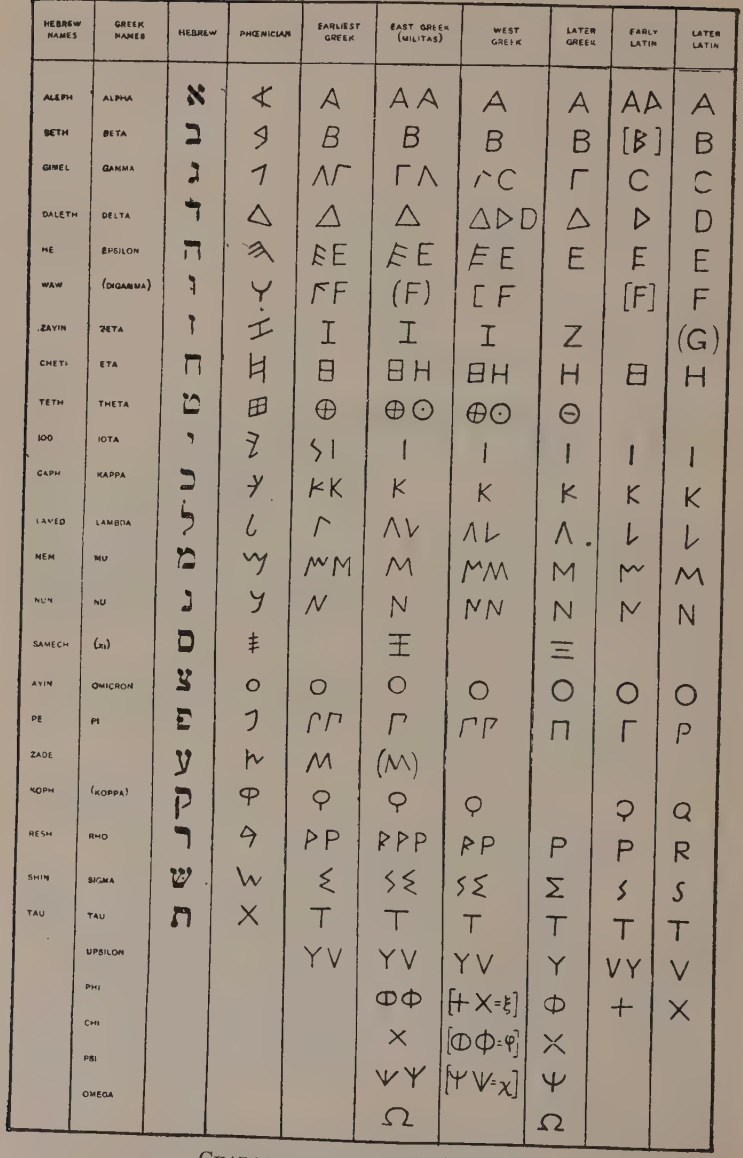
Material progress

Tax Collecting in Ancient Egypt

On the left three villagers, who have failed to pay their taxes, are being brought in by officers. The latter carry staves. On the right sit the scribes, holding in one hand a sheet of papyrus and in the other hand a pen. The scribes kept records of the amount owed by each taxpayer and issued receipts when the taxes were paid.

where these could be readily bought and sold. Weights and measures were devised. Metallic money came into circulation, and in time the art of coinage was perfected. The use of money, as a medium of exchange, led naturally to the development of banking and of such credit devices as checks and promissory notes. Thus wealth accumulated and the luxuries and refinements of life multiplied. This material progress gave some persons leisure to devote themselves to the fine arts, literature, and science and to all the other activities that go with an advanced civilization.

Architecture really started with the Egyptians, who first made use of the stone column, the arch, and the tower or spire.



CHARACTERS OF THE ALPHABET

Mansell

QUEEN NEFERTITI

A painted limestone bust found at Tell-el-Amarna, Egypt, and now in the Neues Museum, Berlin. Queen Nefertiti was the wife of Amenhotep IV (Ikhnaton) and mother-in-law of Tut-Ankh-Amen. She lived in the 14th century B.C. Egyptian art reached perhaps its highest level at this time, becoming more naturalistic and less formal. Certainly few if any portraits have come down to us from the ancient world more beautiful than this head of the Egyptian queen.

Sculpture attained high excellence in the portrait statues of Egypt, the engraved seals of Babylonia, and the bas-reliefs of Assyria. Phonetic or sound writing developed into a syllabic script in Babylonia and an alphabetic script in Egypt. The latter was perhaps the source from which the Phœnicians borrowed the alphabet which they introduced into Greece, which the Greeks modified and passed on to the Romans, and which has come down from the Romans to us. Phonetic writing made possible whole libraries of books, including one work that still moves the hearts of men — the Old Testament. Some advance took place in arithmetic and geometry. The Babylonians were good enough astronomers to distinguish five of the planets from the fixed stars and to predict eclipses of the sun and moon. To the Egyptians we owe the solar calendar of three hundred and sixty-five days; the leap year formed a Roman improvement of this calendar. The science and art of medicine also arose among the Near-Eastern peoples in antiquity.

Intellectual progress

Human activities in the Near East seem to have gone on in orderly fashion much of the time. As far as we can tell, life was fairly safe, property was reasonably secure, and people were protected in their occupations. The Egyptians had courts of justice, law books, and definite rules relating to contracts, loans, leases, mortgages, partnerships, marriage, and the family. The position of woman was remarkably high: she had full rights of ownership and inheritance, and she could engage in business on her own account. The Babylonians were a very legal-minded people. When a man sold his wheat, bought a slave, married a wife, or made a will, the transaction was duly noted on a clay contract tablet, which was then filed away in the public archives. The Hebrew laws are found in the earlier part of the Old Testament. They fixed all religious ceremonies, required the observance every seventh day of the Sabbath, gave numerous and complicated rules for sacrifices, and even indicated what foods must be avoided as "unclean." The Jews, throughout the world, still obey these laws. Modern Christendom still

Progress in law and morality

recites the Ten Commandments, the noblest summary of the rules of right living that has come down to us from Oriental antiquity.

Progress in religion

The peoples of the Near East, like their prehistoric ancestors, worshiped various aspects of nature. The sun, or the god that was supposed to dwell in the sun, received particular adoration. The Egyptians also paid much reverence to certain animals, while the Babylonians believed in the existence of many evil spirits, or demons. Out of this welter of primitive superstitions nobler ideas at length emerged. Some Egyptian thinkers, as early as the fourteenth century B.C., reached the conception of a single supreme deity. The Persians adopted the monotheistic doctrines of Zoroaster, whose date is variously placed between 1000 and 700 B.C. The Hebrews likewise developed a monotheistic religion. The Old Testament shows how it came about. Jehovah was at first regarded by the Hebrews as simply their own national god; they did not deny the existence of the gods of other nations, though they refused to worship them. This narrow, limited conception was transformed by the teaching of Isaiah and other prophets. Jehovah, for them, was the God of the whole earth and the loving Father of all mankind. The sublime faith of the prophets gradually spread through the entire nation, culminating in the doctrine of Jesus that God is a Spirit and that they who worship him must worship him in spirit and in truth. The Christian doctrine of God is thus directly an outgrowth of Hebrew monotheism. The Hebrews also came to believe in

EGYPTIAN ROYAL DIADEM

The diadem consists of a broad band of gold with the asp on the forehead and the ends terminating in a representation of the same sacred serpent.

the resurrection of the dead and the last judgment, conceptions afterward taken over by Christianity.

Nothing like democracy existed in Babylonia or Egypt, or elsewhere in the Near East. The common people never acted as voters or law-makers; they knew only the rule of monarchs, such as an Egyptian Pharaoh and the "Great King" (emperor) of Persia. Again, social equality did not exist in the Near East. Wide barriers separated the lower classes from the classes above them. The kings, the nobles, and the priests absorbed most of the wealth, had most of the leisure, and led the most comfortable lives. The workers were either peasants and artisans, who labored for a mere pittance, or slaves, who labored for nothing at all. Finally, popular education was non-existent in the Near East. The bulk of the inhabitants remained grossly ignorant. Their ignorance involved their intellectual bondage to the past. They were slow to abandon time-honored superstitions and reluctant to adopt new customs even when clearly better than the old. Consequently, civilization in this part of the world tended to become stereotyped and unchanging. It reached a certain level, but could not pass above that level. The next steps in human progress were to be taken in Europe.

Limitations of civilization in the Near East

A Babylonian Demon

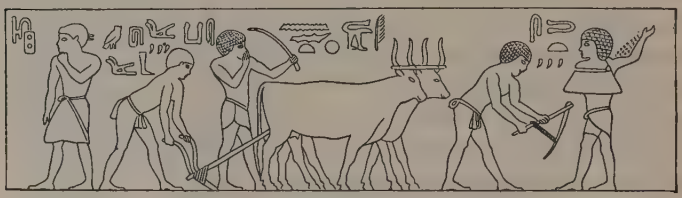
A bronze, animal-headed figure, now in the British Museum, London.

As we have now learned, many achievements of the Near-Eastern peoples found their way into European lands. The chief avenues of transmission were the Mediterranean water routes that had been followed by Cretans and Phœnicians and the land routes through Asia Minor. This peninsula, by its position, belongs nearly as much to Europe as to Asia. It has always formed a natural link between the two continents.

The Near East and Europe

Studies

1. Explain the abbreviations B.C. and A.D. In what century was the year 1925 B.C.? the year 1925 A.D.? 2. Distinguish between the three stages of savagery, barbarism, and civilization, and give instances of existing peoples in each stage. 3. Define the following terms: tribe, people, nation, race, state, kingdom, and empire. 4. What stone implements have you ever seen? Who made them? Where were they? For what were they used? 5. "The history of metals in the hand of man is equivalent to the history of his higher culture." Comment on this statement. 6. Enumerate some important steps in progress that were taken during prehistoric times. 7. On an outline map indicate the areas occupied in antiquity by Semitic and Indo-European peoples. 8. "The isolation and consequent independent development of India and of China is one of the most salient and significant facts of history." What does this statement mean? 9. When did India come under the influence of Western ideas? China? Japan? 10. On the map on page 7 trace the principal Asiatic trade routes. 11. On the map facing page 18 locate the most important Phœnician water routes and settlements. 12. Read in the Old Testament (*Ezekiel*, xxxvii) the account there given of Phœnician commerce. 13. Why were the inventions and discoveries of Egyptians and Babylonians of such great importance in the development of civilization?



Plowing and Sowing in Ancient Egypt

CHAPTER II

ANCIENT TIMES IN EUROPE [1]

7. Lands and Peoples of the West

HISTORY, which begins in the East, for the last twenty-five centuries has centered in the West, that is, in Europe. It ranks as the smallest, except Australia, of the continents. Estimates of its total area vary from about 3,600,000 square miles to about 4,100,000 square miles. On the basis of the lower figure mentioned, Europe has considerably less than half the area of either North America or South America, less than one third that of Africa, and little more than one fifth that of Asia. It includes not quite seven per cent of the land surface of the globe.

Area of Europe

Nearly all the continent lies in the northern half of the North Temperate Zone, that is, within those latitudes most favorable to the development of the highest civilization. The climate is profoundly affected by the Gulf Stream drift, which reaches the British Isles and Scandinavia. It gives to Liverpool a milder winter than that of Washington, a thousand miles farther south, keeps the harbors ice-free in the Norwegian fiords, and permits Russia to have an open harbor on the Arctic. Climatic conditions are made still more favorable by the circumstance that Europe lies open to the west, with great inland seas penetrating deeply from the Atlantic, and with the higher mountain ranges extending nearly east and west. The westerly winds, warmed in passing over the Gulf Stream drift, can thus spread far inland, moderating the temperatures as far east as Moscow and Constantinople. The prevailing "westerlies" also bring an abundant rainfall distrib-

Climate and rainfall

[1] Webster, *Readings in Ancient History*, chapter iii, "Early Greek Society as Pictured in the Homeric Poems"; chapter iv, "Stories from Greek Mythology"; chapter xiv, "Legends of Early Rome"; chapter xxi, "Roman Life as Seen in Pliny's Letters"; chapter xxiii, "The Germans as Described by Tacitus."

uted throughout the year, except in such regions as southern Spain, Italy, Greece, and eastern Russia. Europe, in consequence, is the only continent without extensive deserts.

Access to the sea

The Mediterranean and the Baltic divide Europe into a number of peninsulas, which are further intersected by numerous gulfs and bays. Though landlocked on its eastern or Asiatic side, Europe has a longer coast-line than Africa and South America combined. The mean distance from the sea of all points in the interior is only two hundred and nine miles, as compared with two hundred and ninety-two in the case of North America. No other continent has such opportunities for the development of navigation and sea-borne trade.

Inland communications

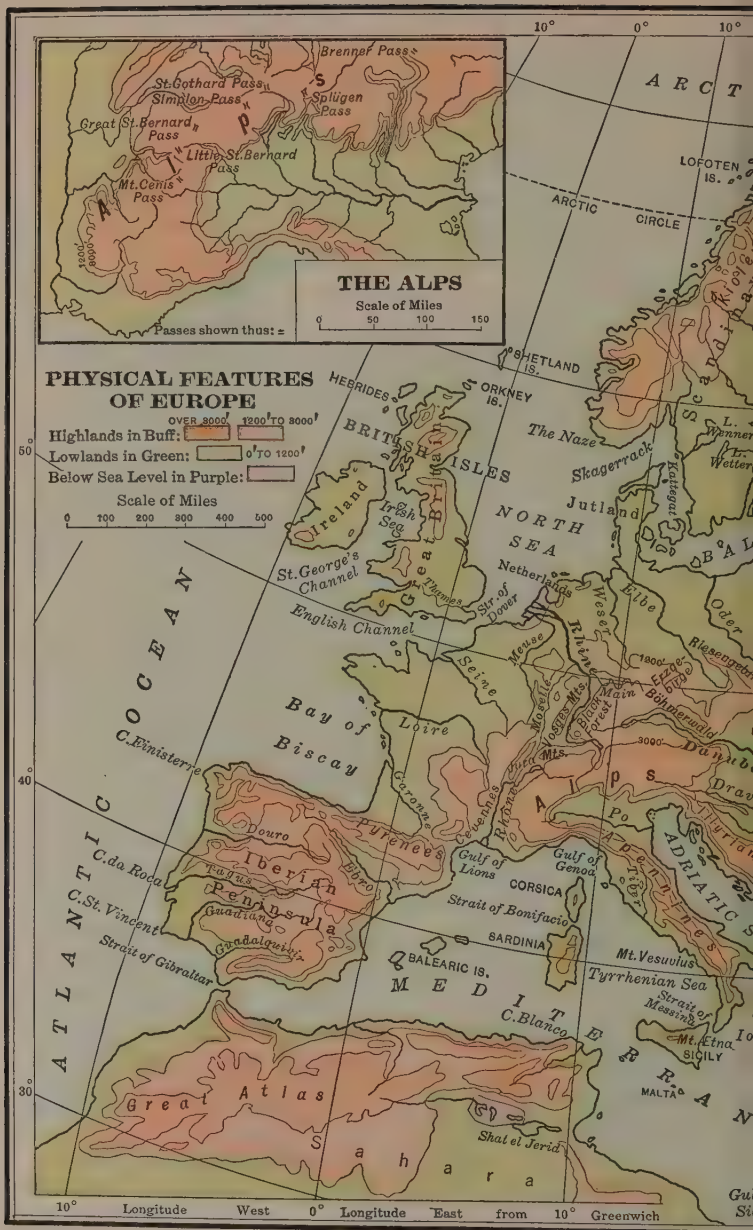
Europe is traversed from north to south by many rivers, navigable for long distances. The Rhône, emptying into the Mediterranean, affords ready entrance to the interior of France. The Rhine and the Danube provide an almost continuous waterway from the North Sea to the Black Sea. Every part of Russia is penetrated by majestic streams, which still remain, even in the days of railroads, the principal arteries of traffic in that country.

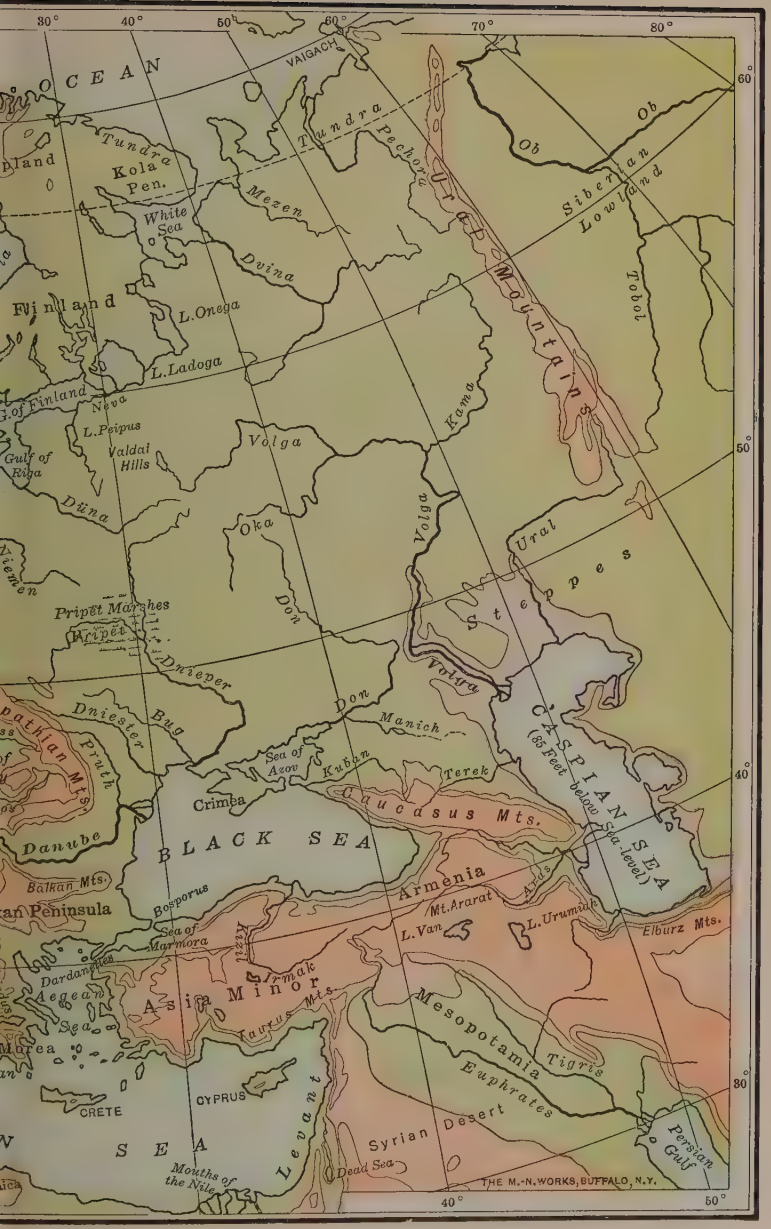
Lowlands

Another feature of European geography is the preponderance of lowlands over highlands. A great plain, beginning in the west with southern England, stretches across France, Belgium and Holland (the "Low Countries"), and Germany, and broadens eastward into Poland and Russia. About two-thirds of Europe is included in this plain. The level country has encouraged the building of canals, which combine with the rivers to connect the Baltic and North seas with the Black and Caspian seas and these, again, with the Mediterranean.

Highlands

The Alps, stretching from southeastern France to the borders of Hungary and separating the plains of northern Italy and southern Germany, form the backbone of Europe. Their length is over six hundred miles, their width, from ninety to one hundred and eighty miles. The Alps do not present such a continuous barrier as the Himalayas or the Andes, which even birds avoid in their flight. No other high mountains,


THE ALPS
Scale of Miles
0 50 100 150
Passes shown thus: =
Brenner Pass
St. Gothard Pass
Simplon Pass
Splügen Pass
Great St. Bernard Pass
Little St. Bernard Pass
Mt. Cenis Pass
PHYSICAL FEATURES OF EUROPE
Highlands in Buff: OVER 3000' 1200' TO 3000'
Lowlands in Green: 0' TO 1200'
Below Sea Level in Purple:
Scale of Miles
0 100 200 300 400 500
ARCTIC CIRCLE
LOFOTEN IS.
SHETLAND IS.
ORKNEY IS.
HEBRIDES
BRITISH ISLES
Ireland
Irish Sea
St. George's Channel
English Channel
NORTH SEA
The Naze
Skagerrack
Kattegat
Jutland
Netherlands
Thames
Strait of Dover
Weser
Elbe
Oder
Rhine
Meuse
Seine
Loire
Bay of Biscay
C. Finisterre
ATLANTIC OCEAN
Garonne
Pyrenees
Mts.
Douro
Iberian Peninsula
C. da Roca
C. St. Vincent
Strait of Gibraltar
Guadiana
Guadalquivir
Gulf of Lions
Gulf of Genoa
CORSICA
Strait of Bonifacio
SARDINIA
BALEARIC IS.
Mt. Vesuvius
Tyrrhenian Sea
Strait of Messina
Mt. Ætna
SICILY
MALTA
C. Blanco
Great Atlas
Sahara
Shat el Jerid
Alps
Apennines
ADRIATIC
Po
Rhone
Cevennes
Black Forest
Vosges Mts.
Moselle
Main
Bohmerwald
Riesengebirge
Danube
Illyrian
Dra
10° Longitude West 0° Longitude East from 10° Greenwich
10°
0°
10°
50°
40°
30°


30°
40°
50°
60°
70°
80°
OCEAN
VAIGACH
Tundra
Kola Pen.
White Sea
Mezen
Dvina
Tundra
Pechora
Ob
Ob
Siberian Lowland
Ural Mountains
Tobol
Bland
Fjnlland
L. Onega
L. Ladoga
G. of Finland
Neva
L. Peipus
Gulf of Riga
Valdai Hills
Volga
Kama
Düna
Oka
Volga
Ural
Steppes
Niemen
Pripet Marshes
Pripet
Dnieper
Don
Volga
Dniester
Bug
Don
Manich
Sea of Azov
Kuban
Terek
CASPIAN SEA
(85 Feet below Sea-level)
Pruth
Crimea
Caucasus Mts.
Danube
BLACK SEA
Balkan Mts.
Armenia
Bosporus
Sea of Marmora
Mt. Ararat
Aras
L. Van
L. Urumiah
Elburz Mts.
Dardanelles
Aegean Sea
Asia Minor
Taurus Mts.
Mesopotamia
Tigris
Euphrates
Morea
CYPRUS
CRETE
Levant
Syrian Desert
Dead Sea
Persian Gulf
Mouths of the Nile
THE M.-N. WORKS, BUFFALO, N.Y.
60°
50°
40°
30°

except the Rockies, have so many easy passes or offer so little impediment to movement across them. Furthermore, the outspurs of the Alps in central and southeastern Europe are separated by transverse valleys, thus establishing convenient routes of communication from one region to another.

Europe, in general, has a fertile soil and a wide variety of products. Only the Arctic tundra and the slopes of the higher mountains are unadapted for either farming, grazing, or lumbering. Agriculture is still the most important occupation. Wheat, rye, barley, and oats can be cultivated from the Mediterranean northward to the head of the Gulf of Bothnia, that is, nearer the pole in Europe than in any other part of the world. Southern Europe, in the latitude of the central United States, produces such semi-tropical fruits as oranges, lemons, olives, and figs. Stock raising flourishes on the plains of Russia and Hungary. The Scandinavian countries and parts of Spain, France, Germany, Czecho-Slovakia, Austria, Hungary, and Russia are heavily timbered. Deposits of coal and iron ore abound in Great Britain, France, Belgium, Germany, and other countries. These varied resources of Europe enable it to support a dense population.

Resources of Europe

Europe contains more than 400,000,000 inhabitants — a fourth of mankind. Statistics indicate that its population has doubled since the opening of the nineteenth century. The increase is partly due to improved sanitary conditions and the progress of scientific medicine, resulting in a lower death rate, and partly to the greater production and importation of foodstuffs, virtually eliminating famine. The pressure of increased numbers has been to some extent relieved by the enormous emigration of Europeans, during the last hundred years, to the unoccupied or less thickly settled regions of the globe.

Population of Europe

The present inhabitants of Europe mostly belong to the White race. They may be separated into three racial types. The Baltic or Nordic (northern) type is found in the Scandinavian countries and throughout the great European plain: it is characterized by a long or narrow head,

European racial types

tall stature, very light hair, blue eyes, and blond complexion. The Mediterranean (southern) type prevails in the peninsulas of southern Europe and the adjoining islands: it is short in stature and brunette in complexion, but is also long-headed. The Alpine (central) type comes midway between the other two in respect to stature and complexion, but has a broad head, unlike either of them. Each of these racial types, despite some fusion

Racial Types in Western Europe

with the others, still occupies a fairly well-defined area of the continent. The Baltic or Nordic type possibly originated in Europe where it is now found. The Mediterranean and Alpine types are believed to have entered Europe about the beginning of Neolithic times, the one perhaps from North Africa, the other perhaps from Asia.

About sixty distinct languages are still spoken in Europe. Anciently, there were many more. The Turks in the Balkan Peninsula and the Mongols and Tatars in Russia still keep their

Asiatic tongues. The same is true of the Magyars (Hungarians), Esthonians, and Finns, who in other respects have been thoroughly Europeanized. The remaining languages of any importance belong to the Indo-European family. The peoples of Slavic and Teutonic speech number about 150,000,000 each, and those of Græco-Latin speech, considerably over 100,000,000. The Celtic and Lettic branches of the Indo-European family include comparatively few representatives at the present time.[1]

European languages

8. The Greeks

The Pyrenees, Alps, and Balkans, stretching across Europe from the Atlantic Ocean to the Black Sea, have formed an historical dividing line, as well as a geographical barrier. Twenty-five centuries ago Europe north of these mountains had not entered the light of history. Its Celtic, Teutonic, Lettic, and Slavic peoples were then still barbarians. We hear little of them during antiquity, except as their occasional migrations brought them into contact with the civilized Græco-Latin peoples south of the mountains and along the Mediterranean.

Northern and southern Europe

This great inland sea, which washes the shores of three continents, — Europe, Asia, and Africa, — served as a connecting link between them. Because of its long and contracted shape, indented northern shore, and numerous islands, it was well suited for early commerce. Mariners seldom had to proceed far from the sight of land or at a great

The Mediterranean

[1] Indo-European languages:

1. Græco-Latin: (Albanians), Greeks, Italians, Spaniards, Portuguese, French, Walloons, Rumanians.
2. Celtic: Bretons, Welsh, Irish, Highland Scots.
3. Teutonic: Germans, Frisians, Dutch, Flemings, Danes, Norwegians, Swedes, English, Lowland Scots.
4. Lettic: Letts, Lithuanians.
5. Slavic:
   - *a*. South Slavs: (Bulgarians), Serbs, Montenegrins, Croats, Slovenes.
   - *b*. West Slavs: Czechs or Bohemians, Slovaks, Poles.
   - *c*. East Slavs: Great Russians, Little Russians or Ruthenians, White Russians.

distance from good harbors. Storms, though often fierce, are usually brief, since the narrow strait of Gibraltar shuts out the great waves of the Atlantic. Freedom from high tides also facilitates navigation. Such advantages made the Mediterranean from a remote period an avenue by which everything that the older East had to offer could be transmitted to the

younger West. The various European peoples themselves were also able to exchange their products and communicate their ideas and customs along this "highway of nations."

The Ægean basin

A glance at the map shows how part of the Mediterranean, between Asia Minor on the east and Greece on the west, is an almost landlocked basin. Only narrow passages lead northward to the Black Sea, while on the south the long and narrow island of Crete lies like a huge breakwater. This basin is the Ægean Sea. Its shores and the hundreds of islands that dot its waters form a little, secluded world. The entire region has a mild and sunny climate, a fertile soil in the river valleys and coastal plains, and many bays and harbors. The Ægean basin was thus well adapted as a home for civilized man.

POTTERY OF THE ÆGEAN AGE

From Mycenæ Troy, and Crete

The first civilization to arise in Europe was the work of the gifted Ægeans. They belonged to the dark-skinned, short-statured, long-headed branch of the White race, that is, to the Mediterranean racial type. The Ægeans developed a civilization almost as venerable as that of Egypt or of Babylonia. As early as 3000 B.C. they began to give up their Neolithic implements and use the metal tools and weapons that came to them from the Near East. During the Copper-Bronze Age that followed, the Ægeans made remarkable progress. They built stone fortresses, palaces, and tombs, whose ruins are now being explored, excelled in painting and other fine arts, conducted an extensive commerce throughout the Mediterranean, and even had a system of phonetic writing (not yet deciphered). Their progress was most marked in Crete, an island so near to Egypt and Babylonia that it could early receive and profit by all the culture of the Near East. From Crete, in turn, cultural influences spread to the other Ægean islands, to western Asia Minor, and to the coast of Greece.

The Ægeans

A Cretan Woman

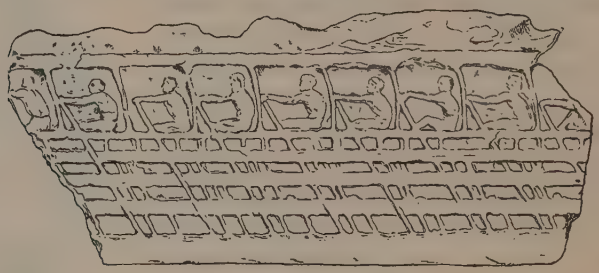
From a fresco in the palace at Knossos, Crete. A female figure is shown seated on a camp stool, with one long glove hanging from the stool and another in her lap. The date of the picture is about 1400 B.C.

Civilization flourished among the Ægeans for upwards of two thousand years, only to be submerged under a wave of barbarism. Men of the Baltic (Nordic) racial type, whose speech was Greek, came down from the north, entered Greece through the many passes of the Balkans, and overran the entire country. The iron weapons which they possessed doubtless gave them a great advantage in conflicts with the bronze-using Ægeans, who must have been often exterminated or enslaved. The invaders also occupied the island "stepping stones" between Greece and Asia Minor, whence they passed to the Asiatic mainland. The entire basin of the Ægean thus became the center of Greek life.

Coming of the Greeks

The Greeks, upon their entrance into the Mediterranean, were still nomads. They had cattle and other domestic animals, but did not cultivate the soil. Centuries passed before they settled down in towns and cities and acquired the elements of civilization from the Ægeans, with whom they gradually intermingled. They also owed much to the Phœnicians, who now began to traffic throughout the Mediterranean, and who introduced into Greece the industries and arts of the Near East. The most important importation from Phœnicia was the alphabet, with which the Greeks became familiar about 750 B.C. Knowledge of the alphabet enabled them to keep historic records and also to put into writing the

Civilizing of the Greeks



An Athenian Trireme

Bas-relief found on the Acropolis of Athens. Dates from about 400 B.C. The part of the relief preserved shows the waist of the vessel, with the uppermost of the three banks of rowers. Only the oars of the two lower banks are seen.

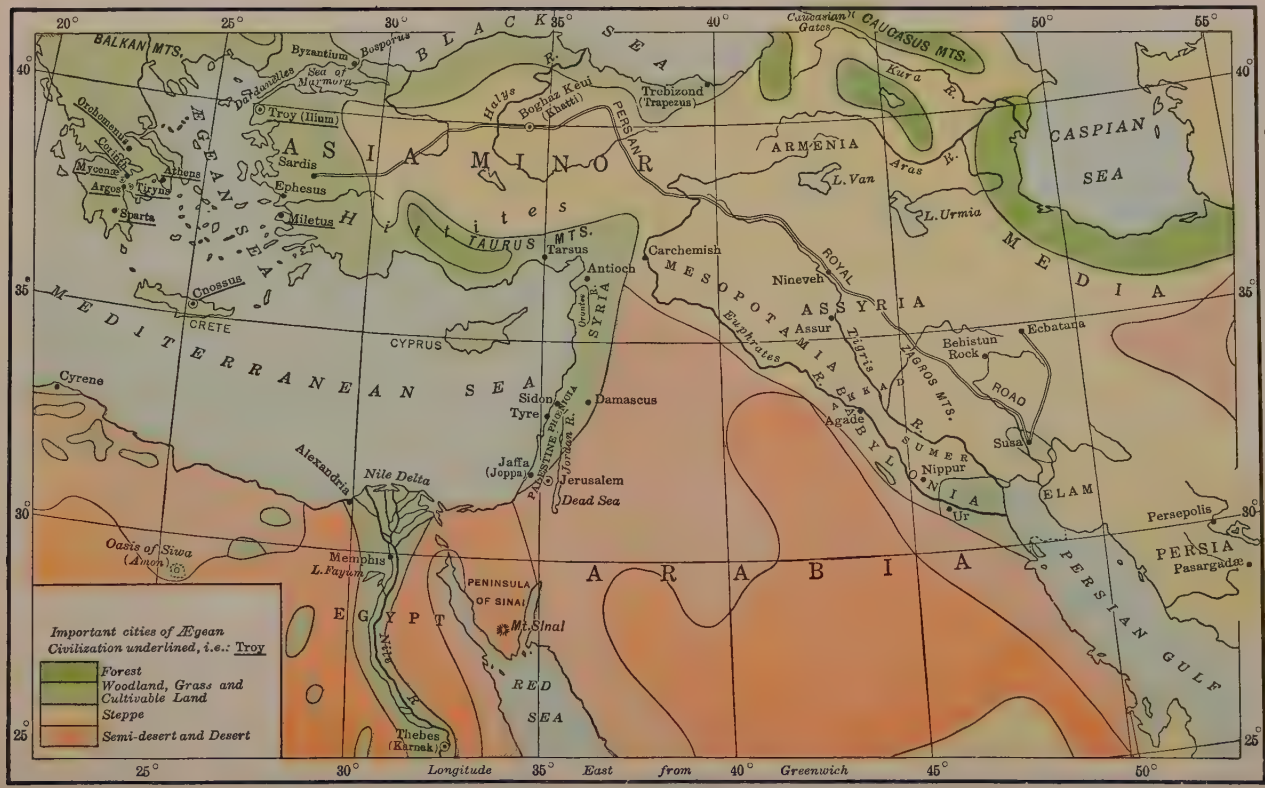
two epic poems attributed to Homer and known as the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey*. These epics, the oldest productions of European literature, throw light on many aspects of early Greek society.

The Greeks, with the sea at their doors, naturally became sailors, traders, and colonizers. After the middle of the eighth century B.C. they made numerous settlements along the shores of the Mediterranean and the Black Sea.[1] "All the Greek colonies," said an ancient writer, "are washed by the waves of the sea, and, so to speak, a fringe of Greek earth is woven on to barbarian lands."[2] To distin-

Colonial expansion

[1] See the map facing page 18.

[2] Cicero, *De republica*, ii, 4.



THE NEAR EAST AND GREECE

guish themselves from the foreigners, or "barbarians," about them, the Greeks began to give themselves the common name of Hellenes. Hellas, their country, came to include all the territory possessed by Hellenic peoples. The Greeks, henceforth, were confined no longer within the narrow limits of the Ægean.

The Greek language was the strongest tie uniting the Greeks. They all used the same beautiful and expressive speech, which still lives in modified form on the lips of several million people in modern Greece. Greek literature likewise made for unity. The *Iliad* and the *Odyssey* were read and recited for centuries. Religion provided still another tie. All Greeks worshiped the same great deities, who were believed to dwell on Mount Olympus, attended the festivals and athletic games held at Olympia and elsewhere in their honor, and visited such places as Dodona and Delphi, where divine communications were supposed to be received. A common language, literature, and religion formed cultural bonds of union; they did not lead to the political unification of the Greek world.

Bonds of union

The life of the ancient Greeks always centered in the city, for most of them were city dwellers. A Greek city included not only the area within its walls, but also the surrounding district. Being independent and self-governing, it is properly called a city-state. It could declare war, conclude treaties, and make alliances with its neighbors, just as is done by any modern country. Such city-states were not large. Athens, at the climax of her power may have had a quarter of a million people; Thebes, Argos, and Corinth, the next largest places, probably had between fifty and one hundred thousand inhabitants; Sparta probably had less than fifty thousand. These figures include all classes of the population — citizens, slaves, and resident foreigners.

The city-state

The citizens were very closely associated. They believed themselves to be descended from a common ancestor, and they shared a common worship of the patron god or hero who had them under his protection. The ties of supposed kinship and religion made citizenship a privilege which a person enjoyed only by birth and which he lost by

The citizens

removal to another city-state. Elsewhere he was only a foreigner lacking legal rights — a man without a country.

Civic patriotism

The independent city-states which from early times arose in the Near East eventually combined into kingdoms and empires under one government.[1] The like never happened in the Greek world. Mountain ranges and deep inlets of the sea, by dividing Greece into small, easily defended districts, made it almost impossible for one city-state to conquer and hold in subjection neighboring communities for any length of time. Many city-states, moreover, were on islands or were scattered along remote coasts of the Mediterranean and the Black Sea. The result was that the Greeks never came together in one nation. Their city feeling, or civic patriotism, took the place of our love of country.

Government of the city-state

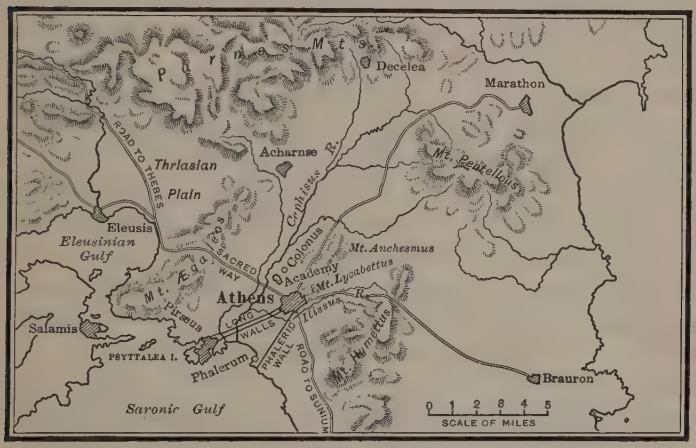
The *Iliad* and the *Odyssey*, which give us our first view of the Greek city-state, also contain the earliest account of its government. Each city-state had a king, "the shepherd of the people," as Homer calls him. The king did not possess absolute authority, as in the Near East; he was more or less controlled by a council of nobles. They helped him in judgment and sacrifice, followed him to war, and filled the principal offices. Both king and nobles were obliged to consult the common people on matters of great importance, such as making war or declaring peace. The citizens would then be summoned to meet in the market-place, where they shouted assent to the proposals laid before them or showed disapproval by silence. This public assembly had little importance in Homeric times, but later it became the center of Greek democracy.

Political development of the city-state

Many city-states, after the opening of the historic era in Greece, changed their form of government. In some of them, for example, Thebes and Corinth, the nobles became strong enough to abolish the kingship altogether. Monarchy, the rule of one, thus gave way to aristocracy, the rule of the nobles. In Sparta and Argos the kings were not driven out, but their authority was much

[1] See page 17.

lessened. Some city-states came under the control of usurpers, whom the Greeks called "tyrants." A tyrant was a man who gained supreme power by force or guile and governed for his own benefit without regard to the laws. Still other city-states, of which Athens formed the most conspicuous instance, went through an entire cycle of changes from kingship to aristocracy, thence to tyranny, and finally to democracy, or popular rule.



VICINITY OF ATHENS

9. Athens

There were hundreds of city-states in ancient Greece, but the greatest was Athens. She surpassed all the rest in population, in wealth, and in power. She surpassed all the rest in culture, as well. Her art, literature, and philosophy represented the finest flower of the Greek genius. Her contributions to the intellectual and spiritual life of mankind were so many that she has been called the "eye of Greece."

Athens, the "eye of Greece"

The most glorious epoch of Athenian history occurred in the fifth century B.C. The Greeks at that time, under the leadership of Athens, had thrown back the huge armies which the "Great King" of Persia sent to conquer them. In order to remove the danger of another Persian

Athenian imperialism

attack, the Athenians made a league with their Greek kindred in Asia Minor and on the Ægean Islands. It included over two hundred city-states. Some of the wealthier members agreed to provide ships and crews for the Allied fleet, while the others contributed money. Athenian officials collected the revenues, which were placed for protection in the temple of Apollo on the island of Delos. This Delian League was a promising step toward federating the disunited Greek city-states. It might have developed into a United States of Greece, but the Athenians preferred to convert it into an empire. They used the naval force that had been formed by the contributions of the league as a means of bringing its members into dependence on Athens. The common treasury of the league was also transferred from Delos to Athens. The accompanying map shows how extensive was the Athenian Empire at its height about 450 B.C.

The Athenians governed imperially, but they belonged to a democratic state. Democracy, the rule of the sovereign people, was unknown in the Near East.[1] It formed a Greek contribution, especially an Athenian contribution, to civilization. The Athenians had now learned how unjust could be the rule of a king, a tyrant, or a privileged aristocracy. They tried, instead, to afford every free citizen, whether rich or poor, whether noble or commoner, an opportunity to hold office, to serve on the law courts, and to participate in legislation. The center of Athenian democracy was the popular assembly. All citizens who had reached twenty years of age were members. The number present at a meeting rarely exceeded five thousand, however, because so many Athenians lived outside the walls in the country districts of Attica. The popular assembly met every eight or nine days on the slopes of a hill. The people listened to speeches and then voted, usually by show of hands, on the measures laid before them. They settled in this way all questions of war and peace, sent out military and naval expeditions, sanctioned public expenditures, and exercised general control over the affairs of Athens and her dependencies.

Athenian democracy

[1] See page 23.

THE
ATHENIAN EMPIRE
at its Height (about 450 B. C.)
Allied States
Dependent States
Scale of Miles
0 25 50 75 100
ILLYRIA
MACEDONIA
THRACE
EPIRUS
THESSALY
PHRYGIA
MYSIA
LYDIA
CARIA
LYCIA
BITHYNIA
PELOPONNESUS
ATTICA
BOEOTIA
PHOCIS
ACHÆA
ELIS
ARCADIA
ARGOLIS
CORINTHIA
MESSENIA
LACONIA
CRETE
CYTHERA
CORCYRA (CORFU)
ZACYNTHUS
CEPHALLENIA
ITHACA
LEUCAS
THASOS
SAMOTHRACE
IMBROS
LEMNOS
LESBOS
CHIOS
SAMOS
ICARIA
ANDROS
TENOS
DELOS
PAROS
NAXOS
MELOS
RHODES
CARPATHUS
Athens
Sparta
Thebes
Corinth
Argos
Olympia
Messene
Delphi
Chaleis
Naupactus
Dodona
Amphipolis
Olynthus
Potidæa
Pella
Pydna
Ilium (Troy)
Pergamum
Mytilene
Phocæa
Sardis
Ephesus
Miletus
Halicarnassus
Rhodes
Byzantium
Bosporus
Black Sea
SEA OF MARMORA (Propontis)
Hebrus
Ægospotami
Mt. Athos
Mt. Olympus
Dardanelles (Hellespont)
Thermaic Gulf
Pagasæan Gulf
Ambracian Gulf
Gulf of Corinth
Gulf of Argolis
Gulf of Messenia
Gulf of Laconia
Hermus
Cayster
Meander
Indus
Sangarius
Aous
Achelous
Peneus
Asopus
Ionian Sea
Ægean Sea
Sporades
Cyclades
20°
22°
24°
26°
28°
30°
40°
38°
36°
26° Longitude East from Greenwich
THE M.-N. WORKS, BUFFALO, N.Y.

This sort of democracy worked well in the conduct of a small city-state. It proved to be less successful in the management of an empire. The subject communities of the Delian League were unrepresented at Athens. They had no one to speak for them in the public assembly or before the courts of law. Their interests, therefore, were always subordinated to those of the Athenians. We shall notice the same absence of a representative system in ancient Rome, after that city had become mistress of the Mediterranean.

No representative system

Even in Athens, most democratic of all Greek city-states, democracy was really class rule. Not all the free men — to say nothing of the numerous slaves — were citizens. The law restricted citizenship to those free men who were the sons of an Athenian father (himself a citizen) and an Athenian mother. The thousands of foreign merchants and artisans living in Athens were thus excluded from any part in its government. This jealous attitude toward foreigners contrasts with the liberal policy of modern countries, such as our own, in naturalizing foreigners.

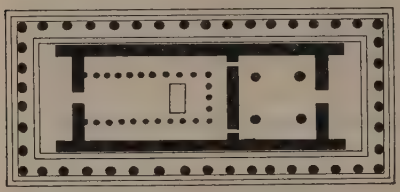
Class rule

Athens contained many artisans. Their daily tasks gave them scant opportunity to engage in the exciting game of politics. The average rate of wages was very low. In spite of cheap food and modest requirements for clothing and shelter, it must have been difficult for the city workman to keep body and soul together. Outside of Athens lived the peasants, whose little farms produced the olives, grapes, and figs for which Attica was celebrated. There were also thousands of slaves in Athens, as in other city-states of Greece. Their number was so great and their labor so cheap that we may think of them as taking the place of modern machines. Slaves did most of the work on large estates owned by wealthy men, toiled in the mines and quarries, and served as oarsmen on ships. The system of slavery lowered the dignity of free labor and tended to prevent the rise of poorer citizens to positions of responsibility. In Greece, as in the Near East, slavery cast a blight over industrial life.

Industrial Athens

The wealth which the Athenians accumulated by trade and industry, together with the tribute paid by the Delian League, enabled them to adorn their city with statues and buildings. The most beautiful monuments arose on the steep hill called the Acropolis. Here are still some ruins that give us an idea of Greek architecture and sculpture in their prime, especially the temple known as the Parthenon.[1] A Greek temple was merely a rectangular building, provided with doors, but without windows, and surrounded by a single or a double row of columns. The temple did not serve as a meeting place for worshipers, but only as a sanctuary for the deity. Less imposing than the majestic structures raised in Egypt, it had more beauty, because of its harmonious proportions, perfect symmetry, and exquisite workmanship. The Parthenon is now a ruin. Many of the wonderful sculptures which once decorated the exterior have survived, however, and may be viewed to-day in the British Museum at London.

Artistic Athens



PLAN OF THE PARTHENON

The larger room (cella) measured exactly one hundred feet in length.

Up against a corner of the Acropolis the Athenians built an open-air theater, where performances took place in midwinter and spring at the festivals of the god Dionysus. A Greek play would seem strange enough to us; there was no elaborate scenery, no raised stage, until late Roman times, and little lively action. The actors, who were all men, never numbered more than three or four. They wore elaborate costumes and grotesque masks. The narrative was mainly carried on in song by the chorus, which met with the actors in the dancing ring, or orchestra. The theater held an important part in the life of Athens and, indeed, of all Greek cities. It formed a partial substitute for our pulpit and press, since it dealt either with religious and moral themes or with leading

The Athenian theater

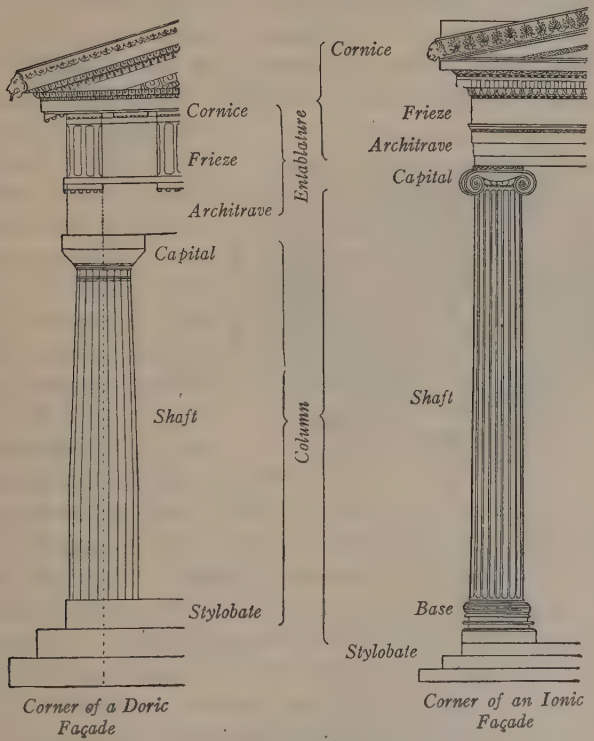
[1] See the frontispiece.

ACROPOLIS OF ATHENS FROM THE SOUTHWEST

personages and questions of the day. The tragedies and comedies produced by Athenian playwrights originated a new type of literature — the drama.

The playwrights composed in verse, but there were also Athenians who learned to write in prose. The first great prose writer of Greece, or of any other country, was the "father of history," Herodotus. Though born in Asia Minor, he passed much of his life at Athens, mingling in its

Athenian prose writers



Orders of Greek Architecture

brilliant society and coming under the influences, literary and artistic, which that city afforded. Herodotus wrote about the Persian wars, but also wove into his narrative accounts of the Egyptians, Babylonians, and other Oriental peoples. His

work is one of our chief sources of information for ancient history. Two other Athenian historians were Thucydides and Xenophon. Greek prose was further developed by the orators, who flourished in democratic Athens.

Athenian philosophers

The Greeks really founded philosophy, which means an intelligent effort to probe the mysteries of existence and human nature. No one did more in this direction than the Athenian, Socrates. A true "lover of wisdom" and one of the greatest teachers of any age, Socrates kept no school; he never wrote anything; he taught only by conversation with any one willing to discuss moral or religious subjects. When an old man, Socrates was convicted of impiety and of corrupting the youth of Athens by his doctrines. He suffered death, in consequence, but his philosophy did not perish. It found an exponent in his disciple Plato, whose writings, known as *Dialogues*, took the form of question and answer that Socrates had used.

Socrates and Plato

Plato's works were profound in thought and admirable in style. They have continued to influence philosophic speculation to our own day. Aristotle, a pupil of Plato, was almost as much a scientist as a philosopher. He investigated the ideas underlying the arts of rhetoric and poetry; he gathered the constitutions of many Greek city-states and drew from them some general principles of politics; he examined collections of strange plants and animals in order to learn their structure and habits; he studied the acts and beliefs of men in order to write treatises on ethics. Perhaps Aristotle's supreme achievement was the creation of logic, or the science of reasoning. His works, besides being reverently studied for centuries after his death, are still textbooks in our universities.

What the Greeks, and particularly the Athenians, originated in art, literature, and philosophy still abides in the world. Much of it is unexcelled; all of it is an inspiration. There is no exaggeration, consequently, in the proud words which the statesman, Pericles, applied to Athens in the fifth century B.C.: "Our city is equally admirable in peace and in war. We are lovers of the beautiful, yet simple in our tastes, and we cultivate the mind without loss of manliness. Wealth we employ, not for talk and ostentation, but when there is real use for it. To acknowledge poverty with us is no disgrace; the true disgrace is in doing nothing to avoid it. An Athenian citizen does not neglect the state because he takes care of his own household; and even those of us who are engaged in business have a very fair idea of politics. We alone regard a man who shows no interest in public affairs, not as a harmless, but as a useless, character. . . . In short, Athens is the school of Hellas."[1]

Athens, the "school of Hellas"

10. The Græco-Oriental World

Nearly all the city-states of central and southern Greece, including Athens, were conquered in the latter part of the fourth century B.C. by Macedonia. This was a large kingdom that had grown up in northern Greece. The Macedonians, though less civilized than the other Greeks, excelled in warfare. One of their kings, whom history knows as Philip the Great, created an army of well-drilled, professional soldiers, which he led to victory over the city-states. It was the victory of an absolute monarchy in conflict with free, self-governing, but disunited commonwealths. The Greek city-states had had their day. Never again did they become first-class powers.

The Greek city-states conquered by Macedonia

Philip's son, the famous Alexander the Great, led the Macedonian army into Asia and against the Persian Empire.[2] The conquest of that enormous empire, whose eastern and western frontiers were nearly three thousand miles apart, occupied Alexander less than eleven years. He died in 323 B.C., while still a young

Conquest of the Persian Empire by Macedonia

[1] Thucydides, ii, 39–41.

[2] See page 18.

man, and before he had time to consolidate his extensive dominions. Upon his death they broke up into a number of kingdoms, including Macedonia, Syria, and Egypt, which were ruled by dynasties descended from Alexander's generals. These three states remained independent, though with shifting boundaries, until the era of Roman expansion in the ancient world.

ALEXANDER THE GREAT
After a medallion found at Tarsus in Asia Minor.

Hellenizing of the Near East

Alexander's conquest of the Persian Empire and the subsequent establishment of Græco-Macedonian, or Hellenistic,[1] kingdoms resulted in the disappearance of the barriers which had so long separated Europe and Asia. The Near East now lay open to Greek merchants and artisans, architects and artists, philosophers, scientists, and writers. They brought their Greek culture with them and became the teachers of those whom they had called "barbarians."

Hellenistic cities

The Hellenizing of the Near East was begun by Alexander, who founded no less than seventy cities in Egypt, western Asia, central Asia, and northern India. Alexander's successors continued city-building on a still more extensive scale. The Hellenistic cities, unlike Greek city-states, did not enjoy independence, but formed a part of the kingdom in which they were situated. They had broad streets, well paved and sometimes lighted at night, a good water supply, and baths, theaters, gymnasiums, and parks. Such splendid foundations formed the real backbone of Hellenism in the Near East. Their inhabitants, whether Greeks or "barbarians," spoke Greek, read Greek, and wrote in Greek. For

[1] The term "Hellenic" refers to purely Greek culture; the term "Hellenistic" to Greek culture as modified by contact with the Near East.

EMPIRE OF ALEXANDER THE GREAT, 336-323 B. C.

Under Alexander | Allied States | Independent States

——— Route of Alexander

THE KINGDOMS OF ALEXANDER'S SUCCESSORS ABOUT 200 B. C.

Kingdom of the Seleucids | Kingdom of the Ptolemies | Macedonian Kingdom

- - - - - - - - Route of Nearchus

the first time in history the largest part of the civilized world had a common language.

Some Hellenistic cities were only garrison posts in the heart of remote provinces or along the frontier. Many more, such as Alexandria in Egypt, Seleucia in Babylonia, Antioch in Syria, and Rhodes on the island of that name, were thriving business centers through which Asiatic products, even those of distant India and China, reached Greece. The standard of living was raised by the introduction of luxuries to which the old Greeks had been strangers.

Commercial intercourse of East and West

East and West exchanged ideas as well as commodities. What the Greeks had accomplished in art, literature, philosophy, and science became familiar to the Egyptians, Babylonians, and other Oriental peoples. They, in turn, introduced the Greeks to their achievements in the realm of thought.

Intellectual relations between East and West

The fusion of East and West went on most thoroughly at Alexandria in Egypt. It was the foremost Hellenistic center, because of its unrivaled site for commerce with Africa, Asia, and Europe. The inhabitants included not only Egyptians, Greeks, and Macedonians, but also Jews, Syrians, Babylonians, and other Orientals. The Macedonian rulers of Egypt made Alexandria their capital and adorned it with imposing public buildings and masterpieces of Greek art. Learning flourished at Alexandria. The city possessed in the royal Museum, or Temple of the Muses, a genuine university, with lecture halls, botanical and zoölogical gardens, an astronomical observatory, and a great library. The collection of books, in the form of papyrus or parchment (sheepskin) manuscripts, finally amounted to over five hundred thousand rolls, or almost everything that had been written in antiquity. The more important works were carefully edited by Alexandrian scholars, thus supplying standard editions of the classics for other ancient libraries. The learned men at Alexandria also translated into Greek various productions of Oriental literature, including the Hebrew Old Testament.

Alexandria

THE WORLD ACCORDING TO PTOLEMY

See note on next page.

Science likewise flourished in Alexandria, for the professors, who lived in the Museum at public expense, had the quiet and leisure so necessary for research. Much progress took place at this

LIGHTHOUSE OF ALEXANDRIA (Restored)

The island of Pharos, in the harbor of Alexandria, contained a lighthouse built about 280 B.C. It rose in three diminishing stages, the first being square, the second octagonal, and the third round, to a height of nearly four hundred feet. On the apex stood a statue. The lighthouse was considered by the ancients one of the "Seven Wonders" of the world. It collapsed (as the result of repeated earthquakes) in 1326 A.D. The minarets of Moslem mosques and the spires of Christian churches are both derived from this famous structure.

time in mathematics, astronomy, physics, geography, anatomy, medicine, and other branches of knowledge. The Greeks in their investigations must have been greatly helped by the scien-

---

NOTE TO MAP. — The eminent scientist Ptolemy, who lived at Alexandria about the middle of the second century A.D., summed up in his map of the world the geographical knowledge of the ancients. Ptolemy's inaccuracies are obvious: his Europe extends too far west; his Africa is too wide; and his Asia is vastly exaggerated at its eastern extremity. He knows practically nothing of the Baltic Sea, marking only a small island as Scandia or Scandinavia. His idea of the British Isles is also vague. Ptolemy shows some knowledge of central and southern Asia, but India is not represented as a peninsula, and a huge gulf, with China on its farther shore, is placed in the remote east. The size of Ceylon is exaggerated. Notice that Ptolemy represents the Nile as rising in two lakes and that he marks the Mountains of the Moon in their approximate location. Two famous voyages of discovery have been indicated on this map, namely, that of the Carthaginian Hanno to the Gulf of Guinea (about 500 B.C.) and that of the Greek Pytheas possibly as far as the Baltic (about 330 B.C.).

tific lore of Egypt and Babylonia, which was now disclosed to the world at large. Græco-Oriental science, in turn, passed over to the Romans, and later became known to the Moslem and Christian peoples of the Middle Ages.

Cosmopolitanism

The Greeks who emigrated in such numbers to the Near East surrendered local attachments and prejudices, which had so long divided them, to be "cosmopolitans," or citizens of the world. They likewise lost old feelings of antagonism toward non-Greeks. Henceforth the distinction between Greek and Barbarian gradually faded away, and mankind became ever more unified in sympathies and aspirations. This Græco-Oriental world about the eastern Mediterranean was now to come in contact with the great power which had been arising in the western Mediterranean — Rome.

11. The Romans

Basin of the Tyrrhenian Sea

The early history of Italy centered about the Tyrrhenian Sea, which lies between the Italian Peninsula on one side and Sicily, Sardinia, and Corsica on the other side. The basin of this sea, though not so landlocked as that of the Ægean and without numerous small islands, nevertheless forms a well-defined region. The lands surrounding it have a genial climate and a great variety of natural productions, including grain, grapes, olives, oranges, and lemons. The most extensive plains of central Italy and nearly all the good harbors of the entire peninsula are on or near its shores. As a home for civilized man, the Tyrrhenian basin offered many advantages.

Etruscans

The first civilization in Italy was introduced there by the Etruscans. They came to the peninsula by sea, perhaps from Asia Minor, and as early as 1000 B.C. founded a strong power in the region called after them Etruria (modern Tuscany). The Etruscan dominions in time extended along the coast from the Bay of Naples to the Gulf of Genoa and inland to the Po Valley as far as the Alps. These Etruscans are a mysterious people. No one has been able to read their language. It is quite unlike any Indo-European tongue, though

ITALY
BEFORE THE RISE OF ROME
Etruscans
Italians
Carthaginians
Names underlined denote Greek Colonies.
0 50 100 150
SCALE OF MILES
THE ALPS
Mt. Brenner
St. Gothard
Simplon
Gt. St. Bernard
Mt. Blanc
Mt. Cenis
Ticinus (Ticino)
Adige R. (Athesis)
Po (Padus)
VENETI
CISALPINE GAUL
LIGURIANS
APENNINES
Gulf of Genoa
Arno R. (Arnus)
Rubicon R.
Metaurus R.
Ancona
ADRIATIC SEA
ILLYRIANS
UMBRIANS
PICENTINES
SABINES
ETRURIA
ETRUSCANS
Trasimene (Trasimenus)
ELBA
Chiusi (Clusium)
Corneto (Tarquinii)
Tiber R.
Veii
CORSICA
LIGURIANS
ETRUSCANS
ÆQUIANS
HERNICANS
FRENTANI
SAMNITES
IAPYGIANS
Rome
LATIUM
LATINS
CAMPANIA
Mt. Vesuvius
Naples
Cumæ
Bay of Naples
CAPRI
Pæstum
Metapontum
Heraclea
LUCANIANS
Taranto (Tarentum)
Gulf of Taranto
GREAT GRÆCIA (GREECE)
Sybaris
Thurii
Croton
SARDINIA
IBERIANS
TYRRHENIAN SEA
CARTHAGINIANS
Strait of Messina
LIPARI IS.
Messina (Messana)
Palermo (Panormus)
Locri
Reggio (Regium)
Segesta
Mt. Etna
Taormina
SICILY
Catania (Catana)
Agrigentum
Syracuse
Carthage
AFRICA
8
10
12
14
16
18
46
44
42
40
38
36

written in an alphabet borrowed from Greek settlers in Italy. Many other cultural influences reached the Etruscans from abroad. Babylonia gave to them the principle of the round arch and the practice of divination. Etruscan graves contain Egyptian seals and vases bearing Greek designs. The Etruscans were skillful workers in bronze, iron, and gold. They built cities with massive walls, arched gates, paved streets, and underground drains. A great part of Etruscan civilization was ultimately absorbed in that of Rome.

Greeks

The Etruscans were followed by the Greeks. Greek colonies began to be planted in southern Italy after the middle of the eighth century B.C. The map shows that these were all on or near the sea, from the Gulf of Taranto to Campania. North of the "heel" of Italy extends an almost harborless coast, where nothing tempted the Greeks to settle. North of Campania, again, they found the good harbors already occupied by the Etruscans. The Greeks, in consequence, never penetrated deeply into Italy. Room was left for the native Italians, under the leadership of Rome, to build up their own power in the peninsula.

Italians

Barbarous peoples of the Mediterranean racial type occupied Italy, as well as Greece, during Neolithic times. After them came invaders apparently of the Baltic (Nordic) racial type, who spoke an Indo-European language closely relately both to Greek and to the Celtic tongues of western Europe. They entered the Italian Peninsula through the numerous Alpine passes, probably not long after the Greeks had found a way into the Balkan Peninsula. Wave after wave of these northerners flowed southward, until the greater part of Italy came into their possession. We must assume that the invaders, having overcome all armed opposition, mingled more or less with the earlier inhabitants of Italy. There is every reason to believe that the historic Italians, like the historic Greeks, were a mixed people.

The Italians who settled in the central, eastern, and southern parts of the peninsula were highlanders. They formed many tribes, including the Umbrians and the Samnites. The western

Italians, or Latins, were lowlanders. They dwelt in Latium, originally only the "flat land" extending south of the Tiber River between the mountains and the sea. The Latin plain is about thirty by forty miles in size. Its soil, though not very productive, can nevertheless support a considerable population devoted to herding and farming. The Latins, as they increased in number, gave

Italian highlanders and lowlanders

VICINITY OF ROME

up tribal life and established little city-states, like those of Greece. The need of defense against their Etruscan neighbors across the Tiber and the Italian tribes in the adjacent mountains bound them together. At a very early period they united in the Latin League. The chief city in this league was Rome.

Rome began as a Latin settlement on the Palatine Mount. It was the central eminence in a group of low hills just south of the Tiber and about fourteen miles from its ancient mouth. Shallow water and an island made

Founding of Rome

the river easily fordable at this point for Latins and Etruscans and facilitated intercourse between them. Villages also arose on the neighboring mounts, and these in time combined with the Palatine community. Rome thus became the City of the Seven Hills.[1]

Rome, from the start, owed much to a fortunate location. The city was easy to defend. It lay far enough from the sea to be safe from sudden raids by pirates, and it possessed in the seven hills a natural fortress. The city was also well placed for commerce on the only navigable stream in Italy. Finally, Rome was almost in the center of Italy, a position from which its warlike inhabitants could most easily advance to the conquest of the peninsula.

Advantages of the site of Rome

EARLY ROMAN BAR MONEY

A bar of copper having the value of an ox, whose figure is stamped upon it. Dates from the fourth century B.C. The Romans subsequently cast copper disks to serve as coins.

We cannot trace in detail the development of early Rome. The accounts which have reached us are a tissue of legends, dealing with Romulus, the supposed founder of the city, and the six kings who followed him. What seems certain is that the Roman city-state very soon fell under the sway of the Etruscans, who governed it for perhaps two centuries or more. Etruscan tyranny at length provoked a successful uprising, and Rome became a republic (509 B.C.).

Rome becomes a republic, 509 B.C.

The career of Rome as a republic lasted nearly five hundred years. Her external history, throughout this long period, is one of almost uninterrupted warfare, which resulted in steady conquests and annexations of territory. Two stages in the expansion of Rome over Italy may be distinguished. The first (ending in 338 B.C.) marked the triumph of Rome over her former allies, the Latins, and the establish-

Roman expansion over Italy

[1] The Romans believed that their city was founded in 753 F.C., from which year all Roman dates were reckoned.

ment of her supremacy in Latium. The second (ending in 264 B.C.) saw her supremacy established over the Etruscans in Etruria, the Umbrians, Samnites, and other Italian peoples, and the Greek cities in southern Italy. Rome now ruled from the strait of Messina northward to the Arno River. The central city of the peninsula had thus become the center of a united Italy. It should be noticed, however, that as yet Rome possessed only the central and southern parts of what is the modern kingdom of Italy. The barbarous Gauls held the Po Valley, while most of Sicily and Sardinia was controlled by Carthage, a Phœnician colony in North Africa.

Extension of Roman citizenship to Italians

As Rome extended her rule in Italy, she bestowed upon the conquered peoples citizenship. It formed a great gift, for a Roman citizen enjoyed many privileges. He could hold and exchange property under the protection of Roman law; could contract a valid marriage which made his children themselves citizens; and could vote in the popular assemblies at Rome and hold public office there. This extension of the citizenship to those who formerly had been enemies was something quite novel in history, and it was the great secret of Rome's success as a governing power.

Roman colonies and roads

The Romans, as their conquests proceeded, founded many colonies in various parts of Italy. These usually consisted of veteran soldiers or poor peasants, who wanted farms of their own. Such colonies, being offshoots of Rome, naturally remained faithful to her interests. They were united with one another and with Rome by an extensive system of roads, facilitating the rapid dispatch of troops, supplies, and official messages into every corner of Italy. The roads also became avenues of trade and travel and so helped to make the Italian peoples one in blood, language, religion, and customs. Rome thus began in Italy the process of Romanization which she was to extend later to the countries of western Europe.

About two centuries and a quarter (264–31 B.C.) sufficed for the expansion of Rome beyond Italy. The only serious resist-

ance which she met was from Carthage, and with Carthage she fought three bloody "Punic"[1] wars. They ended in the destruction of that great city. Rome annexed the Carthaginian territories in Sicily, Sardinia, Spain, and North Africa, thus bringing the western Mediterranean under her sway. The Greek city-states and the Hellenistic kingdoms in the eastern Mediterranean were also subdued. Meanwhile, the exploits of Julius Cæsar in Gaul carried the Roman eagles to the shores of the Atlantic. Gaul soon received and speedily adopted the Latin language, Roman law, and the customs and religion of Rome. "Let the Alps sink," exclaimed the orator Cicero, "the gods raised them to shelter Italy from the barbarians, but now they are no longer needed."

Roman expansion beyond Italy

Rome, in dealing with her new dependencies overseas, did not follow the methods that had proved so successful in Italy. She made her subject territories outside of Italy into provinces, obliging the inhabitants to pay tribute and to accept the oversight of Roman officials. The result was much oppression of the provincials by tyrannical governors and greedy tax-collectors. These evils might have been avoided, at least in part, if the provincials had been allowed to send delegates to speak and act for them before the Senate and popular assemblies of Rome. The representative system, however, met no more favor with the Romans than with the Athenians.[2] Rome, like Athens, was a city-state suddenly called to the responsibilities of imperial rule. The machinery of her government had been devised for a small republican community, and it could not work efficiently when extended to distant lands and peoples.

Provincial administration

The Romans won dominion abroad, only to lose freedom at home. The Roman city-state, once a self-governing commonwealth, became gradually transformed into an empire. Two principal causes of the transformation may be mentioned. The first cause was political strife between Roman citizens. The class struggles between rich and poor, aristocrats and commoners, offered every opportunity for unscrupulous politicians to mount to power,

Rome becomes an empire, 31 B.C.

[1] "Punic" is another form of the word "Phœnician."

[2] See page 37.

now with the support of the nobles, now with that of the populace. The second cause was foreign warfare, which enabled ambitious generals, supported by their soldiery, to become supreme in the state. It was Julius Cæsar, great both as a politician and as a general, who finally overcame all resistance and set up one-man rule at Rome. Cæsar was soon assassinated, but his grandnephew and heir, Augustus, gained supreme power in his stead. With the accession of Augustus Rome became an empire (31 B.C.).

12. The Græco-Oriental-Roman World

The Roman Empire

The Roman Empire in the age of Augustus girdled the Mediterranean and spread over three continents. On the west and south it found natural barriers in the Atlantic Ocean and the Sahara Desert; on the east it extended to the Euphrates; and on the north it reached to the Danube and the Rhine. The successors of Augustus enlarged the empire by conquering the island of Britain (except the Scottish Highlands), the district of Dacia (modern Rumania), and additional territories in the Near East.

Roman citizenship

The empire, at the zenith of its power in the second century of our era, included forty-three provinces. The provincials enjoyed far better treatment by the new imperial government than they had ever received at the hands of the republican Senate and popular assemblies. Furthermore, Augustus and his successors steadily extended Roman citizenship to the provincials, and in 212 A.D. Caracalla issued a decree making all freemen in the empire citizens. Germans, Britons, Gauls, Iberians (Spaniards), North Africans, Egyptians, Arabs, Jews, Syrians, Armenians, and Greeks were henceforth Romans, equally with the people of Italy. Rome, instead of being the ruling city of the empire, became merely its capital or seat of government.

The Roman peace

The provinces were protected against invasion by a standing army of about four hundred thousand men. The soldiers belonged to all the different nationalities within the empire and served for a long period of years.

THE ROMAN EMPIRE
at its Greatest Extent
Under TRAJAN, 98-117 A.D.
Scale of Miles
0 100 200 300 400 500 600
ATLANTIC OCEAN
NORTH SEA
BALTIC
MEDITERRANEAN
SCOTLAND (CALEDONIA)
WALL OF ANTONINUS
WALL OF HADRIAN
IRELAND (HIBERNIA)
BRITAIN (BRITANNIA)
York (Eburacum)
Chester (Deva)
Lincoln (Lindum)
London (Londinium)
Exeter (Isca)
Rhine
Weser
Elbe
Suevi
Vandals
Portus Itius
Cologne (Colonia Agrippina)
Treves (Augusta Trevirorum)
Sens (Agedincum)
Paris (Lutetia)
Mainz (Mogontiacum)
Chalons
Strassburg (Argentoratum)
ROMAN WALL
Marcomanni
Ratisbon (Regina castra)
Tours
Loire
GAUL
RAETIA
NORICUM
Augsburg (Augusta Vindelicorum)
Danube
Vienna (Vindobona)
Lyons (Lugdunum)
Alps Mts.
Milan (Mediolanum)
Aquileia
PANNONIA
Drave
Save
Sirmium
ILLYRIA
Bordeaux (Burdigala)
Vienne
Toulouse (Tolosa)
Nimes (Nemausus)
Rhone
Orange
Arles (Arelate)
Genoa
Ravenna
Po
Coruña (Brigantium)
Douro
Salamanca
Ebro
Saragossa (Cæsaraugusta)
Pyrenees Mts.
Narbonne (Narbo)
Aix
Marseilles (Massilia)
Mt. Taurus B. C.
Lake Trasimenus (207 B.C.)
Lisbon (Olisipo)
Tagus
Merida
Toledo (Toletum)
Guadiana
Guadalquivir
Seville (Hispalis)
Cordova (Corduba)
Cadiz (Gades)
Munda (45 B.C.)
Barcelona
Tarragona (Tarraco)
CORSICA
Rome
Ostia
Allia R. (390 B.C.)
Capua
Naples (Neapolis)
Puteoli
Trebia R. (218 B.C.)
Cannæ (216 B.C.)
Brindisi (Brundusium)
SARDINIA
BALEARIC IS.
Carthagena (New Carthage)
Malaga
Tangier (Tingis)
Lilybæum
Messina
Regium
SICILY
Syracuse
Utica
Hippo
NUMIDIA
Zama (202 B.C.)
Carthage
Thapsus (46 B.C.)
MAURETANIA
Atlas Mts.
AFRICA

Romanized section of the Empire
Greek section of the Empire
Oriental section of the Empire
Boundary of the Roman Empire at the death of Augustus, 14 A. D.
Important Roman Roads
Battlefields (with the year of battle)
Province names thus: ILLYRIA
25°
30°
35°
40°
45°
50°
55°
60°
50°
45°
40°
35°
30°
SLAVS
Sarmatians
HUNS
Dnieper
Dniester
Don
Volga
ALANS
CASPIAN SEA
Azov (Tanais)
Olbia
Sea of Azov
DACIA
Danube
Chersonesus
Heraclea
Caucasus Mts.
COLCHIS
Kura
BLACK SEA
Sinope
Trebizond (Trapezus)
ARMENIA
Aras
Balkan Mts.
THRACE
Adrianople (378 A.D.)
Philippi (42 B.C.)
Constantinople (Byzantium)
Chalcedon
Nicomedia
Heraclea
BITHYNIA
PONTUS
Nicæa
Sangarius (Sagra)
Kizil Irmak
Tigris
CAPPADOCIA
Edessa
Nisibis
Thessalonica
Pergamum
Magnesia (190 B.C.)
ASIA
Sardis
Smyrna
Ephesus
Carrhæ (53 B.C.)
PARTHIAN KINGDOM
ASSYRIA
MESOPOTAMIA
Euphrates
Athens
Sparta
Tarsus
CILICIA
Antioch
Rhodes
RHODES
Emesa
Palmyra
Seleucia
Ctesiphon
CYPRUS
SYRIA
Damascus
BABYLONIA
CRETE
Cæsarea
Jerusalem
PALESTINE
Jordan
Alexandria
Petra
ARABIA (PETRÆA)
Memphis
NILE
EGYPT
THE M.-N. WORKS, BUFFALO, N.Y.
East 25° from Greenwich 30°
35°
40°
45°

When not engaged in drill or border warfare, they built the great highways which, starting from Rome, penetrated every province; erected bridges and aqueducts; and along the exposed frontiers raised forts and walls. Rome long found security in her roads and fortifications and in the living rampart of her legions. The civilized world within the boundaries of the empire rested for centuries under what an ancient writer calls "the immense majesty of the Roman peace."

Sections of the Roman Empire

The Roman Empire consisted of three sections, differing widely in their previous history. There was a Greek section, centering about the Ægean; there was an Oriental section, which included such parts of the Near East as had come under Roman rule; and there was a distinctively Roman or Latin section, which consisted of the western provinces. In the Near East the Romans came only as conquerors, and their culture never took deep root there. The same was true of the Ægean lands, where the Greek language and customs held their ground. In the barbarian West, however, the Romans appeared not only as conquerors, but also as civilizers. The Romanization of the western provinces (modern Spain, Portugal, France, Belgium, Switzerland, and England), together with the Rhine and Danube valleys, forms quite the most significant aspect of ancient history. It was particularly their law, their language, and their municipal institutions which the Romans gave to European peoples.

Roman law

The code of the Twelve Tables, framed by the Romans almost at the beginning of the republic, was too harsh, technical, and brief to meet the needs of a growing state. The Romans gradually improved their legal system, after they began to rule over conquered territories and to become familiar with the customs of foreign peoples. Roman law in this way took on an exact, impartial, liberal, and humane character. It limited the use of torture to force confession from persons accused of crime. It protected the child against a father's tyranny and wives against ill-treatment by their husbands. It provided that a master who killed a slave should be punished as a murderer, and even taught that all men are orig-

inally free by nature and therefore that slavery is contrary to natural right. Justice it defined as "the steady and abiding purpose to give to every man that which is his own."

The Corpus Juris Civilis

During the reign of Justinian (527–565) all the sources of Roman law, including the legislation of the popular assemblies, the decrees of the Senate, the edicts of the emperors, and the decisions of learned lawyers, were collected and put into scientific form. The result was the famous code called the *Corpus Juris Civilis*, the "Body of Civil Law." It passed from ancient Rome to modern Europe, becoming the foundation of the legal systems of Italy, Spain, France, Germany, and other Continental countries. Even the Common Law of England, which has been adopted by the United States, owes some of its principles to the *Corpus Juris Civilis*.[1] The law of Rome, because of this widespread influence, is justly regarded as one of her most important gifts to the world.

YOUTH READING A PAPYRUS ROLL

Relief on a sarcophagus

The papyrus roll was sometimes very long. The entire *Iliad* or *Odyssey* might be contained in a single manuscript measuring one hundred and fifty feet in length. In the third century A.D. the unwieldy roll began to give way to the tablet, composed of a number of leaves held together by a ring. About this time, also, the use of vellum, or parchment made of sheepskin, became common.

The Romans carried their language to the barbarian countries of the West, as they had carried it throughout Italy. The Latin spoken by Roman colonists, merchants, soldiers, and public officials was eagerly taken up by the natives, who tried to make themselves as much like their conquerors as possible. This provincial Latin became the basis of the so-called Romance languages — French, Italian, Spanish, Portuguese, and Rumanian — which arose in the Middle Ages. Even our English language, which comes to us from the speech of the Teutonic invaders of Britain, con-

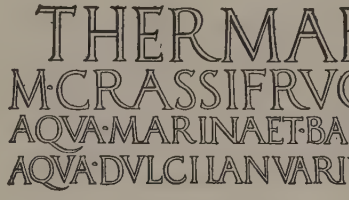
Latin and the Romance languages

[1] Roman law still prevails in the province of Quebec and the state of Louisiana, in the Philippines, and in all Latin-American countries.

tains so many words of Latin origin that we can scarcely utter a sentence without using some of them. The language of Rome, as well as the law of Rome, still remains to enrich the intellectual life of mankind.

The peace and prosperity of the empire during the first and second centuries of our era fostered the growth of cities. They were numerous, and many of them, even when judged by modern standards, were large. Rome had a population of between one and two millions. Alexandria came next in size, and Syracuse ranked as the third metropolis of the empire. Italy had such important centers as Naples, Genoa, Florence, Verona, Milan, and Ravenna. In Gaul were Marseilles, Bordeaux, Lyons, Paris, Strasbourg, Cologne, and Mainz — all places with a continuous existence to the present day. In Spain were Barcelona, Cadiz, Cartagena, and Seville. In Britain were London, York, Lincoln, and Chester. Greece, Asia Minor, Syria, Egypt, and North Africa contained a great number of cities, some of them established in Hellenistic times and others of Roman formation.

Cities of the Roman world



LATIN INSCRIPTION

An inscription on a marble tablet from a Roman bath.

Every city was a miniature Rome, with its forum and senate-house, its temples, theaters, and baths, its circus for horse racing, and its amphitheater for gladiatorial shows. The excavations at Pompeii have revealed to us the appearance of one of these Roman cities. What we find at Pompeii was repeated on a more splendid scale in hundreds of places from the Danube to the Nile, from Britain to Arabia.

City life

The cities of Roman origin, especially those in the western provinces, copied the political institutions of Rome. Each had a council modeled on the Senate, and a popular assembly, which chose magistrates corresponding to the two consuls and other officials. This Roman system of

City government

city government descended to the Middle Ages and so passed over to our own day.

Roman culture

A Roman poet once declared that "captive Greece captured her conqueror rude." He spoke truly. Roman culture, during the last centuries of the republic and the early centuries of the empire, owed much to Greek culture. Nevertheless, the Romans themselves made in time some noteworthy contributions to the higher life of man. They achieved preëminence in certain forms of architecture. The temples of Greece seem almost insignificant beside the stupendous structures — baths, amphitheaters, basilicas, aqueducts — raised by Roman architects in every province. Their ability to build on so colossal a scale was due to the use of the round arch and the dome, devices that are still commonly employed by modern architects. The Roman triumphal arches and columns are also often imitated to-day. Roman literature, though based on Greek models, likewise has many excellencies. The writings of Cicero, the orator and essayist, of Vergil, Horace, and Ovid, the poets, and of Livy and Tacitus, the historians, measure not far below the Greek masterpieces. In the Middle Ages, when the literature of Greece was either neglected or forgotten by the peoples of western Europe, that of Rome was still read and enjoyed. A knowledge of it forms even to-day an essential part of a "classical" education.

Internationalization

Just as Alexander's conquests, by uniting the Near East and Greece, produced a Hellenistic civilization, so now the expansion of Rome throughout the Mediterranean basin and beyond the Alps gave rise to a still wider civilization, which embraced much of Europe, with the adjacent parts of Asia and Africa. The Roman Empire contained from seventy-five to one hundred million people, at peace with one another, possessing the same rights of citizenship, obeying one law, speaking Latin in the West and Greek in the East, and bound together by trade, travel, and a common loyalty to the imperial government. Unconsciously, but none the less surely, local habits and manners, national religions and tongues, provincial institutions and customs, disappeared from the ancient

GREEK TOMBSTONE

The tombstones (*stelæ*), of which many specimens are extant, especially at Athens, must be included among the purest and most delicate productions of Greek art in the fourth century B.C. They are all the work of anonymous artists. The relief on the tombstone shown in the plate represents Orpheus, the poet and musician, holding forward to his wife Eurydice. The god Hermes, who conducts the dead to the lower world, stands at the left.

TRIUMPH OF CONSTANTINE IN THE ROMAN FORUM, 312 AD

A reconstruction by J. Böhlmann and Alex. von Wagner. The observer is supposed to be looking down into the Forum from the Capitoline Mount. The Colosseum is seen in the distance on the left, and on the right are the Palatine Palaces of the Cæsars. The Arch of Septimus Severus is in the immediate foreground.

world. Rome thus made a tremendous advance toward internationalization, toward the formation of a society embracing civilized mankind.

13. Decline of the Roman Empire

The first two centuries of the Roman Empire, beginning with the reign of Augustus, formed an era of peace and material prosperity such as had never been known before in the ancient world, at any rate in Europe. The inhabitants of the empire, during these centuries, did not try to overthrow it or to withdraw from its protection. They believed that it would endure forever — "Eternal Rome." But the empire was not eternal. It grew weaker, as time went on, and offered less and less resistance to the German barbarians encroaching on the northern frontiers. When in the year 476 the barbarians in Italy deposed Romulus Augustulus ("the little Augustus"), whose name, curiously enough, recalled that of the legendary founder of Rome and that of its first emperor, there was no longer any Roman emperor ruling in western Europe. Barbarian kingdoms had now been set up, not only in Italy, but also in North Africa, Spain, Gaul, and Britain. This outcome is often described as the "fall" of Rome.

The "fall" of Rome

To speak of the "fall" of Rome suggests the idea of a violent catastrophe which suddenly plunged the empire into ruin. The truth is, rather, that the breakdown of the imperial government was a gradual process, which lasted several hundred years. Rome was a long time falling. Nor had all of the empire fallen by the end of the fifth century. The barbarians never made much impression on that part of its territory lying in eastern Europe. Here the empire, with a capital at Constantinople,[1] survived for centuries and upheld the Roman tradition of law and order. It did not entirely disappear until the year 1453, when Constantinople was captured by the Ottoman Turks.

Meaning of the "fall" of Rome

[1] Founded in 328–330 by the emperor Constantine, on the site of the old Greek colony of Byzantium.

Why could not this great Roman empire keep the Germans at bay and prevent them from occupying western Europe? Many reasons have been given for its failure to do so. We may point out, first, that the empire embraced too wide a territory for its efficient management. It was so big as to be unwieldy. A single emperor, however able and energetic, had more than he could do to rule all of it and protect the distant frontiers. Second, the empire contained too many diverse peoples for its real unification. There existed between them no unity of language, religion, or customs, which enables the inhabitants of a modern nation to coöperate for common ends. Third, the empire made no provision for local self-government. As time went on, nearly all power was concentrated in the hands of the emperor and his officials. He assessed the taxes, framed edicts having the force of laws, and acted as the supreme judge. He took the title of "Lord and God" and required his subjects to pay him divine honors both in life and after death. His diadem of pearls, his purple robe, his scepter, all proclaimed the autocrat, and have furnished models for imitation by European sovereigns even to the present day. It is easy to see that under such circumstances there could be no genuine patriotism. Slaves and serfs had never enjoyed any political rights, and now even Roman citizens took no part in the affairs of state. They were required simply to pay taxes and obey the officials whom the emperor set over them. The old Græco-Roman ideal of democracy, which had meant so much for civilization, was destroyed by the imperial system. The inhabitants of the empire looked to their all-powerful ruler to protect them; when he failed to do so, they could not, or would not, protect themselves. The barbarians entered the empire to find a spiritless, servile people, who seldom opposed, and indeed often welcomed, their coming.

Political weakness of the empire

There were still other reasons for the "fall" of Rome. The population of the empire seems to have much lessened during these centuries, partly because of an increased death-rate, due to the prevalence of malaria and plagues, but chiefly as the result of a decreased

Economic weakness of the empire

birth-rate. Men and women, finding it more and more difficult to make a living, did not marry; or, if they married, they had few children, perhaps none at all. The custom of infanticide was likewise very common, especially among the poorer classes. The empire suffered from want of men to serve as soldiers in the armies, as artisans in the workships, and as peasants on the farms. It is no wonder, therefore, that in province after province large tracts of land went out of cultivation, that the towns decayed, and that there was a general "slump" in commerce, manufacturing, and other forms of business enterprise. "Hard times" settled on the Roman world. The empire also

Terra-Cotta Savings Bank

suffered from want of money. To meet the heavy cost of the luxurious court, to pay the salaries of the swarms of public officials, and to feed and amuse the idlers in the great cities involved a heavy expenditure. Taxes were harder to collect, now that both population and production had so seriously fallen off. The harshest measures were adopted to wring from the wretched subjects every penny that could possibly be paid. They came to dread the visits of the taxgatherers even more than the inroads of the barbarians.

The Græco-Romans did much for art, literature, philosophy, and science in earlier ages, but their creative ability had now been exhausted. Fewer great works of art were produced. Fewer great books were written. Interest

Intellectual stagnation

in the higher things of the mind slackened, ignorance became widespread, and superstitions multiplied. The intellectual stagnation was far more pronounced in western Europe than in eastern Europe, because the barbarian invaders of the West were so rude and backward themselves, whereas in the East the Roman Empire always preserved many elements of classical culture.

Decay of paganism

Even before the rise of Christianity Greeks and Romans had found it hard to believe in deities who were fashioned like themselves and who possessed all the faults of mortal men and women. The growth of philosophy produced among the educated much skepticism regarding the gods, the myths, and the rites and ceremonies accepted by their forefathers. The uneducated shared also in the prevailing skepticism. For the satisfaction of their religious needs people began to turn to new cults which came in from the Near East, such as the worship of the Persian sun god Mithra and the Egyptian goddess Isis. These Oriental cults all appealed to the emotions as the ancient paganism had never done. They provided an inspiring ritual and they offered to their devotees the promise of a happier existence beyond the grave. It is not strange, therefore, that they penetrated every province of the empire, only disappearing with the triumph of Christianity.

14. Christianity and Its Influence

Rise of Christianity

Christianity rose among the Jews, for Jesus[1] was a Jew and his disciples were Jews. The first Christians did not neglect to keep up the customs of the Jewish religion. It was even doubted for a time whether any but Jews could properly be allowed within the Christian fold. A new convert, Saul of Tarsus, afterward the Apostle Paul, did most to admit the Gentiles, or pagans, to the privileges of the new religion. Though born a Jew, Paul had been trained in the schools of Tarsus, a city of Asia Minor which was a center of Greek learning. His education thus helped to make him an

[1] Born probably in 4 B.C., during the reign of Augustus; crucified during the reign of Tiberius, when Pontius Pilate was the Roman governor of Judæa.

Rome
ITALY
Puteoli
ADRIATIC SEA
DALMATIA
MŒSIA SUPERIOR
THRACE
BLACK SEA
BITHYNIA & PONTUS
Philippi
MACEDONIA
Sea of Marmora
Thessalonica
TYRRHENIAN SEA
Tavium
Angora (Ancyra)
Adramyttium
Pergamum
Thatira
ASIA
GALATIA
CAPPADOCIA
Sardis
Philadelphia
Regium
SICILY
Smyrna
Corinth
Athens
Ephesus
Laodicea
Miletus
Colossæ
KINGDOM OF ANTIOCHUS
Tarsus
Syracuse
PAMPHYLIA
Adalia (Attalia)
Antioch
Malta (Melita)
LYCIA
Rhodes
Seleucia
PROV. OF SYRIA
CRETE
CYPRUS
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
Damascus
Sidon
Tyre
Nazareth
Cæsarea
PROV. OF Samaria
JUDEA
Jerusalem
ST. PAUL'S TRAVELS
+++++ 1st Journey
..... 3rd Journey
_____ 2nd Journey
——— 4th Journey
Underlined names are the Seven Churches in Asia
16
20
24
28
32
36
40

acceptable missionary to Greek-speaking peoples. During more than thirty years of activity Paul established churches in Asia Minor, Macedonia, Greece, and Italy. He wrote to these churches the letters (epistles) which have a place in the New Testament and set forth many doctrines of the Christian faith.

Christianity spread rapidly over the Roman world. It was carried, as the other Oriental religions had been carried, by slaves, soldiers, traders, travelers, and missionaries. The use of Greek and Latin as the common languages of the Roman Empire furnished a medium in which Christian speakers and writers could be readily understood. The early missionaries, such as Paul himself, were often Roman citizens, who enjoyed the protection of Roman law and profited by the ease of travel which the imperial rule had made possible. Moreover, the destruction of Jerusalem by the Romans in the year 70 and the subsequent exile of Jews from Palestine spread the Chosen People throughout the Roman Empire, where they familiarized the pagans with Jewish ideals of monotheism and moral purity and with Jewish hopes for a Messiah, thus preparing the way for Christianity. At no other period in ancient history were conditions so favorable for the growth of a world religion.

Spread of Christianity

The imperial government, which had treated other foreign faiths with careless indifference, or even with favor, which had tolerated the Jews and granted to them special privileges of worship, made a deliberate effort to crush Christianity. The reason was that it seemed to threaten the existence of the state. Converts to the new religion condemned the official paganism as idolatrous and they refused to swear by pagan gods in courts of law. Nor would they worship the *genius* (guardian spirit) of the emperor or burn incense before his statue, which stood in every town. To do so would have been an acknowledgment of the divinity of the emperor — something impossible for Christians. Naturally, the Christians were outlawed and from time to time were subjected to persecutions in various parts of the empire. The last persecution,

The persecutions

THE ANTIOCH CHALICE

(International copyright by Kouchakji Frères, New York)

In 1910 A.D., Arabs at Antioch in Syria excavated a silver chalice, about eight inches in height, which seems to date from the first century of our era. It probably formed a part of church treasure. This object is of extraordinary interest, for many, if not all, of the figures of the disciples adorning it are considered to be actual portraits and to have been made when most of the personages represented were alive. The illustration above shows Christ the Saviour (center), with St. Peter (left) and St. Paul (right).

early in the fourth century, was the most severe. It continued for eight years, but failed to shake the constancy of the Christians. They welcomed the torture and death which would gain for them a heavenly crown. Those who perished were called "martyrs," that is, "witnesses" to Christ.

The imperial government at length realized the uselessness of the persecutions, and in 313 Constantine and his colleague, Licinius, issued the Edict of Milan, which proclaimed for the first time in history the principle of religious toleration. This edict placed Christianity on a legal equality with the other religions of the empire. Constantine himself accepted Christianity and favored it throughout his reign. Under his direction the first general council of the Church assembled in 325 at Nicæa in Asia Minor to settle a dispute over the nature of Christ. The council framed the Nicene Creed, which is still the accepted summary of Christian doctrine. Christianity continued to progress after Constantine and became the state religion by the close of the fourth century. Sacrifices to the pagan gods were henceforth forbidden, the temples closed, the Delphic oracle and Olympian games forbidden, and even the private worship of ancestors prohibited.

Triumph of Christianity

The old pagan religions made few moral demands upon their followers. A man who was pious and reverent toward the gods might be very immoral, indeed, in his relations with his fellow men. Christianity, which taught men to love God, taught them also to love their neighbors. It dwelt upon the sanctity of human life and condemned the very common practice of suicide, as well as the frightful evil of infanticide. It set its face against all forms of cruelty, such as the gladiatorial combats, in which slaves, captives, and criminals were compelled to fight with one another and kill one another for the amusement of the spectators. It denounced, unsparingly, the luxury and vice of the great cities. In general, Christianity did much to soften and refine manners by the stress which it laid upon the "Christian" virtues of humility, tenderness, and mercy.

Moral teachings of Christianity

The Christian belief in the fatherhood of God implied a corresponding belief in the brotherhood of man. This doctrine of human equality had been expressed many times by ancient philosophers, but Christianity translated their precepts into practice. It sought to improve the condition of the slave by requiring his master to treat him as a brother, and it opened the offices and dignities of the church to both alike. It declared that free and unfree were equal in God's sight, and by encouraging emancipation it even helped to decrease slavery. Christianity, whose founder had worked as a carpenter, naturally emphasized the dignity of manual toil. For Christians idleness, not work, was the real disgrace: "to labor is to pray" became a Christian motto. The new religion laid much stress on benevolence as a duty and therefore supported all institutions to relieve the poor, the sick, and the downtrodden. It also elevated the position of women, by making marriage a religious sacrament, instead of a mere civil contract, by opposing divorce, and by insisting upon purity of life for both men and women. Christianity, we see, was not simply a set of beliefs, or a system of church organization, or a beautiful and impressive ritual of worship. The new religion, from the start, became a mighty influence for the betterment of mankind.

Social teachings of Christianity

15. The German Invasions and Their Results

The region called Germany (*Germania*) in antiquity reached from the Rhine eastward as far as the Vistula and from the Danube northward to the Baltic Sea. Germany consisted of dense forests, extensive marshes, and sandy plains, incapable of supporting a large population. Clouds and mists enveloped the country in summer, and in winter it lay buried under snow and ice. Such unfavorable conditions retarded the development of Germany, which was also shut out from the Mediterranean basin by mountain barriers. The inhabitants, therefore, had not advanced in civilization as far as the Greeks and Romans.

Germany

The Germans belonged principally to the Baltic (Nordic)

racial type.[1] Their tall stature, blue eyes, and blonde or ruddy hair marked them off from the shorter and darker Mediterranean peoples. They spoke a Teutonic language, related, on the one hand, to Greek and Latin and, on the other hand, to the Celtic, Lettic, and Slavic tongues.[2] In culture they were barbarians, who had passed from the use of stone and bronze to that of iron; who hunted, fished, kept cattle, and tilled the soil; who formed tribes and tribal confederations; and who lived in villages or small towns. Some of the Germans nearest the Romans learned from the latter to

Inhabitants of Germany

ROMANS DESTROYING A GERMAN VILLAGE
Relief on the Column of Marcus Aurelius, Rome.

read and write, to make better weapons and clothes, to use money, to enjoy foreign luxuries, and, what was most important, to accept Christianity. The common religion of Germans and Romans paved the way for friendly relations between them.

The Roman Empire had long been full of Germans. Many were mercenaries in the imperial army. Augustus began the practice of hiring them as soldiers, and by the time of Constantine they formed the majority of the troops. The emperors also admitted friendly tribes

The Germans and the Romans

[1] See page 27.

[2] See page 29.

of Germans within the frontiers to fill up the gaps in population and to farm the waste lands. Still other Germans entered the empire as slaves. The result was a very considerable "barbarization" of the Roman world before the period of invasions.

The love of fighting for its own sake, the desire for adventure, and the lust for booty explain, in part, the German invasions. But only in part. The invasions were principally due to land hunger. When the soil of Germany, as people then understood how to use it, could no longer sustain increasing numbers, the inhabitants had the alternative of migration or starvation. It was the same grim alternative that has confronted man at every stage of savagery, barbarism, and civilization. The Germans chose to migrate, even though that meant war, and so from the time of Julius Cæsar not a century passed without witnessing some dangerous movement by them against the frontiers of the Roman Empire.

The invasions: their causes

The invasions were of two types. Sometimes entire peoples migrated, as was the case with the Visigoths (West Goths), Ostrogoths (East Goths), Vandals, Burgundians, and Lombards. They all settled among a much more numerous subject population, which in time absorbed them. None of their kingdoms proved to be enduring. Sometimes, again, bands of warriors, led by military chiefs, set out from their home land and conquered possessions at the expense of the provincials. Such was especially the case with the Franks in the northern part of Gaul and the Anglo-Saxons in Britain. The Frankish and Anglo-Saxon kingdoms were the only ones which developed into lasting states.

The invasions: their character

Ancient civilization suffered a great shock when the Germans descended on the Roman Empire. These barbarians were rude in manners, were very ignorant, and had little taste for anything except warfare and bodily enjoyments. They were unlike the provincials in dress and habits of life. They lived under different laws, spoke different languages, and obeyed different rulers. They sometimes destroyed Roman cities and killed or enslaved the inhab-

German influence on society

TEUTONIC MIGRATIONS and CONQUESTS
Visigoths
Ostrogoths
Lombards
Northmen
Normans
Vandals
Burgundians
Franks
Angles
Saxons
Jutes
Route of Attila
Route of Visigoths
Route of Vandals
Trade route between Constantinople and Scandinavia
Scale of Miles
0 100 200 300 400
ATLANTIC OCEAN
NORTH SEA
BALTIC SEA
BLACK SEA
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
Longitude 5° West
0° Longitude 5° East from Greenwich
THE M.-N. WORKS

itants. Even when they settled peaceably within the empire, they allowed aqueducts, bridges, and roads to go without repairs, and theaters, baths, and public buildings to sink into ruins. Being devoted chiefly to agriculture, they permitted both industry and commerce to languish. Lacking any appreciation of education, they failed to keep up schools, universities, and libraries. Ancient civilization had been declining before the Germans came. The invasions accelerated the decline, with the result that large parts of western Europe relapsed for several centuries into semi-barbarism.

Fusion of Germans and Romans

Nevertheless, the Germans had the capacity to learn, and the willingness to learn, from those whom they had conquered. Their fusion with the Romans was helped by the previous settlement within the empire of so many German soldiers, colonists, and slaves. It was very greatly helped by the fact that some of the principal peoples, including the Visigoths, Ostrogoths, Vandals, Burgundians, and Lombards, were already Christians at the time of their invasions, while other peoples, including the Franks and Anglo-Saxons, afterward adopted Christianity. Finally, as observed above, the Germans invaded the empire to seek homes for themselves, rather than simply to pillage and destroy. They accepted what they understood of classical culture and then imparted to the enfeebled provincials their fresh blood, youthful minds, and vigorous, progressive life. The fusion of Germans and Romans formed the great work of the early Middle Ages in western Europe.

Studies

1. "In many respects Europe may be considered the most favored among the continents." Explain this statement in detail. 2. "The history of the Mediterranean, from the days of Phœnicia, Crete, and Greece to our own time, is a history of Western civilized mankind." Comment on this statement. 3. Why have Greek colonies been called "patches of Hellas"? 4. How far can the expression "government of the people, by the people, and for the people" be applied to the Athenian democracy? 5. Mention some of the noteworthy contributions of ancient Greece to the higher life of man. 6. Show that the founding of Hellenistic cities formed a renewal of Greek colonial expansion. 7. "The seed-ground of European civilization is neither Greece nor the Orient, but a world joined of the two." Comment on this statement. 8. Why have Sicily, Sardinia, and Corsica been called the

"suburbs" of Italy? Which island does not belong to the present Italian kingdom? 9. Compare the nature of Roman rule in Italy with that of Athens over the Delian League. 10. How do you account for the failure of the republican institutions of Rome? 11. What modern countries are included within the limits of the Roman Empire at its greatest extent? 12. Trace on the map between pages 52 and 53 the principal Roman roads in the provinces. 13. Compare the Romanization of the ancient world with the process of Americanization now going on in the United States. 14. Define the terms "absolution" and "centralization" as applied to the later Roman Empire. 15. What reasons may be given for the conversion of the Roman world to Christianity? 16. Why had the Germans progressed more slowly than the Greeks and the Romans? 17. Why is modern civilization, unlike that of antiquity, in little danger from barbarians? 18. In what sense does the date 476 mark the "fall" of the Roman Empire?

A Roman Freight Ship

The ship lies beside the wharf at Ostia. In the afterpart of the vessel is a cabin with two windows. Notice the figure of Victory on the top of the single mast and the decoration of the mainsail with the wolf and twins. The ship is steered by a pair of huge paddles.

CHAPTER III

MEDIEVAL TIMES IN EUROPE[1]

16. The Early Middle Ages

THE Middle Ages, as the term indicates, lie between ancient times and modern times. They include only the history of western Europe. There was no medieval period in eastern Europe, where the Byzantine (Roman) Empire, with a center at Constantinople, still survived and preserved part of the territory and some of the culture of old Rome. There was no medieval period in the Near East, which had come under the sway of the Mohammedan Arabs. The Arab dominions also embraced, for a time, both Spain and Sicily. In these European lands the Arabs created a brilliant culture, to which their Christian neighbors were much indebted. Nor was there a medieval period in the Far East, for some of the darkest centuries of western Europe were the brightest centuries of India and China.

Period of the Middle Ages

The Middle Ages are not well defined, as to either their beginning or their end. For an initial date we have selected the year 476, when the Roman provinces in western Europe were almost wholly occupied by the Germans. For concluding dates historians have taken those of the invention of printing (about 1450), the capture of Constantinople by the Ottoman Turks (1453), the discovery of America (1492), the opening of a new sea-route to the East Indies (1498), and the commencement of the Protestant Reformation (1517). Such significant events in the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries seem to mark the end of medieval times. These two centuries have such importance, however, that it will be convenient for

Limits of the Middle Ages

[1] Webster, *Readings in Medieval and Modern History*, chapter iii, "The Benedictine Rule"; chapter xi, "St. Francis and the Franciscans"; chapter xviii, "Three Medieval Epics."

our purpose to deal with them in a separate chapter and to treat them as marking the transition to the modern world. No precise dates, indeed, separate one historic epoch from another. The truth is that the social life of man forms a continuous growth, and man's history, an uninterrupted stream.

Divisions of the Middle Ages

The early Middle Ages formed in western Europe an era of turmoil, ignorance, and decline, consequent upon the barbarian invasions. It required a long time for the Germans and other Teutonic peoples to settle in their new homes and to become thoroughly fused with the Romanized provincials. The process of absorption was practically completed by the end of the tenth century. Western Europe then entered upon the later Middle Ages, an era of more settled government, increasing knowledge, and steady progress in almost every field of human activity. The medieval period thus presents to the historical eye not a level stretch of nine hundred to a thousand years, with mankind stationary, but rather first a downward and then an upward slope.

The kingdom of the Franks

During the fifth century, when the Germans were wandering almost at will over the territories of the Roman Empire, a German people known as the Franks carved out possessions for themselves in Gaul, accepted Roman Catholicism, and gradually built up a large and strong state in western Europe. During the eighth century they helped to keep Europe Christian by beating back the Arabs, who, having conquered the Visigoths in Spain, invaded Gaul and threatened to make that country also a Mohammedan land. It was a Frankish king who created a Christian and German empire to replace the empire of Rome. This king was Charles the Great, or Charlemagne.[1]

Charlemagne's conquests

Much of Charlemagne's reign (768–814) was filled with warfare. He conquered the Lombards, who had taken Italy from the Ostrogoths. He invaded Spain and wrested from the Arabs a considerable district south of the Pyrenees. His long struggle with the Saxons and various Slavic peoples farther widened the Frankish dominions.

[1] The French form of his name, from the Latin *Carolus Magnus*.

EUROPE
in the Age of Charlemagne, 800 A.D.
Roman Empire in the East
The Caliphate
Ommiad Emirate of Cordova
Original Possessions of Charlemagne
Conquests of Charlemagne
ATLANTIC OCEAN
English Channel
Britons
Saxons
Frisians
Danes
Elbe R.
Rhine R.
London
Paderborn
Aix-la-Chapelle
AUSTRASIA
SLAVS
NEUSTRIA
BRITTANY
Paris
Chalons
Verdun
Frankfort
BOHEMIA
Tours
BAVARIA
St. Gall
Geneva
CARINTHIA
Avars
AQUITAINA
Lyons
Milan
Venice
Cherson
BURGUNDY
ITALY
Danube R.
BLACK SEA
KINGDOM OF ASTURIAS
GASCONY
Arles
Ravenna
Spalato
BULGARIA
Constantinople
SPANISH MARCH
Saragossa
Ebro R.
Sophia
Philippopolis
Trapezus (Trebizond)
OMMIAD EMIRATE OF CORDOVA
CORSICA
Rome
Mt. Cassino
DUCHY OF BENEVENTUM
Naples
Amalfi
Salerno
Thessalonica
Adrianople
Nicomedia
Nicæa
Angora
ROMAN EMPIRE IN THE EAST
PHRYGIA
Philadelphia
Iconium
Edessa
Lisbon
Tagus R.
Toledo
Guadiana R.
SARDINIA
Otranto
BALEARIC IS.
Seville
Cordova
Granada
Cadiz
Guadalquivir R.
Strait of Gibraltar
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
Carthage
Palermo
SICILY
Syracuse
Athens
Antioch
Aleppo
RHODES
Tangier
MOROCCO
Kairwan
MALTA
CRETE
CYPRUS
Sidon
Damascus
Tyre
Nazareth
Jaffa
Jerusalem
THE CALIPHATE
Tripoli
Pelusium
Gaza
Alexandria
Scale of Miles
0 50 100 200 300 400 500
THE M.-N. WORKS, BUFFALO, N.Y.
Longitude West 0° East from Greenwich 10°
10°
20°
30°
40°
50°
30°
40°

Charlemagne at the height of his power ruled over what is now France, Belgium, Holland, Switzerland, Austria, western Germany, northern Italy, and northern Spain, besides a part of Czecho-Slovakia and Jugoslavia. In this truly gigantic realm all the surviving Teutonic peoples, except those in Denmark, Norway, Sweden, and Britain, were brought under the sway of one man.

CHARLEMAGNE

Lateran Museum, Rome

A mosaic picture made during the lifetime of Charlemagne, and probably a fair likeness of him.

The empire of Charlemagne

Charlemagne, the foremost ruler in Europe, seemed to the men of his time the rightful successor of the Roman emperors. He had their power, and now he was to have their name. On Christmas Day, 800, the pope, in old St. Peter's Church at Rome, placed on his head a golden crown, while all the people cried out with one voice, "Long life and victory to Charles Augustus, the great and pacific emperor of the Romans, crowned by God!" The coronation of Charlemagne was regarded by his contemporaries as the restoration or renewal of the Roman Empire, more than three hundred years after the deposition of Romulus Augustulus. Charlemagne's empire, however, did not include North Africa, Britain, or much of Spain, or the Roman dominions in eastern Europe. It did include, on the other hand, extensive territories east of the Rhine and north of the Danube, which the Romans had never been able to conquer. Furthermore, the German Charlemagne and his German successors on the imperial throne had little in common with the old Roman emperors, who spoke Latin, administered Roman law, and regarded the Germans as their most dangerous foes. Charlemagne's empire was, indeed,

largely a new creation, the result of an alliance between the Frankish kingdom and the Papacy.

The Holy Roman Empire

The imperial idea was revived, about one hundred and fifty years after Charlemagne's death, by an able German ruler, Otto I, often called Otto the Great. Otto led his armies across the Alps, went to Rome, and had the pope crown him as Roman emperor (962). Otto's dominions

EUROPE IN THE AGE OF OTTO THE GREAT, 962 A.D.

were considerably smaller than Charlemagne's, since they included only Germany and North Italy. Nevertheless, Otto and the emperors who followed him asserted vast claims to sovereignty in Europe, as the heirs of Charlemagne and, through him, of Constantine and Augustus. The new empire came subsequently to be styled the Holy Roman Empire, the word *Holy* in its title expressing its intimate connection with the Papacy.

It lived on in some measure for more than eight hundred years and did not quite disappear from European politics until the opening of the nineteenth century.

The successors of Otto the Great constantly interfered in the affairs of Italy, in order to secure the Italian crown and the imperial title. They treated that country as a conquered province which had no right to a national life and an independent government under its own rulers. At the same time, they neglected their German possessions and failed to keep their powerful territorial lords in subjection. Neither Italy nor Germany, in consequence, became a united state, such as was formed in England, France, Spain, and other countries during the later Middle Ages.

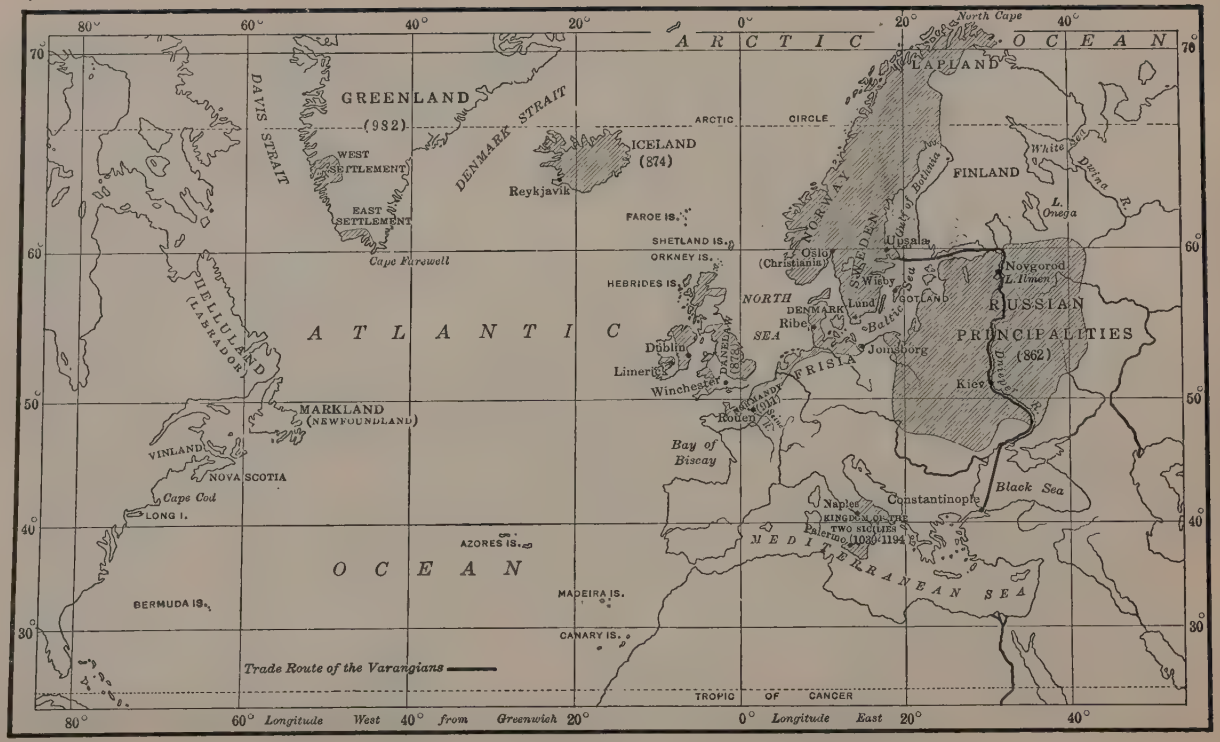
Germany and Italy in the Middle Ages

The ninth and tenth centuries in western Europe witnessed new barbarian invasions, especially those of the Northmen, or Vikings. These Teutonic peoples lived, as their descendants still live, in Denmark, Norway, and Sweden. The same land hunger which drove the German tribes southward made them quit their bleak, sterile country and seek new homes across the water. The invasions of the Northmen may be regarded, therefore, as the second wave of that great Teutonic movement which had previously inundated western Europe and overwhelmed the Roman Empire. The Northmen were barbarous and heathen, untouched either by Græco-Roman culture or by the Christian religion. They started out as raiders and fell on the coasts of western Europe. They also found it easy to ascend the rivers in their shallow boats and reach places far inland. Their attacks did so much damage and inspired such great terror that a special prayer was inserted in the church services: "From the fury of the Northmen, good Lord, deliver us."

Raids of the Northmen

The Northmen eventually colonized many of the lands which they visited. The accompanying map shows their extensive discoveries and settlements, together with the dates (principally in the ninth and tenth centuries) when these were made. The British Isles, Iceland, Finland, and Russia all received a considerable immigration of Northmen.

Settlements of the Northmen



DISCOVERIES AND SETTLEMENTS OF THE NORTHMEN

They also crossed the Atlantic to Greenland. Some of them even voyaged farther westward and reached the New World five hundred years before Columbus. The Northmen who occupied northwestern France came to be known as Normans.[1] One of the dukes of Normandy, the famous William the Conqueror, invaded England in 1066 and speedily added that country to his dominions. The Normans also turned southward to the Mediterranean and founded in southern Italy and Sicily the so-called kingdom of the Two Sicilies. Norman rulers held it for only about a hundred and fifty years, but under other rulers it lasted until the middle of the nineteenth century, when the present kingdom of Italy came into existence. The conquests of the Normans in England, Italy, and Sicily were effected after they had become a Christian and a French-speaking people.

17. Feudalism

Charlemagne for a time had arrested the disintegration of society which resulted from the invasions of the Germans, and had united their warring tribes under something like a centralized government. But Charlemagne's empire did not long survive its founder. It soon broke up into separate kingdoms. The successors of Charlemagne in France, Germany, and Italy enjoyed little real authority. They reigned, but did not rule. During this dark age it was really impossible for a king to govern with a strong hand. The absence of good roads or of other easy means of communication made it difficult for him to move troops quickly from one district to another, in order to quell revolts. Even had good roads existed, the lack of ready money would have prevented him from maintaining a strong army devoted to his interests. Moreover, the king's subjects, as yet not welded into a nation, felt toward him no sentiments of loyalty and affection. They cared far less for their king, of whom they knew little, than for their own local lords, who dwelt near them.

Decline of the royal authority

The decline of the royal authority meant that the chief functions of government came to be more and more performed by

[1] "Norman" is a softened form of "Northmen."

the nobles, who were the great landowners of the kingdom. Under Charlemagne these men had been the king's officials, appointed by him and holding office at his pleasure. Under his successors they tended to become almost independent princes. In proportion as this change was accomplished during the Middle Ages, European society entered upon the stage of feudalism.[1]

Increased power of the nobles

The basis of feudal society was usually the landed estate. Here lived the feudal noble, surrounded by dependents over which he exercised the rights of a petty sovereign. He could tax them; he could require them to give him military assistance; he could try them in his courts. A great noble even enjoyed the privilege of declaring war, making treaties, and coining money. How, it will be asked, did these rights and privileges arise?

Feudal sovereignty

Owing to the decay of commerce and industry, land had become practically the only form of wealth in the early Middle Ages. The king, who was regarded as the absolute owner of the soil, would pay his officials for their services by giving them the use of a certain amount of land. In the same way, one who had received large estates would parcel them out among his followers, as a reward for their support. An unscrupulous noble might sometimes seize the lands of his neighbors and compel them to become his tenants. Sometimes, too, those who owned land in their own right might surrender the title to it in favor of a noble, who then became their protector. An estate in land which a person held of a superior lord, on condition of performing some "honorable" service, was called a fief. A fief was inheritable, going at the holder's death to his oldest son. If a man had no legal heir, the fief went back to the lord.

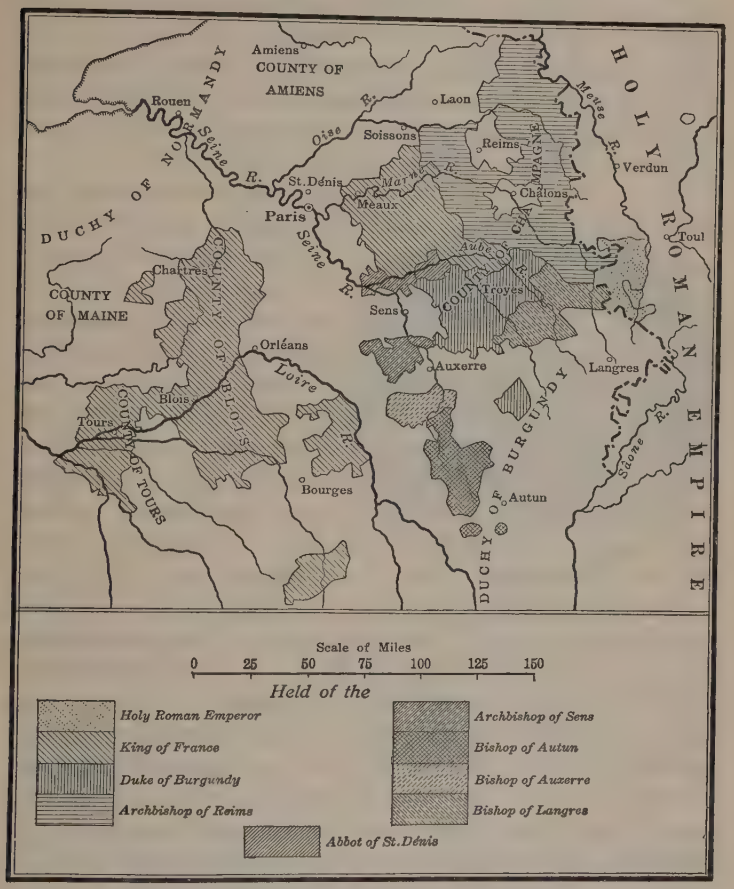
Feudal tenure of land

The tie which bound the tenant who accepted a fief to the lord who granted it was called vassalage. Every holder of land was in theory, though not always in fact, the vassal of some lord. At the apex of the feudal pyramid stood the king, the supreme landlord, who was supposed to hold

Vassalage

[1] The word come from the medieval Latin *feudum*, from which are derived the French *fief* and the English *fee*.

his land from God; below the king stood the greater lords (dukes, marquises, counts, barons), with large estates; and



POSSESSIONS OF THE COUNT OF CHAMPAGNE
(12TH CENTURY)

below them came the lesser lords, or knights, whose possessions were considered to be too small for further subdivision.

The vassal owed various services to the lord. In time of war he did garrison duty at the lord's castle and joined him in

military expeditions. In time of peace the vassal attended the lord on ceremonial occasions, gave him the benefit of his advice, when necessary, and helped him as a judge in trying cases. The vassal, under certain circumstances, was also required to make money payments. The lord, in return, agreed to secure the vassal in the enjoyment of his fief, to guard him against his enemies, and to see that in all matters he received just treatment.

Duties of vassal and lord

The feudal tenure of land, coupled with the custom of vassalage, made in some degree for security and order. Each noble was attached to the lord above him by the bond of personal service and the oath of fealty. To his vassals beneath him he was at once protector, benefactor, and friend. Feudal obligations, of course, were not always observed. Both lords and vassals often broke their engagements, when it seemed profitable to do so. They had many quarrels and indulged in constant warfare. Feudalism, despite its defects, was better than anarchy. The feudal nobles drove back the pirates and hanged the brigands and enforced the laws, as no feeble king could do. Feudalism provided a rude form of local government for a rude society.

Feudalism a form of local government

The outward mark of feudalism was the castle, where the lord resided and from which he ruled his fief. Defense formed the primary purpose of the castle. Until the introduction of gunpowder and cannon, the only siege weapons employed were those known in ancient times. They included machines for hurling heavy stones and iron bolts, battering rams, and movable towers, from which the besiegers crossed over to the walls. Such engines could best be used on firm, level ground. Consequently, a castle would often be erected on a high cliff or hill, or on an island, or in the center of a swamp. A castle without such natural defenses would be surrounded by a deep ditch (the "moat"), usually filled with water. If the besiegers could not batter down or undermine the massive walls, they adopted the slower method of a blockade and tried to starve the garrison into surrendering. Ordinarily, however, a well-built, well-provisioned castle was impregnable.

The castle

The nobles regarded the right of waging war on one another as their most cherished privilege. A vassal might fight with each of the various lords to whom he had done homage, in order to secure independence from them, with bishops and abbots whom he disliked for any reason, with his weaker fellow vassals, and even with his own vassals. Fighting became almost a form of business enterprise, which enriched the nobles and their retainers through the sack of castles, the plunder of villages, and the ransom of prisoners. Every hill became a stronghold and every plain, a battle-field. As the power of the kings increased in western Europe, they naturally sought to put an end to the constant fighting between their subjects. The Norman rulers of Normandy, England, and the Two Sicilies restrained their turbulent nobles with a strong hand. Peace came later in most parts of the Continent; in Germany, "fist right" (the rule of the strongest) prevailed until the end of the fifteenth century. The abolition of private warfare was the first step in Europe toward universal peace. The second step — the abolition of public war between nations — is yet to be taken.

Private warfare

CHAMPIONS FIGHTING

A form of trial used in feudal times was the judicial duel. The accuser and the accused fought with each other, and the conqueror won the case. When one of the adversaries could not fight, he secured a champion to take his place. The picture reproduced above is from a thirteenth-century tile found on the site of Chertsey Abbey, England.

The prevalence of private warfare made the use of arms a profession requiring special training. A nobleman's son served for a number of years as a squire in his father's castle or in that of some other lord. When he became of age and had been drilled in warlike exercises, he might be made a knight. The ceremony of conferring knighthood

Knighthood

was often most elaborate. If, however, a squire for valorous conduct received knighthood on the battle-field, the accolade by stroke of the sword formed the only ceremony.

As manners softened and Christian teachings began to affect feudal society, knighthood developed into chivalry. The Church, which opposed the warlike excesses of feudalism, took the knight under her wing and bade him be always a true soldier of Christ. The "good knight" was he who respected his sworn word, who never took an unfair advantage of another, who defended women, children, and orphans against their oppressors, and who sought to make justice and right prevail in the world. Needless to say, the "good knight" appears oftener in romance than in sober history. Chivalry produced some improvement in manners, particularly by insisting on the ideal of personal honor and by fostering greater regard for women (though only those of the upper class). Our modern notion of the conduct befitting a "gentleman" goes back in part to the old chivalric code. Chivalry expressed, however, simply the sentiments of the warlike nobles. It was an aristocratic institution. The knight despised and did his best to keep in subjection the toiling peasantry, upon whose backs rested the real burden of feudal society.

Chivalry

MOUNTED KNIGHT

Seal of Robert Fitzwalter, showing a mounted knight in complete armor; date about 1265.

18. The Church

The most important civilizing influence in western Europe during the Middle Ages was the Roman Church. The Church performed a double task. On the one hand, it gave the people religious instruction and watched over their morals; on the

other hand, it took an important part in secular affairs. Priests and monks were almost the only persons of education; consequently, they controlled the schools, wrote the books, framed the laws, acted as royal ministers, and served as members of the Parliament or other national assembly. The Church thus directed the higher life of a medieval community.

The Church and medieval civilization

The Church held spiritual sway throughout western Europe. Italy and Sicily, the larger part of Spain, France, the Netherlands, Germany, Austria, Bohemia, Hungary, Poland, the British Isles, Denmark, Sweden, Norway, and Iceland yielded obedience to the pope of Rome.

Territorial extent of the Church

Membership in the Church was not a matter of free choice. All people, except Jews, were required to belong to it. A person joined the Church by baptism, a rite usually performed in infancy, and remained in it as long as he lived. Every one was expected to conform, at least outwardly, to the doctrines and practices of the Church, and any one attacking its authority was liable to punishment as a heretic.

The Church as universal

The existence of one Church in the western world furnished a bond of union between European peoples. The Church took no heed of political boundaries, for men of all nationalities entered the ranks of the priesthood and joined the monastic orders. Priests and monks were subjects of no country, but were "citizens of heaven," as they sometimes called themselves. Even differences of language counted for little in the Church, since Latin was the universal speech of the educated classes. One must think, then, of the Church as a great international organization, in form a monarchy, presided over by the pope, and with its center at Rome.

The Church as international

The pope was the supreme lawgiver of the Church. His decrees might not be set aside by any other person. He made new laws in the form of "bulls"[1] and by his "dispensations" could in particular cases set aside old laws, such as those for-

[1] So called from the lead seal (Latin *bulla*) attached to papal documents.

bidding cousins to marry or monks to obtain release from their vows. The pope was also the supreme judge of the Church, for all appeals from the lower ecclesiastical courts came before him for decision. Finally, the pope was the supreme administrator of the Church. He confirmed the election of both bishops and archbishops, deposed them, when necessary, or transferred them from one diocese to another. The pope also exercised control over the monastic orders and called general councils of the Church.

The pope as the head of western Christendom

For assistance in government the pope made use of the cardinals,[1] who formed a board, or "college." They were chosen at first only from the clergy of Rome and the vicinity, but in course of time the pope opened the cardinalate to prominent churchmen in all countries. The number of cardinals is now fixed at seventy.

The cardinals

To support the business of the Papacy and to maintain the splendor of the papal court required a large annual income. This came partly from the pope's lands in Italy, partly from the gifts of the faithful, and partly from the payments made by abbots, bishops, and archbishops when the pope confirmed their election to office. Another source of revenue consisted of "Peter's Pence," a tax of a penny on each hearth. It was collected every year in England and in some Continental countries until the Reformation. The modern "Peter's Pence" is a voluntary contribution made by Roman Catholics in all countries.

Income of the Papacy

The pope was a temporal sovereign, ruling over Rome and the States of the Church. These possessions included during the Middle Ages the greater part of central Italy. The pope did not lose them altogether until the formation of the present Italian kingdom, in the second half of the nineteenth century.

States of the Church

The work of the Church was carried on by the clergy, including deacons, parish priests, and bishops, who lived active lives in the world, and monks, who passed their days in seclusion behind monastery walls. Members of

The clergy

[1] Latin *cardinalis*, "principal."

the clergy were distinguished from the laity by abstention from money-making activities, differences in dress, and the obligation of celibacy. Being unmarried, the clergy had no family cares; being free from the necessity of earning their own living, they could devote all their time and energy to the service of the Church. The sacrament of ordination, which was believed to endow the clergy with divine power, also helped to strengthen their influence. They appeared as a distinct order, in whose charge was the care of souls and in whose hands were the keys of heaven.

Monks

The earlier monks were hermits. They devoted themselves, as they believed, to the service of God, by retiring to the desert for prayer, meditation, and bodily mortification. The need for social intercourse gradually brought the hermits together, at first in small groups and then in larger communities, or monasteries. The next step was to give the scattered monasteries a common organization and government. Those in western Christendom gradually adopted the regulations which St. Benedict (about 529) drew up for the guidance of his monastery at Monte Cassino in Italy.

The Benedictine Rule

The monks obeying the Benedictine Rule formed a corporation, presided over by an abbot, who held office for life. Every candidate for admission took the vow of obedience to the abbot. Any man, rich or poor, noble or peasant, might enter the monastery after a year's probation; having once joined, however, he must remain a monk for the rest of his days. The monks lived under strict discipline. They could not own any property; they could not go beyond the monastery walls without the abbot's consent; and they followed a regular round of worship, reading from the Bible, private prayer, and meditation. The monks also worked hard with their hands, doing the necessary washing and cooking for the monastery, raising the necessary supplies of vegetables and grain, and performing all the other tasks required to maintain a large establishment. This emphasis on labor, as a religious duty, was a characteristic feature of western monasticism.

The civilizing influence of the Benedictine monks during the early Middle Ages can scarcely be overemphasized. A monastery was often at once a model farm, an inn, a hospital, a school, and a library. The monks, by the careful cultivation of their lands, set an example of good farming wherever they settled. They entertained pilgrims and travelers at a period when western Europe was almost destitute of inns. They performed many works of charity, feeding the hungry, healing the sick who were brought to their doors, and distributing their medicines freely to those who needed them. They trained in their schools boys who intended to enter the ranks of the clergy. The monks, too, were the only scholars of the age. By copying the manuscripts of classical authors, they preserved valuable books that would otherwise have been lost. By keeping records of the most striking events of their time, they acted as chroniclers of medieval history. The monks also served as missionaries among the heathen.

The monks as civilizers

A Monk Copyist

From a manuscript in the British Museum, London.

The Benedictine system had its limitations. The monks lived apart from their fellow men and sought chiefly the salvation of their own souls. A new conception of the religious life arose early in the thirteenth century, with the coming of the friars.[1] Their aim was social service. They devoted themselves to the salvation of others. The foundation of the orders of friars was the work of two men, St. Francis in Italy and St. Dominic in Spain. The Franciscans

The friars

[1] Latin *frater*, "brother."

and Dominicans resembled each other in many ways. They went on foot from place to place, and wore coarse robes tied round the waist with a rope. They possessed no property, but lived on the alms of the charitable. They were also preachers, who spoke to the people, not in Latin, but in the common language of each country which they visited. The Franciscans worked especially in the slums of the cities; the Dominicans addressed themselves rather to educated people and the upper classes. As time went on, both orders relaxed the rule of poverty and became very wealthy. They still survive, scattered all over the world and engaged in teaching and missionary activity.

The Church and warfare

We may now consider the attitude of the Church toward the social and economic problems of the Middle Ages. In regard to private warfare, the prevalence of which formed one of the greatest evils of the time, the Church, in general, cast its influence on the side of peace. It forbade attacks on all defenseless people, including priests, monks, pilgrims, merchants, peasants, and women. It also established a "Truce of God," which required all men to cease fighting from Wednesday evening to Monday morning of each week, in Lent, and on various holy days. The truce would have given western Europe peace for about two thirds of the year, but it was never strictly observed, except in limited areas.

The Church and charity

The Church was distinguished for charitable work. It distributed large sums to the needy. It also multiplied hospitals, orphanages, and asylums. Medieval charity, however, was very often injudicious. The problem of removing the causes of poverty seems never to have been raised; and the indiscriminate giving multiplied, rather than reduced, the number of beggars.

The Church and slavery and serfdom

Neither slavery nor serfdom, into which slavery gradually passed, was ever pronounced unlawful by pope or Church council. The Church condemned slavery only when it was the servitude of a Christian in bondage to a Jew or an infidel. Abbots, bishops, and popes possessed slaves and serfs. The serfs of some wealthy monasteries were counted by thousands. The Church, nevertheless,

encouraged the freeing of bondmen as a meritorious act and always preached the duty of kindness and forbearance toward them.

The Church also helped to promote the cause of human freedom by insisting on the natural equality of all men in the sight of God. "The Creator," wrote one of the popes, "distributes his gifts without regard to social classes. In his eyes there are neither nobles nor serfs." The Church gave practical expression to this attitude by opening the priesthood and monastic orders to every one, whether high-born or low-born, whether rich or poor. Naturally enough, the Church attracted to its service the keenest minds of the age.

Democracy of the Church

19. Country Life

Civilization has always had its home in the city. Nothing marks more strongly the backwardness of the early Middle Ages than the absence of the flourishing cities which had filled western Europe under the Roman Empire. The barbarian invasions led to a gradual decay of manufacturing and commerce and hence of the cities in which those activities centered. As urban life declined, the mass of the population came to live more and more in isolated rural communities. This was the great economic feature of the early Middle Ages.

Decline of urban life

An estate in land, when owned by a lord and occupied by dependent peasants, was called a manor.[1] It naturally varied in size according to the wealth of its lord. In England perhaps six hundred acres formed an average estate. Every noble had at least one manor; great nobles might have several manors, usually scattered throughout the country; and even the king depended upon his many manors for the food supply of the court.

The manor

The lord reserved for his own use a part of the arable land of the manor. This was his "demesne," or domain. The rest of the land he allotted to the peasants who were his tenants. They cultivated their holdings in common, according to the "open-field" system. A farmer, instead of having his land in one compact mass, had it

Common cultivation of the arable land

[1] From the Old French *manoir*, "mansion" (Latin *manere*, "to dwell").

split up into a large number of small strips (usually an acre or a half-acre) scattered over the manor, and separated, not by fences or hedges, but by banks of unplowed turf. The appearance of a manor, when under cultivation, has been likened to a vast checkerboard or a patchwork quilt. The reason for the intermixture of strips seems to have been to make sure that each farmer had a portion both of the good land and of the bad. It is obvious that this arrangement compelled all the peasants to labor according to a common plan. A man had to sow the same

SULGRAVE MANOR HOUSE

Sulgrave, in Northhamptonshire, was the ancestral home of the Washington family. The manor house, built by Lawrence Washington about the middle of the sixteenth century, bears the family coat-of-arms on the porch. This historic dwelling has been purchased by an English committee for preservation as a memorial of the friendship and blood-relationship between England and the United States.

kinds of crops as his neighbors, and to till and reap them at the same time. Agriculture, under such circumstances, could not fail to be unprogressive.

Farmers did not know how to enrich the soil by the use of fertilizers and a proper rotation of crops. Consequently, they divided all the arable land into three parts, one of which was sown with wheat or rye, and another with oats or barley, while the third was allowed to lie fallow (uncultivated) for a year, so that it might recover its fertility. Eight or nine bushels of grain represented the average yield of

Farming methods

an acre. Farm animals were small, for scientific breeding had not yet begun. Farm implements, also, were few and clumsy. It took five men a day to reap and bind the harvest of two acres.

Besides his holding of arable land, which in England averaged about thirty acres, each peasant had certain rights over the non-arable land of the manor. He could cut a limited amount of hay from the meadow. He could turn so many farm animals — cattle, geese, swine — on the waste. He also enjoyed the privilege of taking so much wood from the forest for fuel and building purposes. A peasant's holding, which also included a house in the village, thus formed a complete outfit.

Common use of the non-arable land

The peasants on a manor lived close together in one or more villages. Their small, thatch-roofed, and one-roomed houses were grouped about an open space (the "green"), or on both sides of a single, narrow street. The only important buildings were the parish church, the parsonage, a mill, if a stream ran through the manor, and possibly a blacksmith's shop. The population of one of these communities often did not exceed one hundred souls.

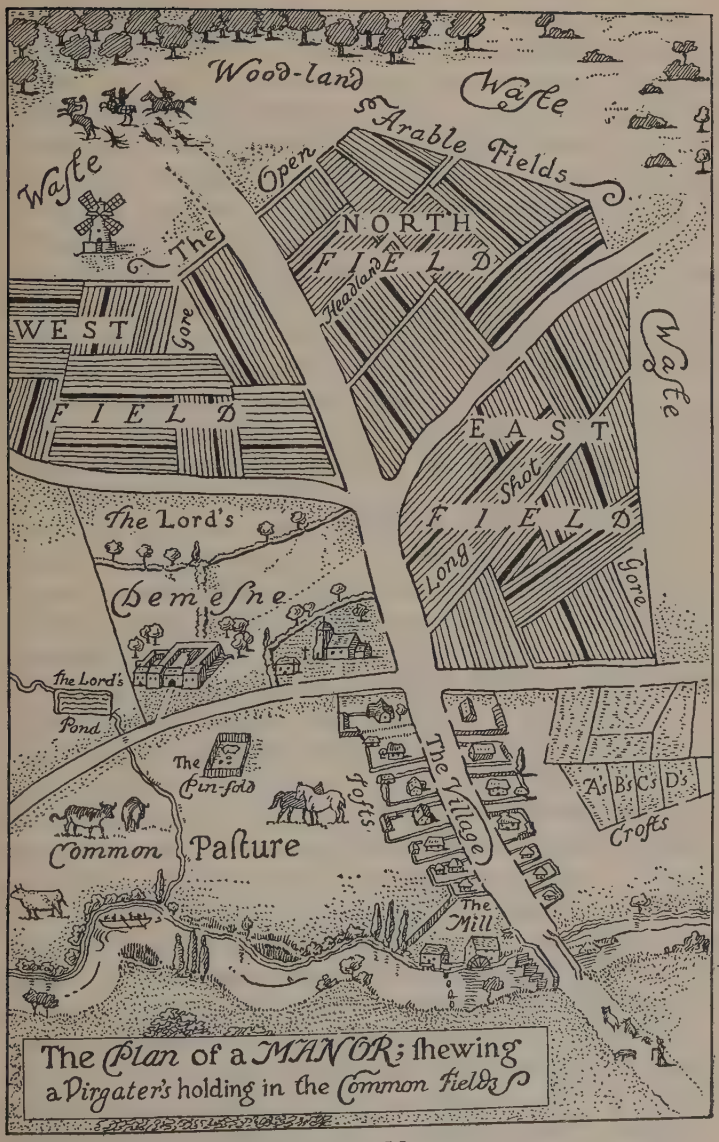
Description of a village

The most striking feature of a medieval village was its self-sufficiency. The inhabitants tried to produce at home everything they required, in order to avoid the uncertainty and expense of trade. The land gave them their food; the forest provided them with wood for houses and furniture. They made their own clothes of flax, wool, and leather. Their meal and flour were ground at the village mill, and at the village smithy their farm implements were manufactured. The chief articles which needed to be brought from some distant market included salt, used to salt down farm animals killed in autumn, iron for various tools, and millstones. Cattle, horses, and surplus grain also formed common objects of exchange between manors.

A village as self-sufficing

Life in a medieval village was rude and rough. The peasants labored from sunrise to sunset, ate coarse fare, lived in huts, and suffered from frequent pestilences. If their lord happened to be a quarrelsome man, given to fight-

Condition of the peasants



PLAN OF A MANOR

ing with his neighbors, they might see their land ravaged, their cattle driven off, and their village burned, and might themselves be slain. If, however, the peasants had a just and generous lord, they probably led a fairly comfortable existence. They had an abundance of food, unless crops failed, and wine or cider to drink. They shared a common life in the work of the fields, in the sports of the village green, and in the services of the parish church. They enjoyed many holidays; it has been estimated that, besides Sundays, about eight weeks in every year were free from work. Festivities at Christmas, Easter, and May Day, at the end of plowing and the completion of harvest, also relieved the monotony of labor.

SERF WARMING HIS HANDS

After a medieval manuscript.

A medieval village usually contained several classes of laborers. There might be a number of freemen, who paid a fixed rent, either in money or produce, for the use of their land. A few slaves might also be found in the lord's household or at work on his demesne. Slavery, however, gradually died out in western Europe during the early Middle Ages. Most of the peasants were serfs.

Freemen, slaves, and serfs

A slave belonged to his master; he was bought and sold like other chattels. A serf had a higher position, for he could not be sold apart from the land nor could his holding be taken from him. He was fixed to the soil. On the other hand, a serf ranked lower than a freeman, because he could not change his abode, or marry outside the manor, or bequeath his goods, without the permission of his lord.

Nature of serfdom

The serf did not receive his land as a gift; for the use of it he owed certain duties to his master. These took chiefly the form of personal services. He must labor on the lord's demesne for two or three days each week, and at specially busy seasons, such as plowing and harvesting,

Obligations of the serf

he must do extra work. At least half his time was usually demanded by the lord. The serf had also to make certain payment, either in money or more often in grain, honey, eggs, or other produce. When he ground the wheat or pressed the grapes which grew on his land, he must use the lord's mill or the lord's wine-press, and pay the customary charge.

Serfdom developed during the later centuries of the Roman Empire and in the early Middle Ages. Many serfs seem to have been descendants of the tenants, both free and servile, who had worked the great Roman estates in western Europe. The serf class was also recruited from the ranks of free Germans, whom the disturbed conditions of the time induced to seek the protection of a lord.

Origin of serfdom

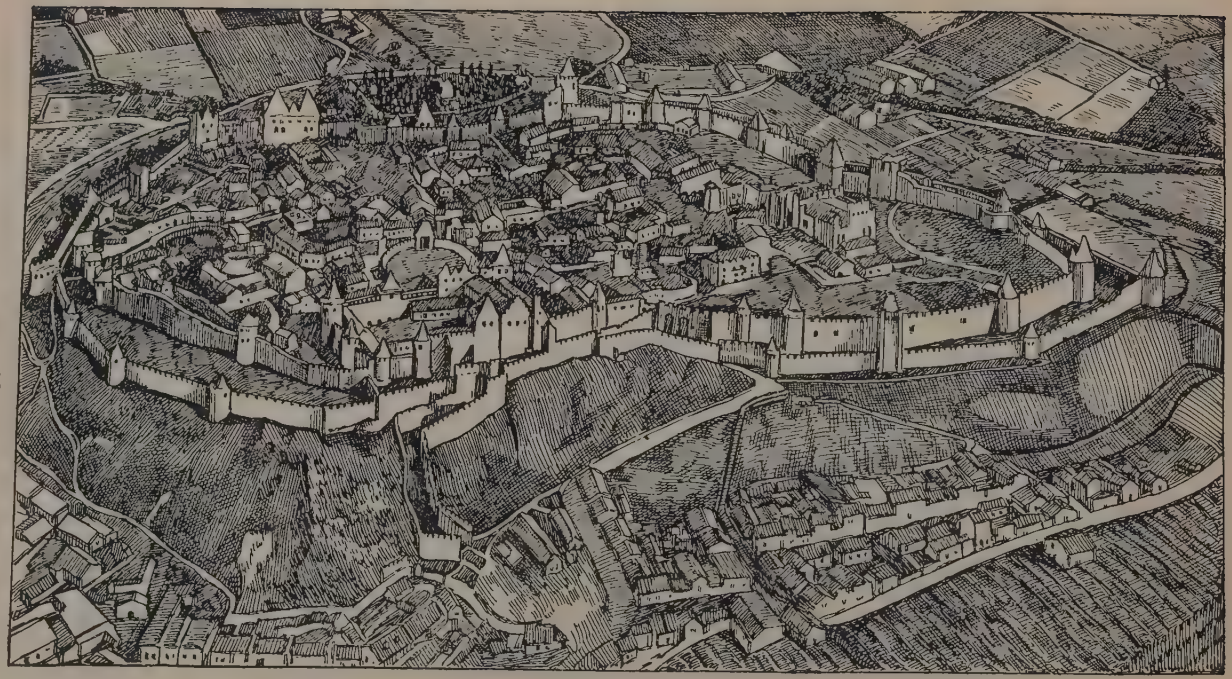
Serfdom, being a system of forced labor, was not very profitable to the lord, and it was irksome to his dependents. After the revival of trade and industry in the later Middle Ages had brought more money into circulation, the lord discovered how much better it was to hire men to work for him, instead of depending on serfs who shirked their tasks as far as possible. The latter, in turn, were glad to pay the lord a fixed sum (rent) for the use of the land, since now they could devote themselves entirely to its cultivation. The extinction of serfdom began in western Europe as early as the twelfth century. It had practically disappeared in this part of the Continent by the dawn of modern times. Some European countries, however, retained serfdom much longer. Prussian, Austrian, and Russian serfs did not secure freedom until the nineteenth century.

Extinction of serfdom

20. City Life

The great economic feature of the later Middle Ages was the civic revival. The growth of industry and commerce led to the increase of wealth, the growth of markets, and the substitution of money payments for those in produce or services. Flourishing cities arose, as in the days of the Roman Empire, freed themselves from the control of the nobles, and became the homes of liberty and democracy.

The civic revival



CARCASSONNE

The fortifications of Carcassonne, an ancient city of southwestern France, are probably unique in Europe for completeness and strength. They consist of a double line of ramparts, protected by towers and pierced by only two gates. A part of the fortifications is attributed to the Visigoths in the sixth century; the remainder, including the castle, was raised during the Middle Ages (eleventh to thirteenth centuries).

A number of medieval cities stood on the sites, and even within the walls, of Roman municipalities. Particularly in Italy, southern France, and Spain, and also in the Rhine and Danube regions, it seems that some ancient cities had never been entirely destroyed during the barbarian invasions. They preserved their Roman names, their streets, aqueducts, amphitheaters, and churches, and possibly vestiges of their Roman institutions. Among them were such important centers as Milan, Florence, Venice, Lyons, Marseilles, Paris, Vienna, Cologne, London, and York.

Cities of Roman origin

Many medieval cities were new foundations. Some began as small communities which increased in size because of exceptional advantages of situation. A place where a river could be forded, where two roads met, or where a good harbor existed, would naturally become the resort of traders. Some, again, started as fortresses, behind whose ramparts the peasants took refuge when danger threatened. A third group of cities developed from villages on the manors. A thriving settlement was pretty sure to spring up near a monastery or castle, which offered both protection and employment to the common people.

Origin of other cities

The city at first formed part of the feudal system. It arose upon the territory of a lord and owed obedience to him. The citizens ranked not much higher than serfs, though they were traders and artisans instead of farmers. They enjoyed no political rights, for their lord collected the taxes, appointed officials, kept order, and punished offenders. In short, the city was not free. As its inhabitants became more numerous and wealthy, they refused to submit to oppression. Sometimes they won their freedom by hard fighting; more often they purchased it, perhaps from some noble who needed money to go on a crusade. In France, England, and Spain, where the royal power was strong, the cities only obtained exemption from their feudal burdens. In Germany and Italy, on the other hand, the weakness of the central government permitted many cities to secure complete independence. One of them survives to this day as the little Italian republic of San Marino, and

The city and feudalism

three others — Hamburg, Bremen, and Lübeck — entered the German Empire in the nineteenth century as separate commonwealths.

The free city had no room for either slaves or serfs. All servile conditions ceased inside its walls. The rule prevailed that any one who had lived in a city for the term of a year and a day could no longer be claimed by a lord as his serf. This rule found expression in the saying, "Town air renders free." The freedom of the cities naturally attracted many immigrants to them. There came into existence a middle class of city people — merchants, artisans, and professional men — between clergy and nobles on the one side and peasants on the other side. The kings of England, France, and some other European countries soon began to summon representatives of this middle class to sit in assemblies (parliaments), as the Third Estate, along with the clergy and the nobles, who formed the first two estates of the realm.

Rise of the middle class

The visitor approaching a medieval city through miles of open fields saw it clear in the sunlight, unobscured by coal smoke. It looked like a fortress from without, with walls, towers, gateways, drawbridges, and moat. Beyond the fortifications he would see, huddled together against the sky, the spires of the churches and the cathedral, the roofs of the larger houses, and the dark, frowning mass of the castle. The general impression was one of wealth and strength and beauty.

A city from without

The visitor would not find things so attractive within the walls. The streets were narrow, crooked, and ill-paved, dark during the day because of the overhanging houses, and without illumination at night. There were no open spaces or parks except a small market place. The whole city was cramped by its walls, which shut out light, air, and view, and prevented expansion into the neighboring country. Medieval London, for instance, covered an area of less than one square mile.

A city from within

The small size of medieval cities — few included as many as ten thousand inhabitants — simplified the problem of governing

them. The leading merchants usually formed a council presided over by a head magistrate, the burgomaster or mayor, who was assisted by aldermen. In some places the guilds chose the officials and managed civic affairs. These associations had many functions and held a most important place in city life.

Municipal government

A guild of merchants grew up when those who bought and sold goods in any place united to protect their own interests. The membership included many artisans, as well as professional traders, for in medieval times a man might sell in the front room of his shop the goods which he and his assistants made in the back rooms.

Merchant guilds

The chief duty of a merchant guild was to preserve to its own members the monopoly of trade within a town. Strangers and non-guildsmen could not buy or sell there except under conditions imposed by the guild. They must pay the town tolls, confine their dealings to guildsmen, and as a rule sell only at wholesale. They were forbidden to purchase wares which the townspeople wanted for themselves, or to set up shops for retail trade. They enjoyed more freedom at the numerous fairs, which were intended to attract outsiders.

Commercial monopoly

The traders and artisans engaged in a particular occupation also formed associations of their own. These were the craft guilds, composed of weavers, shoemakers, brewers, bakers, tailors, carpenters, blacksmiths, tanners, and other workmen. The names of the various occupations came to be used as the surnames of those engaged in them, so that to-day we have such common family names as Smith, Cooper, Fuller, Potter, and Chandler. The number of craft guilds in an important city might be very large. London and Paris at one time each had more than one hundred, and Cologne in Germany had as many as eighty. The members of a particular guild usually lived in the same street or quarter of the city, not only for companionship, but also for better supervision of their labor.

Craft guilds

Just as the merchant guilds regulated town trade, so the craft guilds had charge of town industry. No one could engage

in any craft without becoming a member of the guild which controlled it and submitting to the guild regulations. A man's hours of labor and the prices at which he sold his goods were fixed for him by the guild. He might not work elsewhere than in his shop, because of the difficulty of supervising him, nor might he work by artificial light, lest he turn out badly finished goods. Everything made by him was carefully inspected to see if it contained shoddy materials or showed poor workmanship. Failure to meet the test meant a heavy fine or perhaps expulsion from the guild. The industrial monopoly possessed by the craft guild thus gave some protection to both producer and consumer.

Industrial monopoly

Full membership in a guild was reached only by degrees. A boy started as an apprentice, that is, a learner. He paid a sum of money to his master and agreed to serve him for a fixed period, usually seven years. The master, in turn, promised to provide the apprentice with food, lodging, and clothing, and to teach him all the secrets of the craft. The apprentice had to pass an examination by the guild, at the end of his term of service. If he was found fit, he then became a journeyman and worked for daily wages. As soon as he had saved enough money, he might set up as a master in his own shop. A master was at once workman and employer, laborer and capitalist.

Organization of craft guilds

The guilds had their charitable and religious aspects. Each one raised large benefit funds for the relief of members or their widows and orphans. Each one had its private altar in the cathedral, or often its own chapel, where masses were said for the repose of the souls of deceased members, and where on the day of its patron saint religious services were held. The guild was also a social organization, with frequent meetings for a feast in its hall or in some inn. The guilds in some cities entertained the people with an annual play or procession. It is clear that the members of a craft guild had common interests and shared a common life.

Activities of craft guilds

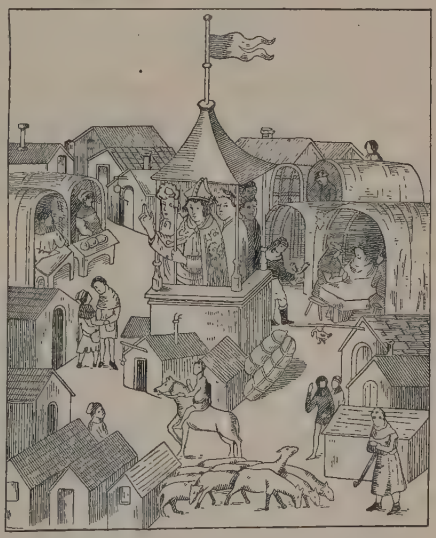
Nearly every town of consequence had a weekly or semi-weekly market, which was held in the market place or in the

churchyard. Outsiders who brought cattle and farm produce for sale in the market were required to pay tolls, either to the town authorities or sometimes to a neighboring nobleman. These market dues survive in the *octroi* collected at the gates of some European cities.

Markets

People in the Middle Ages did not believe in unrestricted competition. It was thought wrong for any one to purchase goods outside of the regular market ("forestalling") or to purchase them in larger quantities than necessary ("engrossing"). A man ought not to charge for a thing more than it was worth, or to buy a thing cheap and sell it dear. The idea prevailed that goods should be sold at their "just price," which was not determined by supply and demand, but by an estimate of the cost of the materials and the labor that went into their manufacture. Laws were often passed fixing this "just price."

"Just price"



A Fair in the Fifteenth Century

After a miniature representing the blessing of a fair.

Many towns also held fairs once or twice a year. They were especially necessary in medieval Europe, because merchants did not keep large quantities or many kinds of goods on their shelves, nor could intending purchasers afford to travel far in search of what they wanted. A fair at an English town, such as Stourbridge, Winchester, or St. Ives, might attract Venetians and Genoese with silk, pepper, and spices of the East, Flemings with fine cloths and linens, Spaniards with iron and wine, Norwegians with tar and pitch

Fairs

from their forests, and Baltic merchants with furs, amber, and salted fish.

Commerce

Commerce in western Europe had almost disappeared as a result of the barbarian invasions and the establishment of feudalism. What little commercial intercourse there was encountered many obstacles. A merchant who went by land from country to country might expect to find bad roads, few bridges, and poor inns. Goods were transported on pack-horses instead of in wagons. Highway robbery was so common that travelers always carried arms and united in bands for better protection. The feudal lords, often themselves not much more than highwaymen, demanded tolls at every bridge and ford and on every road. If the merchant proceeded by water, he must face, in addition to the ordinary hazards of wind and wave, the danger from the ill-lighted coasts and from attacks by pirates. No wonder commerce languished in western Europe during the Middle Ages. It did not begin to assume considerable proportions until the time of the crusades, in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries.

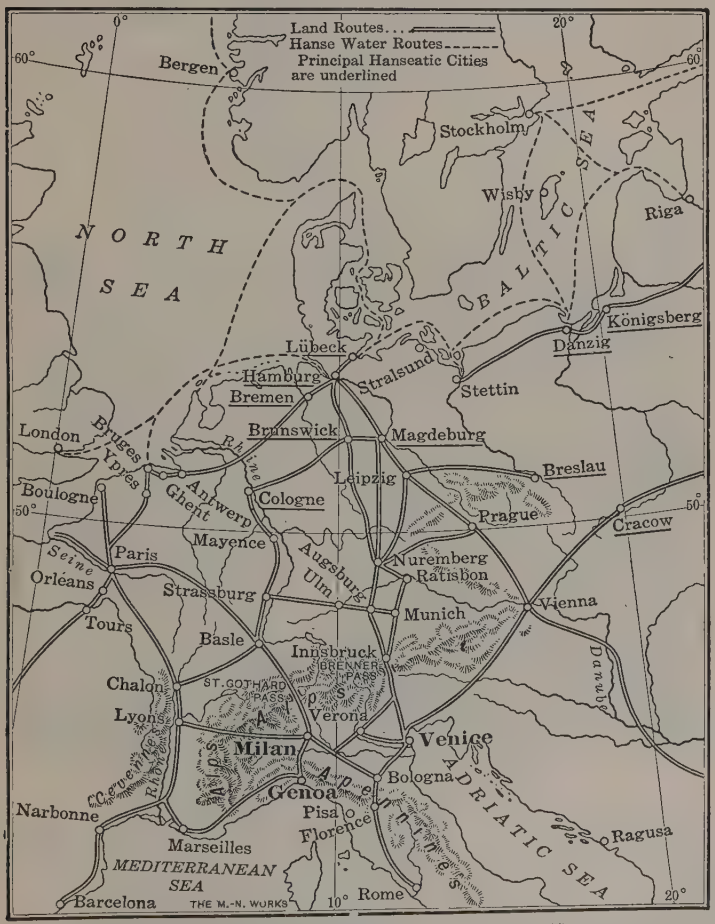
Lack of money

One hindrance to business enterprise in medieval times was the inadequate supply of money. From the beginning of the Christian era to the twelfth century there seems to have been a steady decrease in the amount of money in circulation, partly because so much moved to the Orient in payment for luxuries, and partly because the few mines in western Europe went out of use during the period of the invasions. The scarcity of money helped directly to build up the feudal system, since wages, salaries, and rents could be paid only in personal services or in commodities. The money supply increased during the latter part of the Middle Ages, but it did not become sufficient for the needs of business until the discovery of the New World enabled the Spaniards to tap the wealth of the silver mines in Mexico, Peru, and Bolivia.

"Usury" laws

The prejudice against "usury," as any lending of money at interest was called, made another hindrance to business enterprise. It seemed wrong for a person to receive interest, since he lost nothing by the loan of his

money. Numerous Church laws condemned the receipt of interest as unchristian. If, however, the lender could show that he had suffered any loss, or had been prevented from making



Trade Routes between Northern and Southern Europe in the 13th and 14th Centuries

any gain, through not having his money, he might charge something for its use. People in time began to distinguish between interest moderate in amount and an excessive charge for the

use of money. The latter alone was henceforth prohibited as usurious. Most modern states still have usury laws which fix the legal rate of interest.

The business of money lending, denied to Christians, fell into the hands of the Jews. In nearly all European countries popular prejudice forbade the Jews to engage in agriculture, while the guild regulations barred them from industry. They turned to trade and finance for a livelihood and became the chief capitalists of medieval times.

The Jews as money lenders

Florentine Bankers Settling Accounts

But the law gave the Jews no protection, and kings and nobles constantly extorted large sums from them. The persecutions of the Jews date from the era of the crusades, when it was as easy to excite fanatical hatred against them as against the Moslems. One English king (Edward I) drove the Jews from England, and Ferdinand and Isabella expelled them from Spain.

The Jews were least persecuted in the commercial cities of northern Italy. Florence, Genoa, and Venice in the thirteenth

CAMPANILE AND DOGE'S PALACE, VENICE

The famous Campanile or bell tower of St. Mark's Cathedral collapsed in 1902. A new tower, faithfully copying the old monument, was completed nine years later. The Doge's Palace, a magnificent structure of brick and marble, is especially remarkable for the graceful arched colonnades forming the two lower stories. The blank walls of the upper story are broken by a few large and richly ornamented windows.

MAGDALEN COLLEGE AND BRIDGE, OXFORD

Magdalen is perhaps the most beautiful college in Oxford. The bell tower stands on High Street, the principal thoroughfare of Oxford, and adjoins Magdalen Bridge, built across the Cherwell. The tower was begun in 1492 and completed about thirteen years later.

century were the money centers of Europe. The banking companies in these cities received deposits and then loaned the money to foreign governments and great nobles. The Italian banking houses had branches in the principal cities of Europe. It became possible, therefore, to introduce the use of bills of exchange as a means of balancing debts between countries, without the necessity of sending the actual money. This system of international credit was doubly important at a time when so many risks attended the transportation of the precious metals. Another Florentine invention was bookkeeping by double-entry.

Italian banking

21. National States

Europe in 1914 included twenty national states. More have been added as a result of the World War. Their present boundaries only in part coincide with those fixed by geography. The British Isles, it is true, constitute a single political unit, as nature seems to have intended, but Ireland has been a very unwilling member of the United Kingdom. The Iberian Peninsula, bounded on the north by the Pyrenees, seems to form another natural political unit, yet within the peninsula there are two independent states. On the whole, such great mountain ranges as the Alps, Carpathians, and Balkans, and such great rivers as the Rhine, Danube, and Vistula, have failed to provide permanent frontiers for European states.

Geographical boundaries

It is still more difficult to trace racial boundaries in modern Europe. Peaceful migrations and invasions, beginning in prehistoric times and continuing to the present, have led to much mixture of peoples. Nor is every European state one in language. France includes the district of Brittany, where a Celtic speech prevails. Switzerland has French, German, and Italian-speaking cantons. In the British Isles one may still hear Welsh, Gaelic (in the Highlands), and Irish. The possession of a common language undoubtedly tends to bring peoples together and keep them together, but it is not an indispensable condition of their unity.

Racial and linguistic boundaries

History, rather than geography, race, or even language, explains the present grouping of European states. When the Christian era opened, all the region between the North Sea and the Black Sea and from the Mediterranean to the Rhine and the Danube belonged to the Roman Empire. This Romanized Europe made a solid whole, with one government, one law, and one language. Five hundred years passed, and Europe under the influence of the barbarian invasions began to split up into a number of separate, independent states. This process of state-making continued throughout the Middle Ages. The three strongest states in Europe at the end of the medieval period were England, France, and Spain.

State-making

Great Seal of Henry II (Obverse)

Henry II (reigned 1154–1189) was a grandson of William the Conqueror and the founder of the Plantagenet dynasty of English kings.

The dominions which William the Conqueror and his Norman knights won by the sword in 1066 included neither Wales, Scotland, nor Ireland. It was almost inevitable, however, that in process of time the British Isles should come under a single government. Unification began with the conquest of Wales by Edward I, near the close of the thirteenth century. He also annexed Scotland, but his weakling son, whom the Scots defeated, abandoned the country. It remained independent for the remainder of the medieval period. The English first entered Ireland in the second half of the twelfth century, but for a long time held only a small district about Dublin, known as the Pale. Ireland by its situation could scarcely fail to become an appanage of Great Britain, but the dividing sea combined with differences in race, language, and religion, and with English misgovernment, to prevent anything like a genuine union of the conquerors and the conquered.

Unification of the British Isles

Nature seems to have intended that France should play a leading part in European affairs. The geographical unity of the country is obvious. Mountains and seas form its permanent boundaries, except on the northeast, where the frontier is not well defined. The western coast of France opens on the Atlantic, now the greatest highway of the world's commerce, while on the southeast France touches the Mediterranean, the home of classical civilization. This intermediate position between two seas helps us to understand why French history should form, as it were, a connecting link between ancient and modern times.

Physical France

But the greatness of France has been due, in addition, to the qualities of the French people. Many racial elements have contributed to the population. The blood of prehistoric men, whose monuments and grave mounds are scattered over the land, still flows in the veins of Frenchmen. At the opening of historic times France was chiefly occupied by the Gauls, whom Julius Cæsar found there and subdued. The Gauls, a Celtic-speaking people, formed in later ages the main stock of the French nation, but their language gave place to Latin after the Roman conquest. The Gauls were so thoroughly Romanized that they may best be described as Gallo-Romans. The Germans and the Northmen afterward added a Teutonic element to the population, as well as some infusion of Teutonic laws and customs.

Racial France

France, again, became a great nation because of the greatness of her rulers. The French sovereigns worked steadily to unite the feudal states of medieval France into a real nation under a common government. Their success in this task made them, at the close of the Middle Ages, the strongest monarchs in Europe.

Unification of France

Spain in historic times was conquered by the Carthaginians, who left few traces of their occupation; by the Romans, who thoroughly Romanized the country; by the Visigoths, who founded a Teutonic kingdom; and lastly by the Moors,[1] who introduced Arabian culture and the

Unification of Spain

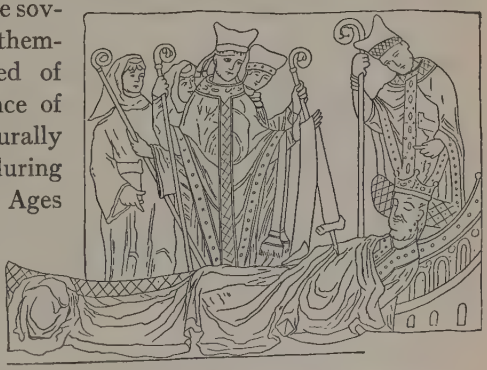
[1] The name "Moor" is applied to the Arab and Berber peoples who occupied North Africa and Spain.

THE BRITISH ISLES DURING THE MIDDLE AGES

faith of Islam. The Moors never wholly overran a fringe of mountain territory in the extreme north of the peninsula. Here arose several Christian states, including León, Castile, Navarre, and Aragón. They steadily enlarged their boundaries, and by the close of the thirteenth century Moorish Spain had been reduced to the kingdom of Granada. Meanwhile, the separate states were coming together, and the marriage of Ferdinand of Aragón to Isabella of Castile completed the process. Ferdinand and Isabella captured Granada in 1492, thus ending Moorish rule in Spain. No effort was made by the Ottoman Turks, who shortly before had taken Constantinople, to defend this last stronghold of Islam in the West.

The complete establishment of feudalism in any country meant, as has been shown, its division into numerous small communities, each with an army, law court, and treasury. A king often became little more than a figurehead, equaled or perhaps surpassed in power by some of his own vassals. The sovereigns, who saw themselves thus stripped of all but the semblance of authority, were naturally anti-feudal, and during the later Middle Ages they began to get the upper hand of their nobles. They formed permanent armies by insisting that all military service should be rendered to themselves and not to the feudal lords. They put down private warfare between the nobles and took over the administration of justice. They developed a revenue system, with the taxes collected by royal officers and deposited in the royal treasury. The sovereigns thus succeeded in creating a unified, centralized government, which all their subjects feared, respected, and obeyed.

Feudalism and royalty



Deathbed of a King

The triumph of royalty over feudalism was in many ways a gain for civilization. Feudalism, though better than no government at all, did not meet the needs of a progressive society. Only strong-handed kings could keep the peace, punish crime, and foster industry and trade. The kings, of course, were generally despotic, repressing not only the privileges of the nobles but also popular liberties. Despotism never became so pronounced in England as on the Continent, because the English people during the Middle Ages developed a Parliament to represent them and the Common Law to protect them from royal oppression. They also compelled various sovereigns to issue charters, especially Magna Carta, which was secured from King John in 1215. This famous document, among other things, provided that henceforth no one might be arrested, imprisoned, or punished in any way, except after a trial by his equals and in accordance with the law of the land. Magna Carta contained the germ of legal principles upon which Englishmen ever afterward relied for protection against their rulers.

The new monarchies

The new monarchies, by breaking down feudalism, promoted the growth of national or patriotic sentiments. Loyalty to the sovereign and to the state which he represented gradually replaced allegiance to the feudal lord. Nobles, clergy, city folk, and peasants began to think of themselves as one people and to have for their "fatherland" the warmest feelings of patriotic devotion. This new nationalism was especially well developed in England, France, and Spain at the close of the Middle Ages.

The new nationalism

22. The Culture of the Later Middle Ages

The later Middle Ages, which abolished slavery and began the extinction of serfdom, developed numerous cities with a flourishing industry and commerce, and produced strong national states out of the chaos of feudalism, were notable for many other contributions to civilization. Architecture revived and flowered in majestic cathedrals. Education likewise revived, especially in the uni-

Progress in the later Middle Ages

REIMS CATHEDRAL

The cathedral of Notre Dame at Reims in northwestern France stands on the site where Clovis was baptized by St. Remi. Here most of the French kings were consecrated with holy oil by the archbishops of Reims. Except the west front, which was built in the fourteenth century, the cathedral was completed by the end of the thirteenth century. The towers, 267 feet high, were originally designed to reach 394 feet. The façade, with its three arched portals, exquisite rose window, and "gallery of the kings," is justly celebrated. The cathedral — walls, roof, statues, and windows — was terribly damaged by the German bombardment during the late war.

CHOIR OF WESTMINSTER ABBEY

The church formerly attached to the Benedictine abbey of St. Peter in Westminster was built in the 13th century, upon the site of an earlier church raised by Edward the Confessor in the 11th century. Since the Norman Conquest all but one of the English sovereigns have been crowned here, and until the time of George III, it served as their last resting place. The abbey is now England's Hall of Fame, where many of her distinguished statesmen, warriors, poets, artists, and scientists are buried.

versities with their thousands of students. The various European languages began to assume the form that they have to-day. A large body of literature, both in poetry and prose, made its appearance. We may now consider these contributions in some detail.

Architecture made little advance in western Europe for several centuries after the barbarian invasions, except in Italy, which was subject to Byzantine influence, and in Spain, which was a center of Moorish culture. The architectural revival dates from the time of Charlemagne, with the adoption of the style of building called Romanesque, because it made use of vaulting, domes, and the round arch, as in Roman structures.[1]

Romanesque architecture

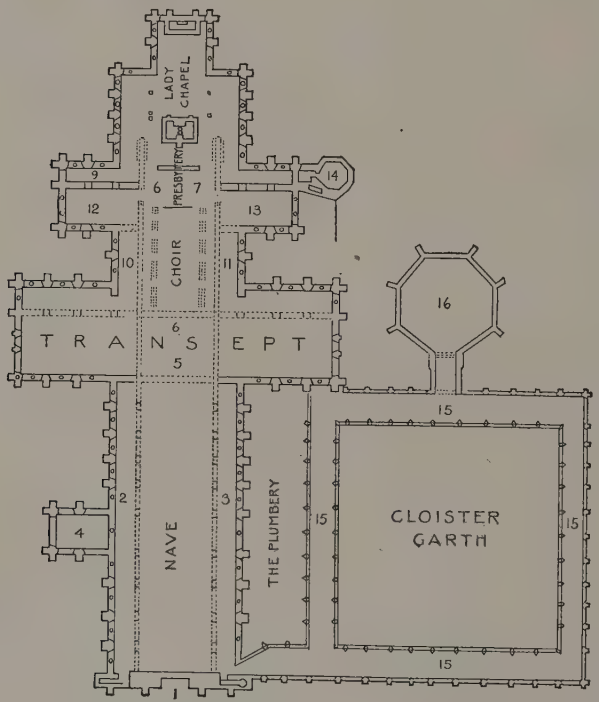
The style of building called Gothic (after the Goths) prevailed during the later Middle Ages. It formed a natural development from Romanesque. The architects of a Gothic cathedral wished to retain the vaulted ceiling, but at the same time to do away with thick, solid walls, which had so little window space as to leave the interior of the building dark and gloomy. They solved this problem, in the first place, by using a great number of stone ribs, which rested on columns and gathered up the weight of the ceiling. Ribbed vaulting made possible higher ceilings, spanning wider areas, than in Romanesque churches. In the second place, the columns supporting the ribs were themselves connected by means of flying buttresses with stout piers of masonry outside the walls of the church. These walls, relieved from the pressure of the ceiling, now became a mere screen to keep out the weather. They could be built of light materials and filled with high and wide windows. Gothic builders also substituted for the Roman round arch the lighter and more graceful pointed arch, which had long been known and used by the Arabs. The interior of a Gothic cathedral, with its vast nave rising in swelling arches to the vaulted roof, its clustered columns, its glowing windows, and infinite variety of ornamentation, forms the most awe-inspiring sanctuary ever raised by man.

Gothic architecture

[1] See page 56.

The universities developed from cathedral and monastic schools, where boys were trained to become priests or monks. The teaching, which lay entirely in the hands of the clergy, was elementary in character. Pupils learned enough Latin grammar to read religious books, if not

Elementary education



PLAN OF SALISBURY CATHEDRAL, ENGLAND

1 Principal west doorway; 2, 3 aisles of nave; 4 north porch; 5 tower; 6, 6 pulpits; 7 throne; 8 altar; 9 font; 10, 11 choir aisles; 12, 13 east or choir transept; 14 sacristy; 15 cloister; 16 chapter house.

always to understand them, and enough music to follow the service of the Church. They also studied arithmetic by means of the awkward Roman notation, received a smattering of geometry and astronomy, and sometimes gained a little knowledge of such subjects as geography, law, and philosophy. Besides these

Church schools, others were maintained by the guilds and also by private benefactors.

There are about fifty European universities dating from the later Middle Ages. They arose, as it were, spontaneously. Western Europe in the eleventh and twelfth centuries felt the thrill of a great intellectual revival. It was stimulated by intercourse with the highly cultivated Arabs in Spain, Sicily, and the East, and with the Greek scholars of Constantinople during the crusades. The desire for instruction became so general that the elementary schools could not satisfy it. Other schools were then opened in the cities, and to them flocked eager learners from every quarter. Such was the origin of the University of Paris, which at one time had more than five thousand students. It furnished the model for the English university of Oxford, as well as for the learned institutions of Scotland, Denmark, Sweden, and Germany. Those in Italy and Spain were modeled, more or less, upon the university of Bologna.

Rise of universities

MASTER, USHER, AND BOYS

The word "university"[1] meant at first simply a union or association. In the Middle Ages all artisans belonged to guilds, and when teachers and pupils associated themselves for study they naturally copied the guild form of organization. After passing part of his examination, a student (apprentice) became a "bachelor of arts" (journeyman) and might teach certain elementary subjects to those beneath

University organization

[1] Latin *universitas*.

him. Upon the completion of the full course — usually six years in length — the bachelor took his final examination and, if successful, received the coveted degree of "master of arts."

Studies

The studies in a medieval university were grouped under the four faculties of arts, theology, law, and medicine. The first-named faculty taught the "seven liberal arts," that is, grammar, rhetoric, logic, arithmetic, music, geometry, and astronomy. Theology, law, and medicine then, as now, were professional studies, taken up after the completion of the arts course.

A University Lecture

After a fifteenth-century manuscript in the British Museum.

Latin as an international language

Latin continued to be an international language throughout the medieval period. The Roman Church used it for papal bulls and other documents. Prayers were recited, hymns were sung, and sometimes sermons were preached in Latin. It was also the language of men of culture everywhere in Christendom. University professors lectured in Latin, students spoke Latin, lawyers addressed judges in Latin, and the merchants in different countries wrote Latin letters to one another. All learned books were composed in Latin until the close of the sixteenth century. This practice has not yet been entirely abandoned by scholars.

Romance languages

Each European country during the later Middle Ages had also its own national tongue. The Romance languages, including modern French, Italian, Spanish, Portuguese, and Rumanian, were derived from the Latin spoken

THE PEOPLES OF EUROPE
at the beginning of the
Tenth Century.
Scale of Miles.
0 50 100 200 300
ATLANTIC OCEAN
NORTH SEA
BALTIC SEA
Celtic
Picts
Scots
Irish
English
Danes
Northmen
Swedes
Finns
L. Ladoga
Novgorod
Lettic
Slavic and Lettic
Dwina R.
Slavs
Kiev
Dnieper
Vistula R.
Poles
Oder R.
Elbe
Saxons
Jutes
Angles
Weser R.
Rhine R.
Thuringians
Suevi
Bohemians
(Czechs)
Moravians
Carpathian Mts.
Dniester R.
Bug R.
Magyars
(Hungarians)
Teutonic
Franks
English Channel
Seine R.
Meuse R.
Bretons
Alamanni
(Swabians)
Bavarians
Danube R.
Slovenes
Drave R.
Theiss R.
Avars
Burgundians
Loire R.
Bay of Biscay
Romance
(French)
Gascons
Basques
Visigoths
Lombards
Po R.
Rhone R.
Romance
(Italians)
Romance
(Portuguese, Spaniards)
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
ADRIATIC SEA
Save R.
Serbs
Romance
(Rumanians)
Danube R.
Bulgarians
BLACK SEA
Constantinople
Greeks
THE M.-N. WORKS, BUFFALO, N.Y.
10° Longitude West from Greenwich
0° Longitude East from Greenwich
10°
20°
30°
40°
50°

by the Romanized inhabitants of the lands now known as France, Italy, Spain, Portugal, and Rumania.[1]

The French language originated from the popular Latin of the Gallo-Romans in the north of France, particularly in the region about Paris. The unification of the French kingdom gradually extended the speech of northern France over the entire country. French contains less than a thousand words introduced by the Teutonic invaders of Gaul. Even fewer in number are the words of Celtic origin. The language, therefore, is almost entirely of Latin derivation.

French

The Teutonic peoples who remained outside what had been the limits of the Roman world continued to use their native tongues during the Middle Ages. Thus arose modern German, Dutch, Flemish, and the various Scandinavian languages (Danish, Norwegian, Swedish, and Icelandic). All these languages in their earliest known forms show unmistakable traces of a common origin.

Teutonic languages

Britain was the only Roman province in the west of Europe where a Teutonic language took root and maintained itself. Here the rough, guttural speech of the Anglo-Saxons completely drove out the popular Latin. The coming of the Normans deeply affected Anglo-Saxon. Norman-French influence helped to make the language simpler, by ridding it of the cumbersome declensions and conjugations which it had in common with all Teutonic tongues. Many new Norman-French words also crept in, as the hostility of the English people toward their conquerors disappeared. Anglo-Saxon, by the middle of the thirteenth century, had so far developed that it may now be called English. The changes in the grammar of the language have been so slight since the end of the fifteenth century that any Englishman of ordinary education can read without difficulty a book written more than four hundred years ago. English has been, and still is, extremely hospitable to new words, so that its vocabulary has grown very fast by the adoption of terms from Latin, French, and other tongues. These have immensely increased the expressiveness of English, while

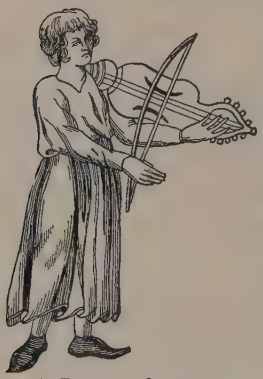
English

[1] See page 54.

giving it a position midway between the very different Romance and Teutonic languages.

Medieval literature includes some notable productions. Many beautiful hymns were composed in Latin. A number of them have been translated into English, such as the familiar "Jerusalem the Golden." Latin hymns made use of rhyme, then something of a novelty, and thus helped to popularize this poetic device. A pleasant glimpse of gay society is afforded by the songs of the troubadours. These professional poets flourished in the south of France. Their verses, composed in the Provençal[1] language, were always sung to the accompaniment of some musical instrument, generally the lute. Romantic love and deeds of chivalry were the two themes which most inspired the troubadours. They, too, took up the use of rhyme, using it so skillfully as to become the teachers of Europe in lyric poetry.

Lyric poetry



A Ballad Singer

Northern France gave birth to epic or narrative poems, describing the exploits of mythical heroes or historic kings. Such poems enjoyed high esteem in aristocratic circles and penetrated all countries where feudalism prevailed. Many of the French epics dealt with Charlemagne and his reign. The oldest and at the same time the finest of them is the *Song of Roland*. It tells how Roland, one of Charlemagne's mighty warriors, fought against the Moors in Spain and how, overcome by numbers, he died gloriously on the field of battle, with his face to the enemy and a prayer on his lips that "sweet France" might never be dishonored. The greatest epic composed in Germany is the *Nibelungenlied*, or *Song of the Nibelungs*. Its author is unknown, but his work has a place among the classics of German literature.

Epic poetry

[1] A Romance language, closely related to French, and spoken in the south of France.

Our survey of medieval times in western Europe has been confined largely to the later Middle Ages. When the Arabs had brought the culture of the Near East to Spain and Sicily, when the Northmen after their wonderful expansion had settled down in Normandy, England and other countries, and when the peoples of western Europe, whether as pilgrims or crusaders, had visited Constantinople and the Holy Land, men's minds received a wonderful stimulus. The intellectual life of Europe was "speeded up," and the way was prepared for the even more rapid advance of civilization in the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries, as the later Middle Ages passed into modern times.

The later Middle Ages and modern times

Studies

1. Why has feudalism been called "confusion roughly organized"? 2. Contrast feudalism as a political system with (*a*) the classical city-states; (*b*) the Roman Empire; and (*c*) modern national states. 3. "Medieval Europe was a camp with a church in the background." Comment on this statement. 4. Mention some respects in which the Roman Church during the Middle Ages differed from any religious society at the present day. 5. Who is the present pope? When and by whom was he elected? In what city does he reside? What is his residence called? 6. Enumerate some of the benefits which the monastic system conferred on Europe. 7. Show that the serf was not a slave or a "hired man" or a tenant-farmer paying rent. 8. Why has the medieval city been called the "birthplace of modern democracy"? 9. Compare the merchant guild with the modern chamber of commerce, and craft guilds with modern trade unions. 10. Why was there no antagonism between labor and capital under the guild system? 11. Are unity of race, a common language, a common religion, and geographical unity of themselves sufficient to make a nation? May a nation arise where these bonds are lacking? 12. "Good government in the Middle Ages was only another name for a public-spirited and powerful monarchy." Comment on this statement. 13. Contrast a Gothic cathedral with a Greek temple, particularly in regard to size, height, support of the roof, windows, and decorative features. 14. Compare medieval with modern universities, noting both resemblances and differences between them. 15. Show how Latin served as an international language in the Middle Ages. 16. What is meant by saying that "French is a mere *patois* of Latin"? 17. On the map facing page 110, trace the language frontier between Romance and Teutonic peoples in the tenth century.

CHAPTER IV

THE TRANSITION TO THE MODERN WORLD[1]

23. The Revival of Learning and Art

THE French word *Renaissance* means Rebirth or Revival. It is a convenient term for all the movements in literature and art, in science and invention, in exploration and colonial expansion, in commerce, industry, and business enterprise, and in religion, law, and politics which marked the transition from the Middle Ages to the modern world. The Renaissance, just because of its transitional character, cannot be exactly dated. In general, it covers the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries. Many Renaissance movements, however, began much earlier, for instance, the rise of national states, replacing feudalism, the growth of cities, and the commercial revival which attended and followed the crusades. The Renaissance thus appears as a gradual development out of the Middle Ages, not as a sudden revolution.

The Renaissance

The name Renaissance applied, at first, only to the rebirth or revival of man's interest in the civilization of classical antiquity. Italy was the original home of this Renaissance. There it first appeared, there it found widest acceptance, and there it reached its highest development. From Italy the Renaissance spread beyond the Alps, until it had made the round of western Europe.

Original home of the Renaissance

Italy was a land particularly favorable to the growth of learning and the arts. The great cities of Milan, Pisa, Genoa, Florence, Venice, and many others had early succeeded in throwing off their feudal burdens and had become independent, self-governing com-

Italian cities of the Renaissance

[1] Webster, *Readings in Medieval and Modern History*, chapter xix, "A Scholar of the Renaissance"; chapter xx, "Renaissance Artists"; chapter xxii, "The Aborigines of the New World"; chapter xxiii, "Martin Luther and the Beginning of the Reformation."

munities. Democracy flourished in them, as in the old Greek city-states. Noble birth counted for little; a man of ability and ambition might rise to any place. The fierce party conflicts within their walls stimulated mental activity and helped to make life full, varied, and intense. Their widespread trade and thriving manufactures made them prosperous. Wealth brought leisure, bred a taste for luxury and the refinements of life, and gave means for the gratification of that taste. People wanted to have about them beautiful pictures, statuary, furniture, palaces, and churches; and they rewarded richly the artists who could produce such things. It is not without significance that the birthplace of the Italian Renaissance was democratic, industrial, and wealthy Florence.

Renewed interest in the classics

Knowledge of the classics did not entirely disappear in western Europe after the barbarian invasions. The monastery and cathedral schools of the Middle Ages had nourished devoted students of ancient books. The Benedictine monks labored zealously in copying the works of pagan as well as Christian authors. The rise of universities made it possible for the student to pursue a fairly extended course in Latin literature at more than one institution of learning. Reverence for the classics finds constant expression in the writings of the Italian poet Dante (1265–1321), whose *Divine Comedy*, describing an imaginary visit to hell, purgatory, and paradise, is a literary masterpiece. Petrarch (1304–1374), another Italian man of letters, did much to increase the interest in the literature of Rome. He traveled widely in Italy, France, and other countries, searching everywhere for ancient manuscripts and employing copyists to transcribe those which he discovered or borrowed. Petrarch, however, knew almost no Greek. His copy of Homer, it is said, he often kissed, though he could not read it. Renewed interest in the literature of Greece dates from the fifteenth century, when the advance of the Ottoman Turks, culminating in the capture of Constantinople in 1453, sent a stream of Greek exiles into Italy. Some of them were learned men, and their conversation and lectures greatly stimulated the study of Greek in the West.

The languages and literatures of ancient Greece and Rome opened up a new world of thought and fancy to scholars. They were delighted by the fresh, original, and liberal ideas which they discovered in the pages of Homer, Plato, Cicero, and other ancient writers. Humanism,[1] as the study of the classics was called, before long gained an entrance into university courses, and from the universities descended to the lower schools. Greek and Latin — the "humanities" — still hold a place in modern systems of education.

Humanism

Italy had fostered the revival of learning by recovering the long-buried treasures of the classics and by providing means for their study. Scholars in Germany, France, and England continued the intellectual movement and gave it widespread currency. The foremost of these scholars was Erasmus (1466–1536), a native of Rotterdam in Holland. His travels and extensive correspondence brought him in touch with many learned men of the day. The most important achievement of Erasmus was an edition of the New Testament in the original Greek, with a Latin version. This work led to a better understanding of the New Testament and also prepared the way for translations of the Scriptures into the vernacular tongues.

Spread of humanism beyond Italy

The renewed interest in classical studies for a while retarded the development of national languages and literatures in Europe. Humanists regarded only Latin and Greek as worthy of attention. But a return to the vernacular was bound to come. The common people, who understood little Latin and no Greek, had now learned to read. Many books were soon written in Italian, Spanish, French, English, and other national languages. This revival of the vernacular meant that henceforth European literature would be more creative and original than was possible when writers merely imitated or translated the classics. The sixteenth century, we remember, was the age of the Spaniard Cervantes, whose *Don Quixote* is still so popular, of the Frenchman Montaigne, author of many essays full of wit and wisdom, and of

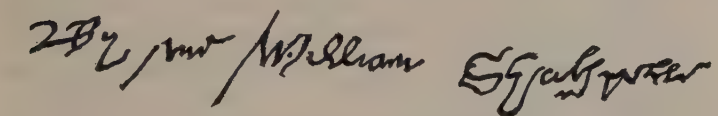
The vernacular tongues

[1] Latin *humanitas*, "literary culture."

the Englishman Shakespeare, whose genius transcended national boundaries and made him a citizen of the world.

Gothic architecture, with its pointed arches, flying buttresses, and traceried windows, never struck deep roots in Italy. The architects of the Renaissance went back to Greek temples and Roman domed buildings for their models, just as the humanists went back to Greek and Latin literature. Long rows of Ionic or Corinthian columns, spanned by round arches, became again the prevailing architectural style. Perhaps the most important feature of Renaissance architecture was the use of the dome for the roofs of churches.

Architecture



Shakespeare's Signature

The majestic cupola of St. Peter's at Rome has become the parent of many domed structures in the Old and in the New World. Architects, however, did not limit themselves to churches. The magnificent palaces of Florence, as well as some of those in Venice, are monuments of the Renaissance era.

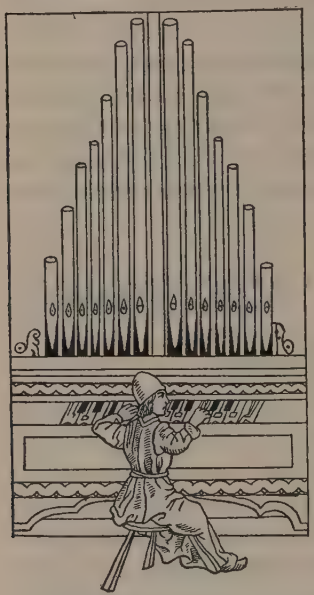
The development of architecture naturally stimulated other arts. Italian sculptors began to copy the ancient bas-reliefs and statues preserved in Rome and other cities. The greatest of Renaissance sculptors was Michelangelo (1475–1564). Though a Florentine by birth, he lived for most of his life in Rome. Michelangelo also won fame in architecture and painting. The dome of St. Peter's was finished after his designs, while the frescoes on the ceiling of the Sistine Chapel in the Vatican display his genius as a painter.

Sculpture

Italian painting began in the service of the Church and long remained religious in character. Artists usually chose subjects from the Bible or the lives of the saints. They did not trouble themselves to secure correctness of costume, but painted ancient Jews, Greeks, and Romans in the garb of Italian gentlemen. Many of their pictures were frescoes,

Painting

that is, the colors were mixed with water and applied to the plaster walls of churches and palaces. After the process of mixing oils with the colors was discovered, pictures on wood or canvas (easel paintings) became common. Italian painters excelled in portraiture. They were less successful with landscapes. A list of the "Old Masters" of Italian painting always includes the names of Leonardo da Vinci, Raphael, and Titian.



A Fifteenth-century Organ

Another modern art, that of music, arose in Italy during the Renaissance. In the sixteenth century, the three-stringed rebeck received a fourth string and became the violin, the most expressive of all musical instruments. A forerunner of the pianoforte also appeared in the harpsichord. The oratorio, a religious drama set to music but without action, scenery, or costume, had its beginning at this time. The opera, however, was little developed until the eighteenth century.

Music

Italian architects found a cordial reception in France, Spain, the Netherlands, and other countries, where they introduced Renaissance styles of building and ornamentation. The celebrated palace of the Louvre in Paris, which is used to-day as an art gallery and museum, dates from the sixteenth century. The French nobles now began to replace their somber feudal dwellings by elegant country houses. Renaissance sculpture also spread beyond Italy throughout Europe. Painters in northern countries at first followed Italian models, but afterward produced masterpieces of their own.

The artistic revival beyond Italy

24. The Revival of Science and Invention

The later Middle Ages were not by any means ignorant of science, but its study received a great impetus after educated men had become familiar with what the ancients had done in mathematics, physics, astronomy, medicine, and other subjects. The pioneers of Renaissance science were Italians, but students in France, England, Germany, and other countries soon took up the work of enlightenment. The first place among them must be given to Copernicus (1473–1543), the founder of modern astronomy. He was a Pole, but lived for many years in Italy. Research and calculation led him to the conclusion that the earth turns upon its own axis, and, together with the other planets, revolves around the sun. The book in which he announced this conclusion did not appear until the very end of his life. Astronomers before Copernicus generally accepted the doctrine, formulated by the Greek scientist Ptolemy in the second century, that the earth was the center of the universe. Some students had indeed suggested that the earth and planets might rotate about a central sun, but Copernicus first gave adequate reasons for such a belief.

Copernicus

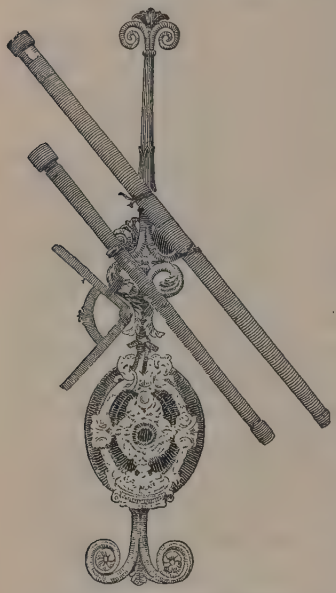
An Italian astronomer, Galileo, made one of the first telescopes — it was about as powerful as an opera glass — and turned it on the heavenly bodies with wonderful results. He found the sun moving unmistakably on its axis, Venus showing phases according to her position in relation to the sun, Jupiter accompanied by revolving moons, or satellites, and the Milky Way composed of a multitude of separate stars. Galileo rightly believed that these discoveries confirmed the theory of Copernicus. Another man of genius, the German Kepler, worked out the mathematical laws which govern the movements of the planets. He made it clear that the planets revolve around the sun in elliptical instead of circular orbits. Kepler's investigations afterward led to the discovery of the law of gravitation.

Galileo and Kepler

Copernicus, Galileo, Kepler, and their fellow workers built up the scientific method. Students in the Middle Ages had

mostly been satisfied to accept what Aristotle and other philosophers had said, without trying to verify their statements. The new scientific method rested on observation and experiment. As Francis Bacon, one of Shakespeare's contemporaries, declared, "All depends on keeping the eye steadily fixed upon the facts of nature, and so receiving their images simply as they are, for God forbid that we should give out a dream of our own imagination for a pattern of the world."

The scientific method



GALILEO'S TELESCOPES

Preserved in the Museum of Ancient Instruments, Florence. A broken object-glass with which Jupiter's satellites were discovered is mounted in the center of the ivory frame.

The advance of science always depends very much upon practical inventions. Without such things as telescopes, microscopes, chronometers, thermometers, and delicate balances, sheer brain power cannot go very far in penetrating nature's secrets. Modern scientists are perhaps no better thinkers than were those of antiquity, but they have far better apparatus and can make careful experiments where the ancients were obliged to rely on shrewd guesses. Three practical inventions worked out at this time have had an especially important effect on the course of civilization. The three were the printing press, gunpowder, and the mariner's compass.

Applied science

The Chinese printed books by means of movable type several centuries before the art of printing became known to Europeans. In Europe a German printer, Johann Gutenberg of Mainz, seems to have been the first to set up a printing press with movable type. His first book, a Latin translation of the Bible, was published probably in 1456.

The printing press

Printing met an especially warm welcome in Italy, where people felt so keen a desire for reading and instruction. By the end of the fifteenth century Venice alone had more than two hundred printing presses. Printed books could be multiplied far more rapidly than manuscripts copied by hand. They could also be far more accurate than manuscripts, for, when an entire edition

AN ALCHEMIST IN HIS LABORATORY

Alchemy was a pseudo science much practiced in the later Middle Ages and in early modern times. The alchemists tried to find the "philosopher's stone," which would turn all metals into gold. Though they never found it, they did learn a good deal about chemistry and so contributed to the development of that science. Notice in this picture the symbols for gold (sun), silver (moon), and mercury. The lion devouring a snake represents an acid dissolving a salt.

was printed from the same type, mistakes in the different copies were eliminated. Furthermore, the invention of printing destroyed the monopoly of learning possessed by the universities and people of wealth. Books were now the possession of the many, not the luxury of the few. Any one who could read had opened to him the gateway of knowledge; he became a citizen, henceforth, of the republic of letters. Printing, which made possible popular education, public libraries, and ultimately

cheap newspapers, thus became a force emancipating mankind from bondage to ignorance.

Gunpowder

The compound of saltpeter, charcoal, and sulphur, known as gunpowder, seems to have been first used by the Chinese and later by the Arabs. Europeans discovered the secret of it as early as the thirteenth century. They regarded it as merely a sort of firework, producing a sudden and brilliant flame, and did not suspect that in a confined space the expansive power of its gases could be used to hurl projectiles. Gunpowder was occasionally manufactured as a propellant during the fourteenth century, but for a long time it made more noise than it did harm. Small brass cannon, throwing stone or iron balls, began at length to displace the medieval siege weapons, and still later muskets took the place of the bow, the crossbow, and the pike. The revolution in the art of warfare introduced by gunpowder had vast importance. It destroyed the usefulness of the castle and enabled the peasant to fight the mailed knight on equal terms. Gunpowder, accordingly, must be included among the forces which brought about the downfall of feudalism.

An Early Printing Press

Enlarged from the printer's mark of I. B. Ascensius. Used on the title pages of books printed by him between 1507–1535.

The mariner's compass

The origin of the mariner's compass is involved in some obscurity. The Chinese have been credited with the discovery that a needle, when rubbed with a lodestone, has the mysterious power of pointing to the north. The Arabs may have introduced this rude form of the compass

among Mediterranean sailors. The instrument, improved by being balanced on a pivot so that it would not be affected by choppy seas, was used by Europeans as early as the thirteenth century. It enabled sailors to find their bearings even in murky weather and on starless nights. The mariner's compass thus came to be of great aid in the long voyages of discovery which began to be made during early modern times.

25. Geographical Discovery

Some commerce with the Orient had been carried on by the cities of Italy and southern France even during the early Middle Ages. The crusades of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries greatly increased this commerce. The crusading expeditions of the knighthood of Europe did not win back the Holy Land to Christendom and so must be accounted a military failure. Their economic results were noteworthy, however. They created a constant demand for the transport of men and goods, encouraged ship-building, and extended the market for eastern goods in European lands. The products of Damascus, Mosul, Alexandria, Cairo, and other cities were carried across the Mediterranean to the Italian seaports, whence they found their way into all European lands. The elegance of the Orient was so enchanting that an enthusiastic crusader called it the "vestibule of Paradise."

The crusades and commerce

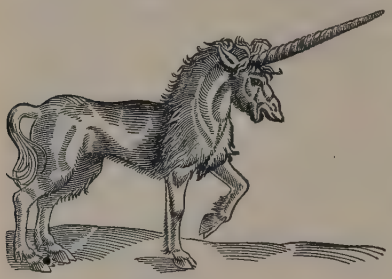
The crusades were followed by many pilgrimages, missions, and trading enterprises of Europeans in the Orient. The most famous of medieval travelers were the Polos. These Venetian merchants made an adventurous journey to Cambaluc (now Peking) in China. The city then formed the capital of the Mongols, who had overrun much of Asia and eastern Europe during the thirteenth century. The Mongol ruler, Kublai Khan, seems to have been anxious to introduce Christianity and European culture among his subjects. He therefore received the Polos in a friendly manner, and they amassed much wealth by trade. Marco Polo even entered the Khan's service and went on several expeditions to distant parts of the Mongol realm. Many years

Medieval exploration of Asia

passed before Kublai would allow his useful guests to return to Europe. When they reached Venice in 1295, after an absence of twenty-four years, their relatives were slow to recognize in them the long-lost Polos.[1]

Marco Polo's book

The story of the Polos, as written down at Marco's dictation, became one of the most popular works of the Middle Ages. In this book people read of far Cathay (China), with its huge cities and swarming population, of mysterious and secluded Tibet, of Burma, Siam, and Cochin-China, with their palaces and pagodas, of the East Indies, famed for spices, of Ceylon, abounding in pearls, and of India, little known since the days of Alexander the Great. Even Cipango (Japan) Marco described from hearsay as an island whose inhabitants were white, civilized, and so rich in gold that the royal palace was roofed and paved with that metal. The accounts of these countries naturally made Europeans more eager than ever to reach the Far East.



THE UNICORN

Medieval peoples believed that many fabulous creatures lived in the interior of Asia. One of these was the unicorn, with the head and body of a horse, the hind legs of an antelope, the beard of a goat, and a long sharp horn set in the middle of the forehead. The picture above is reproduced from an old-time "Historie of Four-Footed Beastes."

Trade routes

During the Middle Ages the spices, drugs, perfumes, gems, dyes, carpets, rugs, tapestries, porcelains, and gems of India, China, and the East Indies entered Europe by three main routes. The central and most important route led by the Persian Gulf and Tigris River to Bagdad, from which city goods went by caravan to Antioch or Damascus. The southern route reached Cairo and Alexandria by way of the Red Sea and the Nile. By taking advantage of the monsoons, a merchant ship could make the voyage from India to Egypt in about three months. The northern route, entirely overland, led to ports on the Black Sea and thence to Constan-

[1] For Marco Polo's route see the map facing this page.

ASIA
UNDER THE MONGOLS
Christian Territory overrun by the Mongols
Moslem Territory overrun by the Mongols
Buddhist and Heathen Territory overrun by the Mongols
Timur's Dominions, 1369-1405 A.D.
Principal Land Routes
Principal Water Routes
Marco Polo's Route, 1271-1295 A.D.
Scale of Miles
0 200 400 600 800
Longitude 70° East from Greenwich
SIBERIA
MONGOLIA
GOLDEN HORDE
PERSIA
TURKESTAN
TIBET
CHINA
INDIA
ARABIA
EGYPT
ARABIAN SEA
BAY OF BENGAL
CHINA SEA
YELLOW SEA
JAPAN SEA
PACIFIC OCEAN
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
RED SEA
CEYLON
BORNEO
SUMATRA
PHILIPPINE ISLANDS
Moscow
Nijni Novgorod
Kazan
Sibir
Sarai
Astrakhan
Karakorum
L. Baikal
L. Balkash
Aral Sea
Bokhara
Samarkand
Merv
Herat
Balkh
Kashgar
Yarkand
Turfan
Peking (Cambaluc)
Nanking
Hindu Kush Mts.
Kabul
Kandahar
Lahore
Delhi
Lhasa
Ormuz
Muscat
Aden
Mecca
Medina
Shiraz
Ispahan
Bagdad
Basra
Mosul
Aleppo
Damascus
Acre
Jerusalem
Alexandria
Cairo
Venice
Genoa
Constantinople
Kiev
Azov
Caffa
Trebizond
Ararat
Tauris
Erzerum
Sivas
Angora
Smyrna
Crimea
Volga R.
Don R.
Dnieper R.
Danube R.
Baltic Sea
Novgorod
Cracow
Lignitz
Hungary
Poland
Lithuania
Russia
Principalities
Ob R.
Yenisei R.
Lena R.
Amur R.
Arctic Circle
Desert of Gobi
Wall of China
Great Wall
Korea
Japan
Japan (Dai Nippon)
Formosa
Tropic of Cancer
Equator
Hoangho R.
Yangtse R.
Canton
Zaitun
Chittagong
Tagong
Hanoi
Pulicat
Calicut
Benares
Diu
Aden
Muscat
Ormuz
Indus R.
Ganges R.
Himalaya Mts.
Nepal
Burma
Siam
Anam
Cambodia
Cochin China
Salwen R.
Mekong R.
Polo's Route
THE M. NEWS WORKS, BUFFALO, N.Y.

tinople. It traversed high mountain passes and long stretches of desert, and hence was profitably used only for the transport of valuable articles small in bulk. Oriental goods, upon reaching the Mediterranean, were then distributed by Italian and German merchants throughout Europe. During the fifteenth century Portuguese and Spaniards became competitors for this lucrative Oriental trade. The Mediterranean being closed to them by the naval power of Venice, they tried to find an all-water route to the Indies, either around Africa into the Indian Ocean or directly across the Atlantic. The Portuguese were the first in the field.

Prince Henry the Navigator, 1394–1460

The genius of Dom Henriques, more familiarly known in history as Prince Henry the Navigator, opened the way oceanwards for Portugal. The son of a Portuguese king, he relinquished a military career and for more than forty years devoted his wealth, learning, and enthusiasm to geographical discovery. Under his direction better maps were made, the astrolabe was improved, the compass was placed on vessels, and seamen were instructed in all the nautical knowledge of the time. Prince Henry then dispatched expedition after expedition southward to explore the African coast. It is improbable that he himself had definitely in mind the opening-up of a trade route to the Far East; his spirit seems to have been that of a crusader rather than that of a merchant. By rounding the extremity of Africa — then believed to extend not far below the equator — he planned to effect a junction with the half-fabulous Christian empire of "Prester John" and in alliance with that potentate to crush the Turks and liberate Palestine. But the religious motive for exploration soon gave way to the commercial motive, and the Portuguese, not long after Prince Henry's death, set out to seek the wealth of the Indies.

Exploration of the African coast

The Portuguese began by rediscovering the Madeira Islands and the Azores, first visited by Europeans in the fourteenth century but subsequently forgotten. Then they turned southward along the uncharted African coast, toward waters which no keel had broken since the time of the Phœnicians. Cape Bojador, the previous

boundary of the unknown, was passed by one of Prince Henry's captains in 1434. Eleven years after another sailor got as far as Cape Verde, or "Green Cape," so called because of its luxuriant vegetation. Later voyages brought the Portuguese to Sierra Leone, then to the great bend in the African coast formed by the Gulf of Guinea, then across the equator, and at length to the mouth of the Congo. In 1487 Bartholomew Diaz rounded the southern extremity of Africa. The story goes that he named

PORTUGUESE EXPLORATION OF THE AFRICAN COAST

it the Cape of Storms, and that the king of Portugal, recognizing its importance as a stage on the route to the East, rechristened it the Cape of Good Hope.

A daring mariner, Vasco da Gama, opened the sea-gates to the Indies. He set sail from Lisbon with four tiny ships and after leaving the Cape Verde Islands made a wide sweep into the South Atlantic. Five months passed before Africa was seen again. Da Gama doubled the Cape of Good Hope in safety, skirted the eastern

Da Gama's voyage, 1497–1499

shore of Africa, and at length secured the services of a Moslem pilot to guide him across the Indian Ocean. In 1498 he reached Calicut, an important commercial city on the southwest coast of India. When Da Gama returned to Lisbon after an absence

BEHAIM'S GLOBE

The ideas of European geographers in the period just preceding the discovery of America are represented on a map, or rather a globe, which dates from 1492. It was made by a German navigator, Martin Behaim, for his native city of Nuremberg, where it is still preserved. Behaim shows the mythical island of St. Brandan, lying in mid-ocean, and beyond it Cipango, the East Indies, and Cathay. The outlines of North America and South America here shown, do not appear, of course, on the original globe.

of over two years, he brought back a cargo which repaid sixty times the cost of the expedition. The Portuguese king received him with high honor and created him Admiral of the Indies.

Six years before Vasco da Gama cast anchor in the harbor of Calicut, another intrepid sailor, seeking the Indies by a western

route, accidentally discovered America. It does not detract from the glory of Columbus to show that the way for his discovery had been long in preparation. In the first place, the theory that the earth is round had been familiar to the Greeks and Romans, and to some learned men even in the darkest period of the Middle Ages. The awakening of interest in Greek science called renewed attention to the statements regarding the sphericity of the earth by Ptolemy and other ancient geographers.

The globular theory

In the second place, men had long believed that west of Europe, beyond the Strait of Gibraltar, lay mysterious lands. This notion first appears in the writings of the Greek philosopher, Plato, who repeats an old tradition concerning Atlantis. According to Plato, Atlantis had been an island, continental in size, but thousands of years before his time it had sunk beneath the sea. A widespread legend of the Middle Ages also described the visit made by St. Brandan, an Irish monk, to the "promised land of the saints," an earthly paradise far out in the Atlantic. St. Brandan's Island was marked on early maps, and voyages in search of it were sometimes undertaken.

Atlantis and St. Brandan's Island

All know the story of the first voyage of Columbus. When he started out, he firmly believed that a journey of only four thousand miles would bring him to Cipango and the realms of the Great Khan of Cathay. The error was natural enough, for Ptolemy had reckoned the earth's circumference to be about one sixth less than it is, and Marco Polo had given an exaggerated idea of the distance to which Asia extended toward the east. The name West Indies, applied to the islands discovered by Columbus, still remains as a testimony to this error.

First voyage of Columbus, 1492–1493

Shortly after the return of Columbus from his first voyage, Pope Alexander VI, in response to a request by Ferdinand and Isabella, issued a bull granting these sovereigns exclusive rights over the newly discovered lands. In order that the Spanish possessions should be clearly marked off from those of the Portuguese, the pope laid down an imagi-

The Demarcation Line, 1493

nary line of demarcation in the Atlantic, three hundred miles west of the Azores and the Cape Verde Islands. All new discoveries west of the line were to belong to Spain and all those east of it, to Portugal.[1] This arrangement, which excluded France, England, and other European countries from the New World, could not be long maintained.

The Demarcation Line had a good deal to do in bringing about the first voyage around the globe. So far no one had yet realized the dream of Columbus to reach the lands of spice and silk by sailing westward. Ferdinand Magellan, a Portuguese in the service of Spain, believed that the Moluccas, or Spice Islands, lay within the Spanish sphere of influence and that a route to them could be found through some strait at the southern end of South America. The Spanish ruler, Charles V, grandson of the Isabella who had supported Columbus, looked with favor upon Magellan's ideas and provided a fleet of five vessels for the undertaking. After exploring the eastern coast of South America, Magellan came at length to the strait which now bears his name. He sailed boldly through this strait into an ocean called by him the Pacific, because of its peaceful aspect. A voyage of ninety-eight days across the Pacific brought him to the Marianas Islands. Magellan then proceeded to the Philippines, where he was killed in a fight with the natives. His men, however, managed to reach

Circumnavigation of the globe, 1519–1522

THE "SANTA MARIA," FLAGSHIP OF COLUMBUS
After the model reproduced for the Columbian Exposition at Chicago, 1893.

[1] In 1494 the Demarcation Line was shifted about eight hundred miles farther to the west. Six years later, when the Portuguese discovered Brazil, that country was found to lie within their sphere of influence. See the map between pages 130-131.

the Spice Islands. A single ship, the *Victoria*, subsequently carried back to Spain the few sailors who had survived the hardships of a journey lasting nearly three years.

Results of the circumnavigation

Magellan's voyage forms a landmark of geographical discovery. It proved that America, at least on the south, had no connection with Asia, and that the western sea-route to the Indies, of which Columbus dreamed, really existed. Furthermore, it revealed the enormous extent of the Pacific Ocean. Men now knew of a certainty that the earth is round and in the distance covered by Magellan they had a rough approximation as to its size. The circumnavigation of the globe ranks with the discovery of the sea-routes to the Indies and to America among the most significant events of history. Magellan stands beside Da Gama and Columbus in the company of great explorers.

26. Colonial Empires

Portuguese ascendancy in the East

The Portuguese, after Da Gama's voyage, hastened to appropriate the wealth of the Indies. By the middle of the sixteenth century they had acquired almost complete ascendancy throughout southern Asia and the adjacent islands. Their colonial empire included many trading posts in Africa, Ormuz at the entrance to the Persian Gulf, the western coast of India, Ceylon, Malacca at the end of the Malay Peninsula, and various possessions in the Malay Archipelago. They also established commercial relations with China, and even with Japan.

Portuguese trade monopoly

The Portuguese came to the East as the successors of the Arabs, who for centuries had carried on an extensive trade in the Indian Ocean. Having dispossessed the Arabs, the Portuguese took care to shut out all European competitors. Only their own merchants were allowed to bring goods from the Indies to Europe by the Cape route. Lisbon, the capital, formed the chief depot for spices and other eastern commodities. The French, English, and Dutch went there to buy them and took the place of Italian and German merchants in distributing them throughout Europe.

80°
100°
120°
140°
160°
180°
160°
140°
120°
60°
40°
20°
0°
20°
40°
60°
ASIA
EAST
INDIES
PACIFIC
OCEAN
AUSTRALIA
Macao
Malacca
BORNEO
SUMATRA
JAVA
PHILIPPINE IS.
LADRONE IS.
SPICE IS. (MOLUCCAS)
CELEBES
NEW GUINEA
Drake's Bay
Tropic of Cancer
Sir Francis Drake, 1579
Spanish Trade Route to the Philippines
Acapulco
Equator
Magellan, 1521
Tropic of Capricorn
Pope Alexander VI's demarcation line 1493
PORTUGUESE AND SPA
COLONIAL EMPIRE
IN THE SIXTEENTH CEN
Portuguese
Spanish
Longitude

60° 40° 20° 0° 20° 40° 60° 80°
Arctic Circle
ATLANTIC OCEAN
EUROPE
ASIA
AFRICA
INDIAN OCEAN
SOUTH AMERICA
DIES
John Cabot, 1497
NEWFOUNDLAND
John Cabot, 1498
Plymouth
Lisbon
Cadiz
Columbus 1st Voyage, 1492-93
Spanish Trade Route
Ormuz
INDIA
Goa
Diu
Cannanor
Calicut
SOCOTRA
Cochin
Congo R.
Mombasa
Trade Route
Vasco da Gama, 1497
Portug.
Pernambuco
Bahia
Mozambique
MADAGASCAR
Drake, 1580
Eloano in Magellan's ship "Victoria" 1522
Drake 1577
TIERRA DEL FUEGO
Pope Alexander VI's demarcation line, 1493
Scale of Miles
0 500 1000 2000 3000 4000 5000
THE M.-N. WORKS, BUFFALO, N. Y. 10-15
60° Greenwich 60° 40° 20° 0° Longitude 20° East 40° from 60° Greenwich 80°

The colonial empire which the Portuguese built up in India and the East Indies collapsed during the seventeenth century before the attacks of the French, the English, and the Dutch. Their colonial empire in Brazil lasted until the nineteenth century, and their influence still endures there, in spite of the severance of political ties. The language, religion, literature, and customs of Brazil are those of Portugal. It is a marvelous thing that this insignificant parent state, insignificant in area, in natural resources, and in population, should have been transplanted, as it were, to the boundless spaces of the New World.

Portugal in America

The discoverers of the New World were naturally the pioneers in its exploration. The adventures of Ponce de León, who discovered Florida in 1513, of Balboa, who sighted the Pacific in the same year, of Cortés, who overthrew the Aztec power in Mexico, of Pizarro, who conquered the Incas of Peru, of De Soto, and of Coronado are familiar to every reader of American history. These men laid the foundations of the Spanish colonial empire. It included Florida, New Mexico, California, Mexico, Central America, the West Indies, and all South America except Brazil.[1]

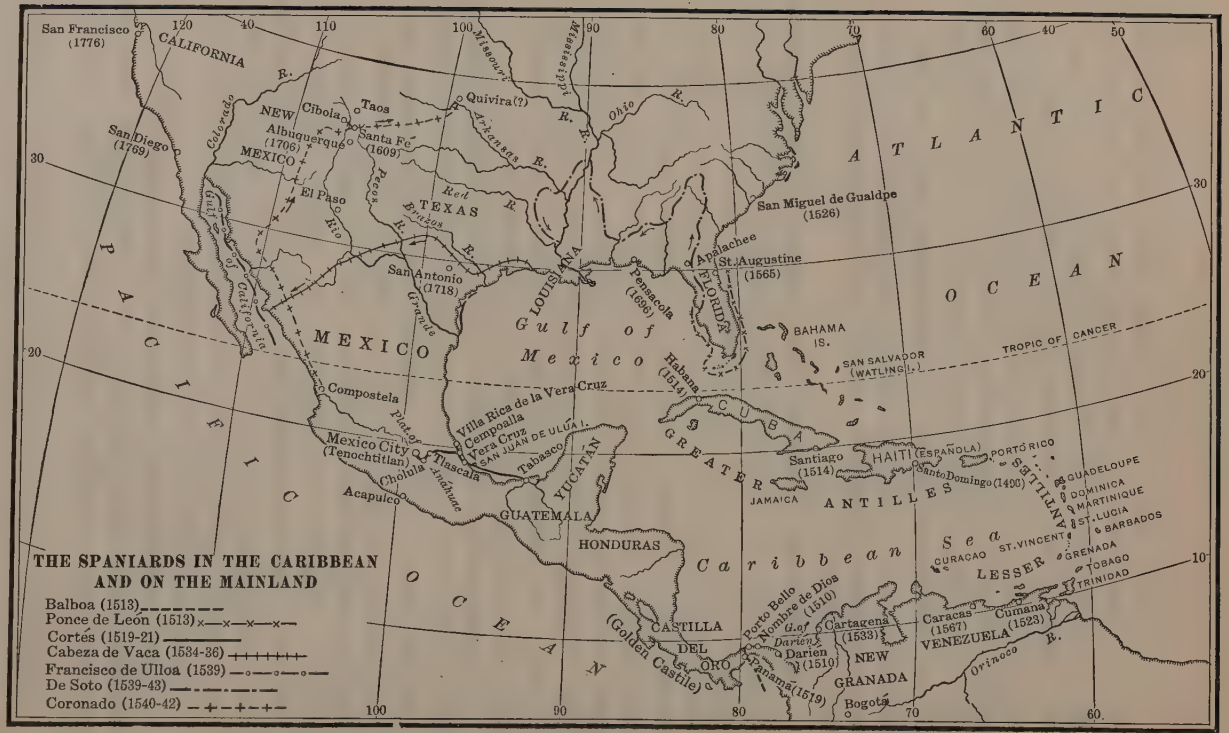
Spanish ascendancy in the West

The government of Spain administered its colonial dominions in the spirit of monopoly. As far as possible, it excluded French, English, Dutch, and other foreigners from trading with Spanish America. It also discouraged shipbuilding, manufacturing, and even the cultivation of the vine and the olive, lest the colonists should compete with home industries. The colonies were regarded only as a work-shop for the production of the precious metals and raw materials. This unwise policy partly accounts for the backwardness of Mexico, Peru, and other Spanish-American countries.

Spanish trade monopoly

The colonial empire of Spain on the American mainland lasted almost exactly three hundred years. During this time she gave her language, religion, law, political institutions, economic

[1] The Philippines, which Magellan discovered in 1521, also belonged to Spain, though by the Demarcation Line these islands lay within the Portuguese sphere of influence.


THE SPANIARDS IN THE CARIBBEAN AND ON THE MAINLAND
Balboa (1513)
Ponce de Leon (1513)
Cortés (1519-21)
Cabeza de Vaca (1534-36)
Francisco de Ulloa (1539)
De Soto (1539-43)
Coronado (1540-42)
San Francisco (1776)
CALIFORNIA
San Diego (1769)
NEW MEXICO
Cibola
Taos
Albuquerque (1706)
Santa Fé (1609)
Quivira(?)
El Paso
TEXAS
San Antonio (1718)
Gulf of California
Colorado R.
Rio Grande
Pecos R.
Red R.
Brazos R.
Arkansas R.
Missouri R.
Mississippi R.
Ohio R.
LOUISIANA
Pensacola (1698)
FLORIDA
Apalachee
St. Augustine (1565)
San Miguel de Gualdpe (1526)
ATLANTIC OCEAN
PACIFIC OCEAN
Gulf of Mexico
MEXICO
BAHAMA IS.
SAN SALVADOR (WATLING I.)
TROPIC OF CANCER
Habana (1514)
CUBA
Compostela
Villa Rica de la Vera Cruz
Coatzacoalcos
Vera Cruz
SAN JUAN DE ULUA
Tabasco
YUCATAN
Mexico City (Tenochtitlan)
Tlascala
Cholula
Acapulco
GUATEMALA
HONDURAS
Santiago (1514)
HAITI (ESPAÑOLA)
PORTO RICO
Santo Domingo (1400)
JAMAICA
GREATER ANTILLES
LESSER ANTILLES
GUADELOUPE
DOMINICA
MARTINIQUE
ST. LUCIA
BARBADOS
ST. VINCENT
GRENADA
TOBAGO
TRINIDAD
CURACAO
Caribbean Sea
Porto Bello
Nombre de Dios (1510)
G. of Darien
Darien (1510)
Cartagena (1533)
Caracas (1567)
Cumana (1523)
VENEZUELA
CASTILLA DEL ORO (Golden Castile)
Panamá (1519)
NEW GRANADA
Bogotá
Orinoco R.
120
110
100
90
80
70
60
50
40
30
20
10

system, and intellectual life to half the New World. The Spanish colonial empire affords, therefore, a great historical example of the transmission of culture imperially, somewhat as imperial Rome spread Roman civilization throughout western Europe. Her work, like that of Rome, endures. It has left an abiding impress upon the millions of Spanish-speaking folk who now people the two continents between the Rio Grande and the Strait of Magellan.

Spain in America

The English based their claim to the right to colonize North America on the discoveries of John Cabot, an Italian mariner in the service of King Henry VII. Cabot sailed in 1497 from Bristol across the northern Atlantic and made land somewhere between Labrador and Nova Scotia. The following year he seems to have undertaken a second voyage and to have explored the coast of North America nearly as far as Florida. Cabot found neither gold nor opportunities for profitable trade. His expeditions, therefore, were considered a failure, and for a long time the English took no further interest in exploring the New World.

The Cabot voyages, 1497–1498

The discovery by Magellan of a strait leading into the Pacific aroused hope that a similar passage, beyond the regions controlled by Spain, might exist in North America. The French king, Francis I, sent Jacques Cartier to look for it. Cartier found the gulf and river which he named after St. Lawrence, and also tried to establish a settlement near where Quebec now stands. The venture was not successful, and the French did not undertake the colonization of Canada until the first decade of the seventeenth century.

Cartier's voyages, 1534–1542

27. Europe and America

The New World contained two virgin continents, rich in natural resources and capable of extensive colonization. The native peoples, comparatively few in number and barbarian in culture, could not offer much resistance to the explorers, missionaries, traders, and colonists from the Old World. The Spanish and Portuguese in the sixteenth century, followed by the English, French, and Dutch in the

Expansion of Europe

seventeenth century, repeopled America and brought to it European civilization. Europe expanded into a Greater Europe beyond the ocean.

Shifting of trade routes

In the Middle Ages the Mediterranean and the Baltic had been the principal highways of commerce. The discovery of America, followed immediately by the opening of the Cape route to the Indies, shifted commercial activity from these inclosed seas to the Atlantic Ocean. Venice, Genoa, Hamburg, Lübeck, and Bruges gradually gave way, as trading centers, to Lisbon and Cadiz, Bordeaux and Cherbourg, Antwerp and Amsterdam, London and Liverpool. One may say, therefore, that the year 1492 inaugurated the Atlantic period of European history.

Increased production of the precious metals

The discovery of America revealed to Europeans a new source of the precious metals. The Spaniards soon secured large quantities of gold by plundering the Indians in Mexico and Peru of their stored-up wealth. The output of silver much exceeded that of gold, as soon as the Spaniards began to work the wonderfully rich silver mines of Potosí in Bolivia. It is estimated that, by the end of the sixteenth century, the American mines had produced at least three times as much gold and silver as had been current in Europe at the beginning of the century.

Consequences of the enlarged money supply

The Spaniards could not keep this new treasure. Having few industries themselves, they were obliged to send it out, as fast as they received it, in payment for their imports of European goods. Spain acted as a huge sieve through which the gold and silver of America entered all the countries of Europe. Money, now more plentiful, purchased far less than in former times; in other words, the prices of all commodities rose, wages advanced, and manufacturers and traders had additional capital to use in their undertakings. The Middle Ages suffered from the lack of sufficient money with which to do business; from the beginning of modern times the world has been better supplied with the indispensable medium of exchange.

America was much more than a treasury of the precious

metals. Many commodities, hitherto unknown, soon found their way from the New World to the Old. Among these were maize, the potato, which, when cultivated in Europe, became the "bread of the poor," chocolate and cocoa made from the seeds of the cacao tree, Peruvian bark, or quinine, so useful in malarial fevers, cochineal, the dye-woods of Brazil, and the mahogany of the West Indies. America also sent to Europe large supplies of cane-sugar, molasses, fish, whale-oil, and furs. These new American products became common articles of consumption and so raised the standard of living in European countries.

New commodities imported

The Atlantic Ocean formed henceforth, not only the commercial, but also the political center of the world. The Atlantic-facing countries, first Portugal and Spain, then Holland, France, and England, became the great powers of Europe. Their trade rivalries and contests for colonial possessions have been potent causes of European wars for the last four hundred years.

Political effects of the discoveries

The sixteenth century in Europe was the age of that revolt against the Roman Church called the Protestant Reformation. During this period, however, the Church won her victories over the American aborigines. What she lost of territory, wealth, and influence in Europe was offset by what she gained in America. Furthermore, the region now occupied by the United States furnished in the seventeenth century an asylum from religious persecution, as was proved when Puritans settled in New England, Roman Catholics in Maryland, and Quakers in Pennsylvania. The vacant spaces of America offered plenty of room for all who would worship God in their own way. The New World became a refuge from the intolerance of the Old.

Effects of the discoveries upon religion

28. Reformation and Counter Reformation

The Reformation has a place beside the revival of learning and art, the development of science and invention, and the progress of geographical discovery, among the great movements ushering in the modern world. It involved,

Nature of the Reformation

as we shall learn, a decisive break with both the teachings of the Church and the authority of the Papacy.

There were several causes of the Reformation. Politically, it expressed the opposition of European sovereigns to the secular authority wielded by the Church. Having triumphed over feudalism, the sovereigns wished to bring the Church, as well, within their jurisdiction. They tried to restrict the privileges of ecclesiastical courts, to impose taxes on the clergy, as on their own subjects, and to dictate the appointment of bishops and abbots to office. The result was constant friction between Church and State in one European country after another. Economically, the Reformation voiced a protest, on the part of both upper and lower classes, against the increasing luxury and extravagance of the papal court. The protest rang loudest in Germany, where there was no strong king to prohibit the drain of money to Rome, as French and English rulers had done.

Political and economic causes of the Reformation

The political and economic causes of the Reformation combined with those strictly religious in character. Thoughtful men in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries had criticized the worldliness of the Church, as reflected in the lives of many of its officers, and had urged that even bishops, cardinals, and popes should imitate the poverty of the Apostles. Some reformers, such as John Wycliffe in England and John Huss in Bohemia, went much further and demanded wholesale changes in Catholic belief and worship. The views of Wycliffe and Huss were now to be expressed in Germany during the sixteenth century by the real founder of the Reformation, Martin Luther.

Religious causes of the Reformation

Luther, who was a monk and a professor of theology in the University of Wittenberg, began his reforming career with an attack upon the indulgence system as found in Germany. An indulgence is a letter of pardon relieving a truly penitent sinner from some or all of the penances (punishments) which the Church would otherwise impose upon him. Its benefits, according to Catholic teaching, are also applied to the souls of the dead in purgatory. The pope granted

The Ninety-five Theses

indulgences to crusaders, pilgrims, and to those who contributed money for a pious object, such as the erection of a church or a convent. Many German princes opposed this method of raising funds for the Church, because it took so much money out of their dominions. Luther condemned it on religious grounds, pointing out that common people, who could not understand the Latin in which indulgences were written, often thought that they wiped away the penalties of sin, even without true repentance. Luther also denied the efficacy of indulgences for souls in purgatory. These and other criticisms were set forth by him in ninety-five theses or propositions, which he offered to defend against all opponents. In accordance with the custom of medieval scholars, Luther posted the theses on the door of the church at Wittenberg, where all might see them. They were composed in Latin, but were at once translated into German, printed, and spread broadcast over Germany. Their effect was so great that before long the granting of indulgences in that country almost ceased.

The pope, at first, had paid little attention to the controversy about indulgences, declaring it a "mere squabble of monks," but he now issued a bull against Luther, ordering him to recant within sixty days or be excommunicated. The papal bull did not frighten Luther or withdraw from him popular support. He burnt it in the market square of Wittenberg, in the presence of a concourse of students and townsfolk. This dramatic action deeply stirred all Germany. The pope then urged the Holy Roman Emperor, Charles V, to put Luther under the ban of the empire. Charles was willing to comply, but the German princes insisted that Luther must not be condemned unheard. Luther, accordingly, was summoned before a great assembly (Diet) of princes and ecclesiastical dignitaries at Worms. Here he refused to retract anything he had written, unless his statements could be shown to contradict the Bible. "It is neither right nor safe to act against conscience," Luther said. "God help me. Amen."

Diet of Worms, 1521

The Diet of Worms proclaimed Luther a heretic and an outlaw, and the pope excommunicated him. The support of powerful

friends enabled him, however, to defy both pope and emperor as long as he lived. He made a German translation of the Bible, which the printing press soon multiplied in thousands of copies, composed many fine hymns and a catechism, flooded the country with pamphlets against the Roman Church, and wrote innumerable letters to his adherents. Luther became in this way the leader, as well as the founder, of the German Reformation.

Luther's leadership

The Reformation in Germany made a wide appeal. To patriotic Germans it seemed a revolt against a foreign power — the Italian Papacy. To men of pious mind it offered the attractions of a simple faith based directly on the Bible. Worldly minded princes saw in it an opportunity to despoil the Church of lands and revenues. Luther's teachings, accordingly, found acceptance among many people. Priests married, monks left their monasteries, and the "Reformed Religion" took the place of Roman Catholicism in most parts of northern and central Germany. South Germany, however, did not fall away from the pope and has remained Roman Catholic to the present time.

The "Reformed Religion"

Luther's doctrines also spread into Scandinavian lands. The rulers of Denmark, Norway, and Sweden closed the monasteries and compelled the Roman Catholic bishops to surrender ecclesiastical property to the Crown. Lutheranism became henceforth the official religion of these three countries.

Lutheranism in Scandinavia

The Reformation in Switzerland began with Huldreich Zwingli, a priest of Zurich. He was the contemporary, but not the disciple, of Luther. Zwingli denied the supremacy of the pope and proclaimed the Scriptures as the sole rule of faith and conduct. Many of the Swiss cantons accepted his teachings and broke away from obedience to Rome. Another founder of Protestantism in Switzerland was the Frenchman John Calvin, who passed most of his life at Geneva. He translated the Bible into French, wrote commentaries on nearly all the Scriptural books, and set forth in his famous work, *Institutes of the Christian Religion*, the main

Calvinism

principles of Protestant theology. Calvin's influence was not confined to Geneva or even to Switzerland. The men whom he trained and on whom he set the stamp of his stern, earnest, God-fearing character spread Calvinism over a great part of western Europe. It became in Holland and Scotland the prevailing type of Protestantism, and in France and England it deeply affected the national life. The Puritans in the seventeenth century carried Calvinism across the sea to New England, where it formed the dominant faith in colonial times.

ZWINGLI
After a painting by Hans Asper.

Beginning of the English Reformation

The Reformation in Germany and Switzerland started as a national and popular movement; in England it began as the act of a despotic sovereign, Henry VIII, the second king of the Tudor dynasty. He broke with the pope because the latter would not consent to his divorce from his queen, Catherine of Aragón, who was the aunt of the Holy Roman Emperor and Spanish monarch, Charles V. Henry VIII finally obtained the desired divorce from an English court, and in defiance of the papal bull of excommunication married a pretty maid-in-waiting, named Anne Boleyn. The king's next step was to secure from his subservient Parliament a series of laws abolishing the pope's authority in England. An Act of Supremacy (1534) declared the English king to be "the only supreme head on earth of the Church of England," with power to appoint all ecclesiastical officers and dispose of the papal revenues. The suppression of the monasteries and the appropriation of their wealth for himself and his favorites soon

followed this legislation. While Henry VIII thus separated England from the control of the Papacy, he remained Roman Catholic in belief to the day of his death.

Completion of the English Reformation

The Reformation made rapid progress in England during the reign of Henry's son and successor, Edward VI. The young king's guardian allowed reformers from the Continent to come to England, and the doctrines of Luther, Zwingli, and Calvin were freely preached there. In order that religious services might be conducted in the language of the people, Archbishop Cranmer and his coworkers prepared the *Book of Common Prayer*. It consisted of translations into noble English of various parts of the old Latin service books. With some changes, it is still used in the Church of England and the Protestant Episcopal Church of the United States. The short reign of Mary Tudor, daughter of Catherine of Aragón, was marked by a temporary setback to the Protestant cause. The queen prevailed on Parliament to secure a reconciliation with Rome. She also married her Roman Catholic cousin, Philip II of Spain, the son of Charles V. Mary now began a severe persecution of the Protestants. Many eminent reformers perished, among them Cranmer, the former archbishop. Mary died childless, after ruling about five years, and the crown passed to Anne Boleyn's daughter, Elizabeth. Under Elizabeth Anglicanism again replaced Roman Catholicism as the religion of England.

Extent of Protestantism

The Reformation was practically completed before the close of the sixteenth century. In 1500 the Roman Church embraced all Europe west of Russia and the Balkan Peninsula. By 1600 nearly half of its former subjects had renounced their allegiance. The greater part of Germany and Switzerland and all of Denmark, Norway, Sweden, Holland, England, Wales, and Scotland became independent of the Papacy. The unity of western Christendom, which had been preserved throughout the Middle Ages, thus disappeared and has not since been revived.

The reformers agreed in substituting for the authority of popes and church councils the authority of the Bible. They

went back fifteen hundred years to the time of the Apostles and tried to restore what they believed to be apostolic Christianity. Hence they rejected such doctrines and practices as were supposed to have developed during the Middle Ages. These included belief in purgatory, veneration of relics, invocation of saints, devotion

Common features of Protestantism

EXTENT OF THE REFORMATION, 1524–1572 A.D.

to the Virgin, indulgences, pilgrimages, and the greater number of the sacraments. The Reformation also abolished the monastic system and priestly celibacy. The sharp distinction between clergy and laity disappeared; for priests married, lived among the people, and no longer formed a separate class. In general, Protestantism affirmed the ability of every man to

find salvation without the aid of ecclesiastics. The Church was no longer the only "gate of heaven."

Protestant sects

The Protestant denial of the authority of popes and church councils led inevitably to differences of opinion among the reformers. There were various ways of interpreting that Bible to which they appealed as the rule of faith and conduct. Consequently, Protestantism split up into many sects or denominations, and these have gone on multiplying to the present day. Nearly all, however, are offshoots from the three main varieties of Protestantism (Lutheranism, Calvinism, and Anglicanism) which appeared in the sixteenth century.

The Reformation and freedom of thought

The break with Rome did not introduce religious liberty into Europe. Nothing was further from the mind of Luther, Calvin, and other reformers than the toleration of beliefs unlike their own. The early Protestant sects punished dissenters as zealously as the Roman Church punished heretics. Complete freedom of conscience and the right of private judgment in religion have been secured in most countries of Europe only within the last hundred years.

The Reformation and morals

The Reformation, however, did deepen the moral life of European peoples. The faithful Protestant or Roman Catholic tried to show by his conduct that his particular belief made for better living than any other faith. The impulse to higher standards of morality, which we owe to the Reformation, is still felt at the present day.

The reforming popes

The rapid spread of Protestantism soon brought about a Catholic Counter Reformation in those parts of Europe which remained faithful to Rome. The popes now turned from the cultivation of Renaissance art and literature to the defense of their threatened faith. They made needed changes in the papal court and appointed to ecclesiastical offices men distinguished for virtue and learning. This reform of the Papacy dates from the time of Paul III, who became pope in 1534.

The most important agency of the Counter Reformation was the Society of Jesus, founded by a Spanish soldier and nobleman, Ignatius Loyola. The Jesuits, as their Protestant opponents called them, formed an army of spiritual soldiers, living under the strictest obedience to their head, or general, and fighting for the Church against "heretics." They served as preachers, confessors, teachers, and missionaries. Their activities in Poland, Hungary, Bohemia, and other countries did much to roll back the rising tide of Protestantism in Europe. The Jesuits also invaded the lands which the great maritime discoveries had laid open to European enterprise. In India, China, the East Indies, the Philippines, Africa, and the two Americas their converts from heathenism were numbered by hundreds of thousands.

The Society of Jesus

Another agency in the Counter Reformation was the great Church Council summoned by Pope Paul III. The council met at Trent, on the borders of Germany and Italy. It continued, with intermissions, for nearly twenty years. The Council of Trent made no essential changes in Roman Catholic doctrines, which remained as theologians had set them forth in the Middle Ages. It declared that the tradition of the Church possessed equal authority with the Bible and reaffirmed the supremacy of the pope over Christendom. The council also passed decrees forbidding the sale of ecclesiastical offices and requiring bishops and other prelates to attend strictly to their duties.

Council of Trent, 1545–1563

Still another agency of the Counter Reformation was the Inquisition. This was a system of church courts for the discovery and punishment of heretics. Such courts had been set up in the Middle Ages. After the Council of Trent they redoubled their activity, especially in Italy, the Netherlands, and Spain. The Inquisition probably contributed to the disappearance of Protestantism in Italy. In the Netherlands, where it worked with great severity, it only aroused exasperation and hatred and helped to provoke a successful revolt of the Dutch people. The Spaniards, on the other hand, approved of the methods of the Inquisition and

The Inquisition

supported its activities. It was not abolished in Spain until the nineteenth century.

29. The Wars of Religion

Charles V, Holy Roman Emperor, 1519–1556

The young man who as Holy Roman Emperor presided at the trial of Luther before the Diet of Worms had assumed the imperial crown only two years previously. A namesake of Charlemagne, Charles V, held sway over dominions even more extensive than those which had belonged to the Frankish king. He possessed Spain, the Two Sicilies, Sardinia, the Netherlands, Austria, and the Spanish colonies. Charles V, as a devout Roman Catholic, felt no sympathy with Lutheranism and perhaps might have extinguished it, had he undertaken the task promptly. A revolt in Spain and wars with the French and the Ottoman Turks led, however, to his long absence from Germany and kept him from proceeding effectively against the Lutherans until it was too late. The emperor, finally, brought Spanish troops into Germany, but the Lutheran princes were now too strong for him. Civil war raged until 1555, when both sides agreed to the Peace of Augsburg. It was a compromise. The ruler of each state was to decide whether his subjects should be Lutherans or Catholics. The peace by no means established religious toleration, since all Germans had to believe as their prince believed. However, it recognized Lutheranism as a legal religion and ended the attempts to crush the German Reformation.

Philip II, king of Spain, 1556–1598

Soon after the Peace of Augsburg, Charles V determined to abdicate his many crowns and seek the repose of a monastery. The plan was duly carried into effect. His brother succeeded to the title of Holy Roman Emperor and the Austrian territories, while his son, Philip II, ruled over Spain and the Spanish possessions in Europe and the New World. Philip II aimed to make his country the foremost state in the world and to secure the triumph of Roman Catholicism over Protestantism. Though he had vast possessions, enormous revenues, mighty fleets, and armies reputed

the best of the age, he could not dominate western Europe. His first defeat was in the Netherlands.

The Netherlands were too near Germany not to be affected by the Reformation. Lutheranism soon appeared there, only to encounter the hostility of Charles V, who introduced the terrors of the Inquisition. Many heretics were burned at the stake, or beheaded, or buried alive. But there is no seed like martyrs' blood. The number of Protestants swelled, rather than lessened, especially after Calvinism entered the Netherlands.

Protestantism in the Netherlands

In spite of the cruel treatment of heretics by Charles V, the Netherlanders remained loyal to the emperor, because he had been born and reared among them and always considered their country as his own. Philip II, a Spaniard by birth and sympathies, seemed to them, however, only a foreign master. The new ruler did nothing to conciliate the people, but governed them despotically through Spanish officials supported by Spanish garrisons. Arbitrary taxes were levied, cities and nobles were deprived of their cherished privileges, and the activity of the Inquisition was redoubled. Philip intended to exercise in the Netherlands the same absolute power enjoyed by him in Spain. His policies soon produced a revolt of both Roman Catholics and Protestants against Spanish oppression.

Philip II and the Netherlands

The southern provinces of the Netherlands, mainly Roman Catholic in population, did not long continue their resistance. They effected a reconciliation with Philip and continued for over two centuries to be a possession first of Spain and subsequently of Austria. Modern Belgium has grown out of them. The seven northern provinces, where Dutch was the language and Protestantism the religion, came together in 1579 in the Union of Utrecht. Two years later they declared their independence of Spain. In this way the republic of the United Netherlands, or simply "Holland," took its place among European nations. The struggle of Holland against Spain forms one of the notable episodes in history. The Dutch, under a resourceful leader, William, Prince

Separation of the Netherlands

of Orange, better known as William the Silent, fought stubbornly behind the walls of their cities and on more than one occasion repelled the enemy by cutting the dikes and letting in the sea. Philip's successor consented in 1609 to a twelve years' truce with the Dutch, but their freedom was not recognized officially by Spain until many years later.

Philip II and Queen Elizabeth

The attempt of Philip II to conquer England, a stronghold of Protestantism under Queen Elizabeth, likewise ended disastrously. It must be admitted that Philip could plead strong justification for his hostility. Elizabeth allowed English "sea-dogs," such as Sir Francis Drake, to plunder Spanish colonies and seize Spanish vessels laden with the treasures of the New World. Moreover, she aided the rebellious Dutch, at first secretly and at length openly, in their struggle against Spain. Philip put up with these aggressions for many years, but finally came to the conclusion that he could never subdue the Netherlands or end the piracy and smuggling in Spanish America without first conquering England. Philip seems to have believed that, as soon as a Spanish army landed on the island, the Roman Catholics there would rally to his cause. But the Spanish king never had a chance to verify his belief; the decisive battle took place on the sea.

Defeat of the Armada, 1588

In 1588 Philip sent the "Invincible Armada," as it was called, against England. The Spanish vessels, though somewhat larger than those of the English, were inferior in number, speed, and gunnery to their adversaries, while the Spanish officers, mostly unused to the sea, were no match for men like Drake, Frobisher, and Raleigh, the best mariners of the age. The Armada suffered severely in a nine-day fight in the Channel, and many vessels which escaped the English guns met shipwreck off the Scotch and Irish coasts. Less than half of the Armada returned in safety to Spain. England in the later Middle Ages had been an important naval power. During the sixteenth century, however, she was overmatched by Spain, especially after the annexation of Portugal, by Philip II, added the naval forces of that country to the Span-

ish fleets.[1] The defeat of the Armada showed that a new power had arisen to claim the supremacy of the ocean.

The French Protestants, or Huguenots, naturally accepted the doctrines of Calvin, who was himself a Frenchman and whose books were written in the French language. Though bitterly persecuted, the Huguenots gained a large following, especially among the prosperous middle class of the towns. Many nobles also became Huguenots, sometimes because of religious conviction, but often because the new

The Huguenots

THE SPANISH ARMADA IN THE ENGLISH CHANNEL

One of a series of engravings of a tapestry (now destroyed) in the House of Lords. In the left foreground Drake's ship is shown cutting out a Spanish man-of-war.

movement offered them an opportunity to recover their feudal independence and to plunder the estates of the Church.

During most of the second half of the sixteenth century, fierce conflicts raged in France between the Roman Catholics and the Huguenots. Philip II aided the former, and Queen Elizabeth gave some assistance to the latter. France suffered terribly in the struggle, not only from the constant fighting, but also from the pillage, burnings, and other

The Huguenot wars

[1] Portugal separated from Spain in 1640 and has since remained an independent state.

barbarities in which both sides indulged. The Huguenot wars ended during the reign of Henry IV, the first of the Bourbon kings. Though originally a Protestant, he became a Roman Catholic, in order to conciliate the great majority of his subjects.

King Henry did not break with the Huguenots, however. He now issued in their interest the celebrated Edict of Nantes. The Huguenots henceforth were to enjoy freedom of private worship everywhere in France, and freedom to worship publicly in a large number of villages and towns. Only Roman Catholic services, however, might be held in Paris and at the royal court. The edict did not grant complete religious liberty, but it marked an important step in that direction. A great European state had recognized for the first time the principle that two rival faiths might exist peaceably side by side within its borders.

Edict of Nantes, 1598

The Peace of Augsburg did not form a complete settlement of the religious question in Germany. There was still room for bitter disputes, especially over the ownership of Church property which had been secularized in the course of the Reformation. Furthermore, the peace recognized only Roman Catholics and Lutherans and allowed no rights whatever to the large body of Calvinists. The failure of Lutherans and Calvinists to coöperate weakened German Protestantism just at the period when the Counter Reformation inspired Roman Catholicism with fresh energy and enthusiasm.

Religious antagonism in Germany

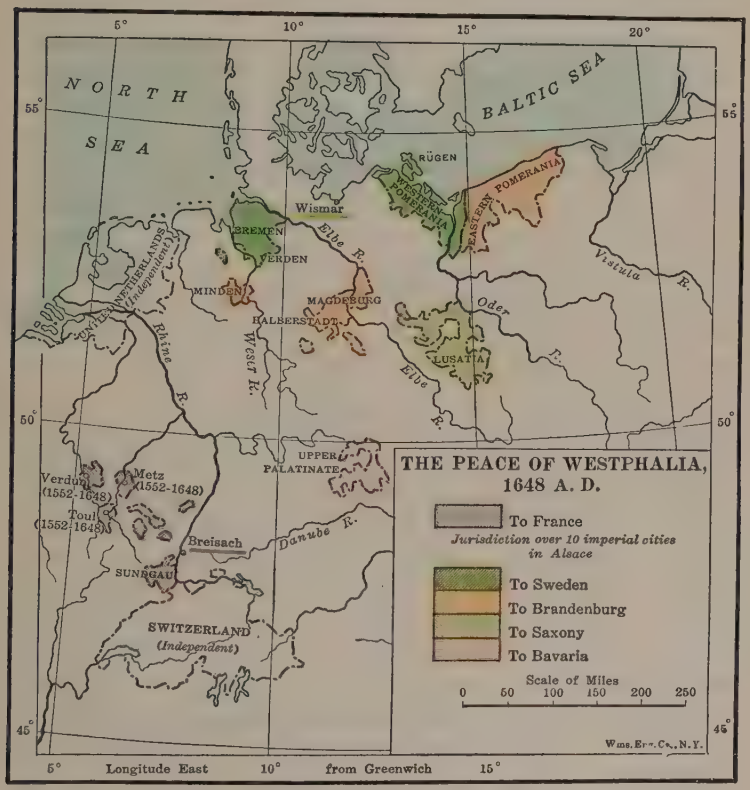
Politics, as well as religion, also made for dissension. The Roman Catholic party relied for support on the Holy Roman emperors, who wished to unite the German states under their control. The Protestant princes, on the other hand, wanted to become independent sovereigns. Hence they resented all efforts to extend the imperial authority over them.

Political friction in Germany

Religious antagonism and political friction together produced the Thirty Years' War. It was not so much a single conflict in Germany as a series of conflicts, which ultimately involved nearly all western Europe. At one time Sweden took a promi-

nent part in the struggle, under her heroic king, Gustavus Adolphus, who came to the aid of the Protestant princes against the Holy Roman Emperor. After the death of Gustavus Adolphus in battle, the German Protestants found an ally, strangely enough, in Cardinal Richelieu, the all-powerful minister of the French king. Riche-

Thirty Years' War, 1618–1648



lieu entered the struggle in order to humble Austria and extend the boundaries of France toward the Rhine. The Holy Roman Emperor had to yield at last and consented to the treaties of peace signed at two cities in the province of Westphalia.

The Peace of Westphalia ended the long series of wars which followed the Reformation. It practically settled the religious

question, for it put Roman Catholics, Lutherans, and Calvinists in Germany all on the same footing. Henceforth the idea that religious differences should be settled by force gradually passed away from the minds of men. The territorial readjustments made at this time have deeply affected the subsequent history of Europe. France received from the Holy Roman Empire a large part of Alsace, in this way obtaining a foothold on the upper Rhine. She also secured the recognition of her claims to the bishoprics of Metz, Toul, and Verdun in Lorraine. Sweden gained the western half of Pomerania and the bishopric of Bremen. These possessions enabled her to control the mouths of the rivers Oder, Elbe, and Weser, which were important arteries of German commerce. Brandenburg — the future kingdom of Prussia — acquired eastern Pomerania and several bishoprics, thus becoming the leading state in North Germany. The independence of Switzerland and of the United Netherlands was also recognized.

Peace of Westphalia, 1648

30. European Politics

The process of state-making in Europe, which started in the Middle Ages, went on even more rapidly during the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries. Many European countries now began to assume the form and to acquire the position which they hold at the present time. The map of western Europe by 1648, the date of the Peace of Westphalia, was very much the same as to-day. The British Isles had a common ruler, but Scotland continued to be a separate kingdom and Ireland was only loosely joined to England. The Iberian Peninsula included the two kingdoms of Spain and Portugal. Both were declining in wealth, population, and political importance. France had nearly her existing boundaries, except on the east and northeast toward the Rhine. Switzerland and the United Netherlands (Holland) were independent confederations. The Spanish Netherlands (Belgium) remained, however, a province of Spain.

Western Europe

The map of central Europe in 1648 was very unlike what it is

EUROPE
at the End of the
Thirty Years' War, 1648 A.D.
Spanish Dominions
Austrian Dominions
Brandenburg-Prussia
Swedish Dominions
Church Lands
Boundary of the Empire
Scale of Miles
0 100 200 300
ATLANTIC OCEAN
NORTH SEA
BALTIC SEA
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
BLACK SEA
ADRIATIC SEA
ENGLAND
SCOTLAND
IRELAND
WALES
FRANCE
SPAIN
PORTUGAL
DENMARK
SWEDEN
FINLAND
RUSSIA
POLAND
LITHUANIA
VOLHYNIA
PODOLIA
MOLDAVIA
WALLACHIA
HUNGARY
TRANSYLVANIA
BOHEMIA
AUSTRIA
BAVARIA
SAXONY
PALATINATE
SWITZERLAND
TYROL
CARINTHIA
STYRIA
MORAVIA
SILESIA
BRANDENBURG
PRUSSIA
MECKLENBURG
HOLLAND
SCANIA
GOTHLAND
COURLAND
LIVONIA
INGRIA
ESTHONIA
CRIMEA
BOSNIA
SERVIA
MONTENEGRO
ALBANIA
ROMELIA
GREECE
MORE
CRETE (Venice)
CORSICA (Genoa)
SARDINIA (Spain)
SICILY
BALEARIC ISLES
KINGDOM OF NAPLES
THE TWO SICILIES (Spain)
IONIAN IS. (Venice)
CORFU
DUCHY OF MILAN
DUCHY OF SAVOY
REPUBLIC OF VENICE
PAPAL STATES
TUSCANY
LUCCA
GENOA
PARMA
MODENA
BOLOGNA
FLORENCE
ROME
MILAN
VENICE
NAPLES
PALERMO
Christiania
Gothenburg
Copenhagen
Stockholm
Reval
Riga
Königsberg
Danzig
Posen
Warsaw
Moscow
Volga
Dnieper
Dniester
Pruth
Bug
Kiev
Lemberg
Cracow
Prague
Vienna
Budapest
Jassy
Bucharest
Belgrade
Adrianople
Constantinople
Scutari
Salonica
Smyrna
Rhodes
Cyprus
Candia
Scanderoon
Euphrates
Tigris
Armenia
Georgia
Circassia
Caucasus
Caspian Sea
Astrakhan
Tartary
Persia
Ispahan
Bagdad
Mesopotamia
Arabia
Mecca
Medina
Aden
Red Sea
Egypt
Cairo
Nile
Abyssinia
Nubia
Barbary
Algiers
Tunis
Tripoli
Fez
Morocco
Mt. Atlas
Sahara
Timbuctoo
Guinea
Gambia
Senegal
Cape Verd Is.
Canary Is.
Madeira Is.
Azores
Cape of Good Hope
Belfast
Dublin
Cork
Edinburgh
Amsterdam
London
Oxford
Bristol
Plymouth
Portsmouth
Hamburg
Bremen
Hanover
Berlin
Magdeburg
Leipzig
Dresden
Cologne
Frankfort
Mainz
Trier
Metz
Strassburg
Augsburg
Munich
Havre
Rouen
Rheims
Verdun
Paris
Brest
Orleans
Nantes
La Rochelle
Bordeaux
Bayonne
Toulouse
Lyons
Avignon
Marseilles
Genoa
Parma
Modena
Bologna
Florence
Rome
Naples
Milan
Venice
Saragossa
Madrid
Lisbon
Seville
Cordova
Granada
Cadiz
Tagus
Douro
Guadiana
Guadalquivir
Ebro
Loire
Rhine
Danube
Save
Drave
Arno
Tiber
Palermo
Candia
CHANNEL IS.
THE M.-N. WORKS
10° Longitude 5° West 0° Longitude 5° East from 10° Greenwich 15° 20° 30°
55° 50° 45° 40° 35°

to-day. Most of Germany was then divided into more than three hundred states and feudal domains. Many of them were free to coin money, raise armies, make war, and negotiate treaties without consulting the Holy Roman Emperor. The imperial title and dignity were now hereditary in the Austrian (Hapsburg) family. If they meant little, the Hapsburg ruler, as archduke of Austria, king of Bohemia, king of Hungary, and lord of many smaller territories, held, nevertheless, a proud position in Europe. Italy, like Germany, presented a picture of disunion. The northern part of the peninsula contained the independent duchy of Savoy, the duchy of Milan (a Spanish possession), the republics of Venice and Genoa, and the little states of Parma, Modena, and Lucca. Central Italy included the duchy of Tuscany and the States of the Church. The kingdom of the Two Sicilies belonged to Spain.

Central Europe

There were only two Scandinavian kingdoms in 1648, for Norway was joined to Denmark. Sweden, then a first-class power, held sway over Finland and adjacent territories. The duchy of East Prussia belonged to the Elector of Brandenburg. The huge kingdom of Poland, which had united with the grand duchy of Lithuania in the preceding century, stretched from the Baltic almost to the Black Sea. Farther east lay Russia, so backward in civilization as to be scarcely a European country.

Northern and eastern Europe

The Ottoman Turks in 1648 ruled in southeastern Europe. They occupied Greece, all the Balkan Peninsula except Montenegro, most of Hungary, and the territory now included in Rumania and part of southern Russia. Never had the shadow of the crescent loomed more darkly over Europe.

Southeastern Europe

Most European states in the seventeenth century were absolute monarchies. Absolutism was as common then as democracy is now. The rulers of Europe, having triumphed over the feudal nobility of the Middle Ages, proclaimed themselves to be the sole source of authority. They posed as sovereigns who held their power, not from the choice or consent of their subjects, but by the "grace of God."

Absolutism

Divine right

The theory of divine right first took shape during the Middle Ages, out of the controversies between the Papacy and the secular rulers of Europe. The popes tried to enforce a claim to the obedience of all Christians, as well in temporal as in spiritual matters. Emperors and kings, resenting what they regarded as papal interference in politics, then set up a counter-claim for the divine origin of the imperial and royal power. During the Reformation Luther and his followers also exalted the authority of the State against the authority of the Church, which they condemned and rejected. Providence, they argued, had never sanctioned the Papacy, but Providence had really ordained the State and had placed over it a ruler whom it was a religious duty to obey. The same theory of divine right found acceptance among Anglicans, for the Church of England from the first was a religion established and supported by the State.

Calvinism and popular sovereignty

A very different theory found acceptance in those parts of Europe where Calvinism prevailed. In his *Institutes*, one of the most widely read books of the age, Calvin declares that magistrates and parliaments are the guardians of popular liberty "by the ordination of God."[1] Calvin's adherents, developing this statement, argued that rulers derive their authority from the people and that those who abuse it may be deposed by the will of the people. The Christian duty of resistance to royal tyranny became a cardinal principle of Calvinism among the French Huguenots, the Dutch, the Scotch, and most of the American colonists of the seventeenth century. We shall now see how influential it was in seventeenth-century England.

Studies

1. Distinguish and define the three terms, "Renaissance," "Revival of Learning," and "Humanism." 2. Why did the Renaissance begin as "an Italian event"? 3. Why did the classical scholar come to be regarded as the only educated man? 4. "Next to the discovery of the New World, the recovery of the ancient world is the second landmark that divides us from the Middle Ages and marks the transition to modern life." Comment on this statement. 5. Why was the revival of

[1] *Institutes of the Christian Religion*, IV, xx, 31.

Greek more important in the history of civilization than the revival of Latin? 6. Show that printing was an "emancipating force." 7. How did the discoveries of Galileo and Kepler confirm the Copernican theory? 8. Why has Marco Polo been called the "Columbus of the East Indies"? 9. How did Vasco da Gama complete the work of Prince Henry the Navigator? 10. Show that Lisbon in the sixteenth century was the commercial successor of Venice. 11. Explain this statement: "The American isthmus was discovered because an Asiatic one existed; in trying to avoid Suez the early mariners ran afoul of Darien." 12. On an outline map indicate those parts of the world known in the time of Columbus (before 1492). 13. On an outline map indicate the voyages of discovery of Vasco da Gama, Columbus (first voyage), Magellan, and John Cabot. 14. Show that the three words "gospel, glory, and gold" sum up the principal motives of European colonization in the sixteenth century. 15. Why is Roman law followed in all Spanish-American countries? 16. In what parts of the world is Spanish still the common language? 17. "The opening of the Atlantic to continuous exploration is the most momentous step in the history of man's occupation of the earth." Does this statement seem to be justified? 18. Give three important reasons for the lessened influence of the Roman Church at the opening of the sixteenth century. 19. On the map, page 141, trace the geographical extent of the Reformation in the sixteenth century. 20. Why did the reformers in each country take special pains to translate the Bible into the vernacular? 21. Mention some differences between the Society of Jesus and earlier monastic orders. 22. On an outline map indicate the European countries ruled by Charles V. 23. Show that political, as well as religious, motives affected the revolt of the Netherlands, the Huguenot wars, and the Thirty Years' War. 24. Compare the Edict of Nantes with the Peace of Augsburg. 25. On an outline map indicate the principal territorial changes made by the Peace of Westphalia.

CHAPTER V

CONSTITUTIONAL MONARCHY IN ENGLAND, 1603–1714[1]

31. Absolutism of the Stuarts, 1603–1642

Absolutism in England dated from the time of the Tudors. Henry VII humbled the nobles, while Henry VIII and Elizabeth brought the Church into dependence on the Crown. These three sovereigns, though despotic, were excellent rulers and were popular with the influential middle class in town and country. The Tudors gave England order and prosperity, if not political liberty.

Tudor absolutism

The English Parliament in the thirteenth century had become a body representative of the different estates of the realm, and in the fourteenth century it had separated into the two houses of Lords and Commons. Parliament enjoyed considerable authority at this time. The kings, who were in continual need of money, often summoned it, sought its advice upon important questions, and readily listened to its requests. The despotic Tudors, on the other hand, made Parliament their servant. Henry VII called it together on only five occasions during his reign; Henry VIII persuaded or frightened it into doing anything he pleased; and Elizabeth consulted it as infrequently as possible. Parliament under the Tudors did not abandon its old claims to a share in the government, but it had little chance to exercise them.

Parliament under the Tudors

The death of Elizabeth in 1603 ended the Tudor dynasty and

[1] Webster, *Readings in Medieval and Modern History*, chapter xxv, "Characters and Episodes of the Great Rebellion"; chapter xxvi, "Oliver Cromwell"; chapter xxvii, "English Life and Manners under the Restoration." Webster, *Historical Source Book*, No. 4, "Petition of Right, 1628"; No. 6, "Instrument of Government, 1653"; No. 7, "Habeas Corpus Act, 1679"; No. 8, "Bill of Rights, 1689"; No. 9, "Act of Settlement, 1701."

placed James I,[1] the first of the Stuarts, on the English throne. England and Scotland were now joined in a personal union, though each country retained its own Parliament, laws, and established Church. The new king was well described by a contemporary as the "wisest fool in Christendom." He had a good mind and abundant learning, but throughout his reign he showed an utter inability to win either the esteem or the affection of his subjects. This was a misfortune, for the English had now grown weary of despotism and wanted freedom. They were not prepared to tolerate in James, an alien, many things which they had overlooked in "Good Queen Bess."

James I, king, 1603–1625

One of the most fruitful sources of discord between James and the English people was his exalted conception of monarchy. The Tudors, indeed, claimed to rule by divine right, but James went further and argued for divine *hereditary* right. Providence, he declared, had chosen the principle of heredity in order to fix the succession to the throne. This principle, being divine, lay beyond the power of man to alter. Whether the king was fit or unfit to rule, Parliament might not change the succession, depose a sovereign, or limit his authority in any way. James rather neatly summarized his views in a Latin epigram, *a deo rex, a rege lex* — "the king is from God, and law is from the king."

James I on divine right

Gold Coin of James I

The first coin to bear the legend "Great Britain."

The extreme pretensions of James encountered much opposition from Parliament. That body felt little sympathy for a ruler who proclaimed himself the source of all law. When James, always extravagant and a poor financier, came before it for money, Parliament insisted on its right to withhold supplies until grievances were redressed.

Parliament and James I

[1] James VI of Scotland (1567–1625). His mother, Mary Queen of Scots, was a granddaughter of Henry VII, the first of the Tudors.

James would not yield, and got along as best he could by levying customs duties, selling titles of nobility, and imposing excessive fines, in spite of the protests of Parliament. This situation continued to the end of the king's reign.

Puritanism

A religious controversy helped to embitter the dispute between James and Parliament. The king, who was a devout Anglican, made himself very unpopular with the Puritans, as the reformers within the Church of England were called. The Puritans had at first no intention of separating from the national or established Church, but they wished to "purify" it of certain customs which they described as "Romish." Among these were the use of the surplice, of the ring in the marriage service, and of the sign of the cross in baptism. Some Puritans wanted to get rid of the *Book of Common Prayer* altogether. Since the Puritans had a large majority in the House of Commons, it was inevitable that the parliamentary struggle against Stuart absolutism should assume in part a religious character.

A Puritan Family

Illustration in an edition of the *Psalms* published in 1563.

The political and religious difficulties which marked the reign of James I did not disappear when his son, Charles I, came to the throne. Charles was a true Stuart in his devotion to absolutism and divine right. Almost immediately he began to quarrel with Parliament. When that body withheld supplies, Charles resorted to forced loans from the wealthy and even imprisoned a number of persons who refused to contribute. Such arbitrary acts showed plainly that Charles would play the tyrant if he could.

Charles I, king, 1625–1649

LONDON TRADESMEN

After a broadside of 1647 in the British Museum, London.

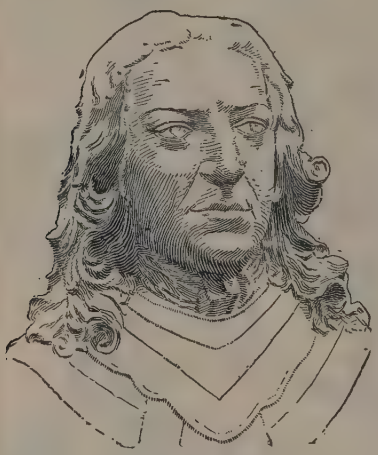
The king's attitude at last led Parliament to a bold assertion of its authority. It now presented to Charles the celebrated Petition of Right. One of the most important clauses provided that loans without parliamentary sanction should be considered illegal. Another clause declared that no one should be arrested or imprisoned except

Petition of Right, 1628

according to the law of the land. The Petition thus repeated and reinforced some of the leading principles of Magna Carta. The people of England, speaking this time through their elected representatives, asserted once more their right to limit the power of kings.

Charles signed the Petition, as the only means of securing parliamentary consent to taxation; but he had no intention of observing it. For the next eleven years he managed to govern without calling Parliament in session. The conduct of affairs during this period lay largely in the hands of Sir Thomas Wentworth, afterwards earl of Strafford, and William Laud, who later became archbishop of Canterbury. The king made these two men his principal advisers and through them carried on his despotic rule. Arbitrary courts, which tried cases without a jury, punished those who resisted the royal will. A rigid censorship of the press prevented any expression of popular discontent. Public meetings were suppressed as seditious riots. Even private gatherings were dangerous, for the king had swarms of spies to report disloyal acts or utterances.

Personal rule of Charles I, 1629–1640



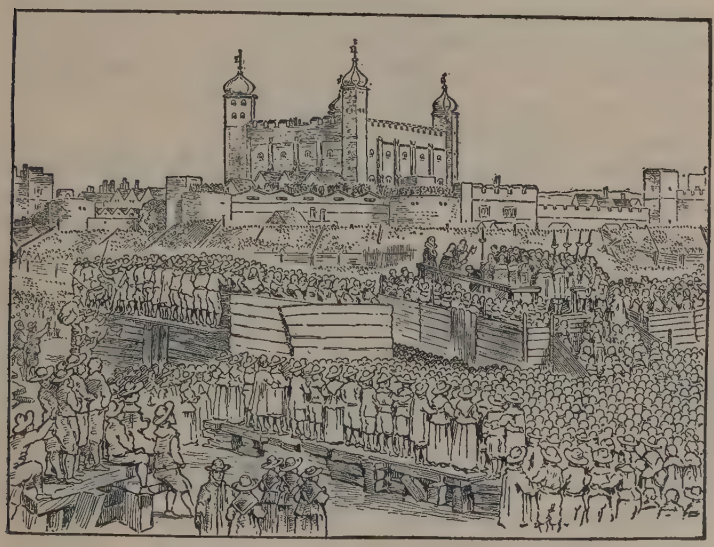
JOHN HAMPDEN

After the bust in the National Portrait Gallery, London.

Since Charles ruled without a Parliament, he had to adopt all sorts of devices to fill his treasury. One of these was the levying of "ship-money." According to an old custom, seaboard towns and counties had been required to provide ships or money for the royal navy. Charles revived this custom and extended

John Hampden and "ship-money"

it to towns and counties lying inland. It seemed clear that the king meant to impose a permanent tax on all England without the assent of Parliament. The demand for "ship-money" aroused much opposition, and John Hampden, a wealthy squire of Buckinghamshire, refused to pay the twenty shillings levied on his estate. Hampden was tried before a court of the royal judges and was convicted by a bare majority. He became, however, a popular hero.



EXECUTION OF THE EARL OF STRAFFORD

After a contemporary print. The Tower of London is seen in the background.

Archbishop Laud, the king's chief agent in ecclesiastical matters, detested Puritanism and aimed to root it out from the Anglican Church. He put no Puritans to death, but he sanctioned cruel punishments of those who would not conform to the established religion. While the restrictions on Puritans were increased, those affecting Roman Catholics were relaxed. Many people thought that Charles, through Laud and the bishops, was preparing to lead the Church of England back to Rome. They therefore

Laud's ecclesiastical policy

opposed the king on religious grounds, as well as for political reasons.

The Long Parliament, 1640

But the personal rule of Charles was now drawing to an end. In 1637 the king, supported by Archbishop Laud, tried to introduce a modified form of the English prayer book into Scotland. The Scotch, Calvinistic to the core, drew up a national oath, or Covenant, by which they bound themselves to resist any attempt to change their religion. Rebellion quickly passed into open war, and the Covenanters invaded northern England. Charles was then obliged to summon Parliament in session. It met in 1640 and did not formally dissolve until twenty years later. Hence it came to be known as the Long Parliament.

Reforms of the Long Parliament

The Long Parliament no sooner assembled than it assumed the conduct of government. The leaders, including John Hampden, John Pym, and Oliver Cromwell, openly declared that the House of Commons, and not the king, possessed supreme authority in the state. Parliament began by sending Strafford and subsequently Laud to the scaffold and by abolishing the arbitrary courts. It forbade the imposition of "ship-money" and other irregular taxes. It also took away the king's right of dissolving Parliament at his pleasure and ordered that at least one parliamentary session should be held every three years. These measures stripped the Crown of the despotic powers acquired by the Tudors and the Stuarts.

32. Cromwell and the Puritan Revolution, 1642–1649

Outbreak of the Puritan Revolution, 1642

The Long Parliament thus far had acted along the line of reformation rather than revolution. Had Charles been content to accept the new arrangements, there would have been little more trouble. But the proud and imperious king was only watching his chance to strike a blow at Parliament. Taking advantage of some differences of opinion among its members, Charles summoned his soldiers, marched to Westminster, and demanded

ENGLAND AND WALES
THE CIVIL WARS OF THE 17TH CENTURY
Scale of English Miles
0 10 20 30 60
EXPLANATION
Parts held by Charles I. at the end of 1643
Parts held by Parliament
SCOTLAND
Scone
Edinburgh
Glasgow
Dunbar 1650
HOLY ISLE
Tweed R.
Philliphaugh
ARRAN
Mull of Kintyre
Firth of Clyde
North Channel
Solway Firth
Carlisle
Newburn 1640
Newcastle
Tyne R.
Tees R.
Scarborough
ISLE OF MAN
IRISH SEA
Ouse R.
Humber R.
York
Marston Moor 1644
Leeds
Hull
Preston 1648
Manchester
Mersey R.
Don R.
Trent R.
Gainsborough
ANGLESEA
St. George's Channel
Dee R.
Wilmington Br. 1650
Newark
Nottingham
The Wash
Cardigan Bay
Severn R.
Lichfield
Birmingham
Naseby 1645
Hornby House
Worcester 1651
Edgehill 1642
Cropredy Bridge
Oxford
Gloucester
Wye R.
Raglan
Colchester 1648
Pembroke
Bristol
Reading
Brentford
London
Thames R.
Bristol Channel
Bath
Roundwaydown
Newbury 1643
Basing
Dover
Dover Strait
Exe R.
Newport
Carisbrook Castle
ISLE OF WIGHT
Plymouth
Portland Bill
ENGLISH CHANNEL
FRANCE
4 2 0
Longitude West from Greenwich Longitude East
PETERS, ENGRS., BOSTON

the surrender of five leaders, including Pym and Hampden. Warned in time, they made their escape, and Charles did not find them in the chamber of the Commons. "Well, I see all the birds are flown," he exclaimed, and walked out baffled. The king's attempt to intimidate the Commons was a grave blunder. It showed beyond doubt that he would resort to force, rather than bend his neck to Parliament. Both Charles and Parliament now began to gather troops and prepare for the inevitable conflict.

"Cavaliers" and "Roundheads"

The opposing parties seemed to be very evenly matched. Around the king rallied nearly all the nobles, the Anglican clergy, the Roman Catholics, a majority of the "squires," or country gentry, and the members of the universities. The royalists received the name of "Cavaliers." The parliamentarians, or "Roundheads," [1] were mostly recruited from the trading classes in the towns and the small landowners in the country. The working people remained as a rule indifferent and took little part in the struggle.

Oliver Cromwell, 1599–1658

Both Pym and Hampden died in the second year of the war, and henceforth the leadership of the parliamentarians fell to Oliver Cromwell. He was a country gentleman from the east of England, and Hampden's cousin. Cromwell represented the university of Cambridge in the Long Parliament and displayed there great audacity in opposing the government. An unfriendly critic at this time describes "his countenance swollen and reddish, his voice sharp and untuneable, and his eloquence full of fervor." Though a zealous Puritan, who believed himself to be the chosen agent of the Lord, Cromwell was not an ascetic. He hunted, hawked, played bowls and other games, had an ear for music, and valued art and learning. In public life he showed himself a statesman of much insight and a military genius.

Fortune favored the royalists, until Cromwell assumed command of the parliamentary forces. To him was due the for-

[1] So called, because some of them wore closely cropped hair, in contrast to the flowing locks of the "Cavaliers."

mation of a cavalry regiment of "honest, sober Christians," whose watchwords were texts from Scripture and who charged in battle singing psalms. These "Ironsides," as Cromwell said, "had the fear of God before them and made some conscience of what they did." They were so successful that Parliament permitted

The "Ironsides" and the "New Model"

INTERIOR OF WESTMINSTER HALL

Next to the Tower and the Abbey, Westminster Hall, adjoining the Houses of Parliament, is the most historic building in London. The hall was begun by William Rufus in 1097, and was enlarged by his successors. Richard II in 1397 added the great oak roof, which has lasted to this day. Here were held the trials of Strafford and Charles I.

Cromwell to reorganize a large part of the army into the "New Model," a body of professional, highly disciplined soldiers. The "New Model" defeated Charles decisively at the battle of Naseby, near the center of England (1645). Charles then surrendered to the Scotch, who soon turned him over to Parliament.

Military operations were now over, but the political situation remained still in doubt. The Puritans by this time had divided into two rival sects. The Presbyterians wished to make the Church of England, like that of Scotland, Presbyterian in faith and worship. Through their control of Parliament, they were able

Presbyterians and Independents

to pass acts doing away with bishops, forbidding the use of the *Book of Common Prayer*, and requiring every one to accept Presbyterian doctrines. The other Puritan sect, known as Independents,[1] felt that religious beliefs should not be a matter of compulsion. They rejected both Anglicanism and Presbyterianism and desired to set up churches of their own, where they might worship as seemed to them right. The Independents had the powerful backing of Cromwell and the "New Model," so that the stage was set for a quarrel between Parliament and the army.

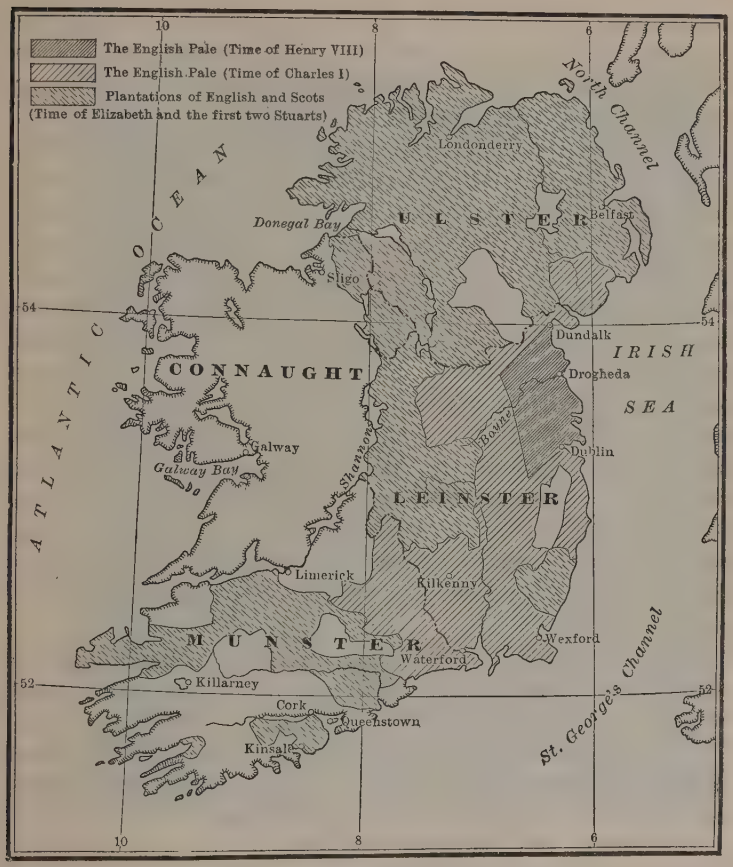
"Pride's Purge," 1648

King Charles, though a prisoner in the hands of his enemies, hoped to profit by their divisions. The Presbyterian majority in the House of Commons was willing to restore the king, provided he would give his assent to the establishment of Presbyterianism in England. But the army wanted no reconciliation with the captive monarch and at length took matters into its own hand. A party of soldiers, under the command of a Colonel Pride, excluded the Presbyterian members from the floor of the House, leaving the Independents alone to conduct the government. This action is known as "Pride's Purge." Cromwell approved of it, and from this time he became the real ruler of England.

Execution of Charles I, 1649

The "Rump," as the remnant of the House of Commons was contemptuously called, immediately brought the king before a High Court of Justice composed of his bitterest enemies. He refused to acknowledge the right of the court to try him and made no defense whatever. Charles was speedily convicted and sentenced to be beheaded, "as a tyrant, traitor, murderer, and public enemy to the good of the people." He met death with quiet dignity and courage on a scaffold erected in front of Whitehall Palace in London. The king's execution went far beyond the wishes of most Englishmen; "cruel necessity" formed its only justification; but it established once for all in England the principle that rulers are responsible to their subjects.

[1] Also called Separatists, and later known as Congregationalists.



IRELAND

33. The Commonwealth and the Protectorate, 1649–1660

The "Rump" also abolished the House of Lords and the office of king. It named a Council of State, most of whose members were chosen from the House of Commons, to carry on the government. England now became a national republic, or Commonwealth, the first in

The Commonwealth

the history of the world.[1] The new republic was clearly the creation of a minority. Anglicans, Presbyterians, and Roman Catholics were ready to restore the monarchy, but as long as the power lay with the army, the small sect of Independents could impose its will on the great majority of the English people.

Subjection of Ireland

Cromwell had to deal with a serious uprising in Ireland, where Prince Charles, the oldest son of the dead sovereign, had been proclaimed king. Invading the country with his trained soldiers, Cromwell captured town after town, slaughtered many royalists, and shipped many more to the West Indies as slaves. This time Ireland was completely subdued. Cromwell confiscated the estates of those who had supported the royalist cause and planted colonies of English Protestants in Ulster, Leinster, and Munster. The Roman Catholic gentry were compelled to remove beyond the Shannon River to unfruitful Connaught. Even there the public exercise of their religion was forbidden them. Cromwell's harsh measures brought peace to Ireland, but only intensified the hatred felt by Irish Roman Catholics for Protestant England.

Scotland subdued

While Cromwell was still in Ireland, Prince Charles came to Scotland and by promising to be a Presbyterian king secured the support of the whole nation. Cromwell, however, destroyed the Scotch armies in two pitched battles. Prince Charles escaped capture and after thrilling adventures as a fugitive took refuge in France.

Dissolution of the "Rump," 1653

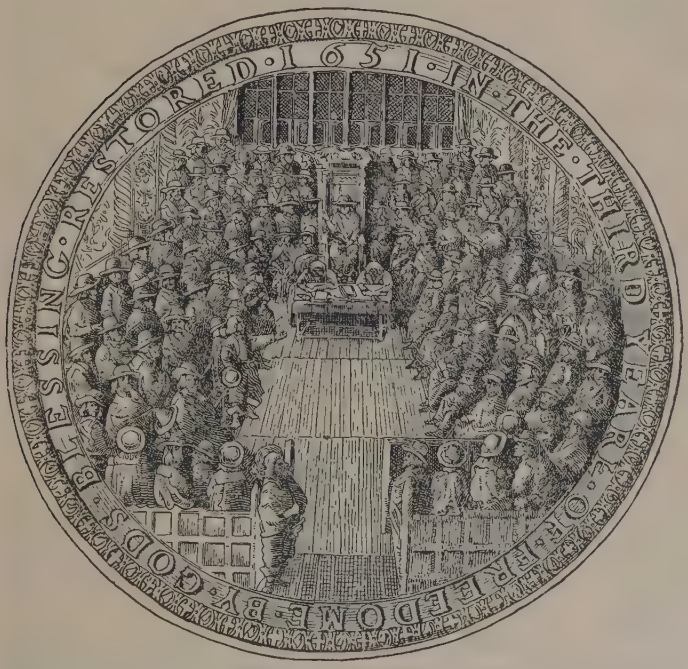
Meanwhile, the "Rump" had become more and more unpopular. The army, which had saved England from Stuart despotism, did not relish the spectacle of a small group of men, many of them selfish and corrupt, presuming to govern the country. Cromwell found them "horribly arbitrary," and at last resolved to have done with them. He entered the House of Commons with a band of musketeers and ordered the members home. "Come, come," he cried, "I will put an end to your prating. You are

[1] The Swiss Confederation (1291) and the United Netherlands (1581) were federative republics.

OLIVER CROMWELL

After the painting by Sir Peter Lely in 1653.
Pitti Gallery, Florence.

no Parliament. I say you are no Parliament. I will put an end to your sitting." Another Parliament, made up of "God-fearing men" chosen by Cromwell and his associates, proved equally incapable and after a few months resigned its authority into Cromwell's hands.



GREAT SEAL OF ENGLAND UNDER THE COMMONWEALTH (REDUCED)

The reverse represents the House of Commons in session.

Though now a virtual dictator, Cromwell did not want absolute power. He therefore accepted a so-called Instrument of Government drawn up by some of his officers, and notable as the only written constitution which England has ever had. It vested supreme power in a single person styled the Lord Protector, holding office for life. He was to be assisted, and to some extent controlled, by a council and a parliament. The Protectorate, which thus supplanted

The Protectorate

the Commonwealth, really formed a limited or constitutional monarchy in all but name.

The Lord Protector governed England for five years. His successful conduct of foreign affairs gave to that country an importance in European politics which it had not enjoyed since the time of Elizabeth. He died in 1658. Two years later the nation, weary of military rule, recalled Prince Charles, who mounted the throne as Charles II.

Cromwell as Lord Protector, 1653–1658

It seemed, indeed, as if the Puritan Revolution had been a complete failure. But this was hardly true. The revolution arrested the growth of absolutism and divine right in England. It created among Englishmen a lasting hostility to despotic rule, whether exercised by King, Parliament, Protector, or army. Furthermore, it sent forth into the world ideas of popular sovereignty, which, during the eighteenth century, helped to produce the American and French revolutions.

The Puritan Revolution

34. The Restoration and the "Glorious Revolution," 1660–1689

Charles II pledged himself to maintain Magna Carta, the Petition of Right, and various statutes limiting the royal power. The people of England wished to have a king, but they also wished their king to govern by the advice of Parliament. Charles, less obstinate and more astute than his father, recognized this fact, and, when a conflict threatened with his ministers or Parliament, always avoided it by timely concessions. Whatever happened, he used to say, he was resolved "never to set out on his travels again." Charles's charm of manner, wit, and genial humor made him a popular monarch, in spite of his grave faults of character. He was a

Reign of Charles II, 1660–1685

Silver Crown of Charles II

king who "never said a foolish thing and never did a wise one."

The period of the Restoration was characterized by a reaction against the austere scheme of life which the Puritans had imposed on society. Puritanism not only deprived the people of evil pleasures, such as bear-baiting, cock-fighting, and tippling, but it also prohibited the Sunday dances and games, the village festivals, and the popular drama. When Puritanism disappeared, the people went to the opposite extreme and cast off all restraint. England was never more merry and never less moral than under its "Merry Monarch."

Reaction against Puritanism

The Restoration brought back the Church of England, together with the Stuarts. Parliament, more intolerant than the king, made the use of the *Book of Common Prayer* compulsory and required ministers to express their consent to everything contained in it. Rather than do so, nearly two thousand clergymen resigned their positions. Among them were found Presbyterians, Independents (or Congregationalists), Baptists, and Quakers. The members of these sects, since they refused to accept the national church, were henceforth classed as Dissenters.[1] They might not hold meetings for worship, or teach in schools, or hold any public office. Thus Dissenters, as well as Roman Catholics, had to endure persecution.

The Dissenters

One of the most important events belonging to the reign of Charles II was the passage by Parliament of the Habeas Corpus Act. The writ of *habeas corpus*[2] is an order, issued by a judge, requiring a person held in custody to be brought before the court. If upon examination good reason is shown for keeping the prisoner, he is to be remanded for trial; otherwise he must either be freed or released on bail. This writ had been long used in England, and one of the clauses of Magna Carta expressly provided

Habeas Corpus Act, 1679

[1] Or Nonconformists. This name is still applied to English Protestants not members of the Anglican Church.

[2] A Latin phrase meaning "You may have the body."

against arbitrary imprisonment. It had always been possible, however, for the king or his ministers to order the arrest of a person considered dangerous to the state, without making any formal charge against him. The Habeas Corpus Act established the principle that every man, not charged with or convicted of a known crime, is entitled to his liberty. Most of the British possessions where the Common Law prevails have accepted the act, and it has been adopted by the federal and state legislatures of the United States.

Whigs and Tories

The reign of Charles II also saw the beginning of the modern party system in Parliament. Two opposing parties took shape, very largely out of a religious controversy. The king, from his long life in France, was partial to Roman Catholicism, though he did not formally embrace that faith until the moment of death. His brother James, the heir to the throne, became an avowed Roman Catholic, much to the disgust of many members of Parliament. A bill was now brought forward to exclude Prince James from the succession, because of his conversion. Its supporters received the nickname of Whigs, while those who opposed it were called Tories. The former were successors of the old "Roundheads," the latter, of the "Cavaliers."[1] The bill did not pass the House of Lords, but the two parties in Parliament continued to divide on other questions. They survive to-day as the Liberals and the Conservatives, though the latter are still often referred to as Tories.

Reign of James II, 1685–1688

James II lacked the attractive personality which had made his brother a popular ruler; moreover, he was an avowed Roman Catholic and a staunch believer in the divine right of kings. James soon managed to make enemies of most of his Protestant subjects by "suspending" the laws against Roman Catholics and by appointing them to positions of authority and influence. He also dismissed Parliament. Englishmen might have tolerated James to the end of his reign (he was then nearing sixty), in the hope that he would be succeeded by his Protestant

[1] See page 162 and note 1.

daughter Mary. But the birth in 1688 of a son to his Roman Catholic second wife changed the whole situation by opening up the prospect of a Roman Catholic succession to the throne. At last a number of Whig and Tory leaders invited William Prince of Orange, stadholder or governor-general of Holland, to rescue England from Stuart despotism.[1]

William landed in England with a small army and marched unopposed to London. The wretched king, deserted by his retainers and soldiers, soon found himself alone. He fled to France, where he lived the remainder of his days as a pensioner at the French court. Parliament granted the throne conjointly to William and Mary, William to rule during his lifetime and Mary to have the succession if she survived him.[2] Should they have no children, the throne was to go to Mary's sister Anne.

Accession of William and Mary

THE TRIUMPH OF WILLIAM III
After an allegorical picture in the Sutherland Collection.

At the same time Parliament took care to perpetuate its own authority and the Protestant religion by enacting the Bill of Rights, which has a place by the side of Magna Carta and the Petition of Right among the great documents of English constitutional history. This act decreed that the sovereign must henceforth be a member of the Anglican Church. It forbade him to "suspend" the operation of the laws, or to levy money or maintain a standing army except by

The Bill of Rights

[1] William was Mary's husband. See the genealogical table, page 174, note 1.

[2] Mary, however, died in 1694.

consent of Parliament. It also declared that election of members of Parliament should be free; that they should enjoy freedom of speech and action within the two Houses; and that excessive bail should not be required, or excessive fines imposed, or cruel and unusual punishments inflicted. Finally, it affirmed the right of subjects to petition the sovereign and ordered the holding of frequent Parliaments. These were not new principles of political liberty, but now the English people were strong enough to give them the binding form of laws. They reappear in the first ten amendments to the Constitution of the United States.

The Toleration Act

Parliament also passed a Toleration Act, conceding to Dissenters the right of public worship, though not the right of holding any civil or military office. The Dissenters might now worship as they pleased, without fear of persecution. Unitarians and Roman Catholics, as well as Jews, were expressly excluded from the benefits of the act. The passage of this measure did much to remove religion from English politics as a vital issue.

The "Glorious Revolution"

The Revolution of 1688–1689 struck a final blow at absolutism and divine right in England. An English king became henceforth the servant of Parliament, holding office only on good behavior. An act of Parliament had made him and an act of Parliament might depose him. It is well to remember, however, that the Revolution did not form a popular movement. It was a successful struggle for parliamentary supremacy on the part of the upper classes. The government of England still remained far removed from democracy.

35. William III and Anne, 1689–1714

Act of Settlement and the succession

The supremacy won by Parliament was safeguarded, a few years later (1701), by the passage of the Act of Settlement. It provided that in case William III or his sister-in-law Anne died without heirs, the crown should pass to Sophia, electress of Hanover, and her descendants. She was the granddaughter of

James I and a Protestant. This arrangement deliberately excluded a number of nearer representatives of the Stuart house from the succession, because they were Roman Catholics. Parliament thus asserted in the strongest way the right of the English people to choose their own rulers.

The Act of Settlement not only fixed the succession, but also imposed additional restrictions upon the power of an English sovereign. For instance, no person having an office by appointment of the king or receiving a pension from him was henceforth allowed to sit in the House of Commons. In order to prevent any royal interference with the conduct of justice, judges were permitted to hold their places during good behavior and were made removable only by Parliament.

Act of Settlement and the Crown

Several other important steps in political liberty were taken during the reign of William III. Parliament passed an act limiting the king's control over the army to only six months (later, to only a year), at a time. Parliament also fell into the habit of making annual appropriations for government expenses, instead of for longer periods. The result was that the king had to call the legislature in session each year and to submit every item of expenditure to the scrutiny of the legislators. Finally, must be noted the refusal of Parliament to continue the censorship of books, pamphlets, and newspapers, by means of which the expression of public opinion had long been muzzled. England now began to enjoy a free press — an essential accompaniment of a free government.

Further gains by Parliament

Upon the death of William III in 1702, Queen Anne mounted the throne. Her short reign saw the union of England and Scotland. The two countries, which had had a common king since the accession of James I, were henceforth to have a common Parliament with complete freedom of trade between them. The Scotch, however, retained their own laws and Presbyterian Church. After 1707 it is proper to speak of the kingdom of Great Britain, and of the English, Welsh, and Scotch as forming the British people.

Act of Union, 1707

The Hanoverian dynasty, 1714

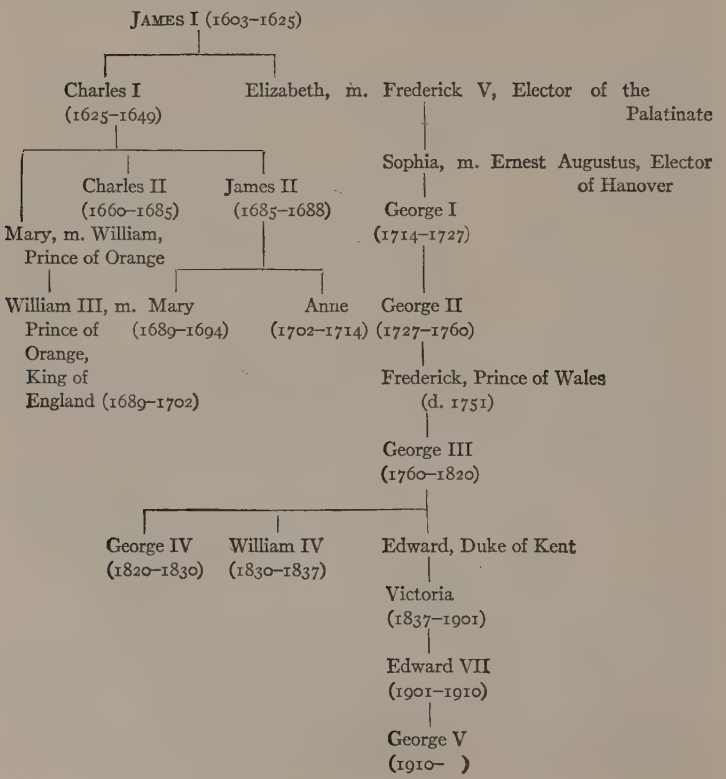
Queen Anne died in 1714, and in accordance with the Act of Settlement, George I, the son of Sophia of Hanover, ascended the throne. He was the first member of the Hanoverian dynasty, which has since continued to reign in Great Britain.[1]

36. England during the Seventeenth Century

Social England

The population of England at the close of the seventeenth century exceeded five millions, of whom at least two-thirds lived in the country. Except for London, there were only four towns of more than ten thousand inhabitants. London counted half a million people within its

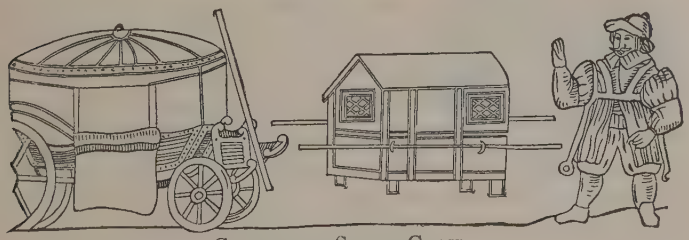
[1] Stuart and Hanoverian Dynasties.



limits and had become the largest city in Europe. Town life still wore a medieval look, but the increase of wealth gradually introduced many new comforts and luxuries. Coal came into use instead of charcoal; tea, coffee, and chocolate competed with wine, ale, and beer as beverages; the first newspapers appeared, generally in weekly editions; amusements multiplied; and passenger coaches began to ply between London and the provincial centers. The highways, however, were wretched and infested with robbers. The traveler found some recompense for the hardships of a journey in the country inns, famous for their plenty and good cheer. The transport of goods was chiefly by means of pack horses, because of the poor roads and the absence

A London Bellman

Title-page of a tract published in 1616. It was part of the duties of a bellman, or night-watchman, to call out the hours, the state of the weather, and other information as he passed by.



Coach and Sedan Chair

Title-page of a tract published in 1636.

of canals. Postal arrangements also remained very primitive, and in remote districts letters were not delivered more than

once a week. The difficulties of travel and communication naturally made for isolation; and country people, except the wealthy, rarely visited the metropolis.

As the population of England increased, old industries developed and new ones sprang up. The chief manufacture was that of wool, while that of silk flourished after the influx of Huguenots which followed the revocation of the Edict of Nantes.[1] The absence of large textile mills made it necessary to carry on spinning and weaving in the homes of the operatives. Coal mines and iron mines, which in later times became so important a source of England's prosperity, were then little worked. Farming and the raising of sheep and cattle still remained the principal occupations. Agriculture, however, was retarded by the old system of common tillage and open fields, just as manufacturing was fettered by the craft guilds. These survivals of the Middle Ages had not yet disappeared.

Economic England

Death Mask of Sir Isaac Newton

In the possession of the Royal Society of London.

The seventeenth century in England saw a notable advance in science. At this time Harvey revealed the circulation of the blood. Boyle, an Irishman, has been called the "father of modern chemistry," so many were his researches in that subject. Napier, a Scotchman, invented logarithms, which lie at the basis of the higher mathematics. A still greater man was Sir Isaac Newton (1642–1727), who discovered the infinitesimal calculus.[2] Knowledge of the calculus, which deals with quantities infinitely small, has been of immense service in engineering and other applied sciences. The profound mind of Newton also formulated the so-called law of gravitation. He showed by mathematical calculation

Science

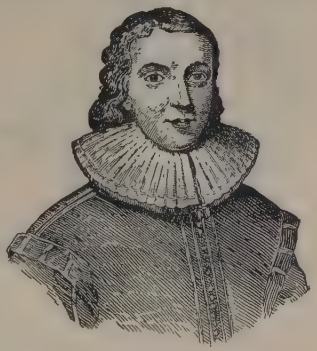
[1] See page 191.

[2] Credit for the discovery is shared by Newton with his German contemporary Leibniz (1646–1716).

that the motion of the planets about the sun, and of the moon about the earth, can be explained as due to the same mysterious force of gravity which makes the apple fall to the ground. This discovery that all the movements of the heavenly bodies obey one simple physical law forms perhaps the greatest achievement in the history of science. Shortly after the "Glorious Revolution" a group of investigators obtained a charter forming them into the Royal Society of London. It still exists and enrolls the most distinguished scientists of Great Britain. The Royal Observatory at Greenwich also dates from this period. Altogether much was being done to uncover the secrets of nature.

Seventeenth-century England produced no very eminent painters or sculptors, though foreign artists, such as Rubens and Van Dyck, were welcomed there. Among architects the most famous was Sir Christopher Wren, who did much to popularize the Renaissance style of building. A great fire, which destroyed most of old London during the reign of Charles II, gave Wren an opportunity to rebuild about fifty parish churches, as well as St. Paul's Cathedral.

Art



JOHN MILTON

A portrait of the poet at the age of twenty-one.

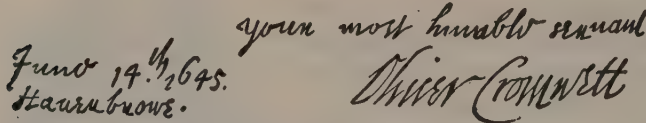
English literature in the seventeenth century covered many fields. Shakespeare and Bacon, the two chief literary ornaments of Elizabeth's reign, did some of their best work during the reign of James I. In 1611 appeared the Authorized Version of the Bible, sometimes called the King James Version because it was dedicated to that monarch. The simplicity, dignity, and eloquence of this translation have never been surpassed, and it still remains in ordinary use among Protestants throughout the English-speaking world. The Puritan poet, John Milton, composed his epic

Literature

of *Paradise Lost* during the reign of Charles II. About the same time another Puritan, John Bunyan, wrote the immortal *Pilgrim's Progress*, a book which gives an equal though different pleasure to children and adults, to the ignorant and the learned. The representative man of letters of the Restoration period was John Dryden, poet laureate, playwright, and essayist. But these are only a few of the eminent poets and prose writers of the age.

Studies

1. Explain: the "Rump"; "Pride's Purge"; the "Ironsides"; "Cavalier"; and "Roundhead." 2. What circumstances gave rise to (*a*) the Petition of Right; (*b*) the Instrument of Government; (*c*) the Habeas Corpus Act; (*d*) the Bill of Rights; and (*e*) the Act of Settlement? 3. Why were the reformers within the Church of England called Puritans? 4. Contrast the Commonwealth as a national republic with the medieval Italian cities, the Swiss Confederation, and the United Netherlands. 5. Under what circumstances does the Constitution of the United States provide for the suspension of the writ of *habeas corpus*? 6. Why has the Bill of Rights been called the "third great charter of English liberty"? 7. Show that the Revolution of 1688–1689 was a "preserving" and not a "destroying" revolution. 8. Trace the downfall of divine right as a political doctrine in seventeenth-century England. 9. What is the essential distinction between a "limited" or "constitutional" monarchy and an "absolute" or "autocratic" monarchy? 10. Using the genealogical table (page 174, note 1), show the claim of the Hanoverians to the English throne.



SPECIMEN OF CROMWELL'S HANDWRITING

CHAPTER VI

ABSOLUTE MONARCHY IN FRANCE, 1610–1715[1]

37. Absolutism of Louis XIII and Louis XIV

France in the seventeenth century furnished the best example of an absolute monarchy supported by pretensions to divine right. French absolutism owed most of all to Cardinal Richelieu, chief minister of Louis XIII (1610–1643). Though of weak physique and in poor health, Richelieu possessed such strength of will and so thorough an understanding of politics that he was able to dominate the king and through the king to govern France for eighteen years.

Cardinal Richelieu

Cardinal Richelieu

Louvre, Paris

After the portrait by the Belgian artist, Philippe de Champaigne.

Richelieu's foreign policy — to aggrandize France at the expense of the Hapsburgs — led to his successful intervention on the side of the Protestants at a decisive moment in the Thirty Years' War. His domestic policy — to exalt the French monarchy — met equal success. Though the nobles were still rich and influential, Richelieu beat down their opposition by forbidding the practice of dueling, that last remnant of private warfare, by ordering many castles to be blown up with gunpowder, and by bringing rebellious

Policies of Richelieu

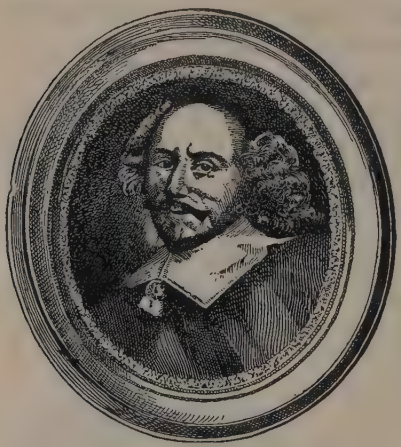
[1] Webster, *Readings in Medieval and Modern History*, chapter xxviii, "Louis XIV and His Court."

dukes and counts to the scaffold. The nobles henceforth were no longer feudal lords but only courtiers.

Richelieu died in 1642, and the next year Louis XIII, the master whom he had served so faithfully, also passed away.

Cardinal Mazarin

The new ruler, Louis XIV, was only a child, and the management of affairs for a second period of eighteen years passed into the hands of Cardinal Mazarin. He was an Italian by birth, but he became a naturalized Frenchman and carried out Richelieu's policies. Mazarin continued the war against the Hapsburgs, upon which Richelieu had entered, and brought it to a satisfactory conclusion. The Peace of Westphalia was Mazarin's greatest triumph. He also crushed a formidable uprising against the Crown, on the part of discontented nobles. Having achieved all this, the cardinal could truly say that "if his language was not French, his heart was." His death in 1661 found the royal authority more firmly established than ever before.



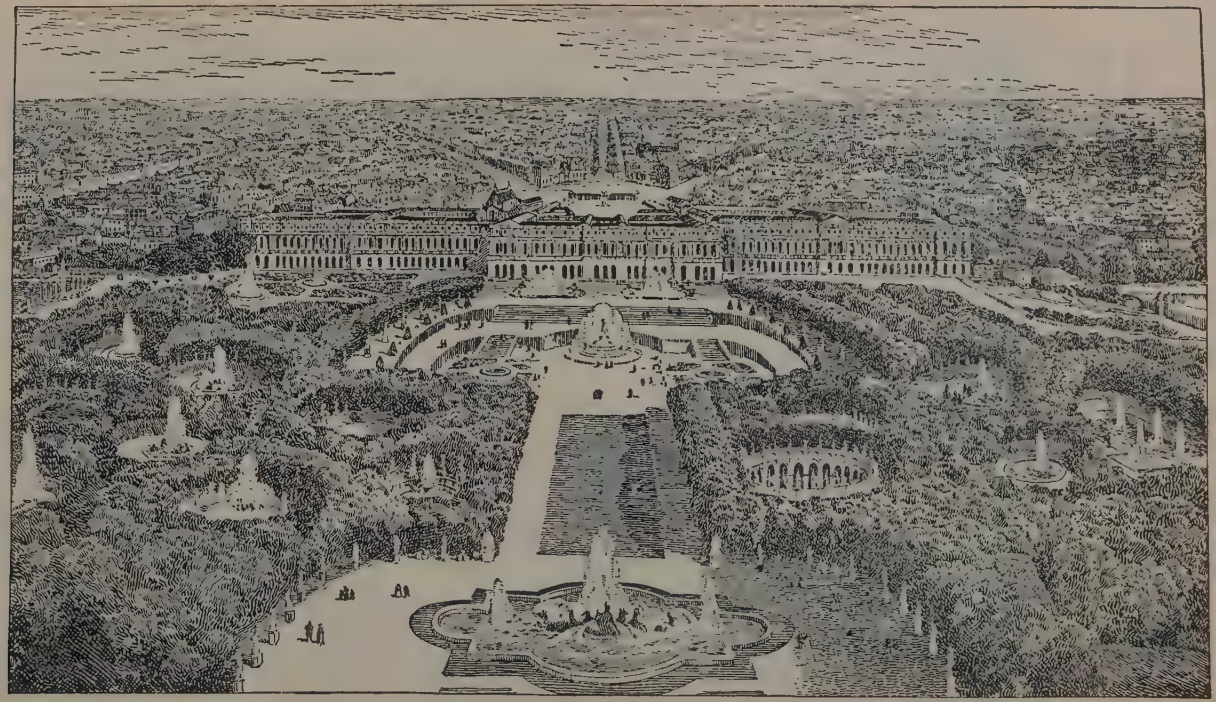
CARDINAL MAZARIN

A miniature by Petitot, in the South Kensington Museum, London.

Louis XIV, who now in his twenty-third year took up the reins of government, ranks among the ablest of French mon-

Louis XIV, the man

archs. He was a man of handsome presence, slightly below the middle height, with a prominent nose and abundant hair, which he allowed to fall over his shoulders. In manner he was dignified, reserved, courteous, and as majestic, it is said, in his dressing-gown as in his robes of state. A contemporary wrote that he would have been every inch a king, "even if he had been born under the roof of



VERSAILLES

The palace of Versailles now forms a magnificent picture gallery and museum of French history, while the park, with its fountains and ornamental shrubbery, is a place of holiday resort for Parisians. It is estimated that Louis XIV spent one hundred million dollars on the

a beggar." Louis possessed much natural intelligence, a retentive memory, and great capacity for work. It must be added, however, that his general education had been neglected, and that throughout his life he remained ignorant and superstitious. Vanity formed a striking trait in the character of Louis. He accepted the most fulsome compliments and delighted to be known as the "Grand Monarch" and the "Sun-king."

Court of Louis XIV at Versailles

Louis gathered around him a magnificent court at Versailles, near Paris. Here a whole royal city, with palaces, parks, groves, and fountains, sprang into being at his order. Many French nobles now spent little time on their country estates; they preferred to remain at Versailles in attendance on the king, to whose favor they owed offices, pensions, and honors. The king's countenance, it was said, is the courtier's supreme felicity; "he passes his life looking on it and within sight of it."

Louis XIV, the king

The famous saying, "I am the State,"[1] though not uttered by Louis, accurately expressed his conviction that in him were embodied the power and greatness of France. Few monarchs have tried harder to justify their despotic rule. He was fond of gayety and sport, but he never permitted himself to be turned away from the punctual discharge of his royal duties. Until the close of his reign — one of the longest in the annals of Europe — Louis devoted from five to nine hours a day to what he called the "trade of a king."

Absolutism in France

Conditions in France made possible the absolutism of Louis. Richelieu and Mazarin had labored with great success to strengthen the Crown at the expense of the nobles and the commons. The nation lacked a Parliament to represent it and voice its demands, for the Estates-General had not been summoned since 1614. It did not meet again tili 1789, just before the outbreak of the French Revolution. In France there was no Magna Carta to protect the liberties of the people by limiting the right of a ruler to impose taxes at will. The French, furthermore, did not have inde-

[1] "*L'État, c'est moi.*"

LOUIS XIV

After the painting by Hyacinthe Rigaud.
Louvre, Paris.

pendent law courts which could interfere with the king's power of exiling, imprisoning, or executing his subjects. Absolute monarchy thus became so firmly rooted in France that a revolution was necessary to overthrow it.

Absolutism, as a principle of government, received its fullest justification in a famous work [1] written by Bossuet, a learned French bishop, for the instruction of Louis XIV's son. A hereditary monarchy, declared Bossuet, is the most ancient and natural, the strongest and most efficient of all forms of government. Royal power emanates from God; hence the person of the king is sacred and it is sacrilege to conspire against him. No one may rightfully resist the king's commands; his subjects owe him obedience in all matters. To the violence of a king the people can only oppose respectful remonstrances and prayers for his conversion. A king, indeed, ought not to be a tyrant, but he can be one in perfect security. "As in God are united every perfection and virtue, so all the power of all the individuals in a community is united in the person of the king."

Bossuet on absolutism

38. The Wars of Louis XIV

How unwise it may be to concentrate authority in the hands of one man is shown by the melancholy record of the wars of Louis XIV. To make France powerful and gain fame for himself, Louis plunged his country into a series of struggles from which it emerged completely exhausted. He dreamed of dominating all western Europe, but his aggressions provoked against him a constantly increasing number of allies, who in the end proved to be too strong even for the king's able generals and fine armies.

Ambitious designs of Louis XIV

Louis himself lacked military talent and did not take a prominent part in any campaign. He was served, however, by excellent commanders, including Condé and Turenne. Vauban, an accomplished engineer, especially developed siege-craft. It was said of Vauban that

French militarism

[1] *Politics as derived from the Very Words of the Holy Scriptures.*

Acquisitions of Louis XIV and Louis XV

he never besieged a fortress without taking it and never lost one which he defended. Louvois, the war minister of the king, recruited, equipped, and provisioned larger bodies of troops than ever before had appeared on European battle-fields. It was Louvois who introduced the use of distinctive uniforms for soldiers and the custom of marching in step. He also established field hospitals and ambulances and placed camp life on a sanitary basis. The labors of these men gave Louis the best standing army of the age.

Of the four great wars which filled a large part of Louis's reign, all but the last were designed to extend the dominions of

France on the east and northeast as far as the Rhine. That river in ancient times had separated Gaul and Germany, and Louis, as well as Richelieu and Mazarin before him, regarded it as a "natural boundary" of France. **The Rhine boundary** Some expansion in this direction had already been made by the Peace of Westphalia, when France gained much of Alsace and secured the recognition of her old claims to the bishoprics of Metz, Toul, and Verdun in Lorraine. A treaty which Mazarin negotiated with Spain in 1659 also gave to France possessions in Artois and Flanders. Louis thus had a good basis for further advance toward the Rhine.

The French king began his aggressions by an effort to annex the Belgian or Spanish Netherlands, which then belonged to Spain. A triple alliance of Holland, England, and Sweden forced him to relinquish all his conquests, except some territory in Flanders (1668). **Three wars for the Rhine** Louis blamed the Dutch for his setback and determined to punish them. Moreover, the Dutch represented everything to which he was opposed, for Holland was a republic, the keen rival of France in trade, and Protestant in religion. By skillful diplomacy he persuaded England and Sweden to stand aloof, while his armies entered Holland and drew near to Amsterdam. At this critical moment William, Prince of Orange,[1] became the Dutch leader. He was a descendant of that William the Silent, who, a century before, had saved the Dutch out of the hands of Spain. By William's orders the Dutch cut the dikes and interposed a watery barrier to further advance by the French. William then formed another Continental coalition, which carried on the war till Louis signified his desire for peace. The Dutch did not lose a foot of territory, but Spain was obliged to cede to France the important province of Franche Comté (1678). A few years later Louis sought additional territory in the Rhinelands, but again an alliance of Spain, Holland, England, and the Holy Roman Empire compelled him to sue for terms (1697).[2]

[1] Subsequently William III of England. See page 171.

[2] In America this third war was known as "King William's War."

The treaty of peace concluding the third war for the Rhine confirmed the French king in the possession of Strasbourg, together with other cities and districts of Alsace which he had previously annexed. Alsace was now completely joined to France, except for some territories of small extent which were acquired about a century later. The Alsatians, though mainly of Teutonic extraction, in process of time considered themselves French and lost all desire for union with any of the German states. The greater part of Lorraine was not added to France until 1766, during the reign of Louis's successor. The Lorrainers, likewise, became thoroughly French in feeling.

Alsace and Lorraine

39. War of the Spanish Succession, 1702–1713

The European balance of power had thus far been preserved, but it was now threatened in another direction. The king of Spain lay dying, and as he was without children or brothers to succeed him, all Europe wondered what would be the fate of his vast possessions in Europe and America. Louis had married one of his sisters, and the Holy Roman Emperor another, so both the Bourbons and the Austrian Hapsburgs could put forth claims to the Spanish throne. When the king died, it was found that he had left his entire dominions to one of Louis's grandsons, in the hope that the French might be strong enough to keep them undivided. Though Louis knew that acceptance of the inheritance would involve a war with Austria and probably with England, whose ruler, William III, was Louis's old foe, ambition triumphed over fear and the desire for glory over consideration for the welfare of France. Louis proudly presented his grandson to the court at Versailles, saying, "Gentlemen, behold the king of Spain."

The Spanish succession

In the War of the Spanish Succession France and Spain faced the Grand Alliance, which included England, Holland, Austria, several of the German states, and Portugal. Europe had never known a war that concerned so many countries and peoples. William III died

Course of the war

EUROPE
after the Peace of Utrecht, 1713 A.D.
Hapsburg Dominions
Prussia
Piedmont (House of Savoy)
Hanover (House of Brunswick)
Boundary of the Empire
Scale of Miles
0 50 100 200 300
THE M.-N. WORKS
Edinburgh
SCOTLAND
Belfast
Dublin
IRELAND
NORTH SEA
DENMARK
SWEDEN
Copenhagen
BALTIC SEA
Königsberg
PRUSSIA
Stralsund
WESTERN POMERANIA
Amsterdam
Utrecht
NETHERLANDS
Bremen
Hanover
Berlin
PRUSSIA
ENGLAND
WALES
London
Vistula
Warsaw
POLAND
RUSSIA
Dnieper R.
SAXONY
SILESIA
Dresden
Prague
BOHEMIA
Cracow
Brussels
Cologne
Fontenoy
THE EMPIRE
MORAVIA
Seine
Paris
Versailles
Meuse
Verdun
Blenheim
AUSTRIA
Rastadt
BAVARIA
Munich
Vienna
Loire
Belfort
Neufchatel
TYROL
Buda
Pesth
HUNGARY
TRANSYLVANIA
Temesvar
SWITZERLAND
FRANCE
Lyons
SAVOY
Milan
Turin
Venice
Danube
Bordeaux
Garonne
Rhone
Orange
Avignon
PIEDMONT
PARMA
GENOA
Lucca
Florence
TUSCANY
PAPAL STATES OF THE CHURCH
ADRIATIC SEA
OTTOMAN EMPIRE
Constantinople
BLACK SEA
Ragusa
Cattaro
ATLANTIC OCEAN
Douro
Ebro
CORSICA
Rome
NAPLES
Barcelona
Madrid
Lisbon
PORTUGAL
Tagus
SPAIN
Guadiana
Guadalquivir
Seville
BALEARIC ISLES
MINORCA
(To England)
IVICA
MAJORCA
SARDINIA
(To Austria 1713, exchanged for Sicily 1720)
Naples
Palermo
Messina
SICILY
(To Savoy 1713, exchanged for Sardinia 1720)
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
MOREA
CRETE
Gibraltar
(To England)
AFRICA
10° Longitude 5° West 0° Longitude 5° East from 10° Greenwich 15° 20° 25°
20° 15° 10° 5° 0° 5° 10° 15° 20° 25° 30° 35°
50° 45° 40° 35°

shortly after the outbreak of hostilities, leaving the continuance of the contest as a legacy to his sister-in-law, Queen Anne.[1] England supplied the coalition with funds, a fleet, and also with the ablest commander of the age, the duke of Marlborough. In Eugène, prince of Savoy, the Allies had another skillful and daring general. Their great victory at Blenheim in 1704 was the first of a series of successes which finally drove the French out of Germany and Italy and opened the road to Paris. But dissensions among the Allies and the heroic resistance of France and Spain enabled Louis to hold his enemies at bay, until the exhaustion of both sides led to the conclusion of the Peace of Utrecht.

MARLBOROUGH

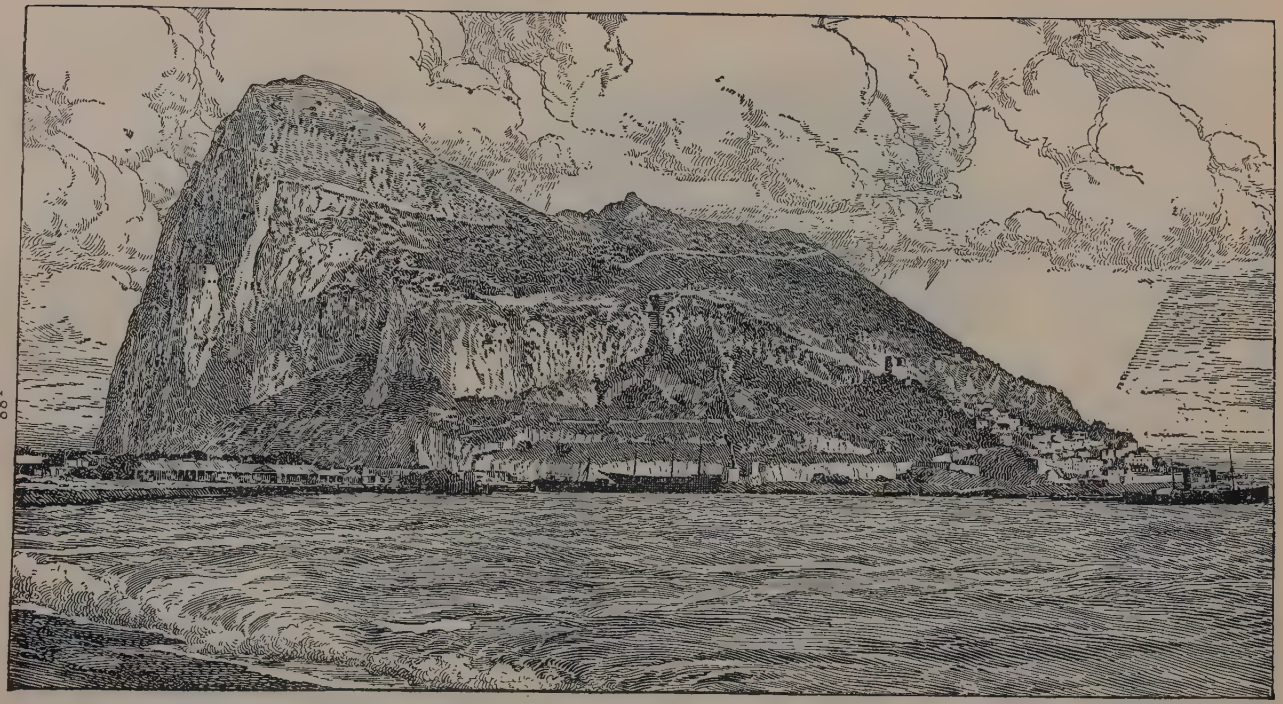
A miniature in the possession of the duke of Buccleugh.

This peace ranks among the most important diplomatic arrangements of modern times. First, Louis's grandson was recognized as king of Spain and her colonies, on condition that the Spanish and French crowns should never be united. Since this time Bourbon sovereigns have continued to rule in Spain. Next, the Austrian Hapsburgs gained the Spanish dominions in Italy, that is, Milan and Naples, the island of Sardinia, and the Belgian or Spanish Netherlands (thenceforth for a century called the Austrian Netherlands). Finally, England obtained from France extensive possessions in North America and from Spain, Minorca and the rock of Gibraltar, commanding the narrow entrance to the Mediterranean.

Peace of Utrecht, 1713

Two of the smaller members of the Grand Alliance likewise

[1] In America the war was known as "Queen Anne's War."



GIBRALTAR

Though not an island, Gibraltar is connected with the Spanish mainland only by a flat strip of sandy ground. The rock, which is about $2\frac{1}{2}$ miles in length, rises to a height of 1400 feet. At the base and on the summit are powerful batteries, while the sides are pierced with loopholes and galleries for cannon. There is also an inclosed harbor in which a fleet can safely anchor. Gibraltar has remained in British hands since 1704.

profited by the Peace of Utrecht. The right of the elector of Brandenburg to hold the title of king of Prussia was acknowledged. This formed an important step in the fortunes of the Hohenzollern dynasty. The duchy of Savoy also became a kingdom and received the island of Sicily (shortly afterwards exchanged for Sardinia). The house of Savoy in the nineteenth century provided Italy with its present reigning family.

Brandenburg-Prussia and Savoy

France lost far less by the war than at one time seemed probable. Louis gave up his dream of dominating Europe, but he kept all the Continental acquisitions made earlier in his reign. Yet the price of the king's warlike policy had been a heavy one. France paid it in the shape of famine and pestilence, excessive taxes, huge debts, and the impoverishment of the people. Louis, now a very old man, survived the Peace of Utrecht only two years. As he lay dying, he turned to his little heir[1] and said, "Try to keep peace with your neighbors. I have been too fond of war; do not imitate me in that, nor in my too great expenditure." These words showed an appreciation of the errors which robbed his long reign of much of its glory.

Position of France

40. France during the Seventeenth Century

No absolute ruler, however conscientious and painstaking, can shoulder the entire burden of government. Louis XIV necessarily had to rely very much on his ministers, of whom Colbert was the most eminent. Colbert gave France the best administration it had ever known. His reforming hand was especially felt in the finances. He made many improvements in the methods of tax-collection and turned the annual deficit in the revenues into a surplus. One of his innovations, now adopted by all European states, was the budget system. Expenditures had previously been made at random, whether the treasury was full or empty. Colbert drew up careful estimates, one year in advance, of the probable

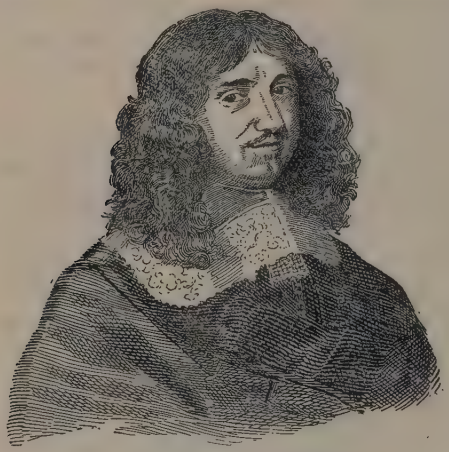
Colbert

[1] His great-grandson, then a child of five years. The reign of Louis XV covered the period 1715–1774.

receipts and expenses, so that outlay should never exceed income.

Colbert realized that the chief object of a minister of finance should be the increase of the national wealth. Hence he tried in every way to foster manufactures and commerce. Among other measures, Colbert placed heavy duties on the importation of foreign products, as a means of protecting the "infant industries" of France. This was the beginning of the protective system, since followed by many European countries and from Europe introduced into America. Colbert regarded protectionism as only a temporary device, however, and spoke of tariffs as crutches by the help of which manufacturers might learn to walk and then throw them away.

Economic measures of Colbert



JEAN-BAPTISTE COLBERT
After the painting by Philippe de Champaigne.

Colbert shared the erroneous views of many economists of his age in supposing that the wealth of a country is measured by the amount of gold and silver which it possesses. He wished, therefore, to provide the French with colonies, where they could obtain the products which they had previously been obliged to purchase from the Spaniards, Dutch, and English. At this time many islands in the West Indies were acquired, Canada was developed, and Louisiana, the vast territory drained by the Mississippi, was opened up to settlement. France thus became one of the leading colonial powers of Europe.

Colbert and colonial expansion

As long as Colbert lived, he kept on good terms with the

Huguenots, who formed such useful and industrious subjects. Louis, however, had no love for the Huguenots, whom he regarded as heretics, and whose Calvinistic principles, he knew, endowed them with scant respect for absolute monarchy. Accordingly, the king revoked the Edict of Nantes, which Henry IV had issued in 1598. The Huguenots, after nearly a century of religious toleration, were now denied freedom of worship and were also deprived of their rights as citizens. They continued

Revocation of the Edict of Nantes, 1685

MEDAL OF LOUIS XIV

Commemorates the revocation of the Edict of Nantes. The obverse bears a representation of "Louis the Great, the Most Christian King," the reverse contains a legend meaning "Heresy Extinguished."

to be an outlawed and persecuted sect until shortly before the French Revolution.

The revocation of the Edict of Nantes resulted in a considerable emigration of Huguenots from France. What was a loss to that country was a gain to England and Holland, where they introduced their arts and trades. Prussia, also, profited by the emigration of the Huguenots. Many of them went to Berlin, and that capital owed the beginning of its importance to its Huguenot population. Louis by his bigotry thus strengthened the chief Protestant foes of France.

Emigration of the Huguenots

Louis was a generous patron of art. One of his architects, Mansard, invented the mansard roof, which has been largely used in France and other European countries. This architectural device makes it possible to provide extra rooms at a small expense, without adding an

Art under Louis XIV

additional story to the building. Among the monuments of Louis's reign are the Hôtel des Invalides, now the tomb of Napoleon, additions to the Louvre, and the huge palace of Versailles. Louis also founded the Gobelins manufactory, so celebrated for fine carpets, furniture, and metal work.

MOLIÈRE

A bust by J. A. Houdon in the Théâtre Française, Paris.

Literature under Louis XIV

The long list of French authors who flourished during Louis XIV's reign includes Corneille and Racine, the tragedians, Molière, the comic dramatist, La Fontaine, whose fables are still popular, Perrault, now remembered for his fairy tales, and Madame de Sévigné, whose letters are regarded as models of French prose. Probably the most famous work composed at this time is the *Memoirs* of Saint-Simon. It presents an intimate and not very flattering picture of the king and his court.

Learning under Louis XIV

Louis and his ministers believed that the government should encourage research and the diffusion of knowledge. Richelieu founded and Colbert fostered the French Academy. Its forty members, sometimes called the "Immortals," are chosen for their eminent contributions to language and literature. The great dictionary of the French language, on which they have labored for more than two centuries, is still unfinished. The academy now forms a section of the Institute of France. The patronage of Colbert also did much to enrich the National Library at Paris, which contains the largest collection of books in the world.

The brilliant reign of Louis XIV cast its spell upon the rest

of Europe. Other sovereigns looked to him as the model of what a king should be, and set themselves to imitate the splendor of his court. During this period the French language, manners, dress, art, literature, and science became the accepted standards of good society in all civilized lands. France still retains in large measure the preëminent position which she secured under the "Grand Monarch."

The age of Louis XIV

Studies

1. Give dates for (*a*) accession of Louis XIV, (*b*) revocation of the Edict of Nantes, and (*c*) Peace of Utrecht. 2. By reference to the map on page 184, show how far the "natural boundaries" of France were attained during the reign of Louis XIV. 3. How did the condition of Germany after the Thirty Years' War facilitate the efforts of Louis XIV to extend the French frontiers to the Rhine? 4. What is the origin of the name Franche Comté? 5. Read Southey's poem *After Blenheim*. Does it rightly appreciate the significance of this battle in European history? 6. Show that by the Peace of Utrecht nearly all the combatants profited at the expense of Spain. 7. Compare the map of Europe in 1648 with that of Europe in 1713. Which states show the most marked changes in boundaries? 8. Why was the revocation of the Edict of Nantes economically injurious to France? 9. "The age of Louis XIV in France is worthy to stand by the side of the age of Pericles in Greece and of Augustus in Italy." Does this statement appear to be justified? 10. "Louis XIV was by far the ablest man who was born in modern times on the steps of a throne." Comment on this statement.

CHAPTER VII

THE EUROPEAN BALANCE OF POWER, 1715–1789

41. Statecraft and Diplomacy

The death of Louis XIV, shortly after the Peace of Utrecht, brought one historical epoch to a close and began another. Seventy-four years were to intervene before the meeting of the Estates-General ushered in the French Revolution, which has so profoundly affected all modern Europe to the present day. These seventy-four years from 1715 to 1789 really constitute the eighteenth century, a period preparatory to the revolutionary period by which it was succeeded.

The eighteenth century in politics

Absolutism continued to be the system of government throughout the eighteenth century. Absolute monarchies prevailed everywhere on the Continent, except in such small states as Holland, Switzerland, and Venice, where aristocracies held the reins of power. Democracy was non-existent. The middle and lower classes had no real part in law-making, no representative assemblies, and no constitutional safeguards against arbitrary rule. The kings were everything; their subjects nothing.

Absolute monarchies

The interests of the ruling families — Bourbons, Hapsburgs, Hohenzollerns and the rest — received far more consideration in eighteenth-century politics than those of peoples. Monarchs paid scant heed to geographical, racial, or linguistic boundaries, but cut and pared countries "as if they were Dutch cheeses." Thus, at the Peace of Utrecht, large portions of Italy, together with the Spanish Netherlands, were taken from Spain and given to Austria. The idea, now so prevalent, that each people should determine its own destiny then found little favor.

Dynastic interests

A cardinal principle of diplomacy in the eighteenth century was that of the balance of power. After the Peace of Westphalia statesmen generally agreed that the various European states, so unlike in size, population, and resources, ought to form a sort of federal community in which the security of all was ensured. If any state became so strong as to overshadow the others, then they must combine against it and endeavor to hold it in check. Louis XIV, who ignored this principle, had repeatedly to face the coalitions of his enemies.

The balance of power

But the balance of power remained only an ideal, in an age when diplomacy was corrupt and international immorality was universal. Strong countries often robbed their weaker neighbors with impunity. The result was that the vanity, selfishness, or ambition of individual rulers and dynasties plunged Europe into one war after another. From now on national aggrandizement replaced religious dissensions as the main cause of European strife.

National aggrandizement

The special interest of this age in political history lies in the emergence of new states above the horizon of Continental politics. Spain, Holland, and Sweden, three great nations of the seventeenth century, retired to the background; Germany and Italy remained disunited; Turkey declined in importance; and Poland disappeared from the map. Their place was taken by Russia and Prussia. These two countries, together with Great Britain, France, and Austria, formed henceforth the leading powers.

New European states

42. Rise of Russia

The influence of geographical conditions is clearly seen in Russian history. European Russia forms an immense, unbroken plain, threaded by numerous rivers which facilitate movement into every part of the country. While the rest of Europe, with its mountain ranges and deep inlets of the sea, tended to divide into many separate states, Russia just as naturally became a single state.

Geography in Russian history

The Russian people

In historic times Goths, Huns, Avars, Finns, Bulgarians, Northmen, and Mongols occupied Russian territory, but the bulk of the population at the end of the medieval period belonged to the Slavic branch of the Indo-European family. The Russians, therefore, were closely related in both language and blood to the Bohemians and Poles of central Europe and to the Serbians of the Balkan peninsula.

Yet the Russians at the opening of modern times seemed to be rather an Asiatic than a European people. Three hundred

years of Mongol rule had isolated them from their Slavic neighbors and had interrupted the stream of civilizing influences which in earlier days flowed into Russia from Scandinavia and from the Byzantine Empire. The lack of seaports discouraged foreign commerce, through which European ideas and customs might have entered Russia, while at the same time the nature of the country made agriculture rather than industry the principal occupation. Most of the Russians were ignorant, superstitious peasants, who led secluded lives in small farming villages scattered over the plains and throughout the forests. Even the inhabitants of the towns lacked the education and enlightened manners of the western peoples, whose ways they disliked and whose religion, whether Protestantism or Catholicism, they condemned as heretical. Russia, in short, needed to be restored to Europe, and Europe needed to be introduced to Russia.

Backwardness of the Russians

Russia under Ivan the Great (1462–1505), the tsar who expelled the Mongols, was still an inland state. The natural increase of her people, their migratory habits, and the desire for civilizing intercourse with other nations, impelled her expansion seawards. By the annexation of Novgorod and its possessions, Ivan carried Russian territory to the Arctic. Wars of his successors with the Tatars gave Russia command of the Volga from source to mouth and brought her to the Caspian. Russian emigrants also occupied the border country called the Ukraine,[1] which lay on both sides of the lower Dnieper. Russia continued, however, to be shut out from the Baltic by the Swedes and Poles and from the Black Sea by the Turks.

Russian expansion in Europe

The vanguard of the Ukrainian colonists was led by the mounted warriors known as Cossacks.[2] Like the frontiersmen of the American West, the Cossacks lived a wild and independent life, now as herdsmen and farmers, now as hunters and fighters. They became in time subjects of the tsar, but still preserve a warlike organization,

The Cossacks

[1] Russian *krai*, "frontier."

[2] From the Turkish word, *kazak*, an adventurer or freebooter.

the tenure of land by military service (a form of feudalism), and the privilege of electing their own *hetman*, or supreme leader.

Cossacks, Russian peasants, and adventurers also spread over the gentle slopes of the Urals and between these mountains and the Caspian into Siberia. Before the end of the sixteenth century they captured Sibir, a Mongol capital from which the whole region takes its name. By the middle of the seventeenth century they had penetrated to the Sea of Okhotsk; by 1700 they had occupied Kamchatka and faced the Pacific. The foundations of Russian supremacy were thus laid throughout northern Asia, a vast wilderness previously inhabited only by half-savage, heathen tribes.

Russian expansion in Asia

Over these dominions in Europe and Asia reigned the monarch who called himself the tsar and autocrat of all Russia. The family of tsars, descended from the Northman Ruric in the ninth century, became extinct seven hundred years later, and disputes over the succession led to civil wars and foreign invasions. The Russians then proceeded to select a new tsar, and for this purpose a general assembly of nobles and delegates from the towns met at Moscow. Their choice fell upon one of their own number, Michael Romanov by name, whose family was related to the old royal line. He proved to be an excellent ruler in troublous times. His grandson was the celebrated Peter the Great.

Accession of the Romanov dynasty, 1613

43. Russia under Peter the Great, 1689–1725

Peter became sole ruler of Russia when only seventeen years of age. His character almost defies analysis. An English contemporary, who knew him well, described him as "a man of a very hot temper, soon inflamed, and very brutal in his passion." Deeds of fiendish cruelty were congenial to him. After a mutiny of his bodyguard he edified the court by himself slicing off the heads of the culprits. In order to quell opposition in his family, he had his wife whipped

Tsar Peter

by the knout and ordered his own son to be tortured and executed. He was coarse, gluttonous, and utterly without personal dignity. The companions of his youth were profligates; his banquets were orgies of dissipation. Yet Peter could be often frank and good-humored, and to his friends he was as loyal as he was treacherous to his foes. Whatever his weaknesses, few men have done more than Peter to change the course of history, and few have better deserved the appellation of "the Great." [1]

Peter grew up wild and undisciplined, and he had to educate himself. The practical bent of his mind disclosed itself in the interest he took in mechanics, ship-building, siege-craft, and military drill. Association with foreigners at Moscow gave him some knowledge of European arts and sciences and first suggested to him the need of introducing western culture into Russia.

Peter's education

Soon after becoming tsar Peter sent fifty young Russians of the best families to England, Holland, and Venice to absorb all they could of European ideas. Afterwards he came himself, traveling incognito as "Peter Mikhailov." He spent two years abroad, particularly in Holland and England, where he studied ship-building and navigation. He also collected miners, mechanics, engineers, architects, and experts of every sort for the roads and bridges, the ships and palaces, the schools and hospitals which were to arise in Russia.

Peter in western Europe

Many of Peter's reforms were intended to introduce the customs of western Europe into Russia. The long Asiatic robes of Russian nobles had to give way to short German jackets and hose. Long beards, which the people considered sacred, had to be shaved, or else a tax paid for the privilege of wearing one. Women, previously kept in seclusion, were permitted to appear in public without veils and to mingle at dances and entertainments with men. A Russian order of chivalry — that of St. Andrew — was founded. The Bible was translated into the vernacular

Europeanization of Russia

[1] Read Longfellow's poem, *The White Czar*.

and sold at popular prices. Peter adopted the "Julian calendar," in place of the old Russian calendar, which began the year on the first of September, supposed to be the date of the creation. He also improved the Russian alphabet by omitting some of its cumbersome letters and by simplifying others. Such innovations were accepted only by the upper classes. The peasants clung tenaciously to their old ways and remained little affected by the sudden inrush of European ideas and manners.

Peter found in Russia no regular army; he organized one after the German fashion. The soldiers (except the Cossacks) were uniformed and armed like European troops. He found no fleet; he built one, modeled upon that of Holland. He opened mines, cut canals, laid out roads, introduced sheep breeding, and fostered by protective tariffs the growth of silk and woolen manufactures. He instituted a police system and a postal service. He established schools of medicine, engineering, and navigation, as well as those of lower grade. He also framed a code of laws based upon the legal systems of western Europe.

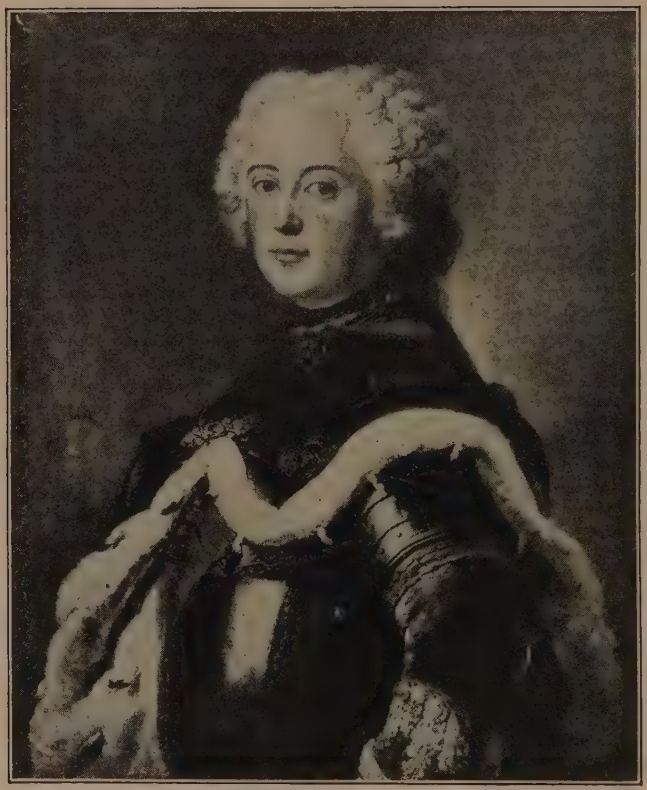
Reconstruction of Russia

The tsar's reforming measures encountered much opposition on the part of the clergy. He therefore made the Russian Church entirely a state institution by vesting ecclesiastical authority in the Holy Synod, whose members were chosen by himself. Like the clergy, the old nobility had opposed Peter's innovations. He consequently transformed it into an aristocracy of office-holders, whose rank depended, not upon their birth or wealth, but upon their service to the tsar. Any family which for two generations had not taken part in the government ceased to be noble. In place of an ancient assembly (Duma) of nobles, Peter instituted a Council of State, directly responsible to himself. Peter in these ways established an absolutism as unlimited as that of his contemporary, Louis XIV.

Peter an autocrat

Very different views have been expressed as to the value of Peter's work. It is said, on the one side, that Russia could only be made over by such measures as he used; that the

PETER THE GREAT



FREDERICK THE GREAT

After the painting by Antoine Pesne.
Berlin Museum.

Russian people had to be dragged from their old paths and pushed on the broad road of progress. On the other side, it is argued that Peter's reforms were too sudden, too radical, and too little suited to the Slavic national character. The upper classes acquired only a veneer of western civilization, and with it many vices. The nobles continued to be indolent, corrupt, and indifferent to the public welfare. The clergy became merely the tools of the tsar. The common people remained as ignorant and oppressed as ever and without any opportunity of self-government. Whatever may be the truth as to these two views, no one disputes the fact that in a single reign, by the action of one man, Russia began to pass from semi-barbarism to civilization.

Value of Peter's work

As the ancient capital, Moscow, formed a stronghold of conservatism, Peter determined to build a new capital, less Asiatic in character and more susceptible to European influence. The site chosen was an unhealthy swamp on the river Neva, not far from the Gulf of Finland. The laborers perished by thousands, but Peter cared little for human life and with resistless energy urged forward the work of draining the marshes and digging canals to carry away the stagnant waters. Russian traders were forced to settle in the city, and all the great landowners were required to build mansions there. To this northern Venice Peter gave the German name of (St.) Petersburg.[1]

St. Petersburg, 1703

The remaking of Russia according to European models formed only a half of Peter's program. His foreign policy was equally ambitious. He realized that Russia needed readier access to the sea than could be found through the Arctic port of Archangel. Peter made little headway against the Turks, who controlled the Black Sea, but twenty years of intermittent warfare with the Swedes enabled him to carry the western frontier of Russia to the Baltic. Russian history at this point connects closely with the history of Sweden.

Peter's foreign policy

[1] In 1914 the name was changed to the Slavic equivalent, Petrograd.

44. Sweden

Historic importance of the Baltic

The Baltic resembles the Mediterranean in its narrow entrance, numerous islands, and deeply indented shores. But the lands adjoining the northern sea are less fertile than those which surround the Mediterranean; it is of much smaller size; and many of its harbors are icebound during half the year. For these reasons the historic importance of the Baltic cannot compare with that of the Mediterranean, except in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries when Sweden became a great power.

The three Scandinavian states

The inhabitants of Sweden, Norway, and Denmark, though one in blood and almost one in speech, have never coalesced into a single nation. The Union of Calmar, which they formed in 1397, gave them a common ruler, but permitted each state to keep its own constitution and laws. Even this feeble confederation broke down during the storms of the Reformation. It was finally dissolved in 1524, and Sweden again became independent.

Cradle of Charles XII

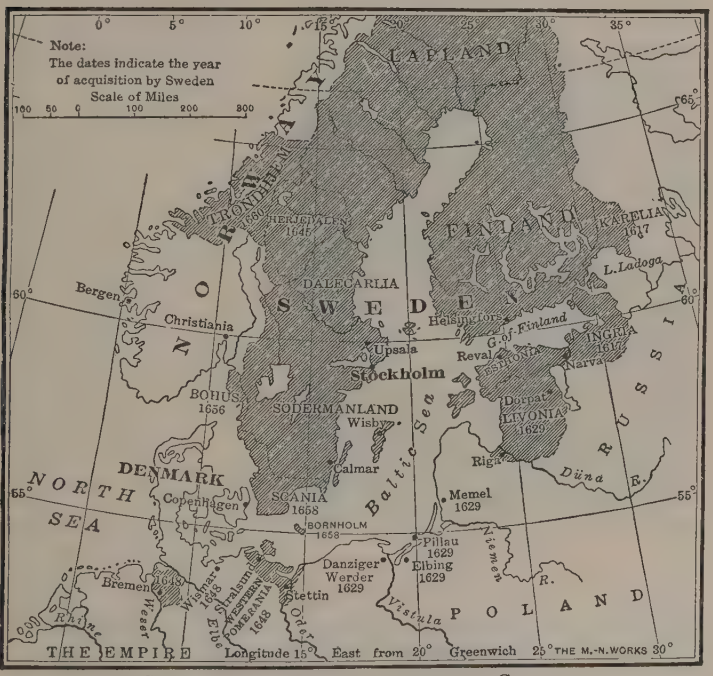
The kings of Sweden were both patriotic and able, and under them the country, though thinly populated and poor in natural resources, rose to a leading place among European states. Finland had been a Swedish dependency since the twelfth century. Esthonia, on the southern shore of the Gulf of Finland, was conquered in the sixteenth century. Three other provinces, namely, Karelia, Ingria, and Livonia, were acquired by the Swedish king, Gustavus Adolphus. As the result of his participation in the Thirty Years' War, Sweden also secured, at the Peace of

Expansion of Sweden

Westphalia, western Pomerania and other possessions in the north of Germany. She thus controlled nearly all the Baltic.

The greatness of Sweden culminated and then declined during the spectacular reign of Charles XII. His youth was prophetic of his career. Indoors he read the exploits of Alexander the Great and the sagas of the Vikings; out of doors he devoted himself to hunting and

Reign of Charles XII, 1697–1718


Note:
The dates indicate the year of acquisition by Sweden
Scale of Miles
LAPLAND
FINLAND
SWEDEN
NORWAY
DENMARK
RUSSIA
POLAND
THE EMPIRE
NORTH SEA
Baltic Sea
Gulf of Finland
L. Ladoga
Bergen
Christiania
Helsingfors
Upsala
Stockholm
Reval
Narva
Dorpat
Riga
Wisby
Calmar
Copenhagen
Memel
Pillau
Elbing
Danziger Werder
Stettin
Bremen
Hamburg
Lübeck
Lüneburg
Wismar
Stralsund
Visby
Dünaburg
Vilna
Grodno
Brest
Warsaw
Cracow
Lemberg
Kiev
Smolensk
Moscow
Tula
Kaluga
Orel
Kursk
Kharkov
Poltava
Voronezh
Tambov
Penza
Saratov
Tsaritsyn
Astrakhan
Kazan
Nizhni Novgorod
Yaroslavl
Kostroma
Vologda
Archangel
Tobolsk
Tomsk
Yeniseisk
Irkutsk
Yakutsk
Okhotsk
Kamchatka
Nerchinsk
Selenginsk
Urga
Kiakhta
Peking
Mukden
Kirin
Vladivostok
Port Arthur
Korea
Japan
Sea of Japan
Yellow Sea
China
Mongolia
Manchuria
Siberia
Turkestan
Persia
Caspian Sea
Black Sea
Sea of Azov
Crimea
Sevastopol
Odessa
Constantinople
Sea of Marmora
Dardanelles
Aegean Sea
Greece
Athens
Turkey
Asia Minor
Smyrna
Mediterranean Sea
Crete
Cyprus
Syria
Damascus
Palestine
Jerusalem
Egypt
Cairo
Alexandria
Suez
Red Sea
Arabia
Mecca
Medina
Aden
Abyssinia
Sudan
Khartum
Nubia
Libya
Tripoli
Algeria
Tunis
Bizerta
Morocco
Fez
Tangier
Gibraltar
Spain
Portugal
Lisbon
Madrid
Seville
Granada
Malaga
Cadiz
Barcelona
Valencia
Balearic Islands
Majorca
Minorca
Ivica
Sardinia
Corsica
Italy
Rome
Naples
Sicily
Messina
Palermo
Malta
Valletta
Tripoli
Bengasi
Algiers
Oran
Constantine
Biskra
Timbuctoo
Senegal
Gambia
Sierra Leone
Liberia
Gold Coast
Dahomey
Nigeria
Lagos
Benin
Cameroon
Kamerun
Gaboon
Congo
Congo Free State
Angola
Loanda
Benguela
Mozambique
Zambesi
Nyasaland
Lake Nyasa
Rhodesia
Zambesia
Transvaal
Pretoria
Johannesburg
Orange Free State
Bloemfontein
Cape Colony
Cape Town
Port Elizabeth
East London
Natal
Durban
Pietermaritzburg
Basutoland
Zululand
Madagascar
Tananarive
Antananarivo
Mauritius
Port Louis
Reunion
St. Denis
Seychelles
Aldabra
Comoro Islands
Zanzibar
Mombasa
Uganda
Kampala
Victoria Nyanza
Lake Victoria
Lake Albert
Lake Tanganyika
Lake Bangweolo
Lake Mweru
Lake Nyasa
Lake Rudolf
Lake Chad
Lake Tchad
Lake Ngami
Lake Chilwa
Lake Shirwa
Lake Tsana
Lake Dembea
Lake Tritonis
Lake Urmia
Lake Van
Lake Aral
Lake Baikal
Lake Balkash
Lake Issyk-Kul
Lake Tengri
Lake Hanka
Lake Biwa
Lake Kasumigaura
Lake Onega
Lake Ladoga
Lake Peipus
Lake Ilmen
Lake Chudskoe
Lake Pskov
Lake Vänern
Lake Vättern
Lake Mälaren
Lake Hjälmaren
Lake Wener
Lake Constance
Lake Geneva
Lake Lucerne
Lake Zurich
Lake Neuchâtel
Lake Maggiore
Lake Como
Lake Garda
Lake Iseo
Lake Trasimeno
Lake Bolsena
Lake Vadimone
Lake Albano
Lake Nemi
Lake Fucino
Lake Averno
Lake Lugano
Lake Orta
Lake Varese
Lake Idro
Lake Guarda
Lake Trasimene

Poland, and Denmark. Shortly after the accession of Charles XII they formed a coalition to seize and dismember the Swedish possessions. The boy-king, far from being dismayed by the odds against him, turned fiercely upon his enemies before they could unite. He invaded Denmark, appeared before the walls of Copenhagen, and compelled the terrified Danes to conclude a separate peace. He won almost fabulous victories in Russia and Poland, at one time overthrowing a Russian army five times as large as his own. The Poles, also badly beaten, were required to depose their ruler and accept the nominee of the Swedish king.

Exploits of Charles XII

But Charles was like a meteor which flashed across the European sky to disappear as quickly as it came. Rejecting all overtures for peace, he determined to march on Moscow and dictate terms to Peter the Great. The Russian resistance stiffened as the Swedes approached the capital along much the same route which the French under Napoleon followed one hundred years later. Charles had to turn south to the Ukraine, where he hoped to raise the Cossacks against the tsar. Here, however, he was defeated by Peter in the decisive battle of Poltava. Charles afterwards returned to his kingdom, but soon perished in an obscure conflict in Norway.

Battle of Poltava, 1709

Exhausted Sweden had now no choice but to make terms with her foes. She lost nearly all her foreign possessions except Finland.[1] The greater part of western Pomerania went to Prussia, which thus secured valuable territory at the mouth of the Oder. Russia profited even more, for she took the four Swedish provinces on the eastern shores of the Baltic. Much of this region had been colonized in the Middle Ages by the knights of the Teutonic Order. It was now to become a Slavic land. Here Peter the Great founded his new capital, thus realizing a long-cherished dream of opening a "window" through which the Russian people might look into Europe.

Partition of Swedish territories

[1] A small part of Finland, lying along the gulf of that name, was ceded to Russia. The rest of the country did not enter the Russian Empire until 1809.

45. Russia under Catherine II, 1762–1796; the Decline of Turkey

Shortly after the death of Peter the Great, at the early age of fifty-three, the male line of the Romanov dynasty became extinct. The succession now passed to women, who intermarried with German princes and thus increased the German influence in Russia. It was a German princess, Catherine II, who completed Peter's work of remaking Russia into a European state. She, also, has been called "the Great," a title possibly merited by her achievements, though not by her character. Catherine came to Russia as the wife of the heir-apparent. Once in her adopted country, she proceeded to make herself in all ways a Russian, learning the language and even conforming, at least outwardly, to the Orthodox (or Russian) Church. Her husband was a weakling, and Catherine managed to get rid of him after he had reigned only six months. She then mounted the throne and for thirty-four years ruled Russia with a firm hand.

Tsarina Catherine

CATHERINE II
After a painting by Van Wilk.

The overthrow of Sweden left Poland and Turkey as the two countries which still blocked the path of Russia toward the sea. Catherine warred against them throughout her reign. She took the lion's share of Poland, when that unfortunate kingdom, as we shall shortly learn, was divided among Russia, Austria, and Prussia. Catherine also secured from the Turks an outlet for Russia on

Catherine's foreign policy

the Black Sea, though she never realized her dream of expelling them from European soil.

Growth of the Ottoman power

When Constantinople fell to the Turks in 1453, their European dominions already included a considerable part of the Balkan peninsula. The two centuries following witnessed the steady progress of the Ottoman arms. What are now Bulgaria, Rumania, Serbia, Bosnia, Albania, and Greece were incorporated within the Turkish Empire. Only tiny Montenegro, protected by mountain ramparts and a heroic soldiery, preserved its independence. Pressing northward, the Turks conquered part of Hungary and made the rest of that country a dependency. They overran the Crimea and bestowed it upon a Mongol khan as a tributary province. They annexed Egypt, Syria, Armenia, Mesopotamia, and the coast of northern Africa. The Black Sea and the eastern Mediterranean became Turkish lakes.

The Cross and the Crescent

Two dramatic events showed that the Christian soldiery of Europe could still oppose a successful resistance to the Moslem warriors. The first was the crippling of Turkish sea-power by the combined fleets of Venice, Genoa, and Spain at Lepanto (1571). The second was the defeat suffered by the Turks under the walls of Vienna (1683). They marched on the Austrian capital, two hundred thousand strong, laid siege to it, and would have taken it but for the timely appearance of a relieving army commanded by the Polish king, John Sobieski. Poland at that time saved Austria from destruction and definitely stopped the land advance of the Turks in Europe.

Decline of the Ottoman power

After 1683 the boundaries of European Turkey gradually receded. The Hapsburgs won back most of Hungary by the close of the seventeenth century and during the eighteenth century further enlarged their possessions at the expense of the Sultan. Catherine II, as the result of two wars with the Turks, secured the Crimea and the northern coast of the Black Sea. Russian merchant ships also received the right of free navigation in the Black

THE OTTOMAN EMPIRE
To 1683 A. D.
Scale of Miles
0 50 100 200 300 400
THE M.-N. WORKS
Ottoman Lands in 1307 A.D.
Acquisitions, 1307-1451 A.D.
Acquisitions, 1451-1566 A.D.
Acquisitions, 1566-1683 A.D.
Longitude East from Greenwich
ALGIERS
Scale of Miles
0 100 200 300 400 500
POLAND
RUSSIA
AUSTRIA
HUNGARY
ITALY
BLACK SEA
CASPIAN SEA
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
PERSIA
ANATOLIA
Constantinople
Vienna
Budapest
Venice
Adriatic Sea
Danube
Save
Dniester
Dnieper
Don
Azov
Sea of Azov
CRIMEA
CRIMEAN TARTARY
MOLDAVIA
BESSARABIA
JEDISAN
TRANSYLVANIA
Berlad
Temesvar
WALLACHIA
Bukharest
DOBRUDJA
BOSNIA
Belgrade
SERBIA
Nish
BULGARIA
Sofia
Varna
RUMELIA
Adrianople
Ragusa
MONTENEGRO
ALBANIA
Salonika
Larissa
Brussa
Angora
Kastamuni
Kizil Irmak
Sinope
Trebizond
Batum
Kutais
Tiflis
Derbend
DAGHISTAN
GEORGIA
TREBIZOND
Erzerum
ARMENIA
Silvas
Kurdistan
Van
Tabriz
DISPUTED WITH PERSIA
Lands
Caucasus Mts.
Mity-lene
Chios
Smyrna
CARAMANIA
Konia (Iconium)
Taurus Mts.
Adana
Antioch
Aleppo
Diarbekr
MESOPOTAMIA
Mosul
Bagdad
Teheran
SICILY
Messina
IONIAN IS.
Corinth
Athens
MOREA
Nauplia
Modon
Malvasia
CRETE
Rhodes
G. of Adalia
CYPRUS
Tripoli
Beirut
Damascus
SYRIA
Euphrates
Tigris
Persian Gulf
EL BASA
Tripoli
BARKA
TRIPOLI
Alexandria
Damietta
Jaffa
Jerusalem
Cairo
Suez
EGYPT
SINAI
Nile
Algiers
Bona
Oran
Susa
TUNIS
Tripoli

Sea and of access through the Bosporus and Dardanelles to the Mediterranean. In this way Catherine opened for Russia another "window" on Europe.

Turkey lost more than territory. Russian consuls were admitted to Turkish towns, and Russian residents in Turkey were granted the free exercise of their religion. As time went on, the tsars even claimed the right of protecting Christian subjects of the Sultan and consequently of interfering at will in Turkish affairs. The Sultan thus tended to become the "sick man" of Europe, the disposition of whose possessions would henceforth form one of the thorny problems of European diplomacy. In a word, what is called the Eastern Question began.

The Eastern Question

46. Austria and Maria Theresa

The Hapsburgs were originally feudal lords of a small district in what is now northern Switzerland, where the ruins of their ancestral castle[1] may still be seen. Count Rudolf, the real maker of the Hapsburg fortunes, secured the archduchy of Austria, with its capital of Vienna, and in 1273 was chosen Holy Roman Emperor. The imperial title afterwards became hereditary in the Hapsburg family.

The Hapsburg family

The name "Austria" is loosely applied to all the territories which the Hapsburgs acquired by marriage, inheritance, or conquest. The accompanying map shows their possessions early in the sixteenth century and their gains and losses from this time until the close of the eighteenth century.

The Hapsburg realm

The Hapsburgs ruled over the most extraordinary jumble of peoples to be found in Europe. There were Germans in Austria proper and Silesia, Czechs in Bohemia and Moravia, Magyars, Croatians, and Slovenes in Hungary and its dependencies, Italians in Milan and Tuscany, and Flemings and Walloons in the Netherlands. It was impossible to group such widely

Government of the Hapsburg realm

[1] German *Habichtsburg* ("Hawk's Burgh").

scattered peoples into one centralized state; it was equally impossible to form them into a federation. Their sole bond of union was a common allegiance to the Hapsburg monarch.

HAPSBURG POSSESSIONS, 1526–1789 A.D.

The Pragmatic Sanction

The Hapsburg realm threatened to break up in the eighteenth century upon the death of the emperor Charles VI, who lacked male heirs. Charles, however, had made a so-called Pragmatic Sanction, or solemn compact, declaring his dominions to be indivisible and, leaving them to his eldest daughter, Maria Theresa. Most of the European powers pledged themselves by treaty to observe this arrangement.

Maria Theresa

The emperor died in 1740 and Maria Theresa became archduchess of Austria, queen of Hungary, queen of Bohemia, and sovereign of all the other Hapsburg lands. She was then only twenty-three years old, strikingly handsome, and gifted with much charm of manner. Her youth, her beauty, and her sex might have entitled her to consideration by those states which had agreed to respect the

Pragmatic Sanction. But a paper bulwark could not safeguard Austria against Prussia and Prussia's allies.

47. The Rise of Prussia

Prussia, the creator of modern Germany, was the creation of the Hohenzollerns.[1] Excepting Frederick the Great, no Hohenzollern deserves to be ranked as a genius; but it would be hard to name another dynasty with so many able, ambitious, and unscrupulous rulers. The Hohenzollerns prided themselves on the fact that almost every member of the family enlarged the possessions received from his ancestors. They did this by purchase, by inheritance, by shrewd diplomacy, and, most of all, by hard fighting.

The Hohenzollerns

MARIA THERESA

After a pastel painting formerly in the possession of the Archduke Frederick, Vienna.

The veil of obscurity hanging over the early history of the Hohenzollerns lifts early in the fifteenth century, when one of them received the mark of Brandenburg from the Holy Roman Emperor, as compensation for various sums of money advanced to him. Brandenburg in the Middle Ages had formed a German colony planted among the Slavs beyond the Elbe. With the margraviate went the electoral dignity, that is to say, the ruler of Brandenburg was one of the seven German princes who enjoyed the privilege of choosing the emperor.

Margraviate of Brandenburg, 1415

The Hohenzollerns as yet had no connection with Prussia. That country received its name from the Borussi, a heathen people most closely related to the Lithuanians. The Borussi

[1] The name is derived from that of their castle on the heights of Zollern in southern Germany. Emperor William II was the twenty-fourth ruler of the line.

occupied the Baltic coast east of the Vistula. They were conquered in the thirteenth century by the knights of the Teutonic Order, who exterminated many of them and kept the rest in subjection by force and terrorism. The Prussian landed aristocracy (*Junkers*) has largely descended from these hard-riding, hard-fighting, fierce, cruel knights. They made Prussia a thoroughly German land in speech, customs, and religion. The decline of their order in the fifteenth century enabled the king of Poland to annex West Prussia. During the Reformation the Teutonic grand master, who was a near relative of the Hohenzollerns of Brandenburg, dissolved the order and changed East Prussia into a secular duchy. His family became extinct early in the seventeenth century, and the duchy then passed to the elector of Brandenburg.

Duchy of Prussia, 1618

The period between the close of the Thirty Years' War and the accession of Frederick the Great saw many additions to the Hohenzollern domains. The most important were eastern Pomerania, the acquisition of which extended Brandenburg to the Baltic (1648); certain districts along the lower Rhine (1666); and most of western Pomerania, which was secured after the defeat of Sweden (1720). The Hohenzollerns were now powerful enough to aspire to royal dignity. At the outbreak of the War of the Spanish Succession, the emperor, who was anxious to receive the elector's support, allowed him to assume the title of "king" and to claim, henceforth, that he ruled by divine right. Prussia, rather than Brandenburg, gave its name to the new kingdom, because the former was an independent state, while the latter was a member of the Holy Roman Empire.

Kingdom of Prussia, 1701

Only a strong hand could hold together the scattered possessions of the Hohenzollerns. Their hand was strong. No monarchs of the age exercised a more unlimited authority or required more complete obedience from their subjects. *Nicht raisonniren* — "no reasoning here" — was their motto. According to the Hohenzollern principle, the government could not be too absolute, provided it was

Prussian absolutism

efficient. The ruler, working through his ministers, who were merely his clerks, must foster agriculture, industry, and commerce, promote education, and act as the guide of his people in religion and morals.

This type of Prussian ruler was well exemplified in the person of Frederick William, commonly called the Great Elector. Unattractive in character, cunning and deceitful, he showed, nevertheless, a single-hearted devotion to the interests of the state and spared neither himself nor others in its service. His long reign of forty-eight years marked out the paths which Prussia henceforth followed. He suppressed such representative assemblies as existed in his dominions, replacing them by a central council of his ministers and provincial governors. A Hohenzollern could not tolerate free institutions; the will of the ruler must be supreme. In religious matters the Great Elector adopted a wise policy of toleration. Though Brandenburg was staunchly Protestant, he opened it to Jews from Austria and Huguenots from France and thus added many useful citizens to the population. His domestic measures were equally wise. By building roads, draining marshes, cutting canals, and encouraging scientific farming, he did much to develop the resources of a country little favored by nature. Finally, he managed to form a standing army, supported by taxation and entirely dependent on himself.

The Great Elector, 1640–1688

The Hohenzollerns, from the time of the Great Elector, devoted themselves consistently to the upbuilding of their military forces. Prussia was to have an army sufficiently strong to defend a kingdom without natural boundaries and stretching in detached provinces all the way from the Rhine to the Niemen. The soldiers at first were volunteers, recruited in different parts of Germany, but it became necessary to fill up the gaps in the ranks by compulsory levies among the peasants. Carefully trained officers, appointed from the nobility and advanced only on merit, enforced an iron discipline. The soldiers, it was said, feared their commanders more than they did the enemy.

Prussian militarism

The Great Elector's grandson, Frederick William I, may stand as the representative of Prussian militarism. His brother monarchs were greatly amused when he formed a company of giant grenadiers, whom he treated as his pets and for whom he ransacked Europe. It was the king's sole indulgence; otherwise he lived with the utmost frugality and saved every possible penny for his army and his war chest. At the end of Frederick William's reign, Prussia, with a population of only two and a half millions, could put eighty thousand men in the field, half as many as France and nearly as many as Austria. The king himself did almost no fighting. He was too fond of his well-drilled regiments, his "blue children," as he called them, to risk them in battle. What could be done with them was shown by his son and successor, Frederick the Great.

Frederick William I, 1713–1740

48. Prussia under Frederick the Great, 1740–1786

As crown prince of Prussia Frederick had led a hard life. His stern and crabbed father wished to make him only a soldier and discouraged every pursuit which did not contribute to this end. But the young man developed other tastes. He learned to play the flute, received secret lessons in Latin, read French plays, and filled his mind with the speculations of French philosophers. William, seeing his son apparently absorbed in frivolity, treated him with such harshness that he even tried to run away. The attempt failed, and the crown prince lay for a time under sentence of death as a deserter. His punishment took the form of an arduous, slavelike training for the duties of future kingship. "If he kicks or rears again," said his father, "he shall forfeit the succession to the crown, and even life itself." But Frederick did not kick or rear again. Henceforth he labored so diligently as to win back the esteem of his father, who no longer feared to leave the throne to one unworthy of occupying it.

The youthful Frederick

Frederick became king at the age of twenty-eight. He was

rather below the average height and inclined to stoutness, good looking, with the fair hair of North Germans and blue-gray eyes of extraordinary brilliancy. His character had been shaped by the stern experiences of his youth, which left him selfish and unsympathetic, cynical and crafty. He was not a man to inspire affection among his intimates, but with the mass of his subjects he was undeniably popular. Innumerable stories circulated in Prussia about the simplicity, good humor, and devotion to duty of old "Father Fritz."

Frederick's personality and character

FREDERICK THE GREAT
After a painting by H. Pataky.

The year 1740, when both Frederick and Maria Theresa mounted the throne, saw the beginning of a long struggle between them. The responsibility for it rests on Frederick's shoulders. The Prussian king coveted Silesia, an Austrian province lying to the southeast of Brandenburg and mainly German in population. Of all the Hapsburg possessions it was the one most useful to the Hohenzollerns. Frederick suddenly led his army into Silesia and overran the country without much difficulty. No justification existed for this action. As the king afterwards confessed in his *Memoirs*, "Ambition, interest, and desire of making people talk about me carried the day; and I decided for war."

Acquisition of Silesia

Frederick's action precipitated a general European conflict. France, Spain, and Bavaria allied themselves with Prussia,

in order to partition the Hapsburg possessions, while Great Britain and Holland, anxious to preserve the balance of power, took the side of Austria. Things might have gone hard with Maria Theresa but for the courage and energy which she displayed and the support of her Hungarian subjects. She had to cede Silesia to Frederick, but lost no other territory. In 1748 all the warring countries agreed to a mutual restoration of conquests (with the exception of Silesia) and signed the Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle.[1]

War of the Austrian Succession, 1740–1748

Maria Theresa still hoped to recover her lost province. As most of the European sovereigns were either afraid or jealous of Frederick, she found no great difficulty in forming a coalition against him. Russia, France, Sweden, and Saxony entered it. Most of Europe thus united in arms to dismember the small Prussian state.

Outbreak of the Seven Years' War, 1756

It happened, however, that at the head of this small state was a man of military genius, capable of infusing into others his own undaunted spirit and supported by subjects disciplined, patient, and loyal. Furthermore, Great Britain in the Seven Years' War was an ally of Prussia. British gold subsidized the Prussian armies, and British troops, by fighting the French in Germany, India, and America, weakened Prussia's most dangerous enemy. Frederick conducted a purely defensive warfare, thrusting now here and now there against his slower-moving adversaries, who never learned to act in concert and exert their full force simultaneously. Even so, the struggle was desperately unequal. The Russians occupied East Prussia, penetrated Brandenburg, and even captured Berlin. Faced by the gradual wearing-down of his armies, an empty treasury, and an impoverished country, Frederick more than once meditated suicide. What saved him was the accession of a new tsar. This ruler happened to be a warm admirer of the Prussian king and at once withdrew from the war. Maria Theresa, deprived of her eastern ally, now had to come to terms and leave Fred-

Course of the war

[1] For the War of the Austrian Succession outside of Europe see pp. 234 and 260.

6°
8°
10°
12°
14°
16°
18°
20°
22°
54°
52°
50°
DENMARK
SWEDEN
NORTH SEA
BALTIC SEA
SCHLESWIG
HOLSTEIN
HELGOLAND
Wesser
EAST FRIESLAND
Emden
Hamburg
Bremen
Elbe
MECKLENBURG
Rostock
Kolberg
POMERANIA
W. POMERANIA
EASTERN NEUMARK
Oder
Danzig
Marienburg
Königsberg
Niemen
EAST PRUSSIA
WEST PRUSSIA
NEW EAST PRUSSIA
Thorn
Vistula
Bug
Posen
Warsaw
Warthe
SOUTH PRUSSIA
Pilica
BRANDENBURG
Brandenburg
Berlin
Potsdam
Frankfort
Lingen
MINDEN
Minden (1759)
RAVENGBERG
Hanover
Magdeburg
MAGDEBURG
CLEVES
Wesel
MARK
Crefeld
Cologne
Rhine
Coblenz
Wernigerode
Kottbus
Halle
Weira
Rossbach (1757)
Leipzig
Weimar
Dresden
SAXONY
Leuthen (1757)
Breslau
SILESIA
NEW SILESIA
Jagerndorf
Oderberg
Elbe
Frankfort
Dettingen (1743)
Main
Mainz
BAYREUTH
Bayreuth
Prague
BOHEMIA
AUSTRIA
Ansbach
Nuremberg
ANSBACH
THE M.-N. WORKS
Longitude East 14° from Greenwich
GROWTH OF
PRUSSIA
to the End of the
EIGHTEENTH CENTURY
0 50 100
Scale of Miles
Brandenburg in 1415 A.D.
Acquisitions, 1415-1740 A.D.
Acquisitions under Frederick II, the Great, 1740-1786 A.D.
Acquisitions under Frederick William II. 1786-1797 A.D.

erick in secure possession of Silesia. Soon afterwards the Peace of Paris between France and Great Britain brought the Seven Years' War to an end (1763).[1]

This most bloody contest, which cost the lives of nearly a million men, seemed to settle little or nothing in Europe except the ownership of Silesia. Yet the Seven Years' War really marks an epoch in European history. The young Prussian kingdom appeared henceforth as one of the great powers of the Continent and as the only rival in Germany of the old Hapsburg monarchy. From this time it was inevitable that Prussia and Austria would struggle for predominance, and that the smaller German states would group themselves around one or the other. Frederick, of course, like all the Hohenzollerns, fought simply for the aggrandizement of Prussia, but the results of his work were disclosed a century later when the German Empire came into being.

Issue of the war

49. Poland

Our first glimpse of the Poles reveals them as a Slavic people, still wild and heathen, who occupied the region between the upper waters of the Oder and the Vistula. They began to adopt Roman Christianity toward the close of the tenth century. The Poles suffered terribly from the Mongol invasions, but, unlike the Russians, never bowed to the yoke of the Great Khan. The military-religious order of the Teutonic Knights also made persistent attacks on the Poles, thus endeavoring, even in medieval times, to bring their country within the German sphere of influence.

Poles

The early history of the Poles is closely linked with that of the Lithuanians, a kindred though distinct people. The Lithuanians originally dwelt among the forests and marshes of the Niemen River. They were almost the last of the barbarous inhabitants of Europe to be civilized and Christianized.

Lithuanians

Common fear, at first of the Germans and then of the Russians, brought the Poles and Lithuanians together. By the

[1] For the Seven Years' War outside of Europe, see pages 235 and 260.

Union of Lublin (1569) Poland proper and the grand duchy of Lithuania became a single state, with one king, one Diet, and one currency. After the union the old Polish capital of Cracow gave way to Warsaw, now one of the largest and finest cities of eastern Europe.

Union of Poles and Lithuanians

THE PARTITION OF POLAND

A contemporary cartoon which represents Catherine II, Joseph II, and Frederick II pointing out on the map the boundaries of Poland as divided between them. Stanislaus II, the Polish king, is trying to keep his crown from falling off his head.

Poland, as the new state may be henceforth called, was badly made. It formed an immense, monotonous plain, reaching from the Baltic almost to the Black Sea. No natural barriers of rivers or mountains clearly separated the country from Russia on the east, the lands of the Hohenzollerns and Hapsburgs on the west, and the Ottoman Empire on the south. Even the Baltic Sea

Frontiers of Poland

did not provide a continuous boundary on the north, for here the duchy of East Prussia cut deeply into Polish territory. Poland, with its artificial frontiers, lacked geographical unity.

PARTITIONS OF POLAND, 1772, 1793, 1795 A.D.

Inhabitants of Poland

Poland was not racially compact. Besides Poles and Lithuanians, the inhabitants included many Russians, a considerable number of Germans and Swedes, and a large Jewish population in the towns. The differences between them in race and language were accentuated by religious dissensions. The Poles and most of the Lithuanians belonged to the Roman Catholic Church, the Germans and Swedes adhered to Lutheranism, while the Russians accepted the Greek Orthodox faith.

Feudalism, though almost extinct in western Europe, flourished in Poland. There were more than a million Polish nobles, mostly very poor, but each one owning a share of the land. No large and wealthy middle class existed. The peasants were miserable serfs, over whom their lords had the power of life and death.

Social conditions in Poland

The Polish monarchy was elective, not hereditary, an arrangement which converted the kings into mere puppets of the noble electors. A Polish sovereign could neither make war or peace, nor pass laws, nor levy taxes without the consent of the Polish national assembly. In this body, which was composed of representatives of the nobility, any member by his single adverse vote — "I object" — could block proposed legislation. The result was that the nobles seldom passed any measures except those which increased their own power and privileges. The wonder is, not that Poland collapsed, but that it survived so long under such a system of government.

Political conditions in Poland

TADEUSZ KOSCIUSKO
After a painting by Joseph Grassi.

Russia, Austria, and Prussia had long interfered in the choice of Polish rulers. Now they began to annex Polish territory. It was not necessary to conquer the country, but only to divide it up like a thing ownerless and dead. In 1772 Catherine II joined with Maria Theresa and Frederick the Great in the first partition of Poland. Russia took a strip east of the Düna and Dnieper rivers inhabited entirely by Russians. Austria took Galicia and neighboring lands occupied

First partition, 1772

by Poles and Russians. Prussia received the coveted West Prussia, whose inhabitants were mainly Germans. Altogether Poland lost about one-third of its territory.

The first partition opened the eyes of the Polish nobles to the ruin which threatened their country. Something like a patriotic spirit now developed, and efforts began to remove the glaring absurdities of the old government. The reform movement encountered the opposition of the neighboring sovereigns, who wished to keep Poland as weak as possible in order to have an excuse for further spoliation. The second partition (1793), in which only Russia and Prussia shared, cut deeply into Poland. Two years later came the final dismemberment of the country among its three neighbors. The brave though futile resistance of the Polish patriots, led by Kosciuszko, who had fought under Washington in the Revolutionary War, threw a gleam of glory upon the last days of the expiring kingdom.

Second and third partitions, 1793, 1795

Neither Great Britain nor France interfered to save the Poles. Great Britain was fully occupied with her rebellious American colonies, while France, then ruled by the wretched Louis XV, had for the time being lost all weight in the councils of Europe.

Non-intervention

The suggestion for the dismemberment of Poland came from Frederick the Great, who with his usual frankness admitted that it was an act of brigands. In Catherine II he found an ally as unprincipled as himself. Maria Theresa expressed horror at the crime and even declared that it would remain a blot on her whole reign. "She wept indeed, but she took."

Responsibility for the partitions

This shameful violation of international law produced a Polish Question. From the eighteenth century to the twentieth century the Poles never ceased to be restless and unhappy under foreign overlords. They developed a new national consciousness after the loss of their freedom, and the severest measures of repression failed to break their spirit. One happy result of the World War has been the restoration of Poland as an independent country.

The Polish Question

50. Great Britain and George III

At a time when absolute monarchs held sway in Prussia, Russia, Austria, France, and other Continental countries, the people of Great Britain had a constitutional monarchy limited by Parliament. The concessions which they had wrung from their reluctant sovereigns in the seventeenth century were embodied in great state papers, including the Petition of Right, the Habeas Corpus Act, and the Bill of Rights. To these documents of political liberty was added the Act of Settlement in 1701, which led, thirteen years later, to the accession of the first of the Hanoverians.[1] George I could not speak English and preferred Hanover to his adopted country. George II, though less a German than his father, also took more interest in Hanoverian than in British affairs. Both kings were therefore willing to give their ministers a free hand in government. The result was that under the first two Georges what is called the cabinet system assumed very much its present form.

George I and George II

The cabinet consists of a small number of ministers, who sit in Parliament and shape legislative measures. This body received its name because it met, not in the larger council chamber, but in a "cabinet," or smaller room, apart. The development of political parties during the reign of William III made it desirable for the king to select all his cabinet ministers from that party — either Whigs or Tories — which commanded a majority in the House of Commons, for otherwise the royal measures were likely to encounter opposition. King William and Queen Anne always attended cabinet meetings; George I did not do so because he could not either understand or be understood in the deliberations. Since this time the British sovereign has not been a member of the cabinet. His place is taken by the prime minister, or premier.

Development of the cabinet

The first two Hanoverians naturally favored the Whigs, who had brought about the "Glorious Revolution" and passed the Act of Settlement. The Whig party included the great

[1] See page 174.

lords, most of the bishops and town clergy, the Nonconformists, and the merchants, shopkeepers and other members of the middle class. The Tories, whose strength lay in the landed gentry and rural clergy, were very unpopular, being supposed to desire a second restoration of the Stuarts.[1] The Whigs, in consequence, monopolized office for more than half a century. They kept a large majority in the House of Commons and practically decided who should be members of the all-powerful cabinet.

The Whig ascendancy

A Politician

After a cartoon by W. Hogarth.

The leading man in the Whig cabinet for many years was Sir Robert Walpole. We may call him the first prime minister, though he did not actually have that title. Walpole followed a peaceful policy, aimed to keep Great Britain out of Continental entanglements, and fostered British trade and industry. In order to maintain the Whig majority, Walpole bought votes unblushingly and, when open bribery would not suffice, corrupted members of the House of Commons by gifts of offices with large pay and few or no duties. "All these men have their price," he once remarked, pointing to a group of commoners.

Walpole's ministry, 1721–1742

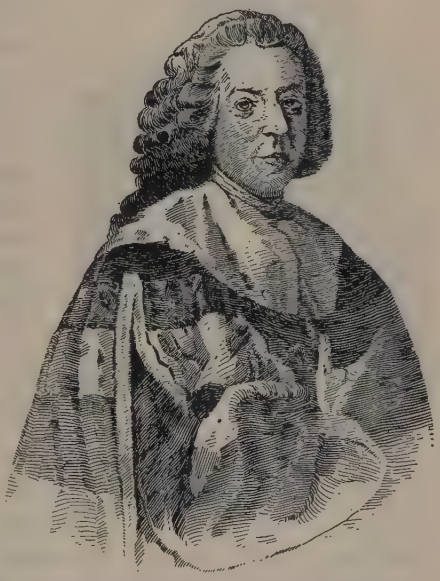
After Walpole the Whigs found a leader in William Pitt, the Elder, a fiery orator, an ardent patriot, and an incorruptible statesman. He became the real, though not the nominal, head

[1] Namely, James, the "Old Pretender," son of James II by his second wife, and his grandson Charles Edward, the "Young Pretender." Their supporters were called "Jacobites" (Latin *Jacobus*, James).

of the cabinet shortly after the opening of the Seven Years' War. It was a dark hour for the British. Frederick the Great, their ally on the Continent, had met severe reverses, and the French under Montcalm threatened to overrun the American colonies.

William Pitt, the Elder

But Pitt had full confidence in his ability. "I am sure," he said, "that I can save the country, and that no one else can." And save it he did. The "Great Commoner" infused new vigor into the conduct of the war; aroused the martial spirit of the nation; and selected the commanders who gained victory after victory over the French on the sea, in India, and in America. Great Britain, as Frederick the Great said, had at length "borne a man." Thanks to Pitt's memorable leadership, that country emerged from the Seven Years' War a world-power and great imperial state.



WILLIAM PITT, EARL OF CHATHAM

After a painting by Richard Brompton in the National Portrait Gallery, London.

The accession in 1760 of George III marked a notable attempt to revive in Great Britain the ideas of personal rule associated with the Stuarts. "George, be a king," his German mother had told him, and this advice he tried his best to follow. Taking advantage of a House of Commons then utterly unrepresentative of the

Personal rule of George III

people and packed with his supporters (the "king's friends"), George III set about the restoration of absolutism. His money, patronage, and influence were liberally used to bribe and reward the men who would do the royal bidding.

GEORGE III

After a painting by John Zoffany in Buckingham Palace, London.

Lord North's ministry, 1770–1782

After ten years of unremitting effort the triumph of George III appeared to be complete. Pitt and the Whigs retired to the background, and a Tory ministry, headed by Lord North, came into office. North was a mere figurehead; behind the scenes and moving them as he willed stood the sinister figure of the king. To this would-be despot, therefore, belongs the chief responsibility for the measures of oppression which provoked the resistance of the Thirteen Colonies and resulted in their separation from the mother country. The American Revolution was to a large extent the work of George III.

Restoration of constitutional monarchy

The failure of George III to subdue the colonists led to a political upheaval. The House of Commons adopted a resolution that "the influence of the Crown has increased, is increasing, and ought to be diminished." Lord North's ministry resigned, and the discredited king became the most unpopular of sovereigns. Great Britain now returned to the principles of constitutional or limited monarchy, which have since been adopted by so many countries in the Old World. In the New World, as we shall shortly learn, the American Revolution

gave birth to a nation dedicated to the principles of republican government.

Studies

1. On an outline map indicate the territorial gains made by Russia in Europe under Peter the Great. 2. On an outline map indicate the additions to the Hohenzollern dominions made by Frederick the Great. 3. What illustrations of international immorality are found in this chapter? 4. How was Russia until the time of Peter the Great rather an "annex of Asia" than a part of Europe? 5. "Russia is the last-born child of European civilization." Comment on this statement. 6. What did Peter the Great mean by saying, "It is not land I want, but water"? 7. "The Dnieper made Russia Byzantine, the Volga made it Asiatic. It was for the Neva to make it European." Can you explain this statement? 8. Why has Charles XII been called the "last of the Vikings"? 9. Why has the defeat of Charles XII at Poltava been included among the world's decisive battles? 10. On the map (page 196) indicate the Russian acquisitions from Sweden, Poland, and Turkey, respectively, to the end of the eighteenth century. 11. Enumerate the principal Hapsburg possessions in 1526 (map on page 208). What permanent additions of territory were made between 1526 and 1789? 12. Account for the development of both absolutism and militarism in Prussia. 13. How did Frederick II win the designation of "the Great"? 14. Why may the Polish state be described as both a monarchy and a republic? 15. Compare Russia's share of Poland with the shares of Austria and Prussia (map on page 218). 16. Show that the geographical situation of West Prussia made it an extremely important addition to the Hohenzollern possessions. 17. What is "cabinet government"? 18. What did George II mean by saying that "ministers are kings in this country"? 19. Mention some of the accusations against George III as set forth in the Declaration of Independence.

FREDERICK, LORD NORTH

After a painting by Nathaniel Dance.

CHAPTER VIII

COMMERCE AND COLONIES DURING THE SEVENTEENTH AND EIGHTEENTH CENTURIES[1]

51. Mercantilism and Trading Companies

PORTUGAL and Spain had chiefly profited by the geographical discoveries and colonizing movements of the sixteenth century.

New rivals for colonial empire

The decline of these two countries after 1600 enabled other European nations to step into their place as rivals for commerce, colonies, and the sovereignty of the seas. The Dutch were first in the field, followed later by the French and the English.

Many motives inspired the colonizing movement of the seventeenth century. Political aims had considerable weight.

Motives for colonization

Holland, France, and England wanted dependencies overseas as a counterpoise to those obtained by Portugal and Spain. The religious impulse also played a part, as when Jesuit missionaries penetrated the American wilderness to convert the Indians to Christianity and when the Pilgrim Fathers sought in the New World a refuge from persecution. But the main motive for colonization was economic in character. Colonies were planted in order to furnish the home land with raw materials for its manufactures, new markets, and favorable opportunities for the investment of capital in commerce and industry.

Most European statesmen in the seventeenth century accepted the principles of the mercantile system. Mercantilism

[1] Webster, *Readings in Medieval and Modern History*, chapter xxix, "The Aborigines of the Pacific." Webster, *Historical Source Book*, No. 3, "Mayflower Compact, 1620"; No. 5, "New England Confederation, 1643"; No. 10, "Resolutions of the Stamp Act Congress, 1765"; No. 11, "Virginia Bill of Rights, 1776"; No. 12, "Declaration of Independence, 1776"; No. 13, "Articles of Confederation, 1777"; No. 14, "Northwest Ordinance, 1787"; No. 15, "Constitution of the United States, 1789."

is the name given to an economic doctrine which emphasized the importance of manufactures and foreign trade, rather than agriculture and domestic trade, as sources of national wealth. Some Mercantilists even argued that the prosperity of a nation is in exact proportion to the amount of money in circulation within its borders. They urged, therefore, that each country should so conduct its dealings with other countries as to attract to itself the largest possible share of the precious metals. This could be most easily done by fostering exports of manufactures, through bounties and special privileges, and by discouraging imports, except of raw materials. If the country sold more to foreigners than it bought of them, then there would be a "favorable balance of trade," and this balance the foreigners would have to make up in coin or bullion. As one Mercantilist expressed it, the regular means "to increase our wealth and treasure is by foreign trade, wherein we must ever observe this rule: to sell more to strangers yearly than we consume of theirs in value."[1]

The mercantile system

Large and flourishing colonies seemed essential to the success of the mercantile system. Colonies were viewed simply as estates to be worked for the advantage of the country fortunate enough to possess them. The home government did its best to prevent other governments from trading with its dependencies. At the same time, it either prohibited or placed serious restrictions on colonial manufactures which might compete with those of the mother country. Portugal and Spain in the sixteenth century, and now Holland, France, and England in the seventeenth century, pursued this colonial policy.

Mercantilism and colonial policy

The home government did not itself engage in colonial commerce. It ceded this privilege to private companies organized for the purpose. A company, in return for the monopoly of trade with the inhabitants of a colony, was expected to govern and protect them.

Trading companies

The first form of association was the regulated company. Each member, after paying the entrance fee, traded with his

[1] Thomas Mun, *England's Treasure by Forraign Trade*, London, 1664, chap. ii.

own capital at his own risk and kept his profits to himself. After a time this loose association gave way to the joint-stock company. The members contributed to a common fund and, instead of trading themselves, intrusted the management of the business to a board of directors. Any one who invested his capital would then receive a "dividend" on his "shares" of the joint stock, provided the enterprise was successful. The joint-stock companies of the seventeenth century thus formed a connecting link with modern corporations.

Regulated and joint-stock companies

Trading companies were very numerous. For instance, Holland, France, England, Sweden, and Denmark, as well as Scotland and Prussia, each chartered its own "East India Company." England had many trading companies, particularly those which operated in the Baltic lands, Russia, Turkey, India, Morocco, West Africa, and North America.

Examples of trading companies

52. The Dutch Colonial Empire

Holland lies at the mouths of the largest rivers of western Europe, the Scheldt, Meuse, and Rhine, thus securing easy communication with the interior. It is not far distant from Denmark and Norway and is only a few hours' sail from the French and English coasts. These advantages of position, combined with a small, infertile territory, never capable of supporting more than a fraction of the inhabitants by agriculture, naturally turned the Dutch to the sea. They began their maritime career as fishermen, "exchanging tons of herring for tons of gold," and gradually built up an extensive transport trade between the Mediterranean and Baltic lands. After the discovery of the Cape route to the Indies, Dutch traders met Portuguese merchants at Lisbon and there obtained spices and other eastern wares for distribution throughout Europe.

Rise of Holland as a commercial power

But the Dutch were soon to become seamen on a much more extensive scale. The union of Portugal with Spain in 1581[1]

[1] Dissolved in 1640.

Baffin Bay
GREENLAND
ARCTIC CIRCLE
ICELAND
C. Farewell
Hudson Bay
NORTH AMERICA
Hudson Bay Co. (1670)
Plymouth Co. (1606)
Open to other Company
London Co. (1606)
ATLANTIC OCEAN
Gulf of Mexico
CUBA
TROPIC OF CANCER
Caribbean Sea
CENTRAL AMERICA
EQUATOR
SOUTH AMERICA
PACIFIC OCEAN
TROPIC OF CAPRICORN
Merchant Adventurers (1564)
Eastland Co. (1579)
BRITISH ISLES
Plymouth
London
Antwerp
Hamburg
Narva
Archangel
White Sea
Muscovy Co. (1554)
Moscow
RUSSIA
EUROPE
ASIA
GERMANY
POLAND
FRANCE
SPAIN
ITALY
Constantinople
Black Sea
Caspian Sea
TURKEY
Smyrna
Levant Co. (1581)
Damascus
Alexandria
Morocco Co. (1585)
Morocco
Mediterranean Sea
Nile R.
Red Sea
ARABIA
Suez
AFRICA
Guinea Co. (1588, 1618)
Congo R.
Delhi
INDIA
Arabian Sea
East India Co. (1600)
Calicut
FARTHER INDIA
SIAM
China Sea
CHINA
Yangtze R.
Hwang R.
BORNEO
CELEBES
NEW GUINEA
SUMATRA
Batavia
JAVA
SPICE IS.
INDIAN OCEAN
MADAGASCAR
ENGLISH TRADING COMPANIES
Area of Trading
(1564) Year of Charter
Scale of Miles
0 500 1000 2000 3000
80° 40° 0° 40° 80° 120°
West
Longitude from Greenwich
East
THE MATTHEWS-NORTHRUP WORKS, BUFFALO, N.Y.

enabled Philip II to close the port of Lisbon to the Netherlanders, who had already begun their revolt against the Spanish monarch. Philip also seized a large number of Dutch ships lying in Spanish and Portuguese harbors, thus disclosing his purpose to destroy, if possible, the profitable commerce of his enemies. The Dutch now began to make expeditions

Dutch expeditions to the East Indies

EAST INDIES

directly to the East Indies, whose trade had been monopolized by Portugal for almost a century. They captured many Portuguese and Spanish ships, obtained ports on the coasts of Africa and India, and soon established themselves securely in the Far East.

In 1602 the Dutch government chartered the East India Company and gave to it the monopoly of trade and rule from the Cape of Good Hope eastward to the Strait of Magellan. The company operated chiefly in the rich islands of the Malay Archipelago. Here much bitter fighting took place with the Portuguese, who were finally driven from nearly all of their eastern possessions. Ceylon, Malacca, Sumatra, Java, Celebes, and the

Dutch East India Company

Moluccas, or Spice Islands, passed into the hands of the Dutch. The headquarters of the Dutch East India Company were located at Batavia in Java. This city still remains one of the leading commercial centers of the East Indies.

The Dutch in South Africa

The Dutch possessions included the Cape of Good Hope, where the Dutch East India Company made a permanent settlement (Cape Town) in 1652. It was intended, at first, to be simply a way-station or port of refreshment for ships on the route to the Indies. Before long, however, Dutch emigrants began to arrive in increasing numbers, together with Huguenots from France after the revocation of the Edict of Nantes. These farmer-settlers, or Boers, passed slowly into the interior and laid there the foundation of Dutch sway in South Africa. The Cape of Good Hope became a British possession at the opening of the nineteenth century, but the Boer republics retained their independence until our own day.

NEW AMSTERDAM IN 1655

After Van der Donck's *New Netherland*.

The Dutch in America

Fired by their success and enriched by their gains in the East, the Dutch started out to form another colonial empire in the West. It was an agent of the Dutch East India Company, Henry Hudson, who, seeking a northwest passage to the East Indies, discovered in 1609 the river which bears his name. The Dutch sent out ships to trade with the natives and built a fort on Manhattan Island. In 1621 the Dutch West India Company received a

charter for commerce and colonization between the west coast of Africa and the east coast of the Americas. The company's little station on Manhattan Island became the flourishing port of New Amsterdam, from which the Dutch settlement of New Netherland spread up the Hudson River. The company also secured a large part of Guiana, as well as some of the West Indies. New Netherland before long passed into the hands of the English, but Holland has still a foothold in America in the island of Curaçao and the province of Surinam or Dutch Guiana.

The Dutch in the seventeenth century were the leaders of commercial Europe. They owned more merchant ships than any other people and almost monopolized the carrying trade from the East Indies and between the Mediterranean and the Baltic. Yet with the advent of the eighteenth century the Dutch had begun to fall behind their French and English rivals in the race for commerce and colonies. They suffered from trade warfare with England during the Commonwealth and the reign of Charles II. The long and exhausting War of the Spanish Succession, in which Holland was a member of the Grand Alliance against Louis XIV, struck a further blow at Dutch prosperity. Though Holland fell from the first rank of commercial states, it has kept most of its dominions overseas to the present time.

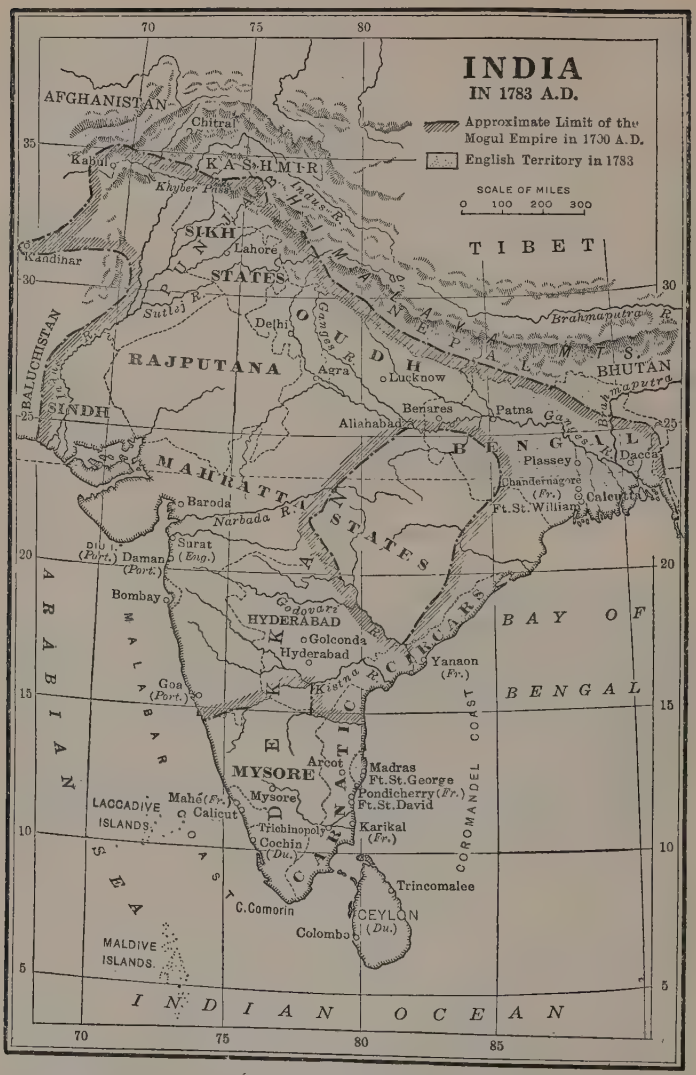
Commercial decline of Holland

53. Rivalry of France and England in India (to 1763)

The Indian Ocean forms a vast gulf of crescent shape, having on the western side Africa and Madagascar and on the eastern side Australia and the Malay Islands, while directly opposite its northern extremity lies Asia. The Red Sea and Persian Gulf, which form the two most important offshoots of the Indian Ocean, approach within a short distance of the Mediterranean. These maritime thoroughfares furnished the Mediterranean peoples with the shortest and most convenient routes to India, until the discovery of the Cape route by the Portuguese.

The Indian Ocean

The Portuguese and Dutch enjoyed a profitable trade with India, which supplied them with cotton, indigo, spices, dyes,



drugs, precious stones, and other articles of luxury in European demand. In the seventeenth century, however, the French and English became the principal competi-

India and Europe

tors for Indian trade, and in the eighteenth century the rivalry between them led to the defeat of the French and the secure establishment of England's rule over India. A region half as large as Europe, with a population of about 200,000,000, began to pass under the control of a single European power.

India under the Moguls

The conquest of India was made possible by the decline of the Mogul (or Mongol) Empire, which had been founded by the Turkish chieftain Baber in the sixteenth century. That empire, though renowned for its luxury and magnificence, never achieved a real unification of India. The country continued to be a collection of separate provinces, whose inhabitants were isolated from one another by differences of race, language, and religion. The Indian peoples had no feeling of nationality, and when the Mogul Empire broke up they were ready, with perfect indifference, to accept any other government able to keep order among them.

The East India companies

Neither France nor England began by making annexations in India. Each country merely established an East India company, giving to it a monopoly of trade between India and the home land. The French company, chartered during the reign of Louis XIV, had its headquarters at Pondicherry, on the southeastern coast of India. The English company, which received its first charter from Elizabeth in 1600, possessed three widely separated settlements at Bombay, Madras, and Calcutta.

Dupleix

The French were the first to attempt the task of empire-making in India, under the leadership of Dupleix, the able governor-general of Pondicherry. Dupleix saw clearly that the dissolution of the Mogul Empire and the defenseless condition of the native states opened the way to the European conquest of India. In order that the French should profit by this unique opportunity, he entered into alliance with some of the Indian princes, fortified Pondicherry, and managed to form an army by enlisting native soldiers ("sepoys"), who were drilled by French officers. The English afterwards did the same thing, and to this day "sepoys" comprise the bulk of the Indian forces of Great Britain.

Upon the outbreak of the War of the Austrian Succession the French captured Madras, but it was restored to the English by the Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle. Dupleix continued, however, to extend French influence in the south and east of India.

The English could not look unconcernedly upon the progress of their French rivals, and it was a young Englishman, Robert Clive, whose genius checkmated Dupleix's ambitious schemes. To Clive, more than any other man, Great Britain owes the beginning of her present Indian Empire. Clive had been a clerk in the employ of the East India Company at Madras, but he soon got an ensign's commission and entered upon a military career. His first success was gained in southeastern India. Here he managed to overthrow an upstart prince whom Dupleix supported and to restore English influence in that part of the peninsula. Dupleix was recalled in disgrace to France, where he died a disappointed man.

Clive

A Mogul Emperor

Clive now found an opportunity for even greater service. The native ruler of Bengal, a man ferocious in temper and consumed with hatred of the English, suddenly captured Calcutta. He allowed one hundred and forty-six prisoners to be confined in a tiny room, where they passed the sultry night without water. Next morning only twenty-three came forth alive from the "Black Hole." This atrocity was sufficiently avenged by the wonderful victory of Plassey, in which Clive with a handful of soldiers overthrew an Indian army of fifty thousand men. Plassey

Battle of Plassey, 1757

showed conclusively that native troops were no match for Europeans and made the English masters of Bengal, with its rich delta, mighty rivers, and teeming population.

Meanwhile, the outbreak of the Seven Years' War in Europe renewed the contest between France and England on Indian soil. The English were completely successful, for their control of the sea prevented the French government from sending reinforcements to India. France recovered her territorial possessions by the Peace of Paris in 1763, but agreed not to fortify them. This meant that she gave up her dream of an empire in India. England henceforth enjoyed a free hand in shaping the destinies of that vast region.

The Seven Years' War in India

54. Virginia and Massachusetts

Englishmen, under the Tudors, had done very little as colonizers of the New World. Henry VII, indeed, encouraged John Cabot to make the discoveries of 1497–1498, on which the English claims to North America were based. During Elizabeth's reign Sir Martin Frobisher explored the coasts of Greenland and Labrador, and another "sea-dog," Sir Humphrey Gilbert, sought without success to colonize Newfoundland. Gilbert's half-brother, Sir Walter Raleigh, planned a settlement in the region then called Virginia,[1] but lack of support from home caused it to perish miserably. The truth was that sixteenth-century Englishmen had first to break the power of Spain in Europe before they could give much attention to America. The destruction of the Spanish Armada in 1588 at length enabled them to establish American colonies without interference from Spain.

Lateness of English colonization

Having found the task of private colonization too great for his energies and purse, Raleigh assigned his interests in Virginia to a group of merchants and adventurers. Nothing was done for several years, but at last in 1606 they obtained from James I a charter for the incorporation of a joint-stock association, whose members resided in London and Plymouth. One branch of

The London and Plymouth companies, 1606

[1] After Elizabeth, the "Virgin Queen."

this organization was hence called the London Company and the other, the Plymouth Company. The charter claimed for England all the North American continent from the thirty-fourth to the forty-fifth degree, north latitude. The London Company had the exclusive right to colonize the territory between Cape Fear and the Potomac River, and the Plymouth Company had a similar right in the area between the Hudson River and the Bay of Fundy. Both companies might occupy the intervening region, but neither was to establish a colony within one hundred miles of a settlement made by the other.

VIRGINIA

The London Company promptly took steps to colonize its share of Virginia. A party of one hundred and twenty men left the shores of England on New Year's Day, 1607, and after four wearisome months on the ocean reached the capes of Chesapeake Bay.[1] They entered the bay, and on a peninsula in the broad river which they named after the king who gave them their charter founded Jamestown, the first permanent settlement of Englishmen in the New World.

The Jamestown settlement, 1607

Colonization in the seventeenth century formed a death-struggle with nature; and the privations endured by the settlers of Virginia are a familiar story in American history. Of more than six thousand people who arrived between 1607 and 1624, four-fifths died of hunger and disease or at the hands of the Indians. The future of Virginia was not assured until the colonists turned to tobacco raising, for which

Virginia

[1] Named Cape Henry and Cape Charles, for the two sons of James I.

the yellow soil is unsurpassed. "The weed," as King James called it in derision, brought a high price abroad, and its cultivation quickly became the principal industry of Virginia. It was the only staple product which the colony exported to England.

The London Company did not long enjoy the favor of James I. He had no liking for the Puritans who controlled it and turned the meetings of the stockholders into political gatherings for resistance to his measures. James finally brought suit against the company in the courts and had its charter annulled. Virginia now be-

Virginia a royal province, 1624

Ruins of the Brick Church at Jamestown

Jamestown is now an island, for the sandy beach which once connected it with the mainland has disappeared. Only the ruins of the brick church erected in 1639 and some of the tombs in the churchyard remain.

came a royal province and so remained throughout the colonial period, except for a few years of Puritan supremacy in England. The English king appointed the governor, but as a rule allowed the settlers to manage their own affairs.

The colonization of New England was begun by the Pilgrims, who belonged to the sect of Independents or Separatists.[1]

[1] See page 164 and note 1.

The Pilgrims

Persecuted by Elizabeth and James I, many Separatists went to Holland, where liberty of conscience was allowed. The prospect of losing their English speech and customs among the Dutch did not please them, and presently the exiles began to long for another home, where

CAPTAIN JOHN SMITH'S MAP OF NEW ENGLAND

In 1614 Captain John Smith explored the American coast from Maine to Cape Cod and called the country New England. On the map which he drew, the young son of James I, afterwards Charles I, gave English and Scottish names to more than thirty places. Of these, Charles River, Cape Ann, and Plymouth still remain as originally designated.

"they might more glorify God, do more good to their country, better provide for their posterity, and live to be more refreshed by their labors, than ever they could do in Holland." One congregation, dwelling at Leyden, decided to emigrate to America. Having obtained from the London Company a patent to colonize within the limits of Virginia, a party of one hundred and two men, women, and children set sail in the

Mayflower. They intended to settle somewhere south of the Hudson River, but when they sighted land it was the peninsula of Cape Cod. After exploring the coast, the emigrants came to the sheltered harbor which John Smith had already named Plymouth on his map, and here they landed.

The Mayflower Compact

The Pilgrims found themselves outside the territory granted to the London Company and hence could not use their patent for colonization. Before leaving the *Mayflower*, therefore, they took steps to provide for the orderly rule of their little community. The leaders of the party signed their names to an agreement establishing a "civil body politic," and they promised to obey all laws necessary for the "general good." The Mayflower Compact reveals the Pilgrim instinct for self-government.

THE "MAYFLOWER"

From the model in the Smithsonian Institution at Washington.

The Plymouth settlement, 1620

To settle on the New England coast in mid-winter was a grim business.[1] More than half of the Pilgrims died before spring came, and after ten years they had increased to little more than three hundred. Yet the Pilgrims did not despair, for they were determined to found a religious asylum in the American wilderness. "Let it not be grievous to you," said their friends in England, "that you have been instruments to break the ice for others; the honor shall be yours to the world's end." Instruments they were. The Pilgrim settlement at Plymouth formed the

[1] Read *The Landing of the Pilgrims* by Felicia Hemans.

forerunner of that great Puritan exodus which in the third decade of the seventeenth century colonized Massachusetts.

The colony of Massachusetts[1] had its origin in the desire of the Puritans to found a self-governing community far removed from Stuart absolutism in politics and religion. Some Puritan leaders purchased a large tract of land from the Plymouth Company and obtained from Charles I a charter incorporating them as the

Massachusetts, 1630–1640

In ye name of God Amen. We whose names are underwriten the loyall subiects of our dread Soueraigne Lord King Iames by ye grace of God, of great Britaine, franc, & Ireland king defendor of ye faith, &c

Haueing vndertaken, for ye glorie of God, and aduancemente of ye christian faith and honour of our king & countrie, a voyage to plant ye first Colonie in ye Northerne parts of Virginia. Doe by these presents solemnly & mutualy in ye presence of God, and one of another, Couenant, & combine our selues togeather into a Ciuill body politick; for our better ordering, & preseruation & furtherance of ye ends aforsaid; and by vertue hearof to enacte, constitute, and frame shuch just & equall lawes, ordinances, acts, constitutions, & offices, from time to time, as shall be thought most meete & conuenient for ye generall good of ye Colonie: Vnto which we promise all due submission and obedience. In witnes wher of we haue hereunder subscribed our names at Cap= Codd ye 11 of Nouember in ye year of ye raigne of our Soueraigne lord king Iames of England, franc & Ireland ye eighteen and of Scotland ye fifti= fourth. An: Dom. 1620.

THE MAYFLOWER COMPACT

Facsimile from *History of Plimoth Plantation* by Governor Bradford; State House, Boston

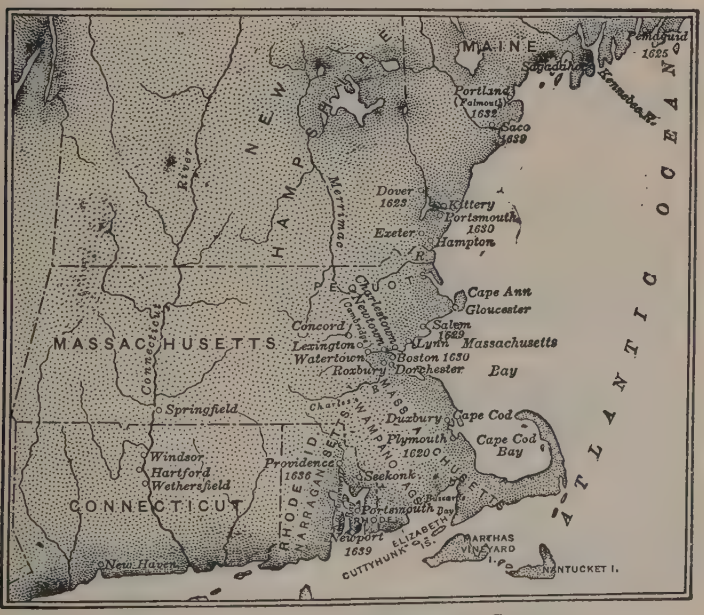
Company of Massachusetts Bay. The "great emigration" began in 1630 under the guidance of John Winthrop, who served as the first governor. The settlers established themselves at Salem, Boston, Charlestown, and other places on Massachusetts Bay. More than twenty thousand Puritans left England for America during the next ten years. This was the period when Charles I ruled without a Parliament, and when Archbishop Laud harried so cruelly all who did not

[1] An Algonkin Indian word meaning "Great Hills."

conform to the Anglican Church. After the opening of the Long Parliament in 1640 the Puritans found enough to do at home, and Massachusetts received few more immigrants during the colonial period.

The charter which Charles I gave to the Puritans did not require that the seat of government should be in England, as had been the case with previous grants. Accordingly, the company decided to take its charter to Massachusetts and to found there an almost independent state. King Charles was too busy with domestic problems to interfere with these bold Puritans

Massachusetts a royal province, 1691



New England in the Seventeenth Century

overseas, and their friend, Cromwell, after his rise to power, did not molest them. Charles II, however, took away their cherished charter, and James II treated the liberties of Englishmen in America with the same contempt with which he treated

their liberties at home. Soon after his accession William III granted them a new charter. It allowed the people to have a representative assembly, but required them to accept a governor appointed by the king. Massachusetts henceforth formed a royal province.

55. The Thirteen Colonies

The New England colonies

Massachusetts was the foremost of the Puritan settlements. Before the end of the seventeenth century it had absorbed Plymouth and had thrown out the offshoots which presently became Rhode Island, Connecticut, and New Hampshire.[1] These four New England colonies formed a distinct geographical group, while the circumstances of their foundation also gave them a political and religious character unlike that of the other colonies.

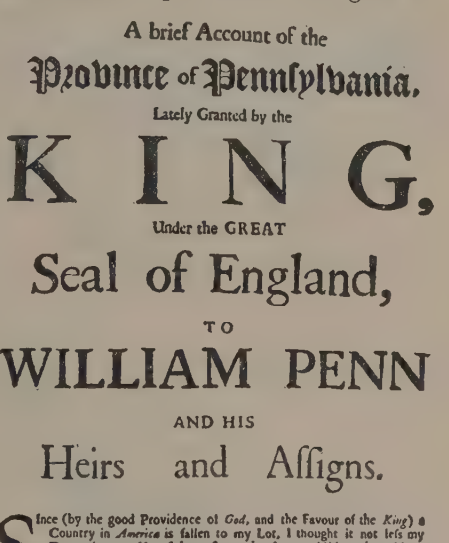
THE MIDDLE COLONIES

Maryland

Another group of colonies grew up around Virginia as their center. To the north of Virginia arose the colony of Maryland, which Charles I granted to George Calvert, Lord Baltimore. He died before the charter was actually issued, and it was given to his son Cecil, who estab-

[1] The territory now included within Vermont was claimed by both New York and New Hampshire in colonial times. Maine continued to be a part of Massachusetts until 1820.

lished the first settlement. Maryland, so called in honor of the queen of England, became a refuge for persecuted Roman Catholics, as well as a great family estate of the barons of Baltimore. The charter conferred upon them the rights and privileges of feudal lords. They owned the land, appointed officers, and made the laws with the assistance of the free settlers. Maryland, therefore, stands as the type of a proprietary colony.



A brief Account of the

Province of Pennsylvania,

Lately Granted by the

KING,

Under the GREAT

Seal of England,

TO

WILLIAM PENN

AND HIS

Heirs and Aſſigns.

Since (by the good Providence of *God*, and the Favour of the *King*) a Country in *America* is fallen to my Lot, I thought it not leſs my Duty, then my Honeſt Intereſt, to give ſome publick notice of it to the World, that thoſe of our own or other Nations, that are inclin'd to Tranſport Themſelves or Families beyond the Seas, may find another Country added to their Choice; that if they ſhall happen to like the Place, Conditions, and Government, (ſo far as the preſent Infancy of things will allow us any proſpect) they may, if they pleaſe, fix with me in the Province, hereafter deſcribed.

I. *The* KING'S *Title to this Country before he granted it.*

It is the *Jus Gentium*, or Law of Nations, that what ever Waſte, or uncultivated Country, is the Diſcovery of any Prince, it is the right of that Prince that was at the Charge of the Diſcovery: Now this *Province* is a Member of that part of *America*, which the King of *England's* Anceſtors have been at the Charge of Diſcovering, and which they and he have taken great care to preſerve and Improve.

II. William

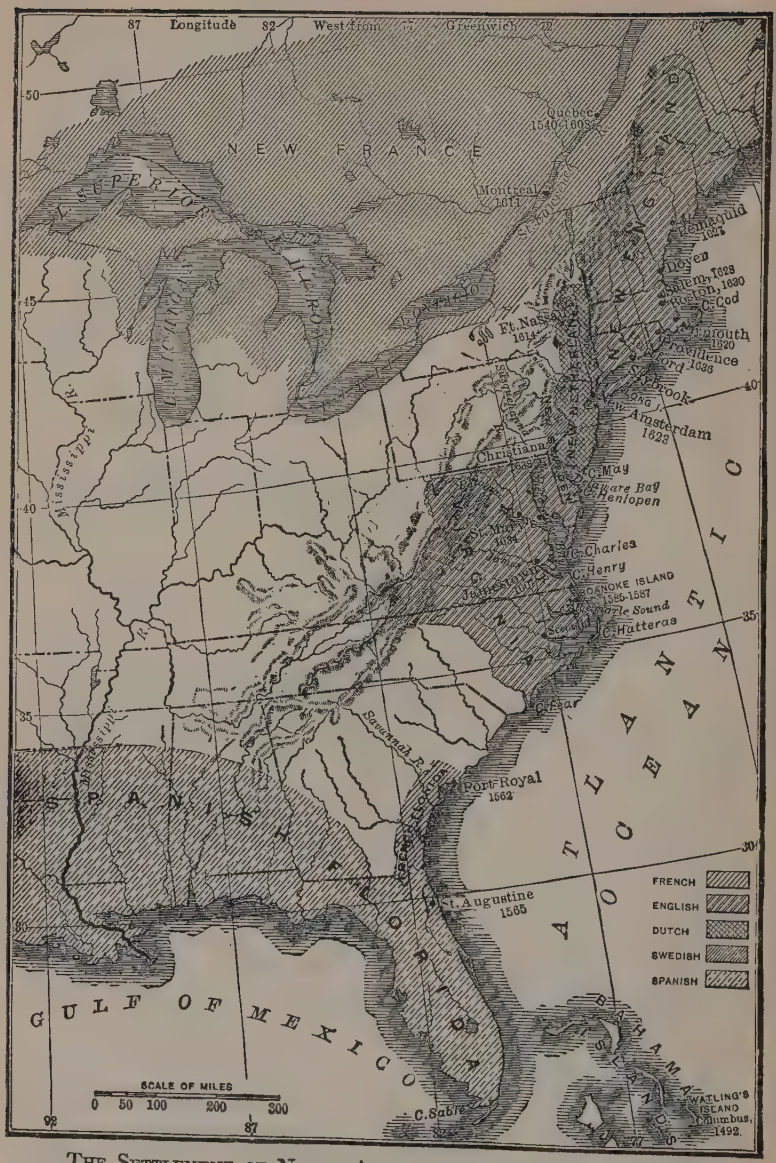
FIRST PAGE OF PENN'S "ACCOUNT OF PENNSYLVANIA"

Reduced facsimile.

The Carolinas

To the south of Virginia arose the colony of Carolina, out of a grant by Charles II to a number of nobles whose property had been confiscated in the Great Rebellion. The charter created a proprietary form of government similar to that of Maryland. It proved to be very unpopular, however, and in the eighteenth century the two Carolinas — for they had now divided — voluntarily put themselves under the king's protection as royal colonies.

The most important colonial achievement of the reign of Charles II was the filling up of the gap between the northern and southern colonies. English settlement in this central



THE SETTLEMENT OF NORTH AMERICA BY THE MIDDLE OF THE SEVENTEENTH CENTURY

region began as the result of conquest from another European power. New York was originally New Netherland, a Dutch colony planted by the Dutch West India Company. In 1664 the colony passed into the hands of the English. Charles II granted it to his brother James, duke of York and Albany, who afterwards became king of England. James, in turn, bestowed the region between the Hudson and Delaware rivers to two court favorites, and it received the name of New Jersey. The English possessions now stretched without a break along the whole Atlantic coast from Nova Scotia to Florida.

New York and New Jersey

The colony of Pennsylvania likewise dated from the time of Charles II, who granted it to William Penn, the Quaker, as an asylum for his sect. Penn was made proprietor, with much the same rights which Lord Baltimore possessed in Maryland. The small Swedish settlement on the Delaware had been established by the South Company of Sweden, under the auspices of Gustavus Adolphus, who hoped that it would become the "jewel of his kingdom." The Dutch soon annexed New Sweden, only to relinquish it, together with their own colony, to the English. William Penn secured a grant of the Delaware country, but at the opening of the eighteenth century it became a separate colony.

Pennsylvania and Delaware

The southernmost of the Thirteen Colonies was also the last to be settled. James Oglethorpe, a gallant English soldier, founded Georgia in 1733, partly as a military outpost against the Spaniards, but chiefly as a resort for poor debtors. The colony received its name in honor of the reigning king, George II.

Georgia

Both New England and the southern colonies were chiefly English in blood. Many immigrants also came from other parts of the British Isles, especially the so-called Scotch-Irish — really Englishmen who had settled in the Lowlands of Scotland and afterwards in northeastern Ireland. The emigrants from Continental Europe included French Huguenots, after the revocation of the Edict of Nantes, and Germans from the Rhenish Palatinate. The population

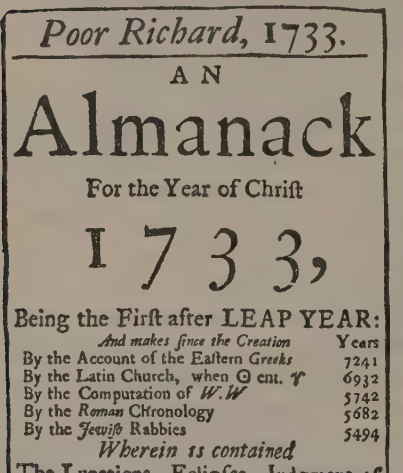
Anglo-Saxon expansion

of the middle colonies was far more mixed. Besides English and a sprinkling of Celtic Scotch and Irish, it comprised Dutch in New York, Swedes in Delaware, and Germans in Pennsylvania. But neither France, Holland, Sweden, nor Germany contributed largely to the settlement of the Thirteen Colonies.

56. Transit of Civilization from England to America

The English language prevailed almost everywhere in the colonies, not, however, without quaint modifications of spelling and pronunciation introduced by emigrants from different parts of the mother country. The emigrants also brought many proverbs and traditional sayings, some of which were afterwards printed by Benjamin Franklin in *Poor Richard's Almanac*. Old ballads, once sung in medieval England, were chanted in colonial America. Old fairy tales and nursery rhymes, which had delighted generations of English children, found equally appreciative audiences in the American wilderness. These varieties of folk-literature were not at first written down, but were carried in the memory by young and old. Nearly all the popular festivals of the colonists came from

Language and folk-literature



Poor Richard, 1733.

AN

Almanack

For the Year of Chriſt

1733,

Being the Firſt after LEAP YEAR:

And makes ſince the Creation	Years
By the Account of the Eaſtern *Greeks*	7241
By the Latin Church, when ☉ ent. ♈	6932
By the Computation of *W. W*	5742
By the *Roman* Chronology	5682
By the *Jewiſh* Rabbies	5494

Wherein is contained

The Lunations, Eclipſes, Judgment of the Weather, Spring Tides, Planets Motions & mutual Aſpects, Sun and Moon's Riſing and Setting, Length of Days, Time of High Water, Fairs, Courts, and obſervable Days

Fitted to the Latitude of Forty Degrees, and a Meridian of Five Hours Weſt from *London*, but may without ſenſible Error, ſerve all the adjacent Places, even from *Newfoundland* to *South-Carolina*.

By *RICHARD SAUNDERS*, Philom.

PHILADELPHIA:
Printed and ſold by *B. FRANKLIN*, at the New Printing Office near the Market.

The Third Impreſſion.

A TITLE-PAGE OF "POOR RICHARD'S ALMANAC"

Reduced facsimile.

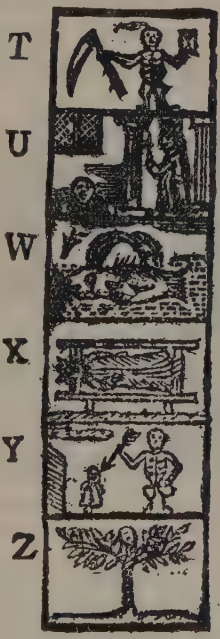
England. The only important exception was Thanksgiving Day, which the Pilgrims began to celebrate immediately after their first harvest. Many superstitions of the Middle Ages, including those relating to astrology, unlucky days, demons, and magic, crossed the Atlantic to the New World. The belief in witchcraft was likewise very common, and at Salem, Massachusetts, in 1692, twenty persons suffered death for this supposed crime. Witchcraft persecutions also occurred in several other colonies.

Popular festivals and superstitions

Almost every variety of Protestantism was represented in the colonies.

Religion

The Church of England from the start had its strongholds in Virginia, Maryland, and the Carolinas, and later in New York. After the Revolutionary War it took the name of the Protestant Episcopal Church, but retained nearly all the Anglican doctrines and ceremonies. Puritanism flourished in New England, especially in Massachusetts and Connecticut. The Puritan churches usually had the Congregational form. Baptists were numerous in Rhode Island, and Quakers in Pennsylvania. Wherever the Scotch-Irish settled, they established Presbyterian churches.



A Page from the "New England Primer"
Reduced facsimile.

The Toleration Act of 1689[1] commended itself to the colonists, many of whom were Dissenters or Nonconformists.[2] It was generally reënacted by the colonial assemblies, including those of Massachusetts, New York, and Virginia. Toleration did not extend, however, to Roman Catholics, who encountered much suspicion. Rhode Island, which Roger Williams had founded as "a shelter for persons distressed for conscience," disfranchised Roman Catholics in the eighteenth century. Maryland began with a broad measure of religious liberty, for Lord Baltimore had opened the colony

Religious toleration

HARVARD COLLEGE IN THE EIGHTEENTH CENTURY

After an early picture in the possession of the Massachusetts Historical Society.

to Anglicans and Puritans, as well as to members of his own faith. Later, when the Protestants became a majority in Maryland, severe anti-Catholic laws were passed. Even Pennsylvania, where Penn had established complete toleration, subsequently excluded Roman Catholics from public office. Outside of these three colonies they remained under many disabilities until after the Revolution. The same was true of Unitarians. Jews enjoyed freedom of worship, but did not possess political rights.

The Puritan clergy were generally well educated; and some

[1] See page 172.

[2] See page 169 and note 1.

of them were very learned. They introduced into the New World the English tradition in favor of higher education. Harvard College was founded as early as 1636, and Yale, in 1701. Before the Revolution colleges or universities also existed in Rhode Island (Brown), New Hampshire (Dartmouth), New York (King's, later Columbia), New Jersey (Rutgers and Princeton), Pennsylvania (University of Pennsylvania), and Virginia (William and Mary[1]). These institutions devoted themselves chiefly to the training of ministers.

Higher education

New England led the other colonies in popular education. A Massachusetts law, enacted as early as 1647, required every town of fifty families to establish an elementary school where children could learn to read and write. The teachers were to be paid either by the parents of the children or by public taxation. Every town of one hundred families was further required to set up a grammar school, in which students might be prepared for college. This law became the model for similar legislation throughout the United States. The middle and southern colonies did not have a system of popular education.

Common schools

57. Economic Development of the Colonies

Farming was the chief occupation in colonial times. The Americans not only fed themselves, but also exported large quantities of wheat, rice, tobacco, indigo, and other products to the West Indies and the mother country. Many vegetables and fruits known in Europe early made their way to America, but did not displace the native potato in importance. The clearing of the land for agriculture led to a large export of lumber in the shape of boards, shingles, masts, and spars, and to the production of naval stores, such as tar, pitch, and turpentine. Cattle raising was carried on to a considerable extent, especially in the South. New England found a source of wealth in its fisheries of cod, mackerel, and whale, while all the colonies enjoyed a very profitable trade in furs.

Colonial agriculture

Geographic and climatic conditions largely account for the

[1] Named after King William III and his queen.

different systems of land holding in colonial America. New England, so mountainous, so ill provided with navigable rivers and good harbors, with a sterile soil and a harsh climate, naturally became a region of small farms and diversified crops. The circumstances of its colonization also helped to produce this result. The New Englanders settled in agricultural villages like those of the old England from which they came. Meadow, forest, and waste remained the common possession of the villagers, but each man received a share of the arable land to own and cultivate himself. In order to prevent the growth of large estates, the practice of primogeniture was forbidden. This system of land tenure fostered a democratic spirit in New England.

Land holding in New England

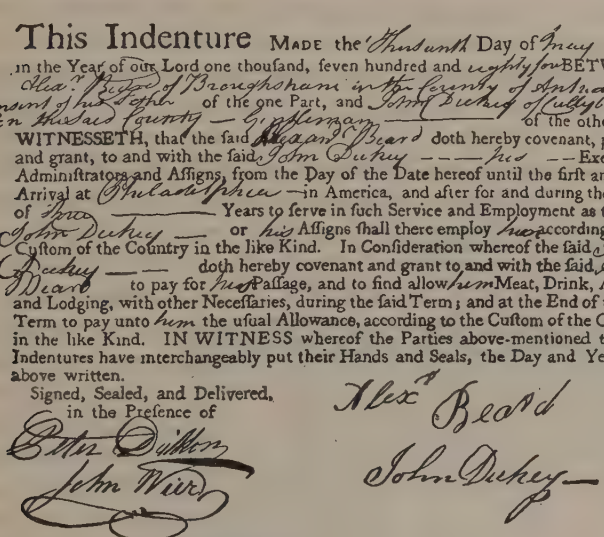
Small farming and individual ownership of the land generally prevailed in the middle colonies. In New York, however, there were extensive estates on the Hudson, originally granted to the Dutch colonists and by them subdivided and rented out to tenant farmers. No aristocrats in America so nearly resembled the feudal nobility of the Old World as these Dutch proprietors, or patroons. Virginia and Maryland, with their great bays and rivers, wide stretches of fertile land, and genial climate, proved to be well adapted to tobacco farming on a large scale. The colonists settled, not in compact villages, but in private plantations along the banks of the rivers. As time went on, the size of the plantations steadily increased and rose as high as twenty thousand acres. They were cultivated by white servants and negro slaves, neither of whom had any rights in the soil. The outcome of these conditions was social inequality and the growth of an aristocratic class of planters. A similar aristocracy grew up in the Carolinas and Georgia, where rice and indigo competed with tobacco as staple crops.

Land holding in the middle and southern colonies

The exploitation of a vast and undeveloped continent created a keen demand for unskilled labor. Laborers were few and wages were high. On New England farms and those in the middle colonies the work was largely performed by the owner and the members of his family, some-

White servants

times with the assistance of hired "help." Indentured[1] white servants also formed an important element in many colonies, particularly in Virginia, Maryland, and Pennsylvania. Of these, some were voluntary servants, or "redemptioners," who sold their services for a limited term, usually five years, to pay their expenses to America. After receiving freedom, they often acquired farms of their own and became respected members of society. The involuntary servants included



This Indenture Made the Thirtieth Day of May in the Year of our Lord one thousand, seven hundred and eighty four BETWEEN Alex^r Beard of Broughsham in the County of Antrim Taylor by Consent of his Father of the one Part, and John Dickey of Ballybarkey in the said County Gentleman of the other Part, WITNESSETH, that the said Alexander Beard doth hereby covenant, promise and grant, to and with the said John Dickey his Executors, Administrators and Assigns, from the Day of the Date hereof until the first and next Arrival at Philadelphia in America, and after for and during the Term of Two Years to serve in such Service and Employment as the said John Dickey or his Assigns shall there employ him according to the Custom of the Country in the like Kind. In Consideration whereof the said John Dickey doth hereby covenant and grant to and with the said Alex^r Beard to pay for his Passage, and to find allow him Meat, Drink, Apparel and Lodging, with other Necessaries, during the said Term; and at the End of the said Term to pay unto him the usual Allowance, according to the Custom of the Country in the like Kind. IN WITNESS whereof the Parties above-mentioned to these Indentures have interchangeably put their Hands and Seals, the Day and Year first above written.

Signed, Sealed, and Delivered, in the Presence of

Peter Dillon
John Weir

Alex^r Beard
John Dickey

A Redemptioner's Indenture

criminals, vagrants, and kidnapped children, who were transported from England by the shipload. The prevalence of negro slavery in the South made it difficult for indentured servants to find profitable and honorable employment after the expiration of their term of service.

The first negroes arrived in 1619 — a fateful date in American history — from a Dutch ship which touched at Jamestown. Thus began the African slave trade, which was to be carried

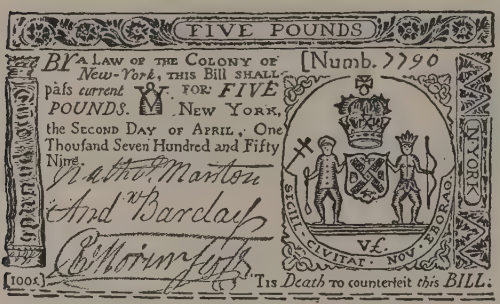
[1] An indenture is a contract by which an apprentice is bound to a master, or a servant to service in a colony.

Negro slavery

on for nearly two hundred years. Slaves were brought from the West Indies and afterwards direct from Africa. In 1763 they numbered about four hundred thousand, of whom three-fourths lived in the colonies south of Maryland. Slaves were least numerous in New England, not because of any widespread moral sentiment against keeping them, but simply because New England had no plantations of tobacco, rice, and cotton on which their labor could be profitably employed. Slaves did not make good farmers or seamen. They were equally inefficient as traders or artisans.

Colonial manufactures and commerce

The contrasts between North and South in systems of land tenure and labor make it easy to understand why Maryland, Virginia, and the Carolinas remained chiefly agricultural during the colonial era, while Pennsylvania, New York, and Massachusetts developed both manufactures and commerce. There were many household industries, including those of nails and other small articles of iron, pottery, wooden implements, shoes, and coarse textiles. The distillation of molasses into rum, much of which was sent to West Africa in exchange for slaves, formed a profitable business. Ship-building became a very important industry in New England. That section also had an extensive commerce with other colonies, the West Indies, and Europe. The development of manufactures in the colonies was retarded by lack of capital and credit, scarcity of labor, high wages, and the greater profits often to be gained from agriculture, lumbering, and the fisheries.



NEW YORK COLONIAL PAPER MONEY

58. Political Development of the Colonies

All the colonists possessed the private rights which Englishmen had won during centuries of struggle against despotic kings. Free speech, freedom from arbitrary imprisonment as secured by the writ of *habeas corpus*, and trial by jury formed part of our legal inheritance from England. These and other private rights were embodied in the Common Law, as introduced into colonial America. At the time of the Revolution the Common Law was adopted by the several states, thus becoming the foundation of our own system of jurisprudence.

The private rights of Englishmen

The English principle of representation was also carried to the New World. Each colony had a representative assembly modeled after the House of Commons. Virginia early led the way. The Puritans, who had gained control of the London Company, permitted the Virginia colonists to form an assembly consisting of two deputies freely elected by the inhabitants of each settlement. The House of Burgesses, as it soon came to be called, met for the first time in 1619, in the chancel of the little church at Jamestown. A few years later (1634) the freemen of each Massachusetts town were allowed to send two deputies to act for them at the General Court of the colony. New York, which had been a Dutch possession, was the last of the colonies to receive representative self-government (1684).

Representative assemblies

The assemblies of Virginia, Massachusetts, New York, and the other colonies were more truly representative of the great body of the people than was the English Parliament of the period. In England a small number of persons — nobles, country squires, and rich merchants — controlled elections to the House of Commons. In the colonies all free adult white men, who owned a moderate amount of property, usually had the right to vote. Religious qualifications, limiting the franchise to Protestants, also existed in some of the colonies.

The franchise

The separation of Parliament into two houses, which had

prevailed in England since the fourteenth century, accustomed the colonists to the bicameral system. In all but two of the colonies the legislature consisted of a representative assembly, forming a lower house, and a small council, forming an upper house.[1] The council assisted the governor and had some power of amending the acts of the assembly.

The bicameral system

The governor served as the link between the colonists and England. In Rhode Island and Connecticut he was elected by the people; in Maryland and Pennsylvania[2] he was appointed by the hereditary proprietor; and in the other (royal) colonies he was named by the king. The governor might veto the bills passed by a colonial legislature. Just as quarrels between king and Parliament were frequent in England, so in colonial America there was constant wrangling between governor and assembly, especially over money matters. The assembly held the purse-strings, however, and usually triumphed by refusing to grant supplies until the governor came to its terms.

The governor

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN

After a medallion by Nini in the National Portrait Gallery, London.

The unit of representation in the assemblies of the southern colonies was the county, corresponding to the English shire. The county also formed a judicial area. Justices of the peace, chosen from the more important landowners of the county, met regularly as a

County and town government

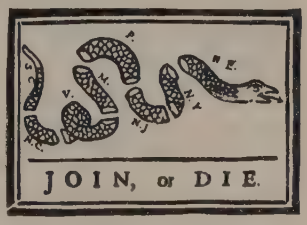
[1] Pennsylvania and Georgia did not adopt the bicameral system until after the Revolution.

[2] Delaware had the same governor as Pennsylvania.

court to try cases and assess taxes. The citizens of a New England town, or township, governed themselves directly and sent their own representatives to the colonial assemblies. In frequent town meetings they discussed all local affairs, made appropriations for all local expenses, and chose the town officials. The titles of these officials, as well as their functions, were often borrowed from the mother-land, showing that the colonists reproduced on American soil the characteristic features of old English local government. The middle colonies adopted a mixture of the New England and southern systems. Here both town and county were found, each with its elective officers. This mixed system now prevails in perhaps most of the American states.

No close political ties united the colonies. The differences between them in industries, religion, manners, and customs prevented their effective coöperation. Yet preparations for union there had been, and signs of its coming. As early as 1643 Massachusetts, Connecticut, New Haven (then a separate colony), and Plymouth entered into a league "for mutual help and strength in all our future concernments." This league, known as the United Colonies of New England, held together for forty years. Delegates from seven colonies met in the Albany Congress of 1754 and discussed Benjamin Franklin's plan for forming a defensive union of all the colonies. The plan fell through, but it set men to thinking about the advantages of federation. After the close of the "French and Indian War" the colonists, who had learned the value of concerted action against a common foe, began to unite in defense of their rights against king and Parliament.

Disunion of the colonists



JOIN OR DIE

A device printed in Franklin's newspaper, the *Pennsylvania Gazette*, shows a wriggling rattlesnake cut into pieces, with the initial letter of a colony on each piece.

59. Canada and Louisiana

The French at the opening of the seventeenth century had gained no foothold in the New World. For more than fifty years after the failure of Jacques Cartier's settlement (1542), they were so occupied with the Huguenot wars that they gave little thought to colonial expansion. The single exception was the ill-starred colony which Admiral de Coligny attempted to establish in Florida (1564). The Spaniards quickly destroyed it, not only because the settlers were Protestants, but also because a French settlement in Florida directly threatened their West Indian possessions. The growing weakness of Spain, together with the cessation of the religious struggle, made possible a renewal of the colonizing movement. The French again turned to the north, attracted by the fur trade and the fisheries, and founded Canada during the same decade that the English were founding Virginia.

Lateness of French colonization

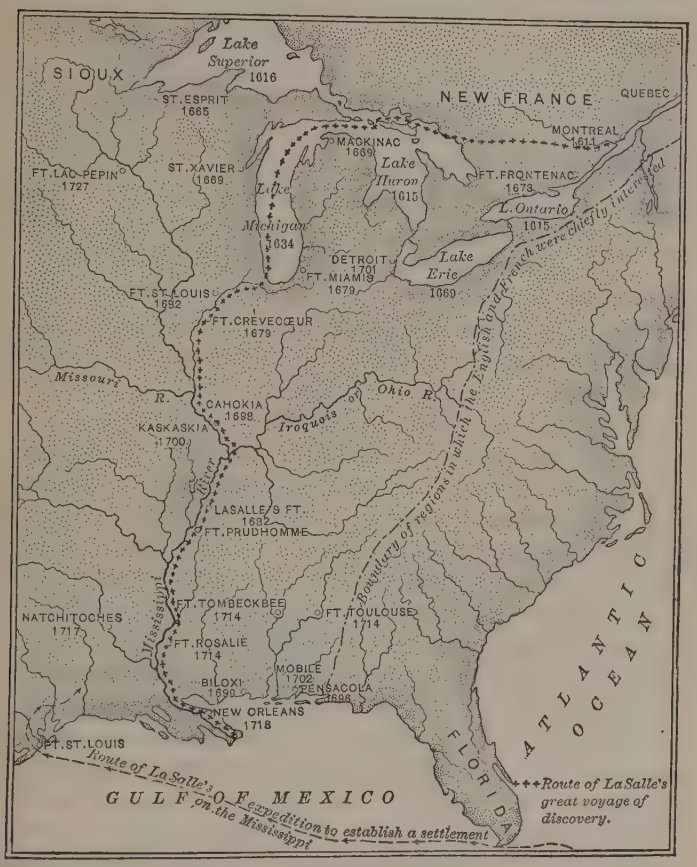
The first great name in Canadian history is that of Samuel de Champlain, who enjoyed the patronage of Henry IV. Champlain explored the coast of Maine and Massachusetts as far south as Plymouth, discovered the beautiful lake now called after him, traced the course of the St. Lawrence River, and also came upon lakes Ontario and Huron. He set up a permanent French post at Quebec in 1608 and three years later founded Montreal. Champlain served as the first governor of Canada.

Champlain and Canada

The seventeenth century was an era of missionary zeal in the Roman Catholic Church, and Canada became the favorite mission field. Champlain brought in the Franciscans, who were followed in greater numbers by the Jesuits. The story of the Jesuits in North America is an inspiring record of self-sacrifice and devotion. Many of them suffered martyrdom at the hands of the Indians. The journeys made by the Jesuits in the wilderness of the Northwest added much to geographical knowledge, while their mission stations often grew into flourishing towns. After Cardinal

Jesuit missions in Canada

Richelieu had forbidden the Protestants to settle in Canada, the Jesuit influence became dominant there. It has not yet entirely disappeared, in spite of a century and a half of English rule.



La Salle's Explorations

When Colbert, the able minister of Louis XIV, came to power, the exploration of Canada went on with renewed energy. The French, hitherto, had been spurred by the hope of finding in the Great Lakes a western passage to Cathay. Joliet, the fur trader, and Mar-

La Salle and Louisiana

quette, the Jesuit missionary, believed that they had actually found the highway uniting the Atlantic and the Pacific when their birchbark canoes first glided into the upper Mississippi. It was reserved for the most illustrious of French explorers, Robert de La Salle, to discover the true character of the "Father of Waters" and to perform the feat of descending it to the sea (1682). He took possession of all the territory drained by the Mississippi for Louis XIV, naming it Louisiana.

New France

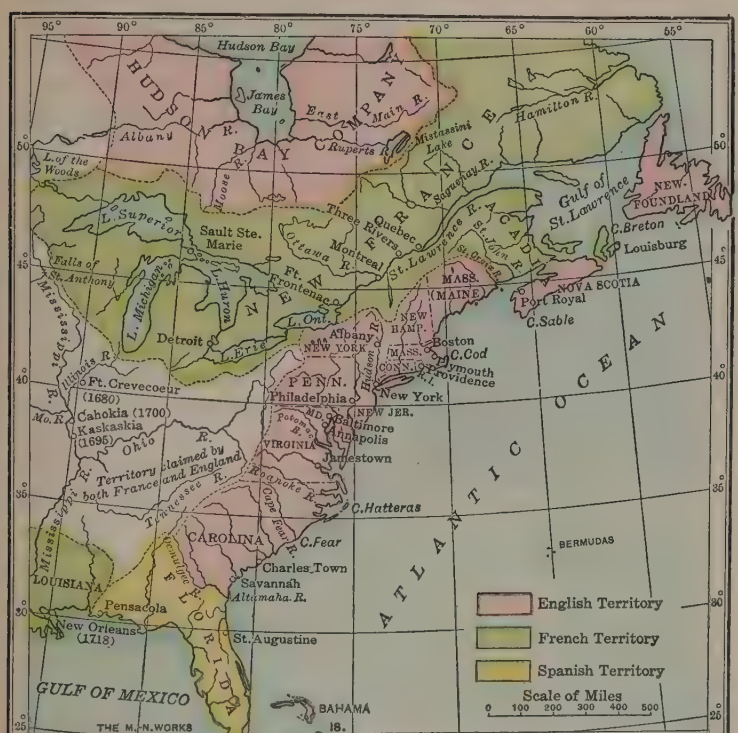
Where La Salle had shown the way, missionaries, fur traders, hunters, and adventurers quickly followed. The French now began to realize the importance of the Mississippi Valley, which time was to prove the most extensive fertile area in the world. Efforts were made to occupy it and to connect it with Canada by a chain of forts reaching from Quebec and Montreal on the St. Lawrence to New Orleans [1] at the mouth of the Mississippi. All of the continent west of the Alleghenies was to become New France.

Strength and weakness of New France

However audacious this design, it seemed not impossible of fulfillment. New France, a single royal province under one military governor, offered a united front to the divided English colonies. The population, though small compared with the number of the English colonists, consisted mostly of men of military age, good fighters, and aided by numerous Indian allies. Lack of home support largely offset these real advantages. While the French were contending for colonial supremacy, they were constantly at war in Europe. They wasted on European battle-fields the resources which might otherwise have been expended in America. Furthermore, the despotism of Louis XIV and Louis XV hampered private enterprise in New France by vexatious restrictions on trade and industry and at the same time deprived the inhabitants of training in self-government. The French settlers never breathed the air of liberty, while the English colonists in political matters were left almost entirely to themselves. The failure of France to become a world-power at this

[1] Founded in 1718 and named after the Duc d'Orléans, who was regent of France during the minority of Louis XV. See page 189, note 1.

time must be ascribed, therefore, to the unfortunate policies of her rulers.



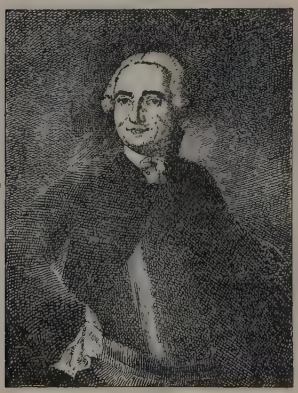
North America after the Peace of Utrecht, 1713 A.D.

60. Rivalry of France and England in North America (to 1763)

The struggle between France and England began, both in the Old World and the New, in 1689, when the "Glorious Revolution" drove out James II and placed William of Orange on the English throne as William III. The Dutch and English, who had previously been enemies, now became friends and united in resistance to Louis XIV. The French king not only threatened the Dutch, but also incensed the English by receiving the fugitive James

A new Hundred Years' War

and aiding him to win back his crown. England at once joined a coalition of the states of Europe against France. This was the beginning of a new Hundred Years' War between the two countries.[1] The struggle extended beyond the Continent, for each of the rivals tried to destroy the commerce and annex the colonies of the other.



MONTCALM

After the portrait in possession of the present Marquis of Montcalm, Château d'Avèze, France.

The first period of conflict closed in 1713, with the Peace of Utrecht, which was as important in the history of colonial America as in the history of Europe. England secured Newfoundland, Acadia (rechristened Nova Scotia), and the extensive region drained by the rivers flowing into Hudson Bay. France, however, kept the best part of her American territories and retained control of the St. Lawrence and the Mississippi. The possession of these two waterways gave her a strong strategic position in the interior of the continent.

Provisions of the Peace of Utrecht, 1713

The two great European wars which came between 1740 and 1763 were naturally reflected in the New World. The War of the Austrian Succession, known in American history as "King George's War," proved to be indecisive. The Seven Years' War, similarly known as the "French and Indian War," resulted in the expulsion of the French from North America. France had no resources to cope with those of England in America, and the English command of the sea proved decisive.

"King George's War" and the "French and Indian War"

[1] War of the League of Augsburg, 1689–1697 ("King William's War").
War of the Spanish Succession, 1702–1713 ("Queen Anne's War").
War of the Austrian Succession, 1740–1748 ("King George's War").
Seven Years' War, 1756–1763 ("French and Indian War").
War of the American Revolution, 1776-1783.

One French post after another was captured: Louisburg, on Cape Breton Island, commanding the Gulf of St. Lawrence;

Fort Duquesne, at the junction of the Allegheny and Ohio rivers; Fort Niagara, which guarded the route between Lake Ontario and Lake Erie; and Fort Ticonderoga between Lake

George and Lake Champlain. In 1759 Wolfe defeated the gallant Montcalm under the walls of Quebec, and the fall of that stronghold quickly followed. A year later what remained of the French army surrendered at Montreal. The British flag was now raised over Canada, where it has flown ever since.[1]

The second period of conflict closed in 1763, with the Peace of Paris. France ceded to England all her North American possessions east of the Mississippi, except two small islands kept for fishing purposes off the coast of Newfoundland. Spain, which had also been involved in the war, gave up Florida to England, receiving as compensation the French territories west of the Mississippi. New France was now only a memory. But modern Canada has two millions of Frenchmen, who still hold aloof from the British in language and religion, while Louisiana, though shrunk to the dimensions of an American state, still retains in its laws and in many customs of its people the French tradition.

Provisions of the Peace of Paris, 1763

JAMES WOLFE

After the portrait by Schaak in the National Portrait Gallery, London.

The Peace of Paris marked a turning point in the history of the Thirteen Colonies. Relieved of pressure from without and free to expand toward the west and south, they now felt less keenly their dependence on England. Close ties, the ties of common interests, common ideals, and a common origin, still attached them to the mother country; but these were soon to be rudely severed during the period of disturbance, disorder, and violence which culminated in the American Revolution.

England and the Thirteen Colonies

[1] Fenimore Cooper's *The Last of the Mohicans* and Sir Gilbert Parker's *The Seats of the Mighty* are works of fiction dealing with this period.

61. The American Revolution, 1776–1783

Englishmen in the New World for a long time had been drawing apart from Englishmen in the Old World. The political training received by the colonists in their local meetings and provincial assemblies fitted them for self-government, while the hard conditions of life in America fostered their energy, self-reliance, and impatience of restraint. The important part which they played in the

Preparation for independence

QUEBEC

From an old engraving.

conquest of Canada gave them confidence in their military abilities and showed them the value of coöperation. Renewed interference of Great Britain in what they deemed their private concerns before long called forth their united resistance.

Some of the grievances of which the colonists complained were the outcome of the British colonial policy. The home government discouraged the manufacture in the colonies of goods that could be made in England. Parliament, for instance, prohibited the export of woolens, not only to the British Isles and the Continent, but also from one colony to another, and forbade the colonists to set up mills for making wrought iron or its finished products.

Restrictions on colonial manufactures

Such regulations aimed to give British manufacturers a monopoly of the colonial markets.

Restrictions on colonial commerce

The home government also interfered with the commerce of the colonies. As early as 1660 Parliament passed a "Navigation Act" providing that sugar, tobacco, cotton, and indigo might not be exported direct from the colonies to foreign countries, but must be first brought to England, where duties were paid on them. A subsequent act required all imports to the colonies from Continental Europe to have been actually shipped from an English port, thus compelling the colonists to go to England for their supplies. These acts, however, were so poorly enforced for many years that smuggling became a lucrative occupation.

Alleviations and compensations

All this legislation was not so repressive as one would suppose, partly because it was so constantly evaded and partly because Great Britain formed the natural market for most colonial products. Moreover, the home government gave some special favors in the shape of "bounties," or sums of money to encourage the production of food and raw materials needed in Great Britain. Twenty-four colonial industries were subsidized in this manner. Colonial shipping was also fostered, for ships built in the colonies enjoyed the same exclusive privileges in the carrying trade as British-built ships. In fact, the regulations which the American colonists had to endure were light, compared with the shackles laid by Spain and France upon their colonial possessions. It must always be remembered, finally, that Great Britain defended the colonists in return for trade privileges. As long as her help was needed against the French, they did not protest seriously against the legislation of Parliament.

The Stamp Act and the Townshend Acts

After the close of the Seven Years' War George III and his ministers determined to keep British troops in America as a protection against outbreaks by the French or Indians. The colonists, to whose safety an army would add, were expected to pay for its partial support. Parliament, accordingly, took steps to enforce the laws regulating colonial commerce and also passed

the Stamp Act (1765). The protests of the colonists led to the repeal of this obnoxious measure, but it was soon replaced by the Townshend Acts (1767), levying duties on certain commodities imported into America. These acts, in turn, were repealed three years later. Parliament, however, kept a small duty on tea, in order that the colonists might not think that it had abandoned its assumed right to tax them.

The Stamp Act and the Townshend Acts thus brought up the whole question as to the extent of parliamentary control over the colonists. They argued that taxes could be rightfully voted only by their own representative assemblies. It was a natural attitude for them to take, since Parliament, sitting three thousand miles away, had little insight into American affairs. The English view was that Parliament "virtually" represented all Englishmen and hence might tax them wherever they lived. This view can also be understood, for the "Glorious Revolution" had definitely established the supremacy of Parliament in England.[1] In any case, however, taxation of the colonies was clearly contrary to custom and very impolitic in the face of the popular feeling which it aroused in America.

"No taxation without representation"

A Stamp of 1765

Some British statesmen themselves espoused the cause of the colonists. Edmund Burke, the great Irish orator, declared that the idea of a virtual representation of America in Parliament was "the most contemptible idea that ever entered the head of a man." Even William Pitt (then earl of Chatham), while maintaining the right of Parliament to legislate for America, applauded the "manly wisdom and calm resolution" displayed by the colonists. But these were the voices of a minority, of a helpless minority. Parliament was then under the thumb of George III and the "king's friends."[2]

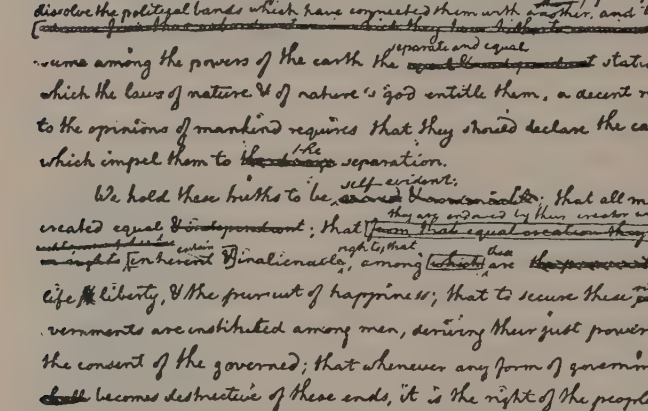
Attitude of British statesmen

[1] See page 172.

[2] See pages 224–225.

The colonists were so opposed to the principle of parliamentary taxation that they refused to buy tea from British merchants and in Boston even boarded a tea ship and threw the cargo into the water. Parliament replied to the "Boston Tea Party" by closing the harbor of that city to commerce and by depriving Massachusetts of self-government. These measures, instead of bringing the recalcitrant colony to terms, only aroused the

Declaration of Independence, 1776



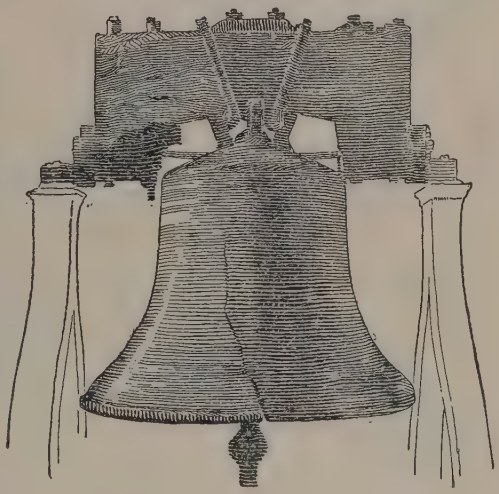
OPENING LINES OF THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE

A reduced facsimile of the first lines of Jefferson's original draft.

apprehension of her neighbors and led to the meeting of delegates from all the colonies, except Georgia, in the First Continental Congress (1774). It recommended a policy of non-intercourse with Great Britain until the colonists had recovered their "just rights and liberties." The Second Congress (1775), which met after blood had been shed at Lexington and Concord, prepared for war and appointed George Washington to command the colonial forces. On July 4, 1776, after the failure of all plans for conciliation with the mother country, it declared that "these united colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent states."

No colony at first contained a large majority in favor of separation, and even after the Declaration of Independence numerous loyalists, or "Tories," continued to espouse the British cause. Some of them even fought against their native land, while others did everything they could to prevent the success of the Revolution by sowing sedition, spreading false news, concealing spies, and selling goods to the enemy. It was necessary to adopt the sternest measures in dealing with men whom Washington called "execrable parricides," and many were imprisoned or confined in concentration camps. After the conclusion of peace the "Tories" emigrated in great numbers to Canada, where they were the first English settlers. They prospered in their new home, and their descendants, who form a considerable part of the Canadian population, are to-day among the most devoted members of the British Empire.

The "tories"

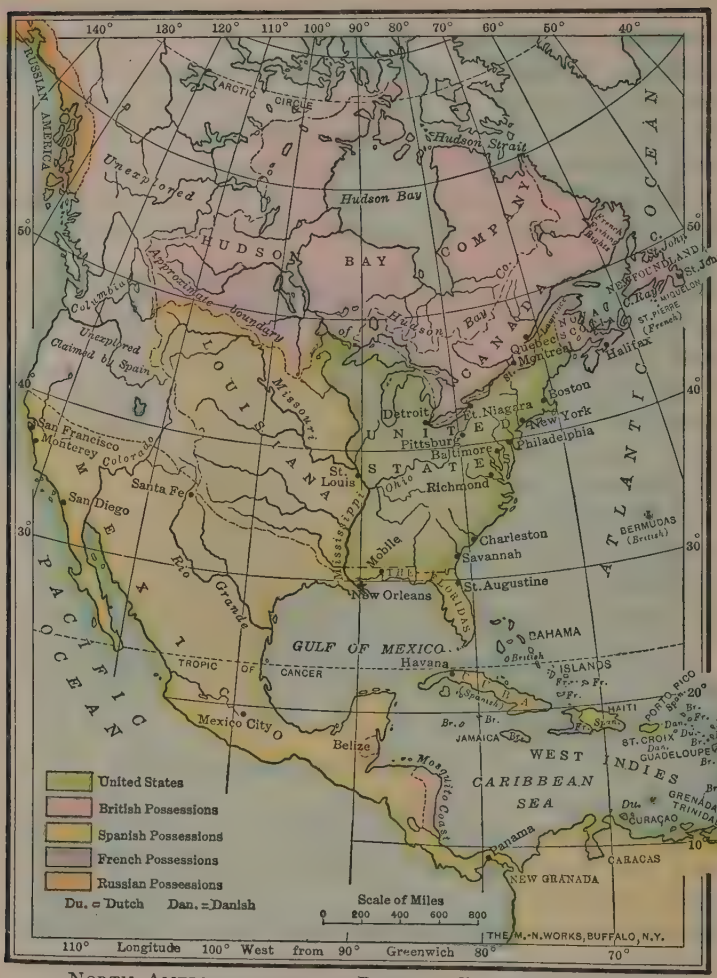


THE "LIBERTY BELL"

Now in Independence Hall, Philadelphia. Contrary to popular belief, the "Liberty Bell" was not rung until July 8, 1776, when the Declaration of Independence was read in the State House yard to the assembled soldiers and citizens.

Even had the colonists been unanimous in resistance to Great Britain, they stood little chance of winning against a wealthy country with a population nearly three times their own, trained armies supported by German mercenaries, and a powerful navy.

The French alliance, 1778



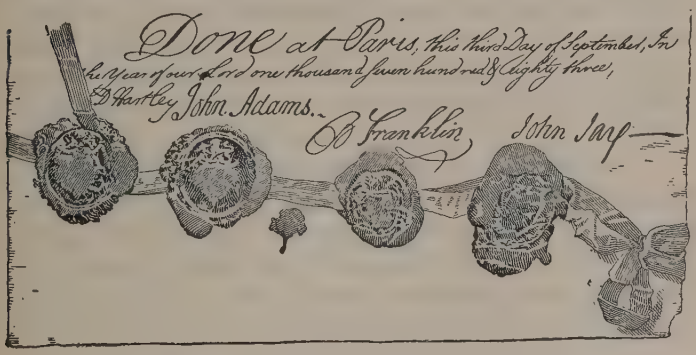
NORTH AMERICA AFTER THE PEACE OF PARIS, 1783 A.D.

When, however, the resources of France were thrown into the scale, the issue became less doubtful. France, still smarting from the losses incurred in the Seven Years' War, desired to recover as much as possible of her colonial dominion and secretly aided the Americans with money and supplies for some time

before the victory at Saratoga led her to enter into a formal alliance with them. It must never be forgotten, also, that many Frenchmen felt a genuine sympathy for the colonists in their struggle for liberty. The Marquis de Lafayette was only the most illustrious of the French nobles who crossed the Atlantic to fight side by side with American soldiers.

The war now merged into a European conflict, in which France was joined by Spain and Holland. Great Britain needed all her reserve power to prevent rebellion in Ireland, defend Gibraltar, and keep her possessions in the West Indies and India. The struggle in America practically closed in 1781, when Cornwallis, blockaded at Yorktown by a French fleet and

Close of the Revolutionary War



SIGNATURES OF THE TREATY OF PARIS, 1783

From the original document in the Department of State, Washington.

closely invested by the combined French and American armies, surrendered the largest British force still in the colonies. Nearly two years passed, however, before the contestants made peace.

The Treaty of Paris between Great Britain and the United States recognized the independence of the former Thirteen Colonies and fixed their boundaries at Canada and the Great Lakes, the Atlantic Ocean, Florida, and the Mississippi River. The Treaty of Versailles between Great Britain, France, and Spain restored to France a few colonial possessions and gave to Spain

Treaties of Paris and Versailles, 1783

the island of Minorca[1] and the Florida territory.[2] Holland, which concluded a separate peace with Great Britain, was obliged to cede to that country some stations in India and to throw open to British merchants the valuable trade of the East Indies.

Effects of American independence

The successful revolt of the Thirteen Colonies dealt a staggering blow at the old colonial policy. The Americans continued to trade with the mother country from self-interest, although they were no longer compelled to do so by law. The result was that British commerce with the United States doubled within fifteen years after the close of the Revolutionary War. This formed an object-lesson in the futility of commercial restrictions.

America teaching by example

The American War of Independence reacted almost at once on Europe. The Declaration of Independence, setting forth the "unalienable rights of man" as against feudal privilege and oppression, provided ardent spirits in France with a formula of liberty which they were not slow in applying to their own country. The French Revolution of 1789 was the child of the American Revolution. Early in the nineteenth century still another revolutionary movement stripped Spain and Portugal of all their continental possessions in the New World. America was, indeed, teaching by example.

62. Formation of the United States

Articles of Confederation, 1781

The Continental Congress, which had framed the Declaration of Independence in 1776, continued to govern the United States until the adoption of the Articles of Confederation in 1781. This constitution established a mere league of states, like the United Colonies of New England in the seventeenth century[3] and the still earlier Dutch and Swiss confederations. The authority of Congress under the Articles was practically limited to war,

[1] See page 187.
[2] See page 262.
[3] See page 255.

peace, and foreign affairs. It could not levy taxes, could not regulate interstate commerce, and had no power to enforce obedience in either a state or an individual. Every attempt to amend the Articles by legislative action failed, and the weak and clumsy government which they had set up threatened to collapse.

Such were the distressing circumstances under which the Federal Convention met at Philadelphia in May, 1787. To this body the states sent fifty-five delegates, including Washington, who presided, Franklin, James Madison, and Alexander Hamilton. Instead of merely amending the Articles, they decided to prepare an entirely new constitution, and accomplished the task within four months.

The Federal Convention, 1787

Necessary though the Constitution was, if the American people were not to face anarchy and civil war, it satisfied neither the advocates of states' rights nor the extreme democrats. Nearly a year elapsed before eleven states ratified the instrument. North Carolina and Rhode Island did not ratify it until after the inauguration of Washington as President in 1789.

Ratification of the Constitution, 1787–1789

The concessions made to the opponents of the Constitution, as originally framed, were embodied in the first ten amendments. These provided for religious freedom, the separation of Church and State, free speech, a free press, the privileges of assembly and petition, the right to bear arms, speedy and public jury trials, and other safeguards of personal liberty. In short, the amendments were a Bill of Rights[1] for the American people.

The first ten amendments, 1791

The Constitution, in many features, reflects the political experience of the colonists and their familiarity with British methods of government. Accustomed to a bicameral legislature, they retained this arrangement in the Senate and House of Representatives, but made the upper, as well as the lower house elective. The President's powers of military command, appointment, and veto resembled those of the colonial governor, though here,

Sources of the Constitution

[1] See pages 171–172.

again, the framers of the Constitution departed from precedent in making the executive elective. The national courts were modeled after those of the colonies. The Supreme Court, with its power of declaring acts of Congress unconstitutional, found a prototype in the Privy Council of Great Britain, which had formerly exercised the right of annulling acts of the colonial legislatures. It is noteworthy, however, that the Constitution contains no provision for the cabinet system, something unknown to the colonists and at this time not fully developed in Great Britain.[1]

The nation and the states

As a whole, the Constitution formed a novelty in politics. It established, for the first time in history, a federal union, rather than a mere league of states or confederation. The objects of the new government were concisely stated in the immortal preamble: "We, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defense, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this constitution for the United States."

63. Progress of Geographical Discovery

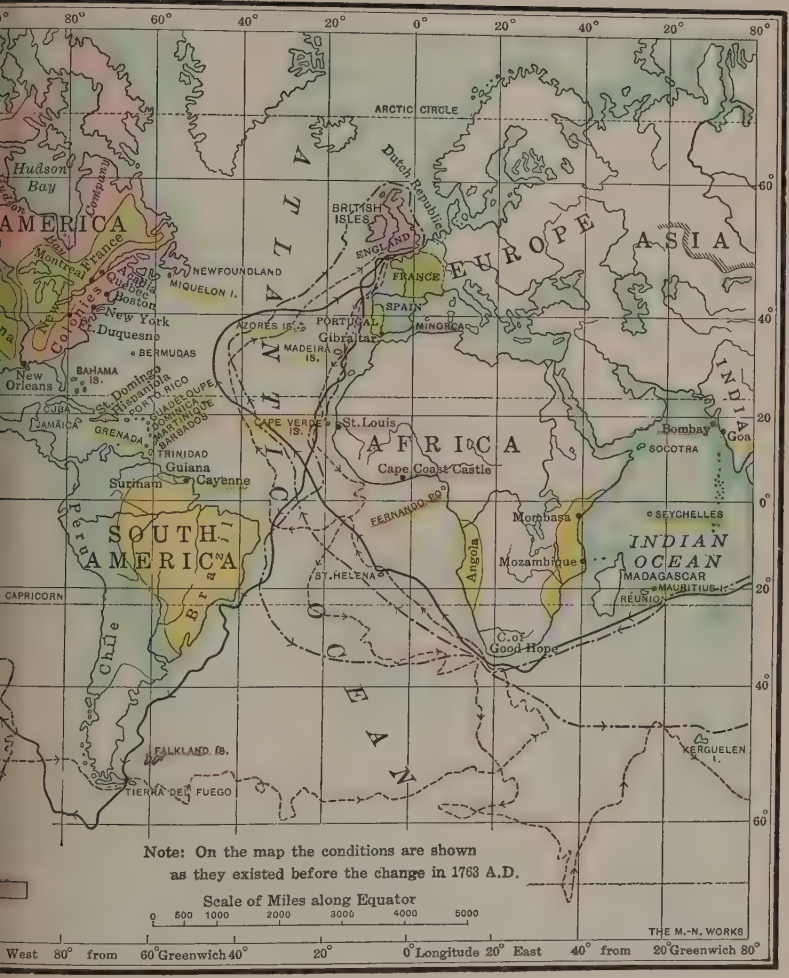
Early exploration of the Pacific

Great Britain soon found at least partial compensation for the loss of the Thirteen Colonies in the occupation of Australia and the islands of the Pacific. That vast ocean, covering more than one-third of the globe, remained little known to Europeans until the latter part of the eighteenth century. Soon after Magellan's voyage in 1520, the Spaniards established a regular commercial route between Mexico and the Philippines and gradually discovered some of the innumerable archipelagoes which stud the intervening seas. Sir Francis Drake's circumnavigation of the world (1577–1580) first drew the attention of Englishmen to the Pacific Ocean, but a long time passed before they began its systematic exploration.

The unveiling of the Pacific was closely connected with the

[1] See page 221.

80° 100° 120° 140° 160° 180° 160° 140°
60°
40°
20°
0°
20°
40°
60°
Southern Limits of Siberia
ASIA
Bengal
Calcutta
Macao
Tonkin
PHILIPPINE IS.
Malacca
BORNEO
CELEBES
SUMATRA
Batavia
JAVA
MOLUCCAS
NEW GUINEA
PACIFIC OCEAN
Drake's Bay
TROPIC OF CANCER
SANDWICH IS. (HAWAII)
EQUATOR
NEW HEBRIDES
FIJI IS.
SOCIETY IS.
NEW CALEDONIA
FRIENDLY IS.
COOK IS.
AUSTRALIA
NEW ZEALAND
COLONIAL EMPI
IN THE EIGHTEENTH
Capt. Cook's Voyages
"Endeavour," 1768-1771 A.D.
"Resolution," 1772-1775 A.D.
"Resolution," 1776-1780 A.D.
Portuguese
Spanish
French
British
80° 100° 120° 140 160° 180° 160° 140°

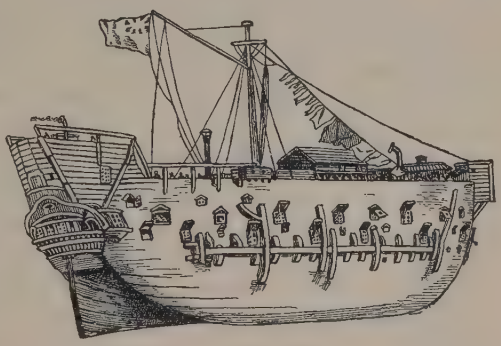

80° 60° 40° 20° 0° 20° 40° 20° 80°
ARCTIC CIRCLE
Hudson Bay
Company
AMERICA
Montreal
France
Quebec
Boston
New York
Duquesne
BERMUDAS
New Orleans
BAHAMA IS.
Dominica
Hispaniola
PORTO RICO
GUADELOUPE
MONTSERRAT
MARTINIQUE
BARBADOS
CUBA
JAMAICA
GRENADA
TRINIDAD
Guiana
Surinam
Cayenne
NEWFOUNDLAND
MIQUELON I.
ATLANTIC OCEAN
Dutch Republic
BRITISH ISLES
ENGLAND
FRANCE
SPAIN
PORTUGAL
AZORES IS.
Gibraltar
MADEIRA IS.
MINORCA
EUROPE
ASIA
INDIA
CAPE VERDE IS.
St. Louis
AFRICA
Cape Coast Castle
FERNANDO PO
Bombay
Goa
SOCOTRA
SEYCHELLES
Mombasa
INDIAN OCEAN
Mozambique
MADAGASCAR
MAURITIUS I.
RÉUNION
Angola
ST. HELENA
SOUTH AMERICA
Pernambuco
Brazil
CAPRICORN
C. of Good Hope
Chile
PACIFIC OCEAN
FALKLAND IS.
TIERRA DEL FUEGO
KERGUELEN I.
60°
40°
20°
0°
20°
40°
60°
Note: On the map the conditions are shown as they existed before the change in 1763 A.D.
Scale of Miles along Equator
0 500 1000 2000 3000 4000 5000
THE M.-N. WORKS
West 80° from 60° Greenwich 40° 20° 0° Longitude 20° East 40° from 20° Greenwich 80°

Antarctic problem. Geographers from the time of the Greeks had a vague idea that a region of continental proportions lay to the southeast of the Indian Ocean. The idea found expression in Ptolemy's map of the world, and Marco Polo during his stay in China heard about it. After the Dutch became established in the East Indies, they made renewed search for the "Great South Land" and carefully explored the western coast of Australia or "New Holland."

The "Great South Land"

In 1642 the Dutch East India Company sent Abel Tasman from Batavia to investigate the real extent of Australia. Tasman's two voyages — among the most notable on record — led to the discovery of Van Diemen's Land (Tasmania) and New Zealand, and proved conclusively that Australia had no connection with the supposed Antarctic continent. The Dutch, however, manifested little interest in the regions which they had found, and more than one hundred years elapsed before Tasman's work was continued by Captain James Cook.

Tasman's voyages, 1642–43, 1644



THE "DISCOVERY"

Captain Cook's ship in his last voyage. When this drawing was made, she was being used as a coaling-vessel at Newcastle; hence the addition of steam funnels.

This famous navigator, the son of a farm laborer, entered the British navy at an early age and by his unaided efforts rose to high command. Cook's first voyage in the Pacific resulted in the exploration of the coast of New Zealand and the eastern shore of Australia. The second voyage finally settled the question as to the existence of a southern continent, for Cook sailed three times across the Pacific Ocean without finding it. At the instance of

Cook's voyages in the Pacific 1768–1779

George III, Cook undertook a third voyage to locate, if possible, an opening on the coast of Alaska which would lead into Hudson Bay. He followed the American coast through Bering Strait until an unbroken ice field barred further progress. On the return from the Arctic region Cook visited the Hawaiian Islands, where he was murdered by the natives. Thus closed the career of one who, more than any other explorer, revealed to European gaze the island world of the Pacific.

Bering's voyages, 1728–1729, 1741

Captain Cook on his third voyage was the first British navigator to sight Alaska. Here, however, he had been preceded by the Russians, who reached the Pacific by way of Siberia and the Arctic Ocean. It still remained uncertain whether Siberia did not join on to the northern part of the New World. Peter the Great, who showed a keen interest in geographical discovery, commissioned Vitus Bering, a Dane in the Russian service, to solve the problem. Bering explored the strait and sea named after him and made clear the relation between North America and Asia.

Scientific exploration

The eighteenth century thus added greatly to man's knowledge of the world, especially in the Pacific area. Cook's voyages, in particular, left the main outlines of the southern part of the globe substantially as they are known to-day. From this time systematic exploration for scientific purposes more and more took the place of voyages by private adventurers for the sake of warfare or plunder. Geographical discovery must be included, therefore, among the influences which made the eighteenth century so conspicuously an age of enlightenment.

Studies

1. On outline maps represent the division of North America (*a*) after the Peace of Utrecht and (*b*) after the Peace of Paris. 2. Locate these places: Calcutta; Batavia; Sydney; Madras; Sitka; Bombay; and Pondicherry. 3. Identify these dates in American colonial history: 1607; 1620; 1664; 1713; and 1763. 4. According to the mercantile theory, what constituted a "favorable" and what an "unfavorable" balance of trade? 5. How was the colonial policy based on mercantilism opposed to modern ideas of commercial freedom? 6. What was meant by the saying that colonies were "like so many farms of the mother country"? 7. Why was the joint-stock company a more successful method of fostering colonial

trade than the regulated company? 8. Show that the seventeenth century belonged commercially to the Dutch, as the sixteenth century had belonged to the Portuguese and Spaniards. 9. On the map (page 229) indicate what East Indian islands still remain Dutch possessions. 10. Why was it possible for European powers to secure dominions in India? 11. State the basis of the claims of England, France, Spain, Holland, and Sweden to territory in North America during the seventeenth century. 12. "The breaking of Spain's naval power is an incident of the first importance in the history of the English colonies." Comment on this statement. 13. "To Virginia men went for profit; principle drove them to New England." Comment on this statement. 14. Why was the acquisition of New Netherland an important step in the building up of colonial America? 15. Show how the Stuart kings fostered England's expansion in North America. 16. "The expansion of England in the New World and in Asia is the formula which sums up for England the history of the eighteenth century." Comment on this statement. 17. Set forth the importance of the Seven Years' War in the history of India and of colonial America. 18. Show that "no taxation without representation" was a slogan which could hardly have arisen in any but an English country. 19. "The Declaration of Independence was the formal announcement of democratic ideas that had their tap-root in English soil." Comment on this statement. 20. How did the American Revolution become a world war? 21. In what sense was the American Revolution "a civil war within the British Empire"? 22. Show that the American Constitution established, not a confederation, but a federal state. 23. From what Dutch source were the names Tasmania, Van Diemen's Land, and New Zealand derived? 24. Trace on the map (between pages 272–273) the three voyages of Captain Cook.

CHAPTER IX

THE OLD RÉGIME IN EUROPE

64. Reform

The eighteenth century in culture

The student will recall the more significant transformations of European society which closed the Middle Ages and ushered in modern times. The Renaissance of literature, art, and learning; geographical discovery, exploration, and colonization; and the Protestant Reformation and Catholic Counter Reformation all helped to complete the transition from the medieval to the modern world. To these three movements we may now add the extraordinary awakening of the European mind in the eighteenth century. It was an age of reason, an age of enlightenment.

The reforming spirit

The thinkers of the eighteenth century pursued knowledge not so much for its own sake as for its social usefulness. They felt that the time had come when mankind might well discard many ideas and customs, once serviceable, perhaps, but now outworn. To them the chief obstacle in the way of progress was found in human ignorance, prejudice, and unreasoning veneration for the past. Systematic and accurate knowledge, they believed, would destroy this attachment to "the good old days" and would make it possible to create more reasonable and enlightened institutions. In other words, thinkers were animated by the reforming spirit.

The Old Régime

Reform was sorely needed. Absolute monarchies claiming to rule by divine right, aristocracies in the possession of privileges and honors, the masses of the people excluded from any part in the government and burdened with taxes and feudal dues — such were some of the survivals

of medievalism which formed the Old Régime.[1] The eighteenth century abolished it in France: the nineteenth and twentieth centuries have done much to abolish it in other European countries. Let us examine it more closely.

65. The Privileged Classes

Where absolutism prevailed, everything depended upon the personal character of the sovereign. A Peter the Great might set his country upon the road to civilization; a Louis XIV, on the contrary, might plunge his people into indescribable misery as the result of needless wars and extravagant expenditures. As time went on, it began to appear more and more unreasonable that a single person should have the power to make the laws, levy the taxes, spend the revenues, declare war, and conclude peace according to his own inclination. England in the seventeenth century had shown that a divine-right monarchy might be replaced by a constitutional monarchy and parliamentary control of legislation. The reformers wished to secure for France and other Continental countries at least an equal measure of political liberty.

The monarchy

Not less insistent was their demand for social equality. The feudal system had bequeathed as part of its heritage to modern Europe a system of class distinctions which honeycombed society. The highest place was occupied by the clergy and nobility, who constituted the First and Second Estates, respectively. These two privileged classes formed a very small minority of the population in any European country. Of twenty-five million Frenchmen, for instance, less than half a million were clerics or nobles.

The First and Second Estates

Reverence felt by kings and lords for mother Church had dowered her representatives with rich and broad domains. In France, Spain, Italy, and those parts of Germany where Church property had not been confiscated by Protestants, the archbishops, bishops, abbots,

The clergy

[1] In French, *ancien régime.*

and cardinals ruled as veritable princes and paid few or no taxes to the government. These members of the higher clergy were recruited mainly from the noble families and naturally took the side of the absolute monarchs. The lower clergy, the thousands of parish priests, who came from the common people, just as naturally espoused the popular cause. They saw the abuses of the existing system and supported the demands for its reform.

By the eighteenth century the old feudal nobility had largely disappeared from Europe, except in Germany. A new aristocracy arose, consisting of those who had been ennobled by the king for various services or who had held certain offices which conferred noble rank. The nobles, like the higher clergy, were great landed proprietors, though without the military obligations which rested on feudal lords during the Middle Ages.

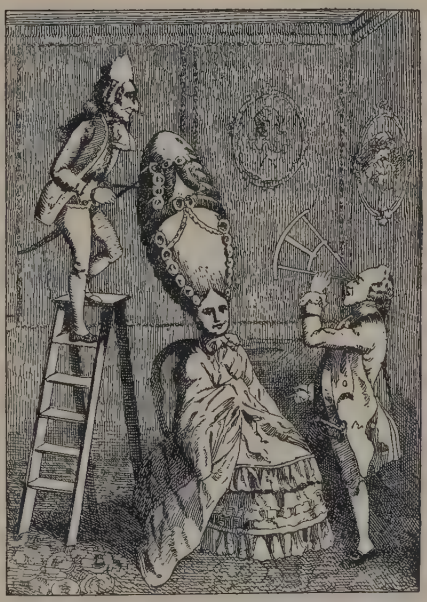
The nobility

Great Britain is almost the only modern state where the nobility still keeps an important place in the national life. There are several reasons for this fact. In the first place, British nobles are few in number in consequence of the rule of primogeniture. Only the eldest son of a peer inherits his father's title and estate; the younger sons are commoners. Even the eldest son during his father's lifetime is styled "Lord" simply by courtesy. In the second place, the social distinction of the nobility arouses little antagonism, because a peer is not bound to marry into another noble family but may take his wife from the ranks of commoners. In the third place, the nobility is from time to time enlarged through the creation of new peers, very often men who have distinguished themselves by their public services as generals or statesmen or by their contributions to science, art, or letters. During the eighteenth century, for instance, 34 dukes, 29 marquises, 109 earls, 85 viscounts, and 248 barons were created. This constant supply of new blood has helped to preserve the British aristocracy from stagnation and incompetence. Finally, nobles in Great Britain are taxed as are other citizens and are equally amenable to the laws.

English nobles

Very different was the situation in eighteenth-century France. Here there were as many as one hundred thousand nobles, for the French did not observe the rule of primogeniture. Their "gentle birth" enabled them to monopolize the important offices in the government, the army, and the Church. They claimed, and largely secured, exemption from taxation. The result was that most of the expense of the wars, the magnificent palaces, and gorgeous ceremonial of Louis XIV and Louis XV was borne by the middle and lower classes of France. The provincial nobles, who lived on their country estates, usually took more or less part in local affairs and felt an interest in the welfare of the peasantry. But many members of the nobility were absentee landlords, leading a fashionable existence at the court and dancing attendance on the king. Nobles of this type were ornamental rather than useful. Their luxury and idleness made them objects of odium in the minds of all who wished to renovate society. As one reformer declared, "Through all the vocabulary of Adam, there is not such an animal as a duke or a count."

French nobles



"Ridiculous Taste, or the Ladies' Absurdity"

One of the many caricatures of the extravagant fashions in headdress of both sexes during the eighteenth century.

66. The Unprivileged Classes

The Third Estate

Such were the two privileged orders, or estates. Beneath them came the unprivileged order known as the Third Estate in France. It consisted of three main divisions.

The bourgeoisie

The middle class, or *bourgeoisie*,[1] included all those who were not manual laborers. Professional men, such as magistrates, lawyers, physicians, and teachers, together with bankers, manufacturers, wholesale merchants, and shopkeepers, were bourgeois. The British middle class enjoyed representation in Parliament and frequently entered the nobility. The French *bourgeoisie*, on the contrary, could not hold the positions of greatest honor in the government. Though well educated and often wealthy, they were made to feel in every way their inferiority to the arrogant nobles. They added their voices, therefore, to those who demanded political liberty and social equality.

The artisans

The next division of the Third Estate comprised the artisans living in the towns and cities. They were not very numerous, except in Great Britain, France, western Germany, and northern Italy, where industrial life had reached a much higher development than elsewhere in Europe.

Survivals of the guild system

The craft guilds, so characteristic of urban life during the Middle Ages, had begun to disappear from eighteenth-century England, but still maintained their importance on the Continent. Each trade had its own guild, controlling methods of manufacture, quantity and quality of the article produced, wages and hours of labor, and number of workmen to be employed. In many places, the masters, who owned the shops, machines, or tools, alone belonged to the guilds. Even where journeymen and apprentices became members, after paying excessive entrance fees, they were not admitted to all the privileges of the craft. This exclusive policy of the masters provoked much opposition on the part of

[1] From French *bourg*, "town."

the poorer workmen [1] and led to a demand for the abolition of their monopoly of industry.

The last and by far the largest division of the Third Estate was that of the peasants. In Prussia, Austria, Hungary, Poland, Russia, and Spain they were still serfs. They might not leave their villages or marry without their lord's consent; their children must serve in his family for several years at a nominal wage; and they themselves had to work for a number of days each week on their lord's land. It is said that this forced labor sometimes took so much of the peasant's time that he could only cultivate his own holding by moonlight. Conditions were better in Italy and western Germany, though it was a Hessian prince who sold his subjects to Great Britain to fight as mercenaries in the American War of Independence. In France, serfdom still existed only in Alsace, Lorraine, and Franche Comté,[2] three provinces which had been acquired by Louis XIV and Louis XV. The great majority of the French peasants enjoyed complete freedom, and many of them owned their own farms.

The peasants

But even the free peasants of France carried a heavy burden. The king imposed the hated land tax (*taille*), assessing a certain amount on each village and requiring the money to be paid whether the inhabitants could afford it or not. Still more hated was the *corvée*, or forced labor exacted by the government from time to time on roads and other public works. The clergy demanded tithes, which amounted to perhaps a thirteenth of the produce. The nobles levied various feudal dues for the use of oven, mill, and wine press, and tolls for the use of roads and bridges. The game laws were especially vexatious, because farmers were obliged to allow the game of neighboring lords to invade their fields and destroy the crops. Slight wonder that the peasants also formed a discontented class, anxious for any reforms which would better their hard lot.

Survivals of the manorial system

[1] The so-called urban proletariat (from Latin *proles*, "offspring," "progeny" — referring to those whose only wealth is in their children).

[2] See the map on page 184.

67. The Church

Practically all European peoples in the eighteenth century called themselves Christians. The majority of them were Catholics. The eastern and western branches of Catholic Christianity began to draw apart during the earlier Middle Ages and finally separated in the eleventh century. This schism was never afterwards healed. The Eastern or Greek Church found its adherents principally among the inhabitants of the Balkan peninsula and the Russians. We have already learned how Peter the Great made the church in Russia to all intents and purposes a department of the tsar's autocratic government.[1] Such it remained until the Russian Revolution of 1917.

Greek Catholics

The Western or Roman Church held undisputed sway throughout the rest of Europe before the Protestant Reformation in the sixteenth century. Even after this religious upheaval, it continued to be the state church in Italy, Spain, Portugal, France, Austria proper, the Austrian Netherlands, Bavaria, Poland, and several of the Swiss cantons. Moreover, there were numerous Roman Catholics in Bohemia, Hungary, and Ireland.

Roman Catholics

The success of the Roman Church in combating Protestantism had been mainly due to the Society of Jesus. That great order, founded by Loyola in 1534, covered Europe with its schools and Asia and America with its missions. As time went on, the increasing wealth, business activity, and political influence of the Jesuits raised up many enemies for them among the clergy, public officials, and the middle and lower classes. The result was the suppression of the order in Portugal, France, Spain, and other countries, and finally altogether by a papal decree of 1773.[2] That both European rulers and the Papacy should take this extreme step shows the growing strength of public opinion in the eighteenth century.

Dissolution of the Society of Jesus

[1] See page 200.

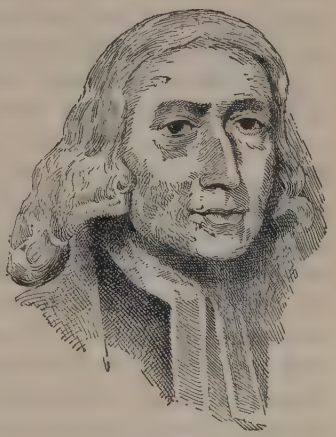
[2] The Society of Jesus was revived by Pius VII in 1814.

The Reformation made Lutheranism the state church in Prussia, Saxony, and the three Scandinavian countries. Anglicanism in England, Wales, and Ireland, and Presbyterianism in Scotland and Holland held a similarly privileged position. There were also many Protestants in France, Switzerland, and southern Germany.

Protestants

The divisions among Protestants gave rise to new sects. The Unitarians, who rejected the doctrine of the Trinity, gained followers in Poland and Hungary as early as the sixteenth century and subsequently in the British Isles and the United States. Seventeenth-century England produced the Baptists, whose name was derived from their insistence on immersion of adults as the only proper form of baptism. The Society of Friends, or Quakers, as they are commonly called, also arose in England at this time. Their founder was George Fox, a weaver's son. The Quakers rejected all religious ceremonial, had no paid ministers, and did not observe the two sacraments of baptism and the Lord's Supper. War and negro slavery were condemned as unchristian by the Quakers.

New Protestant sects



JOHN WESLEY

After a painting by George Romney in the possession of W. R. Cassels, London.

Methodism took its start in the eighteenth century out of the preaching of John Wesley and his associates. They worked among the common people of England and won a large following by the fervor, piety, and strictness of their ways. The Methodists finally separated from the Anglican Church and became an independent denomination.

The Methodists

The union of Church and State in both Catholic and Protestant countries seemed to make conformity to the established

religion essential for all citizens. Non-conformity was considered a crime, which the government stood ready to punish by fines, imprisonment, and even death. Heretics were burnt at the stake in eighteenth-century Spain. In France, after the revocation of the Edict of Nantes (1685), Huguenots who held religious services were sent to the galleys. The Toleration Act (1689) in England, while allowing the Dissenters to worship publicly in their own way, did not extend this privilege to Roman Catholics, Unitarians, and Jews. Even where active persecution of non-conformists had ceased, the strict press censorship in most countries interfered with the free expression of thought on religious subjects. Only Holland, Switzerland, and Great Britain had accepted John Milton's noble plea for unlicensed printing. "Give me," wrote Milton, "liberty to know, to utter, and to argue freely according to conscience, above all other liberties." [1]

Religious intolerance

The clergy in Catholic lands kept much of the authority which they had exercised throughout the Middle Ages. Cases involving heresy or blasphemy were tried in their own courts. They alone registered births and deaths and solemnized legal marriages. Hospitals and charitable institutions remained under their direction. Clergymen taught and generally controlled the elementary and higher schools. One result of the Reformation was the introduction into some of the German states, Holland, Scotland, and the Puritan colonies of New England of schools supported by general taxation, so that every one might be able to read and interpret the Scriptures. But with such exceptions the public school system was almost unknown in Europe. The common people were usually uneducated.

Ecclesiastical control

68. Liberal Ideas of Industry and Commerce; the Economists

The abuses of the Old Régime were not greater in the eighteenth century than for hundreds of years before, but now they were to be seriously attacked by thinkers who applied the

[1] *Areopagitica* (1644).

test of *reasonableness* to every institution. It was at this time that political economy, or economics, came into being. Economic science, which investigates such subjects as the production of wealth and its distribution as rent, interest, profits, and wages, the functions of money and credit, and the methods of taxation, had been studied in earlier times by those whose chief motive was to increase the riches of merchants and fill the treasuries of kings. Students in the eighteenth century took a wider view and began to search for the true causes of national well-being.

Political economy, or economics

The economists who flourished in France received the name of Physiocrats,[1] because they believed that natural laws ruled in the economic world. In opposition to the Mercantilists, who held that the wealth of a nation comes from industry and commerce, some of the Physiocrats declared that it comes from agriculture. Manufacturers, said they, merely give a new form to materials extracted from the earth, while traders do nothing more than transfer commodities from one person to another. Farmers are the only productive members of society. It was a striking doctrine to enunciate at a time when the peasantry formed, as has been said, the "beast of burden" of the Old Régime. This group of Physiocrats did a real service in insisting upon the importance of agriculture, even though they erred in assuming that it is the sole source of wealth.

The Physiocrats

Another group of Physiocrats protested against the burdencome restraints imposed upon industry by the guilds and upon commerce by the governments. They advocated economic freedom. Any one should be allowed to make what things he likes; all occupations should be open to everybody; trade between different parts of the country should not be impeded by tolls and taxes; customs duties should not be levied on foreign goods. The Physiocratic teaching was summed up in the famous phrase *laissez-faire* — "let alone."

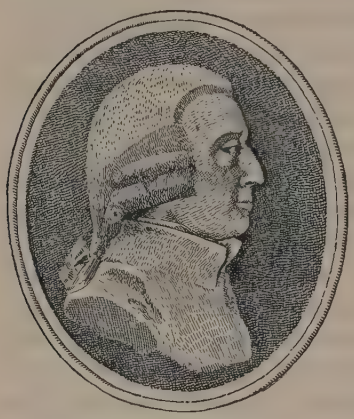
Laissez-faire

A Scotch professor of philosophy, Adam Smith, who had visited France and knew the Physiocrats, carried their ideas

[1] A term derived from two Greek words meaning "nature" and "to rule."

across the Channel. His famous work on the *Wealth of Nations* appeared in 1776, the year of American independence. It formed a new declaration of independence for industry and commerce. According to Smith the State should limit itself to only three duties: "first, the duty of protecting the society from the violence and invasion of other independent societies; secondly, the duty of protecting, as far as possible, every member of the society from the injustice or oppression of every other member of it, or the duty of establishing an exact administration of justice; and thirdly, the duty of erecting and maintaining certain public works and certain public institutions, which it can never be for the advantage of any individual or small number of individuals to erect and maintain. . . ." [1]

Adam Smith, 1723–1790



ADAM SMITH
A medallion by James Tassie.

Smith set forth the doctrine of *laissez-faire* so clearly and persuasively as to make a profound impression upon business men and statesmen. His arguments against monopolies, bounties, and protective tariffs did much to secure the subsequent adoption of free trade by Great Britain and even affected Continental legislation. Thus the *Wealth of Nations*, judged by its results, must be accounted one of the most important books ever written.

Influence of Adam Smith

69. Liberal Ideas of Religion and Politics; the English Philosophers

The eighteenth century was remarkable for eminent scientists. They continued the epoch-making work in mathematics and

[1] *Wealth of Nations*, bk. iv, chap. ix.

astronomy started during the Renaissance and made many contributions to physics, chemistry, geology, botany, and zoölogy. Scientific investigations, in previous times pursued by lonely thinkers, now began to be carried on systematically by the members of learned societies. Italy led the way with the foundation at Naples and Rome of the first academies of science, and her example was followed at London, Paris, Berlin, and other European capitals. Never before had there been such widespread interest in nature and so many opportunities to uncover nature's secrets.

Advance of science

The advance of science, which immensely broadened men's conceptions of the universe, could not fail to affect their attitude toward religion. The idea of the reign of natural law in the physical world was now extended to the spiritual world. Thinking men began to argue that the doctrines of Christianity should not be accepted on the authority either of the Church or of the Bible, but must be submitted to free inquiry. These champions of reason — the rationalists — especially flourished in Great Britain, where thought was less fettered than on the Continent.

Rationalism in religion

Some of the rationalists, including John Locke, defended Christianity as being the most reasonable of all religions. Nevertheless, in his famous *Letters on Tolerance*, Locke made a plea for individual liberty of conscience. To persecute unbelievers, he argued, only transformed them into hypocrites. Religious belief is a state of mind, and the mind cannot be compelled to believe. If infidels were to be converted by force, it would be easier for God to do it "with armies of heavenly legions than for any son of the Church, how potent soever, with all his dragoons."

John Locke, 1632–1704

Other rationalists went beyond Locke and questioned the special claims of Christianity. They declared that the questions over which Christian sects had disputed for centuries were really of minor importance; the essential thing was the doctrine common to all mankind. Thus they arrived at the conception of "natural religion," which included simply the belief in a personal God and in

The Deists

man's immortal soul. These thinkers received the name of Deists.[1]

Influence of the Deists

By casting doubt on the efficacy of particular religions, the Deists gave an impetus to the demand for toleration of all. Their speculations found a warm welcome in France, where they helped to undermine reverence for the Church among the more intelligent classes. Deism in this way acted as a revolutionary ferment.

Rationalism in politics

Rationalism also invaded politics. British thinkers, of whom Locke in his *Two Treatises on Government* was again the most prominent representative, developed a theory of politics utterly opposed to the old doctrine of the divine right of kings. According to Locke, all men possess certain natural rights to life, liberty, and the ownership of property. To preserve these rights they have entered into a contract with one another, agreeing that the majority shall have power to make and execute all necessary laws. If the government, thus created, breaks the contract by violating man's natural rights, it has no longer any claim to the allegiance of its subjects and may be legitimately overthrown.

Popular sovereignty

To say that all government exists, or should exist, by the consent of the governed is to set up the doctrine of popular sovereignty. How influential it was may be seen from passages in the Declaration of Independence which reproduce the very words of Locke and other British writers. But their ideas found the heartiest reception in France. Enlightened members of the nobility and *bourgeoisie*, weary of royal despotism, took them up, expounded them, and spread them among the people.

70. The French Philosophers

Intellectual leadership of France

France during the eighteenth century had not been able to maintain the high position among European states to which she had been raised by Louis XIV, and in the struggle for colonial empire she had been defeated by Great Britain. Her intellectual leadership compen-

[1] Latin *Deus*, "God."

sated for all that she had lost. Throughout this century France gave birth to a succession of philosophers, whose ideas fell like fertilizing rain upon the arid soil of the Old Régime. Some of them had lived for a time in Great Britain as refugees from the persecution which too bold thinking involved at home. Their life there made them acquainted with the British system of constitutional monarchy — so unlike the absolutism of French kings — with the political theories of Locke, and with the ideas of the Deists, from whom they learned to submit time-honored beliefs to searching examination.

A nobleman, lawyer, and judge, Montesquieu, spent twenty years in composing a single book on the *Spirit of Laws*. It is a classic in political science. There was nothing revolutionary in Montesquieu's conclusions. He examined each form of government in order to determine its excellencies and defects. The British constitution seemed to him most admirable, as combining the virtues of monarchy, aristocracy, and democracy. Montesquieu especially insisted upon the necessity of separating the executive, legislative, and judicial functions of government, instead of combining them in the person of a single ruler. This idea influenced the French revolutionists and also had great weight with the framers of the Constitution of the United States.

Montesquieu, 1689–1755

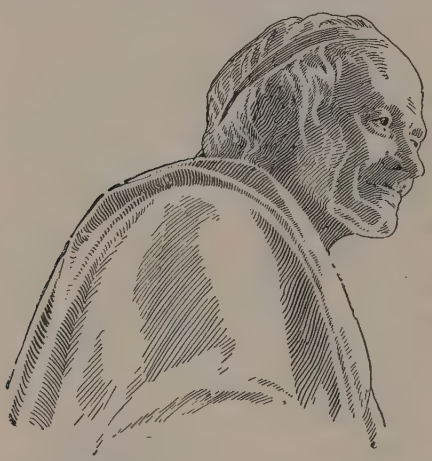
MONTESQUIEU

The foremost figure among the philosophers was Voltaire, who sprang from the *bourgeoisie*. He was not a deep thinker like Montesquieu, but was rather a brilliant and somewhat superficial man of letters. For more than half a century he poured forth a succession of poems, dramas, essays, biographies, histories, and other works, so clearly written, so witty, and so satirical as to win the applause of his contemporaries.

Voltaire, 1694–1778

Voltaire devoted a long life to the preaching of enlightenment. He was in no sense a revolutionist, and favored reform by royal decree as being the simplest and most expeditious method. He made it his particular work to bring discredit on ecclesiastical authority. The Church he regarded as an invention of self-seeking priests. A typical Deist, Voltaire insisted on the need of toleration. "Since we are all steeped in error and folly," he said, "we must forgive each other our follies." His exposure of bigotry and fanaticism was needed in the eighteenth century. It has helped to create the freer atmosphere in which religious thought moves to-day.

Voltaire and the Church



VOLTAIRE
A statue by J. A. Houdon in the Comédie Française, Paris.

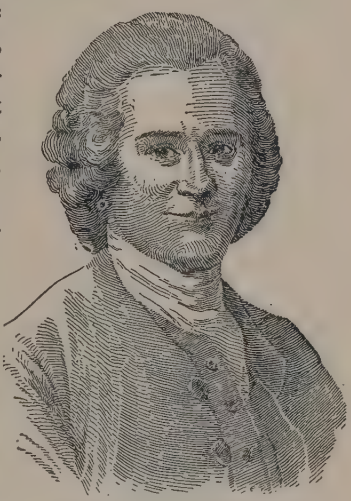
If Voltaire was the destroyer of the old, Rousseau was the prophet of the new. This son of a Geneva watchmaker, who wandered from one European capital to another, made a failure of everything he undertook and died poverty-stricken and demented. The discouragements and miseries of his career found expression in what he wrote. Rousseau felt only contempt for the boasted civilization of the age. He loved to picture what he supposed was once the "state of nature," before governments had arisen, before the strong had begun to oppress the weak, when nobody owned the land, and when there were no taxes and no wars. "Back to nature" was Rousseau's cry.

Rousseau, 1712–1778

Such fancies Rousseau applied to politics in what was his most important book, the *Social Contract*. Starting with the as-

sertion that "man was born free and everywhere he is in chains," he went on to describe a purely ideal state of society in which the citizens are ruled neither by kings nor parliaments, but themselves make the laws directly. The only way to reform the world, according to Rousseau, was to restore the sovereignty of the people, with "Liberty, Equality, Fraternity" for all. As we have just learned, the idea that governments and laws arise by voluntary agreements among men, who may overthrow them for just cause, was not new; but Rousseau first gave it wide currency. Frenchmen of every class read the *Social Contract* with avidity, and during the Revolution they proceeded to put its democratic teachings into effect.

The "Social Contract," 1762



JEAN JACQUES ROUSSEAU
After the painting in the Musée Carnavalet, Paris.

Rousseau, Voltaire, and Montesquieu were among the contributors to the famous *Encyclopedia*, a work in seventeen volumes which appeared after the middle of the eighteenth century. As the name indicates, it formed a repository of all the scientific and historical knowledge of the age. The Encyclopedists, as its editors are known, sought to guide opinion, as well as to give information. They were radical thinkers, who combined in a great effort to throw the light of reason on the dark places of the social order. Among the abuses attacked by them were religious intolerance, the slave trade, the cruel criminal law, and the inequitable system of taxation. The Encyclopedists even ventured to criticize absolutism in government. Their work thus set in motion a current of revolt which did much to undermine both Church and State in France.

The Encyclopedists

71. The Enlightened Despots

The ideas of the philosophers spread throughout those parts of Europe where French models were followed. Even kings and statesmen began to be affected by the spirit of reform. European rulers did not intend to surrender the least fraction of absolute power; they were still autocrats who believed in government by one strong man rather than by the democratic many; but with their despotism they combined a paternal solicitude for the welfare of their subjects. They took measures to secure religious toleration, to relieve poverty, to codify the laws, to provide elementary education, and to encourage scientific research. These activities have won for them the name of the "enlightened despots."

Paternalism

In Russia Catherine the Great posed as an enlightened despot. Catherine was a learned woman, at least for an empress. She wrote flattering letters to Voltaire and the other Encyclopedists and conferred on them gifts and pensions. Montesquieu she especially admired, saying that were she the pope she would canonize him. But Catherine paid little more than lip-service to the ideas of the French philosophers. If she abolished torture, she did not do away with the knout; for capital punishment she only substituted the living death of exile in Siberia. Her toleration of dissenters from the Orthodox Church stopped short of allowing them to build chapels for public worship, and her passion for legislative reform grew cold when she found that she must begin by freeing the serfs. Catherine's real attitude is exhibited in a letter to the governor of Moscow: "My dear prince, do not complain that the Russians have no desire for instruction; if I institute schools it is not for us, it is for Europe, where we must keep our position in public opinion. But the day when our peasants shall wish to become educated both you and I will lose our places."

Catherine the Great

Catherine's contemporary, Frederick the Great, was a despot more sincere and more enlightened. He worked harder and had fewer pleasures than any other king of his day. "Monarchs," he once wrote, "are not

Frederick the Great

invested with authority that they may riot in voluptuousness." Although Frederick's resources had been so completely drained by the Seven Years' War that it was necessary for him to melt the silver in the royal palaces and debase the currency, his vigorous measures soon restored the national prosperity. He labored in a hundred ways to make Prussia the best-governed state in Europe. Thus, he founded elementary schools so that his subjects could learn at least to read and write, and reformed the courts so that everybody from high to low might be assured of impartial justice. A Deist in religion, the correspondent and friend of Voltaire, Frederick declared that every one should be allowed to get to heaven in his own way, and backed up his declaration by putting Roman Catholics on an equality with Protestants throughout the Prussian dominions. No less than thirty volumes, all in French, contain the poems, letters, and treatises on history, politics, and military matters which Frederick managed to compose in the spare moments of a busy life. This philosopher on the throne held the attention of his generation in the world of ideas as well as in that of diplomacy and war.

JOSEPH II
After a painting by A. von Maron.

In Austria, Joseph II,[1] the eldest son of Maria Theresa, presented a less successful type of the enlightened despot. Joseph regarded Frederick the Great as the ideal of a modern ruler. He wished to transform the various peoples in the Hapsburg realm, with all their differences of race, speech,

Joseph II

[1] Holy Roman Emperor, 1765–1790, and sole ruler of the Hapsburg realm, 1780–1790.

religion, and aspirations, into a single unified nation. German officials sent out from Vienna were to administer the affairs of each province. The army was to be built up by compulsory service after the Prussian model. German was to be used everywhere as the official language. Most unwisely, however, Joseph tried to do in a short lifetime what all the Hapsburg rulers after him could not accomplish. The result was that his measures to Germanize Hungarians, Bohemians, Italians, and Netherlanders only aroused hostility and did not survive his death. The sentence that the king himself proposed as his epitaph was a truthful summary of his reign: "Here lies the man who, with the best intentions, never succeeded in anything."

Paternal government had two serious weaknesses. First, the despots could not determine the policy of their successors. An able and liberal-minded ruler might be followed by a ruler who was indolent, extravagant, and unprogressive. In Prussia, for instance, the weak reign of Frederick the Great's successor undid much of his work. The same thing happened in Spain and Portugal. Second, the despots, however enlightened, treated their subjects as children and enacted reforms without first discovering whether reformation was popularly desired. Because of these weaknesses, the eighteenth-century conception of absolute monarchs ruling for their people's good was certain to be superseded by the modern idea of the people ruling themselves. But to bring this about, a revolution was necessary.

Failure of paternalism

Studies

1. Do monarchy and autocracy necessarily mean the same thing? 2. Compare the European estates or privileged classes with the castes of ancient and modern India. 3. Contrast the leading ideas of Mercantilism and Physiocracy. 4. Look up in an encyclopedia some account of the life and writings of Adam Smith. 5. What do you understand by laws of nature? Give some examples of such laws. 6. What was the origin of the names Quaker and Methodist? 7. Distinguish between deism (or theism) and atheism. 8. How did Locke's theory of the social contract provide the intellectual justification for the "Glorious Revolution"? 9. Is there any reason to suppose that Rousseau's "state of nature" ever existed anywhere? 10. Why has Rousseau's *Social Contract* been called "the Bible of the French Revolution" and "the gospel of modern democracy"? 11. Show that Rousseau's

ideas of government were far more radical than the ideas of Montesquieu. 12. Why did not the reforms of the enlightened despots make a revolution unnecessary? 13. "No reform can produce real good unless it is the work of public opinion, and unless the people themselves take the initiative." Discuss the justice of this statement. 14. Describe those features of the Old Régime which led to the demand for "Liberty, Equality, Fraternity." 15. "The evils of European society were rooted in feudalism and entrenched in privilege." Comment on this statement. 16. How do the facts presented in this chapter support the statement that "Great thinkers control the affairs of men, and by their discoveries regulate the march of nations"?

CANVASSING FOR VOTES

One of Hogarth's Election Prints, made in 1757. The scene is laid before an inn. The landlord in the middle foreground is seen contending with an officer of the Crown for the vote of a newly arrived farmer, who slyly takes bribes from both.

CHAPTER X

THE FRENCH REVOLUTION, 1789–1799[1]

72. Preparation for the French Revolution

Revolutionary France

WHAT we call the French Revolution refers to a series of events in France, between 1789 and 1799, by which divine-right monarchy gave way to a republic and class distinctions and privileges disappeared in favor of social equality. This revolution started in France, not because the misery of the people had become more intolerable there than in other parts of the Continent, but because France was then the most advanced of Continental countries. French peasants and artisans were free enough and intelligent enough to be critical of their government. Next to Great Britain, France contained the most numerous, prosperous, and influential *bourgeoisie*. Members of this class furnished the Revolution with its principal leaders. Even the nobility and clergy included many men who realized the abuses of the Old Régime and wished to abolish them. In short, the revolutionary impulse stirred all ranks of French society.

England and the Revolution

That impulse came in part from across the Channel. The spectacle of the Puritan Revolution and the "Glorious Revolution" in the seventeenth century affected Frenchmen in the eighteenth century. The English had put one king to death and had expelled another; they had established the supremacy of Parliament in the state. It was the example of parliamentary England which Montesquieu held up to the emulation of his country-

[1] Webster, *Readings in Medieval and Modern History*, chapter xxx, "France on the Eve of the Revolution"; chapter xxxi, "Scenes of the French Revolution." Webster, *Historical Source Book*, No. 16, "Decree Abolishing the Feudal System, 1789"; No. 17, "Declaration of the Rights of Man and of the Citizen, 1789"; No. 18, "Address to All Peoples, 1792."

men. It was the political philosophy of the Englishman, John Locke, upon which Rousseau founded his doctrine of the sovereignty of the people.

A second impulse came from across the Atlantic. After the close of the War of American Independence, the French common soldiers, together with Lafayette and other officers, returned home to spread republican doctrines. It is significant that in 1783 a French nobleman translated and published all thirteen of the constitutions of the American states. Very important was the work of Benjamin Franklin, who for nearly a decade represented the American government at Paris. His engaging manners, practical wisdom, and high principles won general admiration. The portrait of the Philadelphia printer hung in every house, and at republican festivals his bust figured side by side with that of Rousseau. "Homage to Franklin," cried an enthusiastic Frenchman, "he gave us our first lessons in liberty."

America and the Revolution

To understand the outbreak of the French Revolution it is necessary to go back to the long reign of Louis XV.[1] France had never had so unkingly a sovereign as this successor of the "Grand Monarch." All his life he was an idler. He hunted, he danced, he gambled, he sank deep in the frivolities and immoralities of Versailles, he did everything but rule. The government fell more and more into the hands of courtiers and adventurers, whose main concern was to line their own pockets at the expense of the public treasury.

Louis XV, king, 1715–1774

The foolish alliances and fatal wars upon which Louis XV was persuaded to enter reduced France to the position of a second-rate power. In the Seven Years' War French armies were repeatedly vanquished on Continental battle-fields, and French fleets were swept from the high seas. When the Peace of Paris was signed in 1763, the French flag ceased to fly in North America, and it flew in India only by permission of England. The annexation of Lorraine (1766) and Corsica (1768) did not compensate for the loss of

Decline of France

[1] Great-grandson of Louis XIV. See page 189, note 1.

a colonial empire.[1] The military failures of the king's reign humiliated his subjects and undermined their loyalty to him.

Financial distress

The wars and extravagance of Louis XV added to the legacy of debt with which his predecessor on the throne had saddled France. The treasury every year faced a chronic deficit. It could only be met by the dangerous expedient of fresh loans, involving still larger outlays for interest charges. As long as the government refused to take proper measures of economy and continued to exempt the clergy and nobility from their share of taxation, little improvement of the financial situation was possible. France, the richest country in Europe, with a population greater than that of any rival state, became virtually bankrupt.

Complaints against the monarchy

The French monarchy, so despised abroad, had to face a growing volume of complaints at home. Louis XV did his best to stifle them. A rigid censorship muzzled the press. Postoffice officials opened letters passing through the mails and revealed their contents to the king. Books and pamphlets, obnoxious to the government, were burned by the common hangman, and their authors were imprisoned. No man's personal liberty was safe, for the police, if provided with an order of arrest signed by the king (a *lettre de cachet*), could send any one to jail. Suspected persons sometimes remained prisoners for years without trial. Yet in spite of all measures of repression, opposition to the monarchy steadily increased.

"After me, the deluge"

Louis XV was able to read the signs of the times. He knew that the Old Régime could not last much longer; but he felt sure that it would last his lifetime. "After me, the deluge," he said. The deluge soon came.

73. Eve of the French Revolution

Louis XVI, king, 1774–1792

Louis XVI, the grandson of Louis XV, mounted the throne when only twenty years old. Virtuous, pious, and well-meaning, he was the sort of ruler who in quiet times might have won the esteem of the French people. He was, however, weak, indolent, slow

[1] See the map on page 184.

EUROPE
at the Beginning of the
FRENCH REVOLUTION,
1789 A.D.
Boundary of the Empire
Scale of Miles
0 50 100 200 300
20° 15° 10° Longitude 5° West 0° Longitude 5° East 10° 15° 20° 35°
50° 45° 40°
SCOTLAND
Edinburgh
IRELAND
Dublin
WALES
ENGLAND
London
NORTH SEA
Amsterdam
The Hague
Ostend
UNITED NETHERLANDS
Rhine
Brussels
Cologne
Bremen
Hanover
Berlin
BRANDENBURG
Elbe
SWEDEN
GOTTLAND
Copenhagen
DENMARK
BORNHOLM
BALTIC SEA
RÜGEN
MECKLENBURG
POMERANIA
Konigsberg
PRUSSIA
Riga
To Russia 1795
Vilna
To Russia 1772
RUSSIA
Dniepr
Warsaw
To Prussia 1795
To Prussia 1793
Vistula
To Austria 1795
Cassel
SAXONY
Dresden
THE
EMPIRE
SILESIA
Lemberg
Cracow
To Austria 1772
Bug
Dniester
Havre
Brest
Verdun
Valmy
Paris
Metz
Seine
Mainz
Prague
BOHEMIA
WÜRTEMBERG
BAVARIA
Vienna
AUSTRIA
Pressburg
Buda Pesth
HUNGARIAN DOMINIONS
Transylvania
Jassy
MOLDAVIA
Nantes
Loire
Munich
TYROL
CARINTHIA
STYRIA
Berne
SWITZERLAND
FRANCE
Bay of Biscay
Bordeaux
Lyons
SAVOY
Milan
Venice
Agram
WALLACHIA
Bukharest
Varna
BLACK SEA
Garonne
Rhone
PIEDMONT
PARMA
MODENA
Genoa
Orange
Florence
TUSCANY
OTTOMAN DOMINIONS
SERVIA
Danube
BULGARIA
Soña
Constantinople
Bayonne
BISCAY
NAVARRE
Marseilles
Toulon
Nice
Ragusa
MONTENEGRO
Scutari
ALBANIA
Adrianople
Saragossa
CATALONIA
CORSICA
Rome
NAPLES
Salonika
Brusa
Madrid
Barcelona
Tortosa
Tagus
Lisbon
PORTUGAL
Naples
Janina
Smyrna
MINORCA
SARDINIA
Valencia
Guadiana
Xivisa
MAJORCA
Cagliari
Guadalquivir
Seville
GREECE
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
KINGDOM OF THE TWO SICILIES
CRETE
Gibraltar
AFRICA
ATLANTIC OCEAN
THE M-N. WORKS

of thought, and very slow of decision. It has been well said that Louis XVI " could love, forgive, suffer, and die," but that he did not know how to reign.

At his side, presiding over the gay court of Versailles, stood Marie Antoinette of Austria, daughter of Maria Theresa. This beautiful and lovable, though frivolous and light-minded, woman exerted a most unfortunate influence on Louis XVI, whom she surpassed in ability.

Marie Antoinette

THE FRENCH PEASANT UNDER TAILLE, TAX, AND CORVÉE
After an engraving of 1789 in the Hennin Collection, Paris.

She constantly interfered in matters of state to support some mistaken policy or an incompetent minister. The queen had many enemies in France because of her nationality, and she increased them by lavish expenditures on herself and on her favorites. The chief charge later to be hurled against " Madame Deficit " was that she had wasted the resources of France.

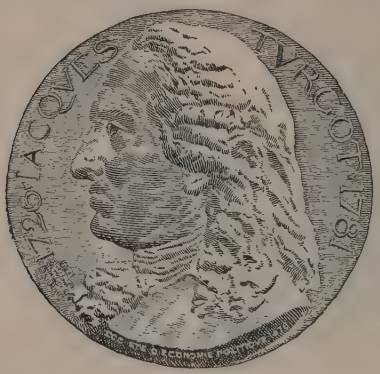
The youthful king had the good fortune to begin his reign auspiciously by appointing a new ministry, in which Turgot held the most responsible position. He was a friend of Voltaire, a contributor to the *Encyclopedia*, an economist of the Physiocratic school,

Turgot's ministry of reform, 1774–1776

and a successful administrator. Turgot drew up a comprehensive program of reforms. He would allow complete freedom of the press, establish a national system of education, recall the Huguenots, and admit the *bourgeoisie* to all public offices.

Turgot summed up his financial policy in the three maxims, "No bankruptcy, no increase of taxation, no loans." Expenses were to be reduced by cutting off the pensions to courtiers, whose only merit was, in the words of a contemporary writer, "to have taken the trouble to be born." The taxes bearing most heavily on the Third Estate were to be replaced by a general tax on all landowners. Peasants were to be no longer forced to work without pay on public highways and bridges. The old guilds, which hampered industry, were to be abolished. The vexatious tolls and duties on the passage of grain from one province to another were to be swept away. Could such reforms have been carried out, France would have had a bloodless and orderly revolution.

Financial policy of Turgot



TURGOT

A medal in joint honor of Turgot and Adam Smith, struck by the Société d'Économie Politique in 1876.

But they were not carried out. The privileged classes would not surrender their privileges, nor favorites their pensions, nor monopolists their unjust gains, without a struggle. The weak king, who once declared that "the only persons who truly love the people are Monsieur Turgot and myself," failed to support him against the intrigues of Marie Antoinette and the court party. Turgot's dismissal from office after two years of power removed the one man who could have saved absolutism in France.

Fall of Turgot

The finances of the government went from bad to worse after the fall of Turgot. His successors in the ministry relied mainly on fresh loans to cover the deficits of the treasury and avert bankruptcy. From the standpoint of French interests, Louis XVI committed a fatal error in allowing himself to be persuaded to intervene in the War of American Independence. America was freed; Great Britain was humbled; but the war forced up the public debt of France

Financial chaos

COSTUMES OF THE ORDERS

After an old print. The cleric wears a robe and ornamented mantle; the noble, a suit of black silk and a cap adorned with plumes; the representative of the Third Estate, a simple black suit without gold buttons or plumed cap.

by leaps and bounds. When at last it became impossible to borrow more money, the king yielded reluctantly to the popular demand for the convocation of the Estates-General. He appealed to the nation for aid, thereby confessing the failure of absolutism.

74. The Estates-General, 1789

The Estates-General, the old feudal assembly of France, had not met for one hundred and seventy-five years.[1] Suddenly awakened from their long slumber, the representatives of the clergy, the nobles, and the Third Estate appeared at Versailles to take counsel with the king. The written instructions (*cahiers*),

The Estates-General convenes, May 5, 1789

[1] See page 182.

drawn up in every part of the country for the guidance of each representative, though not revolutionary in wording, set forth a long list of abuses to be removed. While Louis XVI would have been satisfied with measures to increase the revenues, most Frenchmen wanted thoroughgoing reforms.

Membership of the Estates-General

Not quite half of the twelve hundred-odd members of the Estates-General belonged to the two privileged orders. About two-thirds of the delegates of the Third Estate were members of the legal profession. A few were liberal nobles. Less than a dozen came from the lower classes. As a whole, the Estates-General represented the most prosperous and intelligent people of France.

The Third Estate possessed two very competent leaders in Count Mirabeau and the Abbé Sieyès. The former belonged by birth and the latter by office to the privileged classes, but both gladly accepted election as representatives of the Third Estate. Mirabeau, a born statesman and orator, had a sincere belief in constitutional government. He wished to set up in France a strong monarchy, limited by a constitution after the English model. Sieyès, a cleric more devoted to politics than to theology, had recently stirred all Frenchmen by a remarkable pamphlet entitled *What is the Third Estate?* He answered, "Everything." "What has it been hitherto?" "Nothing." "What does it ask?" "To be something."

Mirabeau and Sieyès

MIRABEAU

The three estates in former days sat as separate chambers and voted by orders. If this usage were now followed, the

clergy and the nobility would have two votes to one for the Third Estate. The commoners insisted, however, that the new Estates-General no longer represented feudal France, but the united nation. They wished, therefore, that it should organize as a single body, in which the members voted as individuals. Since the Third Estate had been permitted to send twice as many delegates as either the clergy or the nobility, this arrangement would enable it to outvote the privileged orders and carry any reforming measures desired.

Organization of the Estates-General

Emmanuel Joseph Sieyès

The debate over the organization of the Estates-General continued for several weeks and resulted in a deadlock. At last, on the motion of Sieyès, the Third Estate cut the Gordian knot by boldly declaring itself the National Assembly. Then and there it asserted its right to act for the nation as a whole. Representatives of the clergy and nobility might come in if they pleased, but the National Assembly could do without them.

The National Assembly declared, June 17, 1789

Louis XVI, left to himself, might have been too inert for resistance, but his wife, his two brothers, and the court party persuaded him to make a stand. Troops were now posted before the doors of the hall which had been set apart in the palace of Versailles for the Third Estate. Finding their entrance barred, the undaunted commoners adjourned to a building nearby, which had been used as a tennis court. Here they took a solemn oath never to separate, but to continue to meet, under all circumstances, until they had drawn up a constitution for France. This action brought to their side the representatives

"Tennis-Court Oath," June 20, 1789

of the lower clergy (*curés*), who were inclined to the popular cause.

But the king persisted in his opposition. Summoning the three estates before him, he made known the royal will that they should deliberate apart. The higher clergy and nobility immediately withdrew to their separate chambers. The Third Estate, with its clerical supporters, did not stir. When the master of ceremonies repeated the king's command, Mirabeau retorted, "We are assembled by the national will; force alone shall disperse us." Louis XVI did not dare to use force, especially after many of the nobles, headed by Lafayette, joined the commoners. The king now gave way and requested the rest of the clerical and noble representatives to unite with the Third Estate in the National Assembly.

The National Assembly recognized, June 27, 1789

75. Outbreak of the French Revolution

Thus far we have been following a constitutional movement confined to the upper and middle classes of French society. Now, however, the lower classes began to make their influence felt upon the course of events, first in Paris and later in the provinces. Paris was a manufacturing center, with a large population of artisans, very poor, often idle, and inclined to be turbulent. Their ranks were swelled at this time by crowds of peasants, whom the bad harvests and severe winter of the preceding year had driven into the city. Here, in fact, were all the elements of a dangerous mob, on whose ignorance and passion reformers, agitators, and demagogues could play what tunes they willed.

Revolutionary Paris

Soon came ominous news. Louis XVI had hardly accepted the National Assembly before he changed his mind and determined to dissolve that body. A large number of troops, mainly German and Swiss regiments in the service of France, were massed near Paris, obviously with intent of awing, perhaps seizing, the representatives of the people. It was then that the Parisians made the cause of the National Assembly their own.

Fall of the Bastille, July 14, 1789

THE "TENNIS COURT OATH"

After the painting by J. L. David. Versailles Gallery.

Rioting broke out in the capital, and for several days anarchy prevailed. Reinforced by deserters from the army, the mob attacked and captured the Bastille, a fortress where political offenders had been often confined through *lettres de cachet.*

THE STORMING OF THE BASTILLE

A picture by a contemporary artist. Lafayette sent the key of the Bastille to Washington at Mount Vernon, with these words: "It is a tribute which I owe as a son to my adopted father, as an aide-de-camp to my general, as a missionary of liberty to its patriarch."

The Bastille at this time contained only seven prisoners, all there for just cause, but it symbolized the tyranny of the Old Régime, and its fall created an immense sensation throughout France and in other countries. Louis XVI, on hearing the news, exclaimed, "Why this is a revolt!" "No, Sire," replied a courtier, "this is a revolution."

Now that Paris was practically independent of royal control,

the more prominent and well-to-do citizens took steps to secure an orderly government. They formed a municipal council, or Commune, made up of representatives elected from the different wards of the city. A militia force, called the National Guard, was also organized, and the popular Lafayette was selected as commander. Meanwhile, Louis XVI had seen the necessity of submission. He withdrew the troops, got rid of his reactionary ministers, and paid a visit of reconciliation to the Parisians. In token of his good intentions, the king put on a red, white, and blue cockade, red and blue being the colors of Paris and white that of the Bourbons. This was to be the new tricolor of France.

The Commune and the National Guard

A Soldier of the National Guard

The example set by Paris was quickly copied by the provinces. Many cities and towns set up communes and formed national guards. In the country districts the peasants sacked and burned those local bastilles, the *châteaux*, taking particular pains to destroy the legal documents by which the nobles exercised their manorial rights. Monasteries, also, were often pillaged. The government showed itself unable to maintain order or to protect life and property. Troops in the garrison towns refused to obey their officers and fraternized with the populace. Royal officials quitted their posts. Courts of justice ceased to act. Public works stopped, and the collection of taxes became almost impossible. From end to end of France the Old Régime collapsed amid universal confusion.

Revolution in the provinces

The revolution in the provinces led directly to one of the

most striking scenes of French history. On the night of August 4–5, while the National Assembly had under consideration measures for stilling the unrest in France, one of the nobles — a relative of Lafayette — urged that it remove the feudal burdens still resting on the peasantry. Then, amid hysterical enthusiasm, noble after noble and cleric after cleric arose in his place to propose equality of taxation,

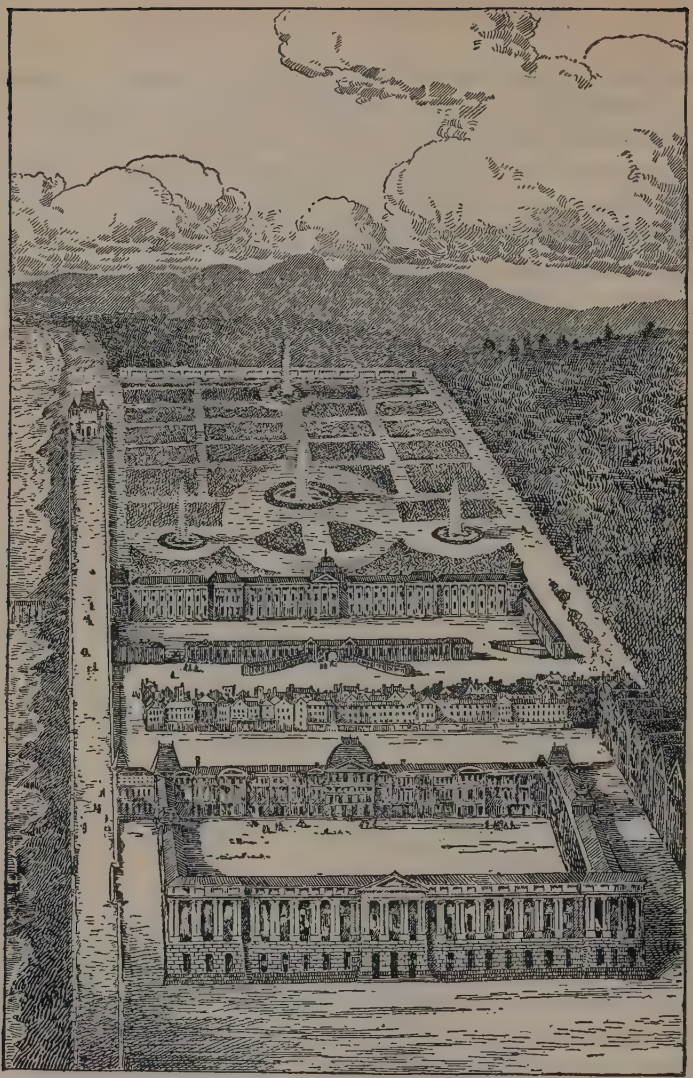
August 4–5, 1789

THE DESTRUCTION OF FEUDALISM

A contemporary cartoon representing the French people hammering to pieces with their flails all the emblems of the feudal system, including the knight's armor and sword and the bishop's crosier and miter.

the repeal of the game laws, the freeing of such serfs as were still to be found in France, the abolition of tithes, tolls, and pensions, and the extinction of all other long-established privileges. A decree "abolishing the feudal system" was passed by the National Assembly within the next few days and was signed by the king. The reforms which Turgot labored in vain to secure thus became accomplished facts. It is well to remember, however, that the Old Régime had already fallen in France; the decree of the National Assembly did little more than outlaw it.

Times were hard in Paris. Employment was scarce, and



THE LOUVRE AND THE TUILERIES

After an old print. The palace of the Louvre was begun by Francis I in the sixteenth century and continued by his successors, especially Louis XIV. Important additions were made during the nineteenth century. The Tuileries palace, so named from the tile kilns (*tuileries*) which once occupied the site, was burned in 1871. Nothing remains of the structure except two wings connected with the Louvre.

food was dear. The discontent grew in proportion, especially among the women, who had to stand in line many hours at a time waiting to purchase a few loaves of bread at the bakeries. Rumor accused the court and the aristocrats of deliberately causing famine, nay, of plotting to overturn the revolution by force. A newspaper published the statement — quite unfounded — that during a banquet of army officers at Versailles the national cockade had been insulted and trampled under foot. Here was the spark which caused the explosion. On October 5 a mob of hungry women, armed with every sort of weapon, even scythes and pitchforks, set out for Versailles to demand bread of the king. It was a strange procession that straggled along the twelve miles of highway from Paris to Versailles; an eyewitness declares that it reminded him of an army of crusaders. Early in the morning of October 6, some of the women made their way into the palace, killed the sentinels, and entered the apartments of Marie Antoinette, who escaped with difficulty. Only the arrival of Lafayette at the head of the National Guard prevented further rioting and bloodshed. The women were finally quieted by the king's promise to remove to Paris with his wife and children. That afternoon the royal family set out on their sorrowful journey to the capital, accompanied by a mob which yelled, "We are bringing the baker, the baker's wife, and the baker's little boy." Henceforth Louis XVI lodged in the palace of the Tuileries, where he found himself, in effect, a prisoner of the Parisians.

October 5–6, 1789

76. The National Assembly, 1789–1791

The National Assembly declared itself inseparable from the king's person and followed him to Paris. It remained in session there for the next two years. One of its most important undertakings was the reform of local government. During the eight centuries between Hugh Capet and Louis XVI, France had been built up by the gradual welding together of a number of provinces varying greatly in size, and each with its own privileges, customs, and laws.

The départements

Eighteenth-century France, in consequence, did not form a compact, well-organized state. The old provinces were now replaced by eighty-three artificial districts (*départements*), approximately uniform in size and population and named after some river, mountain, or other natural feature. A map of contemporary France still shows the *départements*.

The National Assembly next undertook a reorganization of the Church. It ordered that all Church lands should be declared national property, broken up into small lots, and sold to the peasants at a low price. By way of partial indemnity, the government agreed to pay fixed salaries to the clergy. All appointments to ecclesiastical positions were taken from the hands of king and pope and placed in the hands of the people. The electors of a *département* chose their bishop, and those of a district their *curé*. The National Assembly also suppressed the monasteries, but undertook to pension the monks and nuns.

Ecclesiastical legislation

AN ASSIGNAT

The desperate condition of the finances led to the adoption of a desperate remedy. The National Assembly passed a decree authorizing the issue of notes to the value of four hundred million francs on the security of the former Church lands. To emphasize this security the title of *assignats* was given to the notes. If the issue of *assignats* could have been restricted, as Mirabeau desired, to less than the value of the property pledged to pay for them, they might have been a safe means of raising a revenue; but the continued needs of the treasury led to their multiplication in enormous quantities. Then followed the inevitable consequences of

The assignats

paper money inflation. Gold and silver disappeared from circulation, while prices rose so high that the time came when it needed a basket of *assignats* to buy a pair of boots. The *assignats* in the end became practically worthless. The finances of the government, instead of being bettered by this resort to paper money, were left in a worse state than before.

The National Assembly gave to France in 1791 the written constitution which had been promised in the "Tennis-Court Oath."[1] The constitution established a legislative assembly of a single chamber, with wide powers over every branch of the government. The hereditary monarchy was retained, but it was a monarchy in little more than name. The king could not dissolve the legislature, and he had only a "suspensive veto" of its measures. A bill passed by three successive legislatures became a law even without his consent. Mirabeau wished to accord the king greater authority, but the National Assembly distrusted Louis XVI as a possible traitor to the Revolution and took every precaution to render him harmless. The distrust which the *bourgeois* framers of the constitution felt toward the lower classes was shown by the clause limiting the privilege of voting to those who paid taxes equivalent to at least three days' wages. Almost one-half of the citizens, some of them peasants but most of them artisans, were thus excluded from the franchise.

The Constitution of 1791

The National Assembly prefixed to the constitution a Declaration of the Rights of Man. This memorable document, which shows Rousseau's influence[2] in almost every line, formed a comprehensive statement of the principles underlying the Revolution. "Men," it affirmed, "are born free and remain free and equal in rights. Social distinctions may be founded only upon the general good. The aim of all political association is the preservation of the natural and imprescriptible rights of man. These rights are liberty, property, security, and resistance to oppression. The

Declaration of the Rights of Man

[1] Hence the National Assembly is also called the Constituent Assembly.

[2] See page 291.

principle of all sovereignty resides essentially in the nation. No body or individual may exercise any authority which does not proceed directly from the nation. Liberty consists in the freedom to do everything which injures no one else; hence the exercise of the natural rights of each man has no limits except those which assure to the other members of the society the enjoyment of the same rights. These limits can be determined only by law. Law can prohibit only such actions as are hurtful to society. Nothing may be prevented which is not forbidden by law, and no one may be forced to do anything not provided for by law. Law is the expression of the public will. Every citizen has a right to participate personally, or through his representative, in its formation. It must be the same for all, whether it protects or punishes."

Contents of the Declaration

From these general principles the framers of the Declaration went on to enumerate the rights of man, rights which for the most part had been ignored or violated under the Old Régime. All persons, it was said, shall be equally eligible to all dignities, public positions, and occupations, according to their abilities. No person shall be arrested or imprisoned except according to law. Any one accused of wrongdoing shall be presumed innocent until he is adjudged guilty. Every citizen may freely speak, write, and print his opinions, including his religious views, subject only to responsibility for the abuse of this freedom. All the citizens have the right to decide what taxes shall be paid and how they are to be used. No one shall be deprived of his property, except for public purposes, and then only after indemnification. These clauses of the Declaration reappeared in the constitutions framed in France and other Continental countries during the nineteenth century. The document, as a whole, should be compared with the English Bill of Rights and the first ten amendments to the American Constitution.

77. The First French Republic, 1792

The first phase of the French Revolution was now ended. Up to this point it has appeared rather as a reformation, which

abolished the Old Régime and substituted a limited monarchy for absolutism and divine right. Many men believed that under the new constitution France would henceforth enjoy the blessings of peace and prosperity. They were quickly undeceived. The French people, unfortunately, lacked all training in the difficult art of self-government. Between their political incapacity and the opposition of the reactionaries and the radicals, the revolutionary movement drifted into its second and more violent phase, which was marked by the establishment of a republic.

Phases of the Revolution

The reactionaries consisted, in part, of nobles who had hastily quitted the country upon the outbreak of the Revolution. Their emigration continued for several years, until thousands of voluntary exiles (*émigrés*) had gathered along the northern and eastern frontier of France. Headed by the king's two brothers, the count of Provence [1] and the count of Artois,[2] they kept up an unceasing intrigue against the Revolution and even organized a little army to recover by force their titles, privileges, and property.

The émigrés

Had the reactionaries included only the *émigrés* beyond the borders, they might not have proved very troublesome. But they found support in France. The Constitution of 1791 had made the clergy state officials, elected by the people and paid by the government. Such an arrangement could not be acceptable to sincere Roman Catholics, because it separated the Church from papal control. The pope, who had already protested against the confiscation of Church property and the dissolution of the monasteries, forbade the clergy to take the oath of fidelity to the new constitution. Nearly all the bishops and perhaps two-thirds of the *curés* obeyed him; these were called the non-juring clergy. Until this time the parish priests had generally supported the revolutionary movement. They now turned against it, carrying with them their peasant flocks. The Roman Catholic Church,

The non-juring clergy

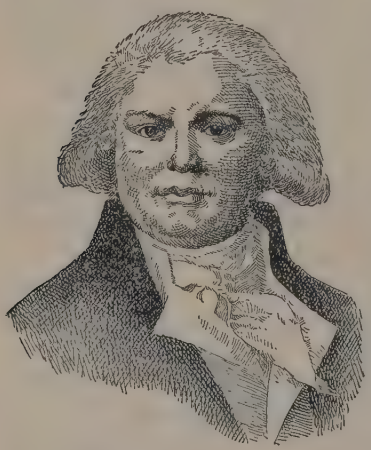
[1] Afterwards Louis XVIII (1814–1824).

[2] Afterwards Charles X (1824–1830).

with all its spiritual influence, was henceforth arrayed against the French Revolution.

To Louis XVI, practically a prisoner in the Tuileries, the new order of things was most distasteful. The constitution, soon to be put into effect, seemed to him a violation of his rights as a monarch, while the treatment of the clergy deeply offended him as a Christian. As long as Mirabeau lived, that statesman had always been able to dissuade the king from seeking foreign help, but Mirabeau's premature death deprived him of his only wise adviser. Louis's opposition to the revolutionists was strengthened by Marie Antoinette, who keenly felt the degradation of her position.

Opposition of Louis XVI and Marie Antoinette



DANTON

Presumably a portrait by J. L. David, painted either in 1792 or 1793. In the possession of Dr. Robinet.

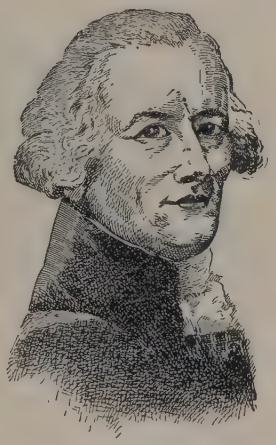
The king and queen finally resolved to escape by flight. Disguising themselves, Marie Antoinette as a Russian lady and Louis as her valet, they drove away in the evening from the Tuileries and made straight for the eastern frontier. But Louis exposed himself needlessly on the way; recognition followed; and at Varennes, near the border, excited crowds stopped the royal fugitives and turned them back to Paris. This ill-starred adventure greatly weakened the loyalty of the French people for Louis XVI, while Marie Antoinette, the "Austrian woman," became more detested than ever.

Flight of the king and queen, June 20–21, 1791

The radicals

Besides the reactionaries who opposed the Revolution, there were the radicals who thought that it had not gone far enough. The radicals secured their chief fol-

lowing among the poverty-stricken workingmen of the cities, those without property and with no steady employment. Of all classes in France, the urban proletariat[1] seemed to have gained the least by the Revolution. No chance of future betterment lay before them, for the *bourgeois* Constitution of 1791 expressly provided that only tax-payers could vote or hold public office. The proletariat might well believe that, in spite of all high-sounding phrases about the "rights of man," they had merely exchanged one set of masters for another, the rule of the privileged classes for that of the *bourgeoisie*.



ROBESPIERRE

A reputed portrait by J. B. Greuze, in the possession of Lord Rosebery.

Radical propaganda

The radical movement naturally centered in Paris, the brain and nerve center of France. It was fostered by inflammatory newspapers such as Marat's *The Friend of the People*,[2] which agitated for a popular uprising against the government, by the bitter speeches of popular orators, and especially by numerous political clubs. The control of these clubs lay largely in the hands of young lawyers, who embraced the cause of the masses and soon became as hostile to the *bourgeoisie* as to the aristocracy. The famous Jacobin Club, so named from a former monastery of the Jacobin monks where its meetings were held, had hundreds of branches throughout France, all engaged in radical propaganda.

Danton and Robespierre

The leaders of the Jacobin Club included two men who were destined to influence profoundly the subsequent course of the Revolution. One was Danton, who sprang from the middle class. Highly cultivated, a successful advocate at the bar, Danton with his loud voice and forcible

[1] See page 281 and note 1.

[2] *L'Ami du Peuple.*

gestures could arouse his audience to wild enthusiasm. The other was Robespierre, also a middle-class lawyer with democratic sympathies. This austere, precise little man, whose youth had been passed in poverty, early became a disciple of Rousseau and the oracle of the Jacobins. Mirabeau once prophesied of Robespierre that he would "go far; he believes all that he says." We shall soon see how far he went.

THE LION OF LUCERNE

This celebrated work at Lucerne in Switzerland was designed by the Danish sculptor Bertel Thorwaldsen and was dedicated in 1821. It represents a dying lion, which, pierced by a lance, still guards with its paw the Bourbon lilies. The figure is hewn out of the natural sandstone. The monument commemorates the officers and men of the Swiss Guard who were slain in 1792, while defending the Tuileries against the Parisian mob.

War with Austria and Prussia, April, 1792

A new influence began at this point to affect the course of the French Revolution. Continental monarchs, however "enlightened," felt no sympathy for a popular movement which threatened the stability of their own thrones. If absolutism and divine right were overthrown in France, they might before long be overthrown in Austria and Prussia. The Austrian emperor, a brother of Marie Antoinette, now joined with the Prussian king in a statement to the effect that the restoration of the old monarchy in France formed an object of "common interest to all sovereigns of Europe." The two rulers also

agreed to prepare their armies for active service abroad. Their announced intention to suppress the Revolution by force provoked the French people into a declaration of war. Though directed only at the Austrian emperor, it also brought his Prussian ally into the field against France.

The French began the contest with immense enthusiasm. They regarded themselves as armed apostles to spread the gospel of freedom throughout Europe. But their troops, poorly organized and disciplined, suffered severe reverses, one result of which was further to exasperate public opinion against the monarchy. Suspicion pointed to Louis XVI and Marie Antoinette as the traitors who were secretly revealing the French plan of campaign to the enemies of France. Suspicion passed into hatred, when the allied commander-in-chief, as he led his army across the frontier, issued a proclamation threatening Paris with destruction if the slightest harm befell the royal family. At this juncture the Jacobins under Danton organized an uprising of the Parisian proletariat. The mob stormed the Tuileries, massacred the Swiss Guard, and compelled the Legislative Assembly to suspend the king from office. A new assembly, to be called the National Convention, was summoned to prepare another constitution for France.

The uprising of August 10, 1792

Then followed the next scene in the bloody drama. The Commune of Paris, now controlled by the Jacobins, emptied the prisons of suspected royalists and butchered them without mercy. More than one thousand persons perished in the "September massacres." Shortly afterwards the National Convention held its first meetings and by a unanimous vote decreed the abolition of the monarchy. All public documents were henceforth to be dated from September 22, 1792, the beginning of "the first year of the French Republic."

Proclamation of the republic, September 22, 1792

78. The National Convention, 1792–1795

The National Convention contained nearly eight hundred members, all republicans, but republicans of diverse shades of

opinion. One group was that of the Girondists, so-called because its leaders came from the *département* of the Gironde. The Girondists represented largely the *bourgeoisie;* they desired a speedy return to law and order. Opposite them sat the far more radical and far more resolute group of Jacobins, who leaned for support upon the turbulent populace of Paris. The majority of the delegates belonged to neither party and voted now on one side and now on the other. Eventually, however, they fell under Jacobin domination.

Parties in the National Convention

LOUIS XVI, MARIE ANTOINETTE, AND THE DAUPHIN
After a painting by P. Sauvage.

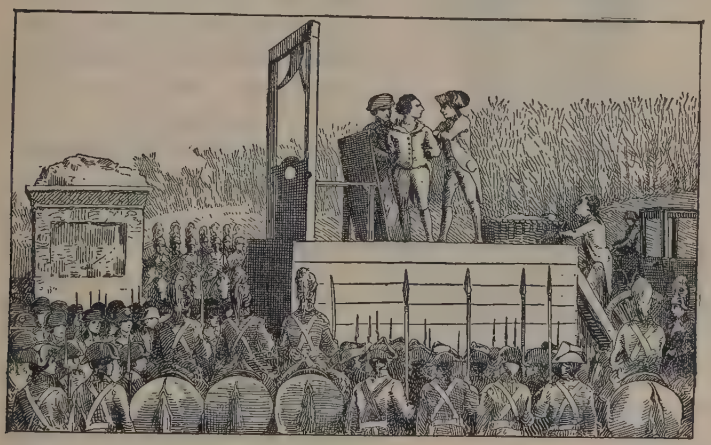
The feud between the two parties broke out in the first days of the National Convention. The Jacobins clamored for the death of Louis XVI as a traitor; most of the Girondists, less convinced of the king's guilt, would have spared his life. Mob influence carried through the assembly, by a small majority, the vote which sent "Citizen Louis Capet" to the guillotine. The king's accusers did not have the evidence, which we now possess, proving that he had been in constant commu-

Trial and execution of Louis XVI, 1793

nication with the foreign invaders. His execution was a political measure. "Louis must die," urged Robespierre, "that the country may live." Danton, railing against the enemies of France, could now declare, "We have thrown them as gage of battle the head of a king."

Meanwhile, the tide of foreign invasion receded rapidly. Two days before the inauguration of the republic the French stayed the advance of the allies at Valmy, scarcely a hundred miles from Paris. The battle of Valmy was a small affair, but it first gave confidence to the revolutionary armies and nerved them for further re-

First Coalition against France, 1793



EXECUTION OF LOUIS XVI
After a contemporary print.

sistance. The French now took the offensive and invaded the Austrian Netherlands. Fired by these successes, the National Convention offered the aid of France to all nations which were striving after freedom; in other words, it proposed to propagate the Revolution by force of arms throughout Europe. This was a blow in the face to autocratic rulers and privileged classes everywhere. After the execution of Louis XVI Austria, Prussia, Great Britain, Holland, Spain, and

Sardinia leagued together in the First Coalition to overthrow republican France.

The republic at the same time was threatened by domestic insurrection. The peasants of La Vendée, a district to the south of the lower Loire, were royalists in feeling and deeply devoted to Roman Catholicism. When an attempt was made to draft them as soldiers, they refused to serve and broke out in open rebellion.[1] The important naval station of Toulon, a royalist center, surrendered to the British. A tremor of revolt also ran through the great cities of Lyons, Marseilles, and Bordeaux, whose *bourgeoisie* resented the radicalism of the Parisian proletariat.

Domestic insurrection

LAZARE CARNOT

The peril to the republic, without and within, showed the need of a strong central government. The National Convention met this need by selecting twelve of its members to serve as a Committee of Public Safety, in which at first Danton, and later Robespierre, was the leading figure. The committee received almost unlimited authority over the life and property of every one in France. It proceeded to enforce a general levy or conscription, which placed all males of military age at the service of the armies. This earliest of draft laws ran as follows: "The young men shall go to fight; married men shall forge weapons and transport supplies; the women shall make tents and uniforms or serve in the hospitals; the children shall make lint; the old men shall be carried to the public squares to excite the courage

Committee of Public Safety

[1] Read Victor Hugo's novel, *Ninety-Three*, which deals with the insurrection in La Vendée.

of soldiers, hatred of kings, and enthusiasm for the unity of the republic." Carnot, another member of the committee, the "organizer of victory" as he came to be called, drilled and disciplined the new national forces and sent them forth, singing the *Marseillaise*,[1] to battle.

The mercenary troops of old Europe could not resist these citizen-soldiers. Filled with enthusiasm and in overwhelming numbers, they soon carried the war into enemy territory. The First Coalition dissolved under the shock. By the Treaty of Basel in 1795 Prussia ceded her provinces on the west bank of the Rhine to France, which thus secured the "natural boundary" so ardently desired by Louis XIV. During this year Spain and Holland also made peace with France. Holland became the Batavian Republic under French protection.

Treaty of Basel, 1795

The Committee of Public Safety likewise dealt effectively with domestic insurrection. It resorted to a policy of terrorism as a means of suppressing the anti-revolutionary elements. A law was passed which declared "suspect" every noble, every office-holder before the Revolution, every person who had had any dealings with an *émigré*, and every person who could not produce a certificate of citizenship. No one could feel safe under this law. As a wit afterward remarked, all France in those days went about conjugating, "I am suspect, thou art suspect, he is suspect," etc. Special courts were set up in Paris and the provincial cities to try the "suspects" and usually to order them to the guillotine.

Terrorism

France endured the Reign of Terror for over a year.[2] During this time seventeen thousand persons, it has been estimated, were executed under form of law, while many more were massacred without the pretense of a trial. The carnage spread beyond the non-juring clergy and the aristocracy to include the *bourgeoisie* and even many artisans and peasants. Among the distinguished victims

Reign of Terror, 1793–1794

[1] A patriotic song, the words and music of which were composed in 1792 by Rouget de Lisle.

[2] Read Dickens's novel, *The Tale of Two Cities*, the scenes of which are laid in London and Paris during the revolutionary era.

at Paris, besides Marie Antoinette, were the sister of Louis XVI, the duke of Orléans (a member of the royal house who had intrigued to get himself raised to the throne), and the principal Girondist leaders. Then the Terror began to consume its own authors. Danton, who had wearied of the bloodshed and counseled moderation, suffered death. "Show my head to the people," he said to the executioner, "they do not see the like every day." The fanatical Robespierre now became the virtual dictator of France. He continued the slaughter for a few months until his enemies in the National Convention secured the upper hand, and hurried him without trial to the death to which he had sent so many of his fellow-citizens.

Robespierre's execution ended the Reign of Terror. The policy of terrorism, however effective in crushing the enemies of the republic, had long since been perverted to party and personal ends. The inevitable reaction against Jacobin tyranny followed. The *bourgeoisie* gained control of the National Convention, which now resumed its task of preparing a constitution for republican France. The new instrument of government provided for a legislature of two chambers and vested the executive authority in a Directory of five members, with most of the powers of the former Committee of Public Safety.

The Constitution of 1795

Before the constitution went into effect, Paris became the scene of another mob outburst. Royalists and radicals joined forces and advanced to the attack of the Tuileries, where the National Convention was sitting. Here the rioters met such a cannonade of grape shot that they fled precipitately, leaving many of their number dead in the streets. The man who most distinguished himself as the defender of law and order was the young artillery general, Napoleon Bonaparte.

Napoleon and the National Convention

79. The Directory, 1795–1799

Napoleon Bonaparte was born at Ajaccio, Corsica, in 1769, only a year after that island became a French possession. He was the second son of an Italian lawyer of noble birth

REVOLUTIONARY FRANCE AND ITALY

but decayed fortunes. Napoleon attended a preparatory school in France and went through the ordinary curriculum with credit, showed proficiency in mathematics, and devoted much of his leisure to reading history. After a brief military training in Paris, he entered an artillery regiment, thus realizing his boyish desire to be a soldier. He was then a youth of sixteen years, poor, friendless, and without family influence.

Early life of Napoleon

Napoleon's Birthplace, Ajaccio

Napoleon took a keen interest in the reform movement then stirring France. A devoted admirer of Rousseau's philosophy, he hated all privileges, all aristocracy, and for a time, at least, he became a Jacobin. The Revolution gave him his first opportunities. He commanded the artillery which compelled the British to evacuate Toulon in 1793 and two years later he helped defend the National Convention against the Parisian mob. Shortly afterwards Carnot, who divined Napoleon's genius, persuaded his colleagues on the Directory to intrust the young man with the command of the French army in Italy.

Rise of Napoleon

When the Directory assumed office, France still numbered Great Britain, Sardinia, and Austria among her foes. Great Britain could not be assailed, because of the weakness of the French navy, but the other two countries offered fronts open to attack through northern Italy. Napoleon's army, small and shabbily equipped, seemed a weak instrument for so formidable a task. But to the "Little Corporal," as his men nicknamed him, all things were possible.

Napoleon in Italy, 1796–1797

"Soldiers," he cried, "I desire to lead you into the most fertile plains in the world. Rich provinces and great cities will be in your power; you will find there honor, glory, and wealth. Soldiers of Italy, will you be wanting in courage and constancy?" Napoleon did not find them wanting in anything. His brilliant strategy first separated the Sardinians from their Austrian allies. The king of Sardinia then purchased peace by the cession of Savoy and Nice to France. After another year of fighting, which turned the Austrians out of northern Italy and brought the French to within eighty miles of Vienna, the Hapsburg emperor also stooped to make terms with this ever-victorious republican general.

NAPOLEON'S EGYPTIAN AND SYRIAN CAMPAIGNS

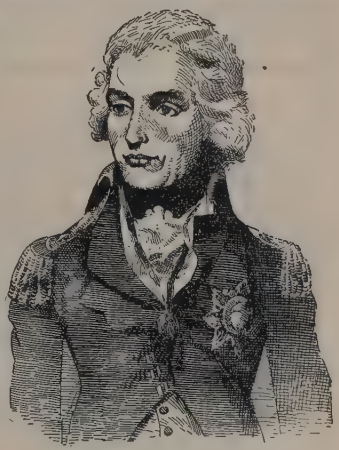
Austria ceded to France the Austrian Netherlands, which had already been occupied by the republican armies, and agreed to the annexation by France of the Germanic lands west of the Rhine. She also recognized the independence of the Cisalpine Republic, one of Napoleon's creations in northern Italy. In return for these concessions, Austria received most of the Venetian territories conquered by Napoleon, including a valuable sea-coast along the Adriatic. France likewise profited by this Italian settlement, for both the Cisalpine Republic and the tiny Ligurian Republic (Genoa and the adjacent district) were under French influence.

Treaty of Campo Formio, 1797

Great Britain now remained the only country to contest

French supremacy in Europe. Napoleon determined to strike at her through her Oriental possessions. It was necessary, first of all, to wrest Egypt from the Ottoman Turks, for, as Napoleon never tired of asserting, "the power that is master of Egypt is master of India." Napoleon easily persuaded the Directory to give him the command of a strong expedition, which set sail from Toulon and reached Alexandria in safety. The French marched across the blazing sands to Cairo and defeated the Turkish troops in a battle near the pyramids. "Soldiers," proclaimed Napoleon, "from the summit of these pyramids forty centuries look down upon you." The Egyptian compaign had hardly begun before Lord Nelson, the British admiral, destroyed most of the French fleet in Abukir Bay, thus severing Napoleon's communications with Europe. The French soon overran Egypt, but met a severe check when they carried the war into Syria. Faced by the collapse of his Oriental dreams, Napoleon left his army to its fate and escaped to France. Here his highly colored reports of victories caused him to be greeted as the conqueror of the East.

Napoleon in Egypt, 1798–1799



HORATIO, LORD NELSON
National Portrait Gallery, London

A painting by L. F. Abbot of Nelson in 1797. He wears on his breast the Order of the Bath and round his neck, suspended by a ribbon, the gold medal for the battle of St. Vincent.

Affairs had gone badly for France during Napoleon's absence in Egypt. Great Britain, Austria, and Russia formed the Second Coalition against the republic, put large armies in the field, and drove the French from Italy. This misfortune sapped the authority of the Directory and turned the eyes of most Frenchmen to Napoleon as the one man who could guarantee victory

Overthrow of the Directory, 1799

abroad and order at home. He took advantage of the situation to plan with Sieyès and other politicians a *coup d'état*.[1] Three of the five directors were induced to resign; the other two were placed under military guard; and the bayonets of Napoleon's devoted soldiers forced the assemblies to dissolve. Napoleon now became virtually master of France. "I found the crown of France lying on the ground," he once remarked, "and I picked it up with the sword." Thus, within little more than ten years from the meeting of the Estates-General at Versailles, popular government gave way to the rule of one man. Autocracy supplanted democracy.

80. The Revolutionary Era

Principles of 1789

The French Revolution differed sharply from previous revolutionary movements. The Puritan Revolution and the "Glorious Revolution" in England were carried out by men of the upper and middle classes, who wished to limit the royal power and establish the supremacy of Parliament. Even the American Revolution was guided by conservative statesmen, at least as solicitous for the rights of property as for the rights of man. The French Revolution also began as mainly a middle-class movement, but it soon reached the lower classes. Their principles found expression in the famous motto, "Liberty, Equality, Fraternity."

"Liberty"

"Liberty" meant the recognition of popular sovereignty. Government was to be no longer the privilege of a divine-right ruler, however benevolent or "enlightened"; henceforth, it was to be conducted constitutionally in accordance with the will of the people. Since the first constitution (that of 1791) the French have often changed their form of government, but they have always had a written constitution. The revolutionists also proclaimed with enthusiasm the natural "rights of man" to freedom of thought, of speech, of publication, of worship, and of the ownership of property.

[1] French for a "stroke of state."

"Equality" meant the abolition of privilege. The Revolution made all citizens equal before the law. It opened to every one the positions in the civil service, the Church, and the army. It abolished serfdom and manorial dues, thus destroying the last vestiges of feudalism. It suppressed the guilds, thus releasing industry from medieval shackles. It canceled all exemptions from taxation and substituted a new fiscal system which taxed men according to their means. As we shall learn, Napoleon retained and extended these achievements of the Revolution.

"Equality"

Seal of the French Republic, 1792–1804

"Fraternity" meant a new consciousness of human brotherhood. The revolutionists set out to make France a better place for every one to live in. This fraternal feeling inspired all ranks and classes of the people. It led to a great outburst of patriotic and national sentiment, which enabled the French, singlehanded, to withstand Europe in arms.

"Fraternity"

The principles of 1789 were not confined to France. The revolutionary soldiers passed from land to land bringing in their train the overthrow of the Old Régime. The effect was profound in the Netherlands, in western Germany, and in northern Italy, countries where the masses of the people had grievances and aspirations like those of the French. During the nineteenth century the revolutionary spirit permeated other European countries, resulting everywhere in a demand for the abolition of the established privileges of wealth, birth, and social position. Such has been the service of France as a liberator.

The spirit of 1789

Studies

1. "The principal cause of the ruin of royalty in France was the lack of a King." What does this statement mean? 2. Why is July 14 observed by the French as the "birthday of the nation"? 3. Compare the *assignats* with the paper money issued by the Confederacy during the Civil War. 4. How did the Austrians and Prussians justify their invasion of France in 1792? 5. Read a translation of the *Marseillaise* and compare the sentiments expressed in it with those of *Hail Columbia* and *The Star Spangled Banner*. 6. In your opinion was there greater or less justification for the execution of Louis XVI than of Charles I? 7. In what sense is the word Jacobin now frequently used? 8. What excuse can be offered for the policy of terrorism adopted by the Jacobins in 1793? 9. Prepare a class-room report dealing with the story of Charlotte Corday. 10. Mention four conspicuous instances of mob action during the French Revolution. Why are mobs so often cruel and bloodthirsty? 11. Why may Napoleon's *coup d'état* in 1799 be regarded as the final scene of the French Revolution? 12. "England is the mother of liberty, France the mother of equality." Explain this statement. 13. "The two most striking and important events in the history of the eighteenth century are the establishment of the United States of America and the outbreak of the French Revolution." Justify this statement.

A French Dragoon of the Time of the Consulate

After a contemporary water-color.

CHAPTER XI

NAPOLEON BONAPARTE, 1799–1815[1]

81. The Consulate, 1799–1804

THE history of France, from the overthrow of the Directory to the battle of Waterloo, forms the biography of Napoleon Bonaparte. At the time of the *coup d'état* of 1799 he was not quite thirty years old. A foreign observer has left the following pen picture of the youthful Napoleon: "He is about five feet seven inches tall, delicately and gracefully made; his hair a dark brown crop, thin and lank; his complexion smooth, pale, and sallow; his eyes gray but very animated; his eyebrows light brown, thin and projecting. All his features, particularly his mouth and nose, are fine, sharply defined, and expressive beyond description. The true expression of his countenance is a pleasing melancholy, which, when he speaks, relaxes into the most agreeable and gracious smile you can imagine. He speaks deliberately but very fluently, with particular emphasis, and in rather a low tone of voice."

Napoleon's personality

Napoleon's extraordinary abilities enabled him to take full advantage of the chances which the revolutionary era offered to men of talent and ambition. Endowed with a splendid constitution, he could toil eighteen hours a day and go without sleep for long periods. His mind kept its keenness after the most exhausting activities on the battle-field or in the council room. Sober in his habits, with little taste for art, letters, or the refinements of life, he lived only for work — the work of a warrior and a statesman. His military genius is admitted; he has no superiors, perhaps no equals, among the great captains of modern times. His ca-

Character of Napoleon

[1] Webster, *Readings in Medieval and Modern History*, chapter xxxii, "Letters and Proclamations of Napoleon"; chapter xxxiii, "Napoleon."

pacity as a civil ruler seems even more remarkable, considering how completely he reconstructed western and central Europe in sixteen years. Nor did his character lack an attractive side: he made devoted friends and could talk good-humoredly and frankly with all sorts of people. Yet no one can follow Napoleon's career, especially in its later phases, without being impressed with the man's selfishness, untruthfulness, and unscrupulousness. An insatiable appetite for war and the belief in the necessity of dazzling France by brilliant victories drove him into constant acts of aggression and rendered him callous to human suffering. He could call a Russian battle-field, heaped with bodies of friend and foe, the "finest" he had ever seen, a remark which contrasts with Wellington's words after Waterloo that "next to a battle lost the greatest misery is a battle gained." Throughout Napoleon's career, he appears as essentially an adventurer, skirting uneasily the edge of ruin and destined to fall at last a victim to the enemies he himself had made.

NAPOLEON'S MOTHER

A portrait in the room of Napoleon's birth at Ajaccio.

After the *coup d'état* Napoleon proceeded to frame a constitution. It placed the executive power in the hands of three consuls, appointed for ten years. The First Consul (Napoleon himself) was really supreme. To him belonged the command of the army and navy, the right of naming and dismissing all the chief state officials, and the proposal of all new laws. Napoleon then submitted the constitution to the people for ratification. The popular vote, known as a plebiscite,[1] showed an overwhelming majority in favor of the new government.

The Constitution of 1799

[1] From the Latin *plebiscitum*, referring to a vote or decree of the common people (*plebs*).

NAPOLEON AS FIRST CONSUL

After the painting by J.-B. Isabey.
Versailles Gallery.

"1807"

A picture by Meissonier of the battle of Friedland. Napoleon is shown seated on his famous white charger and surrounded by his staff. As the regiments advance to the attack, each horseman rises in the saddle and salutes the emperor. Soldiers of the "Old Guard," wearing the grenadier caps and white breeches, are seen drawn up in the rear. *Metropolitan Museum of Art, New York.*

The French accepted Napoleon's rule the more readily because of the threatening war-clouds in Italy and on the Rhine. Though Russia soon withdrew from the Second Coalition, Austria and Great Britain remained in arms against France. Napoleon now led his troops across the Alps by the pass of the Great St. Bernard, a feat rivaling Hannibal's performance, descended unexpectedly into Italy in the rear of the Austrian forces, and won a new triumph at Marengo. A few months later the French general Moreau inflicted a crushing defeat on the Austrians at Hohenlinden in Bavaria.[1] These reverses brought the Hapsburg emperor to his knees, and he agreed to a peace which reaffirmed the provisions of the Treaty of Campo Formio.[2]

Marengo and Hohenlinden, 1800

Great Britain and France now took steps to end the long war between them. The one country was all-powerful on the sea, the other on the land; but neither could strike a vital blow at the other. The Peace of Amiens, which they concluded, proved to be a truce rather than a peace. However, it enabled the First Consul to drop the sword for a time and take up the less spectacular but more enduring work of administration. He soon showed himself as great in statecraft as in war.

Peace of Amiens, 1802

One of Napoleon's most important measures put the local government of all France directly under his control. He placed a prefect over every *département* and a subprefect over every subdivision of a *département*. Even the mayors of the larger towns and cities owed their positions to the First Consul. This arrangement enabled Napoleon to make his will felt promptly throughout the length and breadth of France. It survived Napoleon's downfall and still continues to be the French system of local government.

France centralized

The same desire for unity and precision led Napoleon to complete the codification of French law. Before the Revolution nearly three hundred different local codes had existed in France, giving force to Voltaire's remark that a traveler there changed his laws as often as he

The law codified

[1] Read Campbell's poem, *Hohenlinden*.

[2] Treaty of Lunéville (1801).

changed his post-horses. The National Convention began the work of replacing this multiplicity of laws — Frankish, Roman, feudal, and royal — by a single uniform code. Napoleon and the commission of legal experts over whose deliberations he presided finished the task after about four years' labor. The *Code Napoléon* embodied many revolutionary principles, such as civil equality, religious toleration, and jury trial, and carried these principles into the foreign lands conquered by the French. It is still the prevailing law of both France and Belgium, while the codes of modern Holland, Italy, and Portugal have taken it as a model.

The Church restored

Napoleon also healed the religious schism which had divided France since the Revolution. Though not himself an adherent of any form of Christianity, he felt the necessity of conciliating the many French Catholics who remained faithful to Rome. An agreement, called the Concordat, was now drawn up, providing for the restoration of Catholicism as the state religion. Napoleon reserved to himself the appointment of bishops and archbishops, and the pope gave up all claims to the confiscated property of the Church. The Concordat formed a singularly politic measure, for by confirming the peasantry in their possession of the ecclesiastical lands it bound up their interests with those of Napoleon. It continued to regulate the relations between France and the Papacy for more than a century.[1]

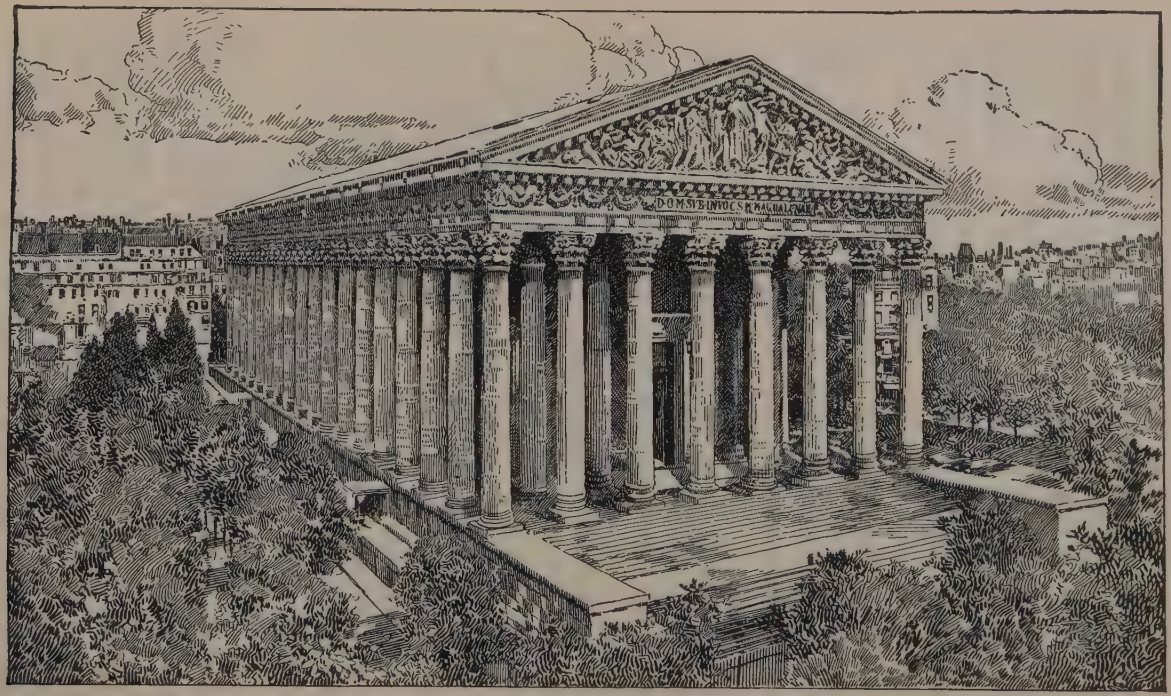
The émigrés repatriated

Nor did Napoleon forget the *émigrés*. A law was soon passed extending amnesty to the nobles who had fled from France. More than forty thousand families now returned to their native land.

Napoleon's other measures

A long list might be drawn up of the other measures which exhibit Napoleon's qualities as a statesman. Thus he founded the Bank of France, still one of the leading financial institutions of the world. He established a system of higher education to take the place of the colleges and universities which had been abolished by a decree of the National Convention. He planned and partly carried out

[1] From 1802 to 1905.



La Madeleine

Begun by Napoleon in 1806; not completed until 1842. The emperor planned it as a "hall of fame" to commemorate his victories, but it now serves as a church. The structure has the lines of a Roman temple, with a colonnade of Corinthian pillars.

a vast network of canals and inland waterways, thus improving the means of communication and trade throughout France. Like the Roman emperors, he constructed a system of military highways radiating from the capital city to the remotest *départements*, in addition to two wonderful Alpine roads connecting France with Italy. Like the Romans, also, he had a taste for building, and many of the monuments which make Paris so splendid a city belong to the Napoleonic era.

82. The First French Empire, 1804

Napoleon, emperor of the French

Napoleon's victories in war and his policies in peace gained for him the support of all Frenchmen except the Jacobins, who would not admit that the Revolution had ended, and the royalists, who wished to restore the Bourbon monarchy. When in 1802 the people were asked to vote on the question, "Shall Napoleon Bonaparte be consul for life?" the answering "ayes" numbered over three and a half millions, the "noes" only a few thousands. Another plebiscite in 1804 decided, by an equally large majority, that the First Consul should become emperor. Before the high altar of Notre Dame Cathedral at Paris and in the presence of the pope, the modern Charlemagne placed a golden laurel wreath upon his own head and assumed the title of Napoleon I, emperor of the French.

Napoleon, king of Italy

Napoleon also proceeded to erect a monarchy on Italian soil. At Milan he crowned himself king, as Charlemagne had done, with the "Iron Crown" of the Lombards. North Italy thus became practically an annex of France.

The imperial glory

The emperor-king set up again at the Tuileries the etiquette and ceremonial of the Old Régime. Already he had established the Legion of Honor to reward those who most industriously served him. Now he created a nobility. His relatives and ministers became kings, princes, dukes, and counts; his ablest generals became marshals of France. "My titles," Napoleon declared, "are a sort of civic crown; one can win them through one's own efforts."

France, intoxicated with the imperial glory, forgot that she had come under the rule of one man. What hostile criticism Frenchmen might have leveled against Napoleon was stifled by the secret police, who arrested and imprisoned hundreds of persons obnoxious to the emperor. The censorship of books and newspapers prevented any expression of public opinion. Many journals were suppressed; the remainder were allowed to publish only articles approved by the government. Even the schools and churches were made pillars of the new order, and Napoleon went so far as to prepare a catechism setting forth the duty of good Christians to love, respect, and obey their emperor. In all these ways he established a despotism as unqualified as that of Louis XIV.

The imperial despotism

CROSS OF THE LEGION OF HONOR

Instituted by Napoleon in 1802; given to both soldiers and civilians for distinguished services to the state. In the present order of the French Republic the symbolical head of the republic appears in the center, and a laurel wreath replaces the imperial crown.

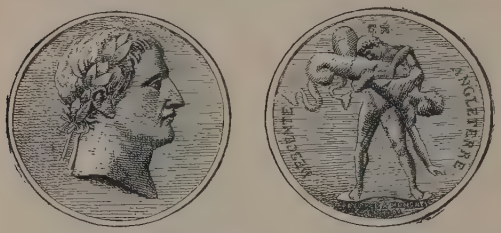
83. Napoleon at War with Europe, 1805–1807

The wars of the French Revolution, beginning in a conflict between democracy and monarchy, gradually became a means of gratifying the French lust for territorial expansion. With the advent of Napoleon they appeared still more clearly as wars of conquest. The "successor of Charlemagne," who carried the Roman eagles on his military standards, dreamed of universal sovereignty. Supreme in France, he would also be supreme in Europe. No lasting peace was possible with such a man, unless the European nations submitted tamely to his will. They would not submit, and as a result the Continent for ten years was drenched with blood.

The Napoleonic wars

Austria in the revolutionary wars had been the chief opponent of France; in the wars of Napoleon Great Britain became his most persistent and relentless enemy. That island-kingdom, which had defeated the grandiose schemes of Philip II and Louis XIV, could never consent to the creation of a French empire restricting her trade in the profitable markets of the Continent and dominating western Europe. To preserve the European balance of power Great Britain formed coalition after coalition, using her money, her ships, and her soldiers unsparingly, and at length successfully, in the effort.

Hostility of Great Britain to Napoleon



A Napoleonic Medal

A medal prepared by Napoleon to be issued at London in honor of his expected triumph. It represents Hercules overthrowing a merman and bears the legend *Frappée à Londres* — "Struck in London" — *1804*. After a cast in the British Museum.

The prime minister of Great Britain during this period was William Pitt, the Younger, son of the earl of Chatham. He became head of the state when only twenty-four, shortly after the downfall of Lord North's ministry.[1] As an orator few have rivaled him; as a parliamentary leader he has no rival. Disdaining the bribery which had been employed since the days of Walpole, Pitt ruled by the sheer power of his intellect and the fascination of his personality. His life was pure and honest in an age when immorality and intrigue were all too common; and he loved his country with a devotion to which he sacrificed health and fortune.

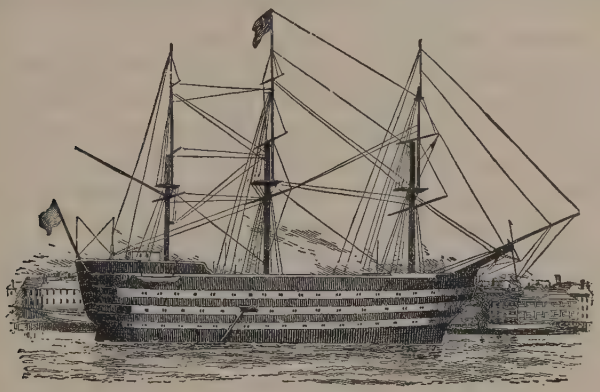
Ministry of William Pitt, 1783–1801, 1804–1806

The Peace of Amiens lasted little over a year. The war between Great Britain and France being then renewed, Napoleon made every preparation to overthrow "perfidious Albion." He collected an army and a flotilla

Trafalgar, 1805

[1] See page 224.

of flat-bottomed boats near Boulogne, apparently intending to "jump the ditch," as he called the Channel, and lead his soldiers to London. If this was ever his intention, it became impossible of accomplishment after Lord Nelson's victory off Cape Trafalgar, over the combined French and Spanish fleets. Nelson received a mortal wound in the action, but he died with the



THE "VICTORY"

Nelson's flagship at the battle of Trafalgar. Now moored in Portsmouth Harbor, England.

knowledge that his country would henceforth remain in undisputed control of the seas. "England," said Pitt, "has saved herself by her own energy, and will, I trust, save Europe by her example."

Meanwhile, Pitt had succeeded in forming the Third Coalition against France and Napoleon. Great Britain, Austria, Russia, and Sweden were the four allied powers. Before they could strike a blow, Napoleon suddenly broke up his camp at Boulogne, moved swiftly into Germany, captured an entire Austrian army at Ulm, and entered Vienna. These successes were followed by the celebrated battle of Austerlitz, a masterpiece of strategy, at which Napoleon with inferior numbers shattered the Austro-Russian forces. With his capital lost, his territory occupied, his armies destroyed, the Hapsburg emperor once more consented to an ignominious peace. The Venetian lands, which Austria

Ulm and Austerlitz, 1805

acquired by the Treaty of Campo Formio, were now added to Napoleon's kingdom of Italy.[1]

Jena, 1806, and Friedland, 1807

Prussia was next to feel the mailed fist of Napoleon. Relying upon the help of Saxony and Russia, she attempted to stay his victorious progress, only to suffer the loss of two armies in the double battle of Jena. Napoleon soon entered Berlin in triumph. Russia still remained formidable, until a bad defeat at Friedland induced the tsar, Alexander I, to make overtures for peace.

Peace of Tilsit, 1807

The two emperors met at Tilsit on the river Niemen, near the frontier between Prussia and Russia, and concluded a bargain for the partition of Europe. The tsar agreed to throw over his allies and allow Napoleon a free hand in the West. Napoleon permitted the tsar to seize Finland from Sweden and promised French aid in expelling the Turks from Europe. When, however, the tsar asked for the Turkish capital, Napoleon exclaimed, "Constantinople! Never! That would be the mastery of the world."

The Napoleonic armies

No sovereign in modern times was ever so powerful as Napoleon after Tilsit. If he had failed on the sea, he had won complete success on the land, and the triumphs of Ulm, of Austerlitz, of Jena, and of Friedland hid from view the disaster of Trafalgar. Napoleon's victories are explained only in part by his mastery of the art of war. The emperor inherited the splendid citizen-soldiery of the revolutionary era, a whole nation under arms and filled with the idea of carrying "Liberty, Equality, Fraternity" throughout Europe. The hired troops of the absolute monarchies, on the contrary, had little enthusiasm for their cause. Slight wonder that in conflict with them Napoleon's legions always gained the day.

84. Napoleon's Reorganization of Europe

Napoleon at the zenith of his power ruled directly over a large part of western Europe. Even before the Peace of Tilsit he had added Genoa (the Ligurian Republic) and Piedmont

[1] Treaty of Pressburg (1805).

First French Empire. 1812 A.D.

to France and had converted Holland (the former Batavian Republic) into a dependent kingdom. Holland subsequently became a part of the Napoleonic Empire. After Tilsit he annexed the German coast as far as Denmark, what remained of the States of the Church, including Rome, and the Illyrian provinces east of Italy. Imperial France touched the Baltic on the north, and on the south faced the Adriatic.

Imperial France

Beyond the empire stood a belt of dependencies. Northern Italy, including the former Cisalpine Republic and the ancient possessions of Venice, formed a separate kingdom, held by Napoleon himself and administered by his stepson, Eugène Beauharnais.[1] His brother Joseph governed the kingdom of Naples in central and southern Italy. Switzerland, enlarged by six new cantons added to the thirteen original cantons, became a vassal republic which Napoleon ruled with the title of Mediator. The sections of Polish territory seized by Prussia and Austria in the second and third partitions, went to form the Grand Duchy of Warsaw; not, however, under a Polish ruler, but under Napoleon's new ally, the king of Saxony. "Roll up the map of Europe," William Pitt had cried, when he heard the news of Austerlitz, "it will not be wanted these ten years."

Dependent states

Napoleon's power in central Europe rested upon the Confederation of the Rhine. This organization included Bavaria, Baden, and Würtemberg, and in its final form all the German states except Austria and Prussia. As sovereign of the league, under the title of Protector, Napoleon disposed of its military forces and conducted its foreign relations.

Confederation of the Rhine, 1806

The formation of the Confederation of the Rhine gave the death-blow to the Holy Roman Empire. That venerable institution, which went back to Otto the Great and Charlemagne, had by this time become little more than a name, an empty form, a shadow without substance. When Napoleon declared that

Extinction of the Holy Roman Empire, 1806

[1] Son of Napoleon's wife, Joséphine, by her first husband.

he would recognize it no longer, the Hapsburg ruler laid down the crown and contented himself with the title of emperor of Austria.

Many other European states not actually dependent on Napoleon were allied with him. They included Spain, which subsequently became a dependency, Denmark, Norway, the kingdom of Prussia, now reduced to about a half of its former size, and the weakened Austrian Empire. But Great Britain, mistress of the seas, still held out against the master of the Continent.

Allied states

85. The Continental System

The failure of Napoleon's Egyptian expedition prevented him from striking at Great Britain through her possessions in the East. His hope of invading her vanished at Trafalgar. His efforts to destroy her commerce by sending out innumerable privateers to prey upon it were foiled when British merchantmen sailed in convoys under the protection of ships of war. One alternative remained. If British manufacturers could be deprived of their Continental markets and British ship-owners and sailors of their carrying trade, it might be possible to compel the "nation of shopkeepers" [1] to make peace with him on his own terms.

Economic warfare

Napoleon's successes on land enabled him to devise a scheme for the strangulation of Great Britain. By two decrees issued at Berlin and Milan he placed that country under a commercial interdict. British ships and goods were to be excluded from France and her dependencies, while neutral vessels sailing from any British port were to be seized by French warships or privateers.

Berlin and Milan decrees, 1806–1807

Napoleon endeavored to enforce these decrees in the French Empire, the Italian kingdom, the Confederation of the Rhine, and the Grand Duchy of Warsaw. Russia and Prussia agreed to enforce them by the terms of the Peace of Tilsit. At one time or another all the

Extent of the Continental System

[1] A Napoleonic phrase.

states of Europe, except Great Britain and Turkey, came into the Continental System.

The British government replied to the Berlin and Milan decrees by various Orders in Council, which forbade neutral ships from trading with France, her dependencies, or her allies under penalty of capture. As Napoleon sought to exclude Great Britain from Continental markets, so that country sought to shut out Napoleon from maritime commerce. The sea-power of Great Britain made it possible for her to blockade the Continent with some degree of effectiveness.

The Orders in Council

Napoleon, on the other hand, could not make the Continental System really effective. British merchants always managed to smuggle large quantities of goods into the European countries. Some goods which the French absolutely required, such as woolens, had to be admitted into France under special license. Napoleon clad his own armies in British cloth, and his soldiers marched in British shoes. Though Great Britain suffered acutely from the emperor's interference with her trade, the Continental nations, deprived of needed manufactures and colonial wares, suffered still more. The result was to excite great bitterness against Napoleon. Nevertheless, he persisted in the attempt to humble his only rival by this economic warfare; as we shall now see, he staked his empire on the success of the Continental System.

Failure of the Continental System

86. Revolt of the Nations, 1808–1814

Napoleon hitherto had been fighting kings, not nations; and he had been uniformly victorious. A change came after Tilsit. The emperor's treatment of the conquered peoples aroused the utmost hatred for him. They saw their sons dragged away by the conscription to fight and die in his armies; they paid excessive war taxes; above all, they had to endure the high prices resulting from the Continental System. The time was near at hand when these burdens could no longer be borne. Hence-

National resistance to Napoleon

forth our chief interest is with the various nations which one after another rose against their common oppressor. France in arms made Napoleon; Europe in arms overthrew him.

Napoleon's interference in Portugal and Spain, 1807–1808

The little kingdom of Portugal had been linked to Great Britain by close commercial ties for more than a century. When the Portuguese refused to close their ports to British ships, as Napoleon demanded, he sent an army into the country, seized Lisbon, and drove the royal family to Brazil. Napoleon then proceeded to deprive his friend and ally, Ferdinand VII, of the Spanish crown and gave it to his brother Joseph. These high-handed acts enabled the emperor to extend the Continental System over the Iberian peninsula. What he gained there was more than offset elsewhere. As soon as the Portuguese government removed to Brazil, it opened that country to British trade, and after the Spanish monarchy fell, its colonies revolted from the mother country and admitted British goods. Napoleon thus unwittingly created lucrative markets in Latin America for his rival.

THE DUKE OF WELLINGTON

After a painting by Goya in the possession of the duke of Leeds.

Revolt of Portugal and Spain

Furthermore, Napoleon found that he had stirred up a veritable hornet's nest in the peninsula. The Portuguese and Spanish declined to accept their French overlords and everywhere rose in revolt. Great Britain took a lively interest in the situation and sent an army commanded by Sir Arthur Wellesley, better known by his subsequent title of duke of Wellington, to help the insurgents. The French were soon driven out of Portugal, nor could they maintain themselves securely in Spain. The Peninsular War,

as it is called, dragged on for years, consuming men and money which Napoleon might have employed much more profitably elsewhere.

Encouraged by the Spanish resistance, Austria tried to throw off the Napoleonic yoke. The effort proved to be premature, though Austria fighting this time alone gave Napoleon far more trouble than when previously she had the help of allies. The French again occupied Vienna and won the hard battle of Wagram. The peace which followed cost the Hapsburg ruler additional territory and a heavy indemnity. It also cost him his daughter Maria Louisa, whose hand Napoleon demanded in marriage after divorcing Joséphine. When Maria Louisa presented the emperor with a son and heir, the so-called "king of Rome," it must have seemed to him that his dynasty was at length firmly fixed on the French throne.[1]

The Austrian revolt, 1809

JOSÉPHINE

After a pencil drawing retouched in water color. Made in 1798 by J. B. Isabey. In the possession of E. Taigny.

Europe, except in Spain and on the seas, now enjoyed peace for two years. It was a brief breathing-spell, while Napoleon made ready for a new and much more terrible contest. Until

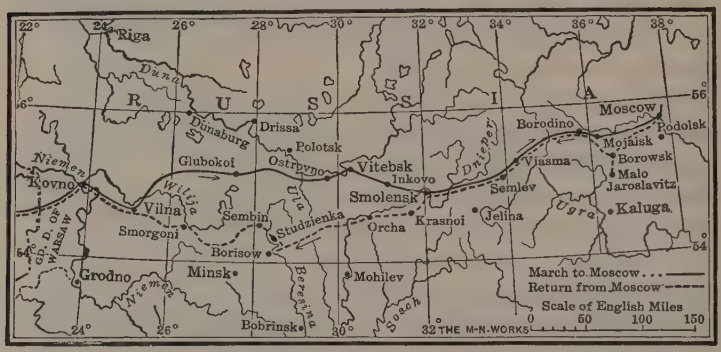
[1] THE BONAPARTES

Charles Bonaparte m. Letitia Ramolino

- Joseph — king of Naples, 1806–1808; king of Spain, 1808–1813
- Napoleon I
  - Napoleon II, "king of Rome," d. 1832
- Louis — king of Holland, 1806–1810
  - Napoleon III
    - Napoleon, d. 1879
- Caroline — m. Murat, king of Naples, 1808–1815
- Jerome — king of Westphalia, 1807–1813

now he had induced Tsar Alexander to adhere to the Continental System, which pressed with special severity upon Russia, an agricultural country needing large imports of British manufactures. The tsar at length decided to break his shackles and renew trade relations between Russia and Great Britain. This decision left Napoleon no choice but go to war with him, if the Continental System was to be preserved. Rather than give up the hope of humbling

War with Russia, 1812



NAPOLEON'S RUSSIAN CAMPAIGN

Great Britain, the emperor, against the advice of his wisest counselors, threw down the gage of battle.

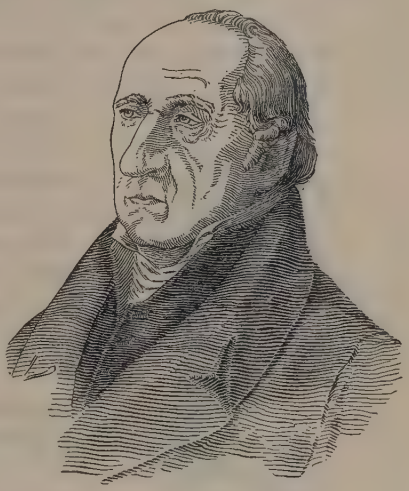
More than half a million men formed the Grand Army with which Napoleon began the invasion of Russia. About one-third of the soldiers were French; the rest were Germans, Italians, Poles, and other subjects of the empire. All western Europe had banded together under the leadership of one man to overthrow the only great state remaining unconquered on the Continent. The Russians offered at first little resistance, and the Grand Army reached the river Borodino before they turned at bay. A murderous conflict followed; the French won; and eight days later Napoleon entered the ancient capital of Moscow.

The advance to Moscow

But to occupy Moscow was not to conquer Russia. The French did not dare to follow their enemy farther into the wilderness, nor could they remain for the winter in Moscow,

owing to the scarcity of food for men and horses. The Russian peasants burned their grain and fodder rather than supply the French. Moreover, a great fire, perhaps kindled by the Russians themselves, had destroyed much of the city just as the French entered it. Napoleon lingered for a month among the ruins of Moscow in the belief that Alexander would open negotiations for peace. But no message came from the tsar, and at last the emperor gave orders for the retreat. The troops had to return by the way they had come, through a country eaten bare of supplies. Famine, cold, desertions, and the raids of the Cossacks thinned their ranks; at last only twenty thousand fugitives recrossed the Niemen. The Grand Army had ceased to exist.[1]

The retreat from Moscow



Baron vom Stein

This disaster, unparalleled in military annals, thrilled Prussia with hopes of freedom. Thanks to the labors of Baron vom Stein, Chancellor Hardenberg, and other statesmen, it was a new Prussia which confronted Napoleon. Serfdom had been declared illegal, all occupations and professions had been opened to noble, commoner, and peasant alike, a state system of both elementary and secondary education had been established, and the army had been reorganized on the basis of military service for all classes. These reforms gave to Prussia many of the advantages of the French Revolution and aroused a patriotic spirit which united the entire nation in a common love of country.

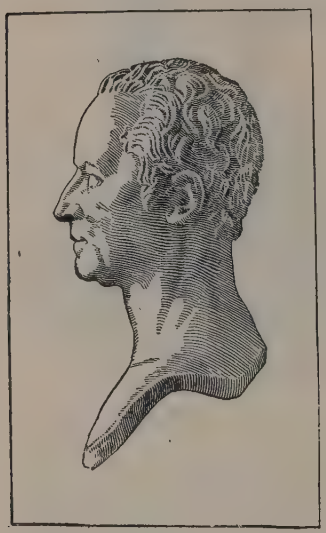
The Prussian revolt, 1813

[1] Tolstoy's *War and Peace* deals with Napoleon's campaigns in Russia.

Prussia now joined forces with Russia and began the War of Liberation.

Yet so vast were Napoleon's resources that he was soon able to recruit a new army and take the offensive in Germany. He gained fresh victories, but could not follow them up because of the lack of cavalry. Austria then threw in her lot with the allies. Outnumbered and outmaneuvered, Napoleon fell back on Leipzig, and there in a three days' "Battle of the Nations" — a battle in which every European people except the Turks was represented — suffered a sanguinary defeat. All Germany now turned against him, and he withdrew his shattered troops across the Rhine.

Battle of Leipzig, 1813



HARDENBERG
After a bust by Rauch.

The allies would have made peace with Napoleon, had he been willing to give up his claims to the overlordship of Europe. They offered him the Rhine, the Alps, the Pyrenees, and the Atlantic as the French boundaries, but he refused to accept the territorial limits that would have satisfied the ambitions of Louis XIV. Napoleon's campaigns during the early months of 1814 against three armies, each one larger than his own, are justly celebrated; they postponed but did not prevent his overthrow. After Paris surrendered, the emperor gave up the useless struggle and signed an act of abdication renouncing for himself and for his heirs the thrones of France and Italy.[1]

Abdication of Napoleon, 1814

[1] Read Byron's *Ode to Napoleon Buonaparte*, written in 1814, after the emperor's abdication.

87. Downfall of Napoleon, 1814–1815

The allies treated Napoleon with marked consideration. They allowed him to retain the title of emperor and assigned him the island of Elba as a possession. He spent ten months in this tiny principality and ruled it with all his accustomed energy, meanwhile keeping a watchful eye upon the course of events in France.

Napoleon at Elba

Suddenly Europe heard with amazement that Napoleon had returned to France and that Louis XVIII,[1] his Bourbon successor on the throne, was once more an exile. The enthusiastic welcome which greeted the emperor, as he advanced to Paris with only a small bodyguard, bore witness at once to the magnetism of his personality and to the unpopularity of the Bourbons. In a manifesto to the French people he declared that henceforth he would renounce war and conquest and would govern as a constitutional sovereign. The allies, however, refused to accept the restoration of one whom they very properly described as the "enemy and destroyer of the world's peace." The four great powers, Great Britain, Austria, Prussia, and Russia, proclaimed Napoleon an outlaw and set their armies in motion toward France.

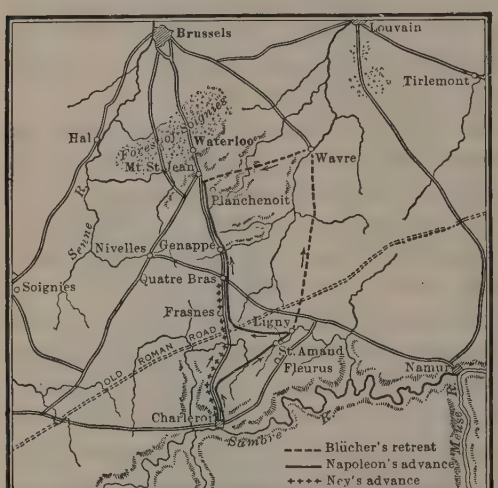
The "Hundred Days," March–June, 1815

The allied armies lay in two groups behind the Sambre River. A mixed force of British, Belgians, Dutch, and Germans, under the duke of Wellington, covered Brussels, and the Prussians, under Blücher, held a position farther east. Napoleon hoped to overcome them separately before they could concentrate their overwhelming numbers. He did beat Blücher at Ligny, compelling the Prussian general to retreat northward to Wavre. Blücher's defeat made it necessary for Wellington to fall back on a strong defensive position near Waterloo, twelve miles south of Brussels. Here, all through a hot Sunday in June, Napoleon hurled his infantry and cavalry in fierce

Battle of Waterloo, June 18, 1815

[1] See page 313 and note 1. The young son of Louis XVI ("Louis XVII") is supposed to have died in a revolutionary prison in 1795.

but ineffectual attacks against the "Iron Duke's" lines. The timely arrival of the Prussians from Wavre — Napoleon supposed that they had retreated toward Namur — compelled the French to fight a double battle; their situation soon became desperate; and even a last charge of the Old Guard failed to restore the day. Repulse soon turned into a rout, and Napoleon's splendid army broke up into a mob of fugitives. The emperor himself escaped with difficulty to Paris.[1]



Theater of the Waterloo Campaign

Napoleon again abdicated and to avoid the Prussians (who had orders to take him dead or alive) threw himself upon the generosity of the British government. Then followed exile to the desolate rock of St. Helena, where the fallen emperor lived for six years, without wife or child, but surrounded by a few intimate friends to whom he dictated his memoirs. After his death, at the early age of fifty-two, France forgot the sufferings he had caused her and remembered only his glory. Poets, painters, and singers created out of the "Little Corporal" a purely legendary figure. The world-despot appeared as the heir of the Revolution, a crusader for liberty, a foe of tyrants; and in this guise he found his way irresistibly to the hearts of the French people.

The Napoleonic legend

[1] Victor Hugo has a famous though inaccurate description of the battle in *Les Misérables* (part ii, book i). See also Byron's lines, "The Eve of Waterloo," in *Childe Harold* (canto iii, stanzas 21–28).

After Napoleon's first abdication in 1814 the victorious allies concluded with France a peace which stripped her of all her conquests. After the emperor's second abdication in 1815 the allied powers deemed it necessary to impose still more humiliating conditions of peace. Though France was not dismembered, that country was reduced to substantially her old boundaries before the Revolution.[1] Furthermore, she had to restore all the works of art which Napoleon had pilfered from other countries, to pay an indemnity of seven hundred million francs, and for five years to support a foreign army in her chief fortresses. It is noteworthy, however, that the desire of Prussia for the French provinces of Alsace and Lorraine was not at this time gratified.

Treaties of Paris

88. The Napoleonic Era

It remains to sum up the work of Napoleon. In general, he continued the work of the Revolution. If he destroyed the republic, he did not restore the Old Régime. His empire rested upon the Revolutionary principles of "Liberty, Equality, Fraternity."

Napoleon and France

Despot though Napoleon was, his plebiscites[2] show that he paid at least lip homage to the new idea of popular sovereignty, of government resting upon the consent of the governed. It is certain that during both the consulate and the empire he enjoyed the support of the great majority of Frenchmen. On the other hand, he did not respect all the "rights of man" which the revolutionists had proclaimed with such enthusiasm. Freedom of thought and freedom of worship prevailed under Napoleon, but the emperor allowed neither free speech nor a free press.

"Liberty" under Napoleon

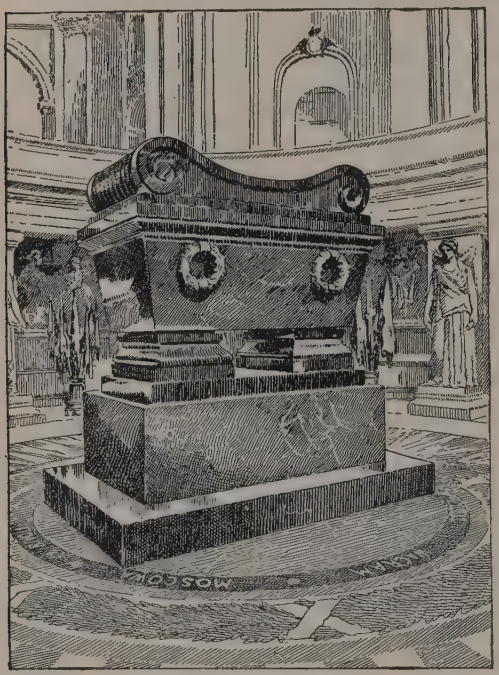
Equality before the law and equality of opportunity Napoleon fully recognized. The "career open to talents" formed for him the heart and core of democracy. Citizens of all ranks might freely compete for offices, honors, wealth, and other distinctions. Under such a system there would still be rich and poor, learned and ignorant,

"Equality" under Napoleon

[1] See the map facing page 322.

[2] See pages 330 and 334.

industrious and shiftless, but each one would enjoy the fullest opportunity for self-development and advancement. Most Frenchmen were content to accept Napoleon's rule largely because he insisted upon equal rights for all men.



THE TOMB OF NAPOLEON

In 1840 Napoleon's body was removed from St. Helena, taken with great pomp to Paris, and deposited in a sarcophagus of red Finland granite under the gilded dome of the Hôtel des Invalides. Twelve colossal statues, representing the chief victories of Napoleon, surround the tomb, and between the figures are battleflags captured at Austerlitz. Two of the emperor's brothers are buried in adjoining chapels.

"Fraternity" under Napoleon

The patriotic and national sentiments evoked during the Revolution only became stronger when the republic passed into the empire. Those tremendous campaigns which carried the Napoleonic armies from Paris to Moscow and from Berlin and Warsaw to Naples and Madrid dazzled the eyes of most Frenchmen. They willingly exchanged the tricolor for the imperial eagles and, as we have just seen, they supported Napoleon to the last. After Waterloo there lingered many memories of victorious battles in foreign lands, of conquered countries, plundered cities, subjected peoples. The French, in consequence, developed a spirit of overweening pride and a belief in their natural superi-

ority which only disappeared after the Franco-German War, several generations later. Such was the fruit of militarism.

Napoleon and Europe

Napoleon was an agent of the Revolution, not only in France, but in all the lands subject to French influence. Wherever the *Code Napoléon* went, the forms of feudalism and serfdom, class privileges, and social inequalities vanished. The trained officials sent out by the emperor reformed finances, made roads, built bridges, improved harbors, encouraged trade, fostered education. For the first time the inhabitants of the Netherlands, most of the German states, Switzerland, Italy, and Spain discovered what it meant to have an efficient government. Could Napoleon's activity have ended here, he would have earned the unmixed gratitude of mankind. As it was, even the blessings of his rule could not reconcile the subject nations to his despotism. They rose against it, and their successful struggle for independence ushered in a new period of European history.

Studies

1. Locate on the map all the Napoleonic battle-fields mentioned in this chapter. 2. Write a character sketch (400 words) of Napoleon Bonaparte, based partly on the statements in the text and partly on your outside reading. 3. How did the First Consul, to use his own words, "close" the French Revolution and "consolidate" its results? 4. Why was Napoleon styled by the lawyers a new Justinian and by the clergy a new Constantine? 5. Is it correct to call Napoleon an "enlightened" despot? Is it incorrect to call him a "usurper"? 6. Compare as to results the battle of Trafalgar with the destruction of the Spanish Armada. 7. Show that the political weakness of central Europe in Napoleon's day contributed to his success as a conqueror. 8. How did the Continental System help to bring about the downfall of Napoleon? 9. How did the physical features of Spain facilitate the Spanish resistance to Napoleon? 10. Why is Waterloo included among the world's "decisive battles"? Would it have been equally decisive if Napoleon, and not Wellington, had won? 11. It has been said of Napoleon that "he was as great as a man can be without virtue." Does this seem to be a fair judgment? 12. Account for the comparatively mild treatment of France by the allies, after Napoleon's downfall.

CHAPTER XII

RECONSTRUCTION AND REACTION, 1815–1830

89. The Congress of Vienna

THE close of the revolutionary and Napoleonic era found Europe in confusion. The French Revolution had destroyed the Old Régime in France, and Napoleon Bonaparte had given new rulers or new boundaries to almost every Continental state. While Napoleon was still at Elba, a great international congress met at Vienna to reorganize the European state-system and remake the European map. The powers represented were Great Britain, Austria, Prussia, Russia, Sweden, Portugal, Spain, and France.

Purpose of the congress

The congress formed a brilliant assemblage of emperors, kings, princes of every rank, and titled diplomats. A single drawing room sometimes held Alexander I, tsar of Russia; Francis I, emperor of Austria; Frederick William III, king of Prussia; the duke of Wellington, the German patriot Stein, the Austrian minister Metternich, and the French representative Talleyrand. The final decision as to all questions obviously lay with the four powers whose alliance had overthrown Napoleon, until Talleyrand's skillful management secured the admission of France to their councils as a fifth great power. When the wheels of diplomacy had been well oiled by banquets, balls, and other festivities, the monarchs and their advisers undertook the reconstruction of Europe.

Membership of the congress

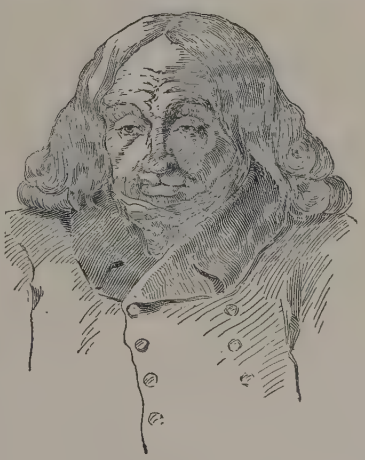
The work of the congress was done privately by committees of plenipotentiaries, who made over certain earlier agreements of the victorious allies into treaties. The latter were then combined (June, 1815) into a single document called the Final Act of the Congress of Vienna. It is quite inaccurate, however,

to ascribe to the Vienna Congress responsibility for all the settlements reached by the allies in 1814-1815.

90. Restoration of the Dynasties

The allies who dictated the settlements were opposed, naturally enough, to all the democratic or liberal sentiments which had been awakened in Europe since 1789. The French Revolution appeared to them as merely a revolt against authority, a revolt which had overturned the social order, destroyed property, sacrificed countless human lives, and introduced confusion everywhere. Blind to the true significance of the demand for liberty and equality, they sought to bring back the Old Régime of absolutism, privilege, and divine right. Their ideal was Europe before 1789.

Attitude toward democracy



TALLEYRAND

A picture by Ary Scheffer showing Talleyrand in old age.

One feature of the settlements was the restoration of old dynasties. Spokesmen for the allies asserted the right of European monarchs to govern their former subjects, irrespective of the latter's wishes or of the claims of the rulers whom Napoleon had established. Talleyrand dignified this principle under the name of "legitimacy."

"Legitimacy"

Louis XVIII,[1] who now went back to France, was an old gentleman of sixty, and so fat and gouty that he could not sit a horse. This cool, cautious Bourbon wanted to enjoy his power in peace; like Charles II of England, he had no desire to set out on his travels again. He

Louis XVIII in France

[1] See page 347 and note 1.

realized that to most Frenchmen absolutism had become intolerable and that the main results of the revolutionary and Napoleonic era must be preserved. Accordingly, Louis XVIII retained such institutions as the Code, the Concordat, the Bank of France, and the imperial nobility, and renewed a charter or constitution, which he had granted in 1814. It guaranteed freedom of the press, religious toleration, and the inviolability of sales of land made during the Revolution. The restoration of the Bourbon monarchy did not mean the restoration of the Old Régime in France.

Ferdinand VII in Spain

Ferdinand VII,[1] another king whom Napoleon had dethroned, went back to Spain. This Spanish Bourbon had no sooner recovered his crown than he began to sweep away all traces of revolutionary ideas and institutions introduced by the French. A constitution, modeled upon that of France, which the Spaniards had framed in 1812, was suppressed, because it denied divine right and asserted the sovereignty of the people. The old privileges of the clergy and nobility were reaffirmed. The censorship of books and newspapers, the prohibition of public meetings, and the imprisonment or banishment of all those suspected of liberal opinions showed clearly the reactionary character of the new government.

Restorations in Italy

Still other dispossessed monarchs profited by the principle of "legitimacy." The king of Sardinia regained Nice, Savoy, and Piedmont on the mainland, together with the former republic of Genoa as an additional protection against France. "Republics are no longer fashionable," said the tsar to a Genoese deputation which had objected to this arbitrary arrangement. Sicily and Naples were again combined to form the kingdom of the Two Sicilies under a Bourbon ruler. The pope, whom Napoleon had deprived of temporal sovereignty, recovered the States of the Church. All these restored princes governed without constitutions or parliaments. They used their absolute power to get rid of every trace of the revolutionary era, even uprooting French

[1] See page 342.

THE CONGRESS OF VIENNA, 1814–1815

The ten figures in the foreground are, in order: Wellington, Hardenberg (seated), Löwenhjelm, Noailles, Metternich, Nesselrode, Palmella (seated), Castlereagh (seated), Talleyrand (seated), and Stackelberg (seated).

PRINCE METTERNICH

After the painting by Sir Thomas Lawrence.
In the possession of Prince Richard Metternich-Winneburg.

plants in the botanical gardens and abolishing vaccination and gas street lamps as nefarious French innovations. The restorations in Italy, as in Spain, spelled reaction.

91. Territorial Readjustments

As we have already learned, the fraternal or patriotic feelings so deeply stirred during the revolutionary and Napoleonic era put renewed emphasis on the rights of nationalities. Patriots in one country after another boldly declared that no nation, however small or weak, should be governed by foreigners. Every nation, on the contrary, ought to be free to choose its own form of government and manage its own affairs. To such "submerged nationalities" as the Belgians, Bohemians, Poles, and Magyars this principle held out the hope of independence; to the Italians and the Germans it held out the hope of unification. Like the "enlightened despots," however, the allied rulers and diplomats willfully disregarded all national aspirations. They treated the European peoples as so many pawns in the game of diplomacy.

Attitude toward nationalism

In general, the territorial readjustments made by the treaties were intended to compensate the great powers for their exertions against Napoleon. Land hunger thus influenced the settlements of 1814-15, as it had influenced the treaties of Utrecht and Westphalia. The principle of "compensations," however, had to be modified by the assumed necessity of strengthening the neighbors of France against future aggression on the part of that country. The total result was a new map of Europe.

"Compensations"

The oldest and most successful of Napoleon's enemies, Great Britain, did not desire Continental territories. She received colonial possessions as payment, including Helgoland in the North Sea and Malta and the Ionian Islands in the Mediterranean. Great Britain also retained the former Dutch colonies of Ceylon, Cape Colony, and Guiana, which had been appropriated during the Napoleonic wars.[1]

Great Britain

[1] A part of Guiana (Surinam) was kept by the Dutch.

A new state arose across the Channel. In order to compensate the Dutch for the loss of their possessions overseas and at the same time to set up a strong bulwark against France, the powers united the Austrian Netherlands — modern Belgium — with Holland. The kingdom of the Netherlands, as thus established, was under the rule of the house of Orange. This arbitrary union of Belgians and Dutch soon led to acute friction between the two peoples.

Kingdom of the Netherlands

As compensation for the cession of the Austrian Netherlands, Austria secured Lombardy and Venetia, the two richest provinces in Italy. She also received the Illyrian lands along the Adriatic coast, part of Poland (Galicia), and all the other territory taken from her by Napoleon. Austria was now a state geographically compact, centering round the middle Danube and controlling North Italy and the northern Adriatic.

Austria

The Prussian kingdom, whose limits had been so reduced by Napoleon, recovered part of Poland (Posen), took over from Sweden what remained of western Pomerania, and absorbed about half of Saxony, a state which had been one of Napoleon's allies. Prussia also annexed much additional territory on the lower Rhine. The inhabitants of the Rhine provinces had little enough affinity with the Prussians, and after twenty years' union with France did not willingly change their nationality. In spite of these territorial acquisitions, Prussia remained almost as unformed as in the eighteenth century, with her dominions scattered throughout Germany.

Prussia

Another great power widened its boundaries at this time. Russia kept Finland, taken from Sweden in 1809, and Bessarabia, wrested from Turkey in 1812. In addition, Russia obtained the lion's share of Napoleon's Grand Duchy of Warsaw. Tsar Alexander proceeded to set up a kingdom of Poland, with himself as king.

Russia

For the cession of western Pomerania to Prussia and of Finland to Russia, Sweden found compensation in taking

EUROPE
AFTER THE CONGRESS OF VIENNA
1815 A.D.
Scale of Miles
0 100 200 300 400
German Confederation
THE M-N-WORKS
Longitude East 5° from Greenwich
ATLANTIC OCEAN
NORTH SEA
BALTIC SEA
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
BLACK SEA
SWEDEN AND NORWAY
RUSSIA
UNITED KINGDOM
SCOTLAND
IRELAND
DENMARK
Copenhagen
Stockholm
Christiania
Berger
Reval
St. Petersburg
Novgorod
Nijni-Novgorod
Moscow
Borodino
Riga
Smolensk
Konigsberg
Friedland
Eylau
Danzig
Memel
Warsaw
POLAND
Kiev
Dnieper
UKRAINE
Ekaterinoslav
Berlin
PRUSSIA
GERMAN CONFEDERATION
HANOVER
HOLSTEIN
SCHLESWIG
HELGOLAND (Br.)
Posen
Breslau
Leipzig
Vienna
Austerlitz
Bayreuth
Wagram
Pressburg
AUSTRIAN EMPIRE
Cracow
Lemberg
Dniester
BESSARABIA
Pruth
MOLDAVIA
Kherson
Sea of Azov
Crimea
Sevastopol
Buda
Pesth
HUNGARY
Temesvar
WALLACHIA
Bukharest
Danube
Roumelia
Varna
Constantinople
Adrianople
Scutari
Durazzo
Salonika
Gallipoli
Larissa
Athens
Patras
GREECE
Smyrna
OTTOMAN EMPIRE
Sofia
BULGARIA
SERBIA
Belgrade
BOSNIA
Milan
Trieste
Innsbruck
Munich
Ulm
Strassburg
SWITZERLAND
Hohenlinden
Drave
Save
Lyons
Marengo
Bologna
Florence
Lucca
Nice
Toulon
Marseilles
Toulouse
Bordeaux
Angoulême
Orleans
Tours
Dijon
Rouen
Havre
Lille
Waterloo
NETHERLANDS
Brussels
Paris
Seine
Loire
Rhone
FRANCE
Brest
English Channel
CHANNEL IS.
London
Liverpool
Manchester
Birmingham
Glasgow
Edinburgh
Belfast
Dublin
Limerick
Newcastle
Bay of Biscay
C. Finisterre
Corunna
Bayonne
Oporto
Burgos
Douro
Ebro
Madrid
SPAIN
PORTUGAL
Lisbon
Tagus
Guadalquivir
Seville
Granada
Cadiz
C. Trafalgar
Tangier (Sp.)
Gibraltar (Br.)
Algiers
Valencia
Sardinia
KINGDOM OF SARDINIA
Naples
KINGDOM OF THE TWO SICILIES
Palermo
Reggio
Messina
Rome
PAPAL STATES
G.D. OF TUSCANY
MODENA
PARMA
MONTENEGRO
Scutari
Brindisi
CORFU
Ionian Is.
CRETE (Candia)
RHODES
CYPRUS
Corsica
Elba
Adriatic Sea
Black Forest
Rhine
Meuse
Elbe
Oder
Vistula
Niemen
Dniester
Pruth
Danube
Tagus
Ebro
Douro
Guadalquivir
Drave
Save
Seine
Loire
Rhone
English Channel
Baltic Sea
Gulf of Finland
Sea of Azov
Crimea
Black Sea
Mediterranean Sea
Adriatic Sea
Ionian Sea
Aegean Sea
Bay of Biscay
Atlantic Ocean
North Sea
Irish Sea
Hohenlinden
Waterloo
Marengo
Austerlitz
Wagram
Pressburg
Trafalgar
Navarino
Corfu
Crete
Rhodes
Cyprus
Constantinople
Moscow
St. Petersburg
Vienna
Berlin
Paris
London
Madrid
Rome
Naples
Constantinople
Warsaw
Lisbon
Dublin
Edinburgh
Stockholm
Christiania
Copenhagen
Brussels
Amsterdam
Hanover
Munich
Prague
Budapest
Belgrade
Athens
Smyrna
Sevastopol
Odessa
Kiev
Riga
Reval
Konigsberg
Danzig
Posen
Breslau
Leipzig
Cracow
Lemberg
Bucharest
Sofia
Adrianople
Scutari
Durazzo
Salonika
Gallipoli
Larissa
Patras
Palermo
Messina
Reggio
Brindisi
Naples
Rome
Florence
Milan
Trieste
Innsbruck
Munich
Ulm
Strassburg
Lyons
Marseilles
Toulon
Nice
Genoa
Turin
Bordeaux
Toulouse
Nantes
Brest
Rouen
Lille
Calais
Dover
Portsmouth
Plymouth
Liverpool
Manchester
Birmingham
Glasgow
Edinburgh
Belfast
Dublin
Limerick
Cork
Galway
Aberdeen
Inverness
Oporto
Lisbon
Cadiz
Seville
Granada
Valencia
Barcelona
Madrid
Burgos
Corunna
Bayonne
Tangier
Gibraltar
Algiers
Tunis
Malta
Corsica
Sardinia
Elba
Ionian Islands
Crete
Rhodes
Cyprus
Black Forest
Rhine
Meuse
Elbe
Oder
Vistula
Niemen
Dniester
Pruth
Danube
Tagus
Ebro
Douro
Guadalquivir
Drave
Save
Seine
Loire
Rhone
English Channel
Baltic Sea
Gulf of Finland
Sea of Azov
Crimea
Black Sea
Mediterranean Sea
Adriatic Sea
Ionian Sea
Aegean Sea
Bay of Biscay
Atlantic Ocean
North Sea
Irish Sea
Hohenlinden
Waterloo
Marengo
Austerlitz
Wagram
Pressburg
Trafalgar
Navarino
Corfu
Crete
Rhodes
Cyprus
Constantinople
Moscow
St. Petersburg
Vienna
Berlin
Paris
London
Madrid
Rome
Naples
Constantinople
Warsaw
Lisbon
Dublin
Edinburgh
Stockholm
Christiania
Copenhagen
Brussels
Amsterdam
Hanover
Munich
Prague
Budapest
Belgrade
Athens
Smyrna
Sevastopol
Odessa
Kiev
Riga
Reval
Konigsberg
Danzig
Posen
Breslau
Leipzig
Cracow
Lemberg
Bucharest
Sofia
Adrianople
Scutari
Durazzo
Salonika
Gallipoli
Larissa
Patras
Palermo
Messina
Reggio
Brindisi
Naples
Rome
Florence
Milan
Trieste
Innsbruck
Munich
Ulm
Strassburg
Lyons
Marseilles
Toulon
Nice
Genoa
Turin
Bordeaux
Toulouse
Nantes
Brest
Rouen
Lille
Calais
Dover
Portsmouth
Plymouth
Liverpool
Manchester
Birmingham
Glasgow
Edinburgh
Belfast
Dublin
Limerick
Cork
Galway
Aberdeen
Inverness
Oporto
Lisbon
Cadiz
Seville
Granada
Valencia
Barcelona
Madrid
Burgos
Corunna
Bayonne
Tangier
Gibraltar
Algiers
Tunis
Malta
Corsica
Sardinia
Elba
Ionian Islands
Crete
Rhodes
Cyprus

Norway from Denmark. The only excuse for this action was the former alliance of the Danes with Napoleon, an alliance which had been practically forced upon them. The Norwegians themselves resented the new arrangement, preferring a Danish to a Swedish ruler. Though compelled to submit, they succeeded in keeping their own government, constitution, and laws. Their union with the Swedes lasted just ninety years.

Sweden

The Swiss Confederation, or Switzerland, whose independence had been recognized at the Peace of Westphalia, received its final form at the Congress of Vienna. Three new cantons were added to the nineteen in existence before 1815. The great powers also signed a treaty promising never to declare war against Switzerland or to send troops across the Swiss borders. The little Alpine republic became in this way a neutral buffer state in the heart of Europe.

Switzerland

The settlement of Vienna left Italy a mosaic of nine states.[1] Of these, Sardinia formed an independent kingdom. Lombardy and Venetia were Austrian provinces. Parma, Modena, Tuscany, and Lucca were duchies, all but the last under rulers belonging to the Hapsburg family. Austrian influence also prevailed in the States of the Church and in the Two Sicilies. Thus Austria, a foreign power, fixed its grip upon the Italian peninsula. Italy, in Metternich's contemptuous phrase, was only "a geographical expression."

Disunion of Italy in 1815

Germany after the settlement of Vienna included thirty-eight states and free cities, of which the most extensive were the Austrian Empire and the five kingdoms of Prussia, Bavaria, Saxony, Würtemberg, and Hanover. Stein and his fellow-patriots wished to bring them all into a strongly knit union. This proposal encountered the opposition of Metternich, who feared that a united Germany would not serve Austrian interests. Metternich found support among the German rulers themselves, not one of whom would surrender any particle of his authority. The outcome was the creation of the Germanic Confederation,

Disunion of Germany in 1815

[1] Eleven, if Monaco and San Marino be included. See the map on page 402.

a loose association of sovereign princes with a Diet or assembly presided over by a representative of the Austrian emperor.[1]

The rulers and diplomats did not make a permanent settlement of the affairs of Europe. They failed to satisfy either the democratic or national aspirations of European peoples and so left many troublesome problems unsolved. The political history of the last century is, in fact, largely concerned with the movements toward democracy and nationalism and the consequent changes of territory and government. Nevertheless, rulers and diplomats deserve credit for real accomplishments. They reconciled the claims and desires of the chief states, or at least of the ruling classes. There was now a new alignment of states, with Great Britain and France in the west, Austria and Prussia in the center, and in the east Russia. No one of these great states was strong enough to dominate the others. The outbreak of another international war was thus postponed for the next forty years. Europe entered on a period of profound peace, during which, as we shall learn subsequently, man made rapid progress in almost every field of culture.

Europe after 1815

92. "Metternichismus"

Austria, now the leading Continental state, consisted of more than a score of territories inhabited by uncongenial Germans, Magyars, Slavs, Rumanians, and Italians. To keep them united under a single scepter, the Hapsburgs deliberately repressed all agitation for independence or self-government. The Hapsburgs felt it equally necessary to discourage every popular movement, which, starting in Italy or Germany, might spread like an infection to their own dominions. "My realm," confessed the emperor Francis I, "is like a worm-eaten house; if a part of it is removed, one cannot tell how much will fall." Force of circumstances thus placed Austria at the forefront of the reaction against democracy.

Reactionary Austria

[1] Both the kingdom of Prussia and the Austrian Empire contained territories not included in the confederation. See the map facing page 406.

The spirit of reactionary Austria seemed incarnate in Prince Clemens Metternich. He belonged to an old and distinguished family from the Rhinelands, entered the diplomatic service of Austria, and during the Napoleonic era rose to be the chief representative of the Hapsburg emperor at Paris. An aristocrat to his finger-tips, polished, courtly, tactful, clever, this man soon became the real head of the Austrian government and the most influential diplomat in Europe. To the rule of Napoleon succeeded the rule of Metternich. The German word *Metternichismus* has been coined to express the ideas which he championed and the measures which he enforced.

Metternich

Metternich regarded absolutism and divine right as the pillars of stable government. Democracy, he declared, could only "change daylight into darkest night." All demands for constitutions, parliaments, and representative institutions must consequently be opposed to the uttermost. In order to stamp out the "disease of liberalism," let spies and secret police be multiplied, press and pulpit kept under gag-laws, the universities sharply watched for dangerous teachings, and all agitators exiled, imprisoned, or executed. Such measures of repression seemed quite feasible at a time when the majority of European peoples were ignorant peasants, far removed from public life. Democratic ideas could only find followers among the workingmen of the cities and in the educated *bourgeoisie*, both very small and defenseless when confronted by the powerful forces at the disposal of governments. Metternich, in fact, found little difficulty in establishing his system in Austria. He then proceeded to establish it in the other states of the Germanic Confederation.

The Metternich system

It had seemed for a time that the successful struggle against Napoleon would be followed by the setting up of free political institutions throughout Germany. Frederick William III, the Prussian king, promised his loyal and patriotic subjects a charter, something like that accorded by Louis XVIII to the French. The grand duke of Saxe-Weimar actually granted a written constitution, establishing

Liberalism in Germany

a representative assembly and guaranteeing the equality of all classes before the law. That the liberal movement did not proceed further was largely due to Metternich, who exerted the same reactionary influence over Frederick William III and the other German princes as over his imperial master, Francis I.

German liberalism at this time centered in the universities, where students and teachers had together formed numerous secret societies — *Burschenschaften*. The members adopted a flag of black, red, and gold, the colors of the volunteers during the War of Liberation. Their motto was "Honor, Liberty, Fatherland"; their purpose, agitation for German unity and freedom.

The Burschenschaften

In 1817, the fourth anniversary of the battle of Leipzig and the three-hundredth anniversary of the publication of Luther's theses against indulgences, a celebration by the *Burschenschaften* took place in Saxe-Weimar. The place chosen was the castle of the Wartburg, so memorable in Reformation history. On the evening of the festival some of the more radical spirits gathered around a bonfire and, in imitation of Luther's burning of the papal bull, threw into the flames certain reactionary books, together with such symbols of military tyranny as an officer's baton and a private soldier's pigtail. Metternich regarded these harmless proceedings as the beginning of a revolution. His fears seemed justified when a German spy in the secret pay of Russia was assassinated by a student patriot, and an attempt was made on the life of a government official in Nassau.

The Wartburg Festival

Such outbreaks gave Metternich his cue. Having persuaded the Austrian and Prussian monarchs to summon a conference of the rulers at Carlsbad, he secured their approval of a series of measures intended to quell the spirit of revolt. The Carlsbad Decrees, as afterwards ratified by the Diet of the confederation, dissolved the *Burschenschaften* and prohibited the display of its colors, even in the popular combination of black coats, red waistcoats, and yellow straw hats. Both professors and students were to be expelled

Carlsbad Decrees, 1819

from the universities for unseemly political activity. A rigid press censorship was set up to examine every newspaper, pamphlet, or book before publication and thus to stifle the free expression of opinion. The frightened princes also established a permanent commission for the purpose of keeping track of "revolutionary plots and demagogic associations."

The Carlsbad Decrees signalized the triumph of *Metternichismus* in Germany. Outside of Bavaria, Baden, Würtemberg, and a few other German states, whose rulers conceded constitutions, reaction had full swing. This was notably the case in Prussia, where the weak and timorous Frederick William III docilely followed Austrian leadership. He never kept his promise of a constitution, but began instead a persecution of all liberal thinkers, even of the heroes of the War of Liberation. Prussia thus early appeared as a stronghold of conservatism.

Set-back to German liberalism

93. The Concert of Europe

The states whose coalitions overthrew Napoleon became in 1815 the arbiters of Europe. Great Britain, Austria, Prussia, and Russia renewed their alliance, in order to preserve the dynastic and territorial arrangements made by the Congress of Vienna. In 1818 France under Louis XVIII was admitted into the sacred circle of the alliance. The French, during three years' probation, had fulfilled the obligations imposed upon them by the allies after Waterloo and, as far as appearances went, had extinguished forever their revolutionary fires. These five great powers, as long as they worked in harmony, could enforce their will on all the smaller states. They formed, in effect, a European Concert.

Formation of the Concert

The agreements establishing the Concert pledged its members to the maintenance of "public peace, the tranquillity of states, the inviolability of possessions, and the faith of treaties." High sounding words! Europe in 1815 was not ready for a genuine international league to safeguard the rights of each country, whether big or little. The defects of the Concert were obvious. First, it did not extend to Tur-

Defects of the Concert

key in Europe, whose Christian inhabitants languished under the tyranny of the Sultan. Second, it was dynastic rather than popular in character — a union of sovereigns instead of peoples. Of the five leading states, all but Great Britain were divine-right monarchies. Third, it lacked effective machinery for reconciling the contrary interests, ambitions, and jealousies of the members. The Concert, in short, formed only a distant approach to the ideal of a confederated Europe, of a commonwealth of nations.

Metternich, the leading spirit in the formation of the Concert of Europe, found in it the means of extending his system from the German states to the rest of the Continent.

International congresses

One of the clauses of the treaty of alliance between the powers had provided that they should hold congresses from time to time for the consideration of the measures "most salutary for the repose and prosperity of nations and for the peace of Europe." Four such congresses[1] were convoked by Metternich, whose diplomatic genius turned them into agencies of reaction.

How soon the Concert degenerated from a high court of justice for all peoples into a mere league for the protection of princes against revolution was seen at the Congress of Troppau. Here the sovereigns of Austria, Prussia, and Russia took it upon themselves to act as the policemen of Europe. The protocol, or declaration, signed by them at this time ran as follows: "States which have undergone a change of government due to revolution, the results of which threaten other states, *ipso facto* cease to be members of the European alliance, and remain excluded from it until their situation gives guarantees for legal order and stability. If, owing to such alterations, immediate danger threatens other states, the powers bind themselves, by peaceful means, or if need be by arms, to bring back the guilty state into the bosom of the Great Alliance."

Protocol of Troppau, 1820

The Protocol of Troppau announced a doctrine new to international law. The European autocrats now boldly asserted

[1] Aix-la-Chapelle (1818), Troppau (1820), Laibach (1821), and Verona (1822).

their right, and even their duty, to intervene in the affairs of any country for the suppression of democratic or national movements. France did not sign this outrageous document. Neither did Great Britain. Her statesmen, members of a government which dated from the "Glorious Revolution" of 1688, had now begun to comprehend the real character of the Concert as directed by Metternich, and to see in it a deadly menace to the liberties of Europe. Undaunted by British protests, however, the three eastern powers prepared for armed intervention.

Armed intervention

1820 was a year of revolutions. A widespread uprising in Spain against Ferdinand VII forced that tyrannical monarch to restore the constitution of 1812 and to convene a liberal parliament. An insurrection in Portugal overthrew the regency which had governed there since the removal of the royal family to Brazil during the Napoleonic era.[1] John VI, then reigning in Brazil, returned to Portugal and promised to rule as a constitutional sovereign. Encouraged by these successes, the people of Naples (a part of the kingdom of the Two Sicilies) compelled their Bourbon prince to grant a constitution.

Revolutions of 1820

Metternichismus did not long remain on the defensive. An Austrian army quickly occupied Naples and restored "order" and absolutism. In the reaction which followed the liberal leaders were hurried to the dungeon and the scaffold. Almost at the same time a revolt in the Sardinian kingdom (Piedmont) collapsed under the pressure of eighty thousand Austrian bayonets. Metternich felt well satisfied with his work. "I see the dawn of a better day," he wrote. "Heaven seems to will it that the world shall not be lost."

Revolution suppressed in Italy, 1821

Armed intervention soon registered another triumph. The three eastern powers commissioned France to act as their agent to subdue the turbulent Spaniards. Great Britain protested vigorously against this action and asserted the right of every people to determine

Revolution suppressed in Spain, 1823

[1] See page 342.

its own form of government. Her protests were unheeded. French troops crossed the Pyrenees and put Ferdinand once more on his autocratic throne. The king then proceeded to inaugurate a reign of terror, exiling, imprisoning, and executing liberals by the thousands. It is a sorry chapter in Spanish history.

The sovereigns were now ready to crusade against freedom in Spain's American colonies, which had revolted against the mother land. Both Great Britain and the United States felt thoroughly alarmed at the prospect of European interference in the affairs of the New World. George Canning, the British foreign minister, made it clear to the governments of France, Austria, Prussia, and Russia that as long as Great Britain controlled the seas no country other than Spain should acquire the colonies either by cession or by conquest. Canning's policy received the emphatic support of President Monroe in his message to Congress (1823), in which he said: "We owe it, therefore, to candor, and to the amicable relations existing between the United States and those powers, to declare that we should consider any attempt on their part to extend their system to any portion of this hemisphere as dangerous to our peace and safety."[1] Shortly afterwards both the United States and Great Britain recognized the independence of the Spanish-American republics. A second breach in the European Concert opened when Russia, absolutist but orthodox, supported a rebellion of the Greeks against their Turkish

GEORGE CANNING

After a painting by John Hoppner in the possession of Lord Rosebery.

Breaches in the European Concert

[1] The so-called Monroe Doctrine.

oppressors. It remained, however, for another democratic revolution in France to deal the most effective blow against Metternich and all his works.

Studies

1. "The nineteenth century is precisely the history of the work which the French Revolution left." Comment on this statement. 2. Mention some instances of the disregard of nationalism by the treaties of 1814-15. 3. Why was the neutrality of Switzerland guaranteed by the great powers in 1815? Has Swiss neutrality been violated since this time? 4. May any excuses be offered for the "shortcomings" of the Congress of Vienna? 5. "The name of Metternich has become a synonym for reaction and conservatism." Explain this statement. 6. What justification can be given for *Metternichismus?* 7. To what extent was the Concert of Europe, as established in 1815–1818, a League for Peace? 8. Why has the Concert been called a "mutual insurance society of sovereigns"? 9. Why may the period between 1815 and 1822 be called the era of the congresses? 10. What is the meaning of Canning's remark, "I called the New World into existence to redress the balance of the Old"?

No. 10, Downing Street

The larger of the two houses here shown is the official residence of the British prime minister. It faces a little street opening into Whitehall and near the Parliament buildings.

CHAPTER XIII

THE DEMOCRATIC MOVEMENT IN EUROPE, 1830–1848

94. Modern Democracy

THE idea of democracy, so emphasized by the American and French revolutions, has been a potent influence in molding modern history. What is democracy? The word comes from the Greek and means popular rule — "government of the people, by the people, and for the people." Democracy is thus distinguished from autocracy, the rule of one, and from aristocracy or oligarchy, the rule of a few.

What is democracy?

Ancient democracy was exclusive. All the people did not rule, even in the most democratic of Greek cities. Slaves, a very considerable element of the population, enjoyed no political rights, while freedmen and foreigners were seldom allowed to take part in public affairs. A democratic state at the present time does not recognize any slave class, freely admits foreigners to citizenship, and grants the suffrage to all native-born and naturalized men, irrespective of birth, property, or social condition. The recent extension of the suffrage to women in several progressive countries marks the final step in broadening the conception of "the people" to include practically all adult citizens.

"The people"

As a working system of government, democracy implies the sway of majorities. It is usually impossible to wait until all the people are of one mind regarding proposed measures or policies. A unanimous or nearly unanimous decision is best, of course; failing that, we must "count heads" and see which side has the more adherents. A democratic government which did not enforce the will of the majority would be a contradiction in terms. How far should the sway of a majority go? If it goes so far

Majorities and minorities

as to suppress free opinion, free speech, and free discussion in a public press, then there is little to choose between the absolutism of a democracy and the absolutism of an autocracy. A majority can be as tyrannical as any divine-right monarch. The danger of abusing majority rule makes it necessary to safeguard the rights of minorities, whether great or small. After a decision has been reached upon any question, the minority should still be entitled to convert (if it can) the majority to its views by free and open debate. In this way democratic government comes to rest upon common consent, upon the willing coöperation of all the citizens.

Direct and representative democracy

Democracy in antiquity was direct, while that of to-day is representative. Every citizen of Athens or Rome had a right to appear and vote in the popular assembly. With the growth of modern states this form of government became impossible. The population was too large, the distances were too great, for all the citizens to meet in public gatherings. Voters now simply choose some one to represent them in a parliament or congress.

Development of representation

The representative system, though not unknown to the Greeks and Romans, was little used by them. It developed during the Middle Ages, when such countries as Denmark, Sweden, the Netherlands, France, and England established legislative bodies representing the three "estates" of clergy, nobility, and commoners. Most of these medieval legislatures afterwards disappeared or sank into insignificance, but the English Parliament continued to lead a vigorous existence. It thus furnished a model for imitation, first by the American colonies, then by revolutionary France, and during the past hundred years by nearly all Europe.

Presidential and cabinet systems

We have already learned how the builders of the United States set up what may be called the presidential system of government.[1] They provided for a president, gave him executive authority, and sharply separated his functions from those of the legislature. In Great Britain a cabinet system of government arose during

[1] See page 271.

the eighteenth century, by which both executive and legislative functions were centered in Parliament, and specifically in the House of Commons.[1] The Continental states have generally favored the British arrangement. Instead of a popularly elected president, we find in Europe, therefore, a cabinet or body of ministers, who execute the laws subject to the constant oversight and control of the legislature. Both systems of government are democratic. The differences between them relate simply to the machinery by which the people rule.

Republics and democratic monarchies

Democracy does not necessarily imply a republican form of government. The establishment of the United States did, indeed, lead almost immediately to the formation of the first French Republic, and the examples thus set were soon followed by the Spanish-American colonies after their separation from the mother country. On the other hand, Great Britain, Italy, and certain other European states have succeeded in developing governments which, though monarchical in form, are democratic in substance. The king still reigns by hereditary succession, but he does not rule. The popularly elected president of a republic often has more power than one of these democratic monarchs.

Constitutions

Modern democracy is constitutional in form. There is generally a written constitution, of a more or less liberal type, to guarantee the rights of the people. The first document of this sort for any country was the Union of Utrecht (1579), by which the northern provinces of the Netherlands bound themselves together, "as if they were one province," to maintain their liberties "with life-blood and goods" against Spain. The second was the Cromwellian Instrument of Government (1653). The third was the Constitution of the United States, framed in 1787. The fourth was the French constitution which went into effect in 1791. All these documents, it should be noticed, were of revolutionary origin: they testified to the success of armed rebellion against the legal government. The same thing will

[1] See page 221.

be found true of many other constitutions secured by European peoples during the nineteenth century.

95. France and the "July Revolution," 1830

Reign of Louis XVIII, 1814–1824

Though Louis XVIII called himself king "by the grace of God" and kept the white flag of the Bourbon family, he ruled in fact as a constitutional monarch. The Charter of 1814[1] established a legislature of two houses, the upper a Chamber of Peers appointed for life, the lower a Chamber of Deputies chosen for a term of years. A high property qualification for the suffrage restricted the right of voting for deputies to less than one hundred thousand persons out of a population of twenty-nine million. The mass of the citizens — *bourgeoisie*, workingmen, and peasants — could neither elect nor be elected to office. The French government thus remained far removed from democracy.

Reign of Charles X, 1824–1830

As long as Louis XVIII lived, he kept some check upon the royalists, who wished to get back all their old wealth and privileged position. The accession of his brother, the count of Artois,[2] under the title of Charles X, firmly seated the reactionary elements in the saddle. It was well said of Charles X that after long years of exile he had "learned nothing and forgotten nothing." A thorough believer in absolutism and divine right, the king tried to rule as though the Revolution had never taken place. A law was passed compensating the nobles for the losses which they had sustained by the confiscation of their estates during the revolutionary era. The government found the money for this purpose by scaling down the interest on the national debt. The bondholders, who saw their income suddenly reduced for the benefit of the aristocrats, became at once bitter enemies of the Bourbon monarchy. The peasants were aroused by the proposal to restore primogeniture, in place of the equal division among all the sons of lands bequeathed by the father. Other measures admitting the Jesuits into

[1] See page 354.

[2] See page 313 and note 2.

France and giving the Church control of higher education seemed to indicate an open alliance between "the altar and the throne." The apprehensions of the nation were increased when the king's minister, Prince de Polignac, boldly announced his determination "to reorganize society, to restore to the clergy their weight in state affairs, to create a powerful aristocracy, and to surround it with privileges."

The unpopular ministry of Polignac could not command a majority in the liberal Chamber of Deputies. Charles X thereupon dissolved that body, but the new elections returned a chamber still more hostile to reaction. The king replied by issuing the infamous July Ordinances, which suspended the liberty of the press, dissolved the newly elected Chamber of Deputies even before it had met, and disfranchised three-fourths of the voters. Like James II of England, Charles X showed clearly that he held himself above the constitution. His arbitrary conduct at once provoked an uprising.

The July Ordinances, 1830

LOUIS PHILIPPE
After a painting made in 1841.

Paris in July, 1830, as in July, 1789, was the storm-center of the revolutionary movement. Workingmen and students, few in numbers but organized and armed, hastily constructed barricades in the narrow streets and defied the government. After three days of fighting against none-too-loyal troops, the revolutionists gained control of the capital. Charles X fled to England, and the tricolor once more flew to the breeze in France.

Divine right overthrown

Those who carried through the uprising in Paris wanted a republic, but they found little support among the liberal *bour-*

geoisie. Men of this class feared that a republican France would soon be at war with monarchical Europe. Largely influenced by the aged Lafayette, the Republicans agreed to accept another king, in the person of Louis Philippe, duke of Orléans. He took the crown now offered to him by the Chamber of Deputies, at the same time promising to respect the constitution and the liberties of Frenchmen.

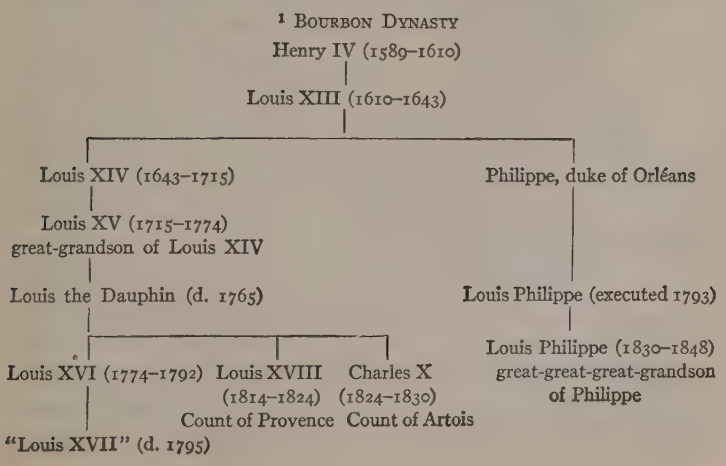
Constitutionalism preserved

The new sovereign belonged to the younger, or Orléans, branch of the Bourbon family.[1] He had participated in the events of 1789, had joined the Jacobin Club, had fought in revolutionary battles, and during a visit to the United States had become acquainted with democratic ideals and principles. To this "Citizen King," who reigned "by the grace of God and by the will of the people," France now gave her allegiance.

The "Citizen King"

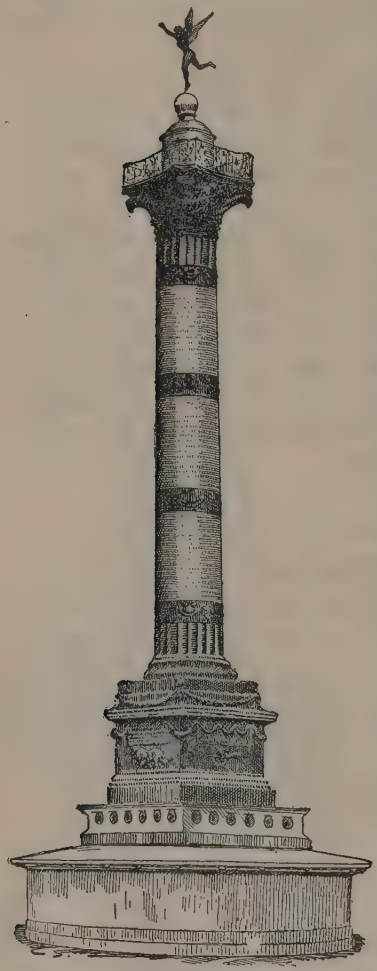
96. The "July Revolution" in Europe

The events in France created a sensation throughout Europe. The reactionaries were horrified at the sudden outburst of a revolutionary spirit which for fifteen years they had endeavored to suppress; the liberals were encouraged to renewed



agitation for self-government and national rights. Widespread disturbances in the Netherlands, Poland, Italy, and Germany compelled Metternich to abandon all thought of intervening to restore "legitimacy" in France.

Effect of the "July Revolution"



COLONNE JUILLET

The Bastille, after its capture in 1789, was leveled to the ground, and its stones were used to build one of the bridges over the Seine. The site of the fortress-prison is now a public square. In the center rises the July Column (154 feet high), commemorating the revolutionists of 1830.

The union between the former Austrian Netherlands and Holland, made by the Congress of Vienna, proved to be very unfortunate. Differences of language, religion, and culture kept the two countries apart. Though about one-half of the Belgians were Flemings and hence closely akin to the Dutch in blood and speech, the other half were French-speaking Walloons. Both Flemings and Walloons felt a religious antipathy to the Protestant Dutch. Both alike had French sympathies and looked toward Paris for inspiration rather than toward The Hague. The antagonism between the two peoples might have lessened in time, had not the government of Holland incensed Belgian patriots by imposing

Antagonism between Belgians and Dutch

upon them Dutch law, Dutch as the official language, and Dutch control of the army, the civil service, and the schools.

Just a month after the uprising in Paris, Brussels responded

to the revolutionary signal. The insurrection soon spread to the provinces and led to a demand for complete separation from Holland. The French government under Louis Philippe naturally favored this course, and Great Britain, a champion of small nationalities, also gave it her approval. The three eastern powers would gladly have intervened to prevent such a breach of the Vienna settlement, but Austria and Russia had disorders of their own to quell, and Prussia did not dare, single-handed, to take action which might bring her into collision with France.

The insurrection in Belgium

Under these circumstances an international conference met at London in 1831. It decided that Belgium should be "a state independent and perpetually neutral," with Leopold of Saxe-Coburg as the first ruler. The British had to blockade the Dutch coast and the French to occupy Antwerp before the king of Holland would consent to this arrangement. He did not recognize the independence of Belgium until 1839. In that year Belgian neutrality was further guaranteed by a treaty to which Great Britain, France, Austria, Prussia, and Russia pledged their faith. Thus a new state, under a new dynasty, was added to the European family of nations.

Independent and neutral Belgium

The disposition of the grand duchy of Luxemburg (originally a part of the Holy Roman Empire) formed a troublesome problem for the powers. The Congress of Vienna had made it a member of the Germanic Confederation, intrusting its sovereignty and vote in the confederation to the king of the Netherlands. The decision reached in 1831 was to give eastern Luxemburg, together with Limburg, to Holland, while the Walloon or western part of Luxemburg remained under Belgium. The Dutch king accepted this partition eight years later.[1]

Luxemburg

Like the Belgians, the Poles were one of the "submerged

[1] Upon the dissolution of the Germanic Confederation in 1866, Limburg was incorporated with Holland. Dutch Luxemburg became an independent state in 1867, with its neutrality guaranteed by the European powers, including Prussia. Until 1890, however, the grand duchy was ruled by the kings of Holland.

nationalities" of the nineteenth century. The Congress of Vienna, it will be remembered, had maintained the results of the former partitions, giving the greater part of Poland to Russia, but allowing Prussia and Austria to keep, respectively, Posen and Galicia. Russian Poland became a self-governing, constitutional state, with the

Condition of the Poles

POLAND IN THE NINETEENTH CENTURY

tsar, Alexander I, as its king. This experiment in liberalism did not last long. Alexander I, who fell more and more under Metternich's reactionary influence, proceeded to curtail Polish rights and privileges, and the accession in 1825 of his brother, Nicholas I, placed on the throne an inflexible opponent of all free institutions. Such was the situation when news of the revolution in Paris reached Warsaw.

The insurrection which now broke out in the capital soon became general throughout the country. It found no support with the Austrian and Prussian governments, while France and Great Britain were too far away to lend effective aid. Having crushed the revolt, Tsar Nicholas determined to uproot all sense of nationality among the Poles. He revoked their constitution, abolished their Diet, suppressed their flag, and exiled or executed thousands of Polish patriots. Poland was flooded with Russian agents, the Russian tongue was made the official language, and the Polish army was incorporated with the imperial troops. Poland became, as far as force could make her, simply another province of Russia.[1]

The insurrection in Poland

Revolution in Italy proved to be likewise abortive. This time not the Sicilian and Sardinian kingdoms, but the States of the Church and Parma and Modena formed the centers of disturbance. The revolutionists raised a new tricolor of red, white, and green (which subsequently became the Italian flag), declared the pope deposed from temporal power, and drove out the sovereigns of the two duchies. No help reached the patriots from Louis Philippe, as they had expected, nor did the people of the other Italian states rally to their support. The result might have been foreseen. Metternich's Austrian soldiers quickly extinguished the insurrectionary fires and restored the exiled rulers. Italy remained a Hapsburg province.

The situation in Italy

The discontent which had been smoldering in Germany since 1815 also flamed forth into revolution. Popular outbreaks led in Saxony to the grant of a constitution, and in Hanover and Brunswick, which already enjoyed constitutional government, to further liberal measures. But the movement made no more progress, for the great states, Austria and Prussia, remained quiet. The Diet of the confeder-

The situation in Germany

[1] Another revolt of the Poles was put down in 1863–1864. Their national spirit survived even this blow, and in 1914, upon the outbreak of the World War, Nicholas II issued a proclamation promising them self-government. The restoration of Poland to her place among the nations formed, however, the work of the Peace Conference.

ation, upon Metternich's motion, passed a decree declaring all concessions wrung from a sovereign by violent means to be null and void; while another decree announced that a parliament which refused taxes to the head of a state might be coerced by the confederation's troops. These repressive measures had their effect in reducing Germany to its former condition of political stagnation.

Notwithstanding the setbacks to the cause of democracy and nationalism in Poland, Italy, and Germany, the year 1830 marks an important stage in the decline of *Metternichismus* and the system of armed intervention. Both the overthrow of the restored Bourbon monarchy in France and the disruption of the kingdom of the Netherlands threatened the stability of the treaties made in 1815. In the one case, the powers had to abandon, as far as France was concerned, the precious doctrine of "legitimacy" and to acquiesce in the right of the French nation to determine its own form of government. In the other case, they had to submit to a radical modification of the territorial settlement of Vienna.

Significance of 1830

The next eighteen years of European history witnessed no conspicuous triumphs for either democracy or nationalism on the Continent. The period was one of apparent stagnation in politics. Italy and Germany remained as disunited as ever. Bohemia and Hungary continued to be subject to the Hapsburgs, and Poland to the Romanovs. Metternich, though growing old and weary, still kept his power at Vienna. The new rulers who came to the throne at this time — Ferdinand I[1] in Austria and Frederick William IV[2] in Prussia — were no less autocratic than their predecessors. But beneath the surface discontent and unrest intensified, becoming all the stronger because so sternly repressed by the governments. Journalists, lawyers, professors, and other liberal-minded men, who might have been mere reformers, adopted radical and even revolutionary views and sought with increasing success to impress them upon the working classes of the cities, the hungry proletariat who wanted freedom and who wanted

From 1830 to 1848

[1] Son of Francis I (1792–1835). [2] Son of Frederick William III (1797–1840).

bread. From time to time mutterings of the coming storm were heard; it burst in France.

97. The "February Revolution" and the Second French Republic, 1848

The Orléans monarchy

Louis Philippe posed as a thorough democrat. He liked to be called the "Citizen King," walked the streets of Paris unattended, sent his sons to the public schools, and opened the royal palace to all who wished to come and shake hands with the head of the state. It soon became clear, however, that under an exterior of republican simplicity Louis Philippe had all the Bourbon itching for personal power. A semblance of parliamentary government was indeed preserved, but by skillful bestowal of the numerous public offices and by open bribery the king managed to keep a subservient majority in the Chamber of Deputies. This system, not unlike that which existed in England under George III, could prevail in France because the government still remained undemocratic. In spite of franchise reforms which raised the number of voters from about 100,000 to 200,000, the majority of citizens continued to be excluded from political life. The French people found that they had only exchanged the rule of clergy and nobles for that of the upper *bourgeoisie*. Bankers, manufacturers, merchants — the wealthy middle class — now had a monopoly of office and law-making.

Opposition to the Orléans monarchy

Few Frenchmen, outside of the *bourgeoisie*, supported their sovereign. Both the Legitimists, as the adherents of Charles X were called, and the Bonapartists, who wished to restore the Napoleonic dynasty, cordially hated him. The Republicans, who had brought about the "July Revolution" and felt themselves cheated by its outcome, held him in even greater detestation. No less than six attempts to assassinate the "Citizen King" were made in the course of his reign.

The growing discontent produced a succession of plots and insurrections, which Louis Philippe met with the time-honored policy of repression. All societies were required to submit

their constitutions to the government for approval. Editors of outspoken newspapers were jailed, fined, or banished. Criticism or caricature of the king in any form was forbidden. Adolphe Thiers, the liberal prime minister, was displaced by Guizot, a famous historian but a thorough reactionary. Louis Philippe, like his predecessor, seemed quite determined that his throne should not be "an empty armchair."

Repressive measures of Louis Philippe

CARICATURE OF LOUIS PHILIPPE

Affairs did not become critical in Paris until 1848. On Washington's birthday of that year vast crowds assembled on the Place de la Concorde and clamored for Guizot's resignation. He did resign the next day, and the frightened king promised concessions; but it was too late. Workingmen armed themselves, threw up barricades, and raised the ominous cry, "Long live the republic!" Louis Philippe, losing heart and fearing to lose head as well, at once abdicated the throne and as plain "Mr. Smith" sought an asylum in England.

A revolution begun

His abdication and departure did not save the Orléans monarchy. The revolutionists in Paris proclaimed a republic and summoned a national assembly, to be elected by the votes of all Frenchmen above the age of twenty-one, to draw up a constitution. Their action found favor in the *départements*, which as on previous occasions followed the lead of the capital city.

A republic proclaimed

The constitution of this second French Republic formed a thoroughly liberal document. It guaranteed complete freedom of speech and of assembly, prohibited capital punishment for political offenses, and abolished

A new constitution

all titles of nobility. There was to be a parliament of a single chamber, a responsible ministry, and a president chosen by universal manhood suffrage. This extension of the suffrage to include the masses marks an epoch in the history of democracy. The revolutions of 1789 and 1830 destroyed absolute monarchy and privileged aristocracy in France; the revolution of 1848 overthrew middle-class government and established political equality.

Louis Napoleon, president of France

The voters elected to the presidency Louis Napoleon, a nephew of the great emperor and the eldest representative of his family. During the reactionary rule of the Bourbons and the dull, *bourgeois* monarchy of Louis Philippe, the legend [1] of a Napoleon who was at once a democrat, a soldier, and a revolutionary hero had grown apace. The stories of every peasant's fireside, the pictures on every cottage wall, kept his memory green. To the mass of the French people the name Napoleon stood for prosperity at home and glory abroad; and their votes now swept his nephew into office.

98. The "February Revolution" in Austria and Italy

Effect of the "February Revolution"

France had once more lighted the revolutionary torch, and this time eager hands took it up and carried it throughout the Continent. Within a few months half of the monarchs of Europe were either deposed or forced to concede liberal reforms. No less than fifteen separate revolts marked the year 1848. Those in the Austrian Empire, Italy, and the German states assumed most importance.

Fall of Metternich

Vienna, the citadel of reaction, was one of the first scenes of a popular uprising. Mobs, which the civic guard refused to suppress, fired Metternich's palace and compelled the white-haired old minister to resign office. Quitting the capital in disguise and with a price set upon his head, he made his way to England, there to compare experiences

[1] See page 348.

with that other exile, Louis Philippe. Thus disappeared from view the man who for nearly forty years had guided the destinies of Austria, one whose name has been handed down as a synonym for illiberal and oppressive government.

Metternich's fall left the radical elements in control at Vienna. The city was ruled for a time by a revolutionary committee of students and citizens. The Hapsburg emperor, Ferdinand I, who so hated the very word "constitution" that he is said to have forbidden its use in his presence, had to grant a constitutional charter for all his dominions, except Hungary and Lombardy-Venetia. A parliament, universal suffrage, free speech, and a free press were also promised by the emperor — promises which he conveniently ignored at the first opportunity.

Democratic Vienna

What had begun as a democratic movement among the Germans of Vienna speedily became a national movement in other parts of the Hapsburg realm. The Czechs, as the Slavic inhabitants of Bohemia are called, believed that the hour had struck to regain their liberties, suppressed by Austria since the Thirty Years' War. They demanded that a parliament, representing all Bohemia, should be convoked, and that Bohemian as well as German should become an official language of the country. At the same time an effort was made to unite the Slavic peoples of the Austrian Empire by means of a congress held at Prague. Had this idea been carried out, Bohemia, Moravia, and Austrian Silesia would have formed a separate Slavic kingdom.

Nationalism in Bohemia

The national movement in Bohemia encountered opposition on the part of the Germans there, who feared that they themselves would be oppressed by the triumphant Czechs. The government of Austria naturally supported the Germans. Street riots which broke out in Prague gave the Austrian commander, Prince Windischgrätz, an excuse for bombarding the city and crushing the revolt (June, 1848). This success showed that the army remained loyal to the Hapsburgs and that a mere mob could not stand up against disciplined soldiers. Prince Windisch-

Recovery of Prague and Vienna

grätz felt encouraged to attempt the recovery of Vienna for his royal master. After sharp fighting the imperial troops occupied the city. Martial law was then proclaimed, and the revolutionary leaders were executed (November, 1848).

The national movement in Hungary centered about the patriot Kossuth. He first became known as the editor of a liberal newspaper which attracted the unfavorable attention of Metternich's government. As a result, Kossuth spent three years in prison. After his release he entered politics and by his eloquence and energy soon took a prominent place among Hungarian liberals. Kossuth was ready for a breach with Austria. "From the charnel-house of the cabinet of Vienna," he said, "a pestilent wind sweeps over us, benumbing our senses and paralyzing our national spirit."

Louis Kossuth

Louis Kossuth

Kossuth's influence transformed Hungary, almost overnight, from a semi-feudal to a modern state. The "March Laws" of 1848 set up a Diet freely elected by the people, abolished the privileges of the nobles, and swept away the dues and services owed by the peasants. Henceforth Austria and Hungary were to remain united only through their common Hapsburg ruler. Even this slender tie disappeared after Ferdinand I abdicated in favor of his nephew. Francis Joseph I, the new emperor, immediately abrogated the "March Laws," declaring that Ferdinand's oath to uphold them did not bind his successor. Aroused to fury by this perfidious act, Kossuth carried through the Diet a declaration that the house of Hapsburg, "perjured in the

Hungarian independence

sight of God and man," henceforth had ceased to rule and that Hungary formed an independent nation.

Unfortunately, the new state did not command the allegiance of all its peoples. The Magyars refused to share their newly won liberties with their fellow citizens, the Serbo-Croats of southern Hungary and the Rumanians of Transylvania. This ungenerous attitude, kindling racial animosities and jealousies, gave the Austrian government an opportunity to recover Hungary by force of arms. Despite the odds against them, the Magyars resisted so sternly that Francis Joseph I had to call in the aid of his brother-monarch and brother-reactionary, the tsar. Nicholas I, fearing lest an independent Hungary should be followed by an independent Poland, joined his troops to those of the Austrians, and together they overwhelmed the Magyar armies. Kossuth escaped to Turkey. The other leaders of revolution perished on the gallows or before a firing squad.

Conquest of Hungary, 1849

The revolutionary flood also spread over the Italian peninsula. Milan, the capital of Lombardy, expelled an Austrian garrison. Venice did the same and set up once more the old Venetian Republic which Napoleon had suppressed.[1] Charles Albert, king of Sardinia, declared war on hated Austria. To his aid came troops from the duchies of Parma, Modena, and Tuscany, from the States of the Church, and from the Two Sicilies. Charles Albert's proud boast, *Italia farà da sè* ("Italy will do it herself"), seemed likely to be justified.

Revolts in Italy

The splendid dream of a free, united Italy quickly faded before the realities of war. The patriotic parties would not act together and failed to give the king of Sardinia hearty support. The pope, Pius IX, fearing a schism in the Church, decided that he could not afford to attack Catholic Austria. The Bourbon ruler of the Two Sicilies also withdrew his troops. Sardinia, fighting alone, was no match for Austria. Marshal Radetzky, the able Austrian commander, won the battles of Custozza (1848) and Novara (1849). Charles

Sardinia defeated

[1] See pages 324 and 337–338.

Albert then abdicated and went into voluntary exile. His son and successor, Victor Emmanuel II, made peace with Austria.

A republic set up in Rome by the revolutionary leader Mazzini, likewise came to grief. Pius IX, who had been deprived of his temporal possessions, called in the assistance of Catholic France. To the pope's appeal Louis Napoleon lent a willing ear, especially since he did not wish to allow all Italy to be subjugated by the Austrians. A French army soon expelled the republican leaders and restored the pope to the States of the Church. The revolution in Italy thus brought only disappointment to patriotic hearts.

The Roman Republic overthrown

99. The "February Revolution" in Germany

Almost all the German states experienced revolutionary disturbances during 1848. The cry rose everywhere for constitutions, parliaments, responsible ministries, a free press, and trial by jury. Berlin followed the example of Vienna and threw up barricades. Frederick William IV bowed before the storm. He promised a constitutional government for Prussia and even consented to ride in state through the streets of the pacified capital, wearing the black, red, and gold colors of the triumphant revolution.

Revolution in Germany

The German people at this time also took an important step toward unification. A national assembly, chosen by popular vote, with one representative for every fifty thousand inhabitants, met at Frankfort to devise a form of government for the united Fatherland. The learned members of the assembly had all the scholarship necessary for the solution of constitutional questions. Unfortunately, they lacked power. The revolutionary movements had not affected the armies, which, under their aristocratic officers, remained faithful to the princes of Germany. As long as the princes kept this weapon, the assembly could wield only a moral authority. It might pass decrees, but it possessed no means of executing them.

The Frankfort Assembly

The Frankfort Assembly began well by drawing up a liberal constitution. Rights which few German citizens then possessed, such as freedom of speech, of press, of petition, were expressly guaranteed to all. There was to be a parliament of two houses, representing the states and the people, respectively, and a ministry responsible to parliament. The assembly also decided to replace the old Germanic Confederation with a new union, including Prussia but excluding the non-Germanic territories of Austria. The Hapsburg emperor, quite naturally, would have nothing to do with such an arrangement. The Assembly met his refusal by the formal exclusion of Austria from the proposed federation.

The German Constitution

Though some of the members of the Frankfort Assembly wanted to set up a republic, the majority favored a federal empire with a hereditary sovereign. The imperial title was offered to Frederick William IV. He declined it. That Prussian ruler had no desire to exchange his monarchy by divine right for a sovereignty resting on the votes of the people; he would not accept a "crown of shame" from the hands of a popular assembly. Moreover, he knew that the house of Hapsburg would never consent willingly to the assumption of the imperial dignity by a Hohenzollern. Prussia thus made "the great refusal" which destroyed the hope of creating by peaceful means a democratic German empire.

"The great refusal"

Rebuffed by Prussia and faced with the opposition of Austria, the Frankfort Assembly began to dwindle out of existence. Many of the larger states withdrew their representatives. Others resigned in disgust. Those who remained decided to disregard the princes altogether and to call for an uprising of the German people. But this German "Rump Parliament" was soon broken up by soldiers with drawn swords.

Collapse of the Frankfort Assembly

The collapse of the Frankfort Assembly drove the more radical Germans in Saxony, Baden, and the Rhenish Palatinate to attempt to set up a republic by force of arms. Some of the noblest men in Germany — among them Carl Schurz and Franz Sigel, who after-

Revolution suppressed, 1849

wards emigrated to America and fought in the Union army during the Civil War — took part in this desperate adventure for freedom. Their efforts were in vain. Prussian troops bloodily suppressed the revolution and sealed the doom of the first German Republic.

The "February Revolution" died down in Europe, seemingly having accomplished little. Almost everywhere the old autocracies remained in the saddle. The Austrian constitution was revoked when Francis Joseph I, an apt pupil of Metternich, came to the throne. The constitution which Frederick William IV granted to Prussia in 1850 did, indeed, provide for representative government, but otherwise turned out to be a very illiberal document. In France, also, the new republic soon drifted upon the rocks of reaction. Discouraged by these failures, the European peoples now gave over to some extent the agitation for democratic reforms. They turned, instead, to the task of nation building.

Significance of 1848–1849

Studies

1. Why is it better for a nation to make mistakes in the course of self-government than to be ruled, however wisely, by an irresponsible monarch? 2. Mention some of the essentially democratic monarchies in contemporary Europe. 3. Who was the last divine-right ruler of France? 4. Why did Paris and not the provinces play the chief part in the French revolutionary outbreaks from 1789 to 1848? 5. Why has France been styled the "magnetic pole of Europe"? 6. Compare the "July Revolution" in France with the "Glorious Revolution" in England, and Charles X with James II. 7. What precedent existed for the action of the powers in neutralizing Belgium? 8. Compare the advantages received by France from the revolution of 1848 with those received from the revolutions of 1830 and 1789. 9. Give reasons for the preservation of the Austrian Empire from dissolution in 1848–1849. 10. Look up in an encyclopedia some account of Kossuth's visit to the United States in 1851–1852. 11. How was Austria the "fire department" of Italy in 1821, 1830, and 1848–1849? 12. Enumerate the non-Germanic territories of the Hapsburgs at the middle of the nineteenth century. 13. Why did the Frankfort Assembly wish to exclude these territories from the new imperial federation to be formed? 14. Look up in an encyclopedia some account of the careers of Carl Schurz and Franz Sigel in the United States.

CHAPTER XIV

THE NATIONAL MOVEMENT IN EUROPE, 1848–1871[1]

100. Modern Nationalism

SINCE the close of the eighteenth century, the idea of nationalism has been at least as potent as that of democracy in molding modern history. What is a nation? The word should not be confused with "state," which means the entire political community, nor with "government," which refers to the legislative, executive, and judicial organization of the state. A "nation" may be defined as a people or group of peoples united by common ideals and common purposes.

What is a nation?

National feeling does not depend on identity of race, for that can be found nowhere. The inhabitants of every European country are greatly mixed in blood. It does depend, in part, on sameness of speech. There is always difficulty in uniting populations with different languages. The examples of bilingual Belgium and trilingual Switzerland show, however, that nations may exist without unity of language. Sameness of religion also acts as a unifying force; nevertheless most modern nations include representatives of diverse faiths. National feeling, in fact, is essentially a historic product. That which makes a nation is a common heritage of memories of the past and hopes for the future. Ireland has long been joined to England, but Irish nationality has not disappeared. Bohemia, long subject to the Hapsburgs, never lost her national spirit. The Polish nation still lived, though after the partitions Poland disappeared from the map of Europe. The Jews have been scattered

The sentiment of nationality

[1] Webster, *Readings in Medieval and Modern History*, chapter xxxiv, "Bismarck and the Unification of Germany."

throughout the world for many centuries, yet they continue to look forward to their reunion in the Holy Land. While national feeling endures, a nation cannot perish.

Rise of nationalism

Nationalism scarcely existed among the ancient Greeks, who made the town or the city their typical social unit. It was equally unfamiliar to the Romans, who created a world-wide state. It lay dormant throughout most of the Middle Ages, when feudalism was local and the Church and the Empire were alike international. Only toward the close of the medieval period did a sense of nationality arise in England, France, Spain, and some other countries. This was due to various reasons: the development of the king's power as opposed to that of the feudal nobles; the growth of the Third Estate, or *bourgeoisie*, always far more national in their attitude than either nobility or clergy; the rise of vernacular languages and literatures, replacing Latin in common use; finally, the danger of conquest by foreigners, which greatly stimulated patriotic sentiments. The spread of education and of facilities for trade, travel, and intercourse during modern times made it possible for ideas of nationalism to permeate the masses of the people in each land. They began to feel themselves closely bound together and to call themselves a nation.

Nationalism and the French Revolution

The French Revolution did most to develop this national sentiment. The revolutionists created the "fatherland," as we understand that term to-day. They substituted the French nation for the French kingdom; for loyalty to a monarch they substituted love of country. When an attempt was made to crush the Revolution, they rose as one man, and to the inspiring strains of the *Marseillaise* drove the invaders from the "sacred soil" of France.

Napoleon and nationalism

But not satisfied with defending the Revolution at home, the French started to spread it abroad, and in doing so became aggressive. They posed as liberators; very speedily they proved to be subjugators. A republican general, Napoleon Bonaparte, transformed their citizen levies into professional soldiers devoted to his fortunes and led them

to victory on a score of battle-fields. Napoleon, himself a man without a country, felt no sympathy for nationalism. Out of a Europe composed of many independent and often hostile states, he wished to create a unified Europe after the model supplied by Charlemagne's empire. He even intended, had he been successful in the Russian campaign, to move the capital of his dominions, and by the banks of the Tiber to revive the glories of imperial Rome.

Napoleon carried all before him until he came into conflict with nations instead of sovereigns. The sentiment of nationalism, which had saved republican France, now inspired the British in their long contest with the French emperor, spurred the Portuguese and Spaniards to revolt against him, and strengthened the will of Austrians, Prussians, and Russians never to accept a foreign despotism. What the Hapsburgs, Hohenzollerns, and Romanovs failed to do, their subjects accomplished. The national resistance to Napoleon, aroused throughout the Continent, destroyed his empire.

National resistance to Napoleon

The reaction which followed the Congress of Vienna checked, but could not destroy, the national aspirations of European peoples. As we have learned in the two preceding chapters, nationalism combined with all the liberal or democratic sentiments aroused by the French Revolution to provoke the revolutionary upheavals between 1815 and 1848. These met only partial success, but during the next twenty-three years nationalism won its most conspicuous triumphs in the unification of Italy and of Germany.

Nationalism, 1815–1848

101. Napoleon III and the Second French Empire, 1852

European history from 1848 to 1871 is dominated by the personality of the second French emperor, Louis Napoleon, who influenced the fortunes of France, Italy, Germany, Austria, and Russia almost as profoundly as did Napoleon Bonaparte half a century earlier. He was the son of Napoleon's brother Louis, at one time king of Hol-

Louis Napoleon's career

land, and after the death of "Napoleon II" became the recognized head of the house of Bonaparte.[1] His early life had been a succession of adventures. Exiled from France at the time of the Bourbon restoration, he found his way to many lands, and in Italy even became a member of a revolutionary secret society. Twice he tried to provoke an uprising in France against the Orléans monarchy and in favor of his dynasty. On the first occasion he appeared at Strasbourg, wearing his uncle's hat, boots, and sword, but these talismans did not prevent his capture and deportation to the United States. A second imitation of the "return from Elba" led to his imprisonment for six years in a French fortress. He then escaped to England and waited there, full of faith in his destiny, until the events of 1848 recalled him home. His election to the presidency of the French Republic soon followed.

Louis Napoleon's character

The new president inherited the Napoleonic tradition, but his long body, short legs, pointed mustache, and pointed beard made a sharp contrast to the first Napoleon's face and figure. Nor did he possess the military and administrative genius of Napoleon I. He did have sufficient astuteness to realize that the eyes of his countrymen might be dazzled by a successful adventurer trading on the magic name Napoleon, complete unscrupulousness in the choice of men and means to be employed in the rise to power, and an overweening ambition to revive the glories of his house. From the start Louis Napoleon set to work deliberately to deceive the French people, and indeed all Europe, regarding his real intentions. Posing as a sincere republican, as a devoted champion of liberty, he succeeded in establishing perhaps the most despotic régime that had ever existed in France.

An ambitious president

Louis Napoleon, upon becoming president of France, swore to remain faithful to the republic and "to regard as enemies of the nation all those who may attempt by illegal means to change the form of the established government." Events soon showed how well the oath was kept. His uncle had progressed by rapid steps from the consulate to

[1] See the genealogical table, page 343, note 1.

the empire; he himself determined to use the presidency as a stepping-stone to the imperial crown. The recent adoption of universal manhood suffrage by the French made it necessary for him to enlist the support of all classes of the population. The army, of course, welcomed a Bonaparte at its head. The peasantry and *bourgeoisie* felt reassured when Louis Napoleon, far from being a radical, disclosed himself as a guardian of landed property and business interests. The workingmen, who had largely carried through the "February Revolution," were conciliated by the promise of special laws for their benefit. So skillfully did the prince-president curry favor with these different groups of opinion in France that it was not long before he attained his goal.

"France is Tranquil"

A cartoon, with Napoleon III's favorite phrase as its text, which appeared in *Harper's Magazine*.

The coup d'état, 1851

The republican constitution had limited the president's term to four years, without the privilege of reëlection. Louis Napoleon did not intend to retire to private life, and determined to carry through a *coup d'état*. On the anniversary of the battle of Austerlitz, loyal troops occupied Paris, dissolved the legislature, and arrested the president's chief opponents. An insurrection in the streets of the capital was ruthlessly suppressed by the soldiers, and throughout France thousands of Republicans were imprisoned, exiled, or transported to penal colonies across the seas. The French people, when called upon by a

plebiscite to express an opinion as to these proceedings, ratified them by a large majority. Louis Napoleon then made over the government in such a way as to give himself well-nigh absolute power.

A new emperor of the French, 1852

It needed only a change of name to transform the republic into an empire. An almost unanimous popular vote in 1852 authorized the president to accept the title of Napoleon III, hereditary emperor of the French.

102. France under Napoleon III, 1852–1870

"Veiled despotism"

France under Napoleon III had a constitution, universal manhood suffrage, and a legislature — all the machinery of popular rule. But France was free in appearance only. The right of suffrage meant very little when candidates for office were nominated and elected under the direct supervision of the government. As for the legislature, it could neither propose a measure nor question ministers nor determine the expenditure of public money nor make public its deliberations. The emperor kept control of law-making, diplomacy, the army and navy, and the entire administrative system.

Political stagnation

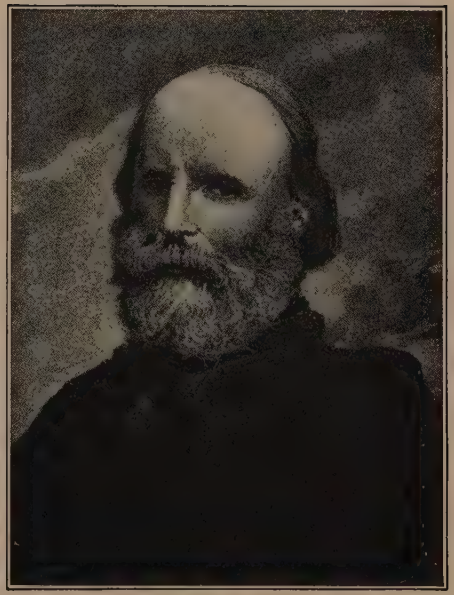
What opposition to this "veiled despotism" existed among liberty-loving Frenchmen was stifled by a resort to the usual agencies of repression. An infamous General Security Act permitted the imprisonment or exile without trial of political suspects. Newspapers which criticized the emperor were, after two warnings, suspended or suppressed. The universities also felt the heavy hand of the government: instruction in modern history and philosophy was discouraged as revolutionary, and liberal-minded professors lost their positions. Political stagnation descended upon France. The country became a sickroom where no one might speak aloud.

Domestic policy of Napoleon III

France the more readily acquiesced in the loss of freedom because under the Second Empire she enjoyed material prosperity. Napoleon III felt a sincere interest in the welfare of all classes, including the hitherto neglected proletariat. By charitable gifts, endow-

NAPOLEON III

CAVOUR



GARIBALDI

ments, and subsidies he tried to show that the idea of improving the lot of those who are "the most numerous and the most poor" lay ever present in his mind. His was a government of cheap food, vast public works to furnish employment, and many holidays. "Emperor of the workmen" his admirers called him. On the other hand, business men profited by the remarkable development during this period of banks, factories, railways, canals, and steamship lines. The progress made was strikingly shown at the first Paris Exposition in 1855, when all the world flocked to the beautiful capital to see the products of French industry and art.

NAPOLEON III AND EUGÉNIE
From a lithograph made in 1855.

The imperial court

Having failed to marry into the royal families of Europe, who looked askance at an adventurer, Napoleon III wedded for love a Spanish lady, Eugénie de Montijo. Her beauty and elegance helped to make the court at the Tuileries such a center of European fashion as it had been under the Old Régime. The birth of an heir, the ill-fated Prince-Imperial,[1] seemed to make certain the perpetuation of the Napoleonic dynasty. Fortune had indeed smiled upon the emperor.

"The empire means peace," Napoleon III had announced shortly before assuming the imperial title. Nevertheless, he proceeded to make war. Like his uncle, he believed that all that the French people wanted to satisfy them was military glory. The emperor

Foreign policy of Napoleon III

[1] Killed in 1879, while fighting with the British against the Zulus in South Africa. The former Empress Eugénie died in 1920.

had not been two years on the throne before he embarked upon the Crimean War against Russia. It terminated victoriously for him in the Treaty of Paris, the most important diplomatic arrangement in Europe since that of Vienna. A few years later success still more spectacular attended his intervention in the Austro-Sardinian War for the liberation of Italy.

103. Disunited Italy

Geography and Italian unity

It might seem from a glance at the map as if Italy, with the Mediterranean on three sides and the Alps on the fourth, was specially intended by nature to be the seat of a unified nation. But the map is deceptive. The number, position, and comparative lowness of the Alpine passes combine to make Italy fairly accessible from the north and northwest; from before the dawn of history these passes, together with the river valleys which approach them, have facilitated the entrance of invading peoples. The extreme length of the peninsula in proportion to its breadth, its division into two unequal parts by the Apennines, and the separateness of the Po basin from the rest of the country are also unfavorable to Italian unity.

History and Italian unity

Historical circumstances have been even more unfavorable. The Lombards, Franks, Normans, and Germans — to say nothing of the Moslems and Byzantines — who established themselves in Italy during the Middle Ages, divided the peninsula into small, weak, and mutually jealous states. In later times Spaniards, French, and Austrians annexed part of the country and governed much of the remainder through its petty princes. The popes also worked throughout the medieval and modern period to keep Italy fragmentary. They realized that unification meant the extinction of the States of the Church, or at least papal dependence on the secular power, and they felt that this would interfere with the impartiality which the head of the Church ought to exercise toward Roman Catholics in all lands. Furthermore, the Italians themselves lacked national ideals, and preserved from antiquity

the tradition of separate city-communities, ruled, it may be, by despots or else self-governing, but in any case independent. Such were medieval Genoa, Pisa, Milan, Florence, and Venice.

Italy before the French Revolution

Italian history, for the century and a half between the Peace of Westphalia and the outbreak of the French Revolution, is almost a blank. The glories of Renaissance art, literature, scholarship, and science were now but a memory. Centuries of misrule and internecine strife crushed the creative energies of the people, while their material welfare steadily declined after the discovery of America and the Cape route to the Indies shifted trade centers from the Mediterranean to the Atlantic. Divided, dependent, impoverished, Italy had indeed fallen on evil days.

Italy during the French Revolution

The Italians describe their national movement as a *Risorgimento*, a "resurrection" of a people once the most civilized and prosperous in Europe. It dates from the shock of the French Revolution. The armies of revolutionary France drove out the Austrians, set up republics in the northern part of the peninsula, and swept away the abuses of the Old Régime. Italy began to rouse herself from her long torpor and to hope for unity and freedom.

Napoleon and Italy

Napoleon Bonaparte, himself an Italian by birth, continued the work of the French Revolution. "Italy," he wrote, "is one sole nation; the unity of customs, of language and literature, will, in some future more or less remote, unite all its inhabitants under one government." Under Napoleon the country was, in fact, practically unified. Northwestern Italy, including Savoy and Piedmont, Genoa, Parma, Tuscany, and the papal territory about Rome, was annexed to France. Lombardy, Venetia, Modena, and the remainder of the papal territory were erected into the kingdom of Italy with Napoleon at its head. Southern Italy became the dependent kingdom of Naples. The islands of Sicily and Sardinia alone remained under their former rulers.[1] Throughout the peninsula the French emperor introduced personal freedom,

[1] See the map facing page 338.

religious toleration, equality before the law, and the even justice of the *Code Napoléon*.

The year 1815 was one of cruel disappointment to patriotic Italians, who saw their country again dismembered, subject to Austria, and under reactionary princes.[1] Men who had once experienced Napoleon's enlightened rule would not acquiesce in this restoration of the Old Régime. The great mass of the *bourgeoisie*, many of the nobles, and some of the better educated artisans now began to work for the expulsion of Austria from the peninsula and for the formation of a constitutional government in the various states. Unable to agitate publicly, these Italians of necessity resorted to underground methods. A secret society, the *Carbonari* ("charcoal burners"), sprang out of the Freemasons, spread throughout Italy, and incited the first unsuccessful revolutions (those of 1820–1821, 1830) against Austria. After their failure the society ceased to have much importance and made way for another revolutionary organization, Mazzini's "Young Italy."

The Carbonari

MAZZINI

After a portrait by Madame Venturi about 1847.

Mazzini, the prophet of modern Italy, was born at Genoa of a middle-class and well-to-do family. Endowed with all a prophet's enthusiasm and moral fervor, Mazzini from early manhood gave himself to the regeneration of his country. He hated the Austrians, and he hated the princes and princelings who served Austria rather than Italy. At a time when the obstacles in the way seemed insuperable, he believed that twenty millions of Italians could

Giuseppe Mazzini, 1805–1872

[1] See pages 354 and 355.

free themselves if only they would sink local interests and jealousies in a common patriotism. It was Mazzini's great service that he inspired multitudes of others with this belief, thus converting what had seemed a utopia to his contemporaries into a realizable ideal.

In 1831 Mazzini founded the secret society called "Young Italy." It included only men under forty, ardent, self-sacrificing men who pledged themselves to serve as missionaries of liberty throughout Italy. The oath imposed upon initiates reveals the purpose of the organization: "By the blush that rises to my brow when I stand before the citizens of other lands, to know that I have no rights of citizenship, no country, and no national flag; by the memory of our former greatness and the sense of our present degradation; by the tears of Italian mothers for their sons dead on the scaffold, in prison, or in exile; by the sufferings of the millions — I swear to dedicate myself wholly and forever to strive to constitute Italy one free, independent, republican nation."

"Young Italy"

Pius IX

As far as practical results were concerned, "Young Italy" proved to be as ineffective as the *Carbonari* had been. Nevertheless, it kept alive the enthusiasm for Italian nationalism during more than a decade. Meanwhile other political parties began to take shape. Many patriotic men who did not favor republican principles hoped to

Italian parties

form a federation of the Italian states under the presidency of the pope. Many more pinned their faith to a constitutional monarchy under the Sardinian king.

104. Victor Emmanuel II and Cavour

Sardinia and Italian unity

The kingdom of Sardinia, the student will remember, included not only the island of that name but also Savoy and Piedmont[1] on the mainland. At the middle of the nineteenth century Sardinia ranked as the leading state in Italy. It was, moreover, the only Italian state not controlled by Austria since 1815, and in 1848–1849 it had warred bravely, though unsuccessfully, against that foreign power. After Pope Pius IX had shown himself unwilling to head the national movement, and after Mazzini had failed in his attempt to create a Roman Republic, Italian eyes turned more and more to Victor Emmanuel II as the most promising leader in the struggle for independence.

Victor Emmanuel II

Victor Emmanuel II

Victor Emmanuel II in 1849 mounted the throne of a country crushed by defeat, burdened with a heavy war indemnity, and without a place in the councils of Europe. The outlook was dark, but the new ruler faced it with resolution. Though not a man of brilliant mind, he possessed much common sense and had personal qualities which soon won him wide popularity. He was a devoted Churchman. He was also a thorough liberal. His father in 1848 had granted a

[1] Piedmont ("Foot of the Mount") extended from the Alps to the plains of Lombardy. In 1815 Genoa had been added to Piedmont. See page 354.

constitution to the Sardinians; he maintained it in spite of Austrian protests, when all the other Italian princes relapsed into absolutism. Patriots of every type, Roman Catholics, republicans, and constitutionalists, could rally about this *Re galantuomo*, this Honest King, who kept his plighted word.

Fortunately for Italy, Victor Emmanuel II had a great minister in the Piedmontese noble, Count Cavour. His plain, square face, fringed with a ragged beard, his half-closed eyes that blinked through steel-bowed spectacles, and his short, burly figure did not suggest the statesman. Cavour, however, was finely educated and widely traveled. He knew England well, admired the English system of parliamentary government, and felt a corresponding hatred of absolutist principles. Unlike the poetical and speculative Mazzini, Cavour had all the patience, caution, and mastery of details essential for successful leadership. It must be added, also, that his devotion to the cause of unification made him sometimes unscrupulous about the methods to be employed: upon occasion he could stoop to all the tricks of the diplomatic game. As the sequel will show, his "fine Italian hand" never lost its cunning.

Camillo di Cavour, 1810–1861

Cavour became the Sardinian premier in 1852, a position which he continued to fill, with but one brief interruption, until his death nine years later. Faithfully supported by Victor Emmanuel II, Cavour bent every effort to develop the economic resources of the kingdom, foster education, and reorganize the army. He made Sardinia a strong and liberal state; strong enough to cope with Austria, liberal enough to attract to herself all the other states of Italy.

Sardinia under Cavour

Not less successful was Cavour's management of foreign affairs. Upon assuming office he had declared that Sardinia must reëstablish in Europe "a position and prestige equal to her ambition." The Crimean War gave an opportunity to do so. Though Sardinia had only a remote interest in the Eastern Question, nevertheless she sent twenty thousand soldiers to fight with the British and

Sardinia and the Crimean War

French against the Russians. For her reward she secured admittance, as one of the belligerents, to the Congress of Paris, which ended the war. Sardinia now had an honorable place at the European council-table, and two powerful friends in Great Britain and France.

Always practical and clear-headed, Cavour began to seek a military ally in the coming struggle with Austria. Public opinion in Great Britain sided with the Italian patriots, but her statesmen considered themselves still bound by the Vienna settlement and could not be relied upon for material assistance. On the other hand, France, under the ambitious and adventurous Napoleon III, held out the prospect of an alliance. The emperor seems to have had a genuine sympathy for Italy; he liked to consider himself the champion of oppressed nationalities; and he felt no hesitation about tearing up the treaties of 1815, treaties humiliating to his dynasty and to France. In return for the duchy of Savoy and the port of Nice, he now promised an army to help expel the Austrians from Italy.

Cavour and Napoleon III

The bargain once struck, Cavour had next to provoke the Austrian government into a declaration of war. It was essential that Austria be made to appear the aggressor in the eyes of Europe. Cavour's agents secretly fomented disturbances in Lombardy and Venetia. Francis Joseph I, the Hapsburg emperor, in an outburst of reckless fury, finally sent an ultimatum to Sardinia, offering the choice between disarmament or instant war. Cavour joyfully accepted the latter. "The die is cast," he exclaimed, "and we have made history."

Quarrel between Austria and Sardinia

105. United Italy, 1859–1870

The fighting which ensued lasted only a few months. Sardinia and France carried everything before them. The allied victory of Magenta compelled the Austrians to evacuate Milan; that of Solferino to abandon Lombardy. They now fell back upon Venetia, where,

Austro-Sardinian War

sheltered by the great fortresses known as the Quadrilateral, they stood at bay.

To the amazement of European onlookers, who deemed the conflict only begun, Napoleon III suddenly stayed his hand. The French emperor, in truth, found himself in a difficult position. He had never contemplated the unification of all Italy, but only the annexation of Lombardy and Venetia to the Sardinian kingdom. The outburst of national feeling which accompanied the war promised, however, to unite the entire peninsula, thus creating a strong national state as a near neighbor of France. Furthermore, Prussia, fearful lest the victories of the French in Italy should be followed by their advance into Germany, had begun to mobilize on the Rhine. For these and other reasons Napoleon III decided to make an end of his Italian venture. He sought a personal interview with Francis Joseph I and privately concluded the armistice of Villafranca.[1]

Villafranca

The armistice terms, as finally incorporated in the peace treaty, ceded Lombardy to Sardinia. Venetia, however, remained Austrian. Victor Emmanuel II and Cavour, thus left in the lurch by their ally, had to accept an arrangement which dashed their hopes just on the point of realization. Losing for once his habitual caution, Cavour urged that Sardinia should continue the war alone. The king more wisely refused to imperil what had been already won. He would bide his time and wait. He did not have to wait long.

Lombardy ceded to Sardinia, 1859

The people of central Italy, unaided, took the next step in unification. Parma, Modena, Tuscany,[2] and Romagna[3] expelled their rulers and declared for annexation to Sardinia. This action met the hearty support of the British government. Even Napoleon III acquiesced, after Cavour handed over to him both Savoy and

Central Italy annexed, 1860

[1] Read Lowell's poem, *Villafranca.*

[2] Lucca had been incorporated in Tuscany since 1847.

[3] The northern part of the States of the Church. Umbria and The Marches — also papal territories — joined Sardinia later in the year 1860.

Nice, just as if the French emperor had carried out the original agreement and had freed Italy "from the Alps to the Adriatic." An ironical diplomat described the transaction as Napoleon's *pourboire* (waiter's tip).

Giuseppe Garibaldi, 1807–1882

The third step in unification was taken by Garibaldi, a sailor from Nice, a soldier of liberty, and a picturesque, heroic figure. At the age of twenty-four Garibaldi joined "Young Italy," participated in an insurrection, for which he was condemned to death, escaped to South America, and fought there many years for the freedom

of the Portuguese and Spanish colonies. Returning to Italy during the uprising of 1848, he won renown in the defense of Mazzini's Roman Republic. The collapse of the revolutionary movement made him once more a fugitive; he lived for some time in New York; later became the skipper of a Peruvian ship; and finally settled down as a farmer on the little Italian island of Caprera. The events of 1859 called him from retirement, and he took part effectively in the campaign against Austria.

The Two Sicilies annexed, 1860

But this man, who had passed through the fire of many battle-fields, who had been shipwrecked, wounded, imprisoned, and exiled, could not rest until all Italy was one and free. When the Sicilians threw off Bourbon rule in 1860, Garibaldi went to their aid with one thousand red-shirted volunteers. It seemed — it was — a foolhardy expedition, but to Garibaldi and his "Red Shirts" all things were possible. Within a month they had conquered the entire island of Sicily. Thence they crossed to the mainland and soon entered Naples in triumph. The Two Sicilies voted for annexation to Sardinia. Garibaldi then handed over his conquests to Victor Emmanuel II, and the two liberators rode through the streets of Naples side by side, amid the plaudits of the people.

"The Right Leg in the Boot at Last"
A cartoon which appeared in the English journal *Punch* for November 17, 1860.

The diplomacy of Cavour, the intervention of Napoleon III,

Garibaldi's sword, and the popular will thus united the larger part of Italy within two years. A national parliament met at Turin in 1861 and conferred the Italian crown upon Victor Emmanuel II. Cavour passed away soon afterwards. "Let me say a prayer for you, my son," said a priest to the dying statesman. "Yes, father," was the reply, "but let us pray, too, for Italy."

Kingdom of Italy, 1861

The new kingdom was not quite complete. Venice and the adjoining region were held by Austria. Rome and a fragment of the States of the Church were held by the pope. Two great European conflicts gave Victor Emmanuel II both of these territories. Venetia fell to Italy in 1866, as her reward for an alliance with Prussia in the Austro-Prussian War.[1] A plebiscite of the Venetians, with only sixty-nine votes registered in the negative, approved this action.

Winning of Venetia, 1866

Four years later the Franco-German War[2] broke out, compelling Napoleon III to withdraw the French garrison from Rome. An Italian army promptly occupied the city. The inhabitants, by an immense majority, voted for annexation to the monarchy. In 1871 the City of the Seven Hills, once the capital of imperial Rome, became the capital of the kingdom of Italy.

Winning of Rome, 1870

Even these acquisitions did not quite round out the Italian kingdom. There was still an *Italia Irredenta*, an "Unredeemed Italy." The district about Trent in the Alps (the Trentino) and the district about Trieste at the head of the Adriatic, though largely peopled by Italians, remained under Austrian rule. The desire to recover her lost provinces was one of the reasons which led Italy in 1915 to espouse the cause of the Allies in the World War.

"Unredeemed Italy"

106. Disunited Germany

The political unification of Germany formed another striking triumph for nationalism, even though it did not involve, as in the case of Italy, the removal of a foreign yoke. National unity

[1] See page 412.

[2] See page 414.

could not be won as long as a motley crowd of kingdoms, duchies, principalities, and free cities encumbered German soil. These states — the heritage of feudalism — had been practically independent since the close of the Thirty Years' War. Each made its own laws, held its own court, conducted its own diplomacy, and had its own army, tariff, and coinage. Only a map or a series of maps on a large scale can do justice to the German "crazy-quilt." Here was a country, large, populous, and wealthy, which lacked a national government, such as had existed in England, France, Spain, and even Russia for centuries.

The German states

The Holy Roman Empire furnished no real bond of union for Germany. Within the Empire were princes who also held territories outside. The Hohenzollerns ruled over East Prussia and part of Poland; the Hapsburgs, over Hungary and other non-German lands. At the same time the kings of Great Britain, Denmark, and Sweden, by virtue of their possessions in Hanover,[1] Holstein, and western Pomerania, respectively, ranked among the imperial princes. Here was an empire which lacked a common center or capital, such as London, Paris, Madrid, and St. Petersburg were for their respective states.

The Empire

It is one of the ironies of history that Germany owes to Napoleon Bonaparte the first measures which made possible her later unification. By the Treaty of Campo Formio and subsequent treaties Napoleon secured for France the Germanic lands west of the Rhine, thus dispossessing nearly a hundred princes of their territories.[2] He subsequently reorganized much of Germany east of the Rhine, with the idea of setting up a few large states as a barrier between France on the one side and Austria and Prussia on the other.[3] This work survived the emperor's downfall. Germany in 1815 included only thirty-eight independent states, as com-

Napoleon and unification

[1] The king of Great Britain was the sovereign of Hanover between 1714 and 1837. The accession of Queen Victoria at the latter date led to the separation of the two countries, since by Hanoverian law a woman could not occupy the throne.

[2] See page 324.

[3] See page 339.

pared with more than three hundred in 1789. The destruction of the Holy Roman Empire by Napoleon involved another breach with the past; henceforth one could conceive of a new and genuine empire, thoroughly German, in which Austria had no place.

Napoleon and nationalism

The impulse to German nationalism also came from Napoleon. By sweeping away so many small states he not only simplified the political map, but also forced Germans to abate somewhat their jealousies and hatreds and to regard one another as countrymen. The War of Liberation against Napoleon banded them together, at least for the moment, in behalf of a common cause. Prussians, Saxons, and Bavarians rose in arms, not to seek world conquests, but to free themselves from an intolerable tyranny. "I have only one fatherland," wrote Stein in 1812, "that is called Germany." Arndt's famous war song, *What is the German Fatherland?* expressed the same patriotic spirit.[1]

The Germanic Confederation, 1815

The hopes of German nationalists were dashed by the Congress of Vienna. The Germanic Confederation,[2] which now replaced the Holy Roman Empire, was not, properly speaking, a union of states, but rather of sovereigns: six kings, six grand dukes, nine dukes, eleven princes, and four free cities, together with the King of the Netherlands (for Luxemburg) and the King of Denmark (for Holstein). Each member of the confederation continued to be independent, except in foreign affairs, which a Diet, meeting at Frankfort-on-Main, controlled. The delegates to the Diet were all appointed by the sovereigns and were subject to their instructions. What little authority the delegates had was limited by the rule requiring a unanimous vote for the passage of any important measure. It is easy to see how under such circumstances the Diet became a synonym for feebleness and futility.

German democracy likewise met a setback at Vienna. The

[1] *Die Wacht am Rhein*, Germany's national anthem, was not written until 1840. The song, *Deutschland, Deutschland über alles*, appeared a year later.

[2] See page 357.

THE GERMANIC CONFEDERATION
1815 - 1866 A. D.
Scale of Miles
0 25 50 100 150
NORTH SEA
BALTIC SEA
K. OF SWEDEN
K. OF DENMARK
Copenhagen
D. OF SCHLESWIG
HOLSTEIN
Kiel
HELGOLAND (Br.)
LÜBECK
HAMBURG
BREMEN
GR.D. OF OLDENBURG
K. OF HANOVER
Hanover
Berlin
Brandenburg
PRUSSIA
Danzig
West Prussia
East Prussia
Stettin
Posen
POLAND
Vistula
Warthe
Oder
Elbe
Rhine
Westphalia
Leipzig
Cologne
Aixla-Chapelle
Rhenish Prussia
Coblenz
Cassel
Weimar
Dresden
K. OF SAXONY
Curlsbad
Prague
BOHEMIA
Cracow
GALICIA
MORAVIA
FRANKFORT on the Main
NASSAU
HESSE-DARMSTADT
RHENISH BAVARIA
Strassburg
Stuttgart
WÜRTEMBERG
BAVARIA
Munich
Vienna
AUSTRIAN EMPIRE
K. OF HUNGARY
Danube
Inn
Innsbruck
Tyrol
Bern
SWITZERLAND
Laibach
Drave
Trieste
Save
LOMBARDY-VENETIA
Milan
Verona
Venice
K. OF SARDINIA
Turin
Po
ADRIATIC SEA
K. OF THE UNITED NETHERLANDS
LUXEMBURG
To Belgium 1839
Lorraine
Alsace
Rhine
Main
Neckar
Lake Constance
LIECHTENSTEIN
K.=Kingdom; GR.D.=Grand Duchy.
ELEC.=Electorate; D.=Duchy;
REP.=Republic; P.=Principality;
M.-ST.=Mecklenburg-Strelitz; L.-D.=Lippe-Detmold; S.-L.=Schaumburg-Lippe;
H.-H.=Hesse-Homburg (to Hesse-Darmstadt, 1866); O=Oldenburg;
LBG.=Principality of Lichtenberg (to Coburg until 1834)
THE M.-N. WORKS
8° 12° 16° 20°
56° 52° 48° 44°
Longitude East 12° from Greenwich

successful issue of the War of Liberation had seemed to offer a favorable opportunity for modernizing the governments of the different states along constitutional and parliamentary lines. Little was done, however. Most of the rulers remained absolute monarchs after 1815, as they had been before 1789. Absolutist sentiments were too firmly entrenched among the noble and official classes; the

The Restoration in Germany

THE ZOLLVEREIN

political education of the common people was still so little advanced; and the French Revolution and Napoleon together had inspired such general distrust of modern ideas that it was easy to repress any agitation for popular rights and representative institutions. The rulers of Germany thus forgot or ignored the sacrifices which their subjects had made in the cause of freedom. The War of Liberation turned out to be a victory, not for liberalism, but for reaction.[1]

[1] See pages 359–361.

Germany, while still politically divided, became economically one. The tariff duties levied by each member of the confederation against the goods of every other member greatly hampered commerce and industry. To meet this difficulty Prussia formed a *Zollverein* (Customs Union), which by 1834 included eighteen states. All the others, except Austria, afterwards joined it. Complete free trade prevailed between the members of the *Zollverein*, while protective duties shut out foreign competition. The *Zollverein* thus showed the German people some of the advantages of union and encouraged them to look to Prussia for its attainment.

The Zollverein

107. William I and Bismarck

The Prussian kingdom seemed to be, indeed, the natural center of unity. Her population, except the Poles, was entirely German; she had led Germany in the heroic struggle against Napoleon; and since 1850 she had possessed a constitution, which, if not democratic, at least established some measure of parliamentary government. The interests of Austria, on the contrary, were divided between her German and numerous non-German peoples, and the Austrian government was the apotheosis of reaction. Neither nationalists nor democrats could expect help from the Hapsburgs. As for the central and southern states — Saxony, Bavaria, Würtemberg, Baden, Hanover, and the rest — none of them was large enough or strong enough to attempt the arduous task of unification. But if the Hohenzollerns undertook it, how would they carry it through? Would they serve Germany by merging

Prussia and German unity

William I
After a photograph taken in 1862.

Prussia in a German nation, as Sardinia had been merged in Italy, or would they rule Germany? Answers to these questions were soon forthcoming.

The death of Frederick William IV[1] in 1861 called to the throne, at the age of sixty-four, his brother, William I. The new king had industry, conscientiousness, a thoroughly practical mind, and, what was still more important, the faculty of finding capable servants and of trusting them absolutely. A firm believer in divine right, he did not allow the constitution granted by his predecessor to interfere with the royal authority. His ideals, to which he steadily adhered through a long reign, were those of the benevolent despots in the eighteenth century.

William I

Albrecht von Roon

William I was above everything a soldier. The Prussian mobilization at the time of the Austro-Sardinian War convinced him that the army needed strengthening, if it was again to be, as in the days of Frederick the Great, the most formidable weapon in Europe. With the assistance of Albrecht von Roon as war minister and Hellmuth von Moltke as chief of the general staff, the king now brought forward a scheme for army reform. Universal military service had been adopted by Prussia during the Napoleonic wars, but many men were never called to the colors or were allowed to serve for only a short time. William I proposed to enforce strictly the obligation to service and in this way to more than double the size of the standing army.

Army reform

The scheme met strenuous opposition on the part of Prussian Liberals, who saw in it a detestable alliance between militarism and autocracy. So large an army, they argued, could only

[1] See page 377.

be intended to overawe the people and stifle all democratic agitation. The Liberals held a majority in the lower house of parliament and refused to sanction the increased expenditures necessary for army reform. William I decided to abdicate if he could not be supreme in military matters. A deadlock ensued. It was only broken when the king summoned Otto von Bismarck to be his chief minister.

Parliamentary opposition

The man who crippled German liberalism and created militaristic, imperial Germany belonged to the *Junker* class,[1] which from the beginning had been the chief support of Hohenzollern absolutism. Birth, training, and inclination made him an aristocrat, an enemy of democracy, a foe of parliamentary government. He was born in Brandenburg of a wealthy country family and received his education at Göttingen and Berlin, acquiring, however, in these universities a reputation for beer-drinking and dueling rather than for studiousness. Young Bismarck entered the Prussian parliament and quickly became prominent as an outspoken champion of divine-right monarchy. Then followed eight years of service as the Prussian delegate to the Frankfort Diet, where he gained an unrivaled insight into German politics. Appointments as ambassador to the Russian and the French courts completed his diplomatic training. Such was the man, now forty-seven years of age, tall, powerfully built, with a mind no less robust than his body, who had come to the front in Prussia.

Otto von Bismarck, 1815–1898

Ministers, under the Prussian constitution, were neither appointed by the parliament nor responsible to that body. It was therefore possible for a resolute minister, supported by the king and army, to govern in defiance of the legislature. This is what Bismarck proceeded to do. For four years he ruled practically as dictator. Each year, when the parliament refused to vote necessary supplies, Bismarck levied, collected, and spent taxes without an accounting to the people's representatives. The necessary military reforms were then carried out by the masterly hands of Roon and Moltke. The

"Blood and iron"

[1] See page 210.

country as a whole seems to have acquiesced in this bold violation of the constitution. Public opinion, except that of the liberal middle classes, reëchoed Bismarck's famous and oft-quoted words: "Not by speeches and majority resolutions are the great questions of the day to be decided — that was the mistake of 1848 and 1849 — but by blood and iron."

108. United Germany, 1864–1871

Successful at home, Bismarck now turned his attention abroad. He and his royal master were firmly determined to place Prussia at the head of Germany. This meant a conflict with Austria, for Bismark's experience at Frankfort had convinced him that Austria would never willingly surrender her place in the Germanic Confederation. From the moment of becoming chief minister he had disclosed an anti-Austrian bias. He refused to admit Austria to the *Zollverein* and recognized the new Italian kingdom with unfriendly haste; finally, he opposed Austrian policy in the so-called Schleswig-Holstein question.

Bismarck and Austria

DENMARK AND SCHLESWIG-HOLSTEIN

The duchies of Schleswig and Holstein — the one partly Danish and partly German in population, the other entirely German — had been united to Denmark by a personal union through its ruler. They remained otherwise independent and stoutly resisted all

The Schleswig-Holstein question

efforts to incorporate them in the Danish kingdom. Since 1815, moreover, Holstein had been a member of the Germanic Confederation. Matters came to a head in 1863, when the sovereign of Denmark imposed a constitution upon the duchies which practically destroyed their independence. This action aroused deep resentment among German nationalists, who wished to have Schleswig and Holstein united with the Fatherland.

The Danish War, 1864

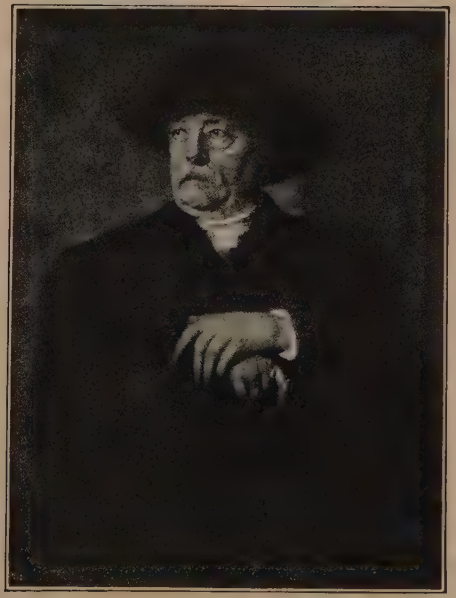
Bismarck saw clearly what the possession of the two duchies, with their strategic position between the Baltic and the North Sea and fine harbor at Kiel, would mean for the development of German sea-power. Their annexation was the goal which he kept steadily before his eyes. Accordingly, he proposed joint intervention by Austria and Prussia. Austria assented. A brief war followed, in which the Danes were overcome by weight of numbers. Denmark had to sign a treaty ceding Schleswig and Holstein to the victors jointly.

Quarrel between Austria and Prussia

As Bismarck anticipated, Austria and Prussia could not agree concerning the disposition of the conquered duchies. The quarrel between them furnished a pretext for the conflict which he had determined to provoke between the house of Hapsburg and the house of Hohenzollern. Before hostilities began, his astute diplomacy isolated Austria from foreign support. Napoleon III engaged to remain neutral, on the strength of Bismarck's promises (never meant to be kept) of territorial "compensations" to France from a victorious Prussia. Alexander II, the tsar of Russia, also preserved neutrality, as a return for Bismarck's recent offer of Prussian troops to suppress an insurrection of the Poles. With Italy Bismarck negotiated a treaty of alliance, promising her Venetia for military assistance to Prussia. Austria, on her side, had the support of Saxony, Hanover, and lesser German states.

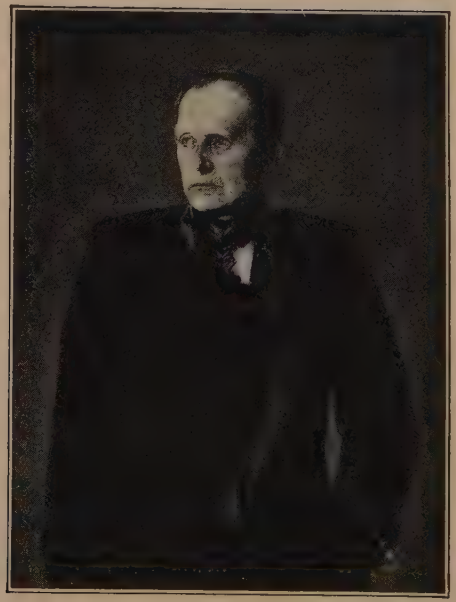
Austro-Prussian War, 1866

Thanks to the careful organization of the Prussian army by Roon and to Moltke's brilliant strategy, the war turned out to be a "Seven Weeks' War." The Prussians at once took the offensive and quickly overran the territory of Austria's German allies. The three



BISMARCK

After a painting by Franz von Lenbach in 1894.



MOLTKE

After a painting by Franz von Lenbach.

Prussian armies which invaded Bohemia crushed their Austrian adversaries in the great battle of Sadowa (Königgrätz). Francis Joseph I then sued for peace.

The negotiations which followed revealed Bismarck's statesmanship. His royal master wished to enter Vienna in triumph, impose a heavy indemnity, and take a large slice of the Hapsburg realm. Bismarck would not agree, for he did not desire to create any lasting antagonism between Austria and Prussia which would prevent their future alliance. William I finally yielded to his imperious minister and consented to bite "the sour apple" of a moderate peace. By the Treaty of Prague, Austria lost no territory except Venetia to Italy and her claims upon Schleswig-Holstein to Prussia.[1] She consented, however, to the dissolution of the Germanic Confederation.

Treaty of Prague

Bismarck had now a free hand in Germany. His first step was the annexation to Prussia of the Schleswig-Holstein duchies, together with the kingdom of Hanover, the electorate of Hesse-Cassel, the duchy of Nassau, and the free city of Frankfort-on-Main. The Prussian dominions for the first time stretched without a break from Poland to the frontier of France. All the independent states north of the Main — twenty-one in number — were then required by Bismarck to enter a North German Confederation, under the presidency of Prussia. The four states south of the Main,[2] which had thrown in their lot with Austria, did not enter the new confederation. They secretly agreed, however, to place their armies at the disposal of Prussia in the event of war with France.

North German Confederation, 1867

For Bismarck a Franco-German War "lay in the logic of history." He believed it necessary, for joint action by the

[1] The treaty contained a reservation that the inhabitants of northern Schleswig might again unite with Denmark, if they expressed their desire to do so by a plebiscite. Prussia, however, would not surrender an inch of the territory which she had gained. Such a plebiscite was provided for in the peace treaty with Germany in 1919. See the map on page 411.

[2] Bavaria, Würtemberg, Baden, and Hesse-Darmstadt. The latter state was henceforth called simply Hesse.

North German and South German states against a common foe would quicken national sentiment and complete the work of unification under Prussia. He also believed it inevitable, in view of the traditional French policy of keeping Germany disunited in order to have a weak neighbor across the Rhine. Napoleon III had now begun to regret his neutrality in the Austro-Prussian War and to realize that if German unity was to be prevented France must draw the sword. The emperor did not shrink from a struggle which he believed would satisfy French opinion and, if victorious, would firmly consolidate his dynasty. After 1867 both governments prepared for the war which both desired.

Bismarck and France

In 1870 a single spark set the two countries aflame. A revolution had broken out in Spain, and the Liberals there had offered the crown to a cousin of William I. Napoleon III at once informed the Prussian monarch that he would regard the accession of a Hohenzollern as a sufficient justification for war. William then gave way and induced his cousin to refuse the crown. Thereupon Napoleon went further and demanded William's pledge never to allow a Hohenzollern to become a candidate in the future. This pledge William declined to make, and from the watering-place of Ems, where he was staying, telegraphed his decision to Bismarck at Berlin. After learning from Roon and Moltke of Prussia's complete readiness for hostilities, Bismarck sent the king's statement to the newspapers, not in its original form, but so abbreviated as to be insulting. Bismarck himself said later that the Ems dispatch was intended to have "the effect of a red flag upon the Gallic bull." Soon after receiving it, France declared war.

The Spanish incident

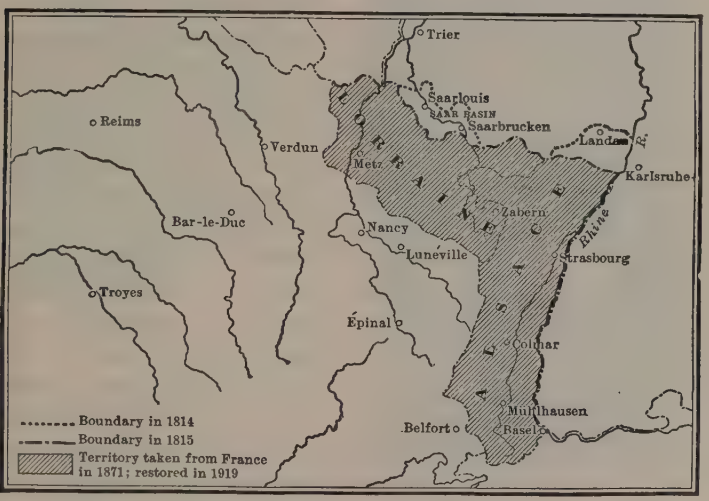
What followed took away the breath of Europe. Fighting began in mid-July; by mid-August a French army under Bazaine was shut up in Metz; and on September 2 the other army, commanded by MacMahon, was defeated and captured at Sedan. Napoleon III himself became a prisoner. Bazaine surrendered Metz in October. Meanwhile, the Germans pressed forward the siege of

Franco-German War, 1870-1871

Paris. It held out for four months and then capitulated (January, 1871) to cold and hunger rather than to the enemy. The war now ended.[1]

Bismarck's harsh treatment of France contrasts sharply with his previous moderation toward Austria. By the Treaty of Frankfort, France agreed to pay an indemnity of one billion dollars within three years and to support a German army of occupation until this sum was forth-

Treaty of Frankfort



ALSACE-LORRAINE

coming. She also ceded to Germany Alsace, including Strassburg,[2] and a large part of Lorraine, including Metz. These two fortified cities were regarded as the "gateways" to Germany.

As far back as 1815 Prussia had tried to secure Alsace and Lorraine, in order to provide a more defensible frontier for her Rhenish possessions. Bismarck took them, ostensibly to regain what had once been German territory,[3] but really because of their economic resources (Lorraine is rich in coal and iron) and their value as a barrier against

The "Lost Provinces"

[1] Zola's powerful novel, *The Downfall*, deals with the Franco-German War.

[2] French, Strasbourg.

[3] See pages 186 and 349.

future French aggression. France could never reconcile herself to the loss of the two provinces; after 1871 she always hoped to win them back. The majority of the inhabitants themselves continued to be French in language and feeling, despite German schools, German military training, and a heavy German immigration. Alsace and Lorraine thus became another open sore on the face of Europe. More than anything else, their annexation helped to unsettle the peace of the world for nearly half a century.

"VÆ VICTIS!"

"Woe to the vanquished!" A cartoon by Sir John Tenniel which appeared in the English journal *Punch* for March 11, 1871. William I, in the garb of an ancient Germanic chieftain, rides his charger over the body of prostrate France. The Crown Prince, Bismarck, and other leaders appear in the background.

The German Empire

Paris had not capitulated, the Treaty of Frankfort had not been signed, before united Germany came into existence. The four South German states yielded to the national sentiment evoked by the war and agreed with Prussia to enter the North German Confederation, rechristened the German Empire. On January 18, 1871, in the Hall of Mirrors at Versailles, William I took the title of German Emperor.

Europe in 1871

The national movement between 1848 and 1871 turned much of Europe upside down. Austria had been driven out of Italy and Germany, which were now transformed into great unified states. Denmark had lost her duchies. France had lost Alsace-Lorraine. All this meant the end of the European Concert and the balance of power established in

UNIFICATION OF GERMANY,
1815 - 1871 A. D.
Prussia in 1815 A. D.
Acquisitions by Prussia, 1815-1866 A.D.
North German Confederation, 1867-1871 A. D.
Imperial Territory of Alsace-Lorraine, 1871 A.D.
Scale of Miles
0 50 100 150 200
THE M.-N. WORKS
Longitude East from 15° Greenwich
NORTH SEA
BALTIC SEA
DENMARK
SWEDEN
HOLLAND
BELGIUM
FRANCE
SWITZERLAND
AUSTRIA
RUSSIA
PRUSSIA
BAVARIA
SAXONY
HESSE
WÜRTEMBERG
ANHALT
THURINGIAN STATES
MECKLENBURG
OLDENBURG
HAMBURG
BREMEN
LÜBECK
LIPPE
WALDECK
BRUNS.
WACK.
HELGOLAND
German 1890
Prussian 1891
Schleswig
Holstein
Hanover
Münster
Cologne
Coblenz
Nassau
Cassel
Leipzig
Berlin
Potsdam
Stettin
Danzig
Königsberg
Posen
Breslau
Dresden
Sadowa
Königgrätz
Frankfort
Darmstadt
Nuremberg
Munich
Carlsruhe
Stuttgart
Strassburg
Metz
Toul
Verdun
Nancy
Montbéliard
HOHENZOLLERN
Rhine
Elbe
Oder
Vistula
Danube
Main
ALSACE-LORRAINE
TO BAVARIA
TO OLD.

1815. Napoleon III, Cavour, and Bismarck, between them, thus destroyed the Vienna settlement. The national movement did not stop or even lag after 1871. Combined henceforth more inextricably with democracy, nationalism continued to be a moving force in European history during the forty-three years which were yet to elapse before the outbreak of the World War.

Studies

1. Locate the battle-fields of Magenta, Solferino, Sadowa (Königgrätz), and Sedan. 2. Differentiate the meanings of the terms "nation," "people," "state," and "government." 3. "Nationalism is simply the tangible outward manifestation of the growth of democracy." Does this seem to be a defensible statement? 4. Mention some of the "submerged nationalities" of Europe at the middle of the nineteenth century. 5. "Nations are seldom born except on the field of battle." Illustrate this statement. 6. Compare the *coup d'état* of Louis Napoleon with that of Napoleon Bonaparte. 7. What is meant by saying that Napoleon III could not "sit still"? 8. Show that the Alps provide a less satisfactory boundary for Italy than the Pyrenees for Spain. 9. Why has the Po Valley been called the "cockpit of Europe"? 10. Why should Garibaldi, rather than Cavour, be the national hero of Italy? 11. Where is the republic of San Marino? 12. How could Bismarck justify his policy of unification through "blood and iron"? 13. Why was Austria excluded from unified Germany? 14. Why did Prussia treat Austria mildly in 1866 and France harshly in 1871? 15. "The Seven Years' War may be looked upon as the first act of the drama that was played out at Sadowa and Sedan." Explain this statement. 16. What is meant by the saying that "Prussia was hatched from a cannon ball"? 17. Show that the German Empire, as established in 1871, was not a continuation or restoration of the Holy Roman Empire. 18. Compare William I with Victor Emmanuel II and Cavour with Bismarck. 19. Contrast the methods employed in the unification of Italy and Germany, respectively.

CHAPTER XV

THE UNITED KINGDOM AND THE BRITISH EMPIRE [1]

109. Great Britain

GREAT BRITAIN affords unusual advantages for the development of an independent, numerous, and wealthy people. Its proximity to the mainland makes intercourse easy, but since 1066 the English Channel and North Sea have been wide enough to form an effective barrier against sudden invasion. A position on the western edge of Europe and opposite the New World enabled Great Britain to profit by the geographical discoveries of the fifteenth century, which shifted the seat of trade from the Mediterranean to the Atlantic seaboard. Commercial expansion has also been facilitated by the extended coast line and many good harbors of the islands. The shallowness of the surrounding seas accounts for the fact that British fisheries are among the most valuable in the world. Agriculturally, Great Britain owes much to its equable climate and abundant rainfall. Farming and sheep raising were the most important occupations during the Middle Ages and early modern times. After the introduction of machinery and steam power, the country was found to contain vast stores of coal and iron. These resources, together with the wool produced at home and the cotton imported from abroad, furnished the foundation of British supremacy in mining and manufacturing during the past one hundred and fifty years.

The island of Great Britain

Nature has divided England into two distinct regions. South-eastern England is prevailing level, though varied with hills or uplands of limestone and chalk. This part of the island has the most fruitful soil. It was

England

[1] Webster, *Historical Source Book*, No. 22, "Chartist Petition, 1838."

therefore the part first settled by the Germanic invaders, and until the nineteenth century was the most prosperous and progressive section of the country. Recent economic changes have made northern and western England the chief seat of population and industry, with the exception of London. Once solitary stretches of mountain side and bleak moorland are now studded with busy cities: Manchester, center of the cotton manufacture, Leeds, of the woolen; Birmingham and Sheffield, headquarters for the production of iron and steel; Liverpool, the world's greatest seaport; and many others.

Scotland

The boundary between England and Scotland is formed by the Solway Firth, the Cheviot Hills, and the Tweed River. The Lowlands, especially the district drained by the Forth and the Clyde, include most of the towns of Scotland. The Clyde is a great shipbuilding center, and Glasgow on its banks ranks next to London among British cities. The Highlands, bounded by a rocky coast and cold, stormy seas, comprise about two-thirds of the total area of Scotland. They are, however, poor and thinly populated.

Wales

The mountainous character of Wales has always fitted it for sheep raising rather than for farming. Scarcely more than half the soil is now under cultivation. Wales, however, possesses rich resources in its mines of coal, iron, copper, and zinc and its slate and limestone quarries. Nearly all the towns are situated on the narrow coastal plain.

The English

The people of Great Britain, though one in government, scarcely form a real nation. England is still the principal country, as containing the capital city and in respect to extent, population, and wealth. There exists a real contrast between the "Old England" of the southeast, conservative, aristocratic, and Anglican, and the new industrial England, democratic in outlook and prevailingly Dissenting in religion. The English of the north and west, with the Scotch, Welsh, and Irish, formed the mass of the Liberal Party during the nineteenth century.

Scotland joined with her southern neighbor and former enemy

in a personal union (1603), when the Scottish king, James VI, inherited the throne of England as James I.[1] The Act of Union (1707) gave the two countries a common Parliament and abolished all trade restrictions between them.[2] Since then Scotland has continued to enjoy local self-government, as well as the benefits of close and friendly intercourse with England. The former hostility between Scots and English has practically disappeared. It is significant of the complete change of sentiment that within the past twenty-five years three Scots have served as prime ministers of Great Britain.[3]

The Scots

Wales was conquered by Edward I near the close of the thirteenth century, but was not finally incorporated into the English parliamentary system until the reign of Henry VIII, about two hundred and fifty years later. In spite of the immigration of English people into Wales and the teaching of English in the schools, the Welsh have managed to retain their own language. Of the two million inhabitants of Wales, about half still speak Cymric. Many newspapers, periodicals, and books are also printed in that ancient tongue. Popular festivals (*eisteddfodau*), both local and national, also do much to stimulate interest in the music, art, and literature of this little people. Their national consciousness has found expression in politics by the rise of a distinct Welsh political group, which endeavors to advance the special interests of Wales in Parliament.

The Welsh

An Act of Union, passed by Parliament in 1800,[4] joined Ireland and Great Britain to form the United Kingdom. Ireland received one hundred seats in the House of Commons and thirty-two (later twenty-eight) seats in the House of Lords. This measure, unlike the earlier act which united England and Scotland, was not one of consent; it was a forced union which Irish patriots have never since ceased to resent.

Great Britain and Ireland

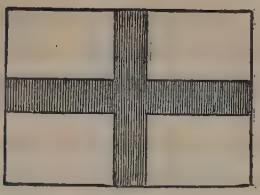
[1] See page 155.

[2] See page 173.

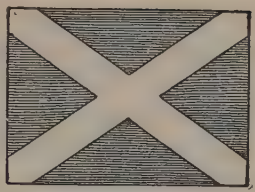
[3] Earl of Rosebery, Mr. A. J. Balfour, and Sir Henry Campbell-Bannerman.

[4] Effective January 1, 1801.

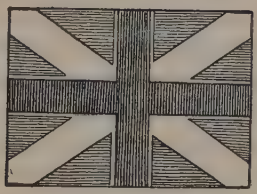
PHYSICAL MAP
OF THE
BRITISH ISLES
Scale of Miles
0 20 40 60 80 100
SHETLAND IS.
ORKNEY IS.
Duncansby Head
SHETLAND ISLES
Same scale as large map
HEBRIDES IS.
SKYE
Ben Nevis
MULL
IONA
ISLAY
The Minch
Moray Firth
Loch Ness
Spey R.
Dee R.
Grampian Mts.
Firth of Lorne
Firth of Forth
Clyde R.
Tweed R.
Southern Uplands
Cheviot Hills
North Channel
Firth of Clyde
Solway Firth
Pennine Chain
Tyne R.
Tees R.
Lake Scafell District
I. OF MAN
Yorkshire Wolds
Ribble R.
Aire R.
Humber R.
Lincoln Heights
The Wash
The Peak
Mersey R.
ANGLESEY
Snowdon
Dee R.
Severn R.
Trent R.
Wellland R.
Ouse R.
Nene R.
Great Ouse R.
Yare R.
Cambrian Mts.
Malvern Hills
Wye R.
Great Central Plain
Anglian Heights
Glaven R.
Stour R.
Avon R.
Cotswold Hills
Thames R.
Chiltern Hills
East Anglian Heights
London
Kennet R.
North Downs
Bristol Channel
Exmoor
Salisbury Plain
Exe R.
Test R.
South Downs
Dartmoor
Tamar R.
Solent
I. OF WIGHT
Strait of Dover
Land's End
ENGLISH CHANNEL
CHANNEL IS.
FRANCE
Donegal B.
Sligo B.
Erne R.
Bann R.
Lough Neagh
Central Plain
Boyne R.
Galway Bay
Barrow R.
Shannon
Blackwater R.
C. Clear
St. George's Channel
IRISH SEA
Sea level to 500 feet
500 feet to 1000 feet
Over 1000 feet
Longitude 4 from Greenwich 2 West 0 East



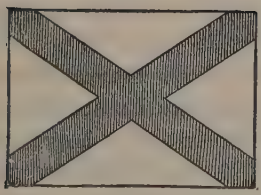
1. England



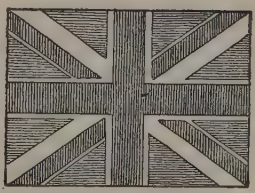
2. Scotland



3. Great Britain



4. Ireland



5. Great Britain and Ireland

THE UNION JACK

The Act of Union with Scotland (1707) required that England and Scotland should have one flag made of the crosses of St. George and St. Andrew combined. After the union with Ireland (1801) the cross of St. Patrick was incorporated in the flag. The name "Jack" comes from the French *Jacques*, referring to James I, the first sovereign of Great Britain.

110. Parliamentary Reform, 1832

Whig rule under the first two Georges came to an end ten years after the accession of George III in 1760.[1] It was the Tory ministry of Lord North (1770–1782) which plunged Great Britain into the contest with the Thirteen Colonies. The Younger Pitt, who became prime minister shortly after the conclusion of the Revolutionary War, reorganized the Tory Party. Pitt's first ministry (1783–1801),

The Tory ascendancy

[1] See page 223.

with the exception of Walpole's, was the longest in English history. Other Tory leaders succeeded Pitt in office during the remainder of George III's reign and that of his son and successor, George IV.[1]

Tory reaction

The French Revolution, with its insistence upon "Liberty, Equality, Fraternity," promised at first to advance the democratic cause in Great Britain as on the Continent. Such a Whig as Charles James Fox could hail the news of the fall of the Bastille with the exclamation: "How much is this the greatest event that has ever happened in the world, and how much the best!" Burke, another prominent Whig, took the opposite view, and in his celebrated *Reflections on the French Revolution* predicted that the overthrow of the Old Régime would be followed by mob violence, anarchy, and military despotism. The excesses of the French radicals soon justified Burke's fears and filled both liberal Whigs and conservative Tories with deep distrust of all innovations in government or society. The long struggle with France also set back the popular movement, for foreign warfare on a large scale generally suspends internal reforms. The revolutionary and Napoleonic period formed, therefore, a period of Tory reaction in Great Britain.

Undemocratic Great Britain

A century ago Great Britain was still an undemocratic country. The "Glorious Revolution" had preserved the liberty of the upper classes, but not the liberty of the middle and lower classes. The House of Lords, composed of nobles and bishops who sat by hereditary right or by royal appointment, continued to be a stronghold of aristocracy. Even the House of Commons, the more popular branch of Parliament, represented only a fraction of the British people.

The unreformed House of Commons

According to the representative system which had been fixed in medieval times, each of the counties (shires) and most of the towns (boroughs) of Great Britain and Ireland had two members in the House of Commons. Representation, however, bore no relation to the size of the population in either case: a large county and

[1] 1820–1830.

a small county, a large town and a small town, sent the same number of representatives. Some flourishing places, such as Manchester, Leeds, Birmingham, and Sheffield, which had grown up since the Middle Ages, were without representation. Other places — the so-called "rotten" boroughs — continued to enjoy representation long after they had so decayed that nothing remained of them but a single house, a green mound, a park, or a ruined wall. The electoral system was equally antiquated. Only landowners could vote in the counties, while in many of the boroughs a handful of well-to-do people alone exercised the franchise. Not more than five per cent of all the adult males in Great Britain possessed the right to vote. There were even some "pocket" boroughs, where a rich man, generally a nobleman, had acquired the privilege of naming the representatives. As the Younger Pitt truly declared, "This House is not a representative of the people of Great Britain; it is the representation of nominal boroughs, of ruined and exterminated towns, of noble families, of wealthy individuals, of foreign potentates."

The restricted franchise in the boroughs made it easy to corrupt elections to the House of Commons. Bribery of voters reached its height under George III, who fostered the system in order to strengthen his own authority. Not only were individual voters bribed, but "rotten" and "pocket" boroughs were often sold outright to the highest bidder. The average price of a borough was about five thousand pounds. Thanks to the custom of open polling, voters in the counties were particularly subject to intimidation by landlords, employers, and officials. The evils of bribery and coercion were increased in borough and county alike by the drunkenness and turmoil which prevailed during elections.

Corruption and intimidation in elections

Efforts to improve these conditions began in the eighteenth century, but for a long time accomplished nothing. Sober people, alarmed by the events in France, coupled parliamentary reform with revolutionary designs against the government. After 1815, however, the Reign of Terror and Napoleon Bona-

parte were no longer bogeys; and public opinion grew steadily more hostile to a system of representation which excluded so many educated, prosperous members of the middle class from political power. Great Whig nobles also espoused the liberal cause and made it a party question. The Tories on their side, stood rock-like against anything which savored of democracy. The duke of Wellington, who had become prime minister, even declared that nothing better than the existing system could be devised "by the wit of man." This obstinate refusal to make even the slightest concessions caused the downfall of the duke's ministry. In 1830, the year of the "July Revolution" in France, the Whigs under Earl Grey returned to office, under pledge to introduce a measure for parliamentary reform.

Agitation for parliamentary reform

The events which followed cast much light on British methods of government. The Reform Bill introduced by Earl Grey failed to pass the House of Commons. Parliament was then dissolved, in order to test the sentiment of the country by means of a general election. "The bill, the whole bill, and nothing but the bill," cried the reforming Whigs. They triumphed, and another Reform Bill passed the new House of Commons by a large majority. The House of Lords, staunchly Tory, threw it out. During the next session yet a third bill was put through the Commons. The Lords insisted upon amendments which the ministry would not accept. Meanwhile, popular excitement rose to fever pitch, and in one mass meeting after another the Lords were denounced as a corrupt and selfish oligarchy. Earl Grey advised the king [1] to create enough Whig peers to carry the measure in the upper chamber. The king refused to do so; the premier and his associates resigned; and the duke of Wellington tried without success to form another Tory ministry. Earl Grey then resumed office, having secured the royal promise to create the necessary peers. This extreme step was not taken, however, for the mere threat of it brought the Lords to terms. In 1832 the long-debated bill quietly became law.

Passage of the First Reform Act

[1] William IV (1830–1837), a brother of George IV

The First Reform Act achieved two results. It suppressed most of the "rotten" and "pocket" boroughs, thus setting free a large number of seats in the House of Commons for distribution among towns and counties which were either unrepresented or insufficiently represented. It also gave the franchise in the counties to tenants who paid a rent of at least ten pounds a year, and in the towns to all who owned or rented a building of the same annual value. The act thus considerably increased the number of voters in the United Kingdom. Workingmen and agricultural laborers — the majority of the population — still remained unenfranchised.

Provisions of the First Reform Act

The First Reform Act effected a momentous change in British politics. The Revolution of 1688–1689 had transferred the chief power from the sovereign to the upper class, or landed aristocracy.[1] The parliamentary revolution of 1832 shifted the balance to the middle class of merchants, manufacturers, and professional men — the Continental *bourgeoisie*. Henceforth for many years it continued to rule Great Britain.

Advent of the middle class

The events of 1832 have another significance as well. They proved that the Tory aristocracy, entrenched in the House of Lords, could not permanently defy the popular will, that "it was impossible for the whisper of a faction to prevail against the voice of a nation." The Lords yielded, however ungraciously, to public opinion. Their action meant that for the future Great Britain would progress by peaceful, orderly reform, rather than by revolution. That country is the only considerable state in Europe which during the past century has not undergone a revolutionary change of government.

Reform versus revolution

111. Political Democracy, 1832–1867

The passage of the First Reform Act profoundly affected the two historic parties. The Whigs appeared henceforth as

[1] See page 172.

the particular champions of all liberal, progressive measures. They soon discarded their old name and began to call themselves Liberals. The Tories, now known as Conservatives, were in theory opposed to further changes, but when holding office generally went as far as their opponents in the direction of reform. Both parties realized that the time had come for Great Britain to correct old abuses and to modernize her institutions.

Liberals and Conservatives

The next thirty-five years constituted a veritable era of reform in almost every field. During these years Parliament abolished slavery throughout the British Empire, enacted a judicious Poor Law to reduce pauperism, passed legislation ameliorating conditions of employment in factories and mines, modified the harshness of the criminal code, began to establish a system of popular education, and adopted free trade. Nothing was done, however, toward further extension of the suffrage.

An era of reform

Queen Victoria

The failure of Parliament to enfranchise the masses produced much popular discontent, and during the early years of Queen Victoria's reign [1] the movement known as Chartism began to make headway among workingmen. The Chartists derived their name from a charter of liberties which they proposed to secure. It demanded the famous Six Points: (1) universal manhood suffrage; (2) secret voting; (3) equal electoral dis-

Chartism

[1] Victoria (1837–1901) was the niece of George IV and William IV.

tricts; (4) removal of the property qualifications for membership in Parliament; (5) payment of members of Parliament; and (6) annual parliamentary elections. All but the last of these demands, which seemed so radical at the time, have since been granted.

The "February Revolution" in Paris, reverberating in London, led to preparations for a great Chartist demonstration. Six million persons, it was announced, had signed a petition for the Six Points, and half a million men, many of them armed, made ready to carry it to Parliament. The government took alarm and put a large force of special constables under the command of the aged but still courageous duke of Wellington, to protect life and property. The government's firm attitude, coupled with a downpour of rain on the day appointed for the procession, dampened the spirits as well as the bodies of the Chartists, and they dispersed. Their monster petition, upon examination, was found to contain less than half the boasted number of signatures, and of these many were fictitious. This exposure discredited the whole Chartist movement.[1]

The Chartist Petition, 1848

The collapse of Chartism did not end the agitation for a more democratic Great Britain. The popular movement there owed much to the outcome of the American Civil War, which was regarded as a triumph for democracy. It began to seem anomalous that British workingmen should be denied the vote about to be granted negroes in the United States. Two great statesmen — one a Liberal and the other a Conservative — perceived this clearly, and each became an advocate of further parliamentary reform. The two statesmen were Gladstone and Disraeli.

New political leaders

William Ewart Gladstone, the son of a rich Liverpool merchant of Scottish birth, had been educated at aristocratic Eton and Oxford. When only twenty-four years old, he entered Parliament from a "pocket" borough. Gladstone's rise was rapid, for he had wealth, family

Gladstone, 1809–1898

[1] Charles Kingsley's *Alton Locke* is a novel dealing with Christian Socialism and Chartism.

influence, an attractive personality, wide knowledge both of books and of men, enormous energy, and oratorical gifts of a high order. All things considered, no Englishman of Gladstone's generation equaled him as a public speaker. His voice, singularly clear and far-reaching, his eagle glance, his command of language, and his earnestness made him an impressive figure, whether in the House of Commons or on the platform. This "rising hope of the stern, unbending Tories," as the historian Macaulay called him, in time disappointed his political backers by joining the Liberal Party. It was as a Liberal that Gladstone four times became prime minister of Great Britain.[1]

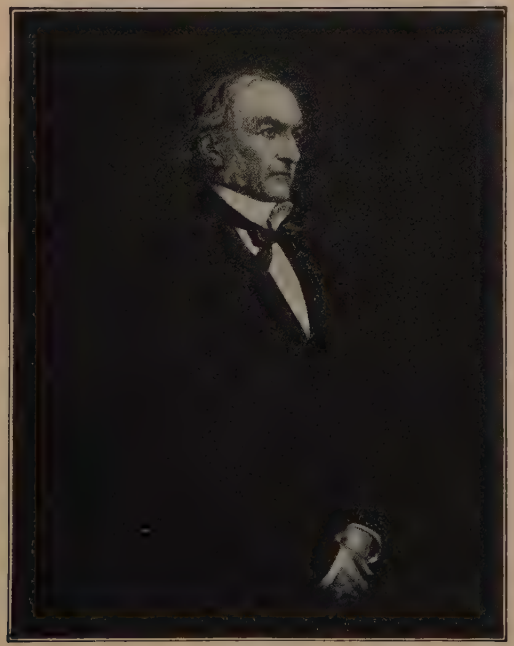
Disraeli, 1804–1881

Benjamin Disraeli belonged to a converted Jewish family of London. His father, a well-known author, had him educated privately. He first appeared before the public as a novelist, and in one book after another proceeded to heap ridicule upon the upper classes. Entering Parliament as an independent radical, Disraeli's florid speech and eccentricities of dress — he wore bright colored waistcoats and decked himself with rings — at first only provoked derision. Gradually, however, the young man's cleverness and courage overcame the prejudice against him. His own radical viewpoint altered, and before long he became a Conservative, posing henceforth as a staunch defender of the Crown, the Established Church, and the aristocracy. Disraeli proved to be an expert parliamentarian; always formidable in debate. For thirty years he absolutely dominated the Conservative Party and twice he realized a once "wild ambition" to be prime minister.[2]

Passage of the Second Reform Act

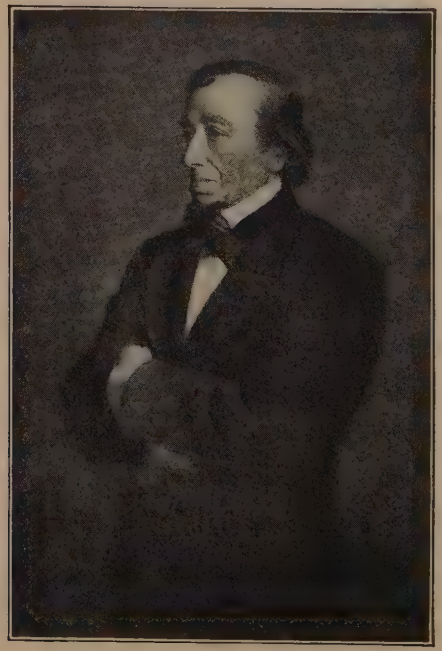
In 1866 Gladstone, then leader of the House of Commons, introduced a measure for franchise reform. Such old-fashioned Liberals as were opposed to further concessions to democracy combined with the Conservatives to defeat the bill and overthrow the ministry. The Conservatives then returned to power, with Disraeli the real, though not the titular chief of the party. The Conservative ministry was even less friendly to reform than

[1] In 1868–1874, 1880–1885, 1886, and 1892–1894.
[2] In 1868 and 1874–1880.



GLADSTONE

After the painting by Sir J. E. Millais.
National Gallery, London.



DISRAELI

its Liberal predecessor, but popular demonstrations throughout the country convinced Disraeli that an extension of the suffrage could no longer be delayed. He decided "to dish the Whigs" by granting it himself. This was done in 1867.

The Second Reform Act gave the vote in the boroughs to all householders, whatever the value of their property, and to all lodgers who paid ten pounds or more a year for unfurnished rooms. By thus enfranchising workingmen, it almost doubled the electorate. The only considerable class still without the vote was that of the agricultural laborers.

Provisions of the Second Reform Act

112. Political Democracy, 1867–1918

Disraeli expected that the Second Reform Act would unite under the Conservative banner both aristocrats and working people against the great middle class represented by the Liberals. He was disappointed. The next election showed that the enfranchised workingmen preferred Gladstone's Liberal leadership. In 1872 Gladstone, who had now become premier, secured the passage of a bill providing for the secret or Australian[1] ballot, in place of open elections. The Ballot Act did away with the old-time corruption and intimidation in elections.

Ballot Act, 1872

During his second ministry Gladstone carried democratic reform still farther by the passage of the Third Reform Act. It made the county franchise practically identical with that of the boroughs, thus giving the vote to agricultural laborers. Most Conservatives and many Liberals thought it dangerous to go to such lengths. But Gladstone answered: "I take my stand upon the broad principle that the enfranchisement of capable citizens, be they few or be they many — and if they be many so much the better — is an addition to the strength of the state."

Third Reform Act, 1884

The United Kingdom after 1884 enjoyed virtually universal manhood suffrage, such as had already been established in

[1] First used by British colonists in Victoria, Australia, and now found in the United States and many other countries.

France (1848), Germany (1871), and the United States. But the demand for "votes for women," which began to be heard from about this time, only aroused the anger or ridicule of Liberals and Conservatives alike. Nevertheless, woman suffrage organizations were formed, debates were held on the platform and in the newspapers, and equal franchise bills were introduced into Parliament. The movement made slow progress, though some women received the right to vote in local elections. A number of the leaders, including Mrs. Emmeline Pankhurst and her two daughters, then adopted "militant" methods, in order to bring the issue prominently before the public. This they succeeded in doing, though the average Britisher was rather repelled than attracted by the petty outrages which the "suffragettes" committed. As late as 1913 Parliament rejected a bill for a reform of the suffrage, in which women should share.

Agitation for woman suffrage

The World War gave women the vote in the United Kingdom. Their patriotic service in the hospitals, in munition factories, and on the farms had its reward in 1918, when both parties in Parliament assented to an Equal Franchise Act. This measure ranks in importance with the three acts of 1832, 1867, and 1884. It not only confers the franchise for the House of Commons upon substantially every man over twenty-one years of age in Great Britain and Ireland, but also confers it upon every woman over thirty years of age who has hitherto voted in local elections or is the wife of a local elector.[1] There are now over twenty-one million voters in the United Kingdom, or nearly one half of the population.

Equal Franchise Act, 1918

After almost a century of gradual reform Great Britain has thus definitely abandoned the old theory, rooted in feudal conceptions, of the franchise as a *privilege* attached to the ownership of property, especially land. Voting henceforth becomes a *right* to be enjoyed by every

Democratic Great Britain

[1] The first woman to be elected to the House of Commons was Lady Astor (a former American girl), who took her seat in December, 1919.

citizen, whether man or woman. A general election for members of Parliament is now an appeal to a responsible people, and the will of the majority of the people must be carried out by Parliament. Politically, Great Britain ranks among the most democratic of modern countries.

113. Government of the United Kingdom

The British constitution is both written and unwritten. The written part consists, first, of such documents as Magna Carta and the Bill of Rights, which represented agreements between king and people; second, of parliamentary statutes, such as the Habeas Corpus Act, the Act of Settlement, and the various Reform Acts; third, of international treaties, including the Union with Scotland and the Union with Ireland; and fourth, of the Common Law as expressed in court decisions. All these documents have never been brought together in one comprehensive instrument like the constitutions of the United States, of France, and of other modern countries.

The written constitution

The unwritten part of the British constitution includes a mass of customs binding on both Crown and Parliament. Some of them reach back to medieval times, but others are more recent, for instance, those relating to the cabinet. Traditional usages of this sort grow up about any constitution, even our own, as may be seen from comparing the constitutional provision for an electoral college with the actual method in vogue for choosing the President. In Great Britain they play a still larger part in the conduct of government, owing to the love of precedent so characteristic of the British people.

The unwritten constitution

As far as appearances go, the sovereign of Great Britain and Ireland is a divine-right monarch. Coins and proclamations still recite that he rules "by the grace of God" (*dei gratia*), and the opening words of the British national anthem are "God Save Our Lord and King." He is also, as far as appearances go, an absolute monarch. Whatever the government does, from the arrest of a criminal to the

The Crown

declaration of a war, is done in his name. But every one knows that the British sovereign now only acts by and with the advice of his responsible ministers. Should George V attempt to revive the absolutism of James II, he would meet the fate of James II.

This figurehead king occupies, nevertheless, a useful place in the British governmental system. As the representative of the nation, he often exercises a restraining, moderating influence upon public affairs, especially through his consultations with politicians of both parties. He himself stands above party. A common loyalty to the Crown, as an ancient, dignified, and permanent institution, also helps to bind together the self-governing commonwealths of the British Empire. It is a symbol of imperial unity such as could scarcely be afforded by an elective and constantly changing Presidency. The rising tide of republicanism has thus failed to affect the British monarchy, and the personal popularity of Queen Victoria, Edward VII, and George V seems to have established it more solidly than a century ago in the esteem of their subjects.

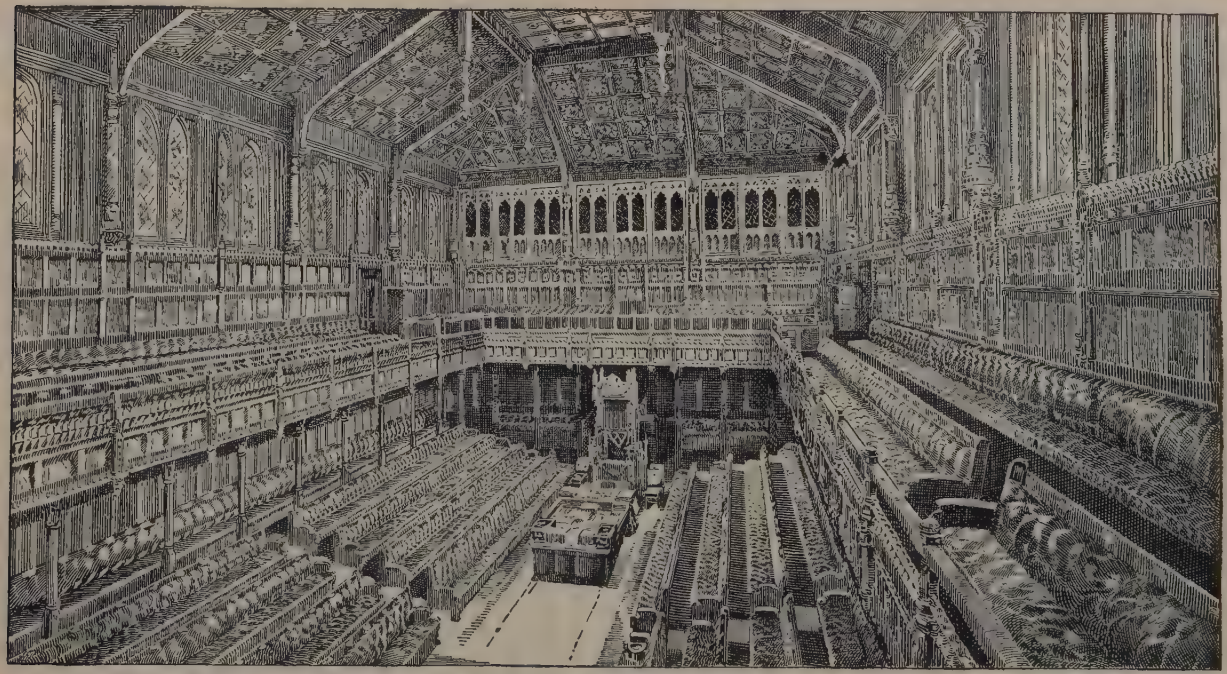
Position of the Crown

British legal theory makes Parliament consist of the Crown, the House of Lords, and the House of Commons. The share of the Crown is now limited to expressing assent to a bill after its passage by the Commons and the Lords. Such assent the king must give. The royal veto has not been expressly taken away, but Queen Anne in 1707 was the last sovereign to exercise this former prerogative. Nor may the courts set aside an act of Parliament as unconstitutional, for every statute is a part of the constitution. An American student, accustomed to the water-tight division of powers between President, Congress, and the federal courts, finds it hard to appreciate the legal omnipotence of the British Parliament. The only check upon it is the political good sense of the British people.

Parliament

The House of Lords contains upwards of seven hundred members. The Lords Spiritual include the two archbishops and most of the bishops of the Anglican Church in England. The Lords Temporal include princes

House of Lords



INTERIOR OF THE HOUSE OF COMMONS

The narrow room in which the House of Commons holds its sessions contains seats for less than 350 of the 615 members. The discomfort in crowding is compensated for by the ease of hearing. The representatives sit on benches facing one another across the aisle. The Speaker of the House occupies a chair at the end of the room. On his right are the members of the Ministry; on his left, the Opposition. The Speaker's symbol, the mace, is carried before him when he formally leaves and enters the House, and remains on the table while he occupies the chair.

of the royal blood, English peers holding office by hereditary right, sixteen representative peers of Scotland, and twenty-eight representative peers of Ireland. There are also four law lords, who, with the Lord Chancellor, form the highest court of appeal for certain cases. The Lord Chancellor presides over the House of Lords. The power to create new peers belongs to the Crown, but usually the prime minister decides who shall be selected for this honor. Distinction in any field is frequently recognized by the grant of a peerage.[1] Lawyers, authors, artists, scientists, and generals rub shoulders with gentleman landlords, capitalists, and politicians on the floor of the House of Lords.

The House of Lords was the dominant chamber until the passage of the First Reform Act. Since then it has been understood that the Lords might not oppose the Commons on any measure supported by a majority of the electorate. This purely conventional restriction was written into the constitution by the Parliament Act of 1911. The Lords agreed to it only when confronted, as in 1832, with the prospect of being "swamped" by a large number of newly created Liberal peers. The Parliament Act deprives the upper chamber of all control of money bills, that is, bills levying taxes or making appropriations. Such measures become laws one month after being sent from the Commons to the Lords, whether accepted by the latter or not. The act further provides that every other bill, passed by the Commons in three successive sessions (extending over two years at least) and rejected by the Lords at each of the three sessions, shall become law. The House of Lords is thus left with only a "suspensive veto" of legislation.

Parliament Act, 1911

The hereditary House of Lords is so frankly an anachronism in democratic Great Britain that from time to time various proposals have been made for its "mending or ending." Many reformers would like to see it become an elective upper chamber like the French and American Senates. Some radicals would abolish the House of Lords

Position of the House of Lords

[1] See page 278.

altogether, thus doing away with the bicameral system. There seems reason to believe, however, that in one form or another it will survive for many years. Birth and family still count for much in British society, and the average citizen retains a profound respect for the aristocracy.

The House of Commons

The House of Commons consists of six hundred and fifteen members, chosen by universal suffrage from equal electoral districts in Great Britain and in Ireland. Commoners serve for five years, which is the maximum life of a single Parliament. This period is curtailed whenever the Crown, on the advice of its ministers, dissolves the House of Commons and orders a new general election. Voting does not take place on one day throughout the United Kingdom; it may extend over as much as two weeks. Nor need a candidate be a resident of the district which he proposes to represent. Defeat in one constituency, therefore, does not necessarily exclude a man from Parliament; he may always "stand" for another constituency. Prominent politicians, as a rule, retain seats in the House of Commons year after year. The property qualification for members of the House of Commons has been abolished, and since 1911 they have received salaries.

Parliament works through a committee known as the cabinet.[1] This body exists purely by custom and has no place whatever in the written constitution of the United Kingdom. The cabinet usually includes about twenty commoners and lords, who belong to the party

House of Commons Mace

[1] See page 221. The terms "cabinet" and "ministry" are used interchangeably. The ministry, however, contains a large number of administrative officers who do not attend cabinet meetings.

in power. During the World War, however, a "coalition" cabinet, representing both parties, carried on the government. Members of the cabinet are selected by a caucus of the majority party in Parliament, always, of course, with the approval of the prime minister, who is the recognized leader of the party. The cabinet acts together in all matters, thus presenting a united front to Parliament and the country.

The cabinet

The cabinet shapes legislation, determines policy, and administers the laws. In secret sessions it drafts the more important measures to be laid before the House of Commons. That body may amend bills thus presented to it, but amendments are usually few and unimportant. Should a cabinet measure fail to pass the Commons, or should the Commons vote a resolution of "no confidence," custom requires the cabinet to resign or "go to the country." In the former case, the king "sends for" the leader of the opposite party and invites him to form a cabinet which will have the support of the Commons. In the latter case, the king dissolves Parliament and calls a general election. The return of a majority favorable to the cabinet permits it to remain in office; otherwise the prime minister and his associates give way to a cabinet formed by the Opposition.

Cabinet government

However powerful, the cabinet is not an irresponsible oligarchy. Public opinion prevails in Great Britain as in other democratic countries. Proposals for new legislation, as a rule, are thoroughly discussed in newspapers and on the platform before and after their submission by the cabinet to the House of Commons. No cabinet would think of backing a measure which in its judgment was not favored by the great body of the electorate. As has been noted, general elections must be held at least every five years and may be held at any time in order to secure an expression of the popular will. Furthermore, a defeat at a general election or a defeat or vote of censure in the House of Commons is not always necessary for the downfall of a cabinet. The prime minister sometimes resigns office even

Public opinion and the cabinet

when he retains a majority in the Commons, if he feels that his policies are no longer acceptable to the country at large. Lord Rosebery did this in 1895, and so did Mr. Balfour ten years later. Public opinion thus affects all legislative measures and determines the rise and fall of cabinets.

The Liberals and Tories [1] continued in control of Parliament throughout the nineteenth century. The twentieth century has seen the rise of the Labor Party, which in 1924 became strong enough to form a cabinet and for a time to conduct the government. From the middle 'eighties the Irish Nationalists, who advocated Home Rule for Ireland, formed an important minority party, usually in alliance with the Liberals. The Nationalists, however, gave way to the Sinn Feiners, whose program was a completely independent Ireland.

Political parties

114. Ireland and the Irish Question

Nature has been less favorable to Ireland than to Great Britain. Communication between different parts of the island is interrupted by numerous lakes, large areas of bog and marsh, and isolated groups of mountains. The Shannon forms the only navigable river. A moist climate, resulting in an average of over two hundred rainy days in the year, makes much of the soil too wet for the cultivation of cereals. The green meadows of Ireland, which give it the name of the Emerald Isle, are consequently better adapted to cattle raising and dairy pursuits than to farming. The natural resources of the country in coal and minerals are very limited. It also suffers from a remote position on the western margin of Europe, with Great Britain in a position to intercept its Continental trade. The relative backwardness of Ireland, agriculturally, industrially, and commercially, provides a partial explanation for its failure to keep pace with the rest of the United Kingdom in wealth and population.

Ireland

The people of Ireland are commonly known as Celts. This

[1] Since 1886 often called Unionists, because they oppose Home Rule and desire to retain the union of Great Britain and Ireland under a common Parliament.

only means that, like the Welsh, they speak a Celtic language. The Romans never attempted to conquer the aboriginal inhabitants of Ireland. The Northmen in the ninth century overran part of it, settling chiefly along the coast, where they founded Dublin and Limerick. Throughout the Middle Ages most of the island remained divided among numerous clans and tribes. Irish history during this period is a confused record of the struggles for ascendancy between the O'Neills of Ulster, the O'Connors of Connaught, the McCarthys of Munster, and other native chieftains.

The Irish

The English entered Ireland during the reign of Henry II in the twelfth century. They first occupied the region around Dublin, which received the name of the Pale.[1] Later sovereigns, especially Henry VIII and Queen Elizabeth, extended English dominion throughout the island and sought to Anglicize it by introducing the English language, the Common Law, and the Anglican Church. The Irish, however, would not give up their own Celtic speech, their tribal customs, and their Roman Catholic faith. Ireland constantly seethed with rebellion, and it required the iron hand of Oliver Cromwell to bring peace to the distracted country. At the time of the "Glorious Revolution" the Roman Catholic Irish espoused the side of James II, but William of Orange (William III) completely defeated James II at the battle of the Boyne in 1690. For the next century Ireland remained quiescent under alien rule.

The English in Ireland

The government of England in its efforts to subdue Ireland early adopted the policy of colonizing parts of it with immigrants, who would be more tractable than the natives. Early in the reign of James I Protestant Scotch and English were settled in the province of Ulster, where they received ample estates and privileges. After Cromwell's pacification of Ireland, other "plantations" of Englishmen took place in Leinster and Munster. William III subsequently rewarded his adherents by granting them more than a million acres of Irish soil.

Land confiscations

[1] See the map on page 165.

These confiscations gave rise to an acute agrarian problem in Ireland. Much of the country belonged to the heirs and successors of the Englishmen who had received Irish estates. They lived as a rule in England, seldom or never visited Ireland, and took no interest in the welfare of the Irish tenantry. The management of their property was left to hard-hearted agents, who seized every opportunity to raise the rents of tenants.

Absentee landlordism

Such opportunities constantly arose. There were few ways of earning a living in Ireland except from the soil, and keen competition among the peasantry for farms forced up rentals to an exorbitant amount. The landlord, as a rule, received everything above a bare subsistence for the tenant and his family. "Rack-renting" increased the misery of the peasants. All improvements on a farm had to be made by the tenant, but if he made them his rent was immediately raised. Refusal to pay it meant eviction from his cottage home. No wonder that under this system the soil was wretchedly cultivated.

"Rack-renting"

Year after year Irish peasants sank deeper in poverty. The high rents and the scanty yield of the ill-used soil kept them constantly on the verge of starvation. They did starve whenever there was a failure of the potato crop, on which they chiefly relied for food.[1] Conditions were worst during the Potato Famine of 1846–1847. Eighty thousand persons, it is estimated, perished at this time, in spite of charity and government aid. The survivors emigrated in great numbers to America. Within four years the population of the country decreased by more than a million. The decline continued to the end of the nineteenth century, until Ireland had lost by mortality and emigration half of its people.

The Potato Famine

Many years elapsed before the British government made a resolute attempt to remedy agrarian distress in Ireland. Gladstone's Land Act in 1881 marks the first constructive legislation to meet the Irish demand for the "three F's"—fair rent (a rent fixed by public authority

Land legislation

[1] The potato had been introduced into Ireland from America.

instead of by competition), fixity of tenure (the right of a peasant to hold his land as long as he paid rent), and free sale (his right to sell to his successor any improvements made by him). The Land Purchase Acts, passed by the Conservative Party in 1891 and 1903, create a state fund from which tenants may borrow money on easy terms to buy their holdings. Thousands of Irishmen have already availed themselves of this opportunity to get rid of the hated landlords and become independent proprietors. The agrarian problem in Ireland bids fair soon to be solved.

Disestablishment, 1869

The religious problem has already been solved. Ireland, it will be remembered, did not become Protestant at the time of the Reformation, and to this day three-fourths of the population remain attached to the Roman Catholic faith. Nevertheless, Irish Catholics had to pay tithes for the support of the Anglican Church in Ireland, until after the middle of the nineteenth century. Gladstone's first ministry removed this grievance by disestablishing the Anglican Church in Ireland. Disestablishment meant that Ireland would no longer have a state church to which all the people, irrespective of their religious beliefs, were obliged to contribute.

Home Rule

The third problem is that of Home Rule. Since the Act of Union in 1801, Ireland has continued to be ruled by the British Parliament, in which the English and Scots hold an overwhelming majority. Irishmen objected to this arrangement and demanded the restoration of the former Irish Parliament, which sat in Dublin. The first leader of the Home Rule agitation was the celebrated orator and patriot, Daniel O'Connell. His failure to secure by constitutional means the repeal of the Act of Union led to the formation of a Young Ireland party, which unsuccessfully imitated the Continental revolutions of 1848. About twenty years later Irish-Americans organized the Fenian Brotherhood, a secret revolutionary society. Fenians in America tried to invade Canada, while those in Ireland fomented riots, blew up public buildings, and murdered officials. Terrorism failed, as always, but it at least kept the attention of British statesmen fixed on the perennial Irish Question.

During the 'seventies and 'eighties of the last century the cause of Home Rule found its ablest advocate in Charles Stewart Parnell. He was a landlord and a Protestant, but nevertheless won the enthusiastic support of all Irish patriots. Parnell took the leadership of the Irish Nationalists, a political party devoted to Home Rule. When Gladstone entered upon his third ministry in 1886, the Nationalists were numerous enough to hold the balance of power in the House of Commons. Gladstone could only secure their support by introducing a Home Rule Bill. So bitter was the opposition to it that nearly a hundred Liberals deserted their party and joined the Conservatives, thus defeating the measure. In 1893 the "Grand Old Man," now premier for the fourth time, brought in his second Home Rule Bill. It passed the Commons but met defeat in the Lords. Mr. Asquith's Liberal ministry subsequently introduced a third Home Rule Bill. Having thrice passed the House of Commons, it became a law in 1914, notwithstanding its rejection by the House of Lords. The outbreak of the World War, however, suspended the operation of the measure. It proved to be so unpopular with all classes of Irishmen that in 1920, Mr. Lloyd George secured the passage by Parliament of still another Home Rule Bill. This measure provided for the creation of two legislative bodies, one in the north of Ireland (Ulster) and one in the south, with a council selected by the two legislatures to form a connecting link between them. The Irish parliaments were to control all local matters, most of the administrative machinery except the army and navy, and were to have powers over taxation equivalent to

Home Rule bills

CHARLES STEWART PARNELL

those of state legislatures in the United States. Had such a compromise gone into effect, the representation of Ireland in the British Parliament would have been reduced to forty.

Ulster

The recent land legislation, disestablishment, and the Home Rule bills sufficiently indicated the desire of liberal-minded Britishers to do the right thing by Ireland. Nevertheless, there was still an Irish Question. The answer to it was complicated by the existence in Ulster of a part of Ireland which is not truly Irish. More than half of the people of Ulster are descendants of Protestant immigrants during the seventeenth century. It was these Orangemen, as they called themselves because they adhered to William of Orange, who overthrew James II and his Irish army at the famous battle of the Boyne. Since then there has been only antipathy between Ulster and the rest of the Emerald Isle. Rightly or wrongly, the Ulsterites believed that with Home Rule the Catholic majority in an Irish Parliament would exclude them from political life, tax them excessively, and deprive them of religious liberty. They preferred, therefore, to retain the Act of Union, or else to have a separate parliament of their own.

The Sinn Fein

Meanwhile, an agitation in favor of complete independence had made rapid progress in the rest of Ireland. It owed much to a group of quiet scholars, who devoted themselves to the revival of Irish literature, the old Irish language (Erse), and the sentiment of Irish nationality. This national movement gave birth to the Sinn Fein[1] Party. The members would have nothing to do with Home Rule and insisted upon the entire separation of Ireland from Great Britain. In the spring of 1916 they allied themselves with radical workingmen in Dublin and proclaimed an Irish Republic. British troops put down the insurrection and executed some of its leaders. The Sinn Feiners secured nearly all the Irish representation in Parliament at the general election in 1918, but refused to take their seats at Westminster. Members of the organization entered upon negotiations with Great Britain in the effort to secure complete self-government for Ireland.

[1] Irish for "Ourselves alone."

GROWTH OF THE BRITISH EMPIRE
Before 1714 A. D. (accession of George I.)
Between 1714 and 1837 A. D. (accession of Victoria)
Between 1837 and 1914 A. D.
Since 1914 A. D.
Territories no longer under British rule
DOMINION OF CANADA
UNITED STATES
GREAT BRITAIN
Ireland
Channel Is.
Newfoundland
Labrador
Bermuda Is.
Bahama Is.
Gibraltar
Malta
Cyprus
Mesopotamia
Palestine
Egypt
Anglo-Egyptian Sudan
Aden
Sokotra
INDIA
Ceylon
Weihaiwei
Hongkong
Br. Honduras
Jamaica
West Indies
Br. Guiana
Gambia
Sierra Leone
Nigeria
Gold Coast
Br. Somaliland
Kenya
Seychelles
Tanganyika
Ascension
St. Helena
Rhodesia
Union of S. Africa
Bech. Prot.
S. Africa Mandate
UNION OF S. AFRICA
Amirante Is.
Rodriguez
Mauritius
Keeling Is. (Cocos I.)
Straits Settlements
Br. N. Borneo
Australian Mandate
New Britain
Solomon Is.
Santa Cruz
Gilbert Is.
Ellice Is.
Br. New Guinea
Fiji Is.
AUSTRALIA
NEW ZEALAND
Tasmania
Bounty I.
Auckland I.
Antipodes I.
Campbell I.
Union Is.
Samoa Is.
Cook Is.
Tonga Is.
Tristan da Cunha
Falkland Is.
S. Georgia
Graham Land
ARCTIC CIRCLE
TROPIC OF CANCER
EQUATOR
TROPIC OF CAPRICORN
180° 150° 120° 90° 60° 30° 0° 30° 60° 90° 120° 150° 180
60° 30° 0° 30° 60°
Longitude West from Greenwich
Longitude East from Greenwich
THE M.-N. WORKS

These negotiations have now been crowned with success. Their result, in 1922, was the creation of the Irish Free State, with its capital at Dublin. Great Britain grants to it the same measure of freedom that is enjoyed by Canada and other self-governing Dominions of the British Empire. Ulster, however, has insisted upon exclusion from the Free State and maintains its own "Government of Northern Ireland," as provided for in the Home Rule Act of 1920. The Irish have thus secured the right to govern themselves, but Great Britain still keeps some measure of control over them in military and international matters.

Irish Free State

115. Extension of the British Empire

The United Kingdom is the cradle and present center of the British Empire. That empire is of comparatively recent origin. In 1600 England did not possess a mile of foreign territory, excepting the Channel Islands. Before the end of the seventeenth century the foundations of the empire were laid all the world over. Valuable trading stations had been secured in India and the East Indies, on the coast of Africa, and in the West Indies, while many settlements had been planted along the eastern shores of North America.

To 1689

This first period of imperial history was marked by three wars between England and Holland.[1] All the fighting took place on the sea. Neither side could claim a decided victory, but the Dutch had to surrender the colony of New Amsterdam and to admit the maritime supremacy of England.

The next period of imperial history saw the long struggle between Great Britain and France, which has been called a second Hundred Years' War.[2] Its outcome dissipated French dreams of dominion in India and Canada and established British sea-power more firmly than ever. As an offset to these gains, Great Britain lost the Thirteen Colonies — the "one disruption" of her empire.

Between 1689 and 1783

[1] The Dutch Wars of 1652–1654, 1665–1667, and 1672–1674.

[2] See page 260 and note 1.

The wars of the revolutionary and Napoleonic era only confirmed Great Britain's mastery of the ocean, and after Lord Nelson's victories she utilized her naval superiority to appropriate most of the remaining French colonies. The dependence of Holland on France enabled the British to seize the Dutch colonies of Guiana, Ceylon, and South Africa (Cape of Good Hope). Their colonization of Australia also began during this third period of imperial history.

Between 1783 and 1815

The British Empire continued to expand throughout the past century in India, Africa, Australia, North America, and the islands of the seas. The Union Jack now floats over a quarter of the land surface of the globe.[1]

Since 1815

116. Organization of the British Empire

Unlike most of the great empires of the past, which stretched continuously on land, the British Empire is scattered over all the continents, and its several states are separated from one another by all the great oceans of the world. British trade routes and lines of communi-

Sea-power and the empire

[1] Chief British Possessions in 1914

Europe: The United Kingdom, Gibraltar, Malta.

Africa: Ascension Island, St. Helena, Gambia, Sierra Leone, Gold Coast Colony, Ashanti, Northern Territories, Nigeria, Union of South Africa (Cape of Good Hope, Natal, Orange Free State, Transvaal), Basutoland, Swaziland, Bechuanaland Protectorate, Rhodesia, Nyasaland Protectorate, Zanzibar, British East Africa, Uganda Protectorate, British Somaliland, Anglo-Egyptian Sudan, Egypt, Mauritius, Seychelles.

Asia: Cyprus, Aden, Sokotra, Perim, Ceylon, British India (Madras, Bombay, Bengal, United Provinces of Agra and Oudh, Punjab, Behar and Orissa, Central Provinces and Berar, Northwest Frontier Province, Ajmer-Merwara, Coorg, Delhi, Baluchistan, Assam, Burma, Andaman and Nicobar Islands), Feudatory Indian States, Malay States, Straits Settlements, Hongkong, Weihaiwei.

Oceania: British North Borneo, Sarawak, Papua or British New Guinea, Australian Commonwealth (New South Wales, Victoria, Queensland, South Australia, Western Australia, Tasmania), New Zealand, Fiji Islands, Tonga Islands, Cook Islands, Gilbert Islands.

America: Newfoundland and Labrador, Dominion of Canada (Prince Edward Island, Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, Quebec, Ontario, Manitoba, Saskatchewan, Alberta, British Columbia, Yukon, Mackenzie, Franklin, Keewatin), Bermudas, British West Indies (Bahamas, Jamaica, Leeward Islands, Windward Islands, Barbados, Trinidad, Tobago), British Honduras, British Guiana, Falkland Islands.

cation by steamship and submarine cable lie across thousands of miles of water. Without sea-power the empire could not be preserved. It would break into fragments, some becoming independent countries and others falling a prey to their stronger neighbors.

Sea-power depends primarily on superiority of naval force, which the British secured by their maritime warfare with the Dutch and French in the seventeenth, eighteenth, and nineteenth centuries. The World War, resulting in the capture or destruction of most of the German fleet, confirmed Great Britain's position as mistress of the seas. This position, however, she voluntarily surrendered in 1922 by her agreements (in company with the United States, France, Italy, and Japan) at the Washington Conference on the Limitation of Armament.

The British navy

Sea-power is also dependent to some degree upon the existence of naval bases, where warships may obtain coal and other supplies. Great Britain possesses them at convenient intervals on nearly all the great trade routes. Gibraltar, Malta, and Cyprus give her control of the Mediterranean. Suez, Aden, and various islands in the Indian Ocean guard the shortest route to India and Australia. In the Far East she has Singapore, Hongkong, Weihaiwei, and other important ports. Her African stations include the islands of Ascension, St. Helena, Mauritius, and Seychelles. In American waters the Bermudas and the British West Indies provide stations for military and commercial purposes, all the more valuable since the completion of the Panama Canal. These naval bases are the real sea-links of the empire.

British naval bases

The population of the British Empire, excluding the United Kingdom, is estimated at 400,000,000. Of these, about 20,000,000 are "colonials," the descendants of English, French, Dutch, and Spanish immigrants. The other inhabitants are "natives" — a comprehensive term to include the peoples of India, together with Malays, Chinese, Polynesians, Arabs, negroes, and American Indians. All the races of man, all stages of culture from sav-

"Colonials" and "natives"

agery to civilization, all the principal religions, and nearly all the principal languages, of mankind are represented in the British possessions.

British imperialism

The word empire usually suggests the autocratic rule of conquerors over subjects. Autocracy indeed exists in the British Empire, for the "natives," who comprise nineteen-twentieths of the population, have as yet little or no voice in the management of their own concerns. On the whole, Great Britain rules them wisely, justly, even benevolently. She maintains peace — the *Pax Britannica* — keeps domestic order, abolishes such evil customs as slavery, cannibalism, and human sacrifice, introduces systems of education and sanitation, and spends large sums for the development of the natural resources of each possession. More and more it becomes the conscious purpose of Great Britain to train the more advanced of her native subjects in democracy, so that they may ultimately take a place among the great self-governing peoples of the empire.[1]

India

As respects government, India stands by itself. British India, which includes two-thirds of the area of the country and three-fourths of the population, is ruled directly from London through a cabinet officer called the Secretary of State for India. The actual administration rests in the hands of an appointive viceroy, assisted by two councils and the officials of the Indian Civil Service. The remainder of India consists of native or feudatory states, about seven hundred in number. These continue to be ruled by their own princes, under the oversight and protection of Great Britain.

Protectorates and spheres of influence

Besides the feudatory states of India, Great Britain has numerous protectorates in Africa, including Egypt, the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan, and various tropical districts valuable for their productions but generally unfit for European settlement. She also possesses certain spheres of influence in Africa and other parts of the world, where foreign countries agree not to acquire territory or control, either by treaty or annexation.

[1] Read Rudyard Kipling's poem, *The White Man's Burden.*

120°
150°
180°
150°
120°
ARCTIC OCEAN
Dawson
NORTH A
DOMINION
Winnipeg
Vancouver
ASIA
UNITED S
60°
Weihaiwei
30°
(INDIA)
BURMA
Hongkong
TROPIC OF CANCER
PACIFIC OCEAN
BR. HONDUR
ANDAMAN IS.
NICOBAR IS.
STRAITS SETTL.
MALAY STATES
LAGUNA
SARAWAK
BR. N. BORNEO
Singapore
AUSTRALIAN MANDATE
GILBERT IS.
FANNING I.
CHRISTMAS I.
NAURU
BR. MAN.
PHOENIX IS. (Br.)
JARVIS I. (Br.)
MALDEN I.
STARBUCK I. (Br.)
DUDOZA I. (Br.)
MANAHIKI IS.
EQUATOR
ELLICE IS.
UNION GROUP
BR. NEW GUINEA
CHRISTMAS I.
SOLOMON IS.
KEELING (COCOS) IS.
SAMOA
NEW ZEALAND MANDATE
NEW HEBRIDES
FIJI IS.
TONGA IS.
COOK IS.
OCEANICA
INDIAN OCEAN
AUSTRALIA
PITCAIRN I. (Br.)
DUCIE I. (Br.)
TROPIC
NORFOLK I. (To Aust.)
KERMADEC IS.
Labuan Colony, Christmas and Keeling Is., are annexed to Singapore Settlement, a part of the Straits Settlements Crown Colony
Perth
Adelaide
Melbourne
Sydney
LORD HOWE I.
NEW ZEALAND
NORTH I.
SOUTH I.
TASMANIA
Hobart
STEWART I.
ANTIPODES
AUCKLAND I.
CHATHAM IS.
BOUNTY IS.
MACQUARIE I.
CAMPBELL I.
ANTARCTIC OCEAN
60°
International Date Line
Scales along the Equator
Nautical Miles
0 500 1000 2000 3000
English M
0 500 1000
THE MATTHEWS-NORTHRUP WORKS, BUFFALO, N. Y.
Longitude 120° East from 150° Greenwich 180° Longitude 150° West from 120° Greenwich

60°
30°
0°
30°
60°
ARCTIC OCEAN
ARCTIC CIRCLE
SCOTLAND
BRITISH ISLES
IRELAND
ENGLAND
London
EUROPE
ASIA
Labrador
NEWFOUNDLAND
Halfax
Gibraltar
MALTA
CYPRUS
MESOPOTAMIA BR. MANDATE
PALESTINE BR. MANDATE
HEJAZ
Cairo
EGYPT
BERMUDAS
BAHAMA IS.
ATLANTIC OCEAN
ANGLO-EGYPTIAN SUDAN
ADEN
KURIA (Br.) MURIA IS.
SOKOTRA I. (Br.)
BERIM I. (Br.)
BR. SOMALI COAST
BALUCHISTAN
Delhi
INDIA
Calcutta
Bombay
LACCADIVE IS.
MALDIVE IS.
CEYLON
AFRICA
GAMBIA
SIERRA LEONE
GOLD COAST
NIGERIA
TOGO BR. MAN.
UGANDA
BR. EAST AFRICA
BR. AFR. BR. MAN.
ZANZIBAR
SEYCHELLES
AMIRANTE IS.
BARBADOS
TRINIDAD
Georgetown
BR. GUIANA
ASCENSION I.
ST. HELENA
SOUTH AMERICA
NYASALAND
RHODESIA
INDIAN OCEAN
RODRIGUEZ I.
MAURITIUS I.
UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA MANDATE
BECH. Pretoria
OR. FR. STATE
TRANSV. Johannesburg
NATAL
CAPE OF GOOD HOPE
UNION OF S. AFRICA
Cape Town
FALKLAND IS.
SOUTH GEORGIA
SOUTH SHETLAND IS.
SOUTH ORKNEY IS.
GRAHAM LAND
THE BRITISH EMPIRE
British Isles
Self-governing Colonies
Crown Colonies
Protectorates
Chartered Companies
Naval and Military Posts
India
Mandates
Islands belonging to British Empire but unattached are marked (Br.)
60°
30°
0°
Longitude
30° East from
60° Greenwich

In the seventeenth century trading companies chartered by the Crown established nearly all the American colonies of Great Britain and laid the foundation of her Indian dominions. In the nineteenth century similar chartered trading companies carried the British flag into the interior of Africa and among the islands of the Pacific. The British South Africa Company (1889), organized by Cecil Rhodes, still controls the vast tract of territory called Rhodesia. Similarly, the British North Borneo Company (1882) governs North Borneo, though this country has now been declared a protectorate.

Chartered companies

The most numerous group of British possessions is composed of the Crown colonies. They are all under governors appointed by the Crown. In a few Crown colonies the governor exercises entire authority, both legislative and executive; in the others he is assisted by councils which are sometimes nominated by the Crown and sometimes selected by the colonists. This system of government resembles that of the royal colonies in America before the Revolution.[1] The Crown colonies lie chiefly within the tropics and contain relatively few English-speaking inhabitants. Examples are the British West Indies, British Guiana, Sierra Leone, Nigeria, Ceylon, and the Straits Settlements.

Crown colonies

The group of self-governing colonies is small in number, but it includes Canada, Newfoundland, Australia, New Zealand, and South Africa. Their government closely parallels that of the United Kingdom. In each colony the Crown is represented by a governor or governor-general; the House of Lords, by an upper chamber; and the House of Commons, by a popularly elected assembly. Each one has also a prime minister and the cabinet system. Great Britain controls the foreign relations of these five colonies, but otherwise allows them practically complete independence in matters of legislation. Without interference, they tax themselves, impose tariff duties, even on British goods, control immigration, raise their own armies, support their own navies,

Self-governing colonies

[1] See page 254.

and have their own national flags. They are, in fact, "colonial nations."

The nineteenth century was well advanced before Great Britain learned the right policy to adopt toward the "colonials" in North America, Australasia and South Africa. The rising tide of democratic sentiment, as seen in the reform of parliamentary representation, more than anything else stirred the British people to extend full rights to their colonies. Political emancipation at home had a natural result in political emancipation abroad. Canada first received self-government in the 'forties of the last century, and since then Great Britain has cordially bestowed the same precious gift upon her Australasian and South African dominions. Though virtually independent, they continue to enjoy the protection of the British Empire and to share in its glory.

British colonial policy

This change of British colonial policy, which has converted so much of the empire into an alliance of free states, is one of the outstanding facts of modern history. It was the rare good fortune of Great Britain to secure in the territories of her self-governing colonies practically all the available area of the world with a climate and productions similar to those of the home land and not too thickly occupied by native peoples. Their vast extent, enormous resources, and rapidly growing population give promise of unlimited development in the future. They form a Greater Britain for the perpetuation through the ages of the language, laws, and institutions of the mother country.

Greater Britain

117. Imperial Federation

Great Britain did not set out deliberately to conquer a fourth of the globe. Many of her acquisitions were made reluctantly and often as an incident to the Continental wars upon which she engaged. In fact, colonial expansion was either distasteful or indifferent to most Englishmen. The French statesman, Turgot,[1] had compared colonies to fruits which, when ripe, drop from the parent tree, and the

The "little Englanders"

[1] See page 299.

loss of the Thirteen Colonies by Great Britain apparently confirmed the truth of this maxim. It seemed the height of unwisdom for the British people to tax themselves for the support and protection of colonies destined soon to become independent. Furthermore, Adam Smith and other *laissez-faire* [1] economists, whose views increasingly affected public opinion, taught that colonies were really unnecessary to national prosperity. The United States had continued to trade heavily with Great Britain after securing independence.[2] If trade with the colonies continued, it mattered little or not whether the Union Jack flew over them. Such arguments had great influence upon the Liberal Party, which controlled the British government through so much of the nineteenth century. Gladstone and his followers were frankly "little Englanders," who turned their eyes away from colonial enterprise and devoted themselves to domestic reforms.

The last fifty years have witnessed a profound change in Great Britain's attitude toward her colonies. Rapid transportation by railways and steamships, together with telegraphs and submarine cables, swept away the barriers of distance between the mother land and her overseas offspring. It was vastly easier than ever before to secure their coöperation. A change in the international situation likewise made their coöperation seem more desirable than ever before. After 1871 Great Britain occupied a position of "splendid isolation" in European politics, without an ally on the Continent. The expansion of Russia in Asia, threatening India, the rise of Japan to a predominant position in the Far East, and above all, the growing competition of Germany in commerce, colonies, and naval armaments troubled British statesmen, who feared that further isolation might spell their country's ruin. Instead of valuing colonial possessions lightly, these were now regarded as potential assets on which Great Britain might rely in time of war. The Conservative Party, under Disraeli, especially fostered this new imperial sentiment, though in recent years the Liberals also have worked to strengthen the bonds

The imperialists

[1] See page 286.

[2] See page 270.

of union between the mother country and her daughter colonies.

The British Empire, as at present constituted, is a complex and apparently inharmonious organization of protectorates, Crown colonies, self-governing Dominions, and Indian states. The empire lacks a central body representing all its members and capable of united action. Steps in the direction of closer union have been taken by means of imperial conferences. The first was held at London in 1887, on the occasion of Queen Victoria's Jubilee celebration of the fiftieth anniversary of her accession to the throne, and was attended by representatives of the Dominions. Representatives of India also appeared at the last conference in 1921. Naval and military defense, tariffs, and other matters of common concern are discussed at these periodical gatherings. They make, therefore, for a better understanding between Great Britain and her dependencies.

Imperial conferences

Further steps toward uniting the British Empire will doubtless be taken in the immediate future. The problem of federation, however, bristles with difficulties. As respects the Dominions and India, how devise a workable scheme which will give them a voice in deciding the foreign policy of the empire and at the same time a fair share of the burden of its defense? In regard to Great Britain, the "predominant partner," how reconcile her world-wide interests with the purely local interests of her dependencies? Representation of the colonies in a federal parliament to be created or in the existing Parliament of the United Kingdom has been suggested in answer to these questions; but as yet the suggestion finds little favor. The more probable development seems to be some sort of "Britannic Alliance," in which Great Britain shall be first among equals.

The problem of federation

But the machinery of federation is a secondary matter, as long as the British Empire is one in spirit. The defects of its body are compensated for by the unity of its soul. The real strength of the bonds between Great Britain and her children overseas was first shown during the

Imperial unity

Boer War of 1899, when they rallied loyally to her support. During the World War both "colonials" and "natives" made huge contributions in money, food, ships, and men to Great Britain in her hour of need. The British Empire, in the words of Burke, is held together "by the close affection which grows from common names, from kindred blood, from similar privileges, and equal protection. These are ties, which, though light as air, are as strong as links of iron." [1]

Studies

1. "Doubtless the most significant and momentous fact of modern history is the wide diffusion of the English race, the sweep of its commerce, the dominance of its institutions, its imperial control of the destinies of half the globe." Comment on this statement. 2. On the map, facing page 420, name the water boundaries of the British Isles. 3. "The simple and obvious fact that Great Britain is an island has woven itself in a thousand ways into the texture of English history." Illustrate this statement. 4. Distinguish between England, Great Britain, the United Kingdom, and the British Empire. 5. Compare the area of England with that of New York, of Wales with that of Massachusetts, and of Scotland with that of South Carolina. 6. Explain the royal, aristocratic, and democratic elements, respectively, in the British system of government. 7. Show that in Great Britain "the king reigns, but does not govern." 8. Why is the British government sometimes called a "crowned republic"? 9. Contrast the unlimited powers of the British Parliament with the limited powers of the American Congress. 10. Why has the House of Lords been called "the Westminster Abbey of living celebrities"? 11. Mention some noteworthy differences between the British cabinet and the American cabinet. 12. How does the British system of government represent a "union of powers," as contrasted with the American system of a "separation of powers"? 13. Why has England been called the "mother of parliaments"? 14. "The Irish Question is the Achilles's heel of the British Empire." What does this statement mean? 15. "Without Drake, Raleigh, Clive, and Gordon, English history of the last three centuries is not English history at all." Comment on this statement. 16. On the map between pages 446 and 447, locate the self-governing colonies, the more important Crown colonies, the chartered companies, and the protectorates of the British Empire.

[1] Read Kipling's *Recessional*.

CHAPTER XVI

THE THIRD FRENCH REPUBLIC

118. Land and People of France

FRANCE possesses the best situation in Europe, for it lies at the western edge of the Continent between the Mediterranean and the Atlantic, the busiest bodies of water in the world. Two great natural highways connect them. The one, following the Rhône and Saône rivers, gains the valley of the Seine; the other, skirting the southern base of the Cévennes mountains, reaches the Bay of Biscay by way of the Garonne valley. Many other navigable rivers penetrate deeply into the country and bring all parts of it together. The natural boundaries of France also make for unity. It is enclosed on two sides by the ocean, and elsewhere, in large part, by mountains. The Pyrenees form a rampart on the southwest against Spain; the Alps, on the southeast against Italy; and the Jura, on the east against Switzerland. The recovery of Alsace, as a result of the World War, once more makes the Rhine the barrier between France and part of Germany. Only the northeastern boundary of France is conventional and unprotected by nature.

Situation and boundaries

France consists of two dissimilar physical regions. The great European plain occupies fully three-fourths of the total area. In the center, east, and southeast the lowlands rise into plateaus and mountains. The topography of France thus offers no obstacle to the prevailing "westerlies," which are enabled to distribute their abundant moisture somewhat evenly over the country. The climate of France, on the whole, is temperate. The fierce cold of Switzerland, the depressing fogs of Germany, and the mists and per-

Topography and climate

petual dampness of the British Isles are unknown to a land which a medieval poet well christened *France la Douce* — Gentle France.

The fertile soil of France makes it possible for fully one-half of the inhabitants to live by agriculture. Farms are often very small, owing to the fact that after the death of parents the land is divided equally among the heirs. The typical agricultural products are wheat and the vine. More wheat is produced in France than in any other European country except Russia, and more grapes are raised there than in any other country of the world. In minerals, France is decidedly inferior to either England or Germany. The principal coal beds are near the Belgian border; the richest iron mines are in Lorraine. The fisheries, including both those in home waters and off Newfoundland, must be included among the natural resources of France.

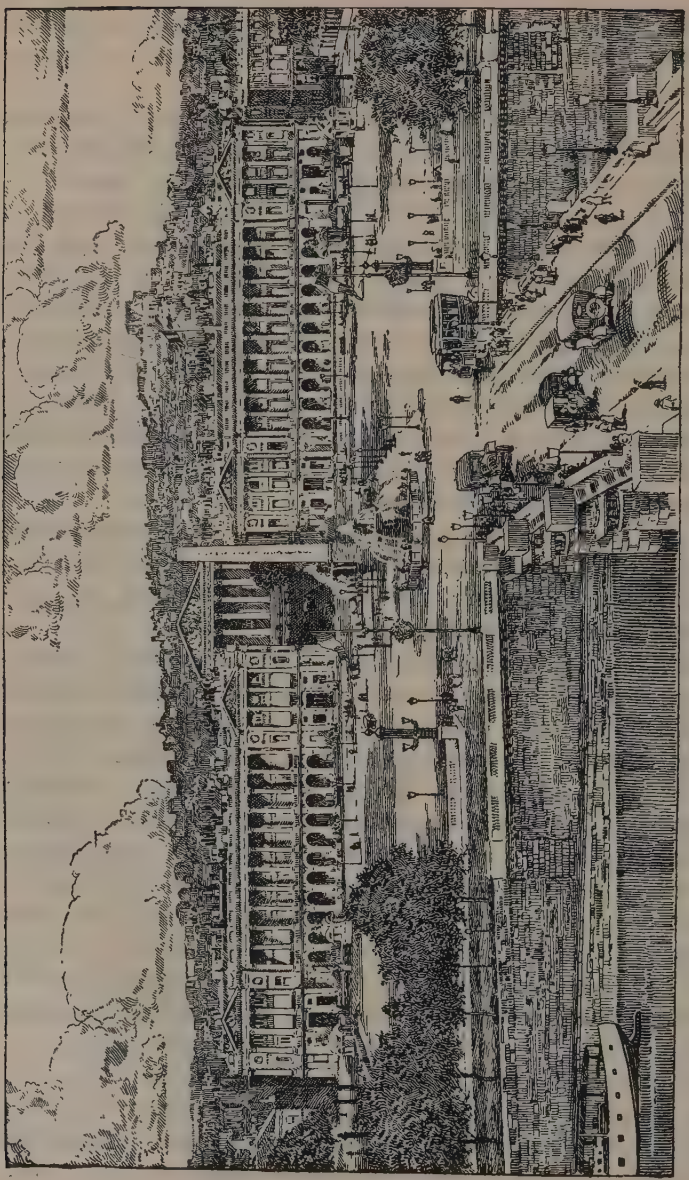
Natural resources

The population of France during the nineteenth century increased to a less extent than that of any other European country, except Ireland. The decline of the birth-rate has been accompanied, however, by a lessened death-rate, so that the population remains practically stationary (about 39,000,000 in 1914). What keeps French families small seems to be chiefly the universal desire to maintain a high standard of comfort as respects food, clothing, housing, and other necessaries of life. This situation has a military significance, in view of the rapid increase of the German people. Germany, which was not much more populous than France in 1871, was over one and a half times as populous in 1914. "Every year we win a battle against France," said the famous General Moltke.

Population

France has been less affected than other modern industrial nations by the tendency of population to concentrate in cities. While fully sixty per cent of the German people and seventy-five per cent of the British people are now city dwellers, the French continue to live chiefly in agricultural villages and small towns. There are only about a dozen cities in France having more than one

Rural and urban population



The Place de la Concorde

hundred thousand inhabitants. Of these, the largest are Paris, Lyons, and Marseilles.

The average Frenchman is very thrifty. His small savings amount to an immense sum in the aggregate. It was the well stocked "woolen stocking" of the French peasant which enabled the government to pay off the German indemnity [1] within little more than two years, and subsequently to make enormous loans to Russia and other countries. The investments of France in foreign stocks and bonds fell not far short of ten billion dollars in 1914. This amount has now been considerably increased by her advances to her allies during the war. France is still one of the greatest creditors in the world.

Wealth

Nations, like individuals, possess their special qualities, particularly old nations such as France. The French people, in the first place, are artistically gifted. An appreciation of the beautiful in all its forms is general among them. Their leadership in the fine arts has been acknowledged since the age of Louis XIV.[2] In the second place, the French are very appreciative of intellectual achievement. They give a high place among their national heroes to great scholars, philosophers, scientists, artists, and men of letters. No other country boasts such an institution as the French Academy,[3] with its forty "Immortals," election to whose ranks is almost the highest honor a Frenchman can win. In the third place, the French are an intensely individualistic people. Their history has been a long struggle for liberty, not only to govern themselves, but also to think, feel, and speak for themselves. Thought and the expression of thought are perhaps freer in France than in any other country. It is principally for these reasons that she continues to be the artistic and intellectual center of the world.

French culture

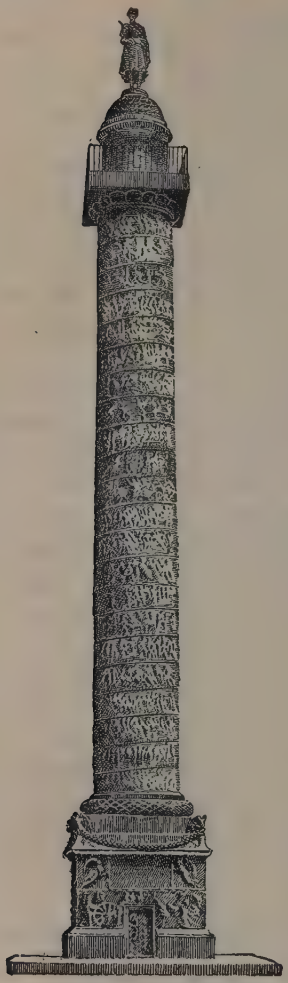
119. Republican France, 1871–1914

The Third French Republic arose in the midst of war. Two days after the battle of Sedan, upon the receipt of a dispatch

[1] See page 415. [2] See page 193. [3] See page 192.

from Napoleon III announcing his army captured and himself a prisoner, Paris broke out in revolt. The empress Eugénie fled with her son to England, and the absent emperor was deposed as being responsible for the "ruin, invasion, and dismemberment of the country." The revolutionists then set up a provisional government, republican in character. Similar action was taken independently in Lyons, Marseilles, Bordeaux, and other provincial cities. Paris in 1870 did not impose a republic upon the rest of the country; much of urban France declared spontaneously for it. The fact is important, as helping to explain why the Third Republic has lasted so much longer than its predecessors.

The republic proclaimed

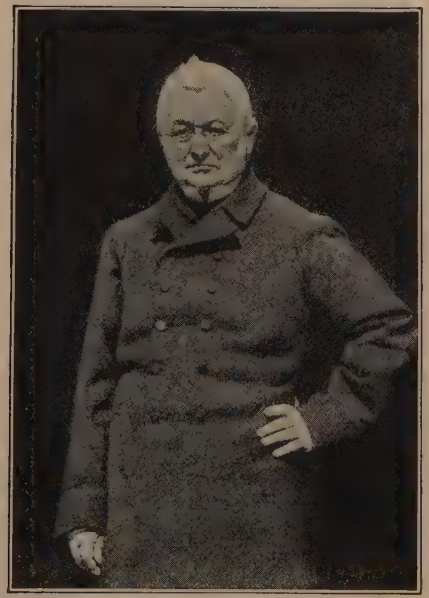


COLONNE VENDÔME

Set up by Napoleon I in the Place Vendôme. It is 142 feet in height and 13 feet in diameter. Like Trajan's column, of which it is an imitation, the monument is encircled with a spiral band of bronze bas-reliefs commemorating the campaign of 1805. The summit is surmounted by a statue of the emperor. During the rule of the "communards" in 1871 the column was overthrown, but it was subsequently reërected and restored.

The provisional government undertook the task of driving the Germans from French soil. Gambetta, the most prominent Republican leader, escaped from Paris in a balloon, roused the fighting spirit of the French people by his eloquence, and carried on for several months a brave but futile struggle against the German enemy. Equally futile

Peace made with Germany



THIERS

After the painting by Léon Bonnat in 1876.

GAMBETTA

were the diplomatic missions which Thiers[1] made to one European court after another, to enlist foreign aid for France. Paris could not be saved. After the fall of the capital an armistice was arranged, in order that the French people might elect a National Assembly to treat with Germany. The peasants, who formed the great majority of the voters, now wanted peace even on unfavorable terms. Accordingly, they avoided the Republican ticket as the "war ticket" and elected to the National Assembly representatives of the old Monarchist parties pledged to conclude peace. This "assembly of clod-hoppers," as the Republicans nicknamed it, promptly ratified the humiliating Treaty of Frankfort.[2]

Peace had not been made before France was called upon to endure the agonies of a civil conflict. The Commune,[3] or municipal council, of Paris fell into the hands of radical Republicans, socialists, and anarchists, who raised the red flag. They set up an independent government in the capital and even proposed to divide all France into a loose confederation of self-governing communes. The French people this time did not accept a revolution made in Paris. Loyal troops laid siege to the city, entered it after hard fighting, forced their way through the barricades, and suppressed the insurrection. The victors knew no mercy. Thousands of the "communards" were shot without trial, and thousands more were transported to penal colonies in the tropics. The events of this "Bloody Week" of 1871, like the Reign of Terror, fill a lurid page in French history.

The "communards" suppressed

Fortunately for France during these troubled times, she possessed a statesman at the head of affairs. Adolphe Thiers was seventy-three years old when the Franco-German War broke out. He had long been famous as a historian of the revolutionary and Napoleonic era, as a journalist whose trenchant pen helped to overthrow Charles X, as the prime minister of Louis Philippe, and as the most effective critic in parliament of Napoleon III's short-

Adolphe Thiers, 1797–1877

[1] See page 379. [2] See page 415. [3] See page 306.

sighted policies. The downfall of the Second Empire gave Thiers a great opportunity, and he embraced it. Appointed head of the government by the National Assembly, he negotiated the peace treaty with Germany, put down the "communards," and raised one billion dollars to pay the indemnity and free France from the occupation of the German armies. "Liberator of the territory," the French people gratefully acclaimed him. This little old man deserved well of his country.

Republic or monarchy?

The National Assembly in 1871 made Thiers "President of the Republic." Nevertheless, a long time elapsed before France became republican in much more than name. Two-thirds of the members of the National Assembly were really attached to monarchical principles. In 1873 they forced Thiers to resign in favor of Marshal MacMahon,[1] who was to make way for a king as soon as one should be chosen. There were three candidates for the crown, representing as many Monarchist groups. The Imperialists (few in number) supported the Prince Imperial, son of Napoleon III. The Orléanists championed the claims of the count of Paris, grandson of Louis Philippe. The Legitimists rallied about the count of Chambord, grandson of Charles X. But as Thiers declared, three candidates could not sit on one throne. The Orléanists and Legitimists finally agreed that the count of Chambord, who was childless, should become king as "Henry V" and should be succeeded by the count of Paris. "Henry V," however, refused to accept the crown unless the National Assembly would abolish the revolutionary tricolor and restore the white flag of the Bourbons, the symbol of absolutism and divine right. But even monarchical Frenchmen did not want a restoration of the Old Régime, and so the provisional republican government was allowed to continue.

The failure of the Monarchists in the National Assembly to choose a king played into the hands of the Republicans under Gambetta. He occupies a place beside Thiers among

[1] See page 414.

the founders of the Third Republic. To Gambetta, a republic meant the salvation of France, and he made it his mission to spread republican ideas among conservative Frenchmen. No one could have been better fitted for the work. Gambetta's services during the Franco-German War endeared him to the masses, while his oratory and vivacious personality fascinated even political opponents. More and more people who had hitherto been Monarchists, now joined the Republicans, with the result that in 1875 France adopted a republican constitution.

Léon Gambetta, 1838–1882

No great enthusiasm for the republic was felt in 1875, except among the followers of Gambetta. It had been established because, in view of the rivalries between the various political groups, it seemed to be the form of government which divided the French people the least. When the first elections under the new constitution took place, the voters chose a Republican Chamber of Deputies. The Senate, however, remained Monarchist by a small majority. President MacMahon was also a Monarchist. Unable to work harmoniously with the Chamber of Deputies, MacMahon dissolved it in 1877, but the voters again returned a majority of Republican members. Two years later the Senate became Republican as well. MacMahon then resigned, and Jules Grévy, a life-long Republican, took the presidential office.

The Republican supremacy

The Republicans since 1879 have remained in control of both branches of the legislature and of the presidency. The army, formerly officered by men of the upper classes, has sometimes threatened the permanence of the Republican régime. During the late 'eighties, General Boulanger seemed likely for a time to play the rôle of both Napoleons and to overthrow the government by a *coup d'état*. His popularity, however, did not prevent his trial and condemnation as a public enemy. The Boulanger episode resulted in the dismissal of many Monarchist officers from the army. The Third Republic has also had to meet the opposition of the Roman Catholic clergy, always strongly Monarchist in sympathies. Anti-clerical agitation led in 1905

Stability of the Third Republic

to the Separation Act, which abolishes the Concordat [1] and definitely separates Church and State in France. Neither army officers nor clergy now menace the stability of the Third Republic. As the World War showed, it enjoys the support of practically every Frenchman.

120. Government of France

The Constitution of 1875, the last of the many constitutions of France since the Revolution, consists of a series of laws passed by the National Assembly. These laws may be, and have been, amended by the two branches of the legislature in joint session. They provide for a parliamentary form of government, which resembles, in many respects, that of the United Kingdom.

A parliamentary republic

Legislative authority is vested in a Chamber of Deputies, containing (1919) 626 members, who are elected for four years by manhood suffrage, and a Senate of 300 members chosen indirectly for a term of nine years. The two houses have substantially equal powers in introducing and amending bills, except money bills, which must emanate from the Chamber of Deputies. The Senate has less importance than the Chamber of Deputies, because the premier and his associates in the ministry are responsible to the latter body. The ministry must keep a majority in the Chamber of Deputies or resign.

The legislature

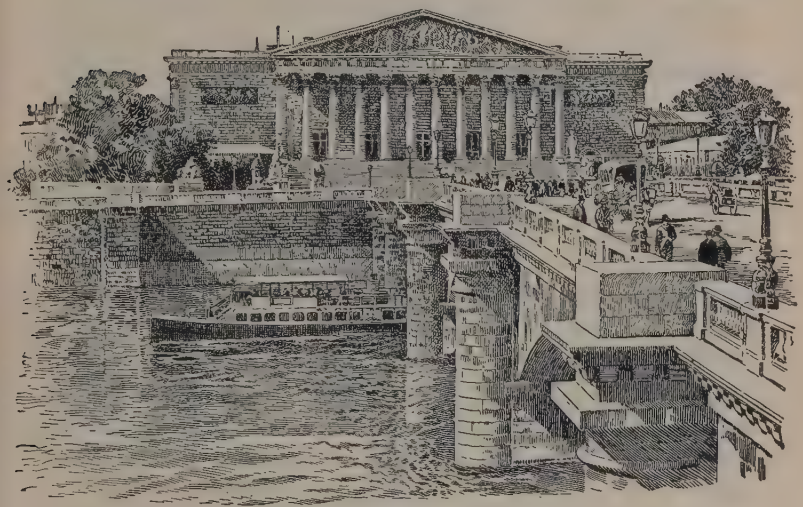
Executive authority is nominally vested in a president, who holds office for seven years. He may be reëlected, but this has happened only once.[2] In order to prevent the rise of some future Louis Napoleon through popular election, the constitution prescribes that the president shall be chosen by a majority vote of the two branches of the legislature in joint session at Versailles. An election is therefore a very tame affair, all over in an afternoon. Any citizen, except a member of a French royal or imperial family, may offer himself for the presidency. The successful candidate is

The president

[1] See page 332.

[2] In the case of President Grévy, reëlected in 1885.

usually a prominent senator or deputy. Whenever the presidential office becomes vacant by the death or resignation of the incumbent, his successor must be immediately chosen for the full term. The president lives in the beautiful Palais de l'Élysée at Paris. He receives a salary of 1,200,000 francs, half of it a compensation for his services and half to meet his expenditure for traveling and entertainments.



CHAMBER OF DEPUTIES, PARIS

This fine structure was built in the eighteenth century as a palace for members of the Bourbon-Condé family. It became national property during the French Revolution. The façade, which faces the Pont de la Concorde, is in the style of an ancient temple.

Like the British sovereign, the French president is largely a figurehead. He sends messages to parliament, receives foreign visitors, and presides at public functions, but his powers are very limited. The constitution provides that every presidential act shall be countersigned by some minister, who thereby assumes responsibility for it. The president possesses the right, with the consent of the Senate, to dissolve the Chamber of Deputies before the expiration of its term and order a new election; but this has been done only once.[1] His veto of legislation may be overridden

Position of the president

[1] By President MacMahon in 1877.

by a simple majority of parliament. When a change of ministry occurs, the president chooses a leading parliamentarian to be premier and the latter selects his own colleagues.

The ministry

The real executive in France, as in all parliamentary countries, is the ministry or cabinet. Ministers are almost always members of parliament. They may sit in both chambers and may address the legislators as often as seems desirable. A minister's position is no sinecure. Not only must he conduct his department, but he must also be constantly before parliament to present, explain, and defend his measures. Any senator or deputy may direct a formal question at a minister on the conduct of his office. Such an "interpellation" puts the ministry on the defensive and precipitates a brisk debate. If the Chamber of Deputies ends by passing a vote of "no confidence," the ministry resigns.

Political groups

France has no real parties, but only political groups. The elections of 1919, for instance, returned representatives of nine such groups to the Chamber of Deputies. The majority of members are Republicans of various shades of opinion, ranging from conservatism to radicalism. There are several large groups of Socialists, as well as a few Monarchists, who would like to restore either the Bourbons or the Bonapartes. Following the system in vogue in most Continental parliaments, members of the Chamber of Deputies occupy seats according to their affiliations. The Monarchists sit at the extreme right of the presiding officer, and the Socialists at his extreme left. The other and larger groups sit in the center of the chamber. This arrangement gives rise to the terms Right, Left, and Center, as party designations.

Ministerial changes

The existence of so many political groups explains why changes of ministry are frequent in France. No ministry can arise except one which represents a coalition (*bloc*) of several groups; no ministry can live long unless it keeps the support of several groups. In fact, it never does live long. France since 1875 has averaged more than one ministry a year. A ministerial change, however, is far less

significant in France than in Great Britain, owing to the absence of one opposition party able to take the reins of government. Many members of a defeated ministry are found, as a rule, in the ministry which succeeds it, with perhaps a change of portfolios. Leading politicians may thus remain almost continuously in office for a long period.

It should be noted, finally, that France has a permanent body of nearly one million officials, who carry on their administrative duties unvexed by ministerial "crises." This bureaucracy or civil service is especially necessary in France, which, as contrasted with the United States, forms a highly centralized republic. The systematic organization of the country into *départements* and their subdivisions by the French revolutionists and Napoleon[1] has been retained to the present time, with the result that the government, both national and local, is directed from Paris. The state keeps representatives everywhere, and an hour after an order has been given at the capital it can be carried out in the remotest hamlet. Such centralization seems curious in so democratic a country as France, but it apparently satisfies the French demand for order and regularity in the conduct of public affairs.

The bureaucracy

121. Colonial Expansion of France

The Seven Years' War and the wars of the revolutionary and Napoleonic era reduced the once-imposing colonial empire of France to small dimensions. Her possessions in 1815 included the coast of Senegal in Africa, five ports in India, French Guiana in South America, and a few islands in the West Indies and off the coast of Newfoundland. During the nineteenth century, however, France took up again the work of empire-building. The reign of Louis Philippe saw the difficult conquest of Algeria from the warlike Turks, Arabs, and Berbers. Napoleon III annexed the Senegal Valley and part of Indo-China. The Third Republic, in order to offset the loss of Alsace-Lorraine, embarked

Revival of colonial enterprise

[1] See pages 310 and 331.

still more definitely upon colonial enterprise in many parts of the world.

Colonial possessions

The most extensive French colonies are those in Africa. From Algeria, France has expanded eastward over Tunis, westward over Morocco, and southward into the Sahara. Nearly all the vast region between the Mediterranean and the Congo is now subject to France. She also holds French Somaliland, a strategic point at the entrance of the Red Sea, and the large island of Madagascar. In Asia she has retained her Indian possessions and has enlarged her territories in Indo-China. In Oceania she possesses New Caledonia and several archipelagoes. The American colonies of France have not been increased since 1815. The area of this colonial empire is, roughly speaking, about twenty times that of France. Its population about equals that of the home country.

Colonial administration

Nearly all the colonies lie within the tropics. The only countries having a considerable French population are Algeria, Tunis, and New Caledonia. It follows that the value to France of her overseas possessions is mainly commercial, as a source of raw materials and a field for the investment of capital. The World War also demonstrated their value in furnishing native soldiers and laborers. The French government respects the institutions of the inhabitants and makes every effort to raise their moral and economic condition. None of the colonies is self-governing in the manner of the British Dominions, but some of them elect representatives to the French legislature. Algeria is treated in many respects, not as a colony, but as an integral part of France.[1]

[1] Chief French Possessions in 1914

Africa: Algeria, Tunis, Morocco, French West Africa (Mauretania, Senegal, Upper Senegal and Niger, Guinea, Ivory Coast, Dahomey, Sahara), French Equatorial Africa, French Somaliland, Madagascar, Comoro Islands, Réunion Island.

Asia: French India (Mahé, Karikal, Pondicherry, Yanaon, Chandernagore), Tonkin, Anam, Laos, Cambodia, Cochin-China, Kwangchauwan.

Oceania: New Caledonia, Society Islands, Marquesas Islands.

America: French Guiana, French West Indies (Guadeloupe, Martinque), Miquelon Island, St. Pierre Island.

Studies

1. How did the boundaries of France in 1914 differ from its boundaries in 1789? 2. What is the origin of the names Britanny, Normandy, and Lorraine? 3. Contrast the circumstances under which the Third Republic came into existence with those leading to the organization of the First and Second Republics. 4. Name and explain the different Monarchist groups in France. 5. Distinguish the "communards" from communists. 6. Why may the French government be described as a "parliamentary republic"? 7. How is the French Parliament more powerful than the Congress of the United States? 8. Compare the position of the Chamber of Deputies with that of the House of Commons. 9. Compare the powers of the French and American presidents, respectively. 10. Define the terms (*a*) "interpellation," (*b*) *bloc*, and (*c*) "bureaucracy." 11. How does the party system of France differ from that of Great Britain? 12. Discuss the relative importance of the British and French colonial empires. 13. Locate on the map the chief French possessions enumerated in the foot-note on page 464.

CHAPTER XVII

ITALY, SPAIN, AND THE MINOR COUNTRIES OF WESTERN EUROPE

122. Italy

THE kingdom of Italy ranks next to the French Republic among the Latin states of contemporary Europe. The Italian constitution is the royal charter (*Statuto*) granted by Charles Albert of Sardinia in 1848, and between 1859 and 1870 extended by plebiscites to the entire peninsula. During these momentous years Italy thus gained both national unity and constitutional government.

Constitution of Italy

Italy has a well developed parliamentary system. Supreme authority resides in a parliament of two houses, consisting of an appointive Senate and an elective Chamber of Deputies. Senators hold office for life. Deputies are elected by popular vote for five years, unless a dissolution of parliament shortens their term. A ministry or cabinet conducts the government, subject to the will of the Chamber of Deputies. When a ministry resigns, some party leader is selected by the king to form its successor. The king otherwise exerts little influence upon domestic politics. He never vetoes bills passed by both branches of the legislature, seldom attends cabinet meetings, and appoints to office only those recommended by his ministers. An Italian monarch holds essentially the same ornamental position as a British sovereign or a French president. The house of Savoy is very popular in Italy, for Victor Emmanuel II, his son Humbert I, and Victor Emmanuel III, the present ruler, have shown themselves truly democratic and devoted to the welfare of their subjects.

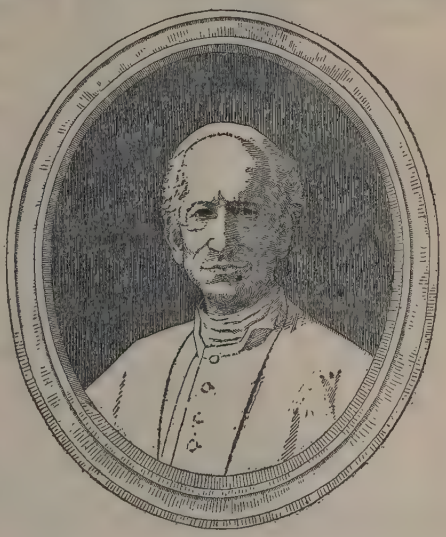
Italian parliamentary system

Property and educational qualifications for the suffrage formerly limited the voters to less than two and a half per cent of the population. Laws passed in 1882 and 1912 introduced almost complete manhood suffrage. Only men under thirty years of age, who have neither performed their military service nor learned to read and write, are now denied the right to vote.

Suffrage in Italy

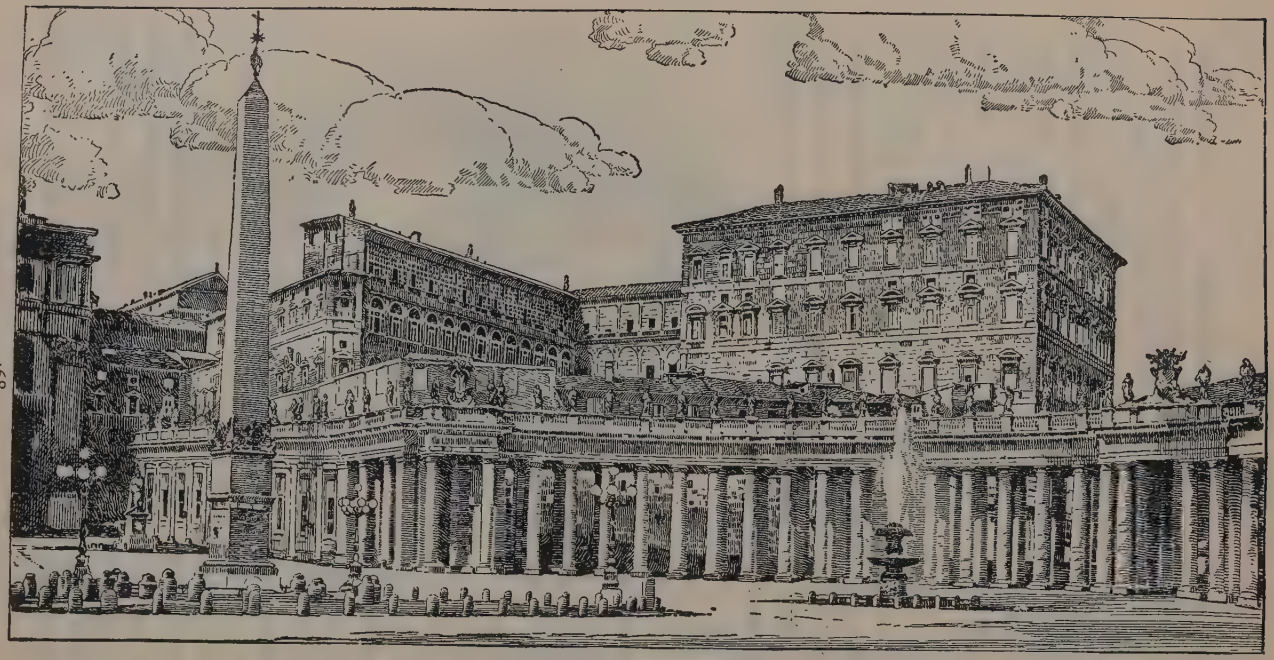
The party system of Italy resembles that of France. Political groups are numerous, rather loosely organized, and subject to constant fluctuation. Only three groups have well defined programs and constituencies. The Republicans, faithful to the traditions of Mazzini and Garibaldi, continue to agitate for a republican form of government; they are few in number. The Socialists stand for the same things as their brethren in other countries. They find recruits chiefly among the workingmen of the cities. The Catholics or Clericals, who were allowed by the pope to form a separate political party only as recently as 1919, uphold the influence of the Church in politics; their strength is among the peasantry. The other political groups differ in the main only as they support or oppose the ministry which happens to be in power. The elections of 1919 gave to the Socialists and Clericals combined a majority of seats in the Chamber of Deputies.

Italian parties



Leo XIII

Italian politics have long been complicated by the hostility



THE VATICAN, ROME

The palace of the Vatican, adjoining St. Peter's, became the fixed residence of the popes after their return from Avignon in 1377. Since the fifteenth century successive popes have reconstructed the original building on a magnificent scale. It contains thousands of rooms, some of which are used as art galleries, museums, and libraries. The palace gardens are extensive and beautiful.

between the government and the papacy. Cavour wanted the pope to adopt the principle of a "free Church in a free State," that is, to give up his temporal power and retain only a spiritual sway over Catholics throughout the world. The pope did not favor this solution of the problem and clung to the States of the Church, which after 1860 included only Rome and its neighborhood. He lost even these possessions ten years later, when Italian troops occupied Rome.[1] The temporal power of the papacy thus disappeared, after an existence of more than a thousand years.

Church and State in Italy

The relations of Church and State in Italy were henceforth defined by the Law of Papal Guarantees, enacted in 1871. It allowed the pope to retain his position as an independent sovereign, and as such to have his own court and diplomatic representatives without interference from the Italian government. The papal territory, however, was limited to the Vatican and Lateran palaces in Rome, with their extensive gardens.[2] Parliament also granted to the pope an annual subsidy of over six hundred thousand dollars, as indemnity for the loss of his estates.

Law of Papal Guarantees

The Law of Papal Guarantees has never been acknowledged as valid by the popes. Pius IX, who occupied the chair of St. Peter in 1871, refused to recognize the new Italian kingdom, declined to accept any part of the financial grants, and shut himself up in the Vatican. He also issued a decree forbidding Italian Catholics to vote or hold office under the royal government. His successors, Leo XIII and Pius X, continued this prohibition, but it was entirely removed in the year 1919 by Pope Benedict XV. With the entrance into Italian politics of a distinct Catholic party the relations between the government and the "prisoner of the Vatican" promise to enter upon a new phase.

The "prisoner of the Vatican"

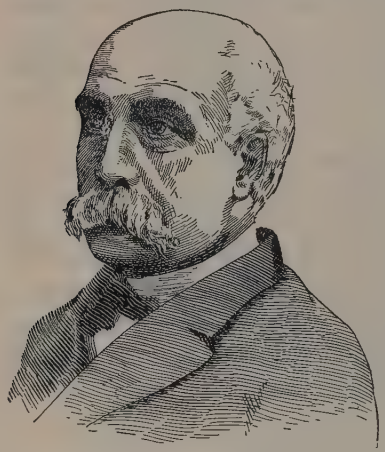
Italy's desire to rank among the great powers led her to take

[1] See page 404.

[2] The pope has also the villa of Castel Gandolfo on the Lake of Albano, but he never uses this residence.

part in the scramble for overseas possessions, which has been so marked a feature of European history during the last half century. Her colonial aspirations were especially fostered by Francesco Crispi, the most prominent Italian statesman since Cavour. During Crispi's premiership, the Italians established themselves in Eritrea and part of Somaliland, on the eastern coast of Africa. Their attempt to set up a protectorate over Abyssinia ended disastrously at the battle of Adowa in 1896, and the ancient Abyssinian "empire" still remains independent. In 1911, Italy declared war on Turkey and conquered Tripoli and Cyrenaica in northern Africa. The two provinces have been organized as a colony under the name of Libya. None of these African territories offers an inviting field for Italian settlement. The New World (Argentina, Brazil, and the United States) continues to receive most of the peasants and workingmen who emigrate from Italy.

Italian colonies



Francesco Crispi

123. Spain

Spanish history during the nineteenth century falls into four periods. The first is covered by the reign of Ferdinand VII. That Bourbon monarch came back after Napoleon's overthrow amid popular acclaim; but he ruled so wretchedly as to provoke a revolution in 1820. After three years of constitutional and parliamentary government, the Concert of Europe intervened, crushed the revolutionists, who were a small minority of the people, and restored Ferdinand

Spain, 1814–1833

to the throne.[1] A decade of unbenevolent, unenlightened despotism followed.

Ferdinand's bequest to his distracted country was a dynastic quarrel. Being without sons, he set aside the Salic law, which fixed the royal succession only in the male line, and left the crown to his youthful daughter Isabella, under the regency of her mother Christina. Don Carlos, Ferdinand's brother, considered himself the legal heir and took up arms to enforce his claim. The result was much desultory fighting between Christinists and Carlists, as the supporters of the regent and of the pretender were called, respectively. The Christinists triumphed at last, and Don Carlos fled the country. Isabella's reign proved to be thoroughly reactionary. In 1868 another revolution by the Liberals deposed the queen. **Spain, 1833–1868**

No regular government existed in Spain for the next seven years. The country passed into the hands of military politicians, who kept a semblance of order by means of the army. After ransacking Europe for a king, they offered the very shaky throne to one of the Hohenzollerns, thereby producing the "Spanish incident" which brought on the Franco-German War.[2] Prince Amadeo of Savoy, a younger son of Victor Emmanuel II, did consent to wear the crown, only to abdicate after a troubled reign of a little more than two years. A republic, which was then set up, lasted even a shorter time. Two insurrections, four *coups d'état*, and five presidents marked its brief course. After this experiment most Spaniards were ready to try a monarchy once more. In 1875, they recalled the Bourbon line in the person of Isabella's son and Ferdinand's grandson, Alfonso XII. **Spain, 1868–1875**

Under the constitutional rule of Alfonso XII and his successor,[3] Spain has begun to recover in some measure from the political ills which afflicted her in the nineteenth century. Progress is also being made in curing her economic and social ills. The country still remains very **Spain, 1875–1914**

[1] See pages 354 and 364.

[2] See page 414.

[3] Alfonso XIII succeeded in 1885, but did not become of age until 1902. He married a granddaughter of Queen Victoria.

poor and undeveloped, in spite of a good soil and climate in the south, great mineral wealth in the north, and an excellent geographical position. The introduction of better agricultural methods, railroad building on a considerable scale, steady improvement in public finances, and declining illiteracy are some of the signs of progress within recent years.

Constitution of Spain

The present constitution, which dates from 1876, is liberal in character. It provides for a parliament (*cortes*) of two chambers and a responsible ministry. Manhood suffrage has prevailed since 1890. The king, as in Italy, enjoys little real authority, for all his decrees must be countersigned by a minister to be valid. Should the royal line become extinct, the constitution provides for popular election of a monarch.

The King and Queen of Spain

The vast colonial empire of Spain was still intact a little more than a hundred years ago. The Spanish possessions in Mexico, Central America, and South America first became separate republics when Joseph Bonaparte mounted the throne of Spain in 1808. They definitely separated from the mother country after the restoration of Ferdinand VII.[1] Cuba continued to be a badly governed and restless dependency until the United States intervened in 1898. At the Peace of Paris, which concluded the Spanish-American War, Spain renounced her sovereignty over Cuba and ceded Porto Rico and the Philippines to the United States. A year later, she sold to

Spanish colonies

[1] See pages 342 and 364.

Germany her remaining island possessions in the Pacific. Her few African possessions, recently acquired, are a poor compensation for the loss of what was once the greatest colonial empire in the world.[1]

124. Portugal

Portuguese history in the nineteenth century to some extent duplicates that of Spain. As we have learned,[2] the royal family of Braganza fled to Brazil when the French invaded Portugal in 1807. After Napoleon's downfall, John VI continued to rule the home country from the colony, until the Portuguese, resenting this arrangement, rose in revolt and demanded a constitution. The king then returned from Brazil, to rule henceforth as a constitutional sovereign. His death in 1826 marked the beginning of a long period of disorder. Misgovernment, insurrections, and armed conflicts between rival factions kept the little country in turmoil for many years. From about the middle of the century the Portuguese had peace, but the failure of kingly rule to lessen taxes and introduce reforms resulted in much discontent, which found expression in republican propaganda.

Portugal as a kingdom

Matters came to a crisis in 1910, when a well-planned uprising in Lisbon drove the Portuguese king into exile. The revolutionists declared the Braganzas forever deposed and set up a republic. It still endures, in spite of much opposition from those who remain attached to the old monarchical régime.

Portugal as a republic

The republican constitution follows that of France in providing for a bicameral legislature, a ministry responsible to it, and a president with very limited powers, who is chosen by a joint session of the two chambers. All hereditary titles and privileges have been abolished; toleration has been granted to all religions; and Church and State have been separated, as in France. By the establishment of

Constitution of Portugal

[1] Spanish colonies: Rio Muni, Rio de Oro, the northern coast of Morocco, Fernando Po, and the Canary Islands.

[2] See pages 342 and 363.

a common school system the republic is also beginning to remove the reproach of illiteracy, from which Portugal suffers to a like extent with Spain.

Portuguese colonies

Though Portugal lost Brazil in the early 'twenties of the last century, she still keeps a colonial empire surpassed in extent only by the dominions of Great Britain and France. It is almost twenty-five times the size of the mother country. The most important Portuguese possessions are in Africa. The Azores and Madeira Islands, which belong to Portugal, scarcely rank as colonies, being fully incorporated in the government of that country.[1]

125. Switzerland

The Swiss Confederation

The Congress of Vienna left Switzerland a confederation of twenty-two semi-independent cantons. The only bond between them was a common Diet, whose limited authority recalls that of the American Congress before the adoption of the Constitution. Even this loose union threatened to dissolve toward the middle of the nineteenth century, when seven cantons formed a separate league called the *Sonderbund*. A brief and almost bloodless civil war resulted. The secessionists were easily overcome by the government forces and were compelled to rejoin the confederation.

Constitution of Switzerland

The secession movement induced the Swiss in 1848 to adopt a stronger federal government. Their new constitution, as framed in 1848 and revised in 1874, sets up a bicameral legislature modeled upon that of the United States. The National Council, like the House of Representatives, is elected directly by popular vote; the Council of States, like the Senate, consists of two delegates from each canton. The two chambers in joint session select a committee of seven — the Federal Council — to act as an executive. The president of the confederation is merely the

[1] Portuguese colonies in Africa: Cape Verde Islands, Portuguese Guinea, Angola, Mozambique or Portuguese East Africa; in India: Goa, Damaun, Diu; in China: Macao; in the East Indies: part of Timor.

chairman of this committee. He serves for one year only and has no greater authority than his fellow members. In the dovetailing of federal and state powers the Swiss constitution again follows American precedents. The federal government regulates matters affecting all the people, such as foreign relations, tariffs, coinage, the postal service, and the army, but the several cantons retain control of local concerns.

In some parts of Switzerland the inhabitants have preserved their ancient open-air assemblies (*folkmoots*), where all the male citizens appear personally, once a year, and by a show of hands elect officials, levy taxes, and make the laws. Such direct or pure democracy is possible only in the smaller and less thickly populated cantons.

Direct democracy

The larger cantons possess representative assemblies, but over them the people exercise constant control by means of the referendum and the initiative. In some cantons every measure passed by the cantonal legislature must be submitted to a popular vote for adoption or rejection; in the others submission takes place only upon petition of a specified number of voters. The complement of such a referendum is the initiative, giving a specified number of voters the right to propose new laws, which must then be referred to a popular vote. The referendum and initiative also apply to federal legislation, for both ordinary laws and constitutional amendments. Many American states and cities have recently adopted these two devices, in order to bring government nearer to the people. It is quite appropriate that they should have been perfected in Switzerland, the birthplace of Rousseau, who preached the doctrine of unrestricted popular sovereignty.

Referendum and initiative

The Swiss differ markedly among themselves in language, in religion, and customs. About seventy per cent of the inhabitants are German-speaking; the remainder speak either French or Italian. All three languages are used for the proclamation of laws and in legislative debates. Zwinglian and Calvinist Protestants include more than three-fifths of the population, but have a majority in only half of the

The Swiss nation

cantons. Full religious liberty is guaranteed to all citizens. This policy of mutual toleration prevents either language or religion from becoming a divisive force; it keeps the Swiss a united nation.

126. Belgium

The circumstances under which Belgium separated from Holland and became independent, with her perpetual neutrality guaranteed by the Concert of Europe, have been related in an earlier chapter. The Belgians, like the Swiss, form a united nation, in spite of the linguistic barriers between them. French is spoken by the Walloons in the southern provinces, and Flemish, a Teutonic tongue, by the Flemings in the northern provinces. Both Walloons and Flemings are almost wholly Roman Catholics.

The Belgian nation

King Albert I

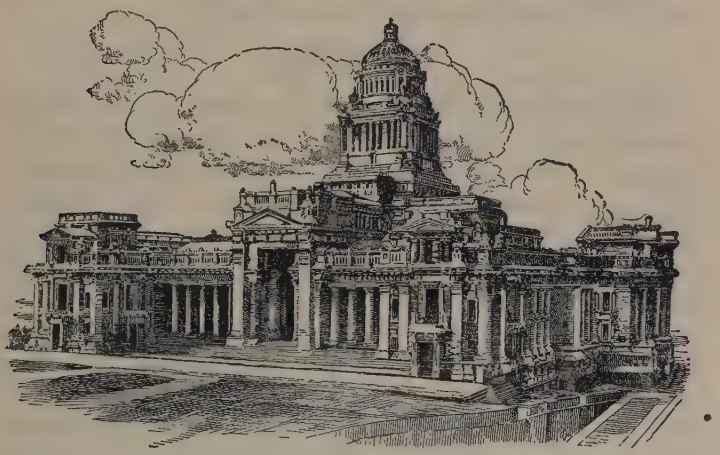
The present constitution, framed in 1831, set up a limited monarchy of the modern type. Legislative authority is vested in a parliament of two houses, the upper partly, the lower wholly, elected by direct popular vote. Executive authority is lodged in a ministry responsible to parliament. The king may propose new laws, but otherwise he acts only through his ministers. Belgium has never had any trouble with her rulers, because Leopold I (1830–1865), Leopold II (1865–1899), and Albert I have steadily adhered to that clause of the constitution which declares that "all powers emanate from the people." The liberties of citizens are further secured by constitutional provisions establishing freedom of speech, press, worship, petition, and assembly.

Constitution of Belgium

Property qualifications for the suffrage kept the electorate

very small until 1893, when the constitution was amended to provide for manhood suffrage. At the same time, an interesting system of plural voting went into effect. A married man, or a widower with children, or the owner of a certain amount of property, has two votes; while a citizen who satisfies certain educational requirements or who holds a public office has three votes. Plural voting consequently augments the political influence of married men, of the propertied classes, and of the educated classes. Belgian law makes voting obligatory and punishes a citizen for unexcused absence from the polls. In 1919 suffrage was partially extended to women.

Suffrage



PALAIS DE JUSTICE, BRUSSELS

This huge building, for the use of the law courts of Brussels, was erected during the years 1866–1883 at a cost of $12,000,000. The architectural style combines Assyrian and Renaissance features.

Belgium has the distinction of being the first European country to adopt proportional representation. Under the system of representation found in most democracies, a candidate having a majority, or even a simple plurality, of the votes in his district is declared elected. This arrangement leaves the minority unrepresented. The

Proportional representation

device of proportional representation gives to each party its rightful number of seats by having candidates elected only by those who vote for them. The procedure followed seems somewhat complicated, but its practical result is to assure to even a small minority representation in the legislature.[1]

Belgium has only one colony, but it is about ten times her size. The vast district in Central Africa formerly known as the Congo Free State and now as the Belgian Congo, was established in the early 'eighties by Leopold II, mainly as a commercial undertaking. The king became personal sovereign of the state, which proved to be very valuable for its rubber, ivory, and other products. In 1908 Leopold surrendered his Congo properties to Belgium.

The Belgian Congo

127. Holland

The kingdom of Holland — more accurately, the Netherlands — is one of the creations of the Vienna Congress. It forms a federal state, consisting (since the loss of Belgium) of eleven provinces. These retain a large measure of self-government. The house of Orange has reigned continuously since 1815, the present sovereign being Queen Wilhelmina.

Kingdom of the Netherlands

The constitution of Holland also dates from 1815. Successive revisions, especially in the revolutionary year, 1848, have made it a fairly liberal document. The Crown is still powerful, but the royal ministers are responsible to the Estates-General, or parliament. Property qualifications, which formerly excluded a good many Dutchmen from voting, have been lowered in recent years. In 1918 the franchise was granted to all adult men and women without restriction.

The Dutch constitution

Holland still keeps various tropical dependencies secured in

[1] Suppose that an electoral district in Belgium has 32,000 voters and eight representatives in the lower house of parliament. Suppose, further, that four parties nominate candidates — eight Clericals, eight Liberals, eight Socialists, and one Clerical-Democrat. If there are 16,000 Clerical, 9000 Liberal, 4500 Socialist, and 2500 Clerical-Democrat votes, then the apportionment of seats would be four Clerical, two Liberal, one Socialist, and one Clerical-Democrat.

the seventeenth century. They are about sixty times as large and six times as populous as the mother country. Their coffee, tea, sugar, spices, tobacco, and indigo reach Holland in large quantities, for distribution throughout Europe. On the whole, she administers them very successfully.[1]

Dutch colonies

128. Denmark, Norway, and Sweden

Nature seems to have intended Scandinavia to be one country. Only a narrow, shallow sea parts Denmark from her northern neighbors, while the well settled districts of Norway and Sweden are not separated by any natural barrier. The Danes, Norwegians, and Swedes have also very much in common. They descend from the old Vikings, who became the terror of Europe in the ninth century. Their languages resemble one another closely, Danish and Norwegian in the written form being identical. They have all been Lutheran Protestants since the sixteenth century. They all live under similar physical conditions and support themselves by agriculture, commerce, and the fisheries, rather than by manufacturing. Nevertheless, antagonisms due to historical causes proved stronger than unity of race, language, and culture, with the result that there are three small and comparatively weak nations when one large and powerful nation might have been consolidated.

The Scandinavian nations

The Union of Calmar (1397) brought the Scandinavian peoples together for more than a century, under the common rule of the Danish king. The secession of Sweden in 1524 dissolved the union. Norway remained attached to Denmark until the Congress of Vienna, to punish the Danes for adhering to Napoleon and to reward the Swedes for siding with the allies, united the country with Sweden. This action reduced the population of the Danish kingdom by fully one-third. The forced cession of Schleswig-Holstein to Germany in 1864 restricted Denmark to the peninsula of

Denmark and Norway

[1] Dutch colonies: Sumatra, Java, part of Timor, Dutch Borneo, Celebes, Molucca Islands, Dutch New Guinea, Dutch Guinea (Surinam), Curaçao.

Jutland, with the adjacent islands. It became, henceforth, the smallest of the Scandinavian countries.

Norway and Sweden

Norway and Sweden were joined after 1815 in a personal union under the Swedish king. Each country retained its separate constitution, parliament, and courts. Norway resented even this slight measure of dependence upon Sweden. The differences between them, though scarcely greater than those which formerly kept England and Scotland apart, only became more acute with the passage of time. Their separation occurred peacefully in 1905, as the result of a plebiscite in which the Norwegians, almost to a man, voted for independence. The new Norwegian king assumed the title of Haakon VII, thus indicating the historical continuity of his kingdom with the free Norway of the Middle Ages.

The Scandinavian constitutions

Denmark, Norway, and Sweden are monarchies, with written constitutions, bicameral parliaments, responsible ministries, and universal suffrage. The present Swedish dynasty goes back to the Frenchman Bernadotte, one of Napoleon's marshals, who was adopted as Crown Prince of Sweden, and subsequently ascended the throne.

The Scandinavian League

The year 1914 saw the formation of the Scandinavian League, an informal alliance of Denmark, Norway, and Sweden for defensive purposes. It recalls the earlier Union of Calmar, and if maintained, promises to give these three nations greater weight in the councils of Europe.

Iceland and Greenland

Neither Norway nor Sweden has any colonies.[1] Denmark had three, until recently. The most important was Iceland, which the adventurous Vikings settled more than a thousand years ago. Iceland received home rule during the 'seventies, and in 1918, in complete agreement with Denmark, became a sovereign state under its own flag. The king of Denmark remains Iceland's king, but for purely

[1] In 1920 the Peace Conference placed the Spitzbergen Archipelago in the Arctic Ocean under the sovereignty of Norway.

ornamental purposes. Denmark has also recently parted with her possessions in the West Indies, which she sold to the United States in 1917, for $25,000,000. They have been renamed the Virgin Islands. Greenland continues to be Danish but enjoys self-government. The Faroe Islands are definitely incorporated in the Danish kingdom.

Studies

1. Who is the reigning monarch of the house of Savoy? Of the house of Orange? 2. Mention some of the economic advantages to Italians of a united Italy. 3. Why is the pope called the "prisoner of the Vatican"? 4. How does Spain happen to have a Bourbon dynasty? 5. What historical reasons may be assigned for the relative backwardness of Spain during the nineteenth century? 6. "The disappearance of the Spanish colonial empire is one of the most significant features of the nineteenth century." Comment on this statement. 7. When did Switzerland become a neutralized state? 8. Compare the Swiss folkmoots with town meetings in New England. 9. Compare the Swiss referendum with the French plebiscite. 10. How is Belgium a "buffer state"? 11. Which is more democratic, plural voting or the "one-man, one-vote system"? 12. What advantages are claimed for the system of proportional representation? 13. Locate on the map the principal possessions of Holland in the East Indies. 14. Name and locate the capitals of the three Scandinavian states.

CHAPTER XVIII

THE GERMAN EMPIRE AND THE DUAL MONARCHY

129. Land and People of Germany

After 1871 Germany occupied the third place among European countries as respects area, and the second place as respects population. She was surpassed in size only by Russia and Austria-Hungary, and in number of inhabitants by Russia alone. On the land side, Germany faced seven independent states. The water boundary on the North Sea and the Baltic includes considerably less than a third of the whole frontier. The shallow coasts afford few good harbors; consequently nearly all the important trading ports are river ports. Germany is provided with many navigable streams, whose usefulness has been increased by means of connecting canals. Freight can be carried all the way from the Rhine to the Vistula on these interior waterways. A very extensive system of railroads, nearly all state-owned, helps further to bring the chief Continental markets within easy access of Germany.

Germany in Europe

Geographically, there are two Germanys. The larger part of the country consists of North Germany, which, with the Baltic seacoast at its back, forms a continuation of the great European plain. The plain is lowest and flattest in the neighborhood of Holland; farther east it becomes rolling and hilly. North Germany, east of the Elbe, is devoted almost entirely to agriculture.

North Germany

South Germany, including also the central portion of the country, contains much more diversified scenery. It possesses large plateaus; fertile valleys such as those of the Main and the Rhine; and mountain ranges, com-

South Germany

paratively low in height and so situated as not to interfere seriously with communication. The chief mineral products of Germany come from these central and southern highlands.

There are also two German peoples. It has been pointed out [1] that the early inhabitants of North Germany belonged to the racial type called Baltic or Nordic; they were, and their descendants still are, tall in stature, narrow-headed, light-haired, blue-eyed, and fair-complexioned. South Germany in remote times was occupied by the Alpine racial type, whose shorter stature, broader heads, and darker hair, eyes, and complexion still characterize the present inhabitants. Both peoples now use one language, though some differences (formerly much greater) exist between Low German, as spoken in the North, and High German, as spoken in the South. The latter became the literary language of all Germany as early as the Middle Ages. The two sections of the country have differed in religious affiliations ever since the Reformation. Most of North Germany is Protestant, and most of South Germany, especially south of the Main, is Roman Catholic. This geographical distribution now tends to be obscured by the greater mobility of the population since the introduction of railroads and the abolition of restrictions upon emigration from one state to another.

North Germans and South Germans

It is important to note that several non-German peoples were incorporated in the German Empire against their will. The Poles of West Prussia, East Prussia, and Posen, the Danes of Schleswig, and the inhabitants of Alsace-Lorraine made up about one-twelfth of the total population of Germany. The three "submerged nationalities" managed to maintain their own languages and separate culture, in spite of persistent efforts on the part of the government to Germanize them.

Non-Germans

The success of Prussia in raising Germany from disruption to unity, from weakness to strength, affected the German national character. Outwardly, all Germany adopted Prussian

[1] See page 28.

armaments and conscription; inwardly, she came to accept the Prussian ideals of military discipline, the supremacy of the soldier over the citizen, the subordination of the individual to the state, and autocratic, though efficient, government. It has been well said that Prussia put an iron girdle around the whole of German life. A study of the imperial constitution, which shows Bismarck's hand in every section, will make this clearer.

Prussianized Germany

130. The German Constitution

The German Empire, as established in 1871, was a federation. It included twenty-six states: four kingdoms, six grand duchies, five duchies, seven principalities, three free cities,[1] and the imperial territory of Alsace-Lorraine. The constitution allowed each state (but not Alsace-Lorraine until 1911) to manage its local concerns and specified what authority should be exercised by the federal government. The German Empire thus represented a compromise between the old Germanic Confederation, which formed a union of sovereign states, and the thoroughly centralized Prussian monarchy.

A federal empire

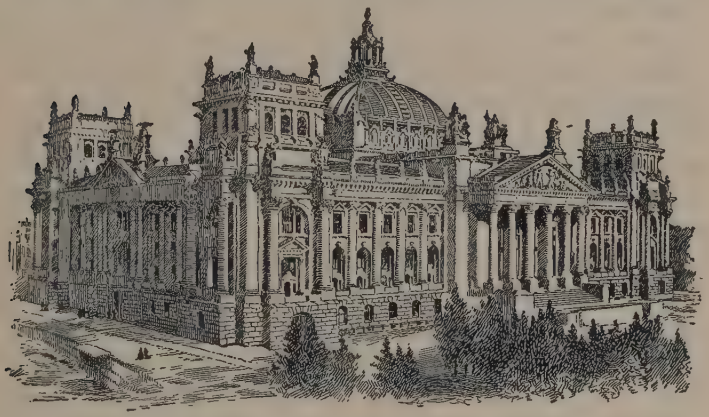
The king of Prussia, as *ex officio* president of the federation, received the title of German Emperor (*Deutscher Kaiser*). He was not called "Emperor of Germany," for such a title would have implied his superiority in rank to the other German kings. The kaiser had very great powers, particularly in time of war. He commanded the army and navy, thus controlling the entire military organization of the empire; appointed and received ambassadors; and through the imperial chancellor, whom he selected, influenced both foreign and domestic policies. He might also of his own notion declare a defensive war, but the declaration of an offensive war required the consent of the Bundesrat. The kaiser was quite irresponsible in his exercise of these powers; he could neither be punished nor removed from office for his acts.

The emperor

[1] Hamburg, Bremen, and Lübeck.

The Federal Council, or Bundesrat, consisted of sixty-one members, apportioned among the states roughly according to size. Prussia had seventeen; Bavaria, the next largest, six; and a great many states, only one each. The delegation from each state voted as a unit and always in accordance with instructions given to them by their respective governments. The consequence was that the Bundesrat formed an aristocratic council of diplomats, repre-

The Bundesrat



THE REICHSTAGSGEBÄUDE, BERLIN
The building housed both the Bundesrat and the Reichstag.

senting (except in the case of the free cities) the hereditary German princes. The Bundesrat, in practice, made all the laws. It shaped in secret sessions the bills to be laid before the Reichstag for approval, and it had a veto of any measure passed by the latter body.

The Imperial Diet, or Reichstag, contained three hundred and ninety-seven members, elected for a five-year term by all male citizens who had reached the age of twenty-five years. Each member represented a single district. In 1871 the districts contained about one hundred thousand inhabitants each, but their boundaries were never altered subsequently with the increase or decrease of population. As the result of this "rotten-borough" system,

The Reichstag

the rural region of East Prussia, whose population in 1914 was about equal to that of Berlin, sent nearly three times as many representatives to the Reichstag. Similar discrepancies existed in other parts of the empire. They would have been more serious had the Reichstag been more powerful. As a matter of fact, it exerted little influence on legislation. It might introduce bills, but few of them were likely to receive the assent of the Bundesrat. If, however, the Reichstag refused to pass a government measure, the Bundesrat and the emperor could dissolve it and order a new election. The Reichstag was dissolved four times, and after each dissolution the new assembly meekly passed the bill which its predecessor had rejected. As compared with the British House of Commons or the French Chamber of Deputies, the Reichstag was little more than a debating society; it discussed, it did not govern.

The chancellor

The emperor's representative in dealing with the legislature was the chancellor. This official corresponded only in slight degree to the prime minister or premier in other governments. He was responsible solely to the emperor, who appointed him and dismissed him at will. The chancellor presided over the Bundesrat, and in the name of the emperor laid before the Reichstag all measures which the Bundesrat had framed. He also selected the chief federal officials and supervised their activity.

Absence of a parliamentary system

It is clear that, while the German Empire was a constitutional state, it was not a democratic state. No ministry rose or fell at the will of the Reichstag, and the chancellor, the emperor's agent, held his position as long as he retained the emperor's confidence. Unlike Great Britain, France, Italy, Spain, Portugal, Belgium, Holland, and the Scandinavian countries, Germany did not have a genuine parliamentary system.

Political groups

The parties or political groups of Germany included Conservatives, representing the landed aristocracy (*Junkers*), public officials, and peasants; National Liberals, representing the middle classes; Roman Catholic

Clericals, or Centrists, so designated from the seats which their representatives occupied on the floor of the Reichstag; and the Social Democrats or Socialists. In 1914 the latter formed the largest party in Germany. While most of its supporters were workingmen, many middle-class people who rejected the economic doctrines of socialism, also voted for Social Democratic candidates, in order to protest as effectively as possible against autocracy and militarism. The unfair system of representation, however, gave this party far fewer seats in the Reichstag than it was entitled to.

Paramountcy of Prussia

Prussia, with approximately two-thirds the area and two-thirds the population of Germany, naturally held the leading place in the empire. The king of Prussia was German emperor; of the five chancellors between 1871 and 1914 all but one were Prussians; and Prussia kept a majority of representatives in the Reichstag. Her seventeen votes in the Bundesrat did not assure her a majority there, but she almost always obtained the support of enough states to carry any legislation desired. On the other hand, if Prussia opposed a bill in the Bundesrat, not less than twelve of the largest states had to combine in order to secure a majority against her. Let it be noted, finally, that no amendment to the constitution might be adopted if fourteen votes were cast against it in the Bundesrat. This meant that Prussia's solid block of votes, controlled by the kaiser, could prevent any democratic modifications of the constitution, no matter how much desired by the German people generally.

The Prussian government

The paramountcy of Prussia makes it highly important to understand the government of that country. The constitution which Frederick William IV "granted" in 1850 to his faithful subjects,[1] did not seriously limit the royal power. The upper house of the Prussian parliament (Landtag) consisted of nobles and wealthy *Junkers*, whom the king appointed for life and whose numbers he could enlarge at will. The lower and supposedly popular branch of parliament was elected according to a system which gave the

[1] See page 386.

richer classes an overwhelming influence. All the voters of a district were divided into three classes, according to the amounts of taxes paid by them, and each class received equal representation in the convention which elected the member of parliament for the district. It might happen — it did happen — that the vote of one wealthy man had as great weight as the votes of a thousand poor workingmen. Even Bismarck, no friend of democracy, called the Prussian electoral system the worst ever devised. To complete this outline, it should be added that the king possessed a veto of all legislation passed by the Landtag; that the ministry was responsible to him and not to the Landtag; and that the constitution expressly recognized his divine right to rule. "Absolutism under constitutional forms" is the description which a great German scholar — himself a Prussian — once correctly applied to the government of Prussia.

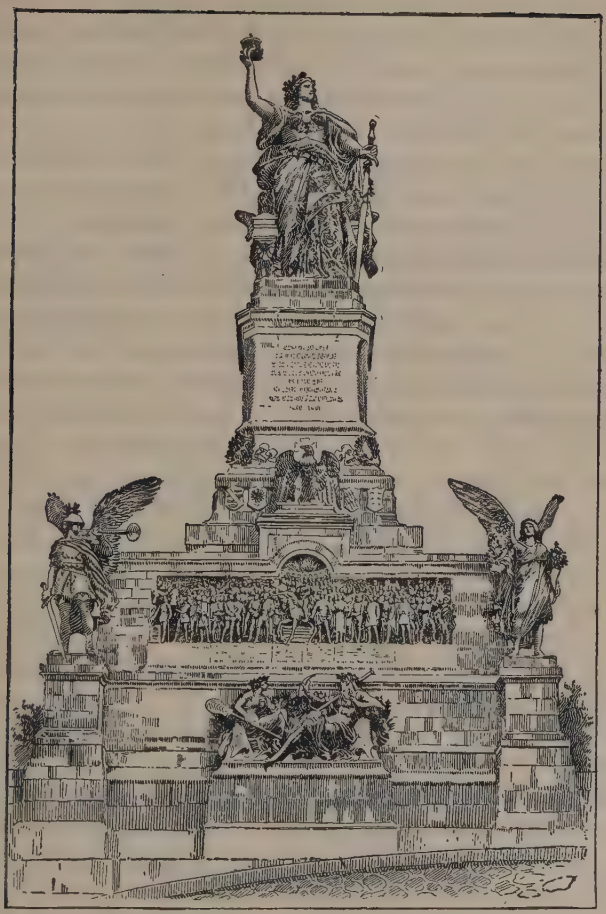
131. Imperial Germany, 1871–1914

German history between 1871 and 1914 falls naturally into two periods, the first of which is covered by the reign of William I. The emperor left both domestic and foreign affairs almost entirely in the strong hands of Bismarck, who served as imperial chancellor and president of the Prussian ministry. The architect of the empire presided over its destinies for almost twenty years. Many problems confronted him. "Blood and iron" had unified the German peoples, but other bonds were required to keep them one. They must now learn to think and feel and act *imperially*, sinking their local tendencies and old "particularism" in a new national consciousness.

Reign of William I, 1871–1888

Bismarck's prestige as the maker of Germany enabled him to secure the enactment of much legislation enlarging the functions of the federal government at the expense of the several states. Uniform codes of civil and criminal law were provided for the entire empire. A supreme court at Leipzig was created to hear appeals from state courts. An imperial bank (Reichsbank) was set up at Berlin

Imperial legislation



THE GERMAN NATIONAL MONUMENT

Designed by Johannes Schilling; begun in 1877; completed in 1883. The monument stands on a wooded hillside opposite Bingen and overlooking the Rhine valley. The great base, 82 feet high, supports an impressive figure of Germania, 34 feet high, with the imperial crown and the laurel-wreathed sword. On the side of the pedestal facing the river is a design symbolizing "The Watch on the Rhine." The other sides of the pedestal bear designs representing various scenes in the Franco-German War.

to become the central institution in Germany for financial operations and the issue of banknotes. All the state railroads were placed under the control of an imperial railroad bureau. An imperial coinage, with the mark as its basis, also appeared. The new coins bore on one side the emperor's effigy, and on the other side, the arms of the empire; they carried everywhere the "good news of unity." All these measures helped to foster national sentiment throughout Germany.

There were other problems which even Bismarck could not solve. Germany contained important non-German elements, but he did little or nothing to reconcile them to the imperial régime. Danes, Poles, and Alsatians remained unwilling members of the empire, and through their representation in the Reichstag or in the Prussian parliament continued to be a source of embarrassment to the government. Again, unification of Germany had brought together Protestant North Germans and Catholic South Germans, thus sowing seeds of religious dissension between the two sections. Bismarck carried through parliament many laws forbidding the Roman Catholic Church to intervene in any way in civil affairs. The net result was the formation of a Catholic Party, whose influence in the Reichstag at length compelled the Iron Chancellor to "go to Canossa," that is, to repeal nearly all the obnoxious anti-clerical legislation. Finally, he came off second-best in his political struggle with the Social Democrats, who were equally opposed to monarchy, aristocracy, and the existing economic system. His measures of repression against this party proved to be no more effective than those against Catholics, and the steady growth of socialism continued to alarm the ruling classes of Germany.

Party contests

Bismarck still held office when William I passed away in 1888, at the age of ninety-one. His successor, Frederick III, who had married a daughter of Queen Victoria, seems to have been a man of decidedly democratic views and an admirer of the British parliamentary system. German Liberals looked forward with great hope to his reign. But

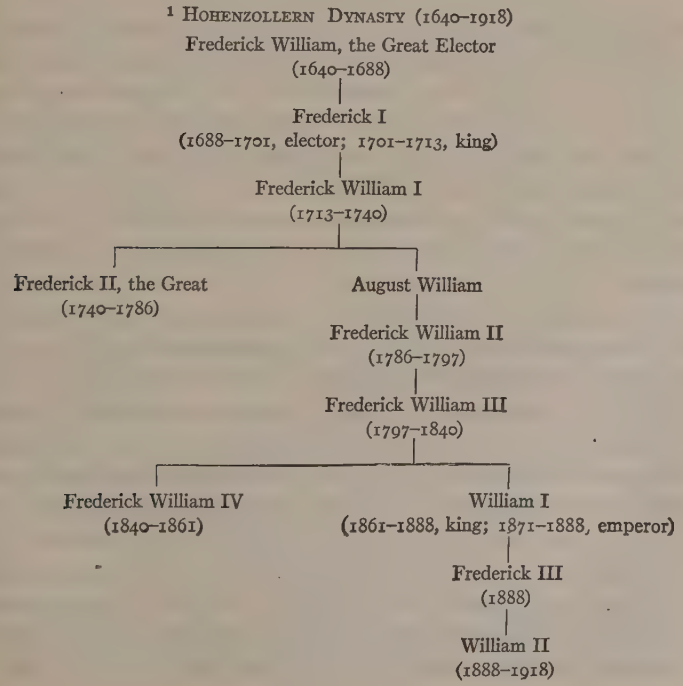
Frederick III

the third Frederick mounted the throne only to die within a few months. In the light of subsequent events, his untimely death was a misfortune for Germany, for Europe, and for the world.

Frederick's son, William II, became king of Prussia and German emperor when not quite twenty-nine years of age. In this last of the Hohenzollerns[1] culminated all their absolutism, their contempt of popular government, and their firm belief in the doctrine of divine right. "The will of the king is the supreme law," he himself declared. The young ruler could not work well with the old chancellor, who had so long reigned in all but name. Friction between them led to Bismarck's enforced resignation of the chancellorship in 1890. His four successors in that office were merely mouthpieces of the emperor; after 1890 William II was, in effect, his own chancellor.

Reign of William II, 1888–1918

[1] HOHENZOLLERN DYNASTY (1640–1918)



132. Colonial Expansion of Germany

All the German colonies dated from the last two decades of the nineteenth century, when the best parts of the world had already been appropriated by Great Britain, France, and other powers. The explanation of Germany's delay in colonization was her late entrance into the family of nations. Even after 1871 she did not embark immediately upon colonial enterprises. Bismarck, like Frederick the Great, believed that distant dependencies were a burden to the state. It would be far better, he thought, for Germany to devote all her energies to domestic problems. The Iron Chancellor was so much of a "no colony man" that he refused to take any of the French overseas possessions as a prize of victory in the Franco-German War.

Delay in colonization

But Bismarck soon had to change his policy. The reasons were principally three. First, colonies would furnish homes for German emigrants, who otherwise had to settle in the United States and other foreign countries. Second, colonies would provide new markets for German manufactures and raw materials for German factories. Third, the possession of colonies seemed to be demanded by Germany's new position in Europe: they would be the badge of her success and perhaps the stepping stones to a world empire.

Reasons for colonization

African colonization began in 1884–1885, when extensive territories on the Gulf of Guinea, in southwestern Africa, and in eastern Africa, which had been secured by German agents through treaties with native chieftains, were transferred to the imperial government. Upwards of one million square miles of the Dark Continent thus came under the German flag. In 1897 Germany seized the bay of Kiauchau and adjacent territory in the Chinese province of Shantung, ostensibly as "compensation" for the murder of two German missionaries. She then extorted a ninety-nine year lease of Kiauchau and asserted a "sphere of influence" embracing all of Shantung. A part of the island of New Guinea,

Extent of colonization

together with various small groups in the Pacific, was also annexed by Germany.

These colonies, more than four times the size of the Fatherland, made a fine showing on the map. However, they cost an enormous sum for maintenance; their savage inhabitants preferred to fight Germans rather than buy German goods; and their hot, unhealthy climate kept away immigrants. The German population of all the colonies amounted in 1914 to only 16,000. Except as sources of raw materials, they were liabilities rather than assets to the home country.[1]

Results of colonization

133. Constitution of Austria-Hungary

The student will recall how the democratic and national movement, which swept over Europe after the "February Revolution," threatened at first to break the Hapsburg realm into fragments. But the time for its dissolution had not yet come. Austria emerged triumphant from the storm of revolution, and under the youthful emperor, Francis Joseph I, returned to the well-worn path of absolutism and reaction. Hungary, especially, felt the full weight of Austrian displeasure, as the result of her failure to win freedom under Kossuth in 1849. Ever since 1526, when the Magyars sought the protection of Austria against the Ottoman Turks and elected a Hapsburg king of Hungary, they had continued to enjoy some measure of self-government. Their country was now cut into five districts, ruled by Germans from Vienna, and German was made the official language everywhere. These measures did not succeed in obliterating the sense of nationality among the Magyars. After the two disastrous wars of 1859 and 1866, which expelled the Austrians from Italy and Germany, Francis Joseph found

Austria and Hungary, 1849–1867

[1] German Colonies (1914)

Africa: Togo, Cameroons, German Southwest Africa, German East Africa.
Asia: Kiauchau.
Oceania: German New Guinea (Kaiser Wilhelm's Land), Bismarck Archipelago, northern Solomon Islands, German Samoa, Pelew Islands, Caroline Islands, Ladrone or Marianne Islands (except Guam), Marshall Islands.

himself obliged to pursue a more conciliatory policy toward the Magyars. "What does Hungary demand?" he asked the great Magyar statesman, Deák, a few days after the battle of Sadowa. "Only what she wanted before Sadowa" was the

HAPSBURG POSSESSIONS, 1815–1914

reply. Hungary soon got what she wanted — the restoration of her historic rights as a nation.

The Ausgleich, 1867–1918

The constitution known as the *Ausgleich* (Compromise), was framed by Deák and the emperor. It created a dual monarchy, something more than a personal union and yet less than a close federation. The dominions of the Hapsburgs were split into two self-governing states: (1) the Austrian Empire, including Upper Austria, Lower Austria, Bohemia, Moravia, Galicia, and twelve other provinces; and (2) the kingdom of Hungary, including Croatia-Slavonia. Each country had its own parliament, ministry, courts, officials, language, and capital (Vienna and Budapest). Both had one flag, one army and navy, and one sovereign, who wore the joint crown of Austrian emperor and Hungarian king. There was also a common tariff, a common

coinage, and a common administration of foreign affairs. This political makeshift had to be renewed every decade. It managed to survive until the revolutionary year of 1918.

The Dual Monarchy was somewhat more democratic than the German Empire. Laws in Austria were made by a majority of the two houses of parliament and were executed by a ministry nominally responsible to both houses, but practically servants of the Crown. The emperor, by playing off one parliamentary faction against another, could often secure his own way in legislation. Manhood suffrage prevailed since 1907.

Government of Austria

The law-making power in Hungary was also vested in a bicameral parliament and a nominally responsible ministry. Very illiberal qualifications for the suffrage, both property and educational, limited the number of voters before 1913 to a fourth of the adult male population. Franchise reform in that year doubled the electorate, but did not disturb the privileged position which the Magyars enjoyed in the state.

Government of Hungary

Francis Joseph I

The relations between Austria and Hungary under the *Ausgleich* were not always amicable. Perhaps the strongest tie holding the two countries together was a deep-seated loyalty to the venerable Francis Joseph. The emperor's long reign bridged the gap between the era of Metternich and the World War, between 1848 and 1914. De-

Francis Joseph I

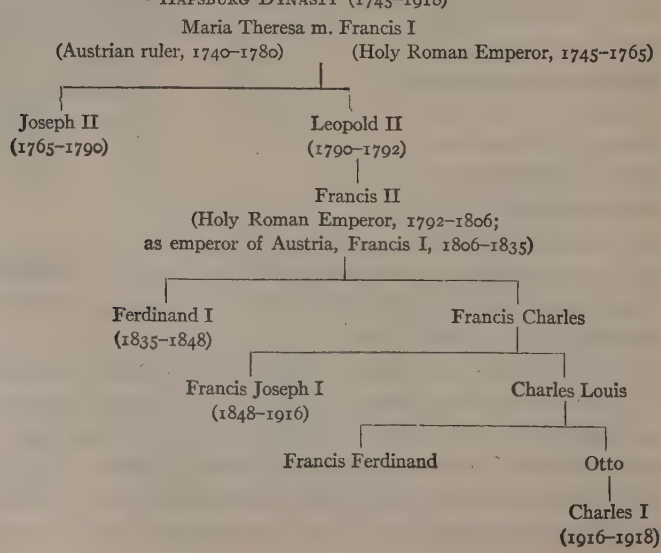
spite heavy private griefs — the execution of his brother Maximilian, whom Napoleon III had set on the throne of Mexico and then deserted; the suicide of his only son; the murder of his wife by an anarchist; and the assassination of his nephew and heir — Francis Joseph never forgot the duties of a monarch. He mixed freely among the people, received them in public audience, speaking now one, now another, of the seventeen languages of his dominions, and worked harder at the business of governing than any of his ministers. The emperor-king died in harness in 1916. The crowns of Austria and Hungary then descended to his grandnephew, Charles I, who reigned less than two years.[1]

134. Nationalities in Austria-Hungary

Diversity of nationalities

The Dual Monarchy could claim to be only in part — the smaller part — Teutonic. The ruling family was German, and German was the official language in most common use. But out of a total population of about 50,000,000 in 1914, there were only 12,000,000 Germans.

[1] Hapsburg Dynasty (1745–1918)



The other nationalities included Magyars (10,000,000), Slavs (24,000,000), and Latin or Romanic peoples (4,000,000).

The Germans of Austria, forming about one third of the population, extended in a compact group from the Tyrol in the south to some distance east of Vienna. A German belt almost encircled the Czechs of Bohemia. Small German settlements (enclaves) were also dotted like islands over Hungary. Excepting the Tyrolese, a peasant people, the Austrian Germans generally belonged to the middle and upper classes. They were the dominant element in Austria.

Germans

In Hungary the Magyars were dominant. Though only a bare half of the population, they held the balance of power between the Slovaks, Serbo-Croats, and Rumanians in the Hungarian kingdom.

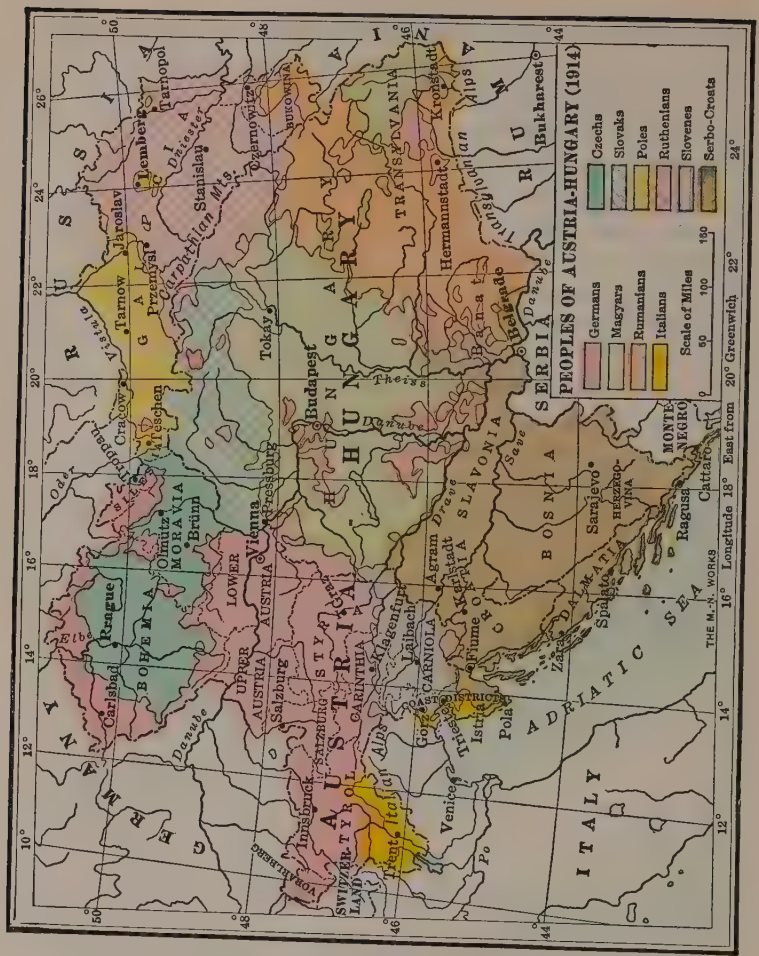
Magyars

The Slavs composed by far the largest racial group of the Dual Monarchy, but they differed greatly in language, religion, and customs, and as the map shows, occupied widely separated territories. The northern Slavs included the Czechs in Bohemia and Moravia, the Slovaks in northern Hungary, the Poles of western Galicia, and the Ruthenians (Little Russians) of eastern Galicia. All these peoples had nationalist aspirations. The Czechs could not forget that Bohemia, as well as Hungary, had been a sovereign state before its union with Austria in 1526; they demanded the same measure of independence that the Magyars enjoyed. The Slovaks in Hungary wanted to be united with their Czech brethren in Bohemia. The Galician Poles, like the Poles in Prussia and Russia, looked forward to the restoration of a free Poland.

Northern Slavs

The southern Slavs, or Jugoslavs, as they call themselves, comprised the two groups of Slovenes in Styria and Carniola and Serbo-Croats in Croatia-Slavonia, Dalmatia, Bosnia, and Herzegovina. These Slavs were separated from their kinsmen in the north by the Magyar settlement in central Europe during the Middle Ages. The Serbo-Croats speak the same language as the people of Serbia, with whom they desired to be incorporated.

Southern Slavs



Two other nationalities held an inferior place in the Dual Monarchy. The Rumanians, who occupied the Hungarian province of Transylvania, agitated for union with the kingdom of Rumania. The Italians living in Istria and the Trentino wanted to be "redeemed" from Austrian rule and restored to Italy.[1]

Rumanians and Italians

[1] See page 404.

The *Ausgleich*, as we have seen, formed a league between the Germans and the Magyars, the two strongest nationalities of Austria-Hungary. They were not only determined to preserve their own language and customs, but also to force them on the Slavs, Rumanians, and Italians. The result was great and increasing bitterness between the dominant and subject peoples. This discord of nationalities helped to precipitate the war in 1914, and in 1918 to disrupt the Dual Monarchy.

Discord of nationalities

Studies

1. On an outline map of the German Empire in 1914 indicate the territories of Prussia. 2. On an outline map of Austria-Hungary in 1914 indicate the regions predominantly German, Slavic, Romanic, and Magyar in population. 3. Compare the German Empire as a federation with the United States. 4. What was the historical origin of the free cities of the German Empire? 5. Explain the distinction between the titles "German Emperor" and "Emperor of Germany." 6. Contrast the organization and powers of the Bundesrat with the American Senate, and of the Reichstag with the American House of Representatives. 7. Why was the Reichstag described by its own members as merely a "hall of echoes"? 8. Explain how Prussia held a paramount position in the German Empire. 9. Why was Germany called the "political kindergarten of Europe"? 10. Name and locate the colonial possessions of Germany in 1914. 11. Why was the Austrian Empire called a "ramshackle empire"? 12. What was meant by calling Austria "a Slav house with a German façade"? 13. Comment on the statement, "You Magyars are only an island in an ocean of Slavs."

CHAPTER XIX

RUSSIA

135. The Russians

BEFORE the World War, Russia in Europe comprised three-fifths of the area of that continent and contained perhaps 150,000,000 people. The bulk of the inhabitants are eastern Slavs, the descendents of Slavic emigrants from the Danube and Elbe valleys during the early Middle Ages. The emigrants separated, centuries ago, into three groups, which have persisted to the present day.

The eastern Slavs

The Great Russians, who are much the largest of these groups, occupy the interior, the north, and the east of Russia. Their historic center is Moscow on the Moskva River, the capital of the medieval principality of Muscovy. To every patriotic Russian that city is still "Mother Moscow."

Great Russians

The Little Russians (Ruthenians, Ukrainians) hold the south and southwest of the country. They center about the holy city of Kiev on the Dnieper, where in 988 the Scandinavian Northmen adopted the Eastern or Greek form of Christianity for themselves, and for the Slavs among whom they settled. Intellectually, the Little Russians are far more energetic and imaginative than the Great Russians, and to them Russia owes most of her music, her poetry, and her folk song.

Little Russians

The White Russians, whose name is probably derived from their light-colored clothes, dwell to the west, in lands which once belonged to Lithuania. They number only a few millions.

White Russians

The three Russian peoples speak different dialects of one Slavic language. The dialectical differences are sufficient to prevent a Muscovite from understanding a Ukrainian and both from conversing with a White

Linguistic unity

Russian. For literary and official purposes, the Moscow dialect is everywhere employed. The alphabet in use comes from the Greek, enriched with special signs for Slavic letters.

The three Russian peoples also unite in a common allegiance to the Orthodox Church. This was an offshoot of the medieval Greek Church, from which most of its doctrines and ritual have been derived. Until the Russian Revolution of 1917, the tsar remained the head of the church, as far as to make and annul all appointments to ecclesiastical office. Theological questions were dealt with by a council of ecclesiastics called the Holy Synod. Russia, it may be noted, contains numberless dissenting sects, which formerly encountered persecution by the government for their unorthodox beliefs and practices.

Religious unity

136. The Non-Russians

The seaward expansion of Russia in Europe gradually enrolled many non-Russians among the tsar's subjects.[1] They were found principally along the frontier. Peter the Great annexed several Baltic provinces containing Esthonians, Letts, and Germans. Catherine II absorbed the greater part of Poland, and by her conquest of the Crimea and the northern coast of the Black Sea added to the empire millions of Mohammedan Tatars. Early in the nineteenth century Alexander I took Finland from Sweden (1809), wrested Bessarabia from Turkey (1812), secured a further slice of Poland (1815), and began the conquest of Caucasia. The Caucasian territory with its mixed population (Georgians, Circassians, Armenians, etc.) was not finally incorporated in the empire until after the middle of the century. Russia then reached her territorial limits in Europe. The break-up of the country since the World War has enabled most of these frontier peoples to establish independent states.

Frontier peoples

About ninety per cent of the inhabitants of Finland are Finns; the remainder are chiefly Swedes, who occupy the

[1] See the maps on pages 196 and 502.

coast of the Gulf of Bothnia. The Finns came from Asia early in the Middle Ages. They still keep the low stature, round heads, flat features, oblique eyes, and prominent cheek-bones of the Mongolian race. Their language is also of Asiatic origin. In spite of constant struggle

Finns

with a poor soil and an adverse climate, the Finns have made remarkable progress in civilization. Illiteracy is almost unknown among them. Nearly all are Lutherans.

A Finnish people, the Esths or Esthonians, dwell just south of the Gulf of Finland. Once wild and adventurous pirates,

the terror of the Baltic, the Esthonians were first conquered and Christianized by the Danes. The Danish king subsequently sold his Esthonian possessions to the crusading order of Teutonic Knights, who spread German influence throughout the country. Sweden during the sixteenth century assumed control of Esthonia, but after the wars of Charles XII it was ceded to his victorious rival, Peter the Great.[1] The Esthonians, like the Finns, are Lutherans.

Esthonians

The Letts of Livonia and Courland and the Lithuanians are two peoples who resemble each other closely in speech, personal appearance, and habits of life. With a third kindred group, the Borussi or Old Prussians,[2] they formerly occupied all the southeastern coast of the Baltic from the Vistula to the Düna. Owing to their impenetrable forests and swamps, the Letts and Lithuanians long remained heathen and did not accept Christianity until the fourteenth century. Their languages, though of Indo-European type, are the most archaic spoken in Europe. Force of circumstances denied the Letts a prominent place in history, but the Lithuanians during the Middle Ages built up a powerful state stretching from the Baltic to the Black Sea. The grand duchy of Lithuania united with Poland in 1569, and thereafter shared the vicissitudes of that kingdom.[3]

Letts and Lithuanians

Russian Poland, as constituted by the Vienna Congress,[4] had a mixed population of Lithuanians, Polish Slavs, Little and White Russians, and many Jews. The Lithuanians and Polish Slavs — conveniently referred to as Poles — belonged to the Roman Catholic Church, and though subjects of the tsar, kept their national spirit.

Poles

No account of the non-Russians could well omit a reference to the Jews. Five million Jews were found within the empire, especially in Poland, which had long been a Jewish settlement. The Jews preserved their religion, national traditions, and even their Yiddish language, a German dialect intermixed with many Hebrew and Slavic words and written in Hebrew characters.

Jews

[1] See page 204. [2] See pages 209–10. [3] See pages 215–16. [4] See page 356.

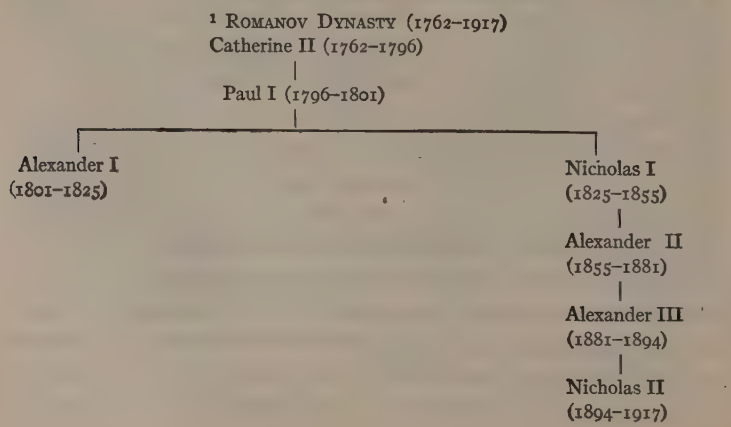
137. Alexander I, 1801–1825

Russian autocracy

The hodge-podge of territories and Babel of peoples composing the Russian Empire in the nineteenth century was ruled by an autocratic tsar. His decrees (ukases) were binding on all his subjects. Russian laws called him an "independent and absolute sovereign" and declared that God "orders men to submit to his superior authority, not only from fear of punishment, but as a religious duty." Many educated Russians, who perhaps were not greatly impressed by this appeal to divine right, nevertheless considered autocratic government a practical necessity for Russia. The enormous size and varied population of the country, the dense ignorance of most of its inhabitants, and the absence of a prosperous, progressive middle class, which could take part in political life, seemed to indicate that the triumph of democracy would be long postponed in the tsar's domains. The chief interest of Russian history during the last century lies, therefore, in the development of liberalism, which gradually undermined the whole fabric of autocracy, and in the revolutionary year of 1917 brought it crashing to the ground.[1]

Alexander I, grandson of Catherine II and son of the emperor Paul, who had been assassinated after a brief rule, began as a

[1] Romanov Dynasty (1762–1917)



THE KREMLIN, MOSCOW

The Kremlin, from whose battlements Napoleon watched the burning of Moscow, is an old fort, about 100 acres in extent, occupying a hill above the Moskva river. It is inclosed by a high stone wall with 19 towers and 5 gates. The Kremlin contains a number of buildings, among them the Uspenskiy Cathedral where the tsars were consecrated, the private chapel where they were baptized and married, and the imperial palace, a fine building in white stone with a gilded cupola. The great campanile of Ivan Veliky, erected in 1600, rises to a height of 318 feet. Close by is the celebrated Tsar-Kolokol (king of the bells), 65 feet in circumference around the rim, 19 feet high, and weighing 198½ tons. It was cast in 1735, but was broken before being hung.

monarch of enlightened views. Under the influence of his Swiss tutor, he imbibed many democratic ideas of the revolutionary period in Europe, and he aspired to put them into practice. The earlier part of the tsar's reign revealed him as a liberal-minded autocrat. He began to free the serfs on the crown lands; drew up an elaborate scheme of primary education, which, however, was shipwrecked by the lack of teachers and the stupidity of the popular mind; and started to codify the chaos of laws, consisting principally of seventy thousand ukases issued by his predecessors. Alexander also acted most generously toward the Finns and Poles, who received practical independence. Their only connection with Russia lay through the tsar in his capacity of grand duke of Finland and king of Poland.

The reforming Alexander

Alexander's ardor for reform grew cold during the latter part of his reign, especially after he came under the influence of that foe of liberalism, Prince Metternich. The tsar not only signed the Protocol of Troppau,[1] but also coöperated with his brother monarchs in putting down the first liberal uprisings in Italy and Spain. The last years of his life found him equally reactionary at home.

Alexander as a reactionary

138. Nicholas I, 1825–1855

Alexander's sudden death in December, 1825, resulted in some uncertainty as to the succession, and three weeks elapsed before his brother Nicholas mounted the throne. During this interval the revolutionary secret societies, which had begun to spring up in Russia as in western Europe, organized a mutiny among the troops at St. Petersburg. The ringleaders planned the overthrow of autocracy and the establishment of a constitutional régime under the grand duke Constantine. Their slogan was "Constantine and the Constitution," but many ignorant soldiers who shouted it actually supposed that "Constitution" was Constantine's wife! The

The Decembrist uprising

[1] See page 362.

uprising ended in a fiasco, and the Decembrists were severely punished by the new tsar.

Nicholas I, unlike his brother, never felt any sentimental sympathy with liberalism. The Decembrist uprising only confirmed him in the belief that Russia needed to be ruled with a strong hand. To prevent liberal ideas from spreading among his subjects, the tsar relied on a strict censorship of the press, passport regulations which made it difficult for any one to enter Russia or to leave it, an army of spies, and the secret police known as the Third Section. The chief of the Third Section had unlimited power to arrest, imprison, or deport a political suspect, without warrant and without trial. During the thirty years' reign of Nicholas I, Liberals by tens of thousands languished in jail or trod the path of exile to Siberia. The tsar seems finally to have realized that this system of repression was a mistake, but he clung to it until the end. "My successor," said he, "may do as he pleases; I cannot change."

Domestic policy of Nicholas I

NICHOLAS I

Nicholas was no less autocratic in his foreign policy. We have already learned how ruthlessly he put down the Polish insurrection and how he aided Francis Joseph I to destroy the Hungarian Republic.[1] Once only did the tsar espouse a revolutionary cause. In 1828 he sided with the Greeks who had risen against the Turks, but even then his purpose was not so much to free Greece as to exalt Russia. Nicholas afterwards waged the Crimean

Foreign policy of Nicholas I

[1] See pages 376 and 383.

War, a venture which brought him into conflict with Great Britain, France, and Sardinia as the allies of Turkey. He died before the war ended.

139. Alexander II, 1855–1881

Alexander II started out as a benevolent despot. The survivors of the Decembrist movement were allowed to return home, and other political offenders were also pardoned. The censorship of the press was relaxed, and the prohibition upon foreign travel was removed.

Reform

Alexander II

The tsar issued a new code of laws, based on those of western Europe. He improved the courts of justice, long notorious for their incompetence and corruption. More important still, he entrusted the administration of roads, schools, churches, and other local concerns to provincial and district assemblies (*zemstvos*), freely elected by all classes of the people. His most memorable achievement was the abolition of serfdom, which had lasted longer in Russia than in any other European country. Alexander's decrees between 1858–1861 freed nearly fifty million peasants and earned for their author the title of the "Tsar Liberator."

The era of reform lasted scarcely a decade. Alexander II was not a liberal at heart, and his counselors were men trained in the school of Nicholas I. They convinced him, as Metternich had convinced the first Alexander, that liberalism was a Western novelty, quite unsuited to holy

Reaction

Russia, and bound to be followed by revolution and the overthrow of autocracy. After the Polish insurrection of the early 'sixties,[1] which thoroughly frightened the tsar, reaction had full swing in Russia.

The intense disappointment of the educated classes (the *intelligentsia*) at Alexander's relapse into the traditional ways of Russian monarchs, gave rise to nihilism.[2] It began as an academic doctrine. Radical thinkers, building where the French philosophers of the eighteenth century had left off, set up reason and science as the twin guides of life. Russia, they urged, must make a clean sweep of autocracy, of the Orthodox Church, and of every other institution that had come down from an unreasoning, unscientific past. Only when the ground had been thus cleared, would it be possible to reconstruct a new and better society.

Nihilism

The nihilists before long began to seek converts among the masses. Under the guise of doctors, school teachers, factory hands, and common laborers, they preached the gospel of social and economic freedom to those who, as they said, were "exhausted by hunger, broken down by toil, the eternal slaves of the privileged classes, laboring without pause, without hope of redemption." Nothing could exceed the devotion of these youthful missionaries, both men and women, but their success was slight. The peasants remained just as deeply attached as ever to the "Little Father," the tsar. The government soon got wind of the revolutionary movement and imprisoned or exiled those who took part in it.

Nihilist propaganda

The nihilist propaganda of words now passed into a propaganda of deeds. Since the government ruled by terror, it was henceforth to be fought with terror. A secret committee at St. Petersburg condemned to death a number of prominent officials, spies, and members of the hated Third Section, and in some cases succeeded in assassin-

Political terrorism

[1] See page 376, note 1.

[2] Latin *nihil*, "nothing." The term was first introduced by Turgenev in his novel, *Fathers and Sons*.

CHURCH OF THE RESURRECTION OF CHRIST, PETROGRAD

Built on the spot where Alexander II was assassinated.

ating them. The terrorists were few in number, but their fearlessness made them extremely dangerous.

Coercion having failed to stamp out nihilism, Alexander II adopted conciliation. A scheme was drawn up, providing some sort of constitution and representative parliament for Russia. The very day when the tsar reluctantly consented to it, he was killed by a bomb while driving to his palace in the capital.

Assassination of Alexander II, 1881

140. Alexander III, 1881–1894

The revolutionary party issued a manifesto offering to refrain from further terrorism provided a representative assembly elected on the basis of manhood suffrage was summoned, and freedom of the press, of speech, and of public meeting was granted. These were the only means, the manifesto declared, by which the country could secure tranquility. But Alexander III, undeterred by his father's fate, continued to be "Autocrat of all the Russias."

Manifesto of the revolutionists

The evil genius behind the throne now appeared in the person of the tsar's former tutor, Pobêdonostsev, who had risen to be procurator, or secular chairman, of the Holy Synod. This position at the head of the governing body of the Orthodox Church enabled him to exercise immense influence upon ecclesiastical affairs, and hence upon the government, since Church and State were one in Russia. To Pobêdonostsev liberalism was anathema. He has left a presentation of his opinions in his *Reflections of a Russian Statesman*.[1] We read here that a constitutional system is the "great political lie which dominates our age"; that a representative parliament is merely an institution "serving for the satisfaction of the personal ambition, vanity, and self-interest of its members"; and that democracy produces "the most complicated and the most burdensome system of government recorded in the history of humanity." The procurator of the Holy Synod really believed all that, and he lost no opportunity of instilling his views into the mind of his royal master.

Pobêdonostsev

Another minister upon whom Alexander III leaned was Plehve, director of the state police. Plehve ferreted out and punished the leading terrorists so remorselessly that revolutionary nihilism almost disappeared. It was bound to disappear in any event. A few men and women, however heroic and determined, could not overthrow an autocracy which commanded the support of the official

Plehve

[1] English translation, 1898.

classes, of the Orthodox Church with its tens of thousands of priests, and of the stolid, conservative peasants, who formed the bulk of the population. As one of the terrorists regretfully confessed, terrorism was merely an "exercise in the art of self-sacrifice."

Russification

Pobêdonostsev, Plehve, and the other reactionaries surrounding the tsar were responsible for the efforts made to unify the empire by compelling all its non-Russian inhabitants to use the Russian language, accept Russian customs, and worship according to the rites of the Orthodox Church. The policy of "one Russia, one creed, and one tsar" had been occasionally followed in the reigns of Nicholas I and Alexander II. It became systematic under Alexander III and led to severe treatment of the Finns, Esthonians, Letts, Lithuanians, Poles, and Germans. In the case of the Jews, persecution sometimes resulted in the organized massacres known as "pogroms," which were carried out by mobs in the cities, often with the connivance of the officials. Thousands of Jews, in consequence, fled to the United States and other countries, cherishing fierce hatred of all things Russian.

Industrial Russia

If Russia during the reign of the third Alexander seemed to be politically dead, economically she made rapid progress. It was at this time that the country, for centuries almost wholly agricultural, began to be industrialized. The emancipation of the serfs allowed many of them to congregate in the cities, where they furnished an abundant supply of cheap labor. The government also started railroad building on an extensive scale, and by the grant of special privileges induced foreign capitalists to invest in Russian coal mines, iron mines, oil fields, and other natural resources. Factories sprang up like mushrooms, and millions of Russians, especially in the western portion of the empire, became factory workers. So tremendous a change could not fail to affect the life of the people in many ways. Old cities grew rapidly, and new cities developed. A middle class appeared, together with an industrial proletariat more intelligent and far less con-

servative than the peasantry. The workingmen organized trade unions, conducted strikes, and as in Germany lent a receptive ear to socialistic agitators against autocracy. These middle and lower classes were fertile soil for the seeds of revolution.

141. Nicholas II, 1894–1914

The accession of Nicholas II brought no change in the political situation. The young man was amiable and well-meaning, but as much an autocrat by nature as any of his predecessors. "Devoting all my efforts to the prosperity of the nation," he announced, "I will preserve the principles of autocracy as firmly and unswervingly as my late father." These were not idle words. The tsar kept in office both Pobêdonostsev and Plehve, promoting the latter to the important post of minister of the interior, with almost dictatorial powers. These two reactionaries redoubled their efforts to keep Russia "frozen." Teachers, students, journalists, professional men, in fact, every one who dared think aloud suffered under the iron régime. The suppression of newspapers and the removal of university professors for liberal utterances were common occurrences. No person was secure against arbitrary arrest, imprisonment, exile, or execution.

Maintenance of autocracy

NICHOLAS II

The opposition to autocracy, which had lain dormant during the reign of Alexander III, revived during that of Nicholas II. Not only the *intelligentsia*, but also the middle and lower classes now espoused the liberal cause. Enlightened members of the nobility, as in France before the

Popular discontent

Revolution, added their voices to the rising volume of criticism. Then came the Russo-Japanese War (1904–1905), revealing in pitiless fashion the government's incapacity and corruption. The assassination of Plehve, which occurred at this time, was a tell-tale symptom of the popular discontent.

"Red Sunday"

On Sunday, January 22, 1905, an event occurred which stirred public feeling to its depths. A radical priest, Gapon by name, organized a procession of working people, both men and women, to march through the streets of the capital and lay their grievances before the "Little Father" in person. They had no faith in the promises of any of his officials. The demonstrators reached the Winter Palace to find, not the tsar, but Cossacks, and to be greeted with volleys of musketry. This was the massacre of "Red Sunday."

The general strike

The months which followed witnessed an epidemic of strikes throughout Russia. Every strike had a twofold purpose — the improvement of economic conditions and the securing of a constitution. In October, 1905, a general strike began in St. Petersburg and other large cities, together with a stoppage of railway transportation all over the empire. The strike fever extended to the middle class; teachers dismissed school and judges court; merchants closed their stores and doctors their offices; even the ballet dancers refused to dance. It was passive resistance to autocracy on the part of an entire nation.

The October manifesto

With life in Russia virtually at a standstill, no alternative remained to the government but submission. The tsar dismissed Pobêdonostsev and issued a manifesto promising freedom of conscience, speech, meeting, and association — the elementary rights of citizenship. He further promised that a representative assembly (Duma) should be elected on a wide franchise, and that henceforth no law should be valid without the Duma's consent. Russia was at last to have the free institutions which were no longer novelties in western Europe.

The first Russian parliament, known as the "Duma of the National Indignation," met in 1906. It was opened by

Nicholas II in person. The members, scarcely without exception, represented all the elements in Russian life opposed to autocracy. A struggle with the government occupied the entire session. The Duma wanted the tsar's ministers to be responsible to it, as the only means of giving the people control over the officials. The tsar would not accept any further limitation of his authority, and at length cut the matter short by dissolving the assembly. Its failure to coöperate with him was a "cruel disappointment" to this sorely tried autocrat.

The first Duma

Three other Dumas met between 1907 and 1914. The tsar so modified suffrage qualifications that the membership was confined mainly to large landowners, wealthy manufacturers, and other representatives of the propertied, conservative classes. They accomplished some useful legislation, but did not succeed in winning liberty for the people. When the World War broke out, autocracy seemed to be as firmly seated as ever in Russia.

Later Dumas

Studies

1. On an outline map indicate the chief European territories acquired by Russia in the nineteenth century. 2. Explain the following: (*a*) Holy Synod; (*b*) Third Section; (*c*) *zemstvos;* (*d*) Yiddish language; (*e*) *intelligentsia;* (*f*) the Decembrists; and (*g*) Duma. 3. Why has Russia been called the "adopted child" of Europe? 4. Why was the character and personality of the tsars always an important factor in Russian history? 5. Comment on the tsar's title "Autocrat of all the Russias." 6. What was meant by calling the Russian imperial government "a despotism tempered by assassination"? 7. Show that Russian nihilism was not the same thing as anarchism. 8. Contrast the methods of Russification with those of Americanization. 9. Account for the slow progress of liberalism in Russia.

CHAPTER XX

TURKEY AND THE BALKAN STATES

142. The Balkan Peoples

The Balkan Peninsula

The Balkan Peninsula divides less sharply from the rest of the Continent than the Italian and Iberian peninsulas. The northern boundary is formed by rivers rather than by mountains. It extends from the mouths of the Danube to the junction of that stream with the Save, at Belgrade, and thence follows the course of the Save and the Kulpa to the Adriatic Sea, near Fiume. In its general contour the peninsula resembles an inverted triangle, the apex of which ends in the Morea (anciently the Peloponnesus). Examination of a physical map shows that the surface is almost entirely mountainous, the only extensive plains being those formed by the valleys of the Danube and the Maritza, and the basin of Thessaly. The line of the Balkans clearly separates the upper from the lower portion of the peninsula, but so many routes cross them that they have always formed simply an obstacle, never a barrier, to invading peoples from the north. Owing to the distribution of the mountain ranges, the principal rivers empty into the Black Sea and the Ægean, rather than into the Adriatic. The best harbors and most numerous islands are also located on the eastern side of the peninsula. The Balkans, in fact, form a part of the Near East, and their history during modern times is indissolubly linked with the Eastern Question.

Inhabitants of the Balkan Peninsula

No other part of Europe of equal extent contains so many different peoples as the Balkan Peninsula. The original inhabitants were Illyrians, represented to-day by the Albanians. The Greeks rank as the next oldest inhabitants of the peninsula, though the original

purity of their blood has been adulterated by intermixture with Albanians and Slavs. Toward the end of the sixth century A.D., the Serbo-Croats began to leave their homes among the Carpathians and to occupy the region south of the Danube. The Bulgarians, a people of remotely Asiatic origin and akin to the Magyars and Turks, first appeared in the seventh century. They adopted the Slavic speech, religion, and culture of the Serbo-Croats. The Rumanians claim descent from the Roman colonists of Dacia north of the Danube; they seem to be, however, chiefly the descendants of the Slavic Vlachs or Wallachs, who are also found in Bessarabia and Transylvania. The Turks descend from the Ottoman invaders of the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries and from later immigrants. Intermarriage with their Christian captives and converts from Christianity to Islam has made the Turks substantially European in physique. The Turkish population is nowhere found in compact masses except in northeastern Bulgaria and in the vicinity of Adrianople and Constantinople.

Languages

As long as the Ottoman power prevailed in the Balkan peninsula, Turkish was the language officially used. The Serbo-Croats and the Bulgarians preserved their Slavic speech, but borrowed many words from Turkish. The same is true of Rumanian, though grammatically it belongs to the Latin or Romance family of languages. Even modern Greek, as spoken, contains a large number of Turkish terms. These do not appear in the literary language, which attempts to reproduce the Greek of classic antiquity. The Albanian language has high interest to the philologist, as a very ancient Indo-European tongue and the only surviving representative of the primitive speech of the peninsula.

Religions

Besides the Turks, about half of the Albanians, many Serbo-Croats of Bosnia and Herzegovina, and some of the Bulgarians are Moslems. The bulk of the Christian population belongs to the Greek Church, which in doctrine and ritual is almost identical with the Orthodox Church of Russia. Roman Catholicism finds nearly all its adherents in this part of Europe among the Serbo-Croats, who settled

upon the Adriatic coast and came there into contact with Latin civilization.

The Balkan Peninsula, like Russia, has lagged behind western Europe in economic development. Its peoples are mainly small farmers, tilling the soil with rude implements, or herdsmen who keep flocks of sheep and goats. What commerce exists is almost entirely conducted by Greeks and Jews. The principal explanation of this backwardness must be sought in Turkish misgovernment, corruption, and tyranny, prolonged for centuries.

Backwardness of the Balkan Peninsula

143. The Ottoman Turks

The empire of the Ottoman Turks formed a typical Oriental despotism. The sultan was not only lord of the Turkish realm in both Asia and Europe, but also the caliph, or spiritual head, of all Islam. He lived shut up in his seraglio at Constantinople and depended upon his vizier (prime minister) and divan (council of ministers) to execute his will. Each province had a pasha (governor) nominally subject to the sultan, but more often than not practically independent of him. The professional soldiers known as Janizaries, who at first had been exclusively recruited from Christian children, comprised the standing army.

The Ottoman Empire

Only those who accepted Islam were citizens of the Ottoman Empire. The Turks tolerated the presence of Christians, but deprived them of all political rights. Unbelievers could not hold any civil office or serve in the army. They also had to pay heavy taxes not imposed upon Moslems. Some Christians, as we have seen, accepted the faith of their conquerors in order to secure the privileges of citizenship. Even including these converts, the Turks in southeastern Europe remained a small minority of the population. Impassable barriers, raised by differences of race, language, religion, and customs, separated them from their subjects.

Turks and Christians

The Turks ruled the "Christian cattle" only to exploit them. The taxes were farmed out to collectors, who squeezed

PEOPLES OF THE BALKAN PENINSULA AND ASIA MINOR
Rumanians
Bulgarians
Serbo-Croats
Albanians
Greeks
Turks
Armenians and Kurds
Arabs
Scale of Miles
50 100 150 200
HUNGARY
RUMANIA
Belgrade
Bukharest
Constanza
Sarajevo
SERBIA
Danube
BLACK SEA
Nish
Varna
MONTE NEGRO
Cetigne
Sofia
BULGARIA
Philippopolis
Adrianople
Constantinople
Bosporus
Sinope
ALBANIA
Durazzo
Strumitsa
Monastir
TURKEY
Thrace
Scutari
Trebizond
Salonika
Sea of Marmora
Gallipoli
Brusa
Angora
Irmak
Kizil
Larissa
CORFU
GREECE
Pardanelles
A S I A M I N O R
MITYLENE
Anatolia
Smyrna
CHIOS
SAMOS
Corinth
Athens
Konia
Diarbekr
Sparta
Adana
Adalia
Antioch
Aleppo
RHODES
M E D I T E R R A N E A N S E A
CRETE
Candia
CYPRUS
Arabs
Longitude 28° East from Greenwich
THE M.-N. WORKS

all they could out of the peasantry. Under this system far more money went into the pockets of the tax-gatherer than into the public treasury. An incredible corruption paralyzed the entire administration. Officials purchased their appointment, and once in office depended on bribery and corruption to eke out their salaries. Real government in the interest of the people did not exist.

Rule of the Turks

The Ottoman Empire in the eighteenth century showed plain signs of the blight which inevitably descends upon states built up by the sword and maintained only by the sword. Few of its despotic sovereigns possessed real ability, and the control of affairs passed more and more into the hands of self-seeking ministers and favorites. The Janizaries, a turbulent body, often used their power to set up and depose sultans at will. The weakness of the central administration was reflected in the provinces, where the pashas acquired substantial independence and in many instances made their power hereditary. Turkey's internal decadence offered a promising opportunity for its partition among European powers.

Decadence of Turkey

Ever since the fateful year, 1683,[1] the Turks had lost ground in Europe. Austria soon recovered Hungary, Transylvania, and much of Croatia and Slavonia. Russia under Catherine II seized the Crimea, with the adjoining territory, and under Alexander I took Bessarabia. The settlement of 1815 made the Ionian Islands a British protectorate.[2] Then, as the nineteenth century progressed, the Christian peoples of the Balkans, stirred by the same enthusiasm for nationality which had moved Italians, Germans, Belgians, Poles, and Bohemians, threw off the Ottoman yoke and declared for freedom. The dismemberment of Turkey began.

Dismemberment of Turkey

144. Montenegro and Serbia

The warlike Serbo-Croats of Montenegro never fully accepted Ottoman sovereignty. A corner of the "Black Mountain" country held out for four hundred years against the Turks. One

[1] See page 206. [2] See page 355.

of the greatest of Montenegrin heroes is Ivan, who, when the enemy in the sixteenth century pressed in from all sides, withdrew to the inaccessible heights of Cetigne, where the capital of the little principality has ever since been located. According to the national legend, Ivan still sleeps in a mountain cave — to awake when the hour strikes for the expulsion of the "infidel." The independence of Montenegro was finally recognized by the sultan in 1799.

Montenegro independent

Montenegro remained a principality until 1910, when Prince Nicholas, after a reign of half a century, assumed the title of king. A new constitution, which went into effect five years previously, established a national parliament elected by manhood suffrage. The tiny Montenegrin kingdom thus took a place among liberal monarchies.

Montenegro a kingdom

The Serbo-Croats of Serbia have a memorable history. In the fourteenth century one of their rulers, Stephen Dushan, built up an empire which covered nearly the entire Balkan Peninsula from the Danube to the Gulf of Corinth and from the Adriatic to the Ægean. It was Dushan's ambition to unite Serbians, Greeks, and Bulgarians, and by their union to prevent the Ottoman power from taking root in southeastern Europe. The Serbian Empire did not long survive its founder, however, and completely disappeared as a result of the Turkish victory in the battle of Kossovo (1389).

Medieval Serbia

After Kossovo Serbia existed for seventy years as a state tributary to Turkey. The country was then formally annexed by the sultans, who held it until the opening of the nineteenth century. All this time the Serbians never forgot their glorious past. The exploits of Stephen Dushan and other national heroes were handed down by minstrels, who secretly assembled the peasants and sang to them of the days when Serbia held first place in the Balkans. A people with such memories could never be altogether enslaved.

Serbia under the Turks

The first founder of modern Serbia was Karageorge ("Black George"), a peasant's son. The uprising which he led in 1804 cleared the country of the Turks, but they soon regained it. The Serbians rose again in 1815, this

Revolts of the Serbians

time under the leadership of the peasant Milosh. Supported by Russia, Serbia managed to extort from the sultan the privilege of self-government, with Milosh as hereditary prince.

The Serbians soon showed that they could rule themselves, as well as fight valiantly against Turkish tyranny. After winning freedom they proceeded to make over their assembly of warriors into a genuine representative body. They were the first of the Balkan peoples to set up a constitutional government. Serbia secured complete independence of Turkey in 1878 and four years later became a kingdom. The ruler in 1914 was Peter I, a grandson of the heroic Karageorge.

Serbia a kingdom

145. Greece

The Greeks had not been a free people since their conquest by the Romans in the second century B.C. Byzantines, crusading Franks, and Venetians occupied Greece during medieval times. By the middle of the fifteenth century the entire country came under the Turks, whose dominion endured until the nineteenth century had run one-quarter of its course.

Greece under foreign sway

The loss of freedom by the Greeks did not extinguish their sense of nationality. The Greek Church, to which all belonged, fostered national sentiment, both by keeping alive hostility to the "infidel" and by preserving in its services something more of the old Greek language than the vernacular of the country contained. A great scholar, Adamantios Korais (1748–1833), made it his lifework to create a literary language for the Greeks of his day. By extending the knowledge of the ancient classics among his countrymen, Korais helped greatly to revive their memories of the free Greece which had thrown back the Persian hordes at Marathon, at Salamis, and at Platæa. A secret society called *Hetairia Philike* (Association of Friends) also arose, and like the Italian *Carbonari* carried on revolutionary propaganda far and wide.

Greek nationality

The Greeks first raised the standard of revolt in 1821. Volunteers from every European country, as well as a few Americans,

came to help them.[1] The powers at first stood coldly by, for Metternich, the presiding genius of the Concert of Europe, considered the Greeks simply rebels against "legitimate" Ottoman authority. As the struggle proceeded and the Greeks seemed likely to be overwhelmed, public opinion in Great Britain and France increasingly favored intervention, and the accession of Nicholas I in 1825 brought to the throne a tsar ready to follow the traditional Russian policy toward the Turks. The three powers finally agreed to demand that Greece be made, like Serbia, a self-governing state under Turkish sovereignty. When the sultan refused this arrangement, an allied fleet destroyed the Turkish navy at Navarino, a French army drove the Turks out of the Morea, and the Russians, crossing the Balkans, moved upon Constantinople. The sultan had to yield, and in 1829 signed a treaty which granted complete independence to central and southern Greece.

The Greek Revolution, 1821–1829

Greek patriots wanted a republican government, but the European powers set up a monarchy. A Bavarian prince wore the crown until 1862, when a popular uprising drove him out with his German soldiers and German courtiers. A Danish prince then became king, with the title of George I.[2] Greece at this time received a new and liberal constitution.

Kingdom of Greece

The kingdom of Greece, as originally established, comprised only a small part of ancient Hellas. More than half of the Greek people remained under Turkish rule, distributed in Thessaly, Epirus, Macedonia, Thrace, the Ionian Islands, the islands of the Ægean, Crete, Cyprus, and the western coast of Asia Minor (the classic Ionia).[3] A Pan-Hellenic movement soon began to recover as much as possible of these regions from the Turks. Great Britain

Pan-Hellenism

[1] The most famous of these Philhellenes was Lord Byron. Read his poems: "Greece" (*The Corsair*, canto iii, lines 1–54); "Modern Greece" (*Childe Harold*, canto ii, stanzas 83–92); "The Death of Greece" (*The Giaour*, lines 68–141); and "The Isles of Greece" (*Don Juan*, canto iii, between stanzas 86 and 87).

[2] Succeeded in 1913 by his son, Constantine I.

[3] See the map facing page 528.

THE OTTOMAN EMPIRE 1683-1914 A.D.

fostered it in 1863–1864 by ceding the Ionian Islands, and in 1881 by inducing the sultan to relinquish Thessaly. The Balkan Wars of 1912–1913, which will be described presently, gave Greece southern Epirus, a valuable part of Macedonia, Crete, and many smaller islands. When the World War broke out and Turkey sided with the Central Powers, it was the hope of the Greek premier, Venizelos, that Greece might now completely realize her Pan-Hellenic ambitions by entering the struggle on the side of the Allies.

146. The Crimean War, 1854–1856, and the Treaty of Paris

The successful revolutions in Montenegro, Serbia, and Greece pointed to the impending dissolution of the Ottoman Empire. Such, at least, was the belief of Nicholas I. He once remarked to the British ambassador at St. Petersburg: "We have on our hands a sick man — a very sick man; it will be a great misfortune if one of these days he should slip away from us, especially before all necessary arrangements were made." The arrangements hinted at by the tsar involved a partition of the remaining Turkish possessions between Great Brit-

Russia and Turkey

"What Nicholas Heard in the Shell"
A cartoon by Sir John Tenniel which appeared in the English journal *Punch* for June 10, 1854. The tsar is shown holding a bombshell to his ear and, as he listens to it (as children do to sea shells), having a vision of armed men.

ain and Russia, the former taking Crete and Egypt, the latter securing the Balkan provinces. The British ministry, however, refused to have anything to do with a scheme which would have placed Constantinople, the gate of the Black Sea and the Mediterranean, under the Russian flag. Nicholas I then determined to settle the Eastern Question himself. An opportunity to do so arose in 1853, following the sultan's rejection of a demand made by the tsar that all Greek Christians in the Ottoman Empire be placed under Russian protection. Had the sultan yielded, Russia would have been enabled to interfere constantly in the affairs of Turkey. The dispute between the two countries soon resulted in an open rupture.

THE CRIMEAN CAMPAIGN

The Turks did not fight alone. Great Britain supported them because of the fear that the downfall of the Ottoman Empire would be followed by the Russian occupation of Constantinople and Russian control of the eastern Mediterranean, thus menacing British communications with India. France joined Great Britain, principally because the adventurous Napoleon III, who had recently become emperor, wished to pay off the grudges against Russia which Napoleon I had accumulated.[1] Count Cavour and Victor Emmanuel II added the Sardinian kingdom to the alliance, in order to further their plans for the unification of Italy.[2] The Russians fought alone, for both Austria and Prussia preserved neutrality.

Coalition against Russia

The war was confined to the Crimea, where the allies sought to capture Sevastopol, Russia's naval base on the Black Sea. The siege lasted eleven months. It proved to be a difficult

[1] See pages 393–394. [2] See pages 399–400.

operation, for Russian reinforcements continually entered the place by the northern roads, while the allied armies could only be maintained by sea. Both sides suffered fearfully from the winter weather, lack of food, and inadequate hospital service. More men lost their lives through disease than in the bloody battles of the Alma, of Balaklava (celebrated in Tennyson's poem, *The Charge of the Light Brigade*), and of Inkermann. After the fall of Sevastopol, Russia withdrew from the unequal contest.[1]

Siege of Sevastopol

FLORENCE NIGHTINGALE

Miss Florence Nightingale (1820–1910) did remarkable work during the Crimean War for the relief of sick and wounded British soldiers. To her self-sacrificing labors are also due many improvements in hospital management, sanitation, and the training of nurses.

The conditions of peace were drawn up by representatives of all the great powers, meeting at Paris. The treaty provided that the Black Sea should be neutralized, neither Russia nor Turkey being allowed to build arsenals on its coasts or to maintain naval craft in its waters. This prohibition, however, was soon ignored by Russia. The Dardanelles and the Bosporus were also to be kept closed to foreign warships, as long as Turkey remained at peace with her neighbors. The most important clause of the treaty guaranteed the integrity of the sultan's possessions, only exacting from him promises of freedom of worship and better government for his

Treaty of Paris, 1856

[1] Read *Sevastopol* by the Russian novelist Tolstoi.

Christian subjects. The promises were never kept; and the lot of Christians in the Ottoman dominions became harder than ever.

Turkey and the European Concert

The Treaty of Paris thus gave a new lease of life to the decrepit Ottoman Empire. In their anxiety to keep Russia out of Constantinople, Great Britain and France abandoned the tradition, which had come down from the crusades, that the Turks were a barbarous people and the enemies of civilization. Turkey was to be treated henceforth as no longer outside the pale, but as a respectable member of the European family of nations.

147. Rumania

Moldavia and Wallachia

The dismemberment of the Ottoman Empire recommenced soon after the Treaty of Paris. Turkey's principalities of Moldavia and Wallachia had been semi-independent under a Russian protectorate since 1829. They command the lower Danube, and their acquisition would have enabled Russia to control the navigation of the most important river of Europe. Consequently, the diplomats at Paris converted Moldavia and Wallachia into self-governing states, with Turkey as their nominal overlord. The Rumanians, who inhabit both principalities, desired, however, to form a united nation. The powers and the sultan gave a grudging consent, and in 1862 the new state of Rumania came into existence.

The Rumanian kingdom

After being governed for several years by a native prince, the Rumanians in 1866 took Charles I,[1] a member of the Hohenzollern family, as their ruler. He built up a large army, provided it with Prussian artillery, and had it drilled by Prussian officers. These military reforms enabled Rumania to be an effective ally of Russia in the Russo-Turkish War of the 'seventies. As her reward, Rumania gained complete independence in 1878. Three years later Prince Charles assumed a kingly crown.

The population of Rumania numbered about seven millions

[1] Succeeded in 1914 by his nephew, Ferdinand I.

THE CONGRESS OF BERLIN, 1878

A painting by Anton von Werner in the City Hall, Berlin. The six figures in the foreground are, in order from left to right: Count Caroly; Prince Gorchakov (seated), first Russian plenipotentiary; the Earl of Beaconsfield; Count Andrássy, Austrian plenipotentiary; Prince Bismarck; and General Schuvalov, second Russian plenipotentiary.

CONSTANTINOPLE AND THE BOSPORUS

in 1914. Three-fourths as many more lived in Transylvania and Bukowina, as subjects of the Dual Monarchy, and in the Russian province of Bessarabia. Rumania, like Italy, thus had her "unredeemed" peoples, and like Italy, she entered the World War principally to liberate them from an alien rule.

"Unredeemed Rumania"

148. The Russo-Turkish War, 1877–1878, and the Treaty of Berlin

Russia's desire to rescue the Christians of the Balkans from oppression and, incidentally, to take Constantinople, brought about another war between the two countries. Sufficient justification for it existed in the cruelty with which Turkish soldiers had suppressed an insurrection of the Bulgarians. The atrocities committed in Bulgaria aroused all Europe. Gladstone issued from retirement to denounce the "unspeakable Turk" and to demand that Great Britain join with the other powers in driving him back into Asia. Unfortunately, not Gladstone, but Disraeli was then prime minister, and in Disraeli's mind British interests in supporting Turkey against Russia outweighed the sufferings of Christians in the Balkans. Great Britain, therefore, did nothing, but Montenegro and Serbia boldly declared war on the sultan. Many Russians volunteered to help their Slav brethren; and at length the tsar (Alexander II) decided upon intervention.

Origin of the Russo-Turkish War

This time western Europe remained neutral and watched the duel between Slav and Turk. Russian armies promptly crossed the Danube, only to be held up for months before the fortress of Plevna in Bulgaria. The Turks fought well, and their defense of Plevna is celebrated in military annals. Its fall allowed the tsar's troops to advance within sight of the Golden Horn. Here they paused, for both Great Britain and Austria-Hungary threatened hostilities, in case Russia occupied Constantinople.

Course of the Russo-Turkish War

Russia and Turkey now made peace. By the Treaty of San Stefano[1] the sultan agreed to the creation of a new state, Greater Bulgaria, stretching from the Danube to the Ægean and including nearly all Macedonia. Both Greece and Serbia protested vigorously against this arrangement, which upset their own plans for expansion in the Balkans. Far more serious was the opposition of the Western powers. Austria did not relish the idea of a strong Balkan state lying across her path to the Mediterranean, while Great Britain feared that Greater Bulgaria would be merely the willing tool of Russia. A general European conflict threatened, until the tsar agreed to submit the treaty to revision by an international congress to be held at Berlin, under Bismarck's presidency.

Treaty of San Stefano

The assembled diplomats attempted still another solution of the Eastern Question. The Treaty of Berlin recognized Montenegro, Serbia, and Rumania as sovereign states, wholly independent of Turkey. That part of Bulgaria between the Danube and the Balkans became a self-governing principality under Turkish sovereignty. Bulgaria south of the Balkans — Eastern Rumelia — went back to the sultan, together with Macedonia. Austria-Hungary was allowed to occupy and administer the Turkish provinces of Bosnia and Herzegovina. Great Britain was given the right to hold the island of Cyprus. These arrangements having been made, the powers again solemnly guaranteed the "integrity" of the sultan's remaining possessions in Europe.

Treaty of Berlin

149. Bulgaria

Diplomacy did not bring peace to the Balkans. The inhabitants of Eastern Rumelia in 1885 revolted against the Turks and united with Bulgaria. The European powers protested against this infraction of the Berlin treaty, but took no measures to prevent the union of the two Bulgarian territories.

Union of Eastern Rumelia and Bulgaria

[1] A suburb of Constantinople.

BALKAN STATES
after the Treaty of Berlin
1878 A. D.
The proposed boundaries by the Treaty of San Stefano, thus:
Scale of Miles
0 40 80 120 160
RUSSIA
Jassy
MOLDAVIA
Kronstadt
HUNGARY
Galatz
RUMANIA
WALACHIA
Bukharest
Krajova
BOSNIA
Belgrade
Sarajevo
SERBIA
Plevna
Varna
Nish
BULGARIA
Sofia
EASTERN RUMELIA
Constanza
BLACK SEA
MONTENEGRO
Cettigne
Cattaro
Scutari
ADRIATIC SEA
Philippopolis
Kirk Kilisse
Adrianople
Lule Burgas
Durazzo
TURKEY
Monastir
MACEDONIA
Scutari
Sea of Marmora
Brindisi
Avlona
Salonika
Gallipoli
ITALY
Gulf of Taranto
Strait of Otranto
Larissa
THESSALY
To Greece 1881
CORFU
EPIRUS
TURKEY IN ASIA
MITYLENE
GREECE
Smyrna
IONIAN SEA
CHIOS
Corinth
Athens
SAMOS
IONIAN ISLANDS
RHODES
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
CRETE OR CANDIA
Candia
THE M.-N. WORKS
18° Longitude 20° East from 22° Greenwich 24°
16° 18° 20° 22° 24° 26° 28° 30°
46° 44° 42° 40° 38° 36°

BALKAN STATES
after the Treaty of Bukharest
1913 A. D.
Enos-Midia Line, thus:
Scale of Miles
0 20 80 120 160
RUSSIA
Jassy
MOLDAVIA
Kronstadt
HUNGARY
Galatz
RUMANIA
Bukharest
Constanza
Krajova
BOSNIA
Belgrade
Sarajevo
Varna
Plevna
Nish
SERBIA
BULGARIA
Sofia
BLACK SEA
MONTENEGRO
Cettigne
Cattaro
Scutari
ADRIATIC SEA
Philippopolis
Kirk Kilisse
Adrianople
Midia
Lule Burgas
Durazzo
TURKEY
Monastir
Scutari
Sea of Marmora
Brindisi
Avlona
Salonika
Enos
Gallipoli
ITALY
Gulf of Taranto
Strait of Otranto
Larissa
THESSALY
CORFU
EPIRUS
TURKEY IN ASIA
MITYLENE
GREECE
Smyrna
IONIAN SEA
CHIOS
Corinth
Athens
SAMOS
IONIAN ISLANDS
RHODES
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
CRETE OR CANDIA
Candia
18° Longitude 20° East from 22° Greenwich 24°
16° 18° 20° 22° 24° 26° 28° 30°
46° 44° 42° 40° 38° 36°

Bulgaria owed her existence to Russia, and for a number of years the influence of that country predominated in the new principality. Russian officials conducted the government, organized the army, and directed Bulgarian policies. The first ruler was a German prince, Alexander of Battenberg. Alexander developed an independent spirit and more and more relied upon native leaders, whose motto was "Bulgaria for the Bulgarians." Russia at length forced his abdication. The new ruler, Ferdinand of Saxe-Coburg, proved to be no more tractable than his predecessor. As time passed, the Bulgarians became completely alienated from their Russian protectors.

Russia and Bulgaria

CONSTANTINOPLE

Bulgaria remained tributary to the sultan until 1908. By that time she had grown strong enough to repudiate another clause of the Berlin treaty and to set up as an independent kingdom. Ferdinand exchanged his princely dignity for the more pretentious title of tsar of the Bulgarians.

The Bulgarian kingdom

150. The Balkan Wars, 1912–1913, and the Treaty of Bukharest

The year 1908 saw also a revolution in the sultan's dominions. This was the work of the Young Turks, a group of patriotic reformers who aimed to revive and modernize the Ottoman Empire. They won over the army and carried through a sudden, almost bloodless *coup d'état*. The terrified sultan (Abdul Hamid II) had to issue a decree restoring

The Young Turks

the constitution granted by him at his accession in 1876, but abrogated soon afterwards. His despotism vanished, and the Ottoman Empire, with an elective parliament, a responsible ministry, and a free press took a place among democratic states.

It soon became evident, however, that the Young Turks were nationalists as well as democrats. They intended to weld together all the peoples of the Ottoman Empire into a single nation, with Turkish as the favored language and Islam the only privileged faith. Just as the Russian policy was one of Russification, so that of the Young Turks was one of Ottomanization.

Ottomanization

Cruel oppression and massacres of Christians in various parts of the empire followed, particularly in Macedonia. This Turkish province was peopled by Greeks, Serbians, and Bulgarians. Large numbers of them fled to their respective countries, carrying their grievances with them, and agitated for war against Turkey.

Macedonia

The war soon came. Greece, Montenegro, Serbia, and Bulgaria, forgetting for the moment the jealousies which divided them, came together in a Balkan alliance, issued to the sultan an ultimatum demanding self-government for Macedonia, and when this was refused, promptly began hostilities. They were everywhere successful, and Turkey was compelled to give up all her European dominions west of a line drawn from Enos on the Ægean Sea to Midia on the Black Sea. She likewise ceded Crete to Greece. The allies then proceeded to quarrel over the disposition of Macedonia. A second Balkan War resulted, with Greece, Serbia, Montenegro, Rumania, and Turkey ranged against Bulgaria. Tsar Ferdinand could not cope with so many foes and sued for peace.

First and Second Balkan Wars, 1912–1913

The treaty signed at Bukharest completely altered the aspect of the Balkans. Bulgaria surrendered to Rumania districts south of the Danube, and allowed Greece, Montenegro, and Serbia to annex most of Macedonia. These three states were now nearly doubled in size. The Turkish province of Albania became an independent

Treaty of Bukharest, 1913

principality. Turkey, though ignored at the Peace Conference, escaped dismemberment and even secured an accession of territory. The Treaty of Bukharest thus left the Turk in Europe, and by sowing seeds of enmity between Bulgaria and her sister states helped further to postpone a satisfactory solution of the Eastern Question.

Studies

1. On an outline map indicate the shrinkage of Turkey in Europe during (*a*) the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries; (*b*) the nineteenth century; and (*c*) the twentieth century. 2 Name in chronological order the states formed from Turkish territories in Europe. 3. Name and locate the capitals of the Balkan states. 4. "The two forces that have constantly undermined the power of Turkey are religion and nationality." How does Turkish history during the last hundred years confirm this statement? 5. Mention three occasions in the nineteenth century when the Ottoman Empire seemed to be on the point of dissolution. 6. Why did Russia favor nationalism in the Balkans and oppose it in other parts of Europe? 7. Trace on the map the successive steps in the expansion of Greece between 1829 and 1914. 8. On the map facing page 528, trace the proposed boundaries of Montenegro, Serbia, and Bulgaria by the Treaty of San Stefano. 9. Explain the strategic value of Constantinople. 10. Why has the Balkan Peninsula been called the "danger zone" of Europe?

CHAPTER XXI

EXPANSION OF EUROPE IN THE OLD WORLD

151. Greater Europe

COLONIAL expansion, begun by Spaniards and Portuguese in the sixteenth century and continued in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries by Russians, Dutch, French, and English, culminated during the past hundred-odd years. It is principally this movement which gives such significance to European history. The civilization of Europe, as affected by the Renaissance, the Reformation, and the Revolution, has been spread throughout the world. The languages, literatures, religions, laws, and customs of Europe have been extended to almost all mankind.

Expansion of Europe

Great Britain in 1815 was the leading world power. France had been well-nigh eliminated as a colonial rival by the Seven Years' War, and Holland had lost valuable possessions overseas in the revolutionary and Napoleonic wars. In America, Great Britain held Canada, some of the West India islands, and part of Guiana; in Africa, Cape Colony; in Asia, much of India and Ceylon; and in Australia the eastern coast. The British Empire continued to grow throughout the nineteenth century, until it embraced in 1914 approximately a fourth of the habitable area of the earth and a fourth of the earth's population. No such wide dominion had ever been built up before, either in ancient or medieval times.

The British Empire

The spectacle of the British Empire, so populous, so rich in natural resources, so far-flung, stirred the imagination and aroused the envy of the witnessing nations. They, also, became eager for possessions in savage or

Other colonial empires

THE WORLD POWERS, 1815 A.D.
British
Russian
Spanish
Danish
French
Portuguese
Dutch
Scale along the Equator
0 1000 2000 3000 4000 5000
WEST INDIES
Caribbean Sea
THE M.-N. WORKS
80° Longitude West 40° from Greenwich 0° Longitude 40° East from 80° Greenwich 120° 160°

half-civilized lands. France, from the time of Louis Philippe, began to conquer northwestern Africa and Madagascar and to acquire territories in southeastern Asia. Italy and Germany, having attained nationhood, entered into the race for overseas dominions. Portugal and Spain annexed new colonies. Diminutive Belgium built up a colonial empire in Africa. Mighty Russia spread out eastward over the whole of Siberia and, having reached the Pacific, moved southward toward the warmer waters of the Indian Ocean. Meanwhile, the United States expanded across the American continent, acquired the Philippines and other dependencies, and stood forth at length as an imperial power. Few and unimportant were those regions of the world which remained unappropriated at the opening of the twentieth century.

152. Imperialism

The word "imperialism" conveniently describes all this activity of the different nations in reaching out beyond their natural boundaries for colonial dependencies. Imperialism, of course, is not a new phenomenon; empire building began almost at the dawn of history. We are concerned here only with its most recent aspects. Sometimes it leads to the declaration of a protectorate over a region, or, perhaps, to the marking off a sphere of influence where other powers agree not to interfere. Sometimes it goes no further than the securing of concessions in undeveloped countries such as Mexico, Brazil, or China. Most commonly, however, imperialism results in the complete annexation of a distant territory, with or without the consent of the inhabitants.

Aspects of imperialism

We saw earlier that the colonial rivalry of the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries had been largely inspired by the doctrine of mercantilism.[1] Colonies were regarded as farms, which, if properly exploited, would afford necessary supplies of raw materials and exclusive markets for the manufactures of the home coun-

Economic foundations of imperialism

[1] See pages 226–227.

try. Mercantilist statesmen regulated colonial commerce, in order to secure the "favorable balance of trade" deemed essential to national prosperity. Mercantilism was searchingly criticized by Adam Smith and other economists of the *laissez-faire* school,[1] but it revived in somewhat altered form during the latter part of the nineteenth century. Modern methods of manufacture on a large scale now enabled a highly industrialized country to produce more commodities than could be profitably used within its own boundaries and among its own people. Each country, therefore, wanted the wider markets afforded by colonies. Again, modern methods of manufacture required more raw materials than could be found within a single state, or raw materials only procurable abroad. Hence, each state desired to obtain colonies rich in natural resources. Industrial development also led to an immense accumulation of wealth, which capitalists sought to invest in undeveloped territories. Finally, colonies seemed desirable to provide for surplus population. The number of people in Europe more than doubled in the nineteenth century, and the consequent crowding at home induced millions of persons to emigrate to the United States and other foreign countries where land was cheap, wages were high, and the government was liberal and democratic. To prevent the loss of so many energetic and intelligent citizens, European nations endeavored to obtain colonial dependencies, in which the settlers might preserve their own language, culture, and political connection with the fatherland. Colonies, then, were prized as markets, as sources of raw materials, as fields for the investment of capital, and as outlets for surplus population.

Imperialism and nationalism

The imperialistic ambitions of the great powers more than once led them to disregard the rights of weaker nations in Africa, Asia, and other parts of the world. Thus, Great Britain subdued the two Boer republics in South Africa, Italy attempted to conquer the independent nation of Abyssinia, and Great Britain, France, Germany, and Russia at one time threatened the integrity of

[1] See page 286.

China. It should be said, however, that in most cases colonial dependencies have been secured only at the expense of savage or semi-civilized peoples. Though there are many things to condemn in the conduct of the European powers toward their subjects, much improvement is to be observed within recent years. Great Britain, France, and other colonial states expend large sums annually in their dominions for roads, railways, schools, medical service, and humanitarian work of various sorts. One may be permitted to hope that the European occupation of so much of the world will prove, in the long run, a blessing to mankind.

Imperialism and democracy

It has been manifestly impossible for even the most democratic of modern nations to grant self-government to their rude and backward subjects. Where the level of civilization is higher, as in Egypt and India, the prevailing illiteracy of the inhabitants forms a great obstacle in the way of democracy. We have already noted, however, that Great Britain during the last century raised round herself a circle of self-governing daughters in Canada, Australia, and South Africa, and that France permits some of her colonies to send representatives to the French legislature.[1] Other instances of the bestowal of free institutions upon native peoples will be referred to as we proceed with the story of European expansion in Africa and Asia.

153. The Opening-up of Africa

Physical Africa

Speaking broadly, Africa consists of an elevated plateau with a fringe of unindented coastal plain. Penetration of the interior was long delayed by mountain ranges which approach close to the sea, by rapids and falls which hinder river navigation, by the barrier of dense forests and extensive deserts, and by the unhealthiness of the climate in many regions. Though lying almost in sight of Europe, Africa remained until our own time the "Dark Continent."

[1] See pages 448 and 464.

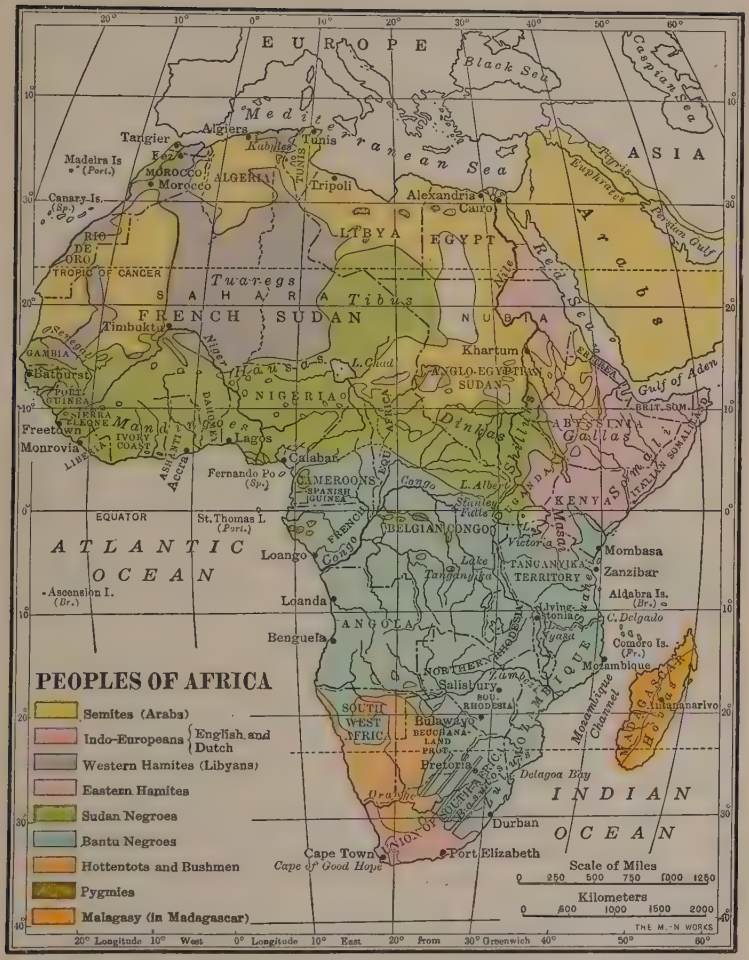
As was the country, so were its inhabitants. Europeans knew chiefly the Semitic and Hamitic peoples north and east of the Sahara. The Black race, which occupies nearly all Africa south of that desert, dwelt by itself. Some negroes in the course of time blended more or less with Hamites, giving rise to the Bantu-speaking peoples. To these elements of the native population must be added the curious Pygmies in the equatorial districts, together with the Hottentots and Bushmen in the extreme south.

Racial Africa

Little more than the Mediterranean shore of Africa was known in antiquity. Here were Egypt, the first home of civilization, and Carthage, Rome's most formidable rival for supremacy. During the earlier Middle Ages all North Africa fell under Arab domination. Arab missionaries, warriors, and slave-hunters also spread along the eastern coast and established trading posts as far south as the mouth of the Zambesi River. Of this, however, Europe remained ignorant. The vast extent of the continent was first revealed to Europeans by the Portuguese discoveries in the second half of the fifteenth century. The Portuguese imitated the Arabs in founding stations upon both the eastern and western coasts, where they did a profitable business in ivory, gold, gum, rubber, and especially in black men, who were seized and exported by thousands annually to be sold as slaves. The merchants of Spain, Holland, France, and Great Britain also shared in this traffic. Except for the Dutch colony at the Cape of Good Hope, Europeans, however, did not try to settle in Africa. Nothing tempted them to do so. The shores of the continent were plague-ridden, and its interior was supposed to consist of barren deserts or of impenetrable forests. Maps of Africa a hundred years ago show the interior decorated with pictures of the hippopotamus, the elephant, and the negro to conceal the ignorance of geographers.

Africa until the nineteenth century

The penetration of Africa has been mainly accomplished by following the course of its four great rivers. In the last decade


EUROPE
Black Sea
Caspian Sea
Mediterranean Sea
ASIA
Algiers
Tangier
Tunis
Madeira Is (Port.)
MOROCCO
Morocco
ALGERIA
Tripoli
Alexandria
Cairo
Canary Is. (Sp.)
LIBYA
EGYPT
Arabs
Euphrates
Persian Gulf
RIO DE ORO
TROPIC OF CANCER
Tuaregs
SAHARA
Tibus
FRENCH SUDAN
NUBIA
Timbuktu
Khartoum
GAMBIA
Bathurst
L. Chad
ANGLO-EGYPTIAN SUDAN
Gulf of Aden
NIGERIA
ERIT. SOM.
Freetown
Monrovia
Lagos
Calabar
Fernando Po (Sp.)
CAMEROONS
SPANISH GUINEA
KENYA
EQUATOR
St. Thomas I. (Port.)
BELGIAN CONGO
ATLANTIC OCEAN
Loango
Mombasa
Zanzibar
TANGANYIKA TERRITORY
Lake Tanganyika
Ascension I. (Br.)
Loanda
Aldabra Is. (Br.)
C. Delgado
Benguela
ANGOLA
Comoro Is. (Fr.)
Mozambique
NORTHERN RHODESIA
Salisbury
Madagascar
SOUTH WEST AFRIC
Bulawayo
BECHUANALAND PROT.
Mozambique Channel
Antananarivo
Pretoria
Delagoa Bay
INDIAN OCEAN
Durban
UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA
Cape Town
Port Elizabeth
Cape of Good Hope
PEOPLES OF AFRICA
Semites (Araba)
Indo-Europeans
English and Dutch
Western Hamites (Libyans)
Eastern Hamites
Sudan Negroes
Bantu Negroes
Hottentots and Bushmen
Pygmies
Malagasy (in Madagascar)
Scale of Miles
0 250 500 750 1000 1250
Kilometers
0 500 1000 1500 2000
THE M.N WORKS
20° Longitude 10° West 0° Longitude 10° East 20° From 30° Greenwich 40° 50° 60°

of the eighteenth century the British African Association, then recently founded, sent Mungo Park to the Niger. He and his immediate successors explored the basin of that river and revealed the existence of the mysterious city of Timbuktu, an Arab capital never previously visited by Europeans. The determination of the sources of the Nile — a problem which had interested the ancients — met with success shortly after the middle of the nineteenth century. Captain Speke first saw the waters of the lake which he named Victoria Nyanza, in honor of England's queen, and Sir Samuel Baker found the smaller lake called by him Albert Nyanza, in honor of the Prince Consort. The discovery of snow-clad mountains in this part of Africa confirmed what Greek geographers had taught regarding the "Mountains of the Moon."

The Niger and the Nile basins

David Livingstone

Meanwhile, an intrepid Scotch missionary and explorer, David Livingstone, had traced the course of the Zambesi. Starting from the Cape, he worked his way northward, found the wonderful Victoria Falls, and crossed the continent from sea to sea. When on one of his journeys Livingstone disappeared for years in Africa, the *New York Herald* sent Henry M. Stanley to find him. Stanley, who was a Welshman by birth and an American by adoption, had led an adventurous life as a newspaper correspondent in many lands. He found Livingstone in 1871, greeting him in the heart of Africa with the historic words, "Dr. Livingstone, I presume?" After the latter's death, two years later, Stanley continued his work and accomplished more than any other explorer of Africa. He discovered Lake Albert Edward

Basins of the Zambesi and the Congo

Nyanza, showed that Lake Tanganyika drained into the Congo, and followed that mighty stream all the way to its mouth. Stanley's fascinating narratives of his travels [1] did much to arouse European interest in Africa.

HENRY M. STANLEY
After a photograph taken in 1886.

African missions

Mission work in Africa went hand in hand with geographical discovery. Not a great deal has been accomplished in North Africa, where Islam is supreme from Morocco to Egypt and from the Mediterranean to 10° north of the equator. Abyssinia, the negro republic of Liberia, and South Africa, as far as it is white, are entirely Christian. The accompanying map shows how mission stations, both Roman Catholic and Protestant, have been planted throughout the broad belt of heathenism in Central Africa.

154. The Partition of Africa

The Spanish and Portuguese in Africa

The division of Africa among European powers followed promptly upon its exploration. Spain, Portugal, Belgium, Germany, Italy, France, and Great Britain all profited by the scramble for African territory, particularly during the 'eighties and the 'nineties of the last century. The Spanish possessions are small, compared with those of the other powers, and, except for the northern coast of Morocco, not of great importance. Portugal, however, controls the two valuable regions of Angola and Portuguese East Africa.

[1] Especially *How I Found Livingstone* (1872), *Through the Dark Continent* (1878), and *In Darkest Africa* (1890).

The possessions of Belgium grew directly out of Stanley's discoveries. He realized what sources of wealth might be tapped in the rubber, ivory, and palm-oil of the vast Congo basin and persuaded Leopold II,

The Belgians in Africa

king of the Belgians, to supply the funds for the establishment of trading stations in that part of Africa. The Congo Free State, which thus came into being, formed practically Leopold's private property. The forced labor demanded of the natives and the cruel punishments inflicted upon them stirred up so much criticism in Europe and America that Leopold finally converted his African holdings into a colony called the Belgian Congo. Its area has now been considerably increased by the acquisition of former German territories.

The Germans in Africa

Soon after Germany attained national unity, she made her appearance among colonial powers. Treaties with the native chiefs and arbitrary annexations during the years 1884–1885 resulted in the acquisition of extensive regions in Southwest Africa, East Africa, the Cameroons, and Togo. They were all conquered by the Allies during the World War.

The Italians in Africa

Italy was another late-comer on the African scene. She secured Eritrea on the Red Sea and Italian Somaliland. An Italian attempt to annex Abyssinia ended disastrously. Italy's most important African colony is Libya,[1] conquered from Turkey in 1911–1912. The country in Turkish hands was misgoverned and undeveloped, but its fertile coast is well adapted to agriculture, and even the barren interior may become valuable through irrigation. It says much for the liberal principles underlying Italian colonial policy that a constitution has recently (1919) been granted to the Libyans. Italy's three African possessions were considerably enlarged in 1920 by voluntary cessions of territory from France and Great Britain, these powers having augmented their dominions in Africa at the expense of Germany.

The French in Africa

The beginnings of French dominion in Africa reach back to the seventeenth century, when Louis XIV began to acquire trading posts along the western coast and in Madagascar. It was not until the nineteenth century, however, that the French entered seriously upon the work of colonization. France now holds Algeria, the con-

[1] Composed of the two former Turkish provinces of Tripoli and Cyrenaica.

quest of which began in 1830; Tunis, taken from Turkey in 1881; most of Morocco, a protectorate since 1912; the valleys of the Senegal and Upper Niger; part of the Guinea coast; French Somaliland; and the island of Madagascar. A glance at the map shows that the African possessions of France exceed in area those of any other power, but they include the Sahara Desert.

Great Britain has secured, if not the lion's share, at any rate the most valuable share of Africa. Besides extensive possessions on the Guinea coast, she holds a solid block of territory all the way from the Cape of Good Hope to the Mediterranean. Cape Colony was captured from the Dutch during the Napoleonic wars.[1] Though small in extent, it had great importance as a half-way station on the route to both India and Australia and also as a convenient basis for expansion northward into the African continent.

Cape Colony

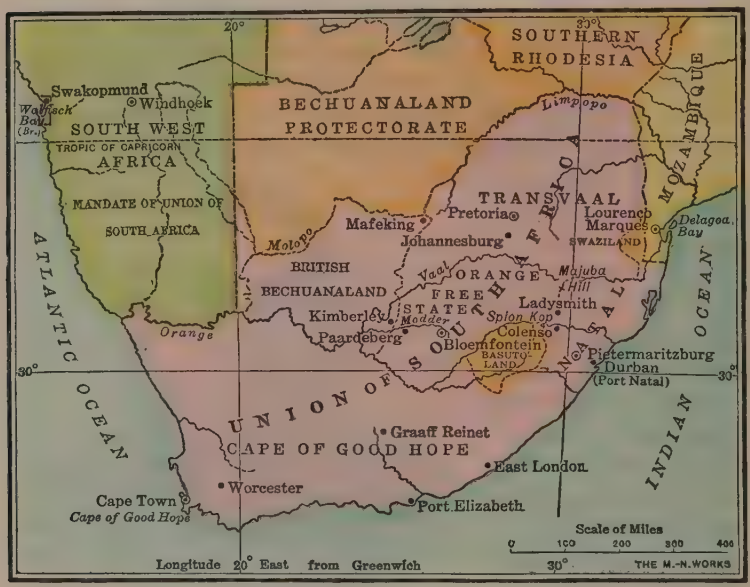
PAUL KRUGER

The Dutch farmers, or Boers, did not take readily to British rule. Many of them, with their families and flocks, moved from Cape Colony into the unknown country beyond. This wholesale emigration — the "Great Trek" — resulted in the formation of the Boer republics of Natal, Orange Free State, and the Transvaal. Natal was soon annexed by Great Britain, but the other two republics remained independent. The discovery of the world's richest gold mines in the Transvaal led to a large influx of English-

Natal, Orange Free State, and the Transvaal

[1] See pages 229–230 and 355.

men, who, since they paid taxes, demanded a share in the government. The champion of British interests was Cecil Rhodes, an Oxford student who found riches in the Kimberley diamond fields and rose to be prime minister of Cape Colony. The Dutch settlers, under the lead of President Kruger of the Transvaal, were just as determined to keep the government in their own hands. Disputes between the two peoples culminated



THE UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA

in the South African War (1899–1902), in which the Boers were overcome by sheer weight of numbers.

The war had a happy outcome. Great Britain showed a wise liberality toward her former foes and granted them self-government. Cape Colony, Natal, Orange Free State, and the Transvaal soon came together in the Union of South Africa. The Union has a governor-general appointed by the British Crown, a common parliament, and a responsible ministry. Cape Town and

Union of South Africa, 1909–1910

Pretoria are the two capitals, and both English and Dutch are official languages.

The Union will ultimately include other British possessions in South Africa. Great Britain asserts a protectorate over Bechuanaland, which is still very sparsely settled by Europeans. She also controls the imperial domain acquired by Cecil Rhodes and called after him Rhodesia. This territory alone is three and one-half times as large as the British Isles.

Bechuanaland and Rhodesia

The loyalty of the majority of the Boers to Great Britain was demonstrated during the World War. Under Louis Botha, who had been the best Boer general in the South African War, they proceeded to conquer German Southwest Africa. They also coöperated with the British in the conquest of German East Africa. A glance at the map shows how extensive are these two former possessions of Germany. Great Britain has still other territories in East Africa, one of the most valuable being the Uganda Protectorate. It contains much fertile land and because of its generally healthy climate offers a promising field for European colonization.

Southwest Africa and East Africa

Uganda forms the connecting link between East Africa and the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan. The British advance southward from Egypt into the basin of the Upper Nile caused much unrest among its semi-civilized and Moslem inhabitants. A man called the Mahdi (Leader), who claimed to be a kind of Messiah, stirred up a holy war against the invaders. The British and Egyptian troops, commanded by General Charles Gordon, who had previously distinguished himself in China, were shut up in Khartum. After inexcusable delay Gladstone's ministry, then in power, sent out a relief expedition. It arrived at Khartum two days after the Mahdi had captured the place and massacred Gordon and eleven thousand of his men (1885). More than a decade passed before Great Britain wiped off this stain upon her arms. Finally another expedition was dispatched under General Herbert Kitchener. He annihilated the "dervishes," as the fanatical followers of the Mahdi were called, at the battle of

Anglo-Egyptian Sudan

Omdurman, and retook Khartum (1898). Since then the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan has remained quiet.

British occupation of Egypt

The Egyptians have been subject to foreigners for over twenty-four hundred years. The Persians came to Egypt in the sixth century B.C.; then the Macedonians under Alexander the Great; then the Romans under Julius Cæsar; and subsequently the Arabs and the Ottoman Turks. Turkish sultans controlled the country until the early part of the nineteenth century, when the able pasha, Mehemet Ali, made himself almost an independent sovereign. His successors assumed the title of khedive, or ruler. Their misgovernment gave Great Britain and France an excuse for setting up a Dual Control over Egypt, in the interest of European bankers who had purchased the securities of that country. Financial intervention soon passed into military occupation, as the result of a revolt against the khedive. It was suppressed by Great Britain alone in 1882, France having refused her coöperation. The British now had a free hand in Egypt. In 1914, upon the outbreak of the war between Great Britain and Turkey, Egypt became a British protectorate.

Lord Kitchener

British rule in Egypt

Once established in Egypt, the British began to make it over. They restored order, purified the courts, levied taxes fairly, reorganized the finances, paid the public debt, abolished forced labor, and took measures to improve sanitary conditions. British engineers built a railroad along the Nile, together with the famous Assuan Dam and other irrigation works which reclaimed millions of acres from the

Exploration and Partition of
AFRICA
British
Spanish
French
Portuguese
Italian
Belgian
Livingstone, 1849-73
Stanley, 1871, 1874-77
Speke and Grant, 1860-63.
Baker, 1862-64
Mungo Park, 1795-97
Europeans in
AFRICA
1871
British
Port.
French
Dutch
Scale of Miles
Sahara or Great Desert
Longitude West 20° from Greenwich
EQUATOR
ATLANTIC OCEAN
SPAIN
Strait of Gibraltar
Tangier
Tetuan
Algiers
ALGERIA
Tunis
Sfax
Rabat
Fez
MOROCCO
Morocco
Tuggurt
Mogador
Agadir
Atlas Mts.
MADEIRA IS. (Port.)
CANARY IS. (Sp.)
Ifni
Wady Draa
C. Bojador
Rio de Oro
RIO DE ORO
TROPIC OF CANCER
Ghat
Timbuktu
CAPE VERDE IS. (Port.)
St. Louis
Dakar
SENEGAL
Kayes
UPPER SENEGAL AND NIGER
Segu
Niger
GAMBIA
Bathurst
PORTUGUESE GUINEA
Bolama
FRENCH GUINEA
Konakry
SIERRA LEONE
Freetown
LIBERIA
Monrovia
IVORY COAST
ASHANTI
Kumassi
DAHOMEY
Porto Novo
Lagos
Sokoto
Kano
L. Chad
Bussa
NIGERIA
Abomey
Benin
Cameroons (Kamerun)
Calabar
Fr. Mandated
Duala
FERNANDO PÓ I. (Sp.)
C. Palmas
Bingerville
Accra
UPPER GUINEA
Gulf of Guinea
PRINCE'S I. (Port.)
ST. THOMAS I. (Port.)
ANNOBON I. (Sp.)
Libreville
FRENCH
Brazzaville
Kabinda
Boma
Loanda
Benguela
Mossamedes
LOWER GUINEA
C. Frio
SOUTH
Swakopmund
WALFISCH BAY
ASCENSION I. (Br.)
ST. HELENA I. (Br.)
Cape Town
Cape of Good Hope
Port Natal
Khartum
Cairo
Port Said
Suez Canal
Red Sea
Abyssinia
Nile
L. Albert
L. Victoria
L. Tanganyika
L. Nyassa
Stanley Pool
R. Congo
ZANZIBAR
COMORO IS.
MADAGASCAR
ORANGE R. SOVEREIGNTY
TRANSVAAL
CAPE COLONY
Scale of Miles
0 500 1000
Cape T
10°
0°
10°
30°
20°

Aleppo
Teheran
CYPRUS
Damascus
Baghdad
PERSIA
AFGHANISTAN
Alexandria
Port Said
Suez Canal
Jerusalem
ASIA
Cairo
Suez
EGYPT
Red Sea
HEJAZ
Persian Gulf
BALUCHISTAN
INDIA
Libyan Desert
Assuan
Medina
ARABIA
Gulf of Oman
OMAN
Wady Halfa
Nubian Desert
Mekka
Port Sudan
ARABIAN SEA
Suakin
Berber
Khartum
Omdurman
Asmara
ERITREA
ANGLO-EGYPTIAN SUDAN
White Nile
Blue Nile
Nile
FRENCH SOMALI LAND
Aden
Gulf of Aden
SOKOTRA (Br.)
C. Guardafui
Fashoda
Jibuti
Berbera
Adis Abeba
Harar
BRITISH SOMALILAND PROT.
ABYSSINIA
Mbomu
Gondokoro
Juba
ITALIAN SOMALILAND
INDIAN OCEAN
UGANDA PROT.
Rudolf
Rowenzori Mts.
L. Albert
Entebbe
KENYA COLONY
L. Kioga
Mogadisho
L. Edward
Stanley Falls
L. Kivu
L. Victoria
Mt. Kenia
Nairobi
Bel Mau
Mt. Kilimanjaro
Nyangwe
Ujiji
TANGANYIKA TERRITORY
Mombasa
SEYCHELLES IS. (Br.)
PEMBA I.
Zanzibar
CONGO
Lake Tanganyika
Dar es Salaam
MAFIA I.
British Mandate
KATANGA
ALDABRA I. (Br.)
Lake Nyasa
C. Delgado
Elizabethville
COMORO IS. (Fr.)
Diego Suarez
NORTHERN RHODESIA
Zambesi
Mozambique
Majunga
Zomba
Salisbury
Quilimane
Tamatave
Tananarivo
SOUTHERN RHODESIA
RODRIGUEZ I. (Br.)
MAURITIUS I. (Br.)
Bulawayo
Beira
MOZAMBIQUE
Fianarantsoa
REUNION I. (Fr.)
TRANSVAAL
Tulear
TROPIC OF CAPRICORN
Lourenço Marques
Delagoa Bay
Pretoria
Johannesburg
NATAL
Durban
Pietermaritzburg
Cape to Cairo Railroad:
Finished
Unfinished
Other Railroads
Scale of Miles
THE MATTHEWS-NORTHRUP WORKS, BUFFALO, N.Y.
Longitude East 40° from Greenwich
E. London
Port Elizabeth
Cape of Good Hope

desert. For the first time in centuries, the peasants were assured of peace, justice, and an opportunity to make a decent living. Nevertheless, economic prosperity did not reconcile the people to foreign rule. The slogan "Egypt for the Egyptians" expressed their nationalist aspirations. Great Britain declared that she could not possibly accord complete independence to Egypt, on the ground that the country was still incapable of maintaining a stable government or of adequately safeguarding its own frontiers against foreign aggression. Control of Egypt seemed to be necessary for the security of the British possessions, both in Africa and Asia. However, revolutionary outbreaks on the part of the Egyptians at length led the British government to terminate the protectorate over their country. Egypt in 1922 thus became an independent state.

CECIL RHODES

Cape-to-Cairo Railway

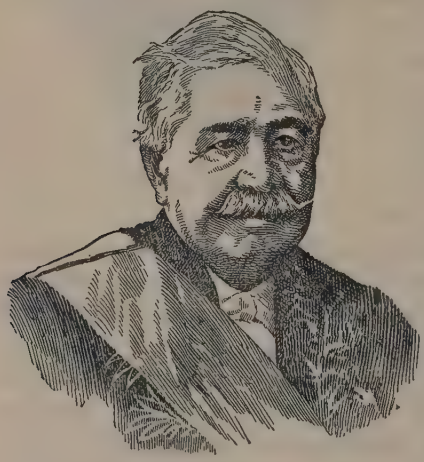
The strategic importance of Egypt as the doorway to Africa will be much increased by the completion of the Cape-to-Cairo Railway. This transcontinental line starts from Cape Town, crosses Bechuanaland and Rhodesia, and will ultimately link up with the railway already in operation between Khartum, Cairo, and Alexandria on the Mediterranean. The unfinished part is in the Congo region, where the Belgian government has ceded a strip of land to Great Britain, thus making it possible for the road to traverse British territory throughout its entire length of 6944 miles, or 7074 miles, if we include the distance between Cairo and Alexandria. As a result of the British acquisition of German East Africa, an alternative route may be chosen through this former colony of Germany.

The Cape-to-Cairo Railway owes its inspiration to Cecil Rhodes, who dreamed of an "all red" route across Africa,

and then with characteristic pluck and energy set out to make his dream come true.

The completion of the Suez Canal has likewise put Egypt on the main oceanic highway to the Far East. The canal is a monument to the great French engineer, Ferdinand de Lesseps. It was opened to traffic in 1869. The money for the undertaking came chiefly from European investors. Some years later, the bankrupt khedive offered for sale a large block of his shares in the Suez Canal Company. Disraeli, who was prime minister of Great Britain at the time, did not neglect this opportunity to advance British imperialism and bought the stock. Great Britain thus secured a controlling interest in the enterprise. The canal, however, may be freely used by the ships of all nations. More than half of the voyages from Europe to the Far East are now made through

Suez Canal



COUNT FERDINAND DE LESSEPS

the canal rather than round the Cape of Good Hope. Its commercial importance is also indicated by the fact that it accommodates every year an amount of shipping approximately equal to that entering the port of New York from foreign countries.

155. The Opening-up and Partition of Asia

The Europeanization of Asia was not far advanced at the beginning of the nineteenth century. Europe knew only Siberia, which Russia had appropriated, and those parts of India which had been annexed by Great Britain. All western Asia, including Asia Minor, Syria, Mesopotamia, and Arabia, belonged to the Ottoman Empire and remained unaffected by European influence. On the eastern side of the continent lay China and Japan, old and civilized but stagnant countries, whose backs were turned upon the rest of the world. Within the past hundred years, however, European traders, missionaries, and soldiers have broken through the barriers raised by Oriental peoples, and now almost the whole of Asia is either politically or economically dependent upon Europe.

Europe and Asia

The Russians were established in Siberia before the close of the seventeenth century.[1] Their advance over this enormous but thinly peopled region was facilitated by its magnificent rivers, which furnished highways for explorers and fur traders. Northern Siberia is a waste of swamp and tundra, where the terrible climate blocks the mouths of the streams with ice and even in summer keeps the ground frozen beneath the surface. Farther south comes a great belt of forest, the finest timbered area still intact on the face of the earth, and still farther south extend treeless steppes, adapted in part to agriculture and in part to herding. The country also contains much mineral wealth. In order to secure an outlet for Siberian products, Russia compelled China to cede the lower Amur Valley with the adjoining seacoast. The Russians in their newly acquired territory founded Vladivostok in 1858 as a naval base.

Russia in northern Asia

[1] See page 198.

Vladivostok is also the eastern terminus of the Trans-Siberian Railway. The western terminus is Petrograd, three thousand miles distant. The railway was completed in 1900 by the imperial government, partly to facilitate the movement of troops and military supplies in Siberia and partly to develop that region as a home for Russian emigrants and a market for Russian manufactures. A branch line extends to Port Arthur in Manchuria and another branch to Tientsin and Peking in China.

The Trans-Siberian Railway

Russia also widened her boundaries in central Asia by absorbing Turkestan east of the Caspian and south of Lake Balkash and the Aral Sea. Alarmed by the steady progress southward of the Russian colossus, Great Britain began to extend the northern and northwestern frontiers of India, in order to secure a mountain barrier for her Indian possessions. Half a century of feverish fears and restless advances on both sides was ended by the Anglo-Russian Convention of 1907. It dealt with Persia, Afghanistan, and Tibet.

Russia and Great Britain in central Asia

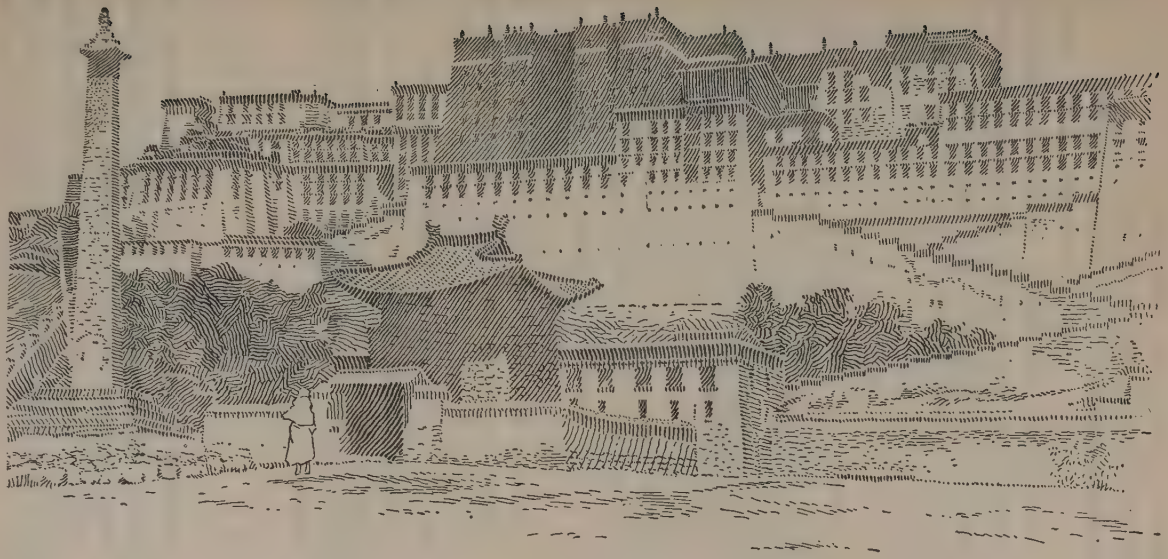
The Persian kingdom became a buffer state between Russia and Great Britain. The northern part of Persia was recognized as a Russian sphere of influence, the southern part as a British sphere, and the central part as a neutral zone where the two powers pledged themselves not to interfere except by mutual consent. The unsettled conditions arising out of the World War enabled Persia to rid herself of Russian control. With Great Britain she concluded a new agreement in 1919, by which the former power guarantees the security of the Persian frontiers and promises assistance in developing Persian trade and industries. Persia enjoys a constitutional government. Ahmad, the present shah, or king, is a well-educated and liberal-minded ruler.

Persia

The kingdom of Afghanistan also became a buffer state. Great Britain engaged not to annex any of its territory, while Russia, on her side, agreed to regard it as within the British sphere of influence and under British protection. Though a very mountainous region, Afghanistan

Afghanistan

THE PEOPLES OF ASIA
Indo-Europeans
Mongolians
Chinese, Tibetans, Burmans, etc.
Dravidians
Malays
Australians and Papuans
Japanese and Koreans
Semites
Scale of Miles
0 250 500 1000
THE M.-N., WORKS, BUFFALO, N.Y.
ARCTIC OCEAN
ATLANTIC OCEAN
PACIFIC OCEAN
INDIAN OCEAN
Petrograd
Berlin
Paris
Madrid
Vienna
Constantinople
Black Sea
Mediterranean Sea
Jerusalem
Mecca
Aden
Tobolsk
Tomsk
Irkutsk
L. Baikal
Yakutsk
Pekin
Nankin
Shanghai
Kashgar
Kabul
Delhi
Lhasa
Canton
Bombay
Calcutta
Madras
Veddas
CEYLON
Manila
Singapore
Batavia
Dyaks
Papuans
Australians
Negritos
Japanese
Tartars
Kalmuks
Buryats
Manchus
Tibetans
Afghans
Hindus
Gangs
Burmans
Dravidians
Tungusians
Yukaghirs
Chukchi
Koraks
Gilyaks
Aleutians
Kurile Is.
Japan
Volga
Ural R.
Aral Sea
Caspian Sea
L. Balkash
Yang-tse-kiang
Hoang-ho
Irrawaddy
Ganges
Indus
Euphrates
Tigris
Red Sea
Persian Gulf
Arabia
Turkestan
Turkomans
Kurds
Armenians
Persians
Baluchis
Arabs
Jews
Annamese
Siamese
Malays
Battaks
Dyaks
Negritos
Papuans
Australians
Japanese
Chinese
Tibetans
Burmans
Dravidians
Hindus
Afghans
Tartars
Kalmuks
Buryats
Manchus



THE POTALA, LHASA

The Dalai Lama, the supreme head of Tibetan Buddhists, occupies an enormous palace on the Potala hill at Lhasa. Its massive walls, terraces, and bastions present an imposing appearance.

contains numerous passes, over which in historic times conquering peoples have repeatedly descended into India.

Tibet

The Chinese dependency of Tibet was little known until 1904, when a British military expedition penetrated to the sacred city of Lhasa and obtained some concessions for trade within the country. Russia also professed to be interested in Tibet. By the Anglo-Russian Convention both nations promised to respect its territorial integrity and not to interfere with Chinese sovereignty over the country.

Great Britain and France in southeastern Asia

Indo-China, except for the nominally independent state of Siam, is now under British and French control. Great Britain holds Burma, annexed as recently as 1885, and the Straits Settlements with the important port of Singapore at the tip of the Malay Peninsula. France holds Tonkin, Anam, Laos, Cambodia, and Cochin-China. All these possessions have been acquired at the expense of China, which formerly exercised a vague sovereignty over southeastern Asia.

Siam

Siam occupies a position comparable to that of Persia. By an agreement between Great Britain and France in 1896, the country was divided into three zones: the eastern to be the French sphere of influence; the western the British; and the central, the basin of the Menam River, to be neutral. It will be thus seen that a belt of protected or neutral states — Afghanistan, Persia, Tibet, and Siam — separates the possessions of Russia and France in Asia from those of Great Britain and forms the real frontier of India.

156. India

Conquest of India

British expansion in India, begun by Clive during the Seven Years' War, has proceeded scarcely without interruption to the present day. The conquest of India was almost inevitable. Sometimes the Indian princes attacked the British settlements and had to be overcome; sometimes the lawless condition of their dominions led to inter-

vention; sometimes, again, the need of finding defensible frontiers resulted in annexations. The entire peninsula, covering an area half as large as the United States, is now under the Union Jack.

The East India Company continued to govern India until after the middle of the nineteenth century. In 1857 came the Sepoy Mutiny, a sudden uprising of the native soldiers in the northern part of the country.[1] Bloodily conducted, it was as bloodily suppressed, some of the ringleaders even being blown to pieces from the mouths of cannon. The mutiny disclosed the weakness of company rule

Government of India

[1] Read Tennyson's poem, *The Defense of Lucknow*, and the novel, *On the Face of the Waters*, by Mrs. F. A. Steel.

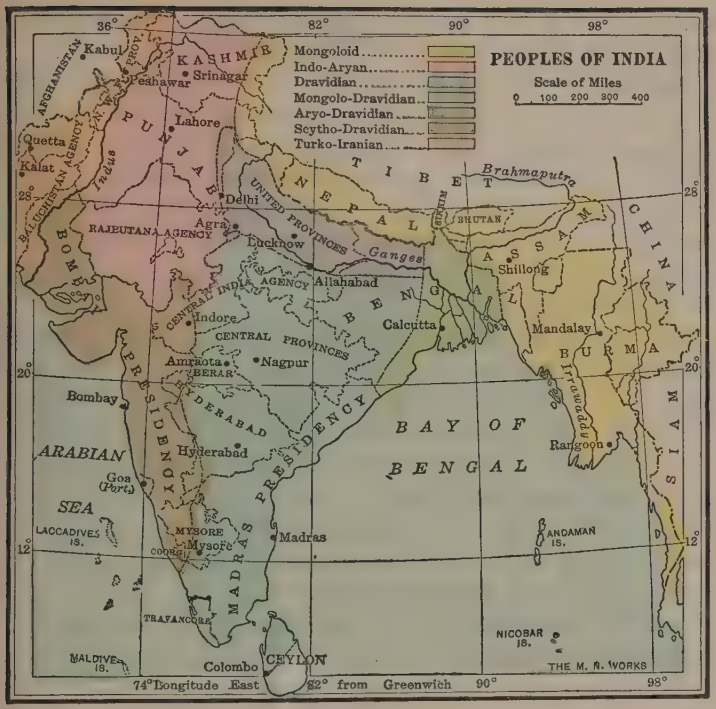
and led in 1858 to the transfer of all governmental functions to the Crown. Queen Victoria assumed the title, Empress of India, in 1877. A viceroy, whose seat is the old Mogul capital Delhi, and the officials of the Indian Civil Service administer the affairs of about two-thirds of the country. The remainder is ruled by native princes under British control. Their contributions of both men and money during the World War showed their loyalty to Great Britain.

"The Lion's Vengeance on the Bengal Tiger"

A cartoon by Sir John Tenniel which appeared in the English journal *Punch* for August 22, 1857.

Peoples of India

The fact that a handful of foreigners has been able to subdue and keep in subjection more than three hundred million Indian peoples is sufficiently explained by their disunion. The census report of 1901 divides the population of India into seven distinct racial types, speaking upwards of 150 distinct languages. The Aryan Hindus dwell in the river valleys of the Indus and the Ganges. Southern India belongs chiefly to the primitive Dravidians, who speak non-Aryan tongues and probably represent the aboriginal inhabitants of the peninsula. The slopes of the Himalayas are occupied by the descendents of Turkish (Mogul) and other invaders. On the northeast, reaching down into Burma, are Mongolian peoples allied to the Chinese. All these elements, however, have become



inextricably mingled, and their representatives are found in every province and native state.

Religion likewise acts as a divisive force. The Hindus accept Brahmanism, a name derived from Brahma, the Supreme Being or First Cause. In its original form, three thousand years ago, Brahmanism appears to have been an elevated faith, but it has now so far declined that its adherents generally worship a multitude of gods, venerate idols, revere the cow as a sacred animal, and indulge in many debasing rites. The Dravidians are only nominal Brahmanists; their real worship is that of countless village deities. Islam prevails especially in the northern fringe of provinces, but Moslem missionaries have penetrated almost every part of the country. Buddhism, which arose in India during the fifth

Religions of India

century B.C., is now practically extinct there, though Ceylon and Burma are strongholds of this ancient faith.[1]

Nor are the Hindus themselves united. The all-pervading caste system splits them up into several thousand distinct groups, headed by the Brahmans or priests. Members of a given caste may not marry outside it; may not eat with any one who does not belong to it; and may not do work of any sort unrecognized by it. Caste, in fact, regulates a man's actions from the cradle to the grave. It has lasted in India for ages.

The caste system

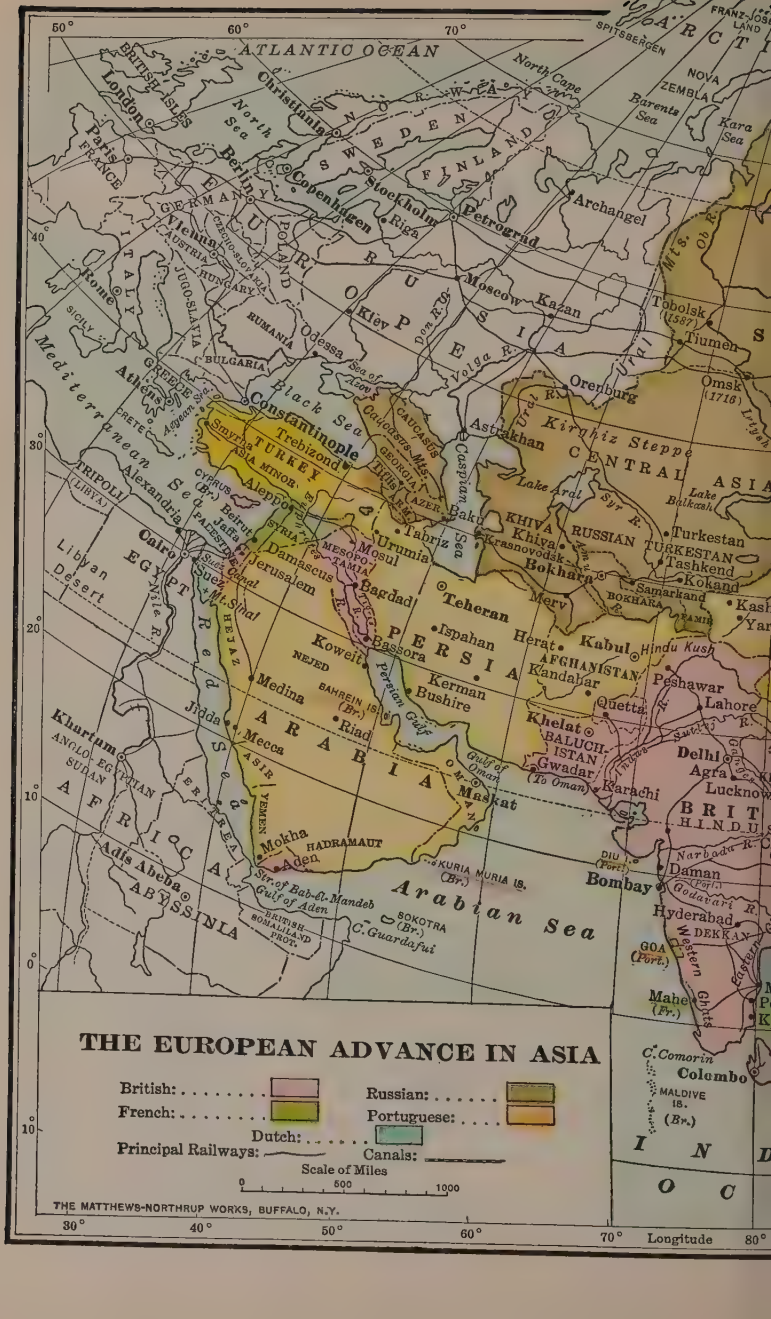
The spread of European civilization in India promises to remove, or at least to lower, the barriers of race, religion, and caste. Great Britain enforces peace throughout the peninsula, builds railways and canals linking every part of it together, stamps out the famines and plagues which used to decimate the inhabitants, and has begun their education in schools of many grades. All this work tends to foster a sense of nationality, something hitherto lacking in India. Educated Hindus, familiar with the national and democratic movements of the past century in Europe, now demand self-government for their own country. This may come in time, but a united Indian nation must necessarily be of slow development.

Indian nationalism

While Great Britain will doubtless go further than she has yet gone in the direction of home rule for India, there is little reason to believe that she will ever voluntarily concede Indian independence. For British political supremacy in India insures British economic supremacy throughout that vast peninsula. Great Britain looks to India as one of the foremost sources of her food supply, finds in India a market for enormous quantities of cotton and iron manufactures, and possesses almost a monopoly of India's sea-borne trade. The capitalists of Great Britain have also invested heavily in Indian railways, factories, and mines, as well as in the securities of the Indian government. India is a rich jewel, indeed, in the British imperial crown.

Indian independence

[1] See the map on page 668


THE EUROPEAN ADVANCE IN ASIA
British:
French:
Russian:
Portuguese:
Dutch:
Principal Railways:
Canals:
Scale of Miles
0 500 1000
THE MATTHEWS-NORTHRUP WORKS, BUFFALO, N.Y.
ATLANTIC OCEAN
Arabian Sea
Mediterranean Sea
Black Sea
Caspian Sea
Red Sea
Persian Gulf
ARABIA
PERSIA
CENTRAL ASIA
AFRICA
INDIA
Longitude

NORTH AMERICA
C. Deshnev
Bering Str.
ST. LAWRENCE I. (U.S.)
WRANGELL I.
NEW SIBERIA IS.
Tundra
Verkhoyansk
Lena R.
ARCTIC CIRCLE
Yakutsk (1632)
Okhotsk
Kamchatka
Petropavlovsk
Bering Sea
ALEUTIAN IS. (U.S.)
C. Lopatka
Sea of Okhotsk
SAKHALIN I.
KURIL ISLANDS
Nikolaievsk (1851)
Blagoveschensk (1856)
Khabarovsk
Krasnoyarsk
Lake Baikal
Chita
Amur R.
Irkutsk (1652)
Kiakhta
MANCHURIA
HOKUSHU
Hakodate
EMPIRE OF JAPAN
Maimatchin
Harbin
Vladivostok
CHOSEN (KOREA) (Jap.)
Sea of Japan
HONSHU
Tokyo
Urga
MONGOLIA
Gobi Desert
Mukden
Kirin
Port Arthur (Jap.)
Dairen (Jap.)
Seoul
Yokohama
Osaka
Nagasaki
Peking
Tientsin
Yellow Sea
Kiaochau (Jap.)
Fusan
GREAT WALL
Sianfu
Shanghai
Hankow
Nanking
East China Sea
NANSEI IS.
TROPIC OF CANCER
Hangchow
Foochow
TAIWAN (FORMOSA) (Jap.)
Lhasa
Yangtse
Yunnan
Canton
Hongkong (Br.)
Macao (Port.)
Kwangchauwan (Fr.)
Mandalay
BURMA
TONKIN
Hanoi
HAINAN
LUZON
PHILIPPINE ISLANDS (U.S.)
Manila
Rangoon
Maulmain
SIAM
FRENCH INDO-CHINA
South China Sea
Iloilo
Cebu
MINDANAO
Bangkok
CAMBODIA
Saigon
PALAWAN
Sulu Sea
BULU IS.
EQUATOR
Gulf of Siam
COCHIN CHINA
C. Cambodia
LABUAN I. (BR. NORTH BORNEO)
Celebes Sea
Malay Peninsula
FEDERATED MALAY STATES
Achin
Singapore
Strait of Malacca
BORNEO
CELEBES
MOLUCCA OR SPICE IS.
CERAM
NEW GUINEA (Br.) (Dutch)
SUMATRA
BANKA
BILLITON
Palembang
Banjermasin
Java Sea
Banda Sea
Arafura Sea
JAVA
Samarang
EAST INDIES
FLORES
TIMOR (Port.)
AUSTRALIA
Batavia
SUNDA ISLANDS
PACIFIC OCEAN
INDIAN OCEAN
90° Greenwich 100°
140°
60°
50°
40°
30°
20°
10°
0°
10°

157. China

Between Russian Asia and British and French Asia lies China, with a larger area than Europe and probably quite as populous. China proper consists of eighteen provinces in the fertile valleys of the Yangtse and the Hoangho, or Yellow River. The great length of the country accounts for the variety of its productions, which range from hardy grains in the north to camphor and mulberry trees, tea, and cotton in the south. The mineral wealth includes deposits of copper, tin, lead, and iron, much oil, and coal fields said to be the most extensive in the world.

China proper

The traditions of the Chinese throw no light on their origin. They may have come from the west in prehistoric times, but more probably developed out of the Mongolian stock inhabiting China proper. In the course of centuries they have pushed into Manchuria, Mongolia, Chinese Turkestan (Sinkiang), and Tibet. Chinese farmers, laborers, and traders are also numerous in Indo-China, the Malay Peninsula, and the Malay Islands. The enterprising spirit of the people is further shown by their recent emigration in large numbers to the United States and other distant lands.

The Chinese

The Chinese boast a civilization already old when Rome was young. They are famous for artistic work in wood and metal, the manufacture of silk, and the production of porcelain or chinaware. Rudimentary forms of such inventions as the compass, gunpowder, paper, and movable type were early known to them. Though hampered by a cumbrous, nonalphabetic system of writing, the Chinese have managed to produce an extensive literature. One of their encyclopedias fills over five thousand volumes.

Chinese civilization

The government of China, until recently, had always been a monarchy. The emperor, in theory absolute, was really under the thumb of the office-holding or mandarin class, which took the place of a hereditary nobility. Any one, high or low, could enter its ranks by passing a rigid examination in the sacred books. These were

Society and religion in China

in part collected and edited by Confucius (551–478 B.C.), the reformer who did so much to make reverence for ancestors and imitation of their ways the Chinaman's cardinal virtues. Confucianism is a code of morals rather than a religion. It has not supplanted among uneducated people a lively belief in many spirits, good and bad. Buddhism has spread so widely over China and the adjoining countries that to-day it forms the creed of about one-third of mankind. Christianity and Islam are also making some headway in China.

Isolation of China

The rugged mountains and trackless deserts which bound three sides of China long shut it off from much intercourse with the western world. The proud disposition of its people, to whom foreigners were only barbarians ("foreign devils"), likewise tended to keep them isolated. Before the nineteenth century the only Europeans who gained an entrance into the "Celestial Empire" were a few missionaries and traders. The merchants of Portugal established themselves at Macao, and those of Holland and Great Britain at Canton. There was also some traffic overland between Russia and China. Foreign trade, however, had no attraction for the Chinese, who discouraged it as far as possible.

Foreign aggression

The difficulties experienced by merchants in China led at length to hostilities between that country and Great Britain. The British, with their modern fleet and army, had an easy victory and in 1842 compelled the Chinese government to open additional ports and cede the island of Hongkong. Other nations now hastened to secure commercial concessions in China. Many more ports were opened to foreign merchants, Europeans were granted the right to travel in China, and Christian missionaries were to be protected in their work among the inhabitants. But all this made little impression upon perhaps the most conservative people in the world. The Chinese remained absolutely hostile to the western civilization so rudely thrust upon them.

Foreign aggression soon took the form of annexations in outlying portions of Chinese territory. We have seen how Great Britain appropriated Burma; France, Indo-China; and

THE GREAT POWERS IN CHINA
SPHERES OF INFLUENCE
British
French
Japanese
Russian
MONGOLIA
MANCHURIA
SUNGARIA
Desert of Gobi
SINKIANG
EAST TURKESTAN
TIBET
KANSU
SHANSI
SHENSI
SHANTUNG
HUPEH
SZECHWAN
KIANGSU
ANHWEI
CHEKIANG
KIANGSI
FUKIEN
HUNAN
KWEICHOW
YUNNAN
KWANGSI
KWANGTUNG
CHIHLI
CHOSEN (Korea)
FORMOSA
HAINAN
INDIA
BURMA
SIAM
FRENCH INDO-CHINA
Sea of Japan
East China Sea
South China Sea
Yellow Sea
Gulf of Chihli
Gulf of Tonkin
Bay of Bengal
JAPANESE EMPIRE
L. Baikal
Irkutsk
Chita
Kiakhta
Urga
Harbin
Vladivostok
Mukden
Newchwang
Kalgan
Peking
Tientsin
Dairen
Port Arthur
Weihaiwei (Brit.)
Seoul
Chemulpo
Fusan
Kinchow
Tokio
Yokohama
Nagasaki
Kashgar
Yarkand
Kuen Lun Mts.
Nanking
Shanghai
Soochow
Ningpo
Hankow
Ichang
Hangchow
Chungking
Chengtu
Lhasa
Nanchang
Foochow
Changchowfu
Amoy
Yunnan
Canton
Swatow
Hongkong (Brit.)
Macao (Port.)
Kwangchow Wan (Fr.)
Hanoi
Calcutta
Mandalay
Rangoon
Brahmaputra R.
Irawadi R.
Mekong R.
Yangtse R.
Indus R.
Ganges R.
Himalaya Mts.
BHUTAN
60
70
80
90
100
110
120
130
140
40
30
20

Russia, the Amur district. Meanwhile, Japan, just beginning her national expansion, looked enviously across the sea to Korea, a tributary kingdom of China. The Chino-Japanese War (1894–1895) followed. Completely defeated, the Chinese had not only to renounce all claim to Korea, but also to surrender to Japan the island of Formosa and the Liaotung Peninsula (with Port Arthur) in Manchuria.

Annexations

Japan's gains aroused the jealousy of Russia, who saw the road to an ice-free harbor on the Pacific blocked by the Japanese occupation of the Liaotung Peninsula. Russia took her grievance to France and Germany, and together the three powers induced the Japanese to give up their acquisitions on the mainland. The coalition then seized several Chinese harbors [1] and divided much of the country into spheres of influence. The partition of China seemed at hand.

Intervention

EMPRESS-DOWAGER OF CHINA

A portrait by a Chinese artist. The empress is represented as a goddess of mercy. She stands upon a lotus petal floating on the waves of the sea.

But Europe was not to have its own way in China. A secret society called the "Boxers," whose members claimed to be invulnerable, spread rapidly through the provinces and urged war to the death against the "foreign devils." Encouraged by the empress-dowager, Tze-hsi, who was

The "Boxers," 1900

[1] Russia took Port Arthur, Germany, Kiauchau, and France, Kwangchauwan. Great Britain also acquired Weihaiwei.

regent of China for nearly forty years, the "Boxers" murdered many traders and missionaries. The foreigners in Peking took refuge within the legations, where after a desperate defense they were finally relieved by an international army composed of European, Japanese, and American troops. The allies then made peace with China and promised henceforth to respect her territory. They insisted, however, on the payment of a large indemnity for the outrages committed during the anti-foreign outbreak.

LI HUNG CHANG

Li Hung Chang was the most enlightened Chinese statesman of the nineteenth century. He arranged terms of peace with Japan in 1895 and with the European powers after the relief of the legations in 1900.

The Chinese Revolution, 1912

Events now moved rapidly. Educated Chinese, many of whom had studied abroad, saw clearly that their country must adopt western ideas and methods, if it was to remain a great power. The demand for thorough reforms in the government soon became a revolutionary propaganda, directed against the unprogressive Manchu (or Manchurian) dynasty, which had ruled China for nearly three hundred years. The youthful emperor finally abdicated, and the oldest empire in the world became a republic.

China and the Occident

This sudden awakening of China from her sleep of centuries is a prodigious event in world history. Already China possesses many thousands of miles of railroads and telegraph lines, besides numerous factories, mills,

and mines equipped with machinery. She has begun the creation of a modern army. She has abolished long-established customs, such as the torture of criminals and the foot-binding of women. She has prohibited the consumption of opium, a vice which sapped the vitality of her people. Her temples have been turned into schools teaching the sciences and foreign languages, and her students have been sent in large numbers to foreign universities. Such reforms are rapidly bringing China into the fellowship of Occidental nations.

158. Japan

Nippon ("Rising Sun") is the name which the inhabitants give to the six large islands and about four thousand smaller ones stretching crescent-like off the coast of eastern Asia. Because of its generally mountainous character, little more than one-eighth of the archipelago can be cultivated. Rice and tea form the principal crops, but fruit trees of every kind known to temperate climates flourish, and flowers bloom luxuriantly. The deep inlets of the coast provide convenient harbors, and the numerous rivers, though neither large nor long, supply an abundance of water. Below the surface lie considerable deposits of coal and metals.

The Japanese Archipelago

The Japanese are descended mainly from Koreans and Chinese, who displaced the original inhabitants of the archipelago.[1] The immigrants appear to have reached Japan in the early centuries of the Christian era. Except for their shorter stature, the Japanese closely resemble the Chinese in physique and personal appearance. They are, however, more quick-witted and receptive to new ideas than their neighbors on the mainland. Other qualities possessed by the Japanese in a marked degree include obedience, the result of many centuries of autocratic government; a martial spirit; and an intense patriotism. "Thou shalt honor the gods and love thy country" is the first commandment of the national faith.

The Japanese people

[1] Now probably represented by the "hairy Ainu" of the island of Yezo.

The Japanese naturally patterned their civilization upon that of China. They adopted a simplified form of Chinese writing and took over the literature, learning, and art of the "Celestial Empire." The moral system of Confucius found ready acceptance in Japan, where it strengthened the reverence for parents and the worship of ancestors. Buddhism, introduced from China by way of Korea, brought new ideas of the nature of the soul, of heaven and hell, and of salvation by prayer. It is still the prevailing religion in Japan. Like the Chinese, also, the Japanese had an emperor (the mikado). He became in time only a puppet emperor, and another official (the shogun) usurped the chief functions of government. Neither ruler exerted much authority over the nobles (daimios), who oppressed their serfs and waged private warfare against one another very much as did their contemporaries, the feudal lords of medieval Europe.

Japanese civilization

The first European visitors to Japan were Portuguese merchants and Jesuit missionaries, who came in the sixteenth century. The Japanese government welcomed them at first, but the growing unpopularity of the foreigners before long resulted in their expulsion from the country. Japan continued to lead a hermit life until the middle of the nineteenth century. Foreign intercourse began in 1853–1854, with the arrival of an American fleet under Commodore M. C. Perry. He induced the shogun to sign a treaty which opened two Japanese ports to American ships. The diplomatic ice being thus broken, various European nations soon negotiated commercial treaties with Japan.

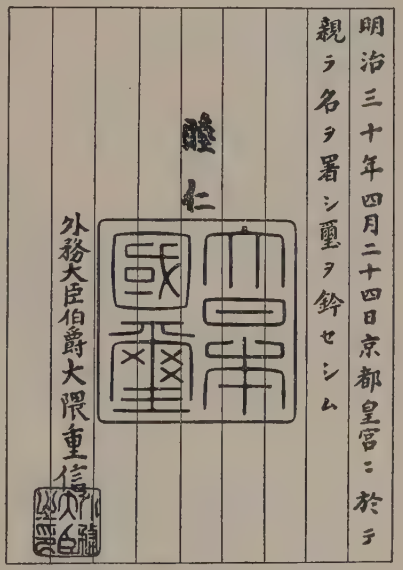
European intercourse with Japan

Thoughtful Japanese, however great their dislike of foreigners, could not fail to recognize the superiority of the Western nations in the arts of war and peace. A group of reformers, including many prominent daimios, now carried through an almost bloodless revolution. As the first step, they compelled the shogun to resign his office, thus making the mikado[1] the actual as well as titular sovereign

The Japanese Revolution

[1] The youthful Mutsuhito, who reigned 1867–1912.

(1867). Most of the daimios then voluntarily surrendered their feudal privileges (1871). This patriotic act made possible the abolition of serfdom and the formation of a national army on the basis of compulsory military service. In 1889 Japan secured a written constitution, with a parliament of two houses and a cabinet responsible to the mikado. He is guided in all important matters by a group of nobles, called the "Elder Statesmen," who form the real power behind the throne.



Sign Manual and Seal of Mutsuhito

The revolutionary movement affected almost every aspect of Japanese society. Codes of civil, commercial, and criminal law were drawn up to accord with those of western Europe. Universities and public schools were established upon Occidental models. Railroads and steamship lines were multiplied. The abundant water power, and cheap labor of Japan facilitated the introduction of European methods of manufacturing; and machine-made goods began to displace the artistic productions of handworkers. Japan thus became a modern industrial nation and a competitor of Europe for Asiatic trade.

Europeanization of Japan

Once in possession of European arts, sciences, and industries, Japan entered upon a career of territorial expansion in eastern Asia. Her merchants and capitalists wanted opportunities for money-making abroad; above all, her rapidly increasing population required new regions suitable for colonization beyond the narrow limits of the archipelago. As we have learned, the Chino-Japanese War (1894–

Expansion of Japan

1895) brought Korea[1] under Japanese influence and added Formosa to the empire. Just ten years later Japan and Russia clashed over the disposition of Manchuria and the Liaotung Peninsula. The Russo-Japanese War (1904–1905) seemed a conflict between a giant and a pygmy, but the inequality of the Japanese in numbers and resources was more than made up by their preparedness for the conflict, by their irresistible bravery, and by the strategic genius which their generals displayed. After much bloody fighting by land and sea, both sides accepted the suggestion of President Roosevelt to arrange terms of peace. The treaty, as signed at Portsmouth, New Hampshire, recognized the claims of Japan in Korea, gave to Japan a lease of the Liaotung Peninsula, including Port Arthur, and provided for the evacuation of Manchuria by both contestants. Russia also ceded to Japan the southern half of the island of Sakhalin. No indemnity was paid by either country.

THEATER OF THE RUSSO-JAPANESE WAR

Even before the Russo-Japanese War Japan had become a world power. Great Britain first recognized this fact and hastened to conclude an offensive and defensive alliance with the "Island Empire." Each contracting party pledged itself to come to the other's assistance,

Japan as a world power

[1] Known as Chosen since its formal annexation by Japan in 1910. Though now Japanese subjects, the Koreans continue to agitate for the restoration of their ancient kingdom.

EXPANSION OF JAPAN
Japanese Empire in 1894
Territory held as result of Chino-Japanese War, 1894-1895
Territory held as result of Russo-Japanese War, 1904-1905
Former German Territory held as result of the World War, 1914-1918
Territory under Japanese Influence
Railroads in Manchuria controlled by Japanese
Other Railroads
JAPANESE MANDATE
AUSTRALIAN MANDATE
BR. MAND.
SEA OF JAPAN
Yellow Sea
East China Sea
PACIFIC OCEAN
KOREA (CHOSEN)
MANCHURIA
MONGOLIA
SIBERIA
JAPAN
HONSHIU
KIUSHIU
SHIKOKU
YEZO (HOKKAIDO)
KARAFUTO
SAKHALIN (Russian)
FORMOSA (TAIWAN)
LUCHU OR RIU-KIU ISLANDS
MARIANAS
GUAM (U.S.)
SAIPAN I.
YAP I.
ANGUAR I.
PELEW IS.
TRUK I.
PONAPE I.
JALUIT I.
MARSHALL IS.
CAROLINE IS.
NEW GUINEA
Vladivostok
Nikolaievsk
Harbin
Mukden
Kirin
Changchun
Hunchun
Tsitsihar
Blagoveshchensk
Chita
Kiakhta
Urga
Lake Baikal
Hakodate
Tokyo
Yokohama
Nagoya
Osaka
Kyoto
Kobe
Hiroshima
Nagasaki
Fusan
Mokpo
Pingyang
Seoul (Keijo)
Chemulpo
Darien
Pt. Arthur
Chefoo
Weihaiwei (Brit.)
Kiaochow
Tsinanfu
Tientsin
Peking
Kalgan
Newchwang
Kaifeng
Hankow
Nanking
Soochow
Woosung
Shanghai
Hangchow
Ningpo
Foochow
Amoy
Swatow
Canton
Hongkong (Brit.)
Macao (Port.)
Taihoku
Changsha
Kiukiang
Wuchang
Auking
Yochow
Kweisui
Suiyuan
Ninguta
Yingkou
Liaoyang
Antung
Yalu
Sungari R.
Amur R.
Ussuri R.
Trans-Siberian Ry.
Chinese Eastern Ry.
Great Wall
Gulf of Chihli
Gulf of Tartary
Korea Strait
Chosen Strait
Shimonoseki
Formosa Strait
Pescadores (Hokoto)
Quelpart I.
Tokushima
Toyohara
P. Alexandrovskii
110
120
130
140
150
160
170
50
40
30
20
10
0

in case the possessions of either in eastern Asia and India were attacked by another state. Both France and Russia also entered into a friendly understanding with Japan for the preservation of peace in the Far East. How loyally Japan observed these agreements was soon shown upon the outbreak of the World War.

159. The Opening-up and Partition of Oceania

The term Oceania, or Oceanica, in its widest sense applies to all the Pacific Islands. The continental group includes, in addition to the Japanese Archipelago and Formosa, the Philippines, the Malay Archipelago, Australia, and Tasmania. Many of these islands appear to have been connected at a remote period, and still more remotely to have been joined to the Asiatic mainland. The oceanic group includes, besides New Zealand, a vast number of islands and islets either volcanic or coralline in formation. They fall into the three divisions named Melanesia, Micronesia, and Polynesia. **Oceania**

The natives of Oceania exhibit a wide variety of culture, ranging from the savage aborigines of Australia to the semi-civilized Filipinos, Malays, and Polynesians. The first emigrants to the continental islands doubtless came from Asia and walked dryshod from one archipelago to another. On the other hand, the oceanic islands could only have been reached by water. Their inhabitants, at the time of European discovery, were remarkable navigators, who sailed up and down the Pacific and even ventured into the icy Antarctic. No evidence exists, however, that they even once sighted the coast of America. **Oceanic peoples**

Magellan discovered the Philippines on his voyage of circumnavigation in 1521, and for the next three hundred and fifty years they belonged to Spain. The conquest of the islands was essentially a peaceful missionary enterprise. Spanish friars accomplished a remarkable work in carrying Christianity to the natives. These converted Filipinos are the only large mass of Asiatics who have adopted the **Spain in the Philippines**

Christian religion in modern times. The missionary era drew to an end in the nineteenth century, especially after the opening of the Suez Canal and the establishment of direct steamer communication between the Philippines and Spain. Many educated Filipinos took advantage of the increased facilities for travel to visit Europe, thus coming into contact with the progressive peoples of the West. They came back to their country full of enthusiasm for "westernizing" it, only to meet the opposition both of the friars and of the grasping and corrupt Spanish officials. The result was much discontent, which found expression in secret conspiracies and armed revolts against the government.

American conquest of the Philippines

Admiral Dewey's victory in the battle of Manila Bay not only destroyed the Spanish fleet, but also gave the death-blow to the prestige of Spain throughout the Philippines. Insurrections started immediately in nearly every province. The Filipinos under Aguinaldo at first coöperated with the Americans in campaigning against the Spaniards, but after the cession of the islands to the United States in 1898, hostilities broke out between the former companions-in-arms. It required over two years of continuous fighting to break down the native resistance and to capture Aguinaldo.

The United States in the Philippines

The American people at once adopted a very liberal policy toward their eight million Filipino subjects. Under the direction of Judge W. H. Taft, the first governor-general, an amnesty was extended to all rebels who would take the oath of allegiance to the United States. A constabulary or police force, made up of native soldiers and officered by white men, was organized to maintain order. The agricultural lands belonging to the friars were purchased for the benefit of the people. Hundreds of American school teachers were introduced to train Filipino teachers in English and modern methods of instruction. Large appropriations were made for roads, harbors, and other improvements. True to democratic traditions, the United States also set up a Filipino legislature, which at the present

British | French | Du

Italian | Danish | Ja

POWERS

ARCTIC CIRCLE
SIBERIA
RUSSIA
CENTRAL ASIA
MONGOLIA
MANCHURIA
Liaotung Pen. (Jap.)
SAKHALIN I.
JAPAN
Tokyo
Black Sea
Caspian Sea
TURKEY
PRUS
PERSIA
SINKIANG
TIBET
CHINA
Shantung Pen. (Ger.)
PACIFIC OCEAN
EGYPT
ARABIA
BALUCHISTAN
CHANDANAGAR (Fr.)
INDIA
DIU (Port.)
DAMAN (Port.)
GOA (Port.)
MAHE (Fr.)
YANAON (Fr.)
PONDICHERRY
KARIKAL (Fr.)
ANDAMAN IS.
CEYLON
SIAM
MACAO (Port.)
HONGKONG (Br.)
FORMOSA
PHILIPPINE IS. (U.S.)
GUAM (U.S.)
MARSHALL IS.
MICRONESIA
CAROLINE IS.
PELEW IS.
JAPANESE MANDATE
ADRONE OR MARIANNE IS.
ANGLO-EGYPTIAN SUDAN
ADEN
SOKOTRA (Br.)
ABYSSINIA
ITALIAN SOMALILAND
KENYA COL.
EQUATOR
BELGIAN CONGO
SEYCHELLES
ZANZIBAR (Br.)
TANGANYIKA TERR.
COMORO IS. (Fr.)
MADAGASCAR
INDIAN OCEAN
RODRIGUEZ I. (Br.)
MAURITIUS (Br.)
REUNION (Fr.)
SUMATRA
BORNEO
LABUAN I. (Br.)
CELEBES
MOLUCCA
JAVA
TIMOR (Port.) (Dutch)
AUS. MANDATE
NEW GUINEA
GILBERT IS. (Br.)
PHOEN. IS. (Br.)
ELLICE IS. (Br.)
SOLOMON IS. (Br.)
SANTA CRUZ IS.
SAMOA IS.
TUTUILA (U.S.)
NEW HEBRIDES (Br.-Fr.)
FIJI IS. (Br.)
NEW CALEDONIA (Fr.)
LOYALTY IS. (Fr.)
TONGA IS.
AUSTRALIA
NORFOLK I. (Br.)
KERMADEC IS. (Br.)
TASMANIA
NEW ZEALAND
POLYNESIA
ONTINENT
IC OCEAN
Belgian
Portuguese
Spanish
Chinese
United States
Russian

time is entirely elected by the natives. But home rule does not satisfy them; they want complete independence. The separation movement has gained ground rapidly since the World War, which stirred the nationalist longings of the Filipinos as of the Koreans, Hindus, and Egyptians. American public opinion seems to favor withdrawal from the islands, as soon as the inhabitants have clearly shown themselves capable of maintaining a stable government.

The Malay Archipelago

The Malay Archipelago,[1] in which the Philippines are often included, forms the largest group of islands in the world. The equator passes through the middle of the archipelago, giving it a tropical climate. The majority of the inhabitants are Malays, a branch of the Yellow race. Ruder, more primitive peoples occupy the interior of Sumatra, Borneo, and New Guinea. Hindus, Mohammedan Arabs, and Chinese have been the principal immigrants into the islands within historic times.

Holland in the Malay Archipelago

The possessions which Portugal acquired in the Malay Archipelago were seized by Holland in the seventeenth century. All the islands, except British North Borneo, the Portuguese part of Timor, and the eastern half of New Guinea, belong to the Dutch. They were transferred in 1798 from the Dutch East India Company to the royal government. Their total population is estimated at about 40,000,000; of these less than 100,000 are whites. The Dutch have met the usual difficulties of Europeans ruling subject peoples, but their authority seems to be now thoroughly established throughout the archipelago. The government is fairly enlightened, and much progress has been made (particularly in Java) in educating the natives and in raising their economic condition. Although Holland freely opens her possessions to traders of other nations, Dutch merchants continue to control the lucrative commerce of the islands.

Geographical knowledge of the Pacific islands dates from Captain Cook's discoveries in the eighteenth century, but their partition among European powers has been completed only in

[1] Also called Malaysia, Indonesia, the East Indies. See the map on page 229.

the twentieth century. Great Britain has raised the Union Jack over the Solomons, the Fiji Islands, and many smaller archipelagoes. France possesses New Caledonia, Tahiti, and the Marquesas group. The United States controls Guam, part of Samoa, and Hawaii. The German possessions in the Pacific were surrendered to the Allies shortly after the opening of the World War.

Melanesia, Micronesia, and Polynesia

160. Australia and New Zealand

The term Australasia, in a restricted sense, applies to that division of Oceania comprising Australia, Tasmania, and New Zealand. Australia deserves its rank as a separate continent. In area it equals three-fourths of Europe, one-third of North America, and one-fourth of the British Empire. The characteristic features of Australian geography are the slightly indented coast, the lack of navigable rivers communicating with the interior, the central desert, the absence of active volcanoes or snow-capped mountains, the generally level surface, and the low altitude. Australia is the most isolated of all inhabited continents, while the two large islands of New Zealand, twelve hundred miles to the southeast, are still more remote from the center of the world's activities.

Australasia

Much of Australia lies in the temperate zone and therefore offers a favorable field for white settlement. Captain Cook, on the first of his celebrated voyages, raised the British flag over the island continent. Colonization began in 1787, with the foundation of Sydney on the coast of New South Wales. For many years Australia served as a penal station, to which the British transported the convicts who had been previously sent to America. More substantial colonists followed, especially after the introduction of sheep-farming and the discovery of gold in the nineteenth century. They settled chiefly on the eastern and southern coasts, where the climate is cool and there is plenty of water and rich pasture land.

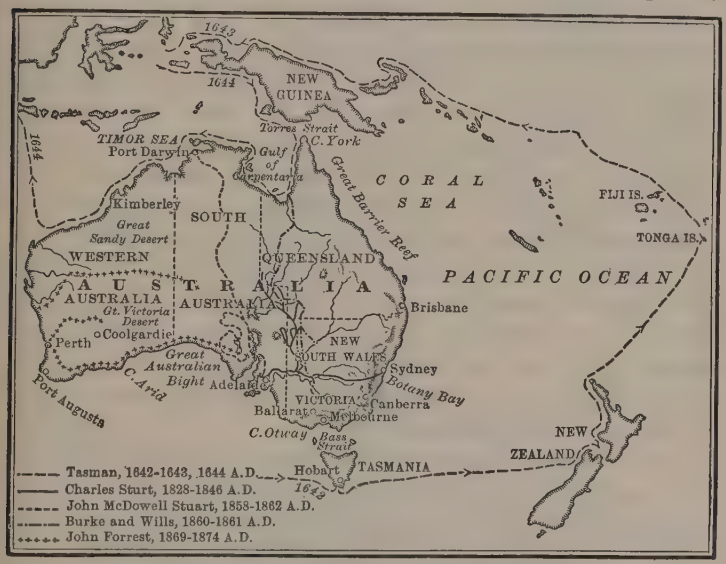
Australia

THE PACIFIC OCEAN

BRITISH	PORTUGUESE
FRENCH	JAPANESE
DUTCH	AMERICAN

New South Wales, the original colony, had two daughter colonies, Victoria and Queensland. Two other colonies — South Australia and Western Australia — were founded directly by emigrants from Great Britain. All these states, together with Tasmania, have now united into the Australian Commonwealth. This federation follows American models in its written constitution, its senate and house of representatives, and its high (or supreme)

The Australian Commonwealth, 1900



THE AUSTRALIAN COMMONWEALTH

court. A governor-general, sent from England, represents the British Crown. The Commonwealth, however, is entirely self-governing except in foreign affairs.

Great Britain annexed New Zealand in 1839. Its temperate climate, abundant rainfall, and luxuriant vegetation soon attracted settlers, who now number more than a million. In 1907 New Zealand was raised from the rank of a colony to that of a dominion, thus taking a place beside Canada, South Africa, and Australia among the self-governing divisions of the British Empire.

The Dominion of New Zealand

161. Inter-racial Problems

Population of the world

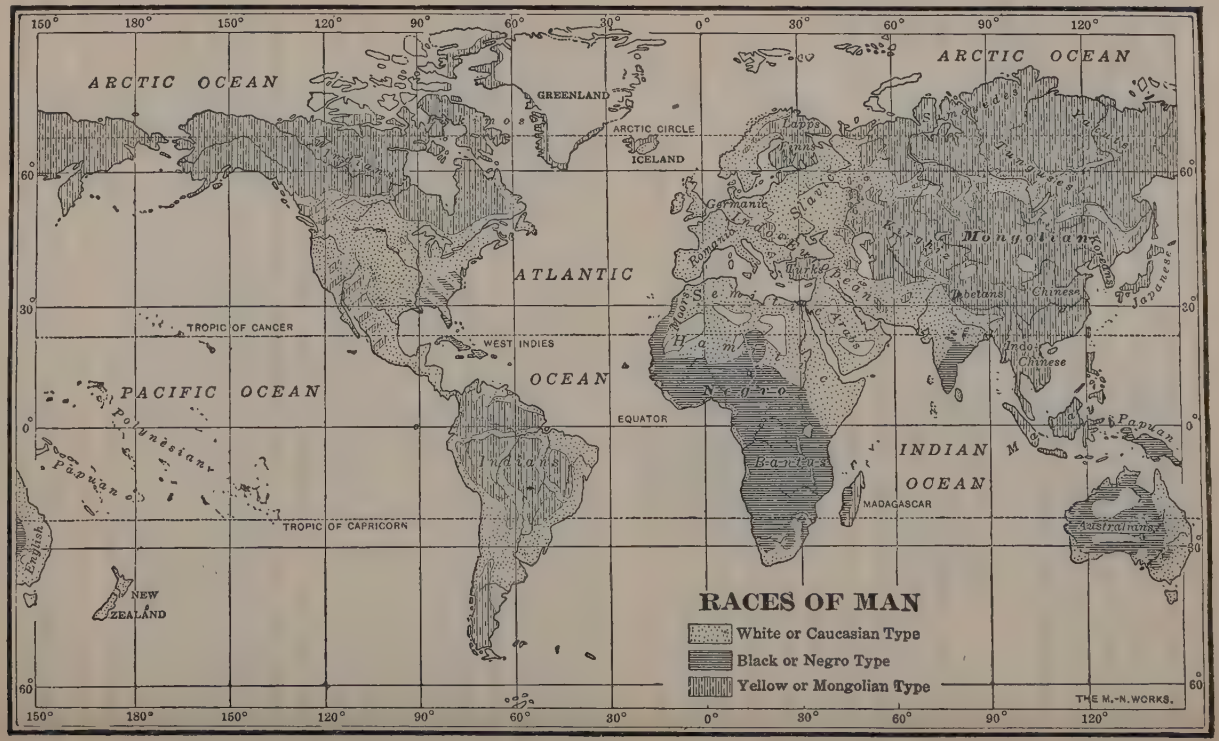
The number of people on the earth is estimated to exceed 1,600,000,000. Asia has perhaps 900,000,000; Europe, 400,000,000; America, 150,000,000; Africa, 140,000,000; and Oceania, 10,000,000. These figures are only approximate, since many countries either do not take a census or take it quite inaccurately.

Geographical distribution of races

The world's inhabitants are distributed in three great races, each of which occupies, roughly speaking, distinct geographical areas. The Yellow or Mongolian race holds the north, east, and center of Asia. The so-called Brown race (Malays, Polynesians) and the so-called Red race (American Indians) must be considered branches of the Yellow race. The Black or Negro race holds most of Africa south of the Sahara. The Dravidians of India, the aborigines of Australia, and the Papuans of New Guinea and the adjacent islands, are negroid (negro-like) peoples. The White or Caucasian race is found in Europe, northern and eastern Africa, and southwestern Asia. It also forms the bulk of the population of the New World, as well as of South Africa, Australia, and New Zealand.

Expansion of the White race

The wonderful expansion of the White race during the last four centuries has been largely confined to the temperate regions of the globe. The few whites settling in tropical and sub-tropical parts of Africa, Asia, Oceania, and America go as soldiers, officials, clerks, salesmen, and agents sent out for a term of years. They seek, not new homes, but the profits of trade or rule over subject peoples. Such are the seventy-five thousand Englishmen in India and the still fewer Dutch who control the East India dependencies of Holland. Now, however, that so little free or cheap agricultural land remains in the temperate zone, the white man who wants to establish himself in a new country is looking more and more to the tropics. Here he finds an abundance of rich land that has never been tilled, virgin forests that await the woodsman's ax, and mineral wealth yet to be


ARCTIC OCEAN
ARCTIC OCEAN
GREENLAND
ARCTIC CIRCLE
ICELAND
ATLANTIC
OCEAN
PACIFIC OCEAN
INDIAN
OCEAN
TROPIC OF CANCER
TROPIC OF CAPRICORN
EQUATOR
WEST INDIES
MADAGASCAR
NEW ZEALAND
Lapps
Germanic
Slavic
Mongolians
Tibetans
Chinese
Japanese
Arabs
Hamites
Negroes
Bantus
Polynesians
Papuans
Australians
Indo Chinese
RACES OF MAN
White or Caucasian Type
Black or Negro Type
Yellow or Mongolian Type
THE M.-N. WORKS.

exploited. Europeans and Americans have not gone to the tropics in large numbers, principally because they feared the climate and the tropical diseases. Our experience in Panama and that of the British in India seems to prove that yellow fever, malaria, and other plagues can be conquered by scientific sanitation and medicine. Even so, it is still not certain that the white man, and especially the white man's wife and children, can long thrive in the hot, moist climate of equatorial countries. Englishmen stationed in the hottest parts of India find it necessary to take frequent long vacations in more northerly climes, and their children, unless sent back to England at an early age, languish, often die, and still more often grow up as nervous wrecks. There are, of course, tropical lands (Mexico, Ecuador, Peru, part of Uganda) which, by reason of their great elevation, reach literally out of the tropics, and other tropical lands (Hawaii) so tempered by sea breezes that their climate is not really tropical at all. In such regions the white man may adjust himself to a tropical environment, not only without injury, but often with positive benefit to his health.

Expansion of the Black and Yellow races

The Black and Yellow races have not remained within their continents of origin during the past four hundred years. The forced migration of Africans practically ended with the abolition of negro slavery and the slave trade in the nineteenth century, but the voluntary migration of Asiatics shows a marked tendency to increase. The overflow of the teeming populations of India, Indo-China, China, and Japan on to the Philippines, the Malay Archipelago, Australia, the islands of the Pacific, South Africa, and the North and South American coasts seems destined to raise race questions of tremendous import in the future.

Coöperation of the races

The growing contact of Europeans and non-Europeans throughout the Old World will make it necessary for them to associate more and more in the common work of civilization. Coöperation between the races can only be secured in proportion as each race learns to appreciate

the others. Racial prejudices must give way to a decent regard for the value of human beings everywhere.

Studies

1. "Europe to-day is no more than a portion of the European world." Comment on this statement. 2. What parts of the Old World are occupied or colonized by Anglo-Saxon peoples? By Latin peoples? By Slavic peoples? 3. What is the origin of the names Liberia, Rhodesia, Philippines, Tasmania, and New Zealand? 4. Distinguish between the Near East and the Far East, as these expressions are commonly used. 5. Trace the routes followed by the Cape-to-Cairo and Trans-Siberian railways. 6. Account for the long delay in the partition of Africa. 7. Show how Africa has become an "annex of Europe." 8. What European powers have secured the former Turkish possessions in North Africa? 9. Look up in an encyclopedia accounts of the negro republic of Liberia and of the "empire" of Abyssinia. 10. Why has the Suez Canal been called the "spinal cord" of the British Empire? 11. What possessions in India are still kept by Portugal and France? 12. Look up in an encyclopedia an account of the life and teachings of the Buddha. 13. Do the Chinese form a genuine nation? How is it with the Japanese? 14. Show that the Chino-Japanese and Russo-Japanese wars contributed to the awakening of China. 15. Compare the Europeanization of Japan in the nineteenth century with that of Russia in the eighteenth century. 16. Why are the Hawaiian Islands called the "crossroads of the Pacific"? 17. Discuss the question of tropical acclimatization.

BUDDHIST PRAYER WHEEL

A small hand wheel from Burma; now in the United States National Museum, Washington. It consists of a metal cylinder, through which passes a wooden handle. Inside the cylinder is rolled a long strip of paper inscribed with the sacred Buddhist formula: *Om mani padme hum* ("O jewel in the lotus flower"). Each revolution of the cylinder counts as an uttered prayer.

CHAPTER XXII

EXPANSION OF EUROPE IN THE NEW WORLD[1]

162. South America

EUROPEAN expansion in America differs markedly from European expansion in Africa and Asia. Africa has been subjected and partitioned by Europe, but its savage and barbarous peoples have not been Europeanized either in blood, language, or institutions. Asia has accepted certain features of Occidental civilization, but nothing indicates that Hindus, Chinese, Japanese, and other Orientals will allow their ancient civilization to be extinguished by that of Europe. America, however, is largely European in blood and completely European in language, laws, customs, and political and social life. Between the New World of 1492 and the New World of 1920 how great the contrast!

Europe and America

Eighteen independent countries in the New World have developed from Spanish colonies. Brazil has sprung from Portuguese settlement, and Haiti from French settlement. All these countries inherited Latin or Romance languages (Spanish, Portuguese, and French) and embraced the faith of the Roman Catholic Church. They constitute the Latin America of the present day.

Latin America

The motives which led to Spanish colonization in America may be summed up in the three words "gospel, glory, and gold." Missionaries sought converts in Spanish America; warriors sought conquests; and adventurers sought wealth.

[1] Webster, *Historical Source Book*, No. 19, "Washington's Farewell Address, 1796"; No. 21, "Monroe Doctrine, 1823"; No. 23, "Durham Report, 1839"; No. 26, "Lincoln's First Inaugural Address, 1861"; No. 27, "Gettysburg Address, 1863"; No. 30, "Roosevelt's Inaugural Address, 1905."

Together, they created for Spain an empire greater in extent than any that the world had ever known before. After the middle of the sixteenth century homeseekers also came to the colonies, but never in such numbers as to crowd out the Indian aborigines. Intermixture between the races soon became common, resulting in the half-breeds called "mestizos." Although the white element remained dominant in public affairs, the racial foundation of most of Spanish America was and continues to be Indian. The fact is important, for the large proportion of imperfectly civilized Indians and half-breeds, together with the negroes who were soon introduced as slaves, operated to retard the progress of the Spanish colonies.

The Spanish colonies

Spain governed her colonies in the New World for her own benefit. She crippled their trade by requiring the inhabitants to buy only Spanish goods and to sell only to Spaniards. She prohibited such colonial manufactures as might compete with those at home. Furthermore, she filled all the offices in Church and State with Spaniards born in the mother country, to the exclusion of those born in the colonies, the creoles. This restrictive system made the colonists long for freedom, especially after they heard the stirring story of the revolutions which had created the United States and republican France. When Napoleon invaded Spain, forced the abdication of Ferdinand VII, and gave the crown to his own brother Joseph,[1] the colonists set up practically independent states throughout Spanish America. For six years — 1808–1814 — they enjoyed liberty.

The yoke of Spain

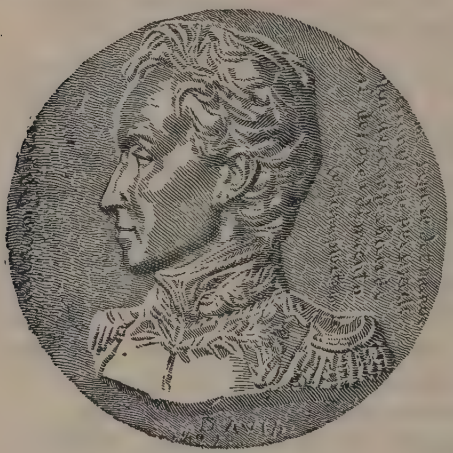
Ferdinand VII, who returned to his throne after Napoleon's overthrow, was a genuine Bourbon, incapable of learning anything or of forgetting anything.[2] His refusal to satisfy the demands of the colonists for equal rights with the mother country precipitated the revolt against Spain. Its greatest hero is Simón de Bolívar, who, in addition to freeing his native Venezuela, helped to free the countries

Revolt against Spain

[1] See page 342.

[2] See page 354.

now known as Colombia, Ecuador, Bolivia, and Peru. One by one all the colonies in South America, together with Central America and Mexico, threw off the Spanish yoke. The United States followed the movement with sympathetic eyes, and as early as 1817 sent commissioners to establish commercial relations with the revolting colonies. Great Britain also took an interest in their struggle for liberty and helped them with money, ships, and munitions of war. In 1826 the Spanish flag was finally lowered on the American continents.



Simón Bolívar
A medallion by David d'Angers, 1832

The people of Brazil also severed the ties uniting them to the mother country. They set up an independent empire in 1822, with Dom Pedro, the oldest son of the Portuguese king, as its first ruler. He abdicated nine years later in favor of his infant son. Brazil prospered under the benevolent sway of the second Dom Pedro, who was the last monarch to occupy an American throne. A peaceful revolution in 1889 overthrew the imperial government and transformed Brazil into a republic.

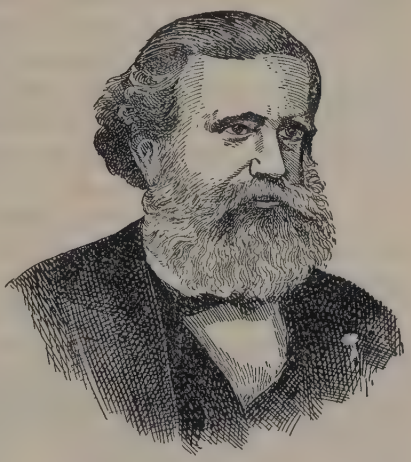
Revolt against Portugal

The revolts from Spain and Portugal produced seven independent states in South America. These were subsequently increased to ten by the secession of Uruguay from Brazil (1828) and the break-up of the Great Colombia, established by Bolívar, into the three states of Venezuela (1829), Ecuador (1830), and Colombia. All the South American republics possess constitutions and

The South American republics

80° 70° Longitude 60° West from 50° Greenwich 40°
CARIBBEAN SEA
TRINIDAD
Caracas
Orinoco R.
VENEZUELA
1810, 1821
Georgetown
Paramaribo
Cayenne
BRITISH
DUTCH
FRENCH
GUIANA
Bogotá
COLOMBIA
1811, 1819
EQUATOR
Quito
Guayaquil
ECUADOR
1809, 1822
Napo
Amazon R.
Para
Madeira R.
Pernambuco
B R A Z I L
(Indep. Empire 1822 Republic, 1889)
Lima
PERU
1821, 1824
Titicaca
La Paz
BOLIVIA
Potosi 1809, 1825
Paraguay R.
Bahia
Rio de Janeiro
TROPIC OF CAPRICORN
Antofagasta
Pilcomayo
PARAGUAY
1811
São Paulo
Asuncion
Porto Alegre
Uruguay
Parana R.
URUGUAY
1828
Cordoba
Rosario
Valparaiso
Santiago
JUAN FERNANDEZ Is.
1810, 1818
Buenos Aires
Montevideo
La Plata
Plata R.
1810, 1816
Strait of Magellan
FALKLAND Is.
Punta Arenas
Cape Horn
PATAGONIA
PACIFIC OCEAN
ATLANTIC OCEAN
Exclusion of SPAIN and PORTUGAL from SOUTH AMERICA
Scale of Statute Miles
0 500 1000
Territory lost by Spain
Territory lost by Portugal
Note: Boundaries of Countries are shown as in 1918
The first figure indicates year when movement for independence started,
The second figure, year when independence was acknowledged
THE M.-N. WORKS, BUFFALO, N.Y.
90° 80° 70° 60° 50° 40° 30° 20°

the forms of democracy. Frequent revolutions and civil wars characterized their history during most of the nineteenth century. Nothing else could have been looked for, considering that the masses of semi-civilized Indians, half-breeds, and negroes lacked all political experience. They were easily swayed by ambitious politicians and generals, who often became dictators with well-nigh absolute power. But the South Americans have now served their apprenticeship to liberty. They are learning to rule themselves, and the several states seem to be entering upon a period of settled, orderly government.



Dom Pedro II

South America has almost limitless resources. It produces a greater variety of plants useful to man than any other quarter of the globe. Tropical fruits grow abundantly in the equatorial regions, together with cotton, sugar-cane, coffee, cacáo, and tobacco. Cereals of every description flourish in the sub-tropical and temperate areas, and cattle, sheep, and horses thrive on the boundless pampas of Argentina. Rubber, medicinal products (cocoa, cinchona bark), dye-woods, and timber of extraordinary hardness and durability come from the forests of Brazil and adjacent countries. Many valuable minerals are found in the lofty Cordilleran range, besides asphalt in Venezuela and extensive deposits of nitrate of soda in Chile.

Natural resources

The exploitation of this wealth in mines, forests, and soil must for a long time engross the energies of South American peoples. Their economic progress has been slow for several

163. Central America and Mexico

The Spanish dependencies in Central America declared their independence in 1821, and two years later formed a federation.

The Central American republics

It soon disintegrated into the five diminutive republics of Guatemala, Salvador, Honduras,[1] Nicaragua, and Costa Rica. Subsequent attempts to restore federal unity have been unsuccessful. They still maintain a separate existence, often vexed by factional strife and revolutions. The recent secession of Panama from Colombia has added a sixth republic to their number. Its independence was promptly recognized by the United States and later by the European powers. The population of Central America is small, far smaller, apparently, than before the arrival of the Spaniards. The vast majority of the inhabitants are of mixed Indian and Spanish blood, the Indian element predominating everywhere except in Costa Rica. Some of the Indians live under very primitive conditions, although their ancestors, the Mayas, reached in pre-Columbian days the highest level of culture attained by any native people. No part of the New World holds greater interest to the archæologist than Central America, with its ruins of entire cities now buried in the dense tropical jungle.

Mexico also secured independence in 1821, only to enter upon a long period of disorder. Counting regencies, emperors,

The Mexican republic

presidents, triumvirates, dictators, and other rulers, the "republic" had as many administrations during the first half century of its existence as the colony had viceroys throughout the whole period of Spanish rule. In 1861 Benito Juarez — a full-blooded Indian — became president. He proceeded to confiscate all the property of the Roman Catholic Church in Mexico, to suppress the monasteries, and to repudiate the public debt, which was largely held in Europe. These proceedings gave Napoleon III a pretext for interfering in Mexican affairs, at a time when the United States was in the throes of the Civil War. The French

[1] British Honduras is a Crown colony of Great Britain.

quickly overran much of the country and set up the archduke Maximilian, brother of Francis Joseph I, as emperor. For a while he held sway over about two-thirds Mexico, while the Juarists, as the Mexican patriots were called, maintained themselves by guerilla warfare in the remoter provinces. Maximilian's power rested on the bayonets of his foreign soldiery. The United States, at this time in the throes of the Civil War, refused to recognize him. After the close of the war, the United States protested vigorously to Napoleon III against the presence of the French in Mexico and backed up its words by sending troops to the Rio Grande. Partly because of this action and also because of his growing fear of Prussia, Napoleon III in 1867 withdrew his forces from Mexico. Maximilian remained, only to be captured by the Juarists, and after a hurried court-martial to be shot as a rebel against the lawful government.

Ten years later Porfirio Diaz, an able lieutenant of Juarez, made himself supreme in Mexico. His title of president only veiled the real dictatorship which he exercised. It was the policy of Diaz to repress disorder, enforce the law, foster industry and railroad building, encourage immigration, place the national credit on a sound basis, and improve elementary and higher education. Mexico has never had a firmer hand at the helm than that of Porfirio Diaz. He gave the country peace and opened its wondrous resources to the rest of the world, but he failed to lighten the heavy burdens that were resting on the "peons," as farm laborers are called in Mexico. Their successful revolution in 1911 compelled his withdrawal to Spain.

Mexico under Diaz, 1877–1911

The expulsion of Diaz was followed by civil conflict between rival generals and their followers. It has now died down in Mexico, with the result that there is now a constitutional president. The problems before him are difficult. Mexico needs not only a stable government, but also land reforms which will raise the "peons" from their condition of practical serfdom on the estates of

Mexico after Diaz

great proprietors to that of free men. Whether these problems will be solved remains to be seen. Until they are solved, Mexico is bound to be a land where revolutions are recurrent as the seasons.

164. The West Indies

Geography

The islands which Columbus discovered and named the West Indies form the summits of a submerged mountain chain. Their total area scarcely exceeds that of Great Britain. They are exceptionally fertile, and some of them are exceptionally healthy, among tropical regions, for white settlement. The entire archipelago is divided into the Bahamas, the Greater Antilles (Cuba, Jamaica, Haiti, and Porto Rico), and the Lesser Antilles.

Population

The aboriginal West Indians (Caribs) soon disappeared almost completely, in consequence of brutal treatment by the Spaniards. Their place as slaves was taken by Africans, who were imported in great numbers for three hundred years. Negroes still comprise a large majority of the inhabitants. The abolition of slavery and the slave trade in the nineteenth century led to the introduction of Asiatics, including many Chinese and East Indian coolies. English, French, Spaniards, and other Europeans early found their way into the islands, but very few Americans have settled there.

History

The West Indies fill a conspicuous place in the history of the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries. Their geographical position between two continents made them the scene of sea-fights and land-fights innumerable between the French and British, who were then disputing the supremacy of the New World. The islands were equally prominent in the intervals of peace, for in those days they supplied the world with sugar. The millionaires of the eighteenth century were the owners of West India sugar-cane plantations. A long period of depression followed the abolition of slavery and the slave trade, which cut down the supply of cheap labor, while at the same time beet sugar began to be

extensively produced in Europe. The completion of the Panama Canal places the West Indies on the world's great trade routes and promises to restore much of their former prosperity.

The Bahamas, Jamaica, and many of the smaller West Indies belong to Great Britain. Holland has five islands, including Curaçao off the coast of Venezuela. France has Guadeloupe and Martinique, the latter the birthplace of the empress Joséphine. The little island of St. Martin is divided between Holland and France. Haiti, once a French possession, declared its independence at the time of the Revolution and successfully resisted Napoleon's efforts at reconquest. The two negro republics of Haiti and Santo Domingo now divide the island between them.[1] Cuba, thanks to American intervention during the Spanish-American War, also forms a republic. The United States took Porto Rico from Spain in 1898 and in 1917 purchased from Denmark the three islands of St. Thomas, St. John, and St. Croix. Their acquisition reflects the increased importance of the West Indies to the American people.

Political affiliations

165. The United States

The expansion of the United States beyond the limits fixed by the Treaty of Paris in 1783[2] began with the purchase of the Louisiana territory between the Mississippi and the Rocky Mountains. This immense region, originally claimed by France in virtue of La Salle's discoveries, had passed to Spain at the close of the Seven Years' War and had been reacquired for France by Napoleon Bonaparte. The French emperor, about to renew his conflict with Great Britain,[3] realized that he could

The Louisiana Purchase, 1803

[1] Both Haiti and Santo Domingo came under American military occupation and protection in 1915–1916. The United States has indicated its intention of withdrawing from the two countries as soon as they return to a condition of domestic order.

[2] See page 269.

[3] See page 336.

not defend Louisiana against the mistress of the seas. Rather than make a forced present of the country to Great Britain, he sold it to the United States for the paltry sum of $15,000,000.

The possession of Louisiana gave the United States an outlet upon the Gulf of Mexico. This was greatly extended by the purchase of Florida from Spain in 1819 and the annexation of Texas in 1845. The settlement of the dispute with Great Britain as to the Oregon country (1846), the Mexican Cession (1848), and the Gadsden Purchase (1853), brought the United States to the Pacific. Every part of this western territory is now linked by transcontinental railroads with the Mississippi Valley and the Atlantic-facing states.

Acquisitions, 1803–1867

Alaska had been a Russian province since Bering's voyages in the eighteenth century. Russia, however, never realized the value of her distant dependency and in 1867 sold it to the United States for $7,200,000. Since then Americans have taken from Alaska in gold alone many times the original cost of the territory. Its resources in coal, lumber, agricultural land, and fisheries are also very great, though as yet little has been done to exploit them.

Purchase of Alaska, 1867

In the last decade of the nineteenth century the United States began to secure possessions overseas. The Hawaiian Islands, lying about two thousand miles off the coast of California, were annexed in 1898. This action was taken at the request of the inhabitants. The same year saw the acquisition of the Philippines, Guam, and Porto Rico as the result of the war with Spain. The Samoan island of Tutuila and the Danish West Indies (renamed the Virgin Islands) have also come into American hands.

Acquisitions, 1867–1917

The United States, though not unwilling to obtain colonies in the New World, denies the right of any European nation to acquire additional territory here. This policy of "America for Americans" is known as the Monroe Doctrine. It was first formulated partly to stave off any attempt of the Old World monarchies, led by Metternich, to aid Spain in the reconquest of her colonies, and

The Monroe Doctrine, 1823

NORTH AMERICA
SINCE 1783 A.D.
Scale of Miles
0 500 1000
British
Ceded to United States
by Great Britain
by France
by Spain
by Mexico
by Russia
Texas
by Denmark
Acquired by U. S. by Discovery
Independent Countries formerly French
Independent Countries formerly Spanish
French
Dutch
Under the names of the Canadian provinces, are the dates of their accession to the Dominion.
ARCTIC OCEAN
PACIFIC OCEAN
ATLANTIC OCEAN
Gulf of Mexico
Caribbean Sea
DOMINION OF CANADA
UNITED STATES
MEXICO
CENTRAL AMERICA
SOUTH AMERICA
Hudson Bay
Greenland
Alaska
Yukon
Mackenzie
Keewatin
Manitoba
Ontario
Quebec
Labrador
Newfoundland
Nova Scotia
Louisiana Purchase
Oregon Country
Mexican Cession
Texas
Cuba
Jamaica
Haiti
Dominican Republic
Porto Rico
Bahama Islands
Bermuda
Honduras
Guatemala
Salvador
Nicaragua
Costa Rica
Panama
Panama Canal
Equator
Tropic of Cancer
West Indies
Longitude 100° West from 90° Greenwich
THE M.-N. WORKS

partly to prevent the further extension southward of the Russian province of Alaska. The interests of Great Britain in both these directions coincided with those of the United States. Relying on the support of the British government, President Monroe sent his celebrated message to Congress (1823), in which he declared that the American continents were henceforth "not to be considered as subjects for future colonization by any European powers." [1]

Enforcement of the Monroe Doctrine

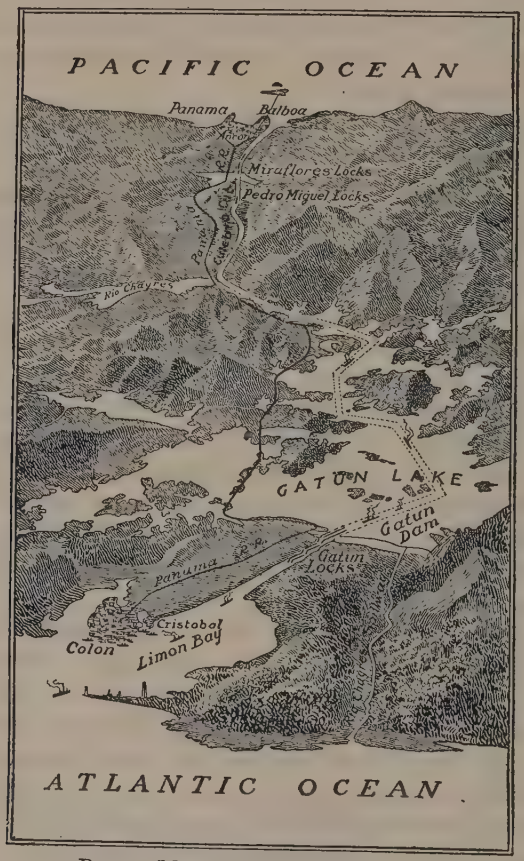
The solemn protest of the United States, backed by Great Britain, removed for a time the danger of European interference in America. As we have just seen, Napoleon III subsequently tried to create a Mexican empire for France, but this breach of the Monroe Doctrine was soon repaired. No further assaults upon it have been made. The doctrine was extended by President Grant, who in a message to Congress (1870) asserted the principle that hereafter no American territory "shall be regarded as a subject of transfer to a European power." The principle received an application twenty-five years later, when President Cleveland intervened in a dispute between Great Britain and Venezuela, in order to prevent an alleged encroachment by the former power upon the Venezuelan boundary of British Guiana. Fortunately for all parties concerned, the dispute was settled by arbitration.

Pan-Americanism

The enforcement of the Monroe Doctrine makes it necessary for the United States not only to defend the Latin-American republics against foreign aggression, but also to intervene from time to time in their domestic affairs. Our warships and soldiers have been repeatedly sent to the West Indies, Mexico, and Central America for the purpose of protecting American and European citizens and their property from rioters or revolutionists. Though grateful to her mighty neighbor for help, Latin America has trembled lest our intervention to restore order might pass into downright conquest. The benevolent purposes of this country are now being better understood. It has inaugurated a series of Pan-American

[1] See page 364.

conferences, composed of delegates from all the independent nations of the New World. With the assistance of the Latin-American republics, it has also established the Pan-American Union at Washington, which seeks to spread information about



Relief Map of the Panama Canal

the resources and trade of the different countries and also to cultivate friendly relations between them. The coöperation of most of the Central American and South American nations with the United States, during the World War, cannot

fail to strengthen the bonds between the republics of the New World.

The idea of an artificial waterway at Panama or some other suitable point had been broached almost as soon as the Spanish conquest of Central America and had been repeatedly discussed for more than three centuries. Nothing was done until 1881, when a French company, headed by De Lesseps,[1] began excavations at Panama. Extravagance and corruption characterized the management of the company from the start; it went into bankruptcy before the work was half done. The United States in 1902 bought its property and rights for forty million dollars. Shortly afterwards, the secession of Panama from Colombia enabled the United States to obtain from the new republic occupation and control of a canal zone, ten miles wide, for the purposes of the canal. The work was completed in 1914. The Panama Canal greatly shortens the distance between the Atlantic, the Gulf, and the Pacific coasts of the New World. This means lower freight rates and improvement in the passenger and mail service. Increased commerce, travel, and communication will do much in the future to bring together and keep together the two Americas.

Panama Canal, 1914

166. Canada

The population of Canada in 1763 was almost entirely French. After the American Revolution Canada received a large influx of "Tories" from the Thirteen Colonies,[2] together with numerous emigrants from Great Britain. The new settlers had so many quarrels with the French Canadians that Parliament in 1791 passed an act dividing the country into Upper Canada for the British and Lower Canada for the French. Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, and Newfoundland remained separate provinces.

Upper and Lower Canada

When Great Britain, in retaliation for Napoleon's Continental System, issued the Orders in Council,[3] the United

[1] See page 546. [2] See page 267. [3] See page 341.

States, as the chief neutral, was also the chief sufferer. The injury to American trade, coupled with the quarrel over the impressment of seamen, provoked the second war with Great Britain. It seemed to furnish a good opportunity for the conquest of Canada, but British and French Canadians united in defense of their country and drove out the American armies. The treaty of peace left matters as they were before the war, except for a heritage of unfriendly feeling on the part of the contestants. Even this has disappeared in the course of a century unbroken by the clash of arms. The unfortified boundary from the Atlantic to the Pacific is an eloquent testimony to the good relations between Canada and the United States.

War of 1812–1814

Canada had done her duty to the British Empire during the War of 1812–1814, but she waited more than thirty years for her reward in the shape of self-government. Great Britain, after losing the Thirteen Colonies, did nor favor any measures which might result in Canadian independence as well. Finally, Parliament sent over a wise statesman, Lord Durham, to investigate the political discontent in Canada. Lord Durham in his *Report* urged that the only method of keeping distant colonies is to allow them to rule themselves. If the Canadians received freedom to manage their domestic affairs they would be more, and not less, loyal, for they would have fewer causes of complaint against the mother country. The Durham *Report* produced a lasting effect on British colonial policy. Not only did Great Britain grant parliamentary institutions and self-government to the Canadian

The Durham Report, 1839

The Earl of Durham

provinces, but she also bestowed the same privileges upon her Australasian and South African dominions.[1]

Another of Lord Durham's recommendations led to the union in 1840 of Upper Canada (Ontario) and Lower Canada (Quebec). In 1867 Ontario and Quebec formed with Nova Scotia and New Brunswick the confederation known as the Dominion of Canada. It has a governor-general, representing the British sovereign, a senate whose members hold office for life, and an elective house of commons, to which the cabinet of ministers is responsible. Each Canadian province also maintains a parliament for local legislation. The distinguishing feature of the Canadian constitution is that all powers not definitely assigned by it to the provinces belong to the Dominion. Consequently, the question of " States' rights " can never be raised in Canada.

The Dominion of Canada, 1867

The new Dominion expanded rapidly. It purchased from the Hudson Bay Company the extensive territories out of which the provinces of Manitoba, Saskatchewan, and Alberta have been created. British Columbia and Prince Edward Island soon came into the confederation. All the remainder of British North America, except Newfoundland, which still holds aloof, was annexed in 1878 to the Dominion of Canada. One government now holds sway over the whole region from the Great Lakes to the Arctic Circle.

Territorial expansion

Equally rapid has been the development of the Dominion in wealth and population. The western provinces, formerly left to roving Indian tribes and a few white traders, are attracting numerous foreign immigrants. Two transcontinental railroads — the Canadian Pacific, completed in 1886, and the more recent Canadian Northern — make accessible the agricultural resources of the Dominion, its forests, and its deposits of coal and minerals. Canada now ranks as the largest, richest, and most populous member of the British Empire.

Economic development

The World War did something to break down the isolation of Canada from the United States. Many American citizens,

[1] See page 448.

before their country entered the struggle, enlisted in the Canadian army and fought for democracy under a foreign flag.

Canada and the United States

With the return of peace, the closer relations thus established ought to continue. Canada, increasingly industrial in the east but agricultural in the west, faces much the same economic and social problems as confront her southern neighbor. It is worthy of note, in this connection, that the great majority of Canadian trade unions affiliate with the American Federation of Labor and that American farmers are emigrating in large numbers to the prairie provinces of Manitoba, Saskatchewan, and Alberta. While the former agitation for the incorporation of Canada in the United States has quite disappeared on both sides of the boundary line, common experiences, interests, and ideals may be expected to tighten the bonds between the two English-speaking countries of the New World.

167. Close of Geographical Discovery

Half the globe was still unmapped in 1800. Canada, Alaska, and the Louisiana territory were so little known that a geography published at this time omits any reference to the Rocky Mountains. South America, though long settled by white men, continued to be largely unexplored. Scant information existed about the Pacific islands and Australia. Much of Asia remained sealed to Europeans. Accurate knowledge of Africa did not reach beyond the edges of that continent. The larger part of the Arctic realm had not yet been discovered, and the Antarctic realm had barely been touched.

Unmapped regions, 1800

Discoveries and explorations during the nineteenth century carried forward the geographical conquest of the world. The great African rivers were traced to their sources in the heart of what had once been the "Dark Continent." In Asia, the headwaters of the Indus and the Ganges were reached; the Himalayas measured and shown to be the loftiest of mountains; Tibet, the mysterious, penetrated; and the veil of darkness shrouding China, Korea, Farther India, and other Asiatic countries lifted. Travelers

Filling in the map

120
100
80
60
40
60
40
20
0
20
40
60
Hudson Bay
C A N A D A
NEWFOUNDLAND
Quebec
Montreal
Ottawa
Missouri R.
Mississippi R.
Columbia R.
Portland
Chicago
New York
Boston
San Francisco
St. Louis
Washington
UNITED STATES
ATLANTIC
OCEAN
Los Angeles
Rio Grande R.
New Orleans
MEXICO
Gulf of Mexico
TROPIC OF CANCER
Habana
CUBA
SANTO DOMINGO
HAITI
Mexico City
BR. HONDURAS
GUATEMALA
HONDURAS
Caribbean Sea
SALVADOR
NICARAGUA
COSTA RICA
PANAMA
Caracas
Orinoco R.
VENEZUELA
Bogota
GUIANA
COLOMBIA
EQUATOR
Quito
ECUADOR
P A C I F I C
Amazon R.
B R A Z I L
PERU
Lima
La Paz
BOLIVIA
Rio de Janeiro
TROPIC OF CAPRICORN
PARAGUAY R.
Asuncion
PARANA R.
CHILE
ARGENTINA
O C E A N
Santiago
URUGUAY
Buenos Aires
Montevideo
ATLANTIC
OCEAN
FALKLAND IS.
COMMERCIAL LANGUAGES OF AMERICA
English
Spanish
Portuguese
French
Dutch
Area left in white indicates Aboriginal Languages.

penetrated the deserts of inner Australia and finally crossed the entire continent from south to north. The journeys of Alexander von Humboldt in the Amazon and Orinoco valleys (1799–1804) inaugurated the systematic exploration of South America, while those of Lewis and Clark (1804–1806) opened up the Louisiana territory. Still later, Alaska, the Northwest Territories of Canada, and Labrador began to emerge from their obscurity. Even Greenland was crossed by Nansen, a Norwegian, and its coast was charted by Danish geographers and the American Peary.

Voyages in search of the Northwest Passage[1] had already revealed the labyrinth of islands, peninsulas, and ice-bound channels north of the American continent. Many heroic but fruitless attempts had also been made to reach the North Pole. Nansen in 1892–1895 utilized the ice drift to carry his ship, the *Fram*, across the polar sea. Finding that the drift would not take him to the pole, he left the *Fram* and with a single companion advanced to 86° 14′ N., or within two hundred and seventy-two miles of the pole. An Italian expedition, a few years later, got still farther north. The honor of actually reaching the pole was carried off by Peary in 1909. He traveled the last stages of the journey by sledge over the ice and reached his goal in company with a colored servant and several Eskimos. Nansen's and Peary's journeys showed that no land exists in the north polar basin, only a sea of great but unknown depth.

Arctic exploration

Robert E. Peary

The south polar region, on the other hand, is a land mass of

[1] The Northwest Passage was first completely navigated by the Norwegian Amundsen between 1903 and 1906.

ANTARCTIC EXPLORATION
ANTARCTIC OCEAN
Coats Land
Enderby Ld.
Kemp Ld.
Kemp 1833
Challenger 1874
Knox Ld.
Balleny Ld.
Balleny Is.
Wilkes 1840
Macquarie Is.
Weddell 1823
Filchner Barrier
Charcot Ld.
Amundsen Dec.16, 1911
Scott, Jan. 18, 1912
K. Wilhelm II Ld.
Shackleton, 1909
Victoria Ld.
Ross Barrier
Ross Sea
Mt. Erebus
Mt. Terror
Graham Land
Gerlache 1898
Cook 1774
Pack Ice
K. Edward VII Land
Average Limit of Floating Ice Bergs
Falkland Is.
S. Georgia
Sandwich Is.
Orcadas
Coats Is.
Pack Ice
C. Horn
DISCOVERIES IN THE POLAR REGIONS
Coasts explored before 1800
" " 1800-1900
" " since 1900
Nansen's Route
Peary's Route
Amundsen's Route
Scale of Statute Miles
ARCTIC EXPLORATION
PACIFIC OCEAN
Bering Sea
Sea of Okhotsk
Kamtschatka
Kolyma
Lena
Yenisei
Ob
Kara Sea
White Sea
North Cape
NEW SIBERIAN IS.
Chelyuskin
North Pole Peary 1909
Nansen 1895
Abruzzi 1900
FRANZ JOSEF LAND
SPITZBERGEN
Barrow Str.
Bering Str.
Barrow
Stefansson June 18, 1910
ALASKA
Mackenzie
Mt. McKinley
Hudson Bay
Baffin Bay
Smith Sound
Davis Strait
GREENLAND
Frobisher Bay
Labrador
C. Farewell
ICELAND
SCOTLAND
NEWFOUNDLAND
ATLANTIC OCEAN
THE M.-N. WORKS, BUFFALO, N.Y.

continental dimensions. First approached by Cook on his second voyage,[1] it has since been visited by many explorers. They have traced the course of the great ice barrier, discovered extensive mountain ranges, and even found two volcanoes belching forth lava amidst the snows. In 1907–1909 a British expedition under Sir Ernest Shackleton attained 88° 23′ S., or within ninety-seven miles of the pole. Amundsen, who reached the pole in 1911, was soon followed by Captain R. F. Scott, but this gallant Englishman and his four companions died of cold and starvation on the return journey. The records of polar exploration are, indeed, full of tragedies.

Antarctic exploration

Considerable spaces of the earth's surface still await scientific investigation. The Antarctic continent and Greenland offer many problems to geographers. The enormous basin of the Amazon is still little known. Practically no knowledge exists of the interior of New Guinea, the largest of islands, if Australia be reckoned as a continent. Australia itself has not been completely explored. In Asia, there is still much information to be gained concerning the great central plateau, the Arctic coast, and inner Arabia. Equatorial Africa affords another promising field for discovery. It thus remains for the twentieth century to complete the geographical conquest of the world.

Regions still unmapped

Studies

1. What parts of the New World are to-day occupied or colonized by Anglo-Saxon peoples? By Latin peoples? 2. What is the origin of the names Colombia, Venezuela, Bolivia, Louisiana, and Alberta? 3. Trace the routes followed by the Trans-Andean and Canadian Pacific railroads. 4. Name and locate the capitals of the twenty Latin American republics. 5. What European powers retain possessions in South America, Central America, and the West Indies? 6. Who were Bolívar, Dom Pedro II, Benito Juarez, and Porfirio Diaz? 7. Trace on the map the expansion of the United States. 8. Compare American expansion westward with Russian expansion eastward. 9. Name the principal transcontinental railroads in the United States. 10. How was the promulgation of the Monroe Doctrine a check to *Metternichismus?* 11. What do you understand by Pan-Americanism? 12. Why has Lord Durham's *Report* been styled the "Magna Carta of the British colonies"? 13. What were the successive steps in the formation of the Dominion of Canada? 14. On the map, page 590, follow Nansen's, Peary's, and Amundsen's routes in the polar regions.

[1] See page 273.

CHAPTER XXIII

THE INDUSTRIAL REVOLUTION

168. Nature of the Industrial Revolution

THE year 1776, the year of the Declaration of Independence and of Adam Smith's *Wealth of Nations*, also marks, approximately, the commencement of the Industrial Revolution. No other word except "revolution" so well describes those wholesale changes in manufacturing, transportation, and other industries, which, within a century and a half, have transformed modern life. This revolution originated in Great Britain, spread after 1815 to the Continent and the United States, and now extends throughout the civilized world.

Period of the Industrial Revolution

The rapid expansion of European peoples over Africa, Asia, Oceania, and America, as described in the two preceding chapters, was itself largely an outcome of the Industrial Revolution. Improvements in means of transportation — railroads, canals, steam navigation — by facilitating travel permitted an extensive emigration from Europe into other continents. Improved communication — the telegraph and the telephone — by annihilating distance made easier the occupation and government of remote dependencies. The growth of manufacturing in Europe also gave increased importance to colonies as sources of supply for raw materials and foodstuffs, as markets for finished goods, and as places of investment for the surplus wealth accumulated by the capitalists whom the Industrial Revolution created.

Colonial expansion and the Industrial Revolution

The Industrial Revolution also created a numerous body of wage-earners, who moved from rural districts and villages

into the factories, sweatshops, and tenements of the great cities. There, in spite of a crowded, miserable existence they gradually learned the value of organization. They formed trade unions in order to secure higher wages and shorter hours. They read newspapers and pamphlets, listened to speeches by agitators, and began to agitate for laws which would improve their lot. Then they went further and demanded the right to vote, to hold office, to enjoy all the liberty and equality which the *bourgeoisie*, or middle class, had won from monarchs and aristocrats. The Industrial Revolution furnished much of the driving power for the revolutionary outbreaks of 1830 and 1848, and especially for that democratic movement which has been so marked in Europe since 1871. It thus reinforced the new ideas of democracy introduced into the world by the American and French revolutions.

Democracy and the Industrial Revolution

The Industrial Revolution likewise fostered the national movement in Europe during the last century. Railroads, canals, steamboats, telegraphs, and telephones have been compared to a network of veins and arteries carrying the blood of the nation from the capital to the remotest province. Such increased facilities for travel and communication inevitably caused the disappearance of local prejudices and provincial limitations. It was now far easier for the people of each country to realize their common interests than when they lived isolated in small rural communities. Old nations, like Great Britain and France, became more closely knit; new nations, like Italy and Germany, arose; and the "submerged nationalities" of Europe started an agitation for self-government or for complete independence.

Nationalism and the Industrial Revolution

Great Britain took the lead in the Industrial Revolution. Her damp climate proved to be very favorable to the manufacture of textiles, her swift streams supplied abundant water power for machinery, and beneath her soil lay stores of coal and iron ore. There were other favoring circumstances. Industry in Great Britain was less fettered by guild restrictions than on the

The Industrial Revolution in Great Britain

Continent. She possessed more surplus capital for investment, more skilled laborers, and a larger merchant marine than any other country. Furthermore, Great Britain had emerged from the Seven Years' War victorious over all her rivals for maritime and commercial supremacy. Her trade in the markets of the world grew by leaps and bounds after 1763. The enormous demand for British goods in its turn stimulated the mechanical genius of British artisans and so produced the era of the great inventions.

169. The Great Inventions

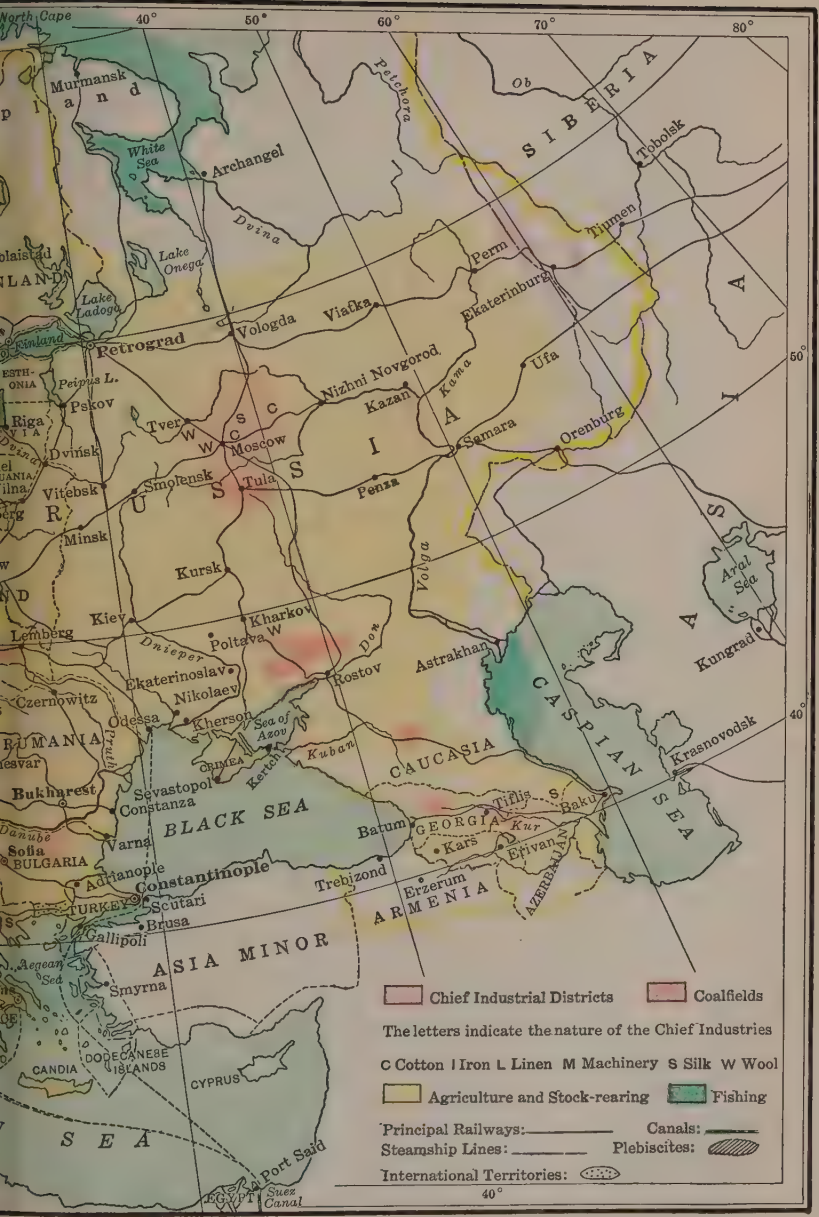
Invention

Man has advanced from savagery to civilization chiefly through invention. Beginning in prehistoric times, he slowly discovered how to supplement hands and feet and teeth and nails by the use of tools. From the tool it was a forward step to the machine, which, when supplied with muscular energy, only needed to be directed by man to do his work. The highest type of machine is one driven by natural forces — by wind, waterfall, steam, gas, or electricity. The invention of tools and machinery thus gives man an ever-increasing control over nature. He becomes nature's conqueror, rather than its slave.

Development of invention

A list of prehistoric tools and machines would include many kinds of implements, first of stone and then of metal: levers, rollers, and wedges; bows-and-arrows, slings, and lassos; oars, sails, and rudders; fishing nets, lines, and hooks; the plow and the wheeled cart; the needle, bellows, and potter's wheel; the distaff and spindle for spinning; and the hand loom for weaving. Few important additions were made to this list in antiquity, even by such cultivated peoples as the Egyptians, Babylonians, Greeks, and Romans. The Middle Ages were also singularly barren of inventions. It was only toward the close of the medieval period that gunpowder, the mariner's compass, paper, and movable type reached Europe from Asia. More progress took place during the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, which produced the telescope, microscope, thermometer and barometer, clocks and

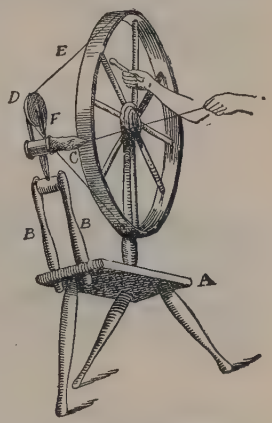
ECONOMIC EUROPE
Scale of Miles
0 100 200 300 400 500
80°
20°
10°
0°
10°
30°
50°
40°
20°
10°
ICELAND
Reykjavik
FAROE IS. (Danish)
SHETLAND IS.
ORKNEY IS.
HEBRIDES
To United States
To United States
BRITISH ISLES
SCOTLAND
IRELAND
Glasgow
Belfast
Dublin
Cork
Aberdeen
Edinburgh
Newcastle
Manchester
Liverpool
Hull
Irish Sea
English Channel
Bristol
Southampton
Plymouth
London
NORTH SEA
HELGOLAND
Kiel Canal
Amsterdam
Rotterdam
Antwerp
Birmingham
ENGLAND
ATLANTIC OCEAN
Brest
Havre
Rouen
Paris
Nantes
Orleans
Loire
Bay of Biscay
Bordeaux
Santander
Oporto
Lisbon
Valladolid
Saragossa
Toledo
Madrid
Guadiana
Seville
Cordova
Granada
Cadiz
Gibraltar (British)
C. St. Vincent
America
C. Ortegal
To South C. Finisterre
PORTUGAL
SPAIN
Ebro
Toulouse
Garonne
FRANCE
Lyons
Geneva
Marseilles
Barcelona
Strt. of Bonifacio
CORSICA
SARDINIA
Balearic Is.
Cartagena
Valencia
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
Algiers
Tunis
MOROCCO
Morocco
ALGERIA
TUNIS
AFRICA
Trondhjem
Bergen
Stavanger
Christiansand
Christiania
NORWAY
Gefle
Göteborg
Calmar
Malmö
DENMARK
Copenhagen
Kiel
Hamburg
Bremen
Hanover
Stettin
Berlin
GERMANY
Brussels
Cologne
Leipzig
Dresden
Frankfort
Prague
CZECHO-SLOVAKIA
Luxemburg
Nuremberg
Strttgart
Munich
Vienna
AUSTRIA
Bern
SWITZ.
Milan
Turin
Genoa
Venice
Trieste
Fiume
Florence
Pisa
Rome
Naples
Brindisi
Cagliari
Palermo
SICILY
Messina
MALTA (British)
ADRIATIC SEA
ELBA
Longitude East from Greenwich
THE MATTHEWS-NORTHRUP WORKS, BUFFALO, N. Y.


North Cape
40°
50°
60°
70°
80°
Murmansk
White Sea
Archangel
Petchora
Ob
SIBERIA
Tobolsk
Tiumen
Perm
Ekaterinburg
Dvina
Lake Onega
Lake Ladoga
Vologda
Viatka
Retrograd
Nizhni Novgorod
Kazan
Kama
Ufa
Pskov
Peipus L.
Tver
Moscow
Samara
Orenburg
Riga
Dvinsk
Vitebsk
Smolensk
Tula
Penza
Minsk
Kursk
Volga
Aral Sea
Kungrad
Kiev
Kharkov
Poltava
Dnieper
Don
Astrakhan
Caspian Sea
Lemberg
Ekaterinoslav
Rostov
Nikolaev
Czernowitz
Odessa
Kherson
Sea of Azov
Krasnovodsk
RUMANIA
Crimea
Kerch
Kuban
CAUCASIA
Sevastopol
Bukharest
Constanza
Tiflis
Baku
BLACK SEA
Batum
GEORGIA
Kur
Danube
Varna
Kars
Erivan
Sofia
BULGARIA
Adrianople
Constantinople
Trebizond
Erzerum
ARMENIA
AZERBAIJAN
TURKEY
Scutari
Brusa
Gallipoli
ASIA MINOR
Aegean Sea
Smyrna
DODECANESE ISLANDS
CANDIA
CYPRUS
Port Said
EGYPT
Suez Canal
Chief Industrial Districts
Coalfields
The letters indicate the nature of the Chief Industries
C Cotton I Iron L Linen M Machinery S Silk W Wool
Agriculture and Stock-rearing
Fishing
Principal Railways:
Canals:
Steamship Lines:
Plebiscites:
International Territories:
40°

watches run by weights, sawmills driven by wind or water, an improved form of the windmill, and the useful though humble wheelbarrow. Manufacturing and transportation continued, however, to be carried on in much the same rude way as before the dawn of history.

The revolution in manufacturing began with the textile industry. Old-fashioned spinning formed a slow, laborious process. The wool, flax, or cotton, having been fastened to a stick called the distaff, was twisted by hand into yarn or thread and wound upon a spindle. The spinning wheel — long known in India and not unknown in Europe as early as the fourteenth century — afterwards came into general use. The spinner now no longer held the spindle in her hand, but set it upon a frame and connected it by a belt to the wheel, which, when revolved, turned the spindle. The subsequent addition of a treadle to move the wheel freed both hands of the spinner, so that she could twist two threads instead of one.

Old-fashioned spinning



A Spinning Wheel

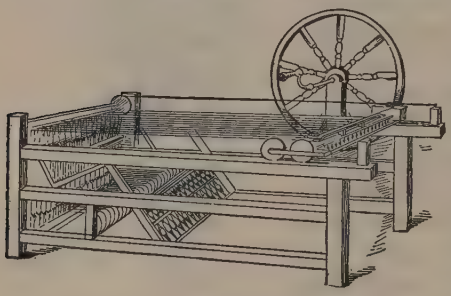
A band or cord (*E*) connected the large wheel with the small wheel (*D*). Another cord (*F*) connected the small wheel with the grooved pulley, or wharve, on the spindle (*C*). The revolutions of the large wheel turned the small wheel very rapidly, thus communicating motion to the spindle through the wharve.

Weaving was done on the hand loom, a wooden frame to which vertical threads (the warp) were attached. Horizontal threads (the weft or woof) were then inserted by means of an enlarged needle or shuttle. This primitive method, followed for thousands of years throughout the world, was first improved by the Englishman, John Kay, in 1733. His invention of the "flying shuttle" enabled the operator, by pulling a cord, to jerk the shuttle back and forth without the aid of an assistant and also much more rapidly than by hand. The device thus saved labor and doubled the speed of weaving.

Old-fashioned weaving

The demand for thread and yarn quickly outran the supply, for the spinners could not keep up with the weavers. Prizes were then offered for a better machine than the spinning wheel. At length, James Hargreaves, a poor workman of Lancashire in northern England, patented what he named the "spinning jenny," in compliment to his industrious wife. This machine carried a number of spindles turned by cords or belts from the same wheel, and operated by hand. It was a very simple affair, but it spun at first eight threads then sixteen, and within the inventor's own lifetime eighty, thus doing the work of many spinning wheels.

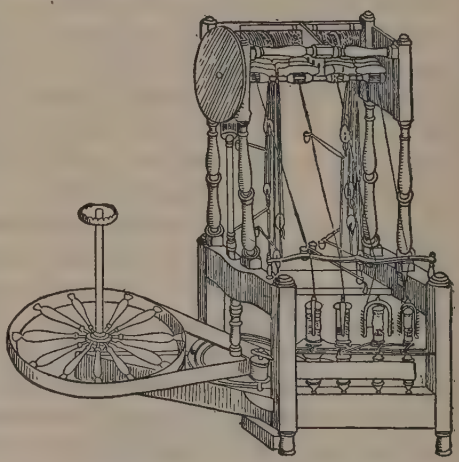
Hargreaves's "spinning jenny," 1770



HARGREAVES'S "SPINNING JENNY"

The thread spun by the "spinning jenny" was so frail that it could be used only for the weft. The spinners needed a machine to produce a hard, strong thread for the warp. Richard Arkwright met this need by the invention of the "water frame," so called because it was run by water power.* The machine contained two sets of rollers, one rotating at a higher speed than the

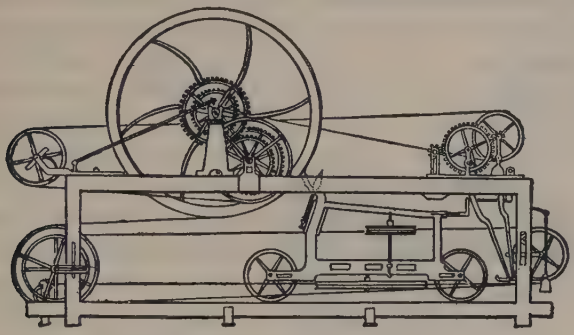
Arkwright's "water frame," 1769



ARKWRIGHT'S SPINNING MACHINE

Above, draft rollers; below, flyer spindles; at the left, wheel which propelled the entire mechanism.

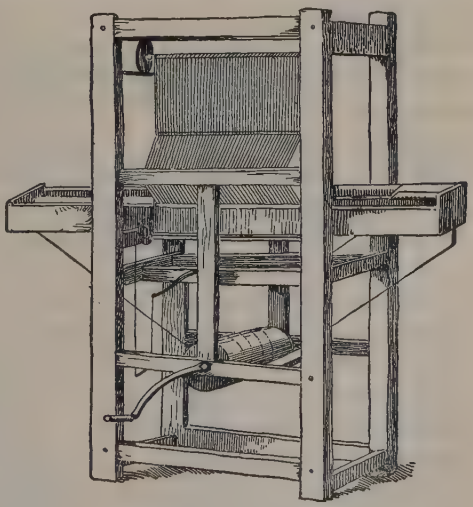
other. The cotton was drawn out by the rollers to the requisite fineness and was then twisted into thread by revolving spindles.



CROMPTON'S SPINNING "MULE"

Samuel Crompton soon combined the essential features of the Hargreaves and Arkwright machines into what became known as the "mule," because of its hybrid origin. When the mechanism was drawn out on its wheels one way, the strands of cotton were stretched and twisted into threads; when it was run back the other way, the spun threads were wound on spindles. The "mule" quite superseded Hargreaves's device. It

Crompton's "mule," 1779



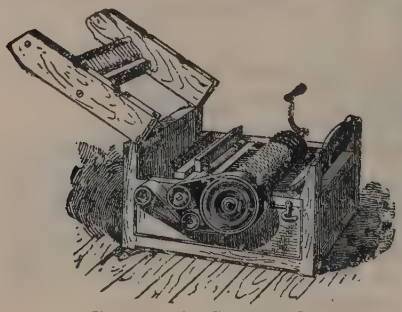
CARTWRIGHT'S FIRST POWER LOOM

The shuttle was propelled mechanically through the long, trough-shaped form extending out at the sides.

has been steadily improved, and at the present time may carry as many as two thousand spindles.

These three inventions again upset the balance in the textile industry, for now the spinners could produce more thread and yarn than the weavers could convert into cloth. The invention which revolutionized weaving was made by Edmund Cartwright, an English clergyman, who had never even seen a weaver at work. He constructed a loom with an automatic shuttle operated by water power. Improvements in this machine enable a single operator to produce more cloth than two hundred men could weave on the old-fashioned hand loom.

Cartwright's power loom, 1785

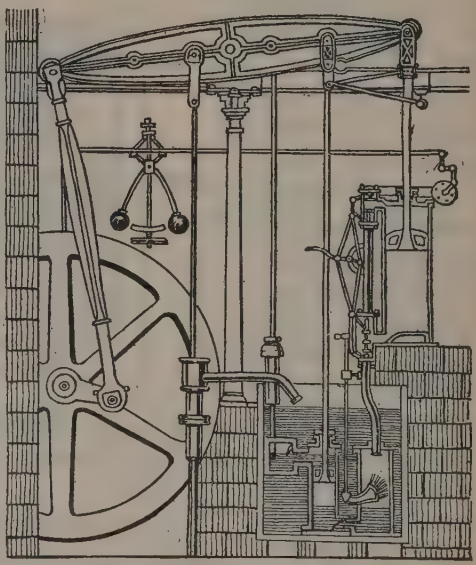


WHITNEY'S COTTON GIN

After the original model.

Both spinners and weavers required for the new machinery an abundant supply of raw material. They found it in cotton, which previously had been much less used than either wool or flax. Eli Whitney of Connecticut, while visiting a cotton plantation in Georgia, conceived the idea of what he called an

The cotton gin, 1794



WATT'S STEAM ENGINE, 1780

engine, or gin, for separating the seeds from the raw cotton more rapidly than negro slaves could do it by hand. His cotton gin, which was first patented in 1794, stimulated enormously American production of cotton for the mills of Great Britain.

What was to furnish motive power for the new machinery? Windmills were obviously too unreliable to be profitably used. Human hands had at first operated Hargreaves's "spinning jenny," and horses had worked Arkwright's original machine. Both inventors, however, soon turned to water power to drive the wheel, and numerous mills were built along the streams of northern England. Then came steam power. The expansive force of steam, though known in antiquity, was first put to practical service at the close of the seventeenth century, when steam pumps were invented for ridding mines of water. The earliest steam engine was a crude affair. After the steam entered the cylinder and pushed the piston upward, cold water had to be sprayed into the cylinder in order to condense the steam. This alternate heating and chilling consumed too much coal and too much time.

The original steam engine

James Watt, a Scotchman of mechanical genius, patented an improved steam pump in 1769, a year also memorable for Arkwright's first patent. Watt's engine bore the name of "Beelzebub," an appropriate name, for it breathed smoke and fire and otherwise acted in a devilish manner. The inventor himself was a poor man, but he entered into partnership with a wealthy manufacturer of Birmingham, who took an intelligent interest in the new machine and supplied the necessary funds for making it a commercial success. By providing a separate condenser into which the steam was led after it raised the piston and by enclosing the cylinder in an air-tight jacket to maintain its heat, Watt overcame the two greatest defects of the steam pump. He subsequently patented devices by which the back-and-forth motion of the piston could be made to drive a wheel connected by a belt with machinery, a throttle-valve to regulate the rate of admission of steam into the cylinder, a governor to control the speed of rotation, and

Watt's steam engine, 1769, 1785

an indicator to record steam pressure. These and other improvements opened up new fields of usefulness for steam power. In 1785, the year of Cartwright's invention, the Watt engine began to be set up in factories for the operation of spinning machines and looms. Steam power only slowly displaced water power, however, owing to the fact that much capital had already been invested in water-driven cotton mills.

The nineteenth century has been called the age of steam. The steamboat, the steam locomotive, and the steam printing press are some of the children of Watt's epochal invention. Toward the close of the century electricity began to compete with steam as a motive force, after the invention of that mystic marvel of science, the dynamo, and in the twentieth century the gas engine, as applied to automobiles, airplanes, tractors, and other machines, continued the Industrial Revolution.

The age of steam

The growing use of machinery called for an increased production of iron. Northern and north-central England contained vast deposits of iron ore, but until the latter part of the eighteenth century they had been little worked. Improved methods of smelting with coal and coke, by means of the blast furnace, were then adopted. Steel, a product of iron, whose toughness and hardness had been prized for ages, was not manufactured on a large scale until after 1850. Better methods of manufacture now enable the poorest iron to be converted into excellent steel, thus opening up extensive fields of low-grade ore in France, Germany, and other countries. Used in every form, from building-girders to watch springs, steel is now the mainstay of modern industry.

The age of iron and steel

The manufacture of iron and steel and the operation of the new machinery required an abundant, inexpensive fuel. Coal had long been burned in small quantities for domestic purposes; applied to the steam engine and the blast furnace it was to become an almost boundless source of power and heat. Various improvements in mining cheapened its production, one of the most notable being Sir Humphry Davy's use of wire gauze to protect miners' lamps

The age of coal

from the explosion of fire-damp. This simple invention, besides saving thousands of lives, enabled the most dangerous mines to be worked with comparative safety. Great Britain furnished nearly all the coal for manufacturing until the middle of the nineteenth century; later, much of the world's supply has come from the mines of France, Germany, and the United States.

Mineral oil, or petroleum, has become an industrial rival of coal, since the first oil well was sunk in Pennsylvania in 1859. There are now more than three hundred products of petroleum, the most important being kerosene for illumination, gasolene (petrol) for gas engines, and fuel oil for oil-burning ships and locomotives. The United States is still the chief producer of oil, but we now consume even more than we produce. Our national requirements in 1918 amounted to 413 million barrels, equal to the flow of water over Niagara Falls for three hours. Many new sources of supply will have to be opened up throughout the world, if the present consumption of petroleum in the United States, Great Britain, and other countries is to continue indefinitely.

The age of oil

170. Effects of the Great Inventions

The great inventions, besides hastening the transition from hand-labor to machine-labor, also did much to separate labor and capital. No such separation was possible in the Middle Ages. A master who belonged to a craft guild purchased his raw materials at the city market or at a fair, manufactured them in his own house, assisted by the members of his family and usually by a few journeymen and apprentices, and himself sold the finished article to the person who had ordered it. This guild system, as it is called, has not entirely disappeared. One may still have a pair of shoes made by a " custom " shoemaker or a suit of clothes made by a " custom " tailor.

Guild system

The growing exclusiveness of the craft guilds, toward the close of the medieval period,[1] prevented many apprentices and

[1] See pages 280–281.

journeymen from ever becoming masters. Consequently, workers often left the cities and settled in the country or in villages where there were no guild restrictions. The movement gave rise to the domestic system, as found, for example, in the British cotton industry. A middleman with some capital would purchase a supply of raw cotton and distribute it to the spinners and weavers to convert into cloth on their own spinning wheels and hand looms. They worked at home and usually eked out their wages by cultivating a small garden plot. Something akin to the domestic system still survives in the sweatshops of modern cities where clothing is made on " commission."

Domestic system

It is clear that under the domestic system the middleman provided the raw materials, took all the risks, and received all the profits. The workers, on the other hand, had to accept such wages and labor upon such conditions as he was willing to offer. The separation of labor and capital, which thus began under the domestic system, became complete under the factory system. Arkwright's, Crompton's, and Cartwright's machines were too expensive for a single family to own; too large and heavy for use in private houses; and they needed water power or steam power to operate them. The consequence was that the domestic laborer abandoned his household industry and went with hundreds of others to work in a mill or factory. The capitalist employer now not only provided the raw materials and disposed of the finished product, but he also owned the machinery and the workshop. The word " manufacturer " [1] no longer applied to the hand-worker, but to the person who employed others to work for him.

Factory system

The factory system introduced a minute division of labor into industry. Thus, there are forty operations involved in the manufacture of ready-made clothing; nearly one hundred in the manufacture of shoes; and over a thousand in the construction of a fine watch. Many men, working together, may turn out in a few minutes an article

Division of labor

[1] Latin *manu, facere,* to make by hand. Manufacture by machinery has been well-named *machinofacture.*

INDUSTRIAL
ENGLAND
IN THE
TWENTIETH CENTURY
Principal Manufacturing Districts are indicated by showing Important Industrial Centers having a population of 100,000 or over in 1911 —— •
Coal Fields
Densest Population in 1911
Densest Population in 1750
North Limit of
Scale of Miles
0 25 50 75 100
4° 2° 0°
56° 54° 52° 50°
SCOTLAND
Dundee
Glasgow
Clyde
Edinburgh
South Shields
Newcastle
Gateshead
Tyne
Sunderland
Wear
Middlesbrough
IRON
ISLE OF MAN
NORTH SEA
IRISH SEA
Preston
Ribble
Wharfe
Aire
Leeds
Halifax
Hull
Humber
COTTONS
Blackburn
WOOLLENS
Bolton
Oldham
MACHINERY
Manchester
HARDWARE
Liverpool
Birkenhead
Salford
Stockport
Sheffield
POTTERY
Stoke-on-Trent
Nottingham
Derby
The Wash
WALES
Cardigan Bay
HARDWARE
Leicester
Norwich
Birmingham
ENGLAND
Coventry
IRON
Severn
Swansea
Cardiff
Bristol
Bristol Channel
London
West Ham
East Ham
Thames
Croydon
Southampton
Brighton
Portsmouth
Plymouth
ENGLISH CHANNEL
THE M.-N. WORKS, BUFFALO, N.Y.
4° Longitude West 2° from Greenwich 0°

which one man in former times required weeks or months to produce. The division of labor, besides saving time, also increased output. A single instance will show this. Adam Smith, writing in 1776, contrasted the one pin which an artisan might make in a day, if he did all the work himself, with the five thousand pins which he could produce each day in a factory. Now, however, when pins are made by automatic machinery, the average daily output for each operative totals over a million.

Machinery, the factory system, and the division of labor made it possible to manufacture on a large scale and in enormous quantities for world-wide markets. For example, the value of British cotton goods rose from one million dollars in 1760 to six hundred times that amount in 1910. Similar increases were registered in other textile manufactures and in the iron industry of Great Britain.

Large-scale production

The Industrial Revolution soon changed the face of Great Britain. Instead of farms, hamlets, and an occasional small town, appeared great cities crowded with workers who had left their rural homes to seek employment in factories. The movement of population was especially toward the northern and northwestern counties, where there were many streams to furnish water power and abundant supplies of coal and iron. Manchester, Leeds, Sheffield, and Birmingham sprang up as centers for the manufacture of textiles and hardware, while Liverpool, little more than a village at the opening of the nineteenth century, became a commercial metropolis. Aside from London, it is northern England and southern Scotland which to-day form the chief seat of British trade and industry.[1]

Industrial Great Britain

The Industrial Revolution began later on the Continent than in Great Britain, partly because of the opposition of the guilds, which feared that the new machinery would deprive workers of employment; partly because Continental manufacturers showed less enterprise than their British rivals; but chiefly because the revolutionary and Napoleonic wars left France and Germany

Primacy of Great Britain in industry

[1] See page 419.

too exhausted to compete in manufacturing. Great Britain thus became by 1815 the world's workshop and the richest of European nations. It was only toward the close of the nineteenth century that her industrial primacy began to be seriously threatened by Germany and the United States.

171. Improvements in Transportation

Civilized man until the Industrial Revolution continued to use the conveyances which had been invented by uncivilized man in prehistoric times. Travel and transport were still on horseback, or in litters, wheeled carts, rowboats, and sailboats. Various improvements produced the sedan chair, the stagecoach, and large ocean-going ships, without, however, finding any substitutes for muscles or wind as the motive power. **Old-fashioned conveyances**

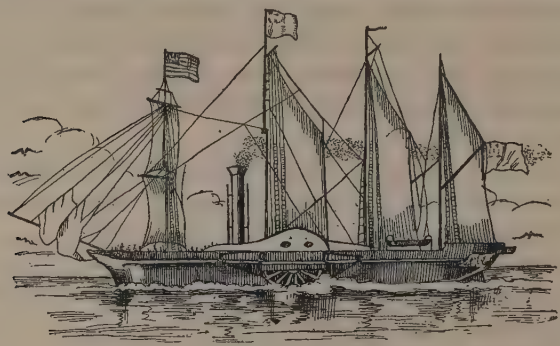
The roads in western Europe scarcely deserved that name; they were little more than track ways, either deep with mud or dusty and full of ruts. Passengers in stagecoaches seldom made more than fifty miles a day, while heavy goods had to be moved on pack horses. Conditions in Great Britain improved during the latter part of the eighteenth century, for the enormous quantity of goods produced by the new machinery increased the need for cheap and rapid transport. The turnpike system, allowing tolls to be charged for the use of roads, encouraged the investment of capital by private companies in these undertakings; and it was not long before Telford, Macadam, and other engineers covered the country with well-bottomed, well-drained, and well-surfaced highways. The splendid highways which attract the attention **Roads**

An Eighteenth-century Stagecoach
After an old print.

of Americans on the Continent were all built in the nineteenth century, chiefly before the era of railroads.

Canals

The expense of transportation by road led people in antiquity and the Middle Ages to send their goods by river routes, whenever possible. Canal-building in Europe began toward the close of the medieval period, especially after the invention of locks for controlling the flow and level of the water. The great era of the canal was between 1775 and 1850, not only in Great Britain and on the Continent, but also in the United States. Canals relieved the highways

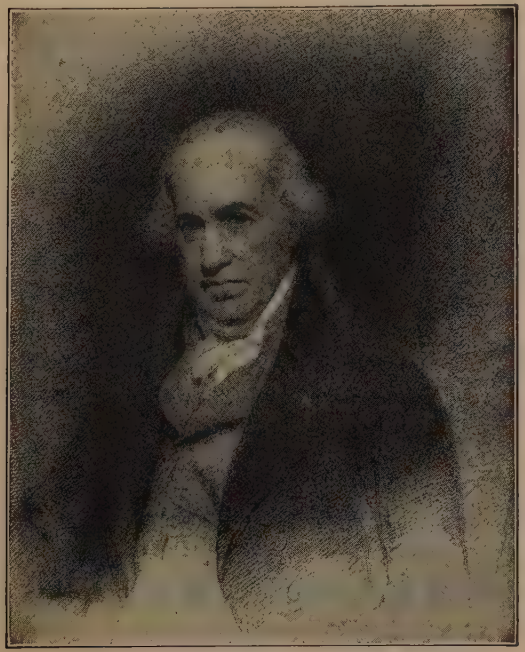


THE "GREAT WESTERN"

of a large part of the growing traffic, but the usefulness of both declined after the introduction of railroads. Ship canals, however, have begun to be constructed within recent years, as a result of the general adoption of steam navigation on the ocean.

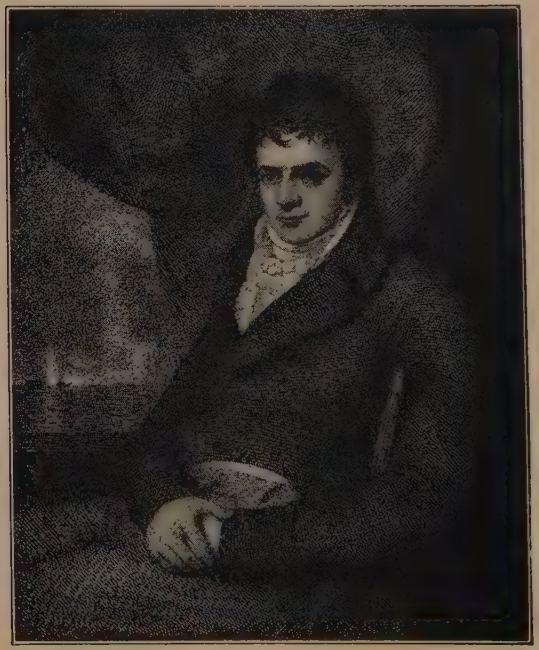
The steamboat

The earliest successful steamboat appears to have been a tug built in Scotland for towing canal boats. Robert Fulton, an American engineer who had lived in England and France, adapted the steamboat to river navigation. His side-wheeler, the *Clermont*, equipped with a Watt engine, began in 1807 to make regular trips on the Hudson between New York and Albany. Twelve years later an American vessel, provided with both sails and a steam engine, crossed the Atlantic in twenty-nine days. The first ship to cross without using sails or recoaling on the way was the *Great Western*, in 1838. The trip took her fifteen days.



JAMES WATT

After the painting by Sir William Beechey.



ROBERT FULTON

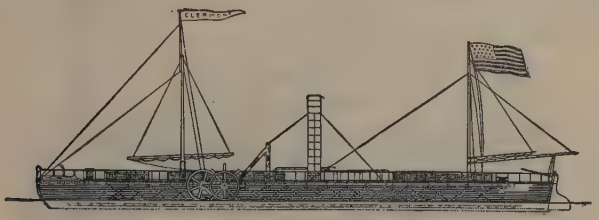
After the painting by Benjamin West.

EARLY PASSENGER TRAINS

Views on the Liverpool and Manchester Railway in 1831–32. The upper picture shows a train with first-class carriages and the mails; the lower picture shows second and third-class carriages.

Various improvements since the middle of the nineteenth century added greatly to the efficiency of ocean steamers. Iron, and later steel, replaced wood in their construction, with a resulting gain in strength and buoyancy. Screw propellers were substituted for clumsy paddle wheels, and turbine engines, which apply the energy of

Steam navigation



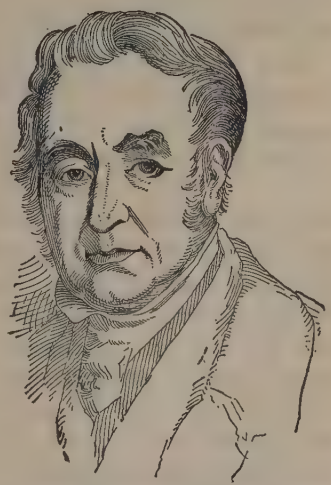
THE "CLERMONT," 1807

A reconstruction prepared by the Hudson-Fulton Celebration Committee, 1907.

a jet of steam to secure the rotation of a shaft, were introduced. The size of steamers, also, has so increased that the *Great Western*, a boat of 1378 tons and 212 feet in length, would appear a pygmy by the side of the fifty-thousand ton "leviathans" which now cross the Atlantic in less than six days.

The steam locomotive

Wooden or iron rails had long been used in mines and quarries to enable horses to draw heavy loads with ease, and as early as 1803 a horse-car line was opened to general traffic in the suburbs of London. George Stephenson, who profited by the experiments of other inventors, produced in 1814 a successful locomotive for hauling coal from the mine to tide-water. He improved his model and eleven years later secured its adoption



GEORGE STEPHENSON

on the Stockton and Darlington Railway, the first line over which passengers and freight were carried by steam power. Stephenson also built the Liverpool and Manchester Railway,

THE "ROCKET," 1830

Built by Stephenson to compete in a trial of locomotive engines for the Liverpool and Manchester Railway. The greatest speed it attained in the trial was 29 miles an hour, but some years later it ran at the rate of 53 miles an hour. The total weight of the engine and tender was only about 7½ tons.

which was opened in 1830 and on which his famous engine, the *Rocket*, made its maiden trip.

Railroad transportation

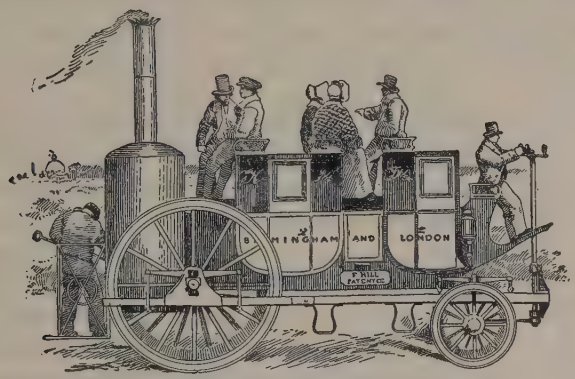
Many technical improvements — the increased size of locomotives and cars, air brakes, and the use of steel rails in place of iron rails which supported only light loads and wore out rapidly — have extended the usefulness of the railroad far beyond the dreams of its earlier promoters. The greatest development of railroad transportation came in the latter part of the nineteenth century, with the construction of great "trunk" lines and branches ("feeders") radiating into the remotest districts. The year 1869 saw the first transcontinental line in the United States (the Union Pacific and Central Pacific); 1900, the Trans-Siberian line; and 1910 the Trans-Andean line. Western Europe and the United States are now covered with a network of railroads, and these are being extended rapidly to all civilized and even semi-civilized lands.

Modern electric traction dates from the early 'eighties of the last century, when the overhead trolley began to supplant horse cars and cable cars in cities. The development of the electric locomotive promises to bring about a partial substitution of electricity for steam on railroads through tunnels and over heavy grades.

Electric traction

The earliest application of steam power to transportation was neither the railway nor the steam boat but the road engine. As far back as 1801 an English inventor constructed a steam carriage for passengers. Repeated efforts were made during the next forty years to popularize the new mode of travel in England, but bad roads

The automobile



A Precursor of the Automobile

An old picture of F. Hill's steam carriage running between London and Birmingham, 1839–1843.

and an unsympathetic public discouraged inventors. The automobile had to wait for the gas or "internal combustion" engine (as patented in the last decade of the nineteenth century) to become a commercial success. The United States far surpasses any other country in the wide use of the automobile.

The gas engine is likewise responsible for the airplane. Its history illustrates the truth that great inventions do not spring fully developed from the brain of one man, but, on the con-

trary, represent the long and patient experimentation of many men. An American scientist, S. P. Langley, who himself owed much to the work of others, produced in 1903 a heavier-than-air machine which was driven by steam. The accidents attending its first trials caused it to be abandoned. Eleven years later the same machine was successfully flown by Mr. G. H. Curtiss, thus showing that Langley had solved the problem of mechanical flight. The Wright Brothers followed where Langley had led the way, and in 1908 they made their first public flights, using an airplane fitted with a gas engine. As every one knows, the exigencies of the World War resulted in an extraordinarily rapid development of the airplane. Its powers were most strikingly revealed by two British aviators, Alcock and Brown, who in June, 1919, made a non-stop flight across the Atlantic from Newfoundland to Ireland, covering the distance in less than sixteen hours. Since then there have been air races across the United States, and in 1924 the air-flight around the globe of three American aviators, Lieutenants Smith, Wade, and Nelson.

The airplane

Two Frenchmen, the Montgolfier Brothers, invented the balloon in the latter part of the eighteenth century. Experiments in balloon navigation continued throughout the nineteenth century, and finally Count Zeppelin, an officer in the German army, produced an airship which consisted, not of one balloon, but of a row of bags enclosed in an enormous shell of aluminium trellis work. It carried two cars, each provided with a gas motor. The trial of this Zeppelin in 1900 showed how nearly the problem of a dirigible balloon had been solved. Other successful airships were soon constructed in France and England. The World War stimulated their development, as was the case with the airplane. To the British dirigible, the *R–34*, belongs the renown of having been the first to cross the Atlantic (July 2–6, 1919). The *R–34* carried a crew and passengers from Scotland to Long Island, covering the distance of 3200 miles in a trifle more than 108 hours. The return trip took only three days.

The airship

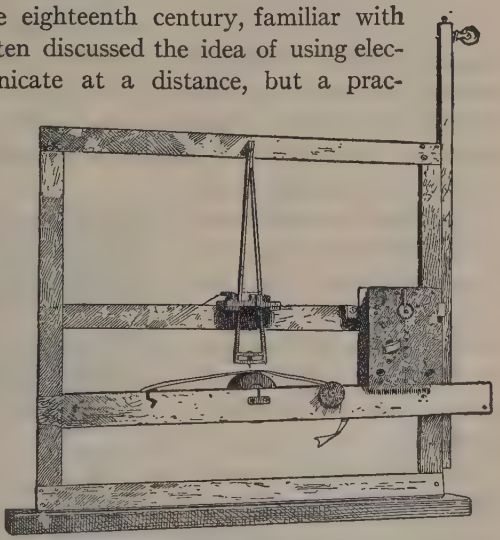
As far back as the Revolutionary War, an American inventor constructed a tiny submarine and tried, without success, to sink a British warship. Robert Fulton, encouraged by Napoleon, made several submarines. In one of them he descended to a depth of twenty-five feet, remained below for four hours, and succeeded in blowing up a small vessel with a torpedo. Under-water boats, propelled by steam power, were used by the Confederates in the Civil War. From about this time inventors in several countries worked on the problem of the submarine. One of the most successful was an Irish-American, J. P. Holland, who sold the boat named after him to the United States in 1898. The improvement of the submarine from this time is a familiar story. Thus, in the course of about a century, man has completed the conquest of land and air and sea.

The submarine

172. Improved Communications

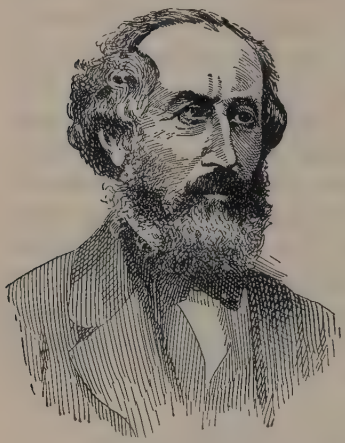
Scientists of the eighteenth century, familiar with the Leyden jar, often discussed the idea of using electricity to communicate at a distance, but a practicable apparatus for converting the electric current into intelligible signs did not appear until the 'thirties of the nineteenth century. Samuel F. B. Morse, an American, deserves perhaps the greatest credit for the invention. He also devised the "Morse alphabet." The telegraph found an immediate application on the railroads and

The telegraph



Morse's First Telegraph Instrument (1837)
In the U. S. National Museum, Washington.

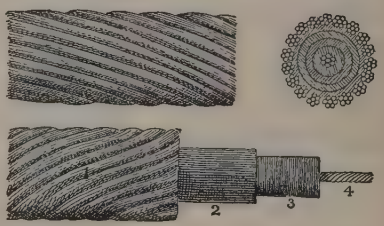
in the transmission of government messages. Later, it made its way into the business world.



Cyrus W. Field

Submarine cables

Hardly any one at first believed that a telegraph line could be carried across the ocean. Experiments soon showed, however, that wire cords, protected by wrappers of guttapercha, would conduct the electric current under water. The first cable was laid from Dover to Calais in 1851. A group of American promoters, including Cyrus W. Field, then took up the project of an Atlantic cable which should "moor the new world alongside the old." Discouraging failures marked the enterprise. The first cables were broken by the ocean, and the line which was finally laid in 1858 soon became useless, owing to the failure of its electrical insulation. After the Civil War Field renewed his efforts, and in 1866 a cable two thousand miles long was successfully laid and communication perfected. No less than fourteen lines now stretch across the Atlantic, while all the other oceans have been electrically bridged.



The Original Atlantic Cable

The illustration shows seven copper wires (4) forming a conductor; a wrapping of thread (3) soaked in pitch; several layers of gutta percha (2); and the covering of twisted wires (1).

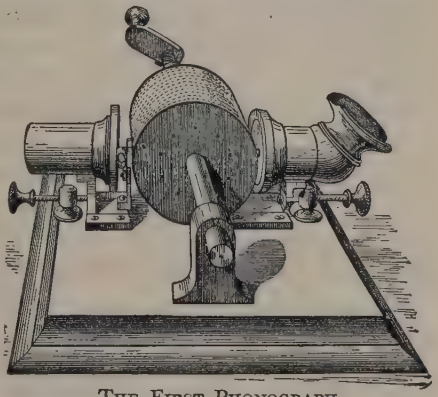
The telephone

Experimentation with rude forms of the telephone began in the same decade which produced the telegraph. Little progress took place until 1875, when Alexander Graham Bell, a native of Edinburgh but

later a resident of Boston, patented his first instrument. Many improvements have since been made in it by Bell himself, Edison, and others.

Wireless telegraphy and telephony

The invention of wireless telegraphy by the Italian, Guglielmo Marconi, may be said to date from 1899, when wireless messages were sent between France and England across the Channel. A trans-Atlantic service by "wireless" began eight years later, and since then the range of Marconi's apparatus has been greatly extended. The still more recent introduction of wireless telephony promises to work another revolution in long-distance communication. Already speech without wires is possible between Paris and New York.



THE FIRST PHONOGRAPH
As invented by Thomas A. Edison in 1877.

A regular postal service under government management existed in Europe as early as the seventeenth century, but it was slow, expensive, and little used. Stamps were unknown, prepayment of postage was considered an insult, and rates increased according to distance. The modern postal service began in Great Britain in 1840, with the adoption of a uniform charge irrespective of distance (penny postage), prepayment, and the use of stamps. These reforms soon spread to other countries and everywhere resulted in greatly increased use of the mails. The International Postal Union (1874), with a central office at Berne, Switzerland, makes arrangements for common rates of foreign postage and for coöperation in carrying the mails from country to

The postal service

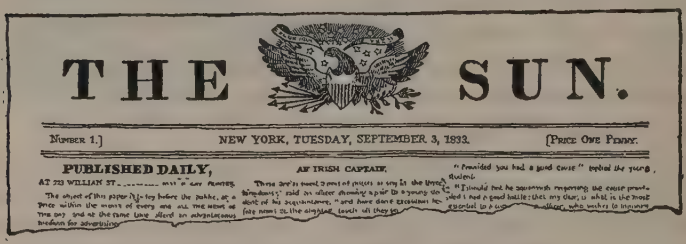
FIRST ADHESIVE PENNY POSTAGE STAMP

The design, a conventionalized head of Queen Victoria, was used without change from 1840 to 1870.

country. The development of aviation has led some governments to establish an aërial post for first-class matter. The first instance of the sort in the United States is the service established in 1918 between Washington and New York.

Weekly and daily newspapers also began to appear in the seventeenth century, but they were luxuries reserved for subscribers of the middle and upper classes. The cheap newspaper for the masses is a product of the Industrial Revolution. The London *Times* installed the first steam printing press in 1814. A paper-making machine,

Newspapers



THE SUN.

NUMBER 1.] NEW YORK, TUESDAY, SEPTEMBER 3, 1833. [PRICE ONE PENNY.

PUBLISHED DAILY, AT AN IRISH CAPTAIN.

AT 273 WILLIAM ST.

THE FIRST COPY OF THE NEW YORK "SUN"

The New York *Sun*, established in 1833, was the first penny newspaper in the United States.

which produced wide sheets of unlimited length, came into use soon after. To these inventions must be added the linotype machine. In newspaper offices, where rapid composition is necessary, it has largely superseded hand-work in setting type. European governments for a long time endeavored to keep newspapers from reaching the common people, first by stamp duties and then by taxes on paper and advertisements. A cheap press was feared as a medium of democratic ideas which would undermine the authority of the upper classes. This system of "taxing knowledge" has disappeared in all progressive countries. The circulation of dailies and weeklies, instead of being restricted, is now fostered by the grant of low postal rates to newspapers.

Many inventions in communication — the instantaneous camera, the cinematograph or motion picture, the phonograph,

the automatic piano — are so new that we have scarcely as yet begun to realize their possibilities. Properly directed, they will furnish the common people in civilized countries with an education in art, music, and the drama which in former days could be secured only by persons of wealth and leisure. Their great service promises to be that of democratizing culture, as cheap newspapers and books have democratized knowledge.

The new communication

173. Modern Industrialism

The most important consequence of the Industrial Revolution is the increased population of the leading nations. The figures for Europe show an increase from about 175,000,000 to over 400,000,000 during the nineteenth century, and for the United States from about 5,000,000 in 1800 to nearly 92,000,000 in 1910. The number of people who can be supported in a given region now depends less on the food which they raise, than on their production of raw materials and manufactured goods to exchange for food. Thus Belgium and Great Britain, with only a limited agriculture, support more inhabitants to the square mile than any other countries; while the population of such industrial states as New York, Pennsylvania, and Massachusetts far exceeds that of the agricultural commonwealths of the Middle West. There are, of course, certain agricultural countries (Egypt, the Ganges valley and delta in India, part of China) where the exceptionally rich soil, coupled with a very low standard of living on the part of the inhabitants, has also made possible an enormous growth of population within the last century. Little of the world is now entirely uninhabited; still less is permanently uninhabitable and unlikely to receive a considerable population in the future. Even sandy and alkaline deserts can be rendered productive through irrigation, while vast tracts of fertile territory, in both the temperate and tropical zones, can support many more people than at present. Europe as a whole has 106 inhabitants to the square mile, Asia 58, Africa 11, America 9, and Oceania only 2.

Increase of population

The increased population of the leading industrial nations has been largely concentrated in cities. The rise of the factory system and the improvement of facilities for travel and transportation soon led to an unprecedented urban development. Old cities grew with marvelous rapidity, while former villages and towns became transformed into new cities. At the opening of the nineteenth century western Europe was still mainly rural, as eastern Europe is to-day. Europe, as a whole, had fourteen cities of more than one hundred thousand inhabitants in 1800; in 1900 it had one hundred and forty such cities. London, which in 1800 contained under a million inhabitants, now counts seven millions within its borders; Paris contains five times as many people as shortly before the French Revolution; and Berlin has grown ten-fold since the reign of Frederick the Great. The development of provincial centers within the past century has been equally remarkable. Turning to the United States, it is enough to contrast the six cities of over eight thousand inhabitants in 1800 with the six hundred cities which, according to the census of 1910, had a population of ten thousand or more. About half of the American people are now city dwellers.

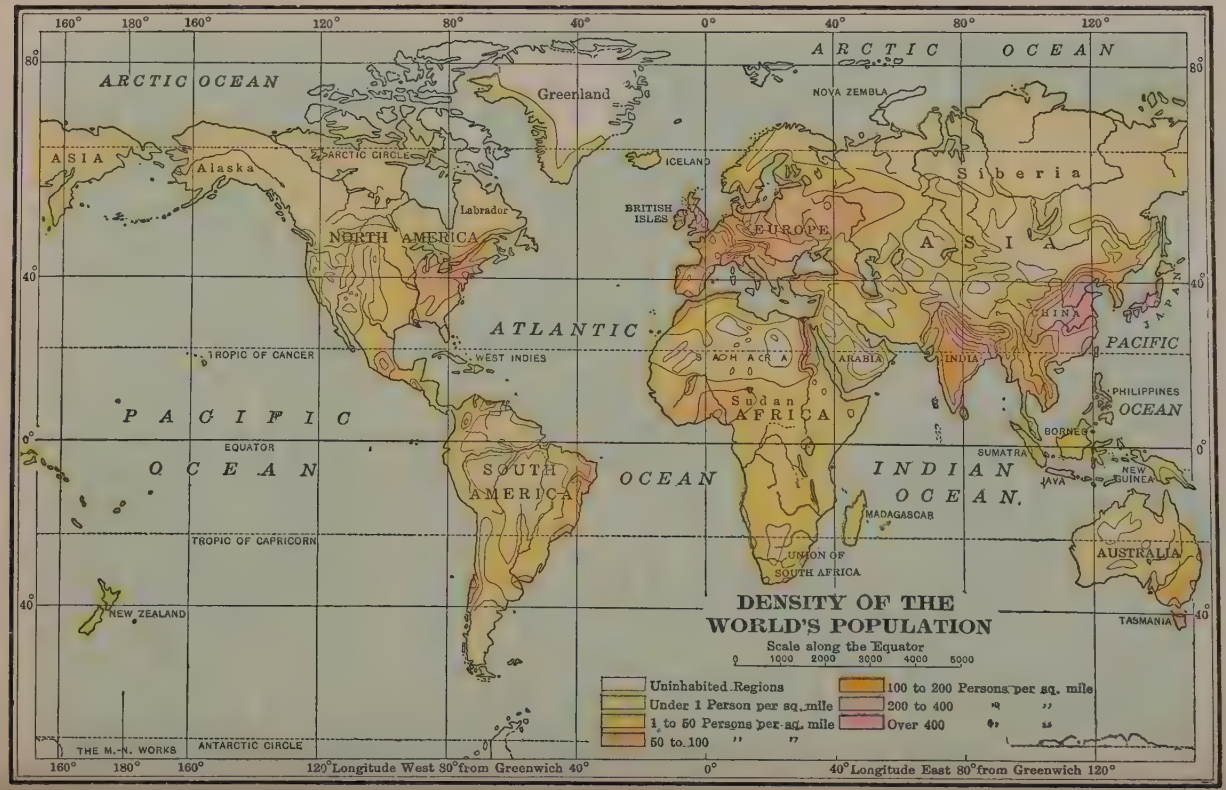
Concentration of population

The Industrial Revolution is further chiefly responsible for the enormous emigration of Europeans during the past hundred years to lands beyond the seas. The United States received over 27,000,000 immigrants between 1800 and 1910, nearly all coming from Europe. Millions more went to the British colonies and to South America. The migration movement has been most marked since the middle of the nineteenth century, when the improvements in steam navigation so greatly multiplied and cheapened facilities for travel on the ocean.

Emigration

The increased wealth of the leading nations is another consequence of the Industrial Revolution. Modern machines are really non-human slaves working without wages and without fatigue. One writer estimates that in the textile industries alone they accomplish what it would

Increase of wealth


ARCTIC OCEAN
Greenland
NOVA ZEMBLA
ARCTIC OCEAN
ASIA
Alaska
ARCTIC CIRCLE
ICELAND
Siberia
Labrador
BRITISH ISLES
NORTH AMERICA
EUROPE
ASIA
ATLANTIC
CHINA
JAPAN
PACIFIC
TROPIC OF CANCER
WEST INDIES
SAHARA
ARABIA
INDIA
PHILIPPINES
Sudan
AFRICA
OCEAN
PACIFIC
BORNEO
EQUATOR
SUMATRA
OCEAN
SOUTH AMERICA
INDIAN OCEAN.
NEW GUINEA
JAVA
MADAGASCAR
TROPIC OF CAPRICORN
UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA
AUSTRALIA
NEW ZEALAND
TASMANIA
THE M.-N. WORKS
ANTARCTIC CIRCLE
DENSITY OF THE WORLD'S POPULATION
Scale along the Equator
0 1000 2000 3000 4000 5000
Uninhabited Regions
Under 1 Person per sq. mile
1 to 50 Persons per sq. mile
50 to 100 " "
100 to 200 Persons per sq. mile
200 to 400 " "
Over 400 " "
160° 180° 160° 120° Longitude West 80° from Greenwich 40°
0°
40° Longitude East 80° from Greenwich 120°

require fifty billion men and women to do without them. Statistics of government revenues and expenditures, imports and exports, income tax returns, deposits in savings banks, and assets of life insurance companies show how wealth has multiplied, especially within recent years. Other indications are furnished by the increase in the annual production of coal, in the amount of iron ore mined annually, in railway construction, and in the tonnage of merchant vessels. The enormous public loans, successfully floated during the World War, also reveal the resources now at the command of industrial peoples.

Notwithstanding the creation of huge individual fortunes as the result of the Industrial Revolution, the general standard of living has been raised by the addition of innumerable things — sugar, coffee, linen, cotton goods, glass, chinaware, wall paper, ready-made clothing, books, newspapers, pictures — which were once enjoyed only by a few wealthy persons. If the rich are undoubtedly getting richer, the poor are not getting poorer in western Europe and the United States. As a matter of fact, poverty is most acute in such thickly populated countries as Russia, India, and China, which modern industrialism has only begun to penetrate.

Diffusion of wealth

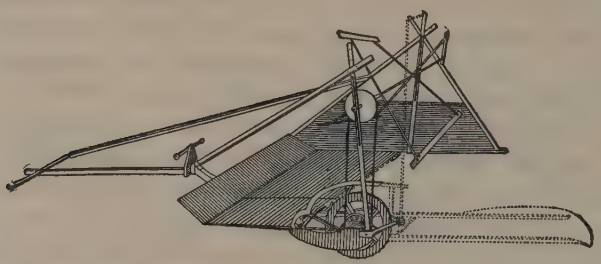
The map of the occupations of mankind affords a summary view of the progress of the Industrial Revolution throughout the world. As far as Europe is concerned, we see that the western part of the continent has been pretty thoroughly industrialized, except for such areas as western Ireland, northern Scotland, central Spain, southern Italy, the Alpine region, and the Scandinavian peninsula. The industrial development of Russia is limited to the western and southern parts of the country; that of the Balkan states is negligible. Large and growing manufacturing districts exist in India, China, Japan, on the eastern coast of Australia, and in New Zealand. The manufactures of Africa and South America are too slight for representation on a small-scale map. In North America both Mexico and Canada have begun to

Industrialization

share with the United States in the benefits of the Industrial Revolution.

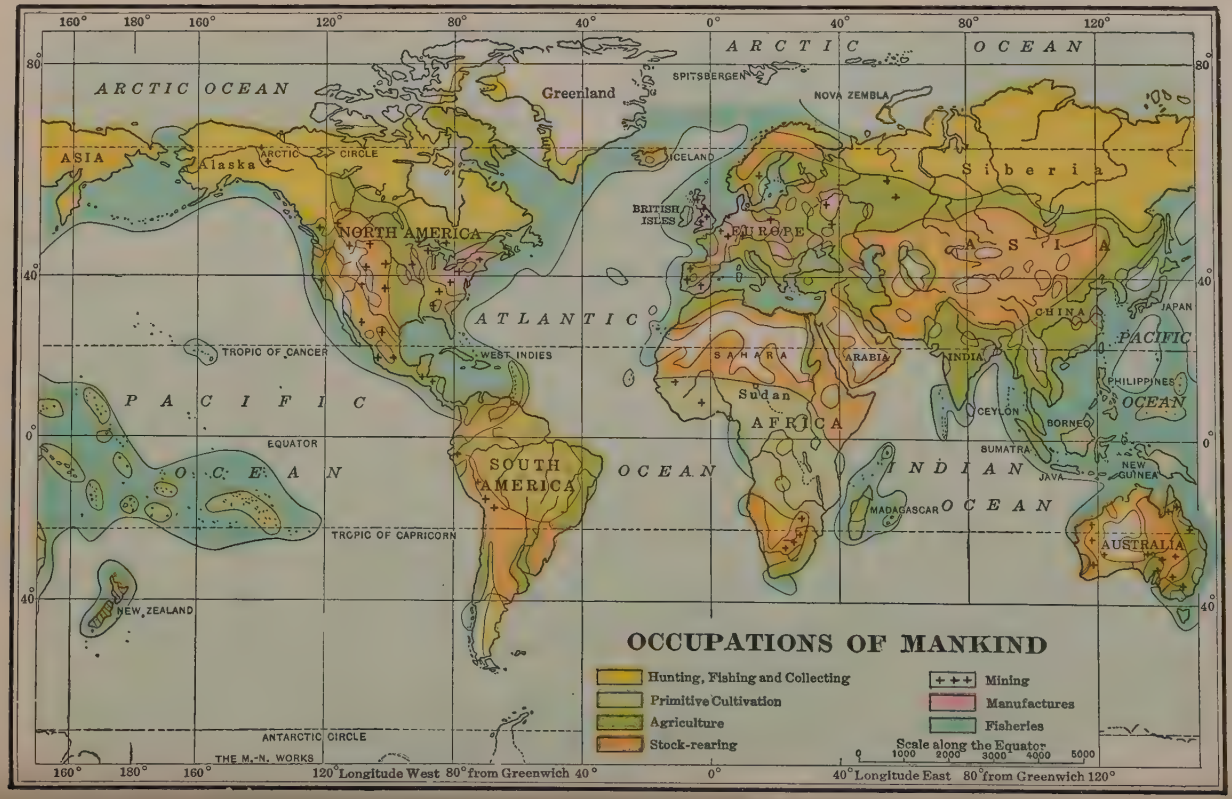
Studies

1. Using material in encyclopedias, prepare reports for class presentation upon the following inventions and discoveries: (*a*) the bicycle; (*b*) the typewriter; (*c*) lucifer matches; (*d*) illuminating gas; (*e*) electric lighting; (*f*) dynamite; and (*g*) photography. 2. For what are the following persons famous: Arkwright; Cartwright; Watt; Stephenson; Whitney; Fulton; Howe; Morse; Bell; Langley; and Marconi? 3. Explain what is meant by the following: (*a*) capital; (*b*) capitalism; (*c*) domestic system; (*d*) factory system; and (*e*) division of labor. 4. "Since the middle of the eighteenth century changes have come to pass which have made civilized man rather nature's conqueror than its drudge and prey." Comment on this statement. 5. What is the difference between a tool and a machine? 6. Name in order the early inventions in the textile industry and explain the changes which each one produced. 7. Describe the construction and operation of (*a*) the "spinning jenny"; (*b*) the "mule"; and (*c*) the "flying shuttle." 8. Has division of labor any disadvantages from the point of view of the worker? 9. What are Telford blocks? What is a macadamized road? 10. Enumerate some of the social and economic consequences of the wide use of the automobile in the United States. 11. "Of all inventions, the alphabet and the printing press alone excepted, those inventions which abridge distance have done most for the civilization of our species." Comment on this statement. 12. "Next to steam-locomotion, the telegraph is probably the most powerful mechanical agent invented for promoting the unification of the world." Comment on this statement. 13. On the map facing page 616, indicate the principal uninhabited regions of the globe. 14. On the map facing this page locate the chief mining areas of the world.



McCormick Reaper, 1834

The reaper with a vibrating cutter, as first patented by the inventor.


ARCTIC OCEAN
Greenland
SPITSBERGEN
NOVA ZEMBLA
ASIA
Alaska
ARCTIC CIRCLE
ICELAND
Siberia
BRITISH ISLES
EUROPE
NORTH AMERICA
ATLANTIC
CHINA
JAPAN
PACIFIC
OCEAN
TROPIC OF CANCER
WEST INDIES
SAHARA
ARABIA
INDIA
PHILIPPINES
Sudan
AFRICA
CEYLON
BORNEO
EQUATOR
SOUTH AMERICA
BUMATRA
JAVA
NEW GUINEA
INDIAN OCEAN
MADAGASCAR
TROPIC OF CAPRICORN
AUSTRALIA
NEW ZEALAND
ANTARCTIC CIRCLE
THE M.-N. WORKS
OCCUPATIONS OF MANKIND
Hunting, Fishing and Collecting
Primitive Cultivation
Agriculture
Stock-rearing
Mining
Manufactures
Fisheries
Scale along the Equator
0 1000 2000 3000 4000 5000
160° 180° 160° 120° 80° 40° 0° 40° 80° 120°
120° Longitude West 80° from Greenwich 40° 0° 40° Longitude East 80° from Greenwich 120°

CHAPTER XXIV

ECONOMIC AND SOCIAL PROGRESS[1]

174. Commerce

A TREMENDOUS expansion of commerce followed the improvements in transportation and communication. Macadamized roads, inland and ship canals, ocean steamships, and railroads reduced freight rates to a mere fraction of those once charged, while the telegraph, telephone, cheap postage, and newspapers made possible the rapid spread of information relating to crops and markets. It is estimated that the commerce of the world (including even backward countries) increased over twelve hundred per cent in the nineteenth century. Rapid as was the growth of the world's population during this period, commerce grew much faster; so that the average share of each human being in international trade amounted in 1900 to a sum six times that in 1800. During the first two decades of the twentieth century commercial expansion has been on a still more colossal scale.

Commercial expansion

Great Britain has long stood first among commercial countries. This is not surprising, in view of the fact that the Industrial Revolution began in Great Britain and that for many years she alone had large quantities of manufactured goods for export. Great Britain's success as a colonial power likewise fostered her commerce; the bulk of the trade of British colonies and dependencies is with the mother country. The British Empire, as a whole, controls a half of the gold, a third of the wool, a third of the coal, a fourth of the cotton, a fifth of the wheat, and a sixth of the pig iron annually produced throughout the world. It should be noted, also, that the

British commerce

[1] Webster, *Historical Source Book*, No. 24, "Communist Manifesto, 1848"; No. 25, "Declaration of Paris, 1856."

maritime supremacy of Great Britain has protected her seaborne trade in time of war, besides furnishing ample facilities in ships, docks, and sailors for trade at all times. Great Britain imports most of her foodstuffs and raw materials and exports chiefly manufactures, including textiles (cottons, woolens, linens), machinery, leather goods, chemicals, and pottery.

German commerce

The three-fold increase of Germany's foreign trade between 1871 and 1914 was part and parcel of the astounding industrial development which followed her unification. Germany on the eve of the World War ranked next to Great Britain among commercial nations. German imports were mostly foodstuffs to supply the rapidly growing population and raw materials for the expanding factories of the empire. The exports were mainly manufactures, coal, and beet sugar.

French commerce

France in 1914 stood third among European countries in volume of foreign trade. The French people excel in the creation of such artistic luxuries as millinery, laces, gloves, perfumes, and fine china, and these, together with silks and wines, comprise the bulk of their exports. The low, flat coast and few harbors of France have not encouraged the growth of a merchant marine. The French are obliged to depend largely upon the British, Norwegians, and other neighbors for shipping.

Commerce of the United States

The foreign trade of the United States during the nineteenth century remained small in proportion to the wealth and population of the country. So great and so varied were the resources of the United States that the American people could obtain by internal trade nearly everything they needed. Were our commerce interrupted, we should lack coffee, tea, sugar, and tropical fruits, but neither the necessaries of life nor the raw materials for our principal industries. The United States is more nearly independent, industrially, than any other leading country. Nevertheless, as the American people approach economic maturity, commerce becomes increasingly important as supplying a foreign market for the surplus products of our mines,

farms, and factories. The growth of American commerce has therefore been exceptionally rapid within recent decades, especially the increase in the exports of manufactures. Before 1914 only 10 per cent of our commerce was carried under our own flag, Great Britain, Germany, and other European countries supplying ships for all the rest. The recent development of American shipping to repair the losses wrought by the German submarine campaign is one of the most significant economic consequences of the World War.

175. Commercial Organization

The organization of commerce shows wonderful changes since the Middle Ages. There is now so steady a flow of commodities from producers through wholesalers and retailers to consumers that the old system of weekly markets and annual fairs is all but obsolete. Distinctively modern are produce exchanges for trade in the great staples (wheat, cotton, wool, sugar, etc.) and stock exchanges for buying and selling the stocks and bonds of corporations. Speculation on the exchanges confers a benefit upon commerce by safeguarding producers against the risks of sharp fluctuations in prices. When, however, it results in an artificial scarcity of commodities or securities through " corners " and " squeezes," it becomes an economic evil. The difficulty in practice is to draw the line between legitimate speculation and simple gambling.

Exchanges

The system of insurance is altogether an economic benefit, in view of the risks involved in most commercial undertakings. For a small payment the farmer insures his growing crop against hail or windstorm; the merchant, his stock against fire; the shipowner, his vessel against loss at sea. Marine insurance arose in medieval Italy, but for centuries it has centered at Lloyds in London.[1] The first fire insurance

Insurance companies

[1] Lloyd's was originally a coffee house of seventeenth-century London, where shipowners and insurance brokers gathered for business or gossip. The name now applies to an association which not only writes marine insurance, but also collects and publishes information with respect to shipping throughout the world.

policies were written in London after the Great Fire in the reign of Charles II. Other forms of business insurance originated much more recently. The present tendency seems to be to insure against every possible contingency which can be foreseen.

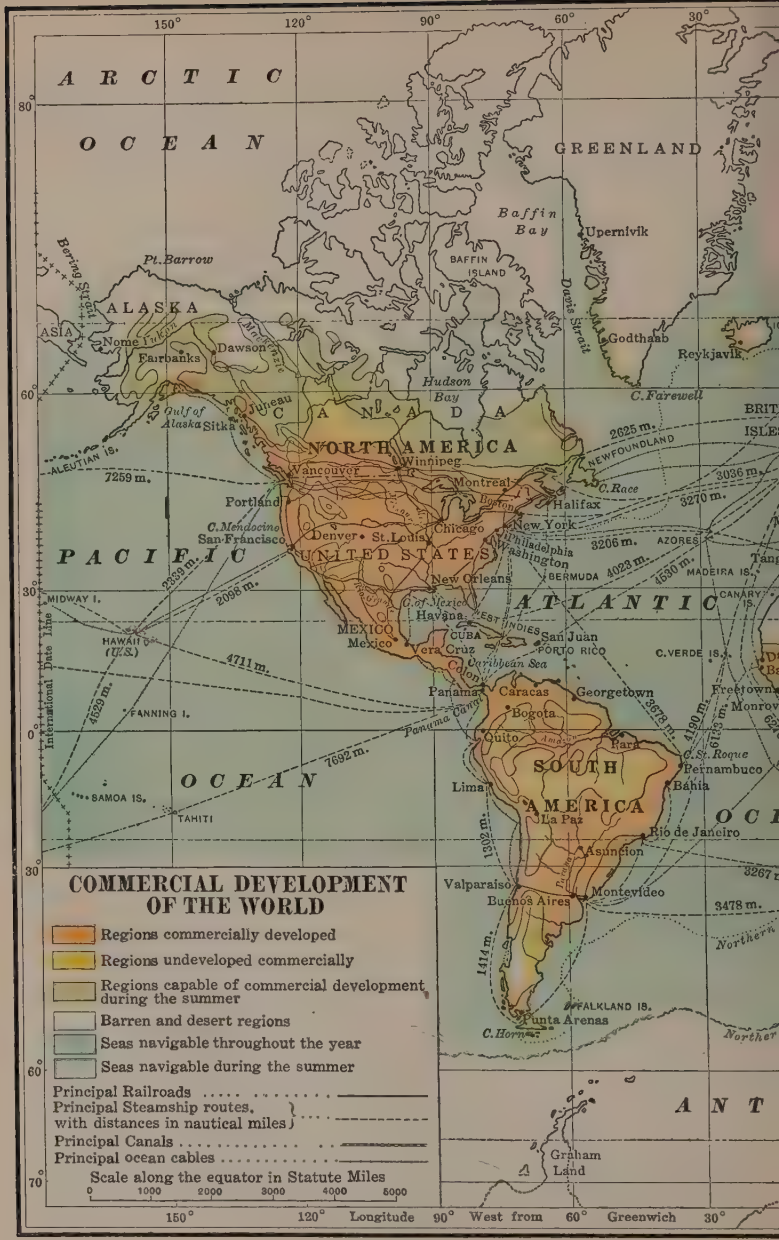
Banks

A commercial bank, as distinguished from a savings bank or a trust company, may be defined as an institution which deals in money and credit. It attracts the deposits of many persons, thus gaining control of enormous sums available for loans to manufacturers and merchants. Banks do not increase the amount of capital (factory buildings, machinery, raw materials, etc.) in a community, but they help to put it at the disposal of active business men; in other words, banks make capital *fluid*. Furthermore, bank checks, drafts, and foreign bills of exchange provide a cheap and elastic substitute for money. It is possible through their use to discharge a large volume of indebtedness without the transfer of cash.

Development of banking

The earliest medieval banks were the private establishments of moneyed men in Italian cities. Venice and Genoa subsequently founded public or state banks, and during the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries similar institutions arose in many European capitals. The Bank of England owes its origin to the financial difficulties of the British government, during the reign of William and Mary, in carrying on an expensive war with Louis XIV.[1] The revenues of the country at that time were small, and the public credit was weak. The Bank was formed in 1694 by a group of subscribers, principally London merchants, who made a loan to the government and received, in turn, a charter granting them the right to accept deposits and lend out money at interest. Although essentially a private institution, the Bank acts as the chief depository of the public money and the agent of the Treasury in many financial operations. It has also become the monetary center of both the United Kingdom and the British Empire. The Bank of France was the creation of Napoleon Bona-

[1] See page 185.


ARCTIC OCEAN
GREENLAND
Baffin Bay
Upernivik
BAFFIN ISLAND
Davis Strait
Godthaab
Reykjavik
Pt. Barrow
Bering Strait
ALASKA
ASIA
Nome
Fairbanks
Dawson
Mackenzie R.
Hudson Bay
C. Farewell
Gulf of Alaska
Juneau
Sitka
CANADA
NORTH AMERICA
Winnipeg
Vancouver
Montreal
Halifax
NEWFOUNDLAND
2625 m.
3036 m.
3270 m.
C. Race
ALEUTIAN IS.
7259 m.
Portland
C. Mendocino
San Francisco
Denver
St. Louis
Chicago
New York
Philadelphia
Washington
3206 m.
AZORES
4023 m.
4630 m.
BERMUDA
MADEIRA IS.
PACIFIC
UNITED STATES
2369 m.
2096 m.
New Orleans
C. of Mexico
Havana
WEST INDIES
ATLANTIC
CANARY IS.
MIDWAY I.
MEXICO
Mexico
CUBA
San Juan
PORTO RICO
C. VERDE IS.
HAWAII (U.S.)
Vera Cruz
Caribbean Sea
4711 m.
Colon
Panama
Caracas
Georgetown
Freetown
Monrovia
FANNING I.
4629 m.
Bogota
3878 m.
4190 m.
3913 m.
Panama Canal
Quito
Recife
C. St. Roque
Pernambuco
7692 m.
SOUTH AMERICA
Lima
Bahia
SAMOA IS.
TAHITI
La Paz
Rio de Janeiro
1302 m.
Asuncion
3267 m.
Valparaiso
Montevideo
Buenos Aires
3478 m.
Northern
1414 m.
FALKLAND IS.
Punta Arenas
C. Horn
Northern
ANT
Graham Land
International Date Line
COMMERCIAL DEVELOPMENT OF THE WORLD
Regions commercially developed
Regions undeveloped commercially
Regions capable of commercial development during the summer
Barren and desert regions
Seas navigable throughout the year
Seas navigable during the summer
Principal Railroads
Principal Steamship routes, with distances in nautical miles
Principal Canals
Principal ocean cables
Scale along the equator in Statute Miles
0 1000 2000 3000 4000 5000
150° 120° 90° 60° 30°
Longitude West from Greenwich
80° 60° 30° 0° 30° 60° 70°

THE MATTHEWS-NORTHRUP WORKS, BUFFALO, N.Y.

parte.[1] The Imperial Bank of Germany (Reichsbank) came into existence only in 1876.[2] All these great European banks, as well as the national banks of the United States, have the privilege of issuing redeemable notes which circulate in place of gold.

In spite of the extensive use of checks and bank notes, the growth of commerce continues to absorb immense quantities of gold, the money metal. The supply has kept pace with the demand. The mines of California, Australia, South Africa, Alaska, and other countries produced in the second half of the nineteenth century nine times as much gold as had been produced between 1800 and 1850.

The gold supply

The supply of silver increased during the nineteenth century far in excess of the demand. Its declining value led the principal commercial states to diminish or suspend silver coinage. Great Britain in 1816 abandoned the double or bimetallic standard and adopted the single gold standard. Her example has since been followed by the Continental nations, the British colonies, Japan, the South American republics, and, in 1900, the United States. China and Mexico are the only important countries which remain on a silver basis.

The gold standard

Economists believe that the great output of gold in the 'fifties and 'sixties of the last century resulted in an average increase of the prices of commodities equal to at least twenty per cent. The prodigious enlargement of the gold supply within recent years has also been a cause of the steadily rising price level since about 1896 in the United States, Great Britain, Germany, and other countries. It is therefore important to note just how new supplies of gold operate on prices. Gold converted into money constitutes purchasing power. Additional supplies of it in circulation mean an increased demand for goods, which in turn causes a rise of prices. Wages also tend to advance, because more labor is required to produce the additional commodities demanded. Since salaries usually rise more slowly than wages, the salaried class suffers during a period of rapidly increasing

Gold and prices

[1] See page 332.

[2] See page 488.

prices. The same is true of all persons having fixed incomes from bonds and similar investments.

International finance

The almost universal use of gold as the standard of value facilitates the creation of a world market for money. Capitalists and bankers in progressive countries are thus enabled to supply funds for investment in less progressive countries. Statisticians estimate that up to 1914 not less than twenty billion dollars had been invested abroad by Great Britain, about half of it in her colonies and about half in foreign lands. French investments in Russia and other countries totaled about ten billion dollars, while those of Germany abroad also reached an impressively high figure. All through the nineteenth century the United States was a debtor nation, owing to the immense sums borrowed for the development of American railroads, mines, farms, and factories. This situation changed with startling suddenness during the World War, when the Allied nations purchased in the United States enormous amounts of food, raw materials and munitions. Not only has the United States wiped off its indebtedness to Europe; it has now made Europe its debtor. Consequently, New York, rather than London or Paris, tends to become the world's money market and center of international finance.

Crises

Commercial progress has been frequently interrupted during the past century by periods of depression called crises. They are a product of the Industrial Revolution. Arising in one country, perhaps as a result of bad banking, over-issue of paper money, speculation, unwise investments, or failure of crops, they tend to spread widely until all civilized countries are involved. For instance, the crisis of 1857 started in the United States and that of 1873, in Austria.

Phenomena of crises

What happens during a crisis is familiar to every one. Capitalists refuse to invest in new railroads, factories, and other undertakings; bankers will not lend money; merchants, unable to borrow, go into bankruptcy; and manufacturers, receiving fewer orders, either reduce their output or shut down their plants. Then ensues a period of

"hard times," with low prices, low wages, much unemployment, and widespread destitution. The wave of prosperity sets in again, eventually, and times again become "good." Crises have occurred at intervals of about ten or eleven years since 1800, but recently with lessening severity. They may cease altogether as modern commerce becomes still more efficient.

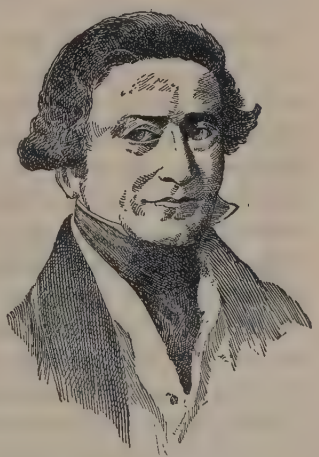
176. Commercial Policies

Many obstacles impeding the exchange of goods in the Middle Ages disappeared in modern times, especially after the French Revolution. The state police, which was everywhere organized on the model of the French *gendarmerie*, suppressed highway robbery. Piracy, once so common, became obsolete in the era of modern steam navigation. The burdensome tolls imposed by feudal lords on transportation and travel were no longer exacted, now that feudalism itself had died out. A movement also began to reduce the high duties levied by every European nation on imports and exports.

Commercial freedom

One nation went still further in the nineteenth century and adopted free trade. Great Britain, we have learned, enjoyed by 1815 a virtual monopoly in most lines of industry. Having no reason to fear the competition of foreign manufacturers, it was to her advantage to lower or abolish the duties on imports, especially those on raw materials. The Younger Pitt, influenced by the writings of Adam Smith, began the work of tariff reform; Sir Robert Peel continued it in the 'forties; and Gladstone completed it. Since 1860 Great Britain has been

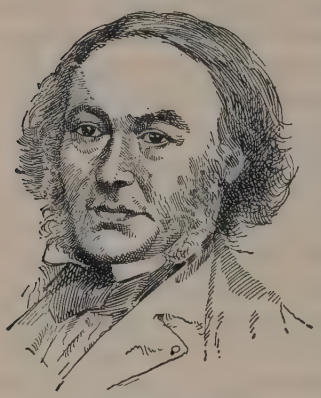
Free trade in Great Britain



Sir Robert Peel

After a painting by John Linnell in the National Portrait Gallery, London.

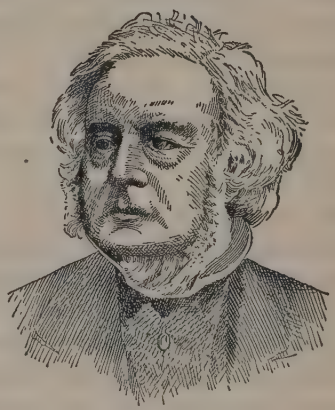
a free-trade nation. She imposes no restrictions whatever on exports and levies import duties only on a few articles, including coffee, tea, tobacco, alcoholic liquors, and sugar. Even these are for revenue not for protection. They do not encourage the production at home of anything which can be produced more cheaply abroad. "To buy in the cheapest market and sell in the dearest" is the British policy.



RICHARD COBDEN
After a painting by Lowes Dickinson in 1861.

Repeal of the Corn Laws, 1846

Another feature of the free-trade movement in Great Britain was the repeal of the Corn[1] Laws. These laws restricted or entirely prohibited the importation of wheat or other grains, in the interest of British farmers and landlords. Manufacturers, on the other hand, objected to legislation which made food dear for the working classes. In 1839 an Anti-Corn Law League was organized at Manchester, under the able leadership of Richard Cobden and John Bright. The success of its agitation was hastened by a partial failure of crops in England and the Potato Famine[2] in Ireland, occurrences which raised food prices enormously and caused acute



JOHN BRIGHT

[1] "Corn" to an Englishman means wheat; to a Scotsman or an Irishman, oats; and to an American, maize, or Indian corn.

[2] See page 439.

distress in both countries. The Corn Laws were finally repealed in 1846. Since then Great Britain has secured the bulk of her food abroad, from the fertile wheat areas of the United States and the British colonies, and has paid for it with the products of her mines and factories.

The Navigation Acts[1] were repealed three years later, after having been in operation for nearly two centuries. Foreign ships were henceforth allowed to compete with those of Great Britain in the carrying trade. Competition has resulted in lower freight rates and consequently in cheaper food for the British people.

Repeal of the Navigation Acts, 1849

The free-trade movement spread to the Continent, where it led at first to a general lowering of tariff walls. In the last quarter of the nineteenth century, however, France, Germany, and other countries returned to the policy of protection. Rightly or wrongly, they saw in protection the means of building up their own "infant industries," in order to supply the home market and even to compete with Great Britain in the markets of the world. The triumph of protectionism thus formed a sequel to the intense nationalism which had developed in Europe. The economic coöperation of the Allies during the World War and their continued coöperation under the League of Nations may lead to a reaction in favor of freer commercial intercourse between them.

Protection on the Continent

The first American tariff was framed in 1789. It levied a few small protective duties. The United States adopted protection on an extensive scale only in 1816, as a means of keeping alive the industries which had sprung up in the country when the second war with England stopped all imports of foreign goods. Later tariffs have generally raised duties, except for a few decades before the Civil War. In following a protective policy, the United States thus ranges itself with the Continental nations rather than with Great Britain.

Protection in the United States

Much progress has been made during the past century in

[1] See page 264.

the internationalization of important rivers which separate or traverse two or more countries. The Congress of Vienna in 1815 decided that the Rhine should be freely open to the commerce of all nations. The Congress of Paris in 1856 made a similar stipulation concerning the Danube. A few years later Holland renounced her former privilege of levying tolls on the Scheldt, an arrangement which had fettered Belgian commerce through Antwerp. The Peace Conference in 1919 internationalized the Elbe and Oder rivers, both of which rise in the new state of Czecho-Slovakia and provide outlets for its foreign trade. The principle of free navigation has also been extended to inland seas such as the Black Sea and the Baltic. Before the World War Germany treated the Kiel Canal as an inland waterway, denying to other nations its free and equal use. This gave her an advantage over her competitors, since the canal affords the shortest route between the North Sea and the Baltic. The peace treaty with Germany provides that the canal shall henceforth be opened without restriction to the mercantile marine of every country. The same rule has always applied to the Suez and Panama canals.

Internationalization

We saw above[1] that one of the causes of the War of 1812–1814 was the irritation felt in the United States at the action of Great Britain in searching American ships for deserters from the royal navy. The peace treaty between the two countries said nothing about the right of search and impressment of deserting seamen, but the protest of the United States proved to be none the less effective. It is now an accepted principle of international law that in time of peace a merchant vessel remains under the jurisdiction of the country to which it belongs and whose flag it carries; consequently any visitation, molestation, or detention of such a ship by force, or by threat of force, constitutes an unfriendly act. The general acknowledgment of this principle by maritime nations makes the seas really free to all commerce in time of peace.

Freedom of the seas

[1] See page 586.

Much has been done, also, to protect commerce in time of war. The great powers assembled at Paris in 1856 to conclude the Crimean War took the opportunity to put forth the following Declaration:[1] "Privateering is, and remains abolished; 2. The neutral flag covers enemy's goods, with the exception of contraband of war; 3. Neutral goods, with the exception of contraband of war, are not liable to capture under the enemy's flag; 4. Blockades, in order to be binding, must be effective, that is to say, maintained by a force sufficient really to prevent access to the coast of the enemy." All maritime countries of any importance, except the United States, adhered to this momentous Declaration. The United States declined to concur, unless enemy property (save contraband of war) were also exempted from capture at sea. The adoption of such a rule would put private property at *sea* on a level with private property on the *land*, in case of war. The question has been much discussed during recent years, without, however, obtaining recognition in international law.

The Declaration of Paris, 1856

177. Agriculture and Land Tenure

The agricultural system of the Middle Ages, with its wasteful "open fields" and fallow lands, its backward methods, and its scanty yield, began to be revolutionized with the approach of modern times. The Dutch were the first scientific farmers, and from them English farmers learned many secrets of tillage. Deeper plowing, more thorough pulverization of the ground, more diligent manuring, the shifting or rotation of crops from field to field, so that the soil would not have to lie fallow every third year, and the introduction of new crops, including turnips, clover, and rye, were some of the improvements which doubled the yield of agricultural land. The weight of cattle and sheep was also increased by half through careful selection in breeding. It is significant of the revived interest in agriculture at the close of the eighteenth century that George III contributed articles

Agriculture in the eighteenth century

[1] Hertslet, *Map of Europe by Treaty*, vol. ii, No. 271.

to a farm journal and that Washington, in his quiet retreat at Mount Vernon, invented a plow and a rotary seed drill.

The improvements in agriculture since 1800 have extended to every progressive country. Machinery now replaces the ancient scythe, sickle, flail, and other implements. One machine, of American invention, not only reaps the grain, but threshes it, winnows it, and delivers it into sacks at a single operation. According to a conservative estimate, farm machinery enables fifty men to accomplish what would require the labor of five hundred men using hand tools only. The introduction of cheap artificial fertilizers makes profitable the cultivation of poor lands formerly allowed to lie idle. The advance of engineering science leads to the reclamation of marshes and arid wastes. Finally, steam navigation allows a country to draw supplies of wheat, meat, and other foodstuffs from the most distant regions, with the result that the specter of famine, so common in the Middle Ages, has well-nigh disappeared from the modern world.

Agriculture in the nineteenth century

INCLOSURES IN ENGLAND IN THE EIGHTEENTH CENTURY

Horizontal shading — Partially closed fields in 1700.
Vertical shading — Mainly open fields in 1700.

The "open-field" system of cultivation, whereby the same person tilled many small strips in different parts of the manor, was so wasteful of time and labor that medieval farmers began to surrender their scattered strips for compact holdings which could be inclosed with hedges or fences and cultivated independently. This inclosure move-

Inclosures

ment continued in western Europe all through the modern period, until in the nineteenth century the old "open fields" had been practically abandoned in favor of separate farms and individual tillage.

Inclosures meant better farming everywhere, but in Great Britain they also helped to create the large estates so characteristic of that country. The lord of the manor, not satisfied with inclosing his demesne lands, often managed to inclose the meadows, which had been previously enjoyed by the peasants in common, as pasturage for their livestock. It was consequently harder than ever for the small farmer to support his family on his petty holding. Moreover, he did not have sufficient capital to invest in necessary improvements and the new agricultural machinery rapidly coming into use, while the decay of the domestic system[1] deprived him of a supplementary income from household manufacturing. Under such circumstances he was often forced to sell out to a large landowner. Many of the dispossessed farmers drifted to neighboring towns and became factory operatives; many went abroad to the British colonies or the United States; still others remained on the land as agricultural laborers working for a daily wage. The result was the almost complete disappearance, by the middle of the nineteenth century, of the old British yeomanry, the class of peasant proprietors who for hundreds of years had been the strength of the state.

Disappearance of the British yeomanry

Ten thousand persons own two-thirds of all England and Wales; seventeen thousand persons own nine-tenths of Scotland. Each landlord parcels out his property among a number of tenant "farmers," who work the soil themselves, with the aid of the agricultural day laborers above mentioned. Much good farming land is devoted to game preserves, parks, lawns, and gardens. These open spaces, with the stately mansions of the nobles and country gentry, give to rural England a charm which no other country knows.

British landlordism

[1] See page 602.

Nevertheless, British economists and statesmen have long felt that, as a mere matter of national safety, Great Britain ought to raise more of her own food supply. Were the country effectively blockaded in time of war, the starvation of its crowded industrial population would soon result. As a result of the World War, millions of acres formerly withdrawn from cultivation were put under the plow. It is not likely that they will be allowed to return to unproductive uses. Efforts have also begun to break up the large estates by such heavy taxes that it will be no longer profitable to hold them. Mr. Lloyd George, as Chancellor of the Exchequer, began a war on landlordism before 1914, and since then the enormous increase of taxation caused by the war has resulted in many of the great properties being broken up and placed upon the market. There seems reason to believe that Great Britain may yet become what Ireland under the Land Purchase Acts [1] has already become — a country of small farmers.

Agrarian reform in Great Britain

A considerable part of the agricultural land belonged to the French peasants even before the Revolution.[2] Their possessions increased in the revolutionary era, as the result of legislation confiscating the estates of the Crown, the Church, and the emigrant nobles.[3] Three million persons own farms under twenty-five acres in extent; seven hundred and fifty thousand persons own the rest of the agricultural land in holdings running up to four hundred acres. About eighty per cent of all holdings are cultivated by their owners. These statistics show that little farm tenancy exists in France. It is emphatically a country of small but prosperous and contented farmers. In no European state would a socialistic revolution, involving the abolition of private ownership of land, have fewer chances of success.

French peasant proprietorships

The agrarian reforms of the French Revolution spread to Belgium, Holland, Switzerland, western Germany, and northern Italy, where peasant proprietorships are common. They are rare in much of Spain and in southern Italy and Sicily. Cen-

[1] See page 440. [2] See page 281. [3] See pages 310 and 332.

tral and eastern Europe remained under the medieval manorial system throughout the nineteenth century. The land was owned by a few noble families and was worked by peasants, either as tenants or day laborers. Outside of Russia proper, there were five of these landed aristocracies in 1914: in eastern Germany (Brandenburg, Pomerania, West Prussia, East Prussia), where serfdom disappeared only in the Napoleonic era; in Austria-Hungary, where it disappeared during the disorders of 1848–1849; in the Baltic provinces controlled by nobles of German origin called Baltic barons; in Poland and Lithuania; and in Rumania. The revolutionary movements since 1914 promise to destroy the land monopoly of the aristocrats in all these countries. There will arise, instead, a new democratic society of peasant proprietors. This triumph of the small land owner in central and eastern Europe must be accounted one of the most important economic results of the World War.

Land tenure in other Continental countries

The abolition of Russian serfdom by Alexander II in 1858–1861 [1] was followed by measures establishing a new system of land tenure. The nobles were required to sell a portion of their estates to the peasants, about half of the agricultural area of European Russia thus changing hands. Except in certain districts where individual ownership prevailed, the farming land was intrusted to the entire village (*mir*) for redistribution at intervals among the inhabitants. All that the peasant really possessed in his own right was a house and a garden plot. The Russian Revolution of 1917 broke up the *mir* economy and also enabled the peasants to appropriate the estates of the nobles. It appears that the Bolsheviki have been obliged to countenance this procedure, in order to win the support of the peasantry. If Russia adopts complete individual ownership of land, it will mark a significant step in the progress of that country, where about nine-tenths of the population live wholly or mainly by agriculture. Russia may develop into one of the most stable of nations because its people have their feet on the ground, their own ground.

Land tenure in Russia

[1] See page 508.

178. The Labor Movement

The craft guilds, which modern Europe inherited from the Middle Ages, gradually became obsolete after the Industrial Revolution. They were out of place in a world of whirling machinery, crowded factories, free competition, and the separation of labor and capital. Few of them in Great Britain survived the eighteenth century. In France it required a decree of the National Assembly to end their existence. Those in Germany did not completely disappear until late in the nineteenth century.

Disappearance of the craft guilds

As contrasted with craft guilds, trade unions are combinations of wage-earners to maintain or improve the conditions under which they labor. These associations began to appear in Great Britain between 1700 and 1800, especially after the domestic system gave way to the factory system. Under the new conditions of industry, an employer could not know many of his employees personally; their relations, henceforth, tended to become cold-blooded and impersonal. At the same time, the workers in any one establishment or trade, being thrown more closely together, came to realize their common interests and to appreciate the need for organization.

Rise of trade unions

The unions immediately encountered opposition. The Common Law treated them as conspiracies in restraint of trade and hence as illegal. Moreover, the employers used their influence in Parliament to secure the passage of a long series of acts designed to prevent what were styled "unlawful combinations of workmen." The last of these acts, passed in 1800, even provided the penalty of imprisonment at hard labor for persons who combined with others to raise wages, shorten hours, or in any way control the conditions of industry.

Trade unions prohibited

Agitation by trade-union leaders induced Parliament in 1825 to repeal all the Combination Acts and to replace them by a new and more liberal statute. Laborers might now lawfully meet together for the purpose of agreeing on the rate of wages or the number of hours which

Trade unions legalized

they would work, as long as the agreement concerned only those who were present at the meeting. This qualification was removed a number of years later. Finally, the Trade Union Act of 1875 declared that nothing done by a group of laborers should be considered illegal unless it was also illegal when done by a single person. The act thus gave the working classes the full right of combination for which they had long been striving. It has been called the Magna Carta of trade unionism.

British trade unionism to-day

The trade unions of Great Britain have made much progress within recent years. In 1914 they enrolled nearly four million members, including factory operatives, railway workers, coal miners, and agricultural laborers. They send their representatives to Parliament and exercise great influence on labor legislation. Their officers also frequently serve as factory inspectors. Many unions enjoy a considerable income, which goes to support members who are temporarily out of work, sick, disabled, or infirm. Where the unions control an industry and can dictate terms of employment, they often practice limitation of output, that is, restrict what each worker does to less than he is capable of doing. The purpose of this is to prevent overdriving by employers and at the same time to create as many jobs as possible for trade unionists.

Trade unionism on the Continent

Trade unions exist in France, Germany, Austria, Italy, and other Continental countries. They are modeled upon the British organizations, but do not equal them in numbers, wealth, or influence. Many have a political character, being closely connected with socialist parties. In general, Continental workingmen rely for improvement in their condition rather upon State action than upon collective bargaining with their employers.

Trade unionism in the United States

The organization of American trade unions began early in the nineteenth century, but their great and rapid growth has taken place since the Civil War. Probably about fifteen per cent of the male wage-earners belong to them. While this may seem a small proportion, it must be remembered that their membership consists chiefly

of skilled laborers. Most of the trade unions are affiliated with the American Federation of Labor, which was founded in 1886.

The coöperative movement also started in Great Britain. There are in that country a large number of societies, open to workingmen on the payment of a small fee, and selling goods to members at prices considerably lower than those charged by private concerns. Members share in the profits in accordance with the amount of their purchases. The success of coöperation in retailing has brought about its extension to wholesaling and even to manufacturing and banking. Similar societies are numerous on the Continent. They have made little headway in the United States, with such conspicuous exceptions as mutual life insurance companies and building and loan associations.

Coöperation

179. Government Regulation of Industry

Improvement in the lot of the working classes has taken place not only through the activities of trade unions, coöperative societies, and other voluntary associations, but also by legislation. The need for government regulation of industry very soon became apparent. The crowded factories were unsanitary. Hours of labor were too long. Wages were on the starvation level. Furthermore, the use of machinery encouraged the employment of women and children, for whose labor there had been previously little demand outside the home. Their excessive toil amid unhealthy surroundings often developed disease and deformity or brought premature death. Much excuse existed for the passionate words of one reformer that the slave trade was "mercy compared to the factory system."

Evils of the factory system

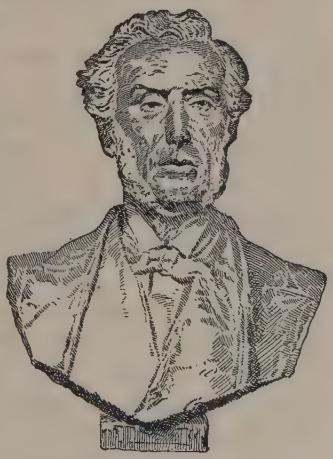
These evils were naturally most prominent in Great Britain, where the Industrial Revolution began. Little effort was made at first to remedy them. The working classes exercised no political influence; indeed, by the Combination Acts they had been prohibited from forming trade unions for their protection. Statesmen, instead of meeting the situation by remedial legislation, adopted the

The "let-alone" policy

laissez-faire, or "let-alone" policy.[1] The government, they declared, should keep its hands off industry. The greatest good to the greatest number could only be secured when "economic laws" of supply and demand were allowed to determine the wages and conditions of employment, just as they determined the prices, quantity, and quality of commodities produced.

"Let alone" naturally became the watchword of selfish employers, to whose avarice and cruelty it gave full rein. Yet there were also humane employers who felt that the State ought to protect those who could not protect themselves. One was Sir Robert Peel, father of the distinguished statesman of the same name.[2] He succeeded in securing the enactment of the first British factory act (1802). It prohibited the binding-out for labor of pauper children under nine years of age, restricted their working hours to twelve a day, and forbade night work. This measure applied only to cotton factories. Little more was done for thirty-one years. During this time several philanthropists, among whom Lord Ashley, afterwards earl of Shaftesbury, had the greatest influence, took up the cause of the oppressed workers and on the floor of Parliament, on the platform, in the pulpit, and in the newspapers waged a campaign to arouse the public to the need for additional legislation.[3] The result was the passage in 1833 of an act which applied to all textile factories and provided for their regular inspection by public officials. In 1842 Lord

Early labor legislation



THE EARL OF SHAFTESBURY
After a bust by Sir J. E. Boehm, in the National Portrait Gallery, London.

[1] See pages 285–286.

[2] See page 625.

[3] Read Mrs. Browning's *The Cry of the Children*.

Ashley, whose life was devoted to philanthropy and social reform, carried through Parliament an act forbidding the employment in mines of women and children. Five years later Parliament took the still more radical step of passing the Ten-Hour Act, which limited the labor of women and children in textile factories to ten hours a day. This measure became a law only after the fiercest opposition on the part of manufacturers, but it proved so beneficial that henceforth the desirability of factory legislation was generally admitted.

British labor legislation to-day

Government regulation of industry now began to become a reality. Mines, bakeries, laundries, docks, retail and wholesale shops, and many other establishments were gradually brought under control. At the present time the State restricts the employment of children so that they may not be deprived of an education. It limits the hours of labor, not only of children and women in most industries, but also of men in mines and factories. It requires employers to install safety appliances in their plants and to take all other precautions necessary for the preservation of the lives, limbs, and health of their employees. Recent legislation provides for the establishment of wage boards in certain "sweated" trades, where men and women work long hours for starvation pay. These boards, representing employees, employers, and the government, have power to fix a minimum wage — the lowest wage consistent with health and efficiency — and to forbid the payment of anything less, except to apprentices. The principle of the minimum wage has also been extended to miners and agricultural laborers. The government supports employment bureaus or labor exchanges, in order that the idle may find work. A national insurance act, effective since 1912, provides for the compulsory insurance of nearly all employees against sickness and loss of employment. Great Britain also grants to every insured person who has reached sixty-five years of age the right to claim an old age pension of ten shillings a week. The same amount will be paid to the wife of a man eligible to a pension. In such cases the addition of a pound a week to the family

income usually means relief from distressing poverty and dependence on charity.

Labor legislation on the Continent

The labor legislation of France, Belgium, Holland, Austria, and the Scandinavian states compares favorably with that of Great Britain. In no Continental country has it gone farther than in Germany. Bismarck gave it his powerful support, in order to check the spread of socialism. Germany has laws establishing a maximum number of working hours, limiting child and female labor, and providing a system of workingmen's insurance against accidents, sickness, incapacity, and old age. These laws now affect as many as twenty million people, or a third of the German population.

American labor legislation

The need for labor legislation has been felt less acutely in the United States than in Europe. One reason for this is the fact that American workingmen enjoy higher wages and better conditions of employment than workingmen abroad. Another reason is found in the comparatively late development of the factory system in the United States. Labor laws, when passed, are often declared unconstitutional by state and federal courts, as interfering with freedom of contract or as being class legislation. In spite of this obstacle, the movement for the legal protection of labor has made much progress within recent years, especially in New England and the states of the Middle West.

Australasian labor legislation

The youthful commonwealths of Australia and New Zealand, unhampered by tradition, are trying a number of interesting experiments in government regulation of industry. Both countries give compensation to workingmen injured by accidents and old-age pensions to poor people. New Zealand, in addition, provides fire, life, and accident insurance, conducts postal savings banks, rents model homes to workingmen, and makes arbitration of labor disputes compulsory, in order to do away with strikes. If it turns out that under such paternalism more people are free and happy than under the individualism which prevails in the United States and even in Great Britain, then Australia and New

Zealand will have set an example to the rest of the world; if it is found that too much public regulation cramps private enterprise and takes away the incentive to industry, they will have warned the rest of the world off a dangerous course. But all this legislation is too recent for final judgment to be pronounced upon it.

International labor legislation

There has been a growing movement within recent years to secure concerted action by the various nations in the interest of the working classes. The movement received official recognition at the Peace Conference in 1919. The Peace Treaty with Germany establishes a permanent International Labor Office, under the League of Nations, and provides for annual international labor conferences to discuss needed legislation and recommend it to the different governments. The first conference met at Washington in 1919, and the second met at Geneva in 1920. Like the League of Nations of which it forms a part, this new labor machinery has only begun to function, but it promises to become an agency of enormous usefulness.

Labor principles

The Peace Conference also incorporated in the Peace Treaty a set of nine principles for regulating labor conditions. The principles may be summarized as follows: (1) Labor not to be regarded merely as a commodity or article of commerce; (2) Right of association for all purposes by the employed as well as by the employers; (3) Payment of a wage adequate to maintain a reasonable standard of life; (4) Adoption of an eight-hour day or a forty-eight hour week; (5) Adoption of a weekly day of rest, which should include Sunday wherever practicable; (6) Abolition of child labor, and such restrictions on the labor of young persons as shall insure their education and proper physical development; (7) Equal remuneration of men and women for work of equal value; (8) Equitable treatment of all workers in each country; (9) Enforcement of all laws and regulations for the protection of the employed. "Without claiming that these methods and principles are either complete or final, the High Contracting Parties are of opinion that they are well

fitted to guide the policy of the League of Nations; and that, if adopted by the industrial communities who are members of the League, and safeguarded in practice by an adequate system of inspection, they will confer lasting benefits upon the wage earners of the world."

180. Public Ownership

The modern State, in all civilized countries, does many things which private individuals themselves did during the Middle Ages. The State maintains an army and navy, administers justice, provides a police system, and furnishes public education. No one now questions either the need or the desirability of such activities. As we have just learned, the State also subjects private industry to ever-increasing regulation for the benefit of the less fortunate members of society. Furthermore, it engages in a variety of industrial undertakings.

Extension of State enterprise

Governments sometimes monopolize different branches of business for financial reasons — to raise a revenue. Examples are the tobacco monopoly of France and the salt monopoly of Saxony. Moral considerations may combine with financial reasons, as illustrated by the public monopoly of the manufacture of alcoholic liquors in Switzerland and in Russia (before 1914). The post office is always in government hands, not so much for revenue as for the furtherance of cheap communication between different parts of the country. In Great Britain and on the Continent telegraphs and telephones are managed by the government in connection with the post office, and the government parcel post does all the business which in the United States is partly absorbed by private express companies. Coinage is everywhere a public function, as well as banking in most European countries. In the United States banks are private institutions under state or national regulation. Germany and Russia have public forests; Prussia has public mines; and France has a number of canals belonging to the government.

Examples of State enterprise

Railroads

On the Continent (Belgium, Switzerland, Italy, Germany, Austria, Russia) railroads are mostly State-owned and State-managed. Nearly all the French lines are privately owned, but they will revert to the government upon the expiration of their franchises. Great Britain and the United States took over their railroads for military purposes during the World War. The American lines, together with the express companies, were returned to private ownership in 1920. In Australia the government built the principal railroads and now owns and operates all of them.

Municipal enterprise

Both British and Continental cities generally own and operate such public utilities as street railways, gas and electric lighting plants, and waterworks. Markets, slaughter houses, baths, pawn shops, docks, and harbor improvements are likewise often municipal monopolies. In the United States municipal ownership has been common in the case of waterworks, somewhat less common in the case of electric lighting plants, rare in that of gas plants, and scarcely known in that of street railways. Since free competition cannot prevail in these industries, the only choice is between municipal ownership or private ownership subject to municipal regulation of charges and service.

Decline of laissez-faire

It must now be obvious that the *laissez-faire* policy finds few adherents at the present time. The modern State assumes vastly more duties than the three to which Adam Smith proposed to limit it.[1] Defense against external aggression, preservation of internal order, and the maintenance of a few public institutions do not exhaust the responsibilities of the State, as these are conceived to-day. The reaction against *laissez-faire* has been very marked since 1871, one reason being the success of Germany in public regulation and ownership. Continental countries go further in the way of "socialistic" legislation than either Great Britain or the United States, because the Continental peoples have been accustomed to paternal rule for centuries. But as Australia and New Zealand show, even English-speaking peoples

[1] See page 286.

tend to abandon that system of "natural liberty" which, in Adam Smith's words, leaves every man "perfectly free to pursue his own interest in his own way, and to bring both his industry and capital into competition with those of any other man or order of men."

181. Socialism

Contemporary socialists unite in making the following demands. First, the State shall own and operate the instruments of production, that is, land and capital. Under this arrangement rent, interest, and profits, as sources of personal income, would disappear, and private property would consist simply of one's own clothing, household goods, money, and perhaps a house and a garden plot. Second, the leisure class shall be eliminated by requiring everybody to perform useful labor, either physical or mental. Third, the income of the State shall be distributed as wages and salaries among the workers, according to some fairer principle than obtains at present.

What socialism is

Socialism, thus explained, is not identical with public ownership of railroads, telegraphs, telephones, the postal service, and other utilities. There is still a leisure class and there are still personal incomes in those countries which have gone farthest in the direction of public ownership. Similarly, labor legislation is not properly described as socialistic, since it fails to abolish private property, the factory system, and rent, interest, and profits.

What socialism is not

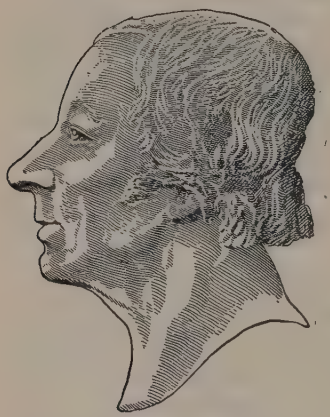
Socialism is, in part, an outcome of the Industrial Revolution, which completed the separation of capital and labor. The gulf between the capitalists and the landless, propertyless, wage-earning proletariat became wider, the contrasts between rich and poor became sharper, than ever before. Vastly more wealth was now produced than in earlier ages, but it was still unequally distributed. The few had too much; the many had too little. Radical reformers, distressed by these inequalities and dissatisfied with the slow progress of the labor movement and

Socialism and the Industrial Revolution

government regulation of industry, began to proclaim the necessity of a wholesale reconstruction of society.

Robert Owen, 1771–1858, and coöperative communities

In Great Britain the most prominent of these early radicals was Robert Owen, a rich manufacturer and philanthropist, who did much to improve the conditions of life for his employees. Among his innovations were coöperative shops, where workmen could buy good things cheaply and divide the profits between them. This principle of coöperative *distribution* has subsequently attained great success in England,[1] and Owen deserves credit as its originator. He also advocated coöperation in *production*. His special remedy for social ills was the establishment of small coöperative communities, each one living by itself on a tract of land and producing in common everything needed for its support. He thought that this arrangement would retain the economic advantages of the great inventions without introducing the factory system. Owen's experiments in coöperation all failed, including the one which he established at New Harmony, Indiana, in 1825. Owen thus belongs in the class of Utopian[2] socialists, men who dreamed of ideal social systems which were never realized.



Robert Owen
After a plaster medallion by Miss Beech.

Socialism is also, in part, an outcome of the French Revolution. That upheaval destroyed so many time-hallowed institutions and created so many new ones that it gave a great impetus to schemes for the regeneration of society.

[1] See page 636.

[2] A name derived from Sir Thomas More's *Utopia*. The word "socialism" was probably coined by Owen.

French radical thinkers soon set out to purge the world of capitalism as their fathers had purged it of feudalism. Their ideas began to become popular with workingmen after the factory system, with its attendant evils, gained an entrance into France.

Socialism and the French Revolution

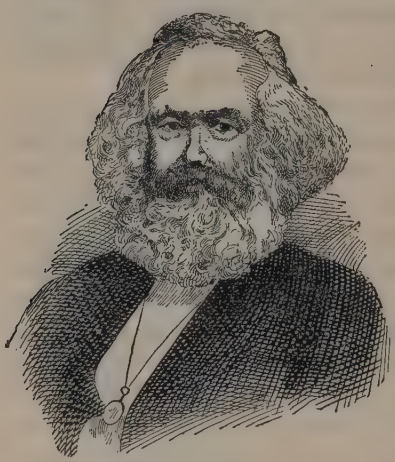
The workers found a leader in Louis Blanc, a journalist and author of wide popularity. The revolution of 1789, he declared, had benefited the peasants; that of 1830 the capitalists or *bourgeoisie;* the next must be for the benefit of the proletariat. Blanc believed that every man had an inalienable right to remunerative employment — the *droit au travail.* To provide it, he proposed that the State should furnish the capital for national workshops. These were to be managed by the operatives themselves, who would divide the profits of the industry between them and thus eliminate capitalists altogether. Blanc's ideas triumphed for a time in the "February Revolution" of 1848, which had been brought about by the Parisian proletariat. The second French Republic expressly recognized the "right to labor," set up the national workshops, and promised two francs a day to every registered workingman. Crowds came from every part of France to take advantage of the offer, and before long there were 120,000 additional laborers in the capital, with nothing to do but plant "trees of liberty" in rows. The drain upon the treasury and the demoralization of the people by this State charity soon led the government to abandon the entire scheme. The result was a popular uprising only crushed by military force. It should be said in justice to Blanc that the government appears to have purposely mismanaged the national workshops, in order to discredit the socialistic movement in France.

Louis Blanc, 1813-1882, and national workshops

Meanwhile, a new socialism, more systematic and practical than the old, began to be developed by German thinkers. Its chief representative was Karl Marx. His parents were well-to-do Jews who had embraced Christianity. Marx as a young man studied at several German universities and received the degree of Doctor of Philosophy.

Karl Marx, 1818-1883

Becoming interested in economic subjects, he founded a socialist newspaper to advocate the cause of the working classes. The government suppressed it, after the failure of the revolutionary movement of 1848–1849, and expelled Marx from Germany. He went to London and lived there in exile for the rest of his days, finding time, in the midst of a hard struggle for existence, to write his famous work, *Das Kapital*.[1] It has a place beside Rousseau's *Social Contract* and Smith's *Wealth of Nations* among the books which have profoundly influenced human thought and action.



Karl Marx

Marxism

Marx felt little sympathy with Utopian schemes to make over society and described them sarcastically as "duodecimo editions of the New Jerusalem." In opposition to Owen, Blanc, and other earlier socialists, he sought to build up a system of socialism based on economic principles. Put in its simplest form, Marxism asserts that, while labor is the source of all value, laborers receive, in fact, only a fraction of what they produce. All the rest goes to the capitalistic *bourgeoisie*, or middle class, who produce nothing. Capitalism, however, is the inevitable result of the factory system. Like feudalism, it forms a stage, a necessary stage, in the development of mankind. It is fated to disappear with the progress of democracy, which, by giving the proletariat the vote, will enable them to displace the *bourgeoisie*, take production into their own hands, and peacefully inaugurate the socialist state.

[1] The first volume of *Das Kapital* appeared in 1867. The second and third volumes were not published until after Marx's death.

The socialistic ideas of Marx are more briefly and popularly set forth in the *Communist Manifesto*, which he and his associate Friedrich Engels put forth in the revolutionary year of 1848. It demanded, among other things, abolition of property in land and application of all rents of land to public purposes, a heavy, progressive income tax, abolition of the right of inheritance, centralization of credit in the hands of the State by means of a national bank with an exclusive monopoly, State ownership of the means of communication and transport, State ownership of factories and other instruments of production, national cultivation of the soil, and compulsory labor for all. The conclusion of the *Communist Manifesto* is frequently quoted by socialists: "The proletarians have nothing to lose except their chains. They have a world to gain. Workingmen of all lands, unite!"

The Communist Manifesto, 1848

During the 'seventies of the last century the co-workers of Marx in Germany founded the Social Democratic Party.[1] The government, under Bismarck's leadership, tried to repress it by prohibiting meetings of socialists and the circulation of socialist literature. Any effort to propagate socialist doctrine was made punishable by fines and imprisonment. The police were also authorized to deport all suspected persons. Persecution failed to check the socialist movement, which has grown phenomenally in recent years. The socialist vote for members of the Reichstag reached a total of 4,250,000 in 1912. Three-fourths of these votes were not cast by members of the Social Democratic Party, however, but by German liberals who wanted to protest as effectively as possible against autocracy and militarism.

The Social Democratic Party

The Social Democratic Party provided a model for similar organizations of Marxian socialists in Great Britain, France, Italy, Austria, Russia, and the other European countries, as well as in the United States, Australia, and Japan. Congresses of delegates from the national parties have been held from time to time, in order

National socialist parties

[1] See page 490.

to bring together the working classes of every land. In 1914 the socialists throughout the world polled about eleven million votes and elected over seven hundred representatives to the various parliaments.

Syndicalism

Not all contemporary socialists rely on orderly and legal means to abolish capitalism. A large group of extreme socialists would use violence and terrorism in the supposed interest of the proletariat. France has recently had to cope with the movement called syndicalism.[1] Its adherents contend that the road to the socialist millenium does not lie in parliamentary activity, necessarily slow and uncertain, but in "direct action," by which they mean coercion of employers. The syndicalists aim to combine all the small labor unions, each representing a single craft, into one big union, which would comprise both skilled and unskilled workers. For example, all the men engaged in railroad transport would form a single body; similarly, all those in the building trade, from carpenters and painters to iron-workers and steamfitters. A mammoth organization of this sort could then carry on the war between labor and capital by means of general strikes embracing the entire industry. The syndicalists also propose to continue the class struggle by means of "sabotage," [2] or the practice of injuring machinery, spoiling materials, and loafing on the job. "Poor work for poor pay" is a syndicalist motto. The methods of the syndicalists have been advocated and adopted in the United States by the Industrial Workers of the World.

182. Poverty and Progress

The fact of poverty

No one conversant with social conditions in large cities can deny the existence there of very many people below or scarcely above the poverty line. An English investigator found thirty per cent of the inhabitants of London so wretchedly housed, clothed, warmed, and fed that their health and physical efficiency as workers was seriously impaired.

[1] From the French *syndicat*, a trade union.

[2] From the French *sabot*, a wooden shoe.

The results showed themselves in the high death rate of young and old and their marked inferiority in height, weight, and physical condition. What is true of London is doubtless true of other industrial centers in Europe, and, to a less extent, in the United States. Despite all the wonderful inventions and scientific discoveries which have so increased the productive powers of man, there are still millions of human beings in the Christian world who lead lives of grinding toil, without an income sufficient for their barest needs.

Socialists allege that poverty is caused by the unequal and inequitable distribution of wealth under the present economic organization of society. The truth is that no single condition — over-population, property in land, competition, the factory system — explains poverty, for each one has been absent in previous social stages. No people live more poorly than savages, who are few in numbers and ignorant of property in land. And, as previously noticed,[1] such industrially backward countries as Russia, India, and China are the countries where poverty is most bitter and widespread. It is quite certain, furthermore, that poverty in the older industrial regions of western Europe has steadily declined during the last one hundred and fifty years. Some socialists now recognize this fact, though still maintaining that the workman fails to secure his fair share of the increased wealth of the world. The causes of poverty are as complex as modern life, some being due to faults of personal character or physical and mental defects, and others being produced by lack of education, bad surroundings, corrupt or inefficient government, and economic conditions which result in lack of employment, high cost of living, monopolies, and the like.

Causes of poverty

Since there is no single cause of poverty, there can be no single remedy for it. Putting aside socialism as impracticable, one may still look forward confidently to the prevention of much poverty by trade-union activity, by government regulation of industry (including old-age pensions, State insurance against sickness and disability,

Prevention of poverty

[1] See page 617.

protection against non-employment, and the minimum wage), by education of the unskilled, by improved housing, and by all the agencies and methods of private philanthropy.

Abolition of poverty

The progress of the so-called "lower classes" since the Industrial Revolution leads modern economists and statesmen to anticipate the complete abolition of poverty, at least all suffering from hunger, cold, and nakedness, in those countries which have already abolished slavery and serfdom. Indeed, with the increase of wages, the growing demand for intelligent work, and the spread of popular education, skilled laborers have multiplied so rapidly as to outnumber those whose labor is entirely unskilled; they belong no longer to the "lower classes," but already live better than did the majority of the upper classes before the Industrial Revolution. As Mr. Lloyd George has said, the time draws near "when poverty with its wretchedness and squalor will be as remote from the people as the wolves which once infested the forests."

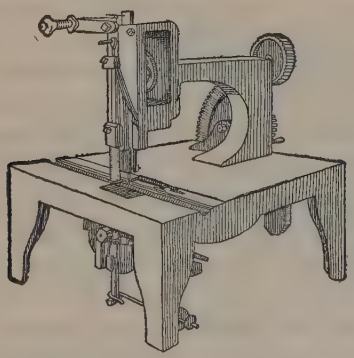
Economic democracy

The evils of modern industrialism, though real, have been exaggerated. They are and were the evils accompanying the transition from one stage of society to another. Few would wish now to retrace their steps to an age when there were no factories, no railroads, and no great mechanical inventions. Machinery now does much of the roughest and hardest work and, by saving human labor, makes it possible to shorten hours of toil. The world's workers, in consequence, have opportunities for recreation and education previously denied them. After one hundred and fifty years of modern industrialism, we begin to see that, besides helping to produce political democracy, it is also creating economic democracy. It is gradually diffusing the necessaries and comforts, and even many of the luxuries of life, among all peoples in all lands.

Studies

1. Explain what is meant by the following: (*a*) bimetallism; (*b*) crises; (*c*) protectionism; (*d*) contraband of war; (*e*) peasant proprietorships; (*f*) minimum wage; and (*g*) capitalism. 2. Show how modern commerce has been facilitated by the submarine cable, wireless telegraphy, the postal system, and marine insurance, or underwriting. 3. Mention some of the most important articles of commerce and

the countries where they are chiefly produced. 4. Why should there be an international or world price for such commodities as wheat and cotton? 5. How has the construction of the Suez and Panama canals affected oceanic trade routes? 6. Mention all the kinds of insurance (other than life insurance) familiar to you. 7. Distinguish a commercial bank from a savings bank and from a trust company. 8. When and why was there a "free silver" agitation in the United States? 9. Why did Great Britain adopt a free-trade policy? Why does she maintain it, when other nations follow a policy of protection? 10. What are the effects of smuggling or evasion of customs duties, on (*a*) the public revenue, (*b*) honest merchants, and (*c*) consumers? 11. Enumerate the clauses of the Declaration of Paris and explain their significance. 12. Account for the development of landlordism in Great Britain. 13. Comment on some of the social effects of peasant proprietorships. 14. Compare the modern trade union with the medieval craft guild. 15. What criticisms are sometimes leveled at trade unions? Discuss their justification. 16. Why must labor legislation, to become entirely effective, be international in scope? 17. What instances of state and municipal ownership in this country are familiar to you? 18. Distinguish (*a*) between socialism and anarchism and (*b*) between socialism and democracy. 19. Is it true, as Marx asserted, that labor is the source of all value? 20. Mention some of the probable advantages and some of the probable disadvantages of the socialist state. 21. Compare as to purposes and results the charity of the Middle Ages with the organized charity of to-day. 22. "The growth of large cities constitutes perhaps the greatest of all the problems of modern civilization." Comment on this statement.



First Singer Sewing Machine, 1851

CHAPTER XXV

MODERN CIVILIZATION

183. Internationalism

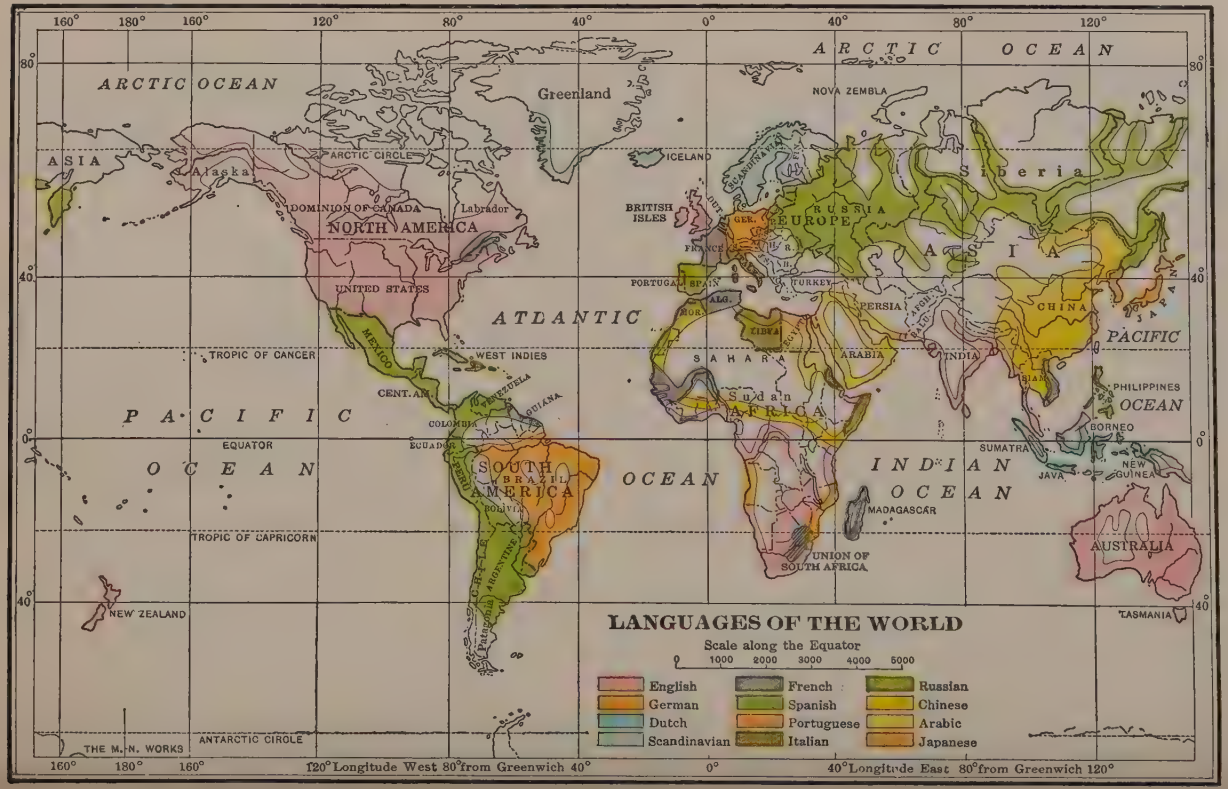
THE world, which seemed so large to our forefathers, to us seems very small and compact. Railroads, steamships, and airplanes bind the nations together, and the telegraph, the submarine cable, and the "wireless" keep them in constant communication. The oceans, no longer barriers, serve as highways uniting East and West, Orient and Occident. Commerce and finance are international; capital finds investment in foreign countries as readily as at home; and trade unionism, labor legislation, and socialism become common to all the world. National isolation disappears as ideas and ideals tour the globe.

Unity of modern civilization

Everywhere people build the same houses, use the same furniture, and eat the same food. Everywhere they enjoy the same amusements and distractions: concerts, "moving pictures," the theater, clubs, magazines, automobiles. They also dress alike. Powder, gold lace, wigs, pigtails, three-cornered hats, knee breeches, silk stockings, and silver-buckled shoes passed away in revolutionary France with the other follies of the Old Régime, and the loose coat and long trousers of the working classes became the accepted style for men's apparel, not only in France, but eventually in all civilized countries. Women's apparel still changes year by year, but the new fashions, emanating from Paris, London or New York, are speedily copied in San Francisco, Melbourne, and Tokio.

Uniformity of modern civilization

The inconveniences resulting from the diversity of languages were never greater than to-day, when travel is a general habit and when nations read one another's books and profit by one


ARCTIC OCEAN
Greenland
NOVA ZEMBLA
ASIA
Alaska
ARCTIC CIRCLE
ICELAND
Siberia
DOMINION OF CANADA
Labrador
NORTH AMERICA
BRITISH ISLES
RUSSIA
EUROPE
ASIA
UNITED STATES
FRANCE
PORTUGAL
SPAIN
TURKEY
ATLANTIC
PERSIA
CHINA
JAPAN
PACIFIC
TROPIC OF CANCER
WEST INDIES
MEXICO
SAHARA
ARABIA
INDIA
PHILIPPINES
OCEAN
CENT. AM.
Sudan
AFRICA
BORNEO
PACIFIC
COLOMBIA
GUIANA
EQUATOR
ECUADOR
SUMATRA
OCEAN
SOUTH
AMERICA
BRAZIL
INDIAN
OCEAN
NEW
GUINEA
JAVA
BOLIVIA
MADAGASCAR
TROPIC OF CAPRICORN
AUSTRALIA
UNION OF
SOUTH AFRICA
NEW ZEALAND
TASMANIA
LANGUAGES OF THE WORLD
Scale along the Equator
1000 2000 3000 4000 5000
English
German
Dutch
Scandinavian
French
Spanish
Portuguese
Italian
Russian
Chinese
Arabic
Japanese
THE M.N. WORKS
ANTARCTIC CIRCLE
120° Longitude West from Greenwich
40° Longitude East from Greenwich

another's discoveries and inventions. The internationalism of modern literature, science, philosophy, and art demands an international medium of expression. Latin was the speech of learned men in Europe throughout the Middle Ages, and French has been the speech of polite society and diplomacy for more than two centuries. What is needed, however, is a universal language, which can be readily mastered by any one. Crude attempts at such a language have already appeared in Volapük and Esperanto, but a really satisfactory artificial idiom remains to be created.

Universal languages

Meanwhile, the spread of English-speaking peoples throughout the globe seems destined to make English, in some sort, a universal language. It is now used by 175 million people, either as their mother language or as an acquired tongue.[1] Those using Russian are estimated at 100 millions, German, 80 millions, Spanish, 50 millions, and French, 40 millions. The simple grammar and cosmopolitan vocabulary of English adapt it to an international rôle. In spite of an often arbitrary spelling and pronunciation, it is more easily learned than any other of the great languages of the world.

The English language

The idea of a universal exposition, to which all countries should send their art treasures or the marvels of their industry, first took shape in the Crystal Palace Exhibition (London, 1851). Since then European expositions have been numerous, each one larger than its predecessor. The Universal Exhibition (Paris, 1900) attracted 51,000,000 visitors. The United States began with the Philadelphia Centennial of 1876. This was followed by the World's Fair at Chicago in 1893 and by the more recent expositions at St. Louis, San Francisco, and several other cities.

Universal expositions

World congresses are constantly being held to deal with such matters of common interest as the metric system of weights and measures, monetary standards, protection of patents and copyrights, improvement in the condition of the working

[1] United Kingdom, 45,000,000; Canada and Australia, 12,000,000; British Africa, 5,000,000; British India and other possessions, 3,000,000; the United States, 110,000,000

classes, advancement of social reform, woman's suffrage, and the establishment of universal peace. Two thousand such gatherings took place in the half century immediately preceding the World War. Some of them have resulted in the formation of permanent organizations such as the Red Cross Society (1864) [1] and the Postal Union (1874).[2] Frequent meetings of distinguished scholars and men of letters from the different countries also help to produce what has been well called the "international mind."

The "international mind"

Increased intercourse between civilized peoples not only broadens their outlook but also widens their sympathies. Feelings of human brotherhood, once limited to the members of one's clan, tribe, city, or state, expand to include all mankind. There develops an "international conscience," which emphasizes the obligations of the strong toward the weak and protests against the oppression of any members of the world community by any others. Let us consider some of its manifestations during the past century.

The "international conscience"

184. Social Betterment

Little more than one hundred years ago the slave trade was generally regarded as a legitimate business. Hardly any one thought it wrong to kidnap or purchase African negroes, pack them on shipboard, where many died in the stifling holds, and carry them to the West Indies or the American mainland to be sold as slaves. No voice was raised in protest when Great Britain, by the Peace of Utrecht, secured the right to ship annually for thirty years forty-eight hundred slaves to the Spanish colonies in America, thus becoming the chief slave-trading nation in the world. It is estimated that by the close of the eighteenth century more than three million negroes were brought to the New World and that at least a quarter of a million more perished on the way thither. The Quakers early opposed this shameful

Abolition of the slave trade

[1] See page 659.

[2] See page 613.

practice, and after the great religious revival of Wesley[1] they were joined by the Methodists, and, indeed, by all enlightened and humane people. Finally, in 1807, Parliament prohibited Englishmen from engaging in the slave trade.[2] The Congress of Vienna, to its credit, pronounced against the traffic which had so long desolated Africa and degraded Europe, and in subsequent years the Continental nations, one after another, agreed that it should no longer enjoy the protection of their flags. Since the last decade of the nineteenth century the European powers have also taken concerted measures to stamp out what remains of the slave trade in the interior of the Dark Continent.

Slavery had all but died out in Christian lands by the close of the Middle Ages. It revived, on a much larger scale, after the era of geographical discovery, which opened up Africa as a source of slaves and America as a field for their profitable employment. The French revolutionists abolished slavery in the colonies of France, but Napoleon restored it. Great Britain in 1833 passed an act to free the slaves in the British West Indies, paying one hundred million dollars to their former masters as compensation. This abolition of slavery, as well as of the slave trade, is a monument to the humanitarian labors of William Wilberforce, who for nearly half a century devoted his wealth, his energies, and his powerful oratory to the cause of the oppressed negroes. Within the next thirty years slavery peacefully disappeared in the colonial possessions of France, Portugal, and Holland, but in the United States only at the cost of civil war. Brazil, in 1888, was the last Christian state to put an end to slavery.

Abolition of slavery

The penal code of eighteenth-century Europe must be described as barbarous. Torture of an accused person, in order to obtain a confession, usually preceded his trial. Only a few nations, Great Britain among them, forbade its use. Prisons were private property, and the in-

The old penal code

[1] See page 283.

[2] The United States, under one of the clauses of the Constitution (Article I, Section 9) tolerated the importation of negro slaves until 1808.

PETTY OFFENDERS IN THE PILLORY

After a French drawing of the early nineteenth century.

mates, whether innocent or guilty, had to pay their keeper for food and other necessaries. Men, women, and children were herded together, the hardened criminals with the first offenders. Branding, flogging, and exposure in the pillory formed common punishments. Death was the punishment for murder, arson, burglary, horse-stealing, theft, forgery, counterfeiting, and many other crimes. The British code included over two hundred capital offenses. A man (or a woman) might be hanged for stealing as little as five shillings from a shop or for picking a pocket to the value of a single shilling. Transportation to America or to Australia was often substituted, however, for the death penalty. Executions took place in public, on the mistaken theory that to see them would deter from crime.

Reform of the penal code

The great name in penal reform is that of the Italian Beccaria, whose *Essay on Crimes and Punishments* appeared in 1764. It bore early fruit in the general abolition of torture and of such ferocious punishments as burning alive, breaking on the wheel, and drawing and quartering. Penal reform in France was hastened by the

ELIZABETH FRY

Revolution. Great Britain from about 1815 began to reduce the number of capital offenses, until only high treason, piracy, and murder remained. One consequence of the reform was a striking diminution of crime, though judges and other conservative persons had predicted just the reverse. Capital punishment has now been abolished by several European countries, including Italy, Portugal, Holland, Norway, and Rumania. A few American states do not inflict the death penalty.

Prison reform accompanied the reform of the criminal code. One of the leaders of this humanitarian movement was a Quakeress, Mrs. Elizabeth Fry. Not content with Great Britain as a field for labor, she extended her efforts to all the principal European countries. Much has been done within the past century to improve sanitary conditions in prisons, to abolish the lock-step, striped clothing, and other humiliating practices in the treatment of prisoners, and, by means of juvenile courts and reformatories, to separate first offenders from hardened criminals. Even as regards the latter, the idea is now to make confinement less a punishment than a means of developing the convict's self-respect and manhood, so that he may return to free life a useful member of society. Prison reform in the various countries has been much advanced by international congresses. The last took place in 1910, twenty-eight states being represented at the meeting.

Prison reform

A Lunatic

After an eighteenth century engraving, showing a lunatic, barefoot, scantily clothed, and chained by the neck to a wall.

The modern attitude toward the feeble-minded and the insane contrasts sharply with earlier ideas concerning them. Mentally defective persons are no longer regarded with amusement or contempt, but are rather considered as pitiful victims of heredity or of circumstances for which they were not responsible. Every civilized country now

Treatment of defectives

provides asylums for their proper care under medical supervision. There are also special schools for the benefit of the blind and of the deaf and dumb.

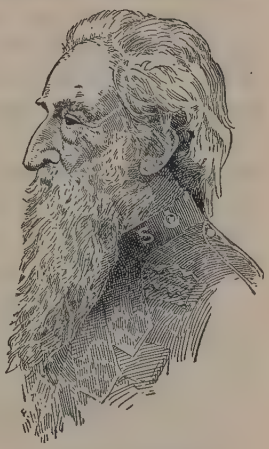
An increasing sympathy with the brute creation also characterizes our age. The British Society for the Prevention of Cruelty to Animals was founded only in 1824. Ten years later Parliament did away with bull baiting and cock fighting, which had long been favorite amusements of the lower classes, and prohibited cruelty to all domestic animals. Similar legislation has been enacted on the Continent, as well as in the United States.

Treatment of animals

The crusade against alcoholism further illustrates humanitarian progress. The use of intoxicants, formerly uncondemned, more and more comes under moral reprobation, as it is realized that they form one of the most potent agencies of man's degeneration. The World War led Russia to abolish the government monopoly of vodka and other countries to restrict the consumption of alcoholic liquors. In 1919 Norway and Belgium adopted partial prohibition (excluding beer and light wines), while Finland declared for unlimited prohibition. In the United States the temperance movement was especially actuated by hostility toward the saloon, as a mischievous agency which interfered in politics and flaunted its temptations before the youth of the country. The failure of attempts to find substitutes for the saloon convinced a good many people that this baleful influence could only be removed from American life by drastic measures of prohibition. Abolition of the liquor traffic in the United States was long agitated by private organizations, such as the Women's Christian Temperance Union (under the presidency of Miss Frances E. Willard) and more recently by the Anti-Saloon League. Maine adopted legal prohibition in 1884. Many states in the Middle West and the South subsequently took the same action. Prohibition sentiment became at length so strong that a constitutional amendment, forbidding the manufacture, sale, or transportation of intoxicating liquors throughout the country, was ratified by more than three-fourths of the state legisla-

Abolition of the liquor traffic

tures by January 16, 1919. This Eighteenth Amendment went into effect one year after ratification.



WILLIAM BOOTH

Philanthropic agencies

Efforts to relieve poverty and suffering have given rise to charity organization societies, associations for improving the condition of the poor, dispensaries, anti-tuberculosis leagues, fresh-air funds, and numerous other philanthropic agencies in both Europe and America. The Salvation Army was started in Great Britain by William Booth, a Methodist minister, with the idea of bettering both the physical and spiritual condition of those who are not reached by other religious bodies. Since its foundation in 1878 the Salvation Army has spread to the United States and other countries. The Young Men's Christian Association also arose in Great Britain, but the Y. M. C. A. is now well known all over the world.

HENRI DUNANT

The Red Cross

The Red Cross owes its inspiration to a young Swiss, Henri Dunant, who had witnessed the bloody battle of Solferino in the Austro-Sardinian War,[1] and whose experience prompted him to urge the formation of relief societies for the care of sick and wounded soldiers. The result was an international gathering at Geneva in

[1] See page 400.

1864 and the framing of an agreement to alleviate the horrors of modern warfare. The ten states which originally ratified the Geneva Convention have since been joined by practically all civilized powers. To carry out the convention the International Red Cross Society was formed, with headquarters at Geneva and branches in the various countries. Henri Dunant's name is scarcely known to-day, but the organization which he did most to found has now become a world-wide institution for the relief of all suffering, whether caused by war or by pestilence, floods, fire, or other calamities. It is the greatest single agency at work for the amelioration of mankind.

185. Emancipation of Women and Children

Woman's position in Europe a century ago was what it had been in the Middle Ages — a position of dependence on man. She received little or no education, seldom engaged in anything but housework, and for support relied on husband, father, or brother. After marriage she became subject to her husband. In Great Britain she could neither make a will nor enter into a contract without his consent. All her possessions belonged to him. Any money that she earned or inherited was his and might be taken to pay his debts. The law even deprived her of control over her own children. Similar disabilities rested upon Continental women.

Disabilities of woman

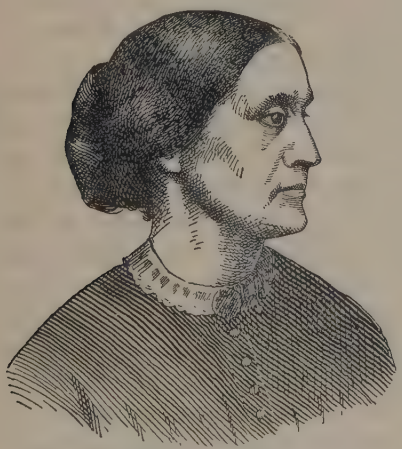
The humanitarian sentiment evoked by the French Revolution began by freeing slave and serf, but presently demanded the emancipation of woman also. The demand received a powerful impetus from the Industrial Revolution, which opened new employments to woman outside the home and thus lessened her economic dependence on man. The agitation for woman's rights has so far succeeded that most civilized countries now permit her to own property, engage in business, and enter the professions on her own account. Her educational opportunities have also steadily widened.

Woman's rights

Wesleyan College, Georgia, and Mount Holyoke Female Seminary, Massachusetts, were the pioneer colleges for women in America. Both were incorporated in 1836. Oberlin College (1833) was the first private institution and the University of Iowa (1856) was the first state university to adopt coeducation. The higher educational institutions of Great Britain, France, Italy, and most other European countries permit women to hear lectures and to receive degrees on the same terms as men.

MARY LYON
Founder of Mt. Holyoke Female Seminary.

Woman suffrage scored its first victories in Scandinavia. During the decade before the World War, both Finland and Norway permitted women to vote at general elections. **Woman suffrage abroad** Denmark and Sweden extended voting privileges to women shortly after the outbreak of the war. The women of Holland received full suffrage in 1918, and those of Belgium partial suffrage in 1919. Republican Germany, Austria, Czecho-Slovakia, and Poland give women the vote. The Equal Franchise Act,[1] passed by the British Parliament in



SUSAN B. ANTHONY
After a photograph taken at the age of forty-eight.

[1] See page 430.

1918, has practically doubled the electorate of the United Kingdom. Australia and New Zealand have woman suffrage, as well as Mexico and Soviet Russia.

Woman suffrage in the United States

As far back as 1869, when the Fifteenth Amendment to the Constitution, granting suffrage to negroes, was before Congress, Miss Susan B. Anthony and her associates appealed to the legislators for the recognition of women as well. The appeal was denied. The women then organized the National Woman Suffrage Association and began a campaign of education to convince thinking people of the justice of their cause. Years passed without much apparent progress being made. Wyoming, when admitted to statehood in 1892, gave the ballot to women, and by 1918 fourteen other states had done the same. Finally, the constitutional amendment for woman suffrage (sometimes called the "Susan B. Anthony Amendment"), which had been constantly before Congress for forty years, received the approval of that body and went to the country, with every prospect of speedy ratification by three-fourths of the states. It was ratified in 1920, thus establishing complete political democracy in the United States.

Divorce

The divorce laws of the Christian world exhibit a bewildering variety. Roman Catholic countries, including Italy and Spain (and Portugal until the recent revolution there), preserve the medieval conception of marriage as a sacrament and therefore do not allow divorce under any circumstances. The same is true of most Latin American states. Countries adhering to the Greek Church allow divorce. Those governed or influenced by the *Code Napoléon*, in particular, France, Belgium, Holland, Switzerland, and Germany, do the same. Divorce was allowed by English law only as late as 1857. It is rare in Great Britain, as well as in Canada. The laws of the United States present no uniformity, some states granting divorce on much easier terms than others. The result has been a very marked annual increase in the number of divorces. In general, modern legislation tends to treat marriage as a civil contract and to permit its dissolution for

immorality, cruelty, desertion, habitual drunkenness, and serious crime, that is, for such behavior of one party to the contract as makes married life impossible or unbearable to the other party.

The decline of the husband's power over his wife has been accompanied by a decline of the father's authority over his children. Among early peoples, the ancient Romans for example, the father's control of his offspring was absolute, and their liberty was often sacrificed to his despotic rule. The Roman idea of family obligations survived in Europe through the Middle Ages and still lingers in Latin countries at the present time. In Anglo-Saxon countries, on the other hand, both law and custom regard the grown-up child as independent of the father. Even his authority over minors is considered mainly in the light of guardianship. This liberal conception of paternal rights bids fair to prevail among all civilized peoples.

Emancipation of children

186. Popular Education and the Higher Learning

The schools of the Middle Ages were neither public nor free nor secular. All were private schools where pupils paid fees for their tuition, and almost all were founded and conducted by the clergy. As we will remember,[1] the beginnings of popular education reach back to the Reformation era, when elementary schools, supported by general taxation, began to spring up in Germany, Holland, Scotland, and Puritan New England. This free common school system, which it is the glory of the reformers to have established, gradually spread throughout the United States during the nineteenth century and became entirely secular in character. Secondary education was also democratized by the founding of free high schools for both boys and girls. The advance of democratic ideas in Europe has produced a similar movement there in favor of popular education.

Popular education

British statesmen for a long time looked with disfavor upon

[1] See page 249.

projects for public schools. Education, they thought, unfits the people for manual labor and nourishes revolutionary ideas.

Public schools in Great Britain

"If a horse knew as much as a man, I should not like to be its rider," declared a peer in Parliament, when voting against an appropriation for educational purposes. In 1870, after the passage of the Second Reform Act, which enfranchised the working classes, the government set up for the first time a national system of instruction. "We must educate our masters," it was said. Elementary education in Great Britain is now free, compulsory, and secular. Many parents, however, prefer to send their children to private institutions under the control of the Established Church. The public and private schools together have well-nigh abolished illiteracy. An important Education Act, which Parliament passed in 1918, obligates the government to bear one-half of the total budget for educational purposes of every local community. All teachers are put on the civil service pension list. Medical inspection and treatment, together with careful physical training, are provided for every child from the time of entering school until the age of eighteen. This measure also places all private schools under the control of the State.

The French revolutionists believed with Danton that "next to bread, education is the first need of the people." They pre-

Public schools in France

pared an elaborate scheme for public schools, but never carried it into effect. Napoleon also aimed to set up a State system of education through primary and grammar grades to the *lycées*, or high schools. Lack of funds and of experienced lay teachers handicapped the emperor's efforts, and at the close of the Napoleonic era the majority of French children still attended private schools conducted by the Church. France waited until the 'eighties of the last century before securing a truly national system of education. This was largely the work of Jules Ferry, one of Gambetta's disciples. In recent decades the government has appropriated large sums for educational purposes, and illiteracy is to-day practically nonexistent.

Prussia began to reorganize elementary education along modern lines as early as the reign of Frederick the Great and carried the work further after her crushing defeat by Napoleon.[1] The public school movement has made much progress in other Continental countries during recent years. The percentage of illiteracy is still high in Italy and higher still in Spain, Portugal, and the Balkan states, while in Russia most of the peasants are too ignorant to sign their names. With such exceptions, however, Europe now agrees with the United States that at least the rudiments of an education should be the birthright of every child, that common schools are the pillars of democracy.

Public schools elsewhere on the Continent

The United States has done much more than Europe in popularizing the higher learning. The American state university, with its wide curriculum of both liberal and practical subjects, is another nineteenth-century innovation. Previous to its establishment private denominational institutions prepared men for the ministry and a few other learned professions. Several southern states (notably Virginia in 1817) were the first to found universities, but the movement really began with the chartering of the University of Michigan in 1837. State universities, admitting both men and women, are now found in all the American commonwealths south and west of Pennsylvania. Their work is supplemented not only by private colleges and universities, but also by the splendid benefactions associated with the names of Rockefeller and Carnegie. A university education in Europe is still commonly restricted to people of means. There is a growing tendency, especially in Great Britain, to make the higher learning more accessible to poor but ambitious students.

The higher learning

187. Religious Development

Few of us realize how gradually the principle of religious toleration has won acceptance in modern times.[2] At first only certain Protestant sects, such as the Lutherans in Germany

[1] See page 345.

[2] See pages 283–284.

after the Peace of Augsburg and the Huguenots in France after the Edict of Nantes, enjoyed liberty of conscience and worship. Next, the same privileges were granted to all Protestant sects, as in Holland, in England by the Toleration Act, and in the American colonies. Finally, toleration was extended to every one, whether Protestant or Roman Catholic, Christian or non-Christian. The First Amendment to the Constitution of the United States provides that Congress shall make no law prohibiting the "free exercise of religion." The French revolutionists in the Declaration of the Rights of Man also announced that no one should be disturbed on account of his religious opinions, provided he did not thereby trouble public order. The Great Elector and Frederick the Great established toleration in Prussia. It was secured in the rest of Germany and in Austria-Hungary and Italy only during the latter part of the nineteenth century. While Roman Catholicism is the prevailing faith in all the Latin American republics, freedom of worship is commonly permitted by them. It may be said, broadly, that throughout the Christian world the various churches have now abandoned the practice of compulsion in religion. Men of different beliefs have found that they can live peaceably side by side with one another in the same country.

Religious toleration

The Church in the Middle Ages controlled, or tried to control, the State, upon the theory that temporal as well as spiritual authority is derived from the pope. The Reformation, in those countries where it succeeded, merely substituted a number of separate national churches for the one Church of Rome. To Roger Williams and William Penn in the seventeenth century belongs the honor of having founded in Rhode Island and Pennsylvania, respectively, the first political communities where religious matters were taken entirely out of the hands of the civil government. The ideas of Williams and Penn found expression in the First Amendment to the Constitution of the United States. Congress is forbidden to make any law "respecting an establishment of religion." This means that the

Separation of Church and State in the New World

federal government cannot appropriate money for the support of any church. No such restriction binds the several states, but most of their constitutions repeat the federal prohibition. Church and State are absolutely separate in Canada, as well as in Mexico, Brazil, and some of the smaller Latin American countries.

The separation of Church and State prevails in Australia, South Africa, and other parts of the British Empire. The Liberal Party under Gladstone disestablished the Anglican Church in Ireland (1869) and under Lloyd George disestablished it in Wales (1914). The French revolutionists, by the Constitution of 1795, separated Church and State, but a few years later Napoleon's Concordat with the pope again made Roman Catholicism the official religion. The Concordat was abrogated as recently as 1905, and both Catholic and Protestant bodies in France now depend entirely upon voluntary contributions for support. The Portuguese revolutionists, when founding a republic in 1910, disestablished the Roman Church, and the Russian revolutionists in 1917 disestablished the Orthodox Church. The new constitution of republican Germany practically disestablishes the Prussian Protestant Church, whose head was the kaiser. This action has considerable significance, for before the German Revolution the Protestant Church in Prussia formed a leading prop of divine-right monarchy; altar and throne justified and blessed each other. The constitutions of Czecho-Slovakia and Poland also provide for the separation of Church and State.

Disestablishment in the Old World

The pontificate of Pius IX was marked by the meeting of the Vatican Council (1869–1870), the first general council of the Roman Catholic Church since that at Trent, three centuries previously. Nearly eight hundred prelates from all parts of the world were present. They affirmed the dogma of papal infallibility, declaring that when the pope speaks *ex cathedra*,[1] or by virtue of his apostolic authority, on matters of faith and morals, he cannot err. His decisions, therefore, bind the whole Church. This formal declaration

Papal infallability

[1] Literally, "from the throne."

ARCTIC OCEAN
ATLANTIC OCEAN
PACIFIC OCEAN
INDIAN OCEAN
ASIA
EUROPE
AFRICA
NORTH AMERICA
SOUTH AMERICA
AUSTRALIA
GREENLAND
ICELAND
SPITZBERGEN
ARCTIC CIRCLE
BRITISH ISLES
DOMINION OF CANADA
UNITED STATES
MEXICO
WEST INDIES
CENTRAL AMERICA
EQUATOR
TROPIC OF CANCER
TROPIC OF CAPRICORN
MADAGASCAR
PHILIPPINES
NEW ZEALAND
ALASKA
SIBERIA
MONGOLIA
TURKESTAN
TIBET
CHINA
JAPAN
PERSIA
ARABIA
TURKEY
RUSSIA
RELIGIONS OF THE WORLD
Christians
Moslems
Buddhists
Brahmanists
Heathen
THE M.-N. WORKS.

of the pope's spiritual position occurred at the very moment when he lost what remained of his temporal power in Italy.[1]

The liberal movement in religion has carried further that multiplication of sects which began with the Reformation. Baptists, Quakers, and Methodists arose in Great Britain during the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries.[2] Other sects, including the Adventists, Universalists, and Disciples of Christ, and even new religions, such as Mormonism, Spiritualism, and Christian Science, have originated in the United States.

Sects

Both Freemasonry and Oddfellowship took their present form in Great Britain about two centuries ago. They now have thousands of lodges and several millions of members throughout the world. Their organization makes it possible for them to admit votaries of even non-Christian faiths, as in India.

Secret societies

Considerably over a third of the earth's peoples are Christians. The adherents of Roman Catholicism number perhaps 275,000,000; those of the Protestant denominations, perhaps 175,000,000; and those of the Greek Church, perhaps 125,000,000. The Jews are estimated at 10,000,000. For the other world religions the following figures must be considered merely rough approximations: Moslems, 225,000,000; Brahmanists (in India), 225,000,000; Buddhists (China, Japan, Tibet, Mongolia, Indo-China), 450,000,000. In this estimate the entire populations of China and Japan are counted as Buddhists, owing to the difficulty of separating Buddhism in those countries from the national faiths.

The world religions

The conversion of the non-Christian world, including perhaps 150,000,000 heathen in Africa, Asia, Oceania, and America, is the stupendous task to which Christian peoples have addressed themselves since the Middle Ages. The work of Roman Catholic missionaries in christianizing most of the Filipinos and the Indians of Latin

Missions

[1] See page 469.

[2] See page 283.

America and Canada has already been noticed.[1] Several Protestant denominations founded missionary societies in the eighteenth century, and by the middle of the nineteenth century almost every branch of Protestantism, both in Europe and America, had representatives throughout the non-Christian world. The number of Christians attached to missions is reckoned at 10,000,000, about equally divided between Catholic and Protestant converts.

Missions and civilization

But the results of Christian missions cannot be expressed statistically. Missionaries have been well called the advance-guard of modern civilization. They establish schools and colleges, build hospitals, introduce scientific medicine and sanitation, familiarize the natives with inventions and discoveries, and often succeed in stamping out cruel superstitions, together with such practices as cannibalism and human sacrifice. Native converts become, in turn, the means of extending the benefits of modern civilization among their countrymen. The effect of missionary enterprise is therefore enormous, even when conversions are relatively few. We may safely include Christian missions among the most important of all agencies for bringing backward peoples into the common brotherhood of mankind.

188. Science

Science in modern life

A hundred years ago, science enjoyed only a limited recognition in universities and none at all in secondary and elementary schools. The marvelous achievements of scientific men fixed public attention on their work, and courses in science began to displace the older "classical" studies. At the same time science has become an international force which recognizes no national boundaries, no distinctions of race or religion. Scientists in every land follow one another's researches; they carry on their labor in common.

Many pages would be needed merely to enumerate the

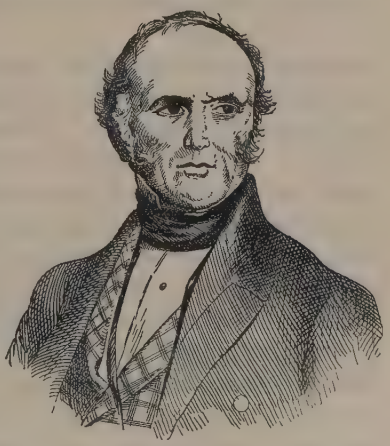
[1] See pages 256 and 563.

scientific discoveries that have been made in our age. Some of these have changed in many ways our ideas regarding the world of matter, and have increased man's power of using certain of the great forces of nature.

Pure Science

The astronomer found a new planet, Neptune;[1] measured the distances of the fixed stars and the size of some of the largest; and began the enormous task of photographing the heavens and cataloguing the many billions of suns which form our universe.

The physicist determined the velocity of light and showed that light, radiant heat, electricity, and magnetism are due to waves or undulations of the ether; that all these are, in fact, interconvertible forms of cosmic energy.



Sir Charles Lyell
After a painting by T. H. Maguire.

The chemist proved that matter exists in a solid, liquid, or gaseous state according to the degree of heat to which it is subjected; that it is composed of one or more of ninety-odd elements; and that when these elements combine with one another they do so in fixed proportions, as when one part of hydrogen by weight unites with eight parts of oxygen by weight to form nine parts of water.

The biologist discovered that all plants and animals, from the lowest to the highest, are made up of cells containing the transparent jelly or protoplasm which is the basis of life.

The uniformitarian theory

New conceptions of the earth were set forth by Sir Charles Lyell in his *Principles of Geology* (1830–1833). He explained the changes which have produced mountains, valleys, plains, lakes, sea-coasts, and other natural

[1] Uranus had been discovered in the eighteenth century.

features, not as the result of convulsions or great catastrophes, such as had been previously supposed to have caused them, but as due to erosion by water, the action of frost and snow, and other forces working gradually over immense periods of time.

The acceptance of Lyell's uniformitarian theory, coupled with the discovery of fossils in the rocks, made it necessary to reckon the age of the earth by untold millions, instead of a few thousands, of years. The further discovery in western Europe of rude stone implements and human bones associated with the remains of extinct animals, such as the mammoth, woolly rhinoceros, and cave bear, indicated the existence of man himself at a remote period.

Extraordinary interest has been excited in recent years by the so-called relativity theory put forth by the German-Swiss physicist and mathematician, Albert Einstein. His contributions to our ideas of time and space, and to our knowledge of the world in general, are regarded as worthy to be compared in importance with the great discoveries made by Copernicus and Newton.

The relativity theory

Einstein conceives of the universe as four-dimensional, "time" being accepted as the fourth dimension, along with length, breadth, and height. He would explain gravitation as the effect of a warping or strain in this four-dimensional universe, due to the presence of matter in space. This explanation, if accepted, disposes of the old view of gravitation as a real force acting between any two bodies at a distance from each other.

Einstein also rejects the widely accepted hypothesis of space as filled by the mysterious ether, since such an hypothesis does not seem necessary to explain light and other electro-magnetic phenomena. He also presents another conception of the universe, which is regarded by him as continuous like any sphere but yet of finite size.

The theory of relativity has already been to some extent confirmed by experiments that have been made by other scientists, but its full significance cannot be grasped without the aid of the higher mathematics.

The practical applications of science are innumerable. They add to the comfort and convenience of the humblest what the rich and powerful of an earlier age could not enjoy. Applied physics gave us the telegraph, telephone, electric lighting, and electric motive force. More recently, wireless telegraphy and the radio have developed from the discovery in 1887 of the "Hertzian waves," or electromagnetic vibrations in the ether. In 1895 the German Röntgen discovered the X-rays, and in 1898 the French professor Curie, assisted by his Polish wife, obtained from the mineral called pitchblende the mysterious radium. It is a more intense producer of the X-rays than any other substance, yet wastes away with incredible slowness.

Applied physics and chemistry

Physicists have now found many other radioactive bodies and have proved that radioactivity is due to the breaking-up of atoms, which are not the indivisible entities they were once supposed to be. We now have learned something about the marvelous structure of the atom. It has been likened to our solar system — if one may be permitted to compare the infinitely little with the infinitely great. An atom consists of a nucleus, with a positive charge of electricity, and a number of electrons, negatively charged, which revolve with tremendous speed around the nucleus. This revelation of vast atomic energy leads to the belief that long before our supplies of coal and oil are exhausted, a source of unlimited power may be found in the disintegration of the atom.

Applied chemistry gave us illuminating gas, friction matches, such powerful explosives as dynamite and nitroglycerine, which are produced from animal or vegetable fats, artificial fertilizers, beet sugar, aluminum, and various derivatives of coal tar, including the anile dyes, carbolic acid, naphtha, and saccharine. The chemist now creates in his laboratory many organic substances which had previously been produced only by plants or in the bodies of animals.

The practical applications of biology are seen in the germ theory of disease. The researches of the Frenchman, Louis Pasteur, upon vegetable micro-organisms (bacteria) proved that

the harmful kinds are responsible for definite diseases in both plants and animals. Dr. Robert Koch of Berlin soon isolated the germs which produce tuberculosis and cholera, and since 1880 those producing diphtheria, typhoid fever, influenza, pneumonia, lockjaw, bubonic plague, and other dread scourges have been identified. In some cases remedies called antitoxins are now administered to counteract the bacterial toxins or poisons. Another step in medicine is the discovery that certain diseases are spread in some one particular way. The bite of one species of mosquito causes malaria and that of another yellow fever; lice transmit typhus; the tsetse-fly carries the sleeping sickness; and fleas on rats convey the bubonic plague to man. All this new knowledge enables us to look forward with confidence to a time when contagious and infectious diseases will be eliminated from civilized countries.

Medicine and surgery

Meanwhile, surgery has been revolutionized by the use of anæsthetics, such as nitrous oxide (laughing gas), ether, and chloroform. Their use in England and the United States goes back to the 'forties of the last century. Some years later the Englishman, Joseph Lister, discovered that carbolic acid is a powerful germicide, which, applied to wounds, could prevent them from festering. The result of his discovery was the general adoption of antisepsis in surgical operations. Doctors now pay a great deal of attention to asepsis as well, that is, to methods of keeping their instruments and dressings free from germs or other harmful organisms.

The advance of both pure and applied science is due, in the first place, to improved methods of investigation. Lord Bacon, the great English thinker, statesman, and author, who flourished during the reign of James I, severely criticized the scholasticism of the Middle Ages, with its exaggerated veneration for the written word, and proposed, instead, that we gather our knowledge from the book of Nature. According to Bacon, the scientist should collect, tabulate, and analyze as many facts as possible, with a view to detecting the relations between them and of discovering what are "causes"

Methods of science

MADAME CURIE

LOUIS PASTEUR

and what are "effects." This is the method of observation and experiment, or *induction*. But no modern scientist relies exclusively upon it; he also makes use of *deduction*. He frames some hypothesis to explain the phenomena under investigation, deduces the consequences which logically follow from the hypothesis, and then compares them with the facts as learned by observation or experiment. If agreement is found, then the hypothesis will be so far confirmed; if non-agreement, then the hypothesis may require modification or perhaps may have to be abandoned altogether. Darwin's theory of "natural selection" is a conspicuous instance of a scientific hypothesis in biology. In astronomy a good example is the nebular hypothesis,[1] according to which our own and other solar systems have been produced by the condensation of nebulous matter once diffused through space. It will be seen that patient, plodding investigation does not form the whole of science; a place exists in it for the widest flights of the scientific imagination.

In the second place, scientific advance is due to the improvement of apparatus. The giant telescope enables the astronomer to measure the movements of stars so incredibly remote that their light rays, which we now see, started earthwards before the dawn of the Christian era. The spectroscope analyzes the constituents of the most distant heavenly bodies and proves that they are composed of the same kinds of matter as our planet. The compound microscope reveals the existence of a hitherto unsuspected realm of minute life in earth and air and water. The scientific possibilities of the photographic camera, especially in the form of moving pictures, have only recently been revealed. Science now depends on the use of precise instruments of research as much as industry depends on machinery.

Scientific apparatus

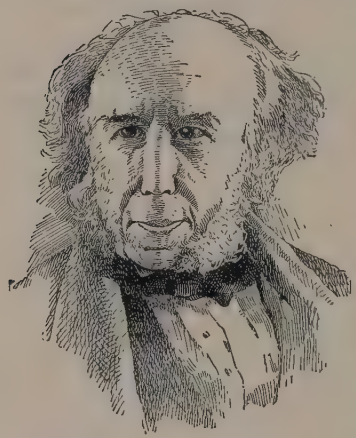
189. Philosophy and Literature

Since the beginning of the nineteenth century man has become more and more interested in himself; he has resolved

[1] Especially associated with the French astronomer Laplace (1749–1827).

to learn what he is, whence he came, and what he shall be. These are the old questions of philosophy. Herbert Spencer (1820–1903), the close friend of Darwin, sought to answer them with the aid of evolutionary principles. The ten volumes of his *Synthetic Philosophy* form an ambitious attempt to explain the development of the universe as a whole, from the atom to the star, from the one-celled organism to man. Spencer was a pioneer in the study of psychology, that branch of philosophy dealing with the mental processes of both man and the lower animals.

Philosophy



HERBERT SPENCER
After a photograph of the philosopher at the age of seventy-eight.

Spencer also broke fresh ground in the study of sociology. He carried over the principle of evolution into human society, with the purpose of showing how languages, laws, religions, customs, and all other institutions naturally arise and develop among mankind. "Sociology," as the name for this new subject, had been previously introduced by the French philosopher, Auguste Comte.

Sociology

The study of history has been transformed under the influence of the sociologists. It is no longer merely a narrative in chronological order of political and military events, but rather an account of the entire culture of a people. The historian wants to learn about their houses, furniture, costumes, and food; how they made their living; what buildings they raised, what books they read; what schools they supported; what beliefs and superstitions they held; what amusements and festivals they enjoyed. Some historical students do not limit inquiry to civilized man, but also investigate the culture of savage and barbarous peoples as found to-day or

History and anthropology

once found in remote ages. History, so considered, is closely related to anthropology, one of the most fascinating of the newer branches of learning.

Public schools, public libraries, and cheap books, magazines, and newspapers have multiplied readers. Literature, in consequence, is now a profession, and the successful novelist or poet may secure a world-wide audience. **Fiction** Sir Walter Scott did much to give the novel popularity through his historical tales. Dickens, Thackeray, and other English writers made it a presentation of contemporary life. On the Continent almost all the celebrated authors of the past century have been novelists. It is sufficient to mention four only, whose fame has gone out into many lands: the Frenchman Victor Hugo; the Italian Manzoni; the Russian Tolstoy; and the Pole Sienkiewicz.

Victor Hugo

After a painting by Léon Bonnat.

The drama rivals the novel in popularity among all classes. It presents either a picture of bygone ages or scenes from everyday life. In no country does it assume more importance than in France, where the theater is considered a branch of public instruction. Much dramatic poetry, however, is written to be read, rather than for acting on the stage. **Poetry** Lyric poetry has been produced in all countries, notably in Great Britain, France, Germany, Italy and the

United States, and has become the favorite style of poetic expression.

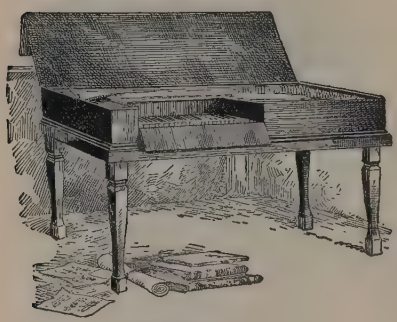
190. Music and the Fine Arts

Music now takes almost as large a place as literature in modern life. Even more than literature, it ranks as an international force, for the musician, whatever his nationality, uses a language which needs no translation to be intelligible.

Music in modern life

During medieval times music was chiefly used in the services of the Church. The Renaissance began to secularize music, so that it might express all human joy, sadness, passion, and aspiration. The secular art thus includes operas, chamber music (for rendition in a small apartment instead of in a theater or concert hall), compositions for soloists, and orchestral symphonies.

Sacred and secular music



Mozart's Spinet

Stadt Museum, Vienna

The spinet had only one string to a note, plucked by means of a quill or a plectrum of leather.

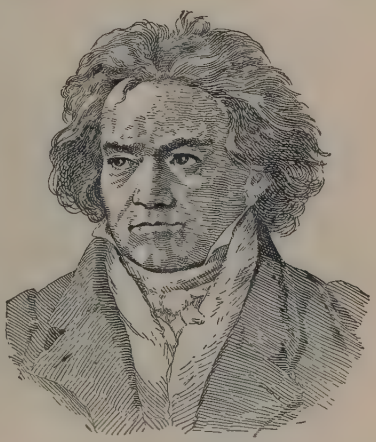
The Middle Ages knew the pipe-organ, harp, flute, drum, trumpet, and many other instruments. These were often played together, but with no other purpose than to increase the volume of sound. There was not the slightest idea of orchestration. After the Renaissance new instruments began to appear, including the violin, viols of all sizes, the slide trombone, and the clarinet. Percussion action, applied to the old-fashioned spinet and harpsichord, produced in the eighteenth century the pianoforte. The symphony, a tone poem combining all musical sounds into a harmonious whole, now began to assume its present form. The great symphonists — Haydn, Mozart,

The orchestra

that supreme genius Beethoven (1770–1827), and their successors in the nineteenth century — thus created a new art to enrich the higher life of mankind.

Another master of music, Richard Wagner (1813–1883), created the musical drama, which unites music, poetry, and acting. Wagner believed that the singer should also be an actor and should adapt both song and gesture to the orchestra. He also gave much attention to the scenery and stagesetting in order to heighten the dramatic effect. Wagner's most famous work, *The Ring of the Nibelung*, consists of four complete dramas based on old Teutonic legend.

The musical drama



Ludwig van Beethoven
After a painting by A. Kloeber, 1817.

A new source of music has been opened up in the melodies of the European peasantry — their folk songs. Almost every country in Europe is rich in these musical wild flowers, and they are now being gathered by trained collectors. Lullabies, marriage ditties, funeral dirges, and ballads are some of the varieties of folk songs.

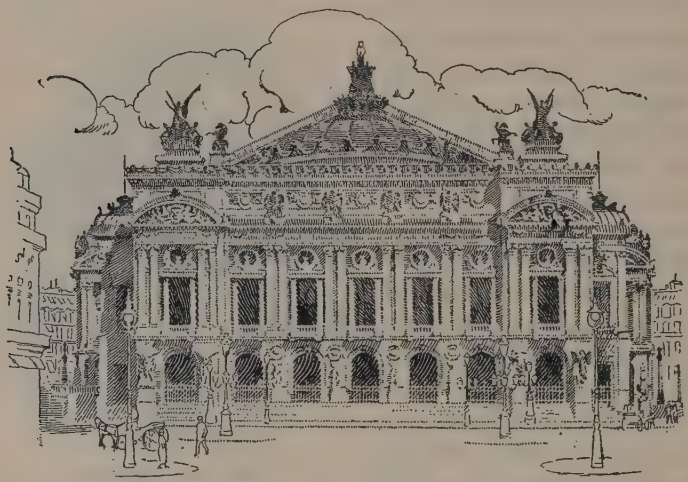
Folk songs

Like music, sculpture illustrates the internationalism of art. The three greatest sculptors of the nineteenth century were Canova, an Italian, Thorwaldsen, a Dane, and Rodin, a Frenchman. The first two found inspiration mainly in classic statuary, which seeks ideal beauty of form; the third expressed in marble the utmost realism and naturalism. Much fine work has also been done in bronze, for instance, the Chicago statue of Abraham Lincoln by St. Gaudens, who is rightly considered the most eminent sculptor produced by America.

Sculpture

Architecture

No century has witnessed more activity in the construction of churches, town halls, court houses, theaters, schools, and other public edifices than the nineteenth, but these have usually been reproductions of earlier buildings. Architects either went to Greece and Rome for models or imitated the Romanesque and Gothic styles. The extensive use of structural steel has now begun to produce an entirely new architectural style, more appropriate to modern needs, in the "skyscraper" of American cities. It is sometimes



THE OPERA, PARIS

Erected 1861–1875. Covers nearly three acres and cost $7,000,000. A huge dome extends over the auditorium. The interior is magnificently decorated.

criticized as being "not architecture, but engineering with a stone veneer." The criticism seems hardly just in all cases. Such a structure as the Woolworth Building in New York has a beauty of its own and truly expresses the spirit of our industrial age.

Painting

Modern painters, no longer restricted to religious pictures, often choose their subjects from history or contemporary life. They excel in portraiture, and their landscape paintings unquestionably surpass the best which even the "old masters" of the Renaissance could produce.

Painting flourishes especially in France, where the leading artists receive their training and exhibit their pictures at an annual exposition, the Salon at Paris.

191. Historic and Artistic Paris

The capitals of France and Great Britain represent much that is best in modern civilization. Paris and London are the largest cities in the Old World. Their civic life reaches back without a break to Roman times. They contain more monuments and edifices of historic or artistic interest than any other places in Europe, except Athens, Rome, and possibly Venice. To visit either of them is a liberal education.

Paris and London

Paris, the ancient *Lutetia*, first appears in history as a small settlement of the Gallic tribe of the Parisii on an island in the Seine (Île de la Cité). This was for centuries the entire site. Conquered by the Romans under Julius Cæsar, Paris formed a place of some importance in the Roman Empire and after the introduction of Christianity became the see of a bishopric. It repelled the assaults of Attila the Hun in the fifth century, but surrendered to Clovis, who made it the official residence of the Merovingian kings.

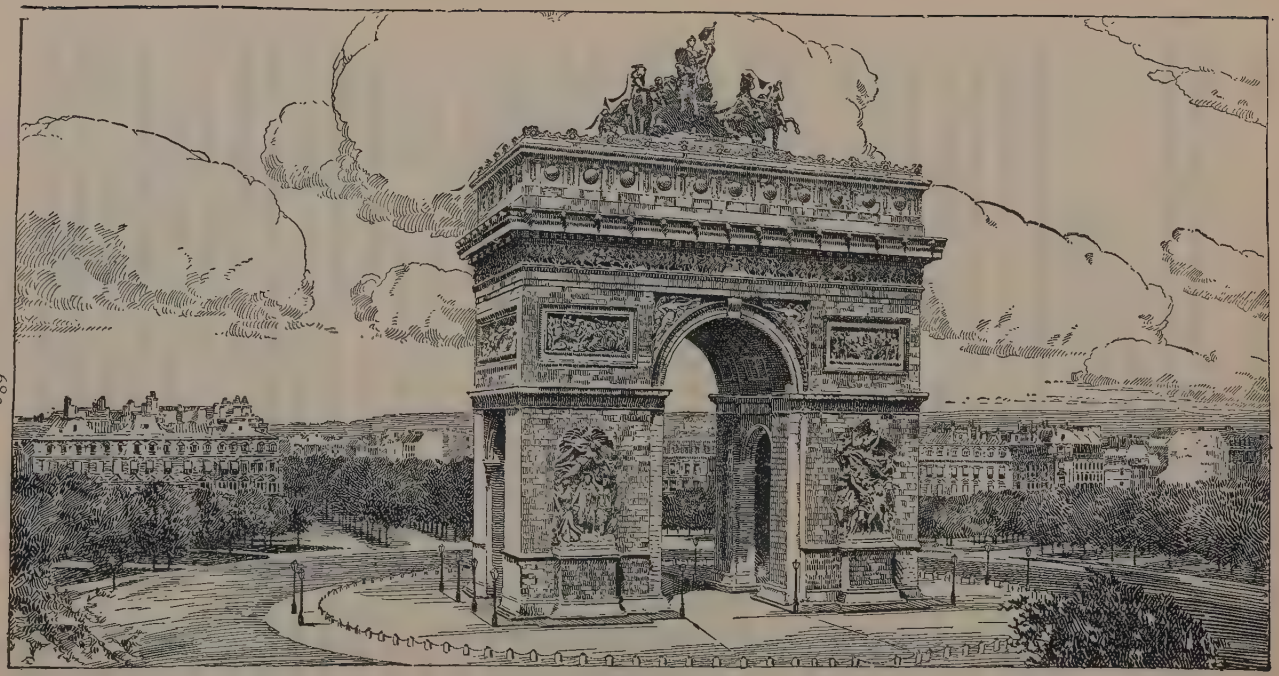
Gallic and Roman Paris

Charlemagne and the later Carolingians seldom visited Paris, which did not again become the seat of government until the accession of Hugh Capet. The great Capetian rulers of the Middle Ages showed their affection for the city by extending its walls and paving its streets, founding its university, the most famous in Christendom, and building numerous abbeys and churches in the Gothic style.

Medieval Paris

The French monarchs of the sixteenth, seventeenth, and eighteenth centuries, above all, Louis XIV, continued the embellishment of Paris. Here the first Napoleon erected his principal monuments. Still more noteworthy was the transforming work of the third Napoleon, who cleared away the maze of narrow winding streets and substituted for them broad avenues and noble squares. Paris suffered terribly at the hands of the "communards" of 1871. The

Modern Paris



ARC DE TRIOMPHE

In the center of the Place de l'Étoile, from which twelve broad avenues radiate in all directions. Commenced by Napoleon in 1805, but not completed until the reign of Louis Philippe. It is the largest triumphal arch in the world, being 162 feet high and 147 feet wide. The monument is adorned with groups of sculpture representing the military triumphs of the revolutionary and Napoleonic armies.

city soon recovered from their depredations, however, and during the last half century completed the great public works which make it the most spacious and imposing of modern capitals.

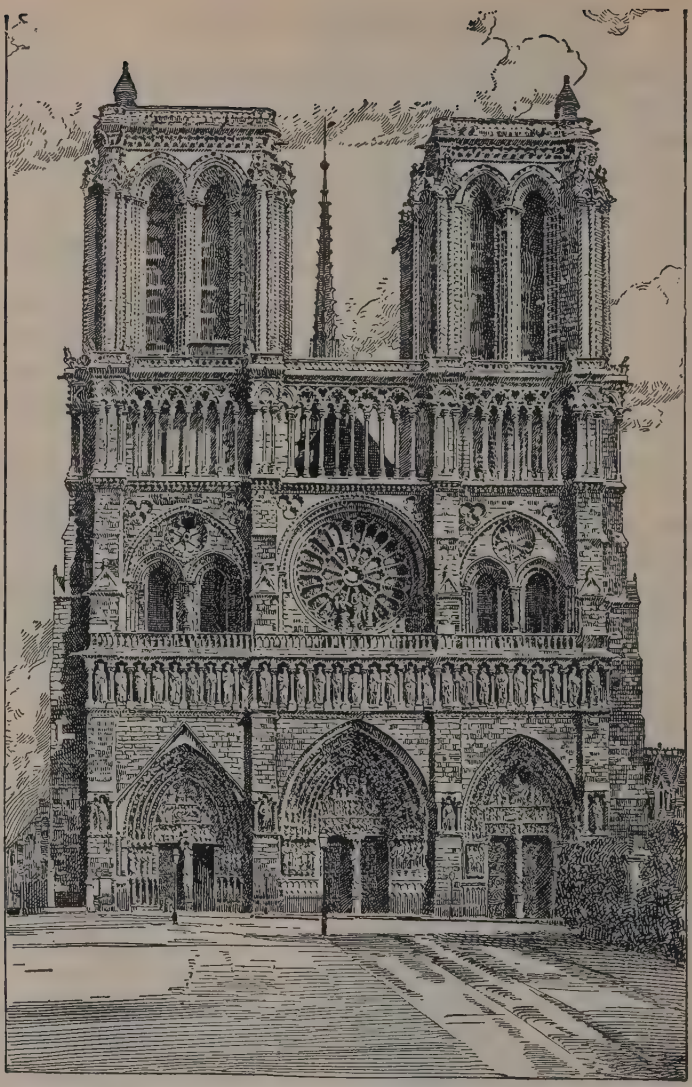
The Seine runs through Paris from east to west in a broad curve for nearly eight miles. Rising from the river are the two islands — Île de la Cité and Île St. Louis — both covered with buildings. Thirty-one handsome bridges span the Seine, and wide embankments, or quays, line its sides. The principal shops, cafés, and theaters are found on the north or right bank of the Seine, while many public buildings, schools, and museums occupy the south or left bank of the stream. **Bridges and quays**

No uniformity marks the street plan of Paris. A few of the four thousand-odd thoroughfares are shown on the map. Of these, a number are the exceptionally wide avenues and boulevards which Napoleon III constructed, as much to put an end to barricade fighting as to beautify the city. **Streets**

The squares (*places*) of Paris form one of its chief attractions. The finest is the Place de la Concorde,[1] laid out under Louis XV and noted as the scene of the execution of Louis XVI, Marie Antoinette, and many other victims of the Terror. An Egyptian obelisk occupies the center of the square. The Place de la Concorde connects by the splendid Avenue des Champs Élysées ("Elysian Fields") with the Place de l'Étoile ("Square of the Star"), containing the Arc de Triomphe. The Place Vendôme has a column surmounted by a statue of Napoleon I.[2] The Place de la Bastille, on the former site of that prison, is marked by a memorial column[3] in honor of those who fell in the "July Revolution" of 1830. **Squares**

Not less attractive are the promenades and parks of Paris. The Jardin des Tuileries, now wholly given over to trees, flowers, fountains, and statues, formerly contained the Tuileries Palace, which was burned by the "communards."[4] Across the Seine lies the Jardin du Luxembourg, with a palace used by the French Senate. The Champ de Mars **Promenades and parks**

[1] See the illustration, page 454.
[2] See the illustration, page 456.
[3] See the illustration, page 372.
[4] See the illustration, page 308.



NOTRE DAME

The present structure, begun in 1163 and completed about 1240, suffered severely during the French Revolution, when it was converted into a Temple of Reason. Extensive renovations and alterations were made during the nineteenth century. Two massive square towers, originally intended to support spires, crown the principal or western façade. Its three doors are surrounded by elaborate sculptures and surmounted by a row of figures representing twenty-eight kings of Israel and Judah. Above the central door is a rose window of stained glass and above this a graceful gallery of painted arches supported on slender columns.

("Field of Mars") is a parade ground. Here stands the Tour Eiffel, a graceful structure of iron lattice-work nearly a thousand feet high. The tower was built for the Paris Exposition of 1889.

Hôtel des Invalides

Notre Dame Cathedral, the most important of Parisian churches and one of the finest examples of Gothic architecture in Europe, occupies part of the island called La Cité. The present building has had several predecessors, for already in the fourth century a church stood on this site. The French revolutionists converted Notre Dame into a Temple of Reason, but under Napoleon I it went back to religious use. The same emperor built the exquisite Madeleine.[1]

Churches

[1] See the illustration, page 333.

The Louvre,[1] impressive both for extent and noble architecture, was the chief royal palace until Louis XIV built Versailles. It is now a wonderful museum of the fine arts, ancient, medieval, and modern. Among the priceless treasures to be seen here are the "Aphrodite of

Civic buildings

THE PANTHÉON

Built in the last half of the eighteenth century on the site of the tomb of Ste. Geneviève, the patron saint of Paris.

Melos," the "Winged Victory of Samothrace," and Leonardo da Vinci's "Mona Lisa." The Palais de Justice (law courts) forms a huge assemblage of buildings on the site of the palace

[1] See the illustration, page 308.

of Merovingian and Capetian kings. The Hôtel des Invalides, on the left bank of the Seine, dates from the reign of Louis XIV, who founded it as a home for infirm or disabled soldiers. But no one thinks of the "Grand Monarch" in the Invalides; it is dedicated rather to Napoleon, whose relics crowd its rooms and who himself lies in a huge sarcophagus under the gilded dome.[1] The Panthéon, another imposing domed building, served originally as a church, but the revolutionists in 1791 secularized it as a sepulcher for great Frenchmen. Voltaire, Rousseau, and Victor Hugo are entombed here. The Chamber of Deputies meets in the Palais Bourbon,[2] built in the eighteenth century, and the president of the French republic occupies the Palais de l'Élysée, another eighteenth-century structure.

Besides the Louvre, Paris has many other museums. The most interesting, historically, is the Musée de Cluny, installed in a Gothic mansion built by the abbot of Cluny during the fifteenth century. It stands on the site of a Roman palace, the ruins of whose baths still remain. Among the libraries of Paris the Bibliothèque Nationale, which occupies Cardinal Mazarin's residence, has first place. This immense collection of manuscripts, books, prints, and maps originated in the Middle Ages as a royal library, but since the Revolution it has been a state institution.

Museums and libraries

Paris is naturally a leading educational center. The fame of the École des Beaux-Arts as an art school attracts students of architecture, sculpture, and painting from all countries. In the Latin Quarter, where many of them live and maintain their studios, stands the Sorbonne, founded in the thirteenth century and until the Revolution celebrated as a theological seminary. The French revolutionists suppressed the institution, together with all other colleges and universities throughout France. Napoleon renewed it, however, and in its magnificent new building the Sorbonne has become the chief seat of learning in France. Not far away is the Palais de l'Institut, a seventeenth-century structure

Schools

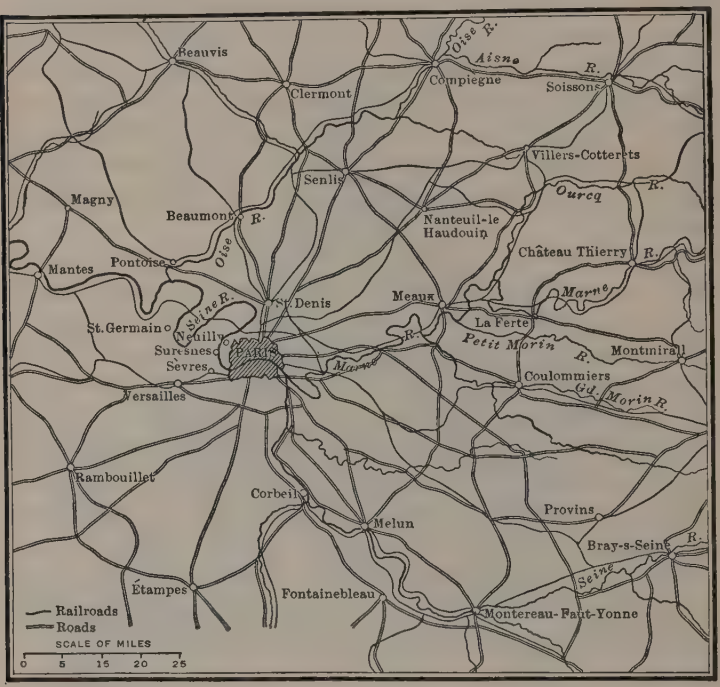
[1] See the illustration on page 350.

[2] See the illustration on page 461.

which houses the Institut de France, an association of the five French academies of letters and science.

Theaters

The drama has a large part in Parisian life, and several of the important theaters receive annual subsidies from the government. The Opéra[1] is the largest and most splendid playhouse in the world. The Théâtre Français,



Vicinity of Paris

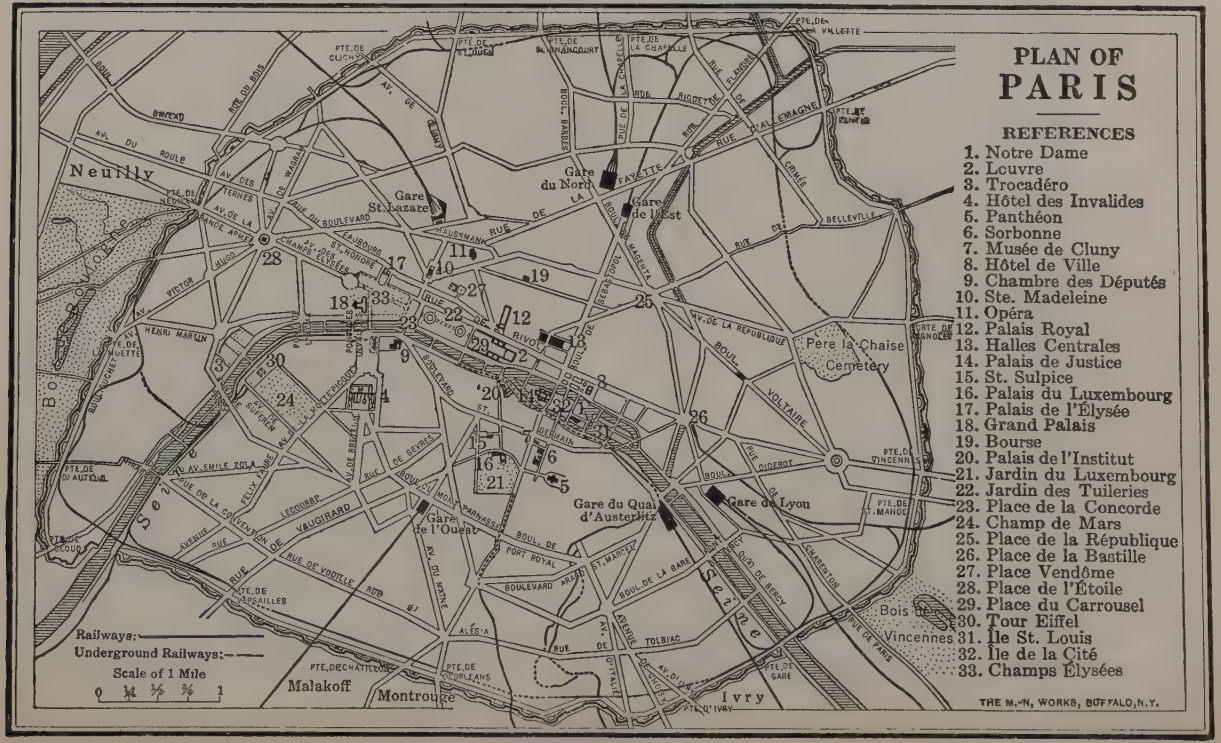
the home of the best French drama, was founded by Molière in the seventeenth century, and here his comedies are still played.

Père-la-Chaise Cemetery

The tourist in Paris seldom omits a visit to the cemetery named after Père la Chaise, the confessor of Louis XIV. It covers over a hundred acres and contains the tombs of many famous Frenchmen.

Paris has always been a fortress. The present wall, replacing

[1] See the illustration on page 680.


PLAN OF
PARIS
REFERENCES
1. Notre Dame
2. Louvre
3. Trocadéro
4. Hôtel des Invalides
5. Panthéon
6. Sorbonne
7. Musée de Cluny
8. Hôtel de Ville
9. Chambre des Députés
10. Ste. Madeleine
11. Opéra
12. Palais Royal
13. Halles Centrales
14. Palais de Justice
15. St. Sulpice
16. Palais du Luxembourg
17. Palais de l'Élysée
18. Grand Palais
19. Bourse
20. Palais de l'Institut
21. Jardin du Luxembourg
22. Jardin des Tuileries
23. Place de la Concorde
24. Champ de Mars
25. Place de la République
26. Place de la Bastille
27. Place Vendôme
28. Place de l'Étoile
29. Place du Carrousel
30. Tour Eiffel
31. Île St. Louis
32. Île de la Cité
33. Champs Élysées
Railways:
Underground Railways:
Scale of 1 Mile
0 1/4 1/2 3/4 1
Neuilly
Gare St. Lazare
Gare du Nord
Gare de l'Est
Père la Chaise Cemetery
Gare du Quai d'Austerlitz
Gare de Lyon
Gare de l'Ouest
Bois de Vincennes
Malakoff
Montrouge
Ivry
Seine
THE M.-N. WORKS, BUFFALO, N.Y.

earlier ramparts, completely surrounds the city. Through its gates run the main highways into the charming suburbs. One may visit Fontainebleau, Napoleon's favorite residence, where he abdicated in 1814, and the château of Malmaison, which he presented to Joséphine after the divorce. Then there are St.-Denis, with its abbey-church, the burial place of the French kings; Sèvres, with its manufactory of exquisite porcelain; and St.-Germain, once the dwelling of royalty and now a national museum. Above all there is Versailles, twelve miles distant from Paris.[1] Here the Estates-General met in 1789 and began the Revolution; here William I of Prussia was proclaimed German emperor in 1871; and here in 1919 was signed the treaty which brought peace to a warring world.

Walls and suburbs of Paris

192. Historic and Artistic London

London, the ancient *Londinium*, seems to have been a British settlement before the Roman occupation of Britain in the first century A.D. Under the Romans it was a place of some importance, to judge from the abundant remains which we possess. Ruins of the walls, of villas, and of a basilica are still to be seen, while thousands of coins have been found in the bed of the Thames.

British and Roman London

After the departure of the Romans from Britain, London came under the rule of the Anglo-Saxons and subsequently of the Danes. It had grown to be the metropolis of England by the time of the Norman Conquest. Both Norman and Plantagenet kings recognized the importance of London by granting charters of liberty to its inhabitants, and Magna Carta expressly stipulated that the city should continue to enjoy all its old privileges.

Medieval London

The chief event in the history of London under the Tudors was the suppression of the monasteries and nunneries by Henry VIII. More than half the area of the city had been occupied by these establishments, which were now adapted to secular uses. The Great Fire of 1666, early

Modern London

[1] See the illustration, page 181.

VIEW OF PARIS FROM AN AIRPLANE

Copyright by Wide World Photos.

HOUSES OF PARLIAMENT, LONDON

Designed by Sir Charles Barry; begun in 1840; completed in 1857. The edifice is in the richest style of Tudor Gothic architecture. It occupies an area of eight acres, contains eleven courts or quadrangles, and cost $15,000,000. The principal façade, overlooking the Thames, measures 940 feet in length. There are three towers: the Clock Tower, containing the famous bell Big Ben, whose resonant note may be heard over the greater part of London; the Central Tower, used as a ventilating shaft; and the great Victoria Tower, 336 feet high. When Parliament is in session, a light is shown in the Clock Tower by night, and a flag flies from the Victoria Tower by day.

in the reign of Charles II, continued three days and licked up thirteen thousand houses — practically all that remained of the medieval city. Since the middle of the nineteenth century London has been much improved by rebuilding, the laying out of new streets and parks, and the erection of monuments. It still lacks the spaciousness, the elegance and charm, of Paris, but in historic interest, at least for English-speaking peoples, even surpasses the French capital.

There are really three Londons. First comes the City proper, the commercial and financial heart of the metropolis. It stretches for about a mile along the north bank of the Thames and occupies the site of the Roman town. Beyond the City spreads Metropolitan London, which is a circle with a radius of approximately twelve miles from its center at Charing Cross. Lastly, comes "Greater London," reaching out into several English counties and containing, with the City and the metropolitan boroughs, more than seven million inhabitants.

Extent of London

The streets of London are innumerable. Straightened out and laid end to end, they would reach across the United States. The principal continuous thoroughfares, though each bears a succession of names, coincide with the main roads converging upon the capital from all parts of England. The Thames follows a devious course through London. Its sides are lined with embankments used as promenades. Fourteen road bridges cross the river, including famous London Bridge, which replaces a thirteenth-century structure.

Topography of London

The parks are a notable feature in the topography of London. St. James's Park was laid out by Charles II. At its western end rises Buckingham Palace, the London residence of royalty. Green Park extends between the Mall and Piccadilly. Hyde Park, which Henry VIII took over on the dissolution of the monasteries, forms a resort of fashionable society and often also the scene of popular demonstrations. Kensington Gardens and Regent's Park are other open spaces.

Parks

THE TOWER OF LONDON

The principal places of interest to the tourist lie along the Thames from the Tower of London to Westminster Abbey. Among secular buildings none is more venerable than the Tower, which stands at the eastern boundary of the City. William the Conqueror raised the great central keep or White Tower, so called because it was once whitewashed. The inner wall, with its thirteen turrets, was added by William Rufus, the Conqueror's son, the moat by Richard I, and the outer wall by Henry III. The Tower has been a fortress, a palace, and a prison; it now serves as a government arsenal, historical museum, and repository for the crown jewels.

The Tower of London

From the Tower a short walk brings one to the Bank of England, a low, massive building without external windows and almost wholly unadorned. The Guildhall, nearby, is used for meetings and entertainments of the City Corporation.

Bank of England and Guildhall

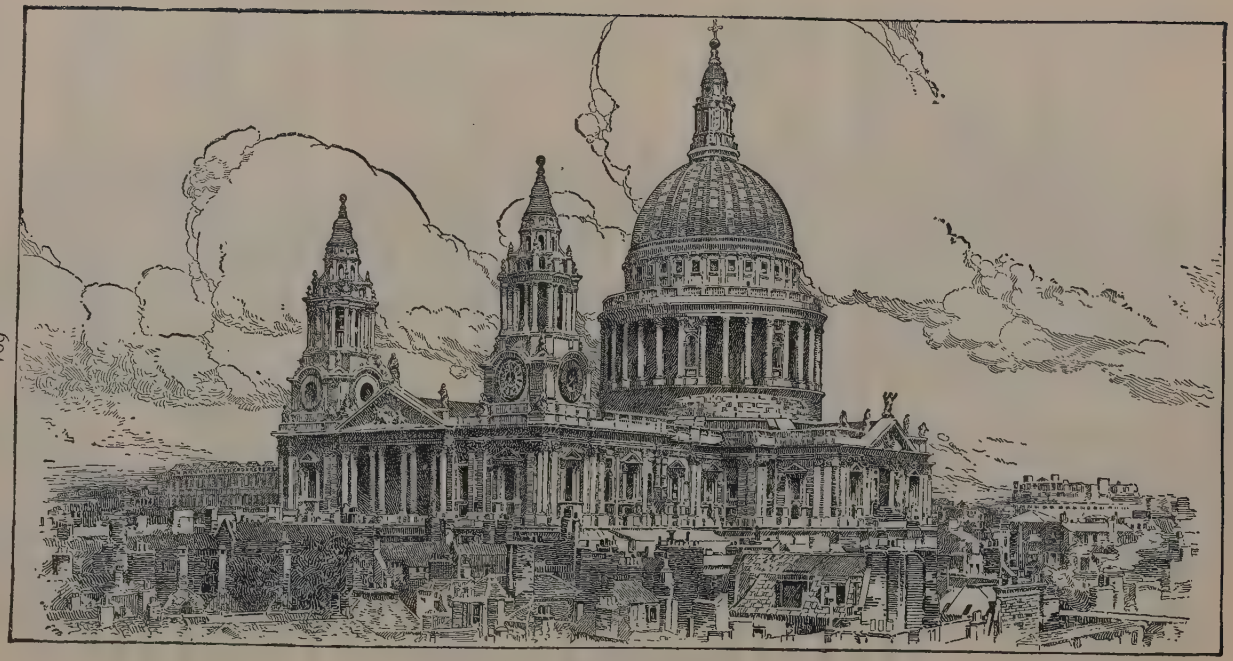
London's most prominent building, St. Paul's Cathedral, stands in the center of the City, upon a site dedicated to religion since Anglo-Saxon times. The present edifice, replacing the cathedral destroyed by the Great Fire, is the work of Sir Christopher Wren, who lies in the crypt, together with the duke of Wellington, Lord Nelson, and other famous Englishmen. In general appearance St. Paul's resembles St. Peter's at Rome, but it is much smaller. The style of architecture unites Gothic and classical features. The great dome, both from within and without, forms the most imposing feature of the cathedral.

St. Paul's Cathedral

From St. Paul's one may proceed along Fleet Street with its newspaper offices, and the Strand, with its hotels, shops, and theaters, to Trafalgar Square. The lofty monument in the center commemorates Nelson's victory over the combined fleets of France and Spain.

Trafalgar Square

The National Gallery, containing magnificent art collections, is on the north side of Trafalgar Square. Some distance away



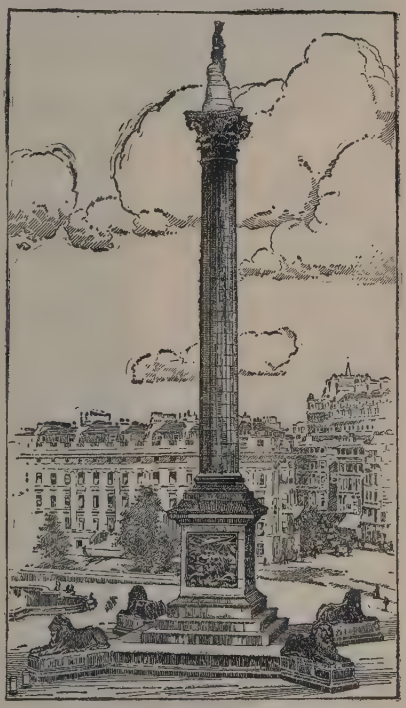
St. Paul's Cathedral

is the British Museum, the most celebrated institution of its kind in the world. A single great building houses the collections of books, manuscripts, coins, and antiquities which have accumulated since the museum was founded in the eighteenth century.

National Gallery and British Museum

The short street called Whitehall, containing the Admiralty, Treasury, and other government offices, leads from Trafalgar Square to the Houses of Parliament. These buildings, as beautiful and impressive outside as they are luxurious inside, were erected during the nineteenth century in the richest style of Tudor Gothic. They cover eight acres and include eleven hundred rooms. The east front opens directly upon the Thames. Historic Westminster Hall,[1] belonging to the former royal palace on the site, is incorporated in the Parliament buildings. There are three towers: the Clock Tower, with the famous bell Big Ben, whose resonant note may be heard over the greater part of London; the Central Tower, used as a ventilating shaft; and

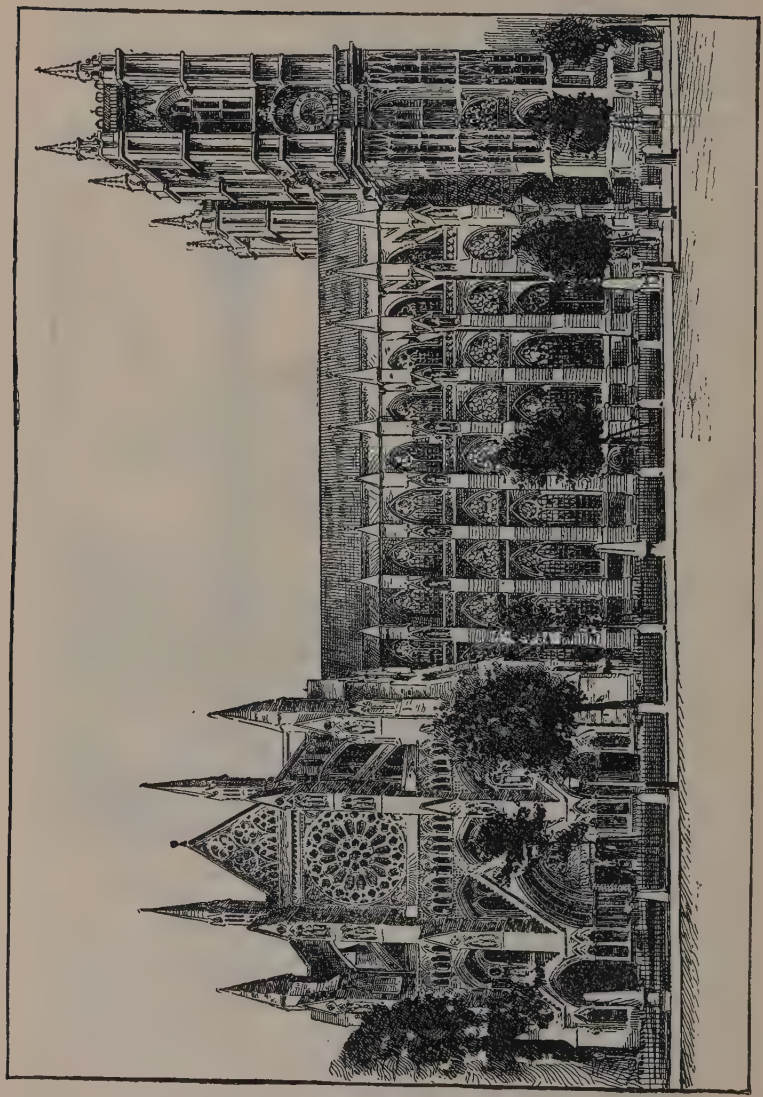
Houses of Parliament



THE NELSON MONUMENT, TRAFALGAR SQUARE

A granite Corinthian column, 145 feet high, surmounted by a statue of Nelson, 16 feet high. On the pedestal are bronze sculptures, cast with the metal of captured French cannon and representing scenes from Nelson's naval victories. Four colossal lions, modeled by Sir Edwin Landseer, crouch at the base of the monument.

[1] See the illustration on page 163.



Westminster Abbey

the Victoria Tower. When Parliament is in session a light is shown in the Clock Tower by night and a flag flies from the Victoria Tower by day.

The church formerly attached to the Benedictine abbey of St. Peter in Westminster was built in the thirteenth century, upon the site of an earlier church raised by Edward the Confessor. Since the Norman Conquest all but one of the English sovereigns have been crowned here, and

Westminster Abbey

VICINITY OF LONDON

until the time of George III it served as their last resting place. The abbey is now England's Hall of Fame, where many of her distinguished statesmen, warriors, poets, artists, and scientists are buried. Monuments, tombs, busts, and memorials crowd every part of a building that epitomizes English history.

Studies

1. What is the "international mind"? The "international conscience"? 2. Look up in an encyclopedia accounts of the Rhodes Scholarships and the Nobel Prizes. 3. What arguments are often urged against capital punishment? 4. Present some of the arguments for and against woman suffrage. 5. What is the work of the Rockefeller Foundation? Of the Carnegie Institution? 6. Name and locate ten of the great European universities. 7. Prepare an oral report on

PLAN OF LONDON
REFERENCES
1 Albert Hall
2 Imperial Institute
3 Victoria and Albert Museum
4 Natural History Museum
5 Buckingham Palace
6 Roman Catholic Cathedral
7 Tate Gallery
8 Westminster Abbey
9 Houses of Parliament
10 British Museum
11 Law Courts
12 St. Paul's Cathedral
13 Guildhall
14 Bank of England
15 Tower of London
16 Kensington Palace
17 Lambeth Palace
18 St. James' Palace
Railways
Underground Railways
Scale of 1 Mile
THE M.-N.CO., BUFFALO, N.Y.
CITY
Hyde Park
Kensington Gardens
Regent's Park
OXFORD ST.
PICCADILLY
STRAND
FLEET ST.
WHITEHALL
VICTORIA ST.
EMBANKMENT
ROAD
BRIDGE
TOWER
Victoria Sta.
Charing Cross Sta.
Waterloo Sta.
London Bridge Sta.
Liverpool Sta.
Fenchurch St.
Agricultural Hall
Kings Cross Sta.
Euston Sta.
St. Pancras Sta.
Marylebone Sta.
Paddington Sta.
Victoria Sta.
Westminster Br.
Lambeth Br.
Albert Br.
Chelsea Br.
Battersea Br.
Blackfriars Br.
Southwark Br.
Tower Br.
Cannon St.
Mansion House
Royal Exchange
Bank
Monument
Temple Bar
Marble Arch
Green Park
St. James's Park
Buckingham Palace
Houses of Parliament
Westminster Abbey
Law Courts
British Museum
Gray's Inn
Lincoln's Inn
Inner Temple
Middle Temple
Temple
Holborn
Aldwych
Kingsway
Strand
Whitehall
Piccadilly
Regent St.
Oxford St.
Bond St.
Park Lane
Albany St.
Portland St.
Baker St.
Wigmore St.
Gower St.
Woburn Pl.
Tottenham Ct.
Seymour St.
College St.
Hampstead Rd.
Euston Rd.
Marylebone Rd.
Edgware Road
Harrow Road
Abbey Rd.
Albert Rd.
Bayswater Rd.
High St.
Sloane St.
Knightsbridge
Grosvenor Rd.
Embankment
Chelsea
Fulham
Old Brompton Rd.
Mansions
Cable St.
Commercial Road
Hackney Road
Cambridge Road
Kingsland Rd.
New North Rd.
Old Bourne St.
Goswell Rd.
City Rd.
Essex Rd.
Rosebery Av.
Theobalds Rd.
Lamb's Conduit St.
Red Lion Sq.
Kingsway
Long Acre
Charing Cross
Waterloo Pl.
Pall Mall
Haymarket
Regent St.
Oxford St.
Bond St.
Park Lane
Piccadilly
Green Park
St. James's Park
Victoria St.
Vauxhall Bridge Rd.
Grosvenor Rd.
Lambeth Br.
Westminster Br.
Albert Br.
Chelsea Br.
Battersea Br.
Blackfriars Br.
Southwark Br.
Tower Br.
Cannon St.
Mansion House
Royal Exchange
Bank
Monument
Temple Bar
Marble Arch
Green Park
St. James's Park
Buckingham Palace
Houses of Parliament
Westminster Abbey
Law Courts
British Museum
Gray's Inn
Lincoln's Inn
Inner Temple
Middle Temple
Temple
Holborn
Aldwych
Kingsway
Strand
Whitehall
Piccadilly
Regent St.
Oxford St.
Bond St.
Park Lane
Albany St.
Portland St.
Baker St.
Wigmore St.
Gower St.
Woburn Pl.
Tottenham Ct.
Seymour St.
College St.
Hampstead Rd.
Euston Rd.
Marylebone Rd.
Edgware Road
Harrow Road
Abbey Rd.
Albert Rd.
Bayswater Rd.
High St.
Sloane St.
Knightsbridge
Grosvenor Rd.
Embankment
Chelsea
Fulham
Old Brompton Rd.
Mansions
Cable St.
Commercial Road
Hackney Road
Cambridge Road
Kingsland Rd.
New North Rd.
Old Bourne St.
Goswell Rd.
City Rd.
Essex Rd.
Rosebery Av.
Theobalds Rd.
Lamb's Conduit St.
Red Lion Sq.
Kingsway
Long Acre
Charing Cross
Waterloo Pl.
Pall Mall
Haymarket
Regent St.

the kindergarten movement in Europe and America. 8. Show that religious toleration and an established church may exist side by side. 9. What have been some of the services of missionaries in geographical exploration? 10. Why has Darwin been called "the Newton of biology"? 11. Explain the germ theory of disease. 12. Distinguish between antisepsis and asepsis. 13. How are the X-rays used in medicine and surgery? 14. Mention some of the most famous novels by Dickens, Scott, and Thackeray. 15. Have you read any novels by Victor Hugo, Ibsen, Tolstoy, or Sienkiewicz? 16. Name six great lyric poets of Great Britain during the nineteenth century. Can you name any of France, Germany, and Italy? 17. Mention some of the great composers of the nineteenth century. 18. On the maps (pages 689 and 698) locate the principal monuments and public buildings of Paris and London.

THE LORD MAYOR'S SHOW IN LONDON

After an eighteenth-century cartoon by W. Hogarth.

CHAPTER XXVI

INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS, 1871–1914[1]

193. The Triple Alliance

MODERN civilization, which on the one side creates an international current drawing the world's peoples together in art, literature, science, and industry, on the other side creates a national current tending to keep them apart. Internationalism or cosmopolitanism lays stress on our common humanity, on the brotherhood of man. Nationalism or patriotism emphasizes love of country and devotion to the "fatherland." National rivalries and antipathies were never stronger than in the nineteenth century, and in the twentieth century they brought forth the calamitous World War.

National rivalries and antipathies

The national movement in Europe, we have learned, arose during the revolutionary and Napoleonic era, helped to produce the popular revolts between 1815 and 1830, and assumed special importance between 1848 and 1871, when both Italy and Germany won by the sword their long-desired unification. The creation of a united Italy, and especially of a united Germany, quite upset the delicate equilibrium of European politics as established at the Congress of Vienna. The old balance of power disappeared, for the German Empire, from the hour of its birth, took the first place on the Continent.

Primacy of Germany on the Continent

Bismarck's former policy of "blood and iron" had resulted in the wars with Denmark, Austria, and France. Now that Germany was "satiated," as he declared, he became a man of peace. His policy, henceforth, hinged upon France. The catastrophe of the Franco-German War seemed to remove that country from the

Franco-German relations

[1] Webster, *Historical Source Book*, No. 28, "Peace Circular of Nicholas II, 1898"; No. 29, "Final Act of the First Hague Peace Conference, 1899."

ranks of the great powers, but she recovered rapidly under a republican government and soon paid off the indemnity imposed upon her by the Treaty of Frankfort. But France was not reconciled to the loss of Alsace-Lorraine, which deprived her of 1000 square miles of territory and more than 1,500,000 inhabitants.[1] Their annexation kept alive the spirit of revenge in France and made her Germany's irreconcilable enemy. To Bismarck it seemed that the French were only awaiting a favorable moment to renew the test of arms, an attitude expressed by Gambetta's motto, "Think of it always and never speak of it." The French in 1870–1871 had fought alone; should they secure the support of Austria-Hungary, Italy, or Russia, the issue of a second Franco-German War might be quite unlike that of the first. Accordingly, Bismarck did all he could to keep France friendless among the nations.

Germany and Austria-Hungary

The "Iron Chancellor" turned first to Austria-Hungary. He had prepared the way for good relations by his moderation in arranging terms of peace with Francis Joseph I at the close of the "Seven Weeks' War."[2] After 1871 the Hapsburgs began to seek compensation in the Balkans for the territory they had lost in Germany and Italy. Bismarck supported their pretensions at the Congress of Berlin. Here the "honest broker," as he called himself, successfully opposed the extension of Russian influence in the Balkan Peninsula and agreed to an Austrian occupation of the Turkish provinces of Bosnia and Herzegovina.[3] In 1879 Germany and Austria-Hungary made a secret alliance binding themselves to aid each other if either should be attacked by Russia or by another power which had the help of Russia. It was also arranged that should either party to the alliance be attacked by another power *without* Russian support, then the other party would not only not assist the aggressor but would preserve at least benevolent neutrality. The secrecy attending this treaty was removed by its publication nine years later.

Bismarck scored a further triumph in 1882, when he induced

[1] See pages 415–416. [2] See page 413. [3] See page 528.

Italy to throw in her lot with Germany and Austria-Hungary, thus forming the Triple Alliance. Italy took this action, partly to secure good friends on the Continent, but chiefly because of resentment against France, which had just established a protectorate over Tunis, a region marked for Italian colonization.[1] Rumania also joined the group of Central Powers in 1883. The terms of the treaties creating the Triple Alliance, which have now been fully disclosed, seem to have been purely defensive in character. The Triple Alliance continued unbroken until 1915, when Italy declared war against Austria-Hungary. Rumania repudiated it the following year, upon entering the World War.

Germany and Italy

"Dropping the Pilot"

A cartoon by Sir John Tenniel which appeared in the English journal *Punch* for March 9, 1890.

Bismarck also did his best to convince Russia of Germany's good will. During the 'eighties the two countries actually bound themselves to benevolent neutrality in case one or the other should be assailed. This "reinsurance compact" was secretly signed in 1884 and was renewed in 1887 for another period of three years. But William II, who forced Bismarck's retirement in 1890,[2] did not continue the friendly understanding with Russia. The kaiser seems to have believed that the Triple-Alliance sufficiently guaranteed the security of Germany and that the "reinsurance compact" would interfere with Germany's obligations to Austria-Hungary, whose rivalry with Russia in the Balkans had now become more acute than ever.

Germany and Russia

[1] See page 541.

[2] See page 491.

EUROPE
IN 1871 A.D.
Scale of Miles
0 100 200 300 400 500
20° Longitude West 10° 0° 10° Longitude 20° East from 30° Greenwich 40° 50° 60°
FARÖE IS.
SHETLAND IS.
ORKNEY IS.
HEBRIDES
Bergen
Christiania
Christiansand
Gothenburg
Stockholm
Gulf of Bothnia
ÅLAND IS.
Helsingfors
Lake Onega
Lake Ladoga
St. Petersburg
Novgorod
Vologda
Viatka
NORWAY
SWEDEN
BALTIC SEA
GOTHLAND
Riga
Moscow
SCOTLAND
NORTH SEA
DENMARK
Copenhagen
Edinburgh
Glasgow
Belfast
Dublin
Irish Sea
Newcastle
Manchester
BRITISH ISLES
IRELAND
ENGLAND
WALES
Cork
Plymouth
Lands End
London
Birmingham
Amsterdam
HELGOLAND
Kiel
Hamburg
Bremen
Danzig
Königsberg
Dünaburg
Vitebsk
Smolensk
Vilna
Minsk
Orel
Penza
Uralsk
Volga
Ural
RUSSIA
50°
Berlin
GERMANY
Warsaw
Vistula
Oder
Elbe
Rhine
Dresden
Leipzig
Cologne
Frankfort
Prague
Cracow
Lemberg
Kiev
Kharkov
Dnieper
Don
Taganrog
Rostov
Caspian Sea
ATLANTIC OCEAN
English Channel
Calais
BELGIUM
Brussels
Paris
Brest
Orleans
Luxemburg
Metz
Strassburg
Seine
Loire
Munich
Vienna
Buda
Pest
Dniester
Odessa
Sea of Azov
Crimea
Sevastopol
Galatz
FRANCE
Bay of Biscay
C. Ortegal
C. Finisterre
Coruña
Bordeaux
Garonne
Bern
Basel
SWITZERLAND
Lyons
Geneva
Turin
Milan
Venice
Trieste
AUSTRIA
HUNGARY
Belgrade
RUMANIA
Bukharest
BLACK SEA
Constantinople
Batum
Trebizond
Oporto
Duero
Ebro
Genoa
Florence
Marseilles
Nice
Sarajevo
SERBIA
Danube
Varna
Sofia
Cetigne
MONTE NEGRO
TURKEY
Scutari
Adrianople
Salonika
Gallipoli
Aegean Sea
Smyrna
ASIA MINOR
PORTUGAL
SPAIN
Lisbon
Madrid
Tagus
Barcelona
CORSICA
ELBA
ADRIATIC SEA
ITALY
Rome
Naples
Brindisi
Guadiana
BALEARIC IS.
MINORCA
MAJORCA
IVIZA
SARDINIA
C. St. Vincent
Cadiz
Cartagena
Cagliari
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
Gibraltar
Palermo
SICILY
Catania
IONIAN IS.
Athens
GREECE
CRETE
AFRICA
MALTA
0° 10° 20° 30° CYPRUS 40°
THE M.-N. CO., BUFFALO, N.Y.

194. The Dual Alliance and the Triple Entente

The creation of the Triple Alliance was a challenge to France and Russia to form an opposing alliance. Bismarck's diplomatic skill had postponed it as long as he remained chancellor, but even before 1890 the two countries had begun to draw together. An alliance between them long seemed improbable, in view of the fact that they had fought each other bitterly in the Napoleonic and Crimean wars and of the further fact that one was a revolutionary republic and the other a reactionary autocracy. International politics sometimes makes strange bedfellows, however. Feelings of both revenge and fear stirred France: revenge for the humiliating defeats of 1870–1871 and the loss of Alsace-Lorraine; fear lest with the rapid increase of German wealth, population, and military power she might be suddenly attacked and overwhelmed by her Teutonic neighbor. Under Bismarck, Germany had pursued a peaceful policy; what would be her policy under the kaiser no one could say. In any case, mighty Russia seemed a most desirable ally. Russia, on her part, now realized more keenly the conflict between her interests in the Balkans and the interests of Germany's ally, Austria-Hungary; she held Germany responsible for her failure at the Congress of Berlin; and she, too, felt alarm at the growing preponderance of Germany in European affairs. The time was obviously ripe for a Franco-Russian understanding.

Franco-Russian relations

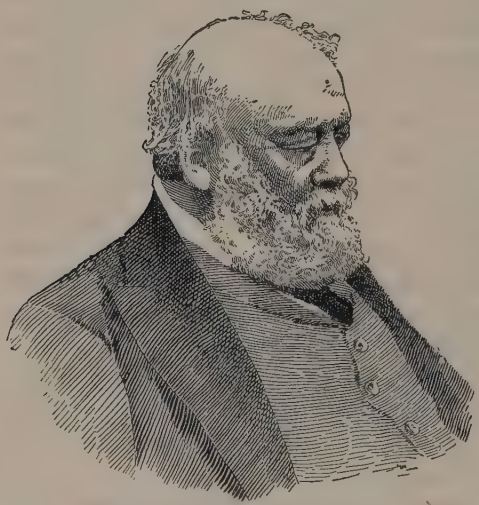
Close relations between France and Russia began in the financial sphere, when the tsar's government, in order to build the Trans-Siberian Railway and develop Russian industries, sold large blocks of securities to French investors. A secret treaty between the two countries was concluded in 1891 and was publicly announced four years later. The precise terms of the treaty are unknown. Apparently, France and Russia agreed that in case either nation was attacked, the other nation would come to its assistance and that peace should be made in concert. The Dual Alliance, like the Triple Alliance, thus appears to have been a

The Dual Alliance, 1891

defensive undertaking on the part of the powers concerned. France no longer stood alone, and Germany on her eastern flank had a potential enemy. It was the "nightmare coalition" so feared by Bismarck.

Isolation of Great Britain

Ever since the Crimean War Great Britain had kept aloof from Continental entanglements. She was no friend either of France or Russia, for the colonial aspirations of these powers, the one in Africa and the other in Asia, clashed with her own. Lord Salisbury,[1] Disraeli's successor as leader of the Tory Party during the last two decades of the nineteenth century, continued the traditional Francophobe and Russophobe policies of the Tories. The strained relations between Great Britain and France almost resulted in hostilities, as late as 1898. In that year a French exploring expedition entered the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan, which Great Britain regarded as within her sphere of influence, and raised the tricolor at Fashoda on the upper Nile. The British government sent General Kitchener from Khartum to expel the intruders. War was in the air, until the French gave way and renounced their claims to the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan. The "Fashoda incident" roused much popular feeling in both France and Great Britain. As for Russia, her steady advance in Central Asia obviously threatened India and led British statesmen to



THE MARQUIS OF SALISBURY

[1] Prime minister, 1885–1886, 1886–1892, and 1895–1902.

regard that power with ill-concealed fear and distrust. In Kipling's words Russia was "a bear that walks like a man."

Toward Germany and the other members of the Triple Alliance the British attitude was most amicable throughout the period of Bismarck's chancellorship. To avoid giving offense to Great Britain Bismarck scrupulously observed Belgian neutrality during the war of 1870–1871, and for the same reason he long opposed the acquisition of colonies by Germany. The supposed kinship of Germans and Anglo-Saxons and the close connections of the German and British courts (William II was a grandson of Queen Victoria) also made for good relations between the two countries. Nevertheless, as the 'nineties advanced, Great Britain and Germany began to draw apart. One reason was the amazing industrial development of Germany, which by this time had made her a serious competitor of Great Britain in foreign markets. Another reason was the aggressive colonial policy of Germany and her apparent intention of founding a world empire rivaling that of Great Britain. The kaiser himself announced, in one of his rhetorical speeches, that "without Germany and the German Empire" no important step in international matters should be taken, even beyond the seas. But the most important reason was Germany's declared purpose to build up a great navy as well as a great army. To the average Britisher the new German navy seemed a dagger pointed at his country's heart. The sympathetic attitude of the kaiser and his associates toward the Boers, both before and during the South African War, further disturbed the serenity of Anglo-German relations.

Anglo-German relations

The early years of the twentieth century saw Great Britain emerge from her isolation, which some described as "splendid" but others as "dangerous," and seek new friendships on the Continent. The first step was reconciliation with France. The way for it had already been prepared. Edward VII, who mounted the British throne in 1901, upon the death of Queen Victoria, showed a statesmanlike grasp of the situation and used all his personal influence to strengthen Great Britain abroad. He

The entente cordiale, 1904

knew and liked the French people, and they returned his appreciation. France, too, had in Théophile Delcassé a foreign minister anxious to establish friendly relations with her neighbor across the Channel. Official visits in 1903 of King Edward to Paris and of President Loubet to London were followed in 1904 by a definite treaty between the two countries, adjusting their colonial claims. France recognized the paramount position of Great Britain in Egypt; Great Britain gave to France a free hand in Morocco. Conventions were also made relating to Siam, Newfoundland, and other regions. These agreements established a "cordial understanding" (*entente cordiale*). It was not a formal alliance; it did not provide for military measures, either of defense or of offense; nor did it have special reference to Germany or any other Continental power. The significance of the *entente cordiale* lay in the fact that it healed the ancient feuds between the two nations and prepared the way for their closer coöperation in the future.

Edward VII

Three years later Great Britain and Russia, who for half a century had jealously watched each other's expansion in Asia, composed their differences. The Anglo-Russian agreement, signed in 1907, was largely arranged by Sir Edward Grey, the British Minister of Foreign Affairs. It settled the troublesome questions relating to Persia,

The Triple Entente, 1907

Afghanistan, and Tibet in a manner satisfactory to both powers.[1] The *entente cordiale* thus became transformed into a Triple Entente, for Russia was already an ally of France. Japan, a British ally since 1902,[2] also reached an understanding with Russia in regard to their respective spheres of influence in the Far East.

The change in international relations which between 1902 and 1907 made Great Britain an actual ally of Japan and a potential ally of France and Russia, has been called a diplomatic revolution. Its significance was not lost on Germany. While British statesmen believed that they were only preparing defensive measures against a possible German attack, most Germans pictured Great Britain as plotting their country's ruin. The rift between the two nations steadily widened; by 1914 it had become a chasm.

The diplomatic revolution

Such, in outline, was the tangled skein of European diplomacy for nearly forty years following the Franco-German War. The Triple Alliance under Bismarck's guidance dominated Europe without a competitor, until the creation of the Dual Alliance. Something like a balance of power then replaced the earlier primacy of Germany. The old coalition, however, continued to be far stronger than the new, until Great Britain aligned herself with France and Russia. Germany, resentful at what she described as the "encirclement policy" of her enemies, at the "iron ring" which she professed to see being forged around her, now bent every effort to break up the Triple Entente by diplomatic action and by military threats. At the same time she tried to create a "Middle Europe" which, with its annexes in Asia, would effectually separate Great Britain and France from their Russian ally. These German projects raised new colonial problems and reopened the Eastern Question.

Balance of power

195. Colonial Problems

Something has been said in previous chapters about the Greater Europe which arose during the nineteenth and twentieth

[1] See pages 548 and 550. [2] See page 562.

centuries. European expansion went on most rapidly after 1871, when one country after another endeavored to form an empire overseas. This new imperialism was especially fostered by the revival of national sentiment in Europe. Both Italy and Germany wished to obtain colonial dependencies where their people could settle and maintain the language, customs, and traditions of the home land. France sought compensation for her "Lost Provinces" by acquiring African possessions. Russia, Japan, and the United States annexed additional territories. Great Britain, the leading colonial power in the world for more than a century, took renewed pride in her dominions and prepared to extend them as occasion offered. European peoples could not compete for markets, trading-posts, spheres of influence, protectorates, and colonies in every part of the world without becoming as bitter rivals abroad as they were at home. Imperialism, as well as nationalism, thus sowed the seeds of future conflict between them.

Nationalism and imperialism

A late-comer in the family of nations, Germany found that the best regions for colonization in the temperate zone already belonged to other powers. The colonies which she acquired in Africa and Oceania did not attract settlers, provided no important markets, and imposed a heavy burden on the imperial treasury for maintenance. If Germany was to secure "a place in the sun," [1] it could only be at the expense of other countries and by reliance upon "the good German sword." [2] William II made preparations for the partition of China, but the uprising of the Chinese under the "Boxers" led to the abandonment of this enterprise. He tried to get a foothold in South America by sending his warships to demand from Venezuela the payment of German debts, only to be pulled up sharply by President Roosevelt, who concentrated the American fleet in the West Indies and invoked the Monroe Doctrine. Not more successful was the kaiser's policy in Morocco.

Germany's "place in the sun"

Morocco at the beginning of the twentieth century was a Moslem state inhabited by half-civilized and very unruly

[1] The kaiser's phrase (1901). [2] The crown prince's phrase (1913).

tribes. The rich natural resources of the country and its proximity to Algeria made it an inviting field for French expansion. Germany also had some economic interests there. William II precipitated the first Moroccan crisis, at a time when Russia, the ally of France, was involved in war with Japan. He paid a visit to the native ruler, openly flouted the French claims, and asserted in vigorous language the independence of Morocco. France could not afford to accept the challenge thus flung in her face and agreed to submit the Moroccan question to an international conference, which met at Algeciras, Spain, in 1906. The assembled powers prohibited the annexation of Morocco, but left France free to continue her policy of "peaceful penetration." The outcome of the conference thus proved disappointing to the kaiser.

First Moroccan crisis, 1905–1906

Germany soon found another occasion to test the strength of the Anglo-French *entente*. Owing to the anarchy in Morocco, a French army had occupied the capital (Fez). The kaiser at once dispatched a warship to Agadir on the Moroccan coast as a notice to France to withdraw her troops. Feeling mounted high in both countries, and Europe for the moment seemed to be on the verge of the long-dreaded war. Great Britain, however, made common cause with France, for Agadir in German hands and converted into a naval base would have formed a palpable threat to British trade routes in the Atlantic. Germany now decided to yield. She agreed to the establishment of a French protectorate over Morocco, accepting as compensation some territory in the French Congo. This "Agadir incident" further embittered international relations. The French regarded their Congo cession as so much blackmail levied by Germany; the Germans looked upon Great Britain's support of France as an unwarranted interference which had inflicted upon them a diplomatic defeat.

Second Moroccan crisis, 1911

196. The Eastern Question

Bismarck had treated the whole Eastern Question with contempt, declaring it "not worth the bones of a single

Pomeranian grenadier." Under William II, however, Germany managed to supplant Great Britain as the protector of the Ottoman Empire against Russia. The kaiser twice visited the sultan,[1] a bloodthirsty despot whose massacres of Bulgarians and Armenians had

Germany and Turkey

The Berlin to Bagdad Railway

aroused the horror of Christian Europe, and ostentatiously proclaimed himself the champion of all Moslems, the ally of Allah. "The three hundred million Mohammedans who live scattered over the globe may be assured of this, that the Ger-

[1] Abdul Hamid II ("Abdul the Damned"), 1876–1909. See page 529.

man Emperor will be their friend at all times," said William II in 1898.

Germany now began the "peaceful penetration" of Asiatic Turkey. The fertile regions of Asia Minor and Mesopotamia, sparsely settled and undeveloped, offered many opportunities for the investment of German capital, markets for German goods, and homes for the superfluous population of Germany. Economic exploitation was to be followed by military and political control of the Ottoman Empire, with Germany in command of the Turkish armies and supreme throughout the wide area from the Black Sea to the Indian Ocean. All these dazzling possibilities were foreshadowed in the scheme for a railway intended to unite Constantinople with Bagdad and the head of the Persian Gulf. Nearly all the line as far as Bagdad had been completed by the opening of the World War. German capitalists also began to construct a branch line running from Aleppo in Syria to Medina and Mecca in Arabia. It is obvious that the Bagdad Railway, with its connections, menaced the position of Great Britain in India and British control of Egypt and the Suez Canal.

The Bagdad Railway

The practical annexation of Asiatic Turkey formed only a part of the kaiser's ambitious policy. European Turkey, the Balkan states, and Austria-Hungary were to unite with Germany into a huge combination for purposes of offense and defense. "Middle Europe" might ultimately draw within its embrace Holland, the Scandinavian states, and a projected Polish kingdom to include almost the entire manufacturing area of Russia. German commerce would exploit and German militarism would dominate every one of these countries.

"Middle Europe"

The success of the "Middle Europe" project depended upon the attitude of the independent Christian states of the Balkans. It was essential that they should be amenable to German, or at least to Austro-Hungarian, influence and that the influence of Russia should be entirely eliminated from their councils. Dynastic relationships seemed to make this possible. Prince (afterwards Tsar) Ferdinand of Bulgaria was a German; King

Germany and the Balkan states

Charles of Rumania was the kaiser's kinsman; and the wife of the future King Constantine of Greece was the kaiser's sister. Even Serbia had a pro-Austrian ruler until 1903, when a revolution of Belgrade brought to the throne King Peter, who leaned toward Russia. The Balkan policy of the Central Powers consequently received a setback, for Serbia lay on the line of the railway from Berlin to Constantinople.

First Balkan crisis, 1908

Events now moved rapidly in the Balkans. Taking advantage of the Young Turk Revolution,[1] Austria-Hungary in 1908 proceeded to annex Bosnia and Herzegovina. These two provinces had been freed from the direct control of the Turks by Serbia and Russia, during the Russo-Turkish War of the seventies, but the Congress of Berlin had handed them over to Austria-Hungary to occupy and administer.[2] Their annexation, violating the Berlin settlement, raised a storm of protest in Serbia. The people of Bosnia and Herzegovina are Slavs, and Serbia expected some day to incorporate them and the Montenegrins in a south Slavic state to stretch from the Danube to the Adriatic. Russia also seethed with indignation at what she considered an affront to the Slavic race by a Teutonic power. Russian troops now began to move toward the Austrian border. At this moment Germany ranged herself by the side of Austria-Hungary "in shining armor," as the kaiser afterwards expressed it, and dared Russia to attack her ally. Both France and Great Britain refused to join Russia in a general European war, and that country, not yet recovered from the struggle with Japan, thereupon gave way, withdrew her support from Serbia, and looked on in deep humiliation while the Central Powers proceeded to reap the fruits of their diplomatic triumph.

Second Balkan crisis, 1912–1913

The First Balkan War (1912–1913) produced another international crisis. Early in the course of the struggle the Serbians seized Durazzo, a port in the Turkish province of Albania, in order to gain access to the Adriatic. The Montenegrins also captured Scutari, another important Albanian town. Austria-Hungary would

[1] See pages 529–530.

[2] See page 528.

not consent to these annexations, which barred her own expansion to the southeast, and demanded that Durazzo and Scutari be evacuated. Germany, as before, backed her ally. A general European war again seemed very near, until Serbia and Montenegro yielded to the pressure put upon them by the great powers and gave up their conquests. The result was the formation of a new Albanian state with a German prince as its ruler and under German influence. The Central Powers had won a second diplomatic triumph in the Balkans.

The outcome of the Second Balkan War (1913), however, profoundly disappointed the Central Powers. The Treaty of Bukharest[1] left Germany's vassal, Turkey, with only a footing in Europe; it humiliated Bulgaria, the friend of Austria-Hungary; and it planted a hostile Serbia squarely in Macedonia, where she blocked the "Middle Europe" scheme. Even before the treaty had been signed, Austria-Hungary made ready to attack Serbia, but held her hand when Italy refused to coöperate, on the ground that the terms of the Triple Alliance required its members to aid each other only in the case of a defensive war. Germany also seems to have dissuaded Austria-Hungary from undertaking her perilous adventure in 1913. The hour had not yet struck to precipitate a European conflict. Meanwhile, the Central Powers feverishly hastened military preparations, and the other countries, seeing the war clouds on the horizon, likewise took steps to increase their arms and armies.

The Balkan situation in 1913

197. Militarism

Between 1871 and 1914 there were wars in the Balkans, in Asia, and in Africa. The nations of western Europe, however, did not draw the sword against one another for more than forty years. Yet at no other period had there been such enormous expenditures for armaments, such huge standing armies, and such colossal navies. Western Europe enjoyed peace, but it was an "armed peace" based upon fear.

"Armed peace"

[1] See page 530.

The improvements in weapons after 1871 made warfare a branch of applied science requiring expert technical knowledge both on the battle-field and in the munition factory. One needs only refer to the breech-loading rifle, machine gun, and smokeless powder, together with the continuous enlargement of cannon and the use of long-range, high-explosive projectiles. In death-dealing efficiency these new means of destruction threw all previous inventions into the shade. Having created modern civilization, science seemed ready to destroy it.

New means of destruction

The changed methods of fighting demanded the "nation in arms," rather than the old-fashioned armies composed of volunteers and mercenaries. As early as the eighteenth century, European monarchs began to draft soldiers from among their subjects, but at first only artisans and peasants. During the revolutionary era France resorted to forced levies, allowing, however, many exemptions. Prussia went further during the Napoleonic era and adopted universal military service, as well in time of peace as in time of war. All able-bodied men were to receive several years' training in the army and then pass into the reserve, whence they could be called to the colors upon the outbreak of hostilities. This Prussian system, having proved its worth in the War of Liberation against Napoleon,[1] was extended by William I soon after his accession to the throne.[2] The speedy triumphs of Prussia in 1866 and 1870 led all the principal nations, except Great Britain, to adopt universal military service. Europe thus became an "armed camp," with five million men constantly under arms.

Standing armies

Great Britain found sufficient protection in her fleet, which it had long been the British policy to maintain at a strength at least equal to that of any two other powers. Her widespread empire depends upon control of the seas, and being no longer self-supporting, she would face starvation in time of war were she blockaded by an enemy. Germany, however, would not acquiesce in British maritime supremacy,

Navies

[1] See page 345.

[2] See pages 409–410.

and under the inspiration of the kaiser, who declared that the "trident must be in our hands," started in 1898 to build a mighty navy. Helgoland,[1] off the mouth of the Elbe, was converted into a naval base, a second Gibraltar. The Kiel Canal, originally completed in 1896, was enlarged in 1914 to allow the passage of the largest warships between the Baltic and the North Sea. Great Britain watched these preparations with unconcealed dismay. Her answer was the complete reorganization of the British fleet, the scrapping of nearly two hundred vessels as obsolete, and the laying-down of dreadnoughts and super-dreadnoughts. The naval rivalry threatened to become so enormously expensive that British statesmen twice proposed a "naval holiday," that is, an agreement to keep down the rate of increase. But Germany refused to enter into an arrangement which would have left Great Britain still mistress of the seas.

Peace rescript of Nicholas II, 1898

The crushing burden of standing armies and navies produced a popular agitation in many countries to abolish warfare. The movement took practical shape as the result of a proposal by Nicholas II for an international conference, which should arrange a general disarmament. The tsar's rescript of 1898 was a telling indictment of militarism in these words: "The preservation of peace has been put forward as the object of international policy. In its name the great states have concluded between themselves powerful alliances; the better to guarantee peace, they have developed their military forces in proportions hitherto unprecedented, and still continue to increase them without shrinking from any sacrifice. All these efforts, nevertheless, have not yet been able to bring about the beneficent results of the desired pacification. . . . In proportion as the armaments of each power increase, do they less and less fulfill the objects which the governments have set before themselves. Economic crises, due in great part to the system of armaments *à outrance*[2] and the continual danger which lies in this accumu-

[1] Acquired by Great Britain in 1815 and ceded to Germany in 1890.

[2] "To the utmost."

lation of war material, are transforming the 'armed peace' of our days into a crushing burden which the peoples have more and more difficulty in bearing."

"THE BLESSINGS OF PEACE"

"Hans and Jacques (together): 'And I hear there's more to come!'"
A cartoon that appeared in *Punch*, February 26, 1913.

Peace conferences

As the result of the tsar's rescript, delegates from twenty-six sovereign states met in 1899 at The Hague, Holland, in the First Peace Conference. A Second Peace Conference of forty-four states assembled in 1907. Attempts were made at these gatherings to mitigate the horrors of future wars, but every proposal to reduce armaments encountered the opposition of Germany, who would not abandon her schemes for conquest, first in Europe and ultimately

throughout the world, which are summed up in one word — Pan-Germanism.

198. Pan-Germanism

The material development of Germany between 1871 and 1914 was perhaps unparalleled in European history. Her population increased from forty-one to sixty-five millions; her foreign trade more than trebled; and she became an industrial state second in Europe only to Great Britain. Proud of their army, navy, and police, of their handsome, well-ordered cities, of their technical schools and universities, of their science, literature, music, and art, the Germans came to believe that they enjoyed a higher culture (*Kultur*) than any other people. The Russians, by comparison, were barbarians, the French and Italians decadent; and the British and Americans, mere money-grabbers. "We are the salt of the earth," the kaiser told his countrymen. Such ideas found a fertile soil in the exaggerated nationalism which had been fostered by the creation of the German Empire.

Kultur and nationalism

The ardent belief in the superiority of German *Kultur* seemed to impose the duty of extending it to alien and therefore inferior peoples. This was Germany's divine mission, according to her philosophers, historians, clergymen, and government officials. Even the kaiser could say in all seriousness that "God has called us to civilize the world; we are the missionaries of human progress" and that "our German nation shall be the rock of granite on which the Almighty will finish his work of civilizing the world."

Kultur and imperialism

Before the world could be remade upon the German model, it had to be first conquered. Both backward and "decadent" nations possessed their own standards of civilization, which they would not willingly abandon even for Germany's so-called beneficent *Kultur*. World-power, in fact, meant war. Accordingly, the leaders of German society labored in press and school and pulpit to prove that war is a holy and righteous thing; that it corresponds in the life of

Kultur and militarism

nations to the "struggle for existence" in animal life; and that by war the weaker, incompetent states are weeded out and room is made for those stronger, more efficient states which alone deserve to inherit the earth. At the same time the people were led to consider war inevitable because of the hostile attitude of Russia, the "Slavic peril"; because France wanted revenge for her "Lost Provinces"; and because Great Britain only awaited a favorable opportunity to take the German navy and stifle German commerce. It was taught that Germany ought not to delay until her enemies were ready for a combined attack; she should attack first and reap the advantage of her military preparedness. This idea of an offensive-defensive war particularly appealed to a people who owed their national greatness to successful conflicts deliberately incurred by unscrupulous rulers.

The kaiser

The autocratic nature of the German government, vesting the control of foreign affairs so largely with the emperor,[1] made the egotistical, domineering personality of William II a very important factor in the international situation. The kaiser inherited the warlike traditions of the Great Elector, Frederick the Great, and William I; and even the shadowy claims to universal dominion put forth during the Middle Ages by the Holy Roman Emperors. His public utterances for thirty years were a constant glorification of war and conquest. One of his first speeches after mounting the throne had an ominous sound: "I solemnly vow always to be mindful of the fact that the eyes of my ancestors are looking down upon me from the other world, and that one day I shall have to render to them an account both of the glory and the honor of the army." On another occasion he said: "It is the soldiers and the army, not parliamentary majorities, that have welded the German Empire together. My confidence rests upon the army." And in 1900, upon the departure of a German expedition for operations against the "Boxers,"[2] he told the troops: "When you come upon the enemy, no quarter will be given. No prisoners will be taken. As the Huns under their

[1] See page 484.

[2] See pages 557–558.

king, Attila, a thousand years ago, made a name for themselves which is still mighty in tradition and story, so may the name of Germany in China be kept alive through you in such wise that no Chinese will ever again attempt even to look askance at a German."

During the earlier years of his reign the kaiser seemed to find sufficient outlet for his restless energy in the development of Germany. The task lost its novelty and interest after a time, and he turned his uneasy gaze outside the empire to the aggrandizement of Germany abroad. More and more he came to be in sympathy with the aggressive policies advocated by the German militaristic class. It included the army and navy officers, both active and retired; the large landowners (*Junkers*); the merchant princes, bankers, and manufacturers; the university professors, diplomats, and higher government officials — all, in short, who expected to profit from a greater and enormously more wealthy Germany. These men organized in 1890 the Pan-German League, which soon became the most powerful political organization in the empire.

The Pan-German League

"We ought not to forget," declared the official circular of the league, "that beyond the boundary lines compassed by the black-red-and-white flag thousands of Germans reside." Holland, the Flemish part of Belgium, the German part of Switzerland, possibly Denmark, Norway, and Sweden, certainly Austria and the Baltic provinces of Russia were all to be absorbed in a bigger Germany. For the Pan-Germans the day of little peoples was over.

The Pan-German program

The Pan-Germans thought that they could conquer Europe, nation by nation. They expected to overwhelm France by a sudden blow, capture Paris, seize the former Franche Comté and what remained of French Lorraine,[1] together with the Channel ports, take the French colonies, and levy an indemnity large enough to pay the expenses of the war. Then they intended to turn

The Pan-German plot

[1] Once part of the Holy Roman Empire. See page 185.

against Russia and annex her Polish and Baltic provinces. Their Austrian ally, meanwhile, would overrun Serbia and open the German "corridor" to the Orient. Once mistress of the Continent, Germany might look forward confidently to the issue of a future struggle with Great Britain and the British Empire for the dominion of the world.

"The Day"

Every preparation was made, every precaution was taken, to ensure a prompt, decisive victory. By the summer of 1914, a special war tax, to be expended on fortifications and equipment, had been collected. The army had been much increased. Enormous stocks of munitions had been accumulated. The Kiel Canal had been reconstructed. Strategic railways leading to the Belgian, French, and Russian frontiers had been laid down. All things were ready for "The Day."

Studies

1. Explain the following: (*a*) *entente cordiale;* (*b*) the "Lost Provinces"; (*c*) "Middle Europe"; (*d*) "Agadir incident"; and (*e*) "reinsurance compact." 2. Find illustrations in the history of Europe during the nineteenth and twentieth centuries of the principle of the balance of power. 3. "The Franco-German War of 1870–1871 was the starting-point of a new era in European diplomacy." Comment on this statement. 4. How was Alsace-Lorraine the "open sore" of European politics after 1871? 5. "The history of Europe in recent years often has hinged upon such remote points as a railroad in Asia Minor, or a protectorate in northern Africa, or a harbor in China." Comment on this statement. 6. How would you define (*a*) militarism and (*b*) imperialism, as these terms have been used in the present chapter? 7. "England's navy is a necessity; Germany's a luxury." Explain this statement. 8. What is the strategic value of the Kiel Canal? 9. Write a brief character sketch of the kaiser on the basis of the quotations from his speeches in this chapter. 10. Why has war been called the "national industry" of Prussia? 11. Point out on the map the European countries included in the Pan-German program.

EUROPE
IN 1914 A.D.
Scale of Miles
0 100 200 300 400 500
20° Longitude West 10° 0° 10° Longitude 20° East from 30° Greenwich 40° 50° 60°
FAROE IS.
SHETLAND IS.
ORKNEY IS.
HEBRIDES
Bergen
NORWAY
Christiania
Christiansand
Gothenburg
SWEDEN
Gulf of Bothnia
ALAND IS.
Helsingfors
Stockholm
Lake Onega
Lake Ladoga
St. Petersburg
Vologda
Viatka
Novgorod
Moscow
Riga
GOTHLAND
BALTIC SEA
Dünaburg
Vitebsk
Smolensk
Vilna
Duna
Penza
Uralsk
Volga
Ural
RUSSIA
Orel
Minsk
Königsberg
Danzig
Warsaw
Vistula
Kiev
Kharkov
Dnieper
Don
Taganrog
Rostov
Caspian Sea
Odessa
Sea of Azov
Crimea
Sevastopol
BLACK SEA
Batum
Trebizond
Erzerum
Constantinople
TURKEY
Adrianople
Scutari
Gallipoli
Salonika
Aegean Sea
Smyrna
ASIA MINOR
Athens
GREECE
CRETE
CYPRUS
Lübeck
Hamburg
Berlin
Bremen
Amsterdam
HELGOLAND
North Sea
DENMARK
Copenhagen
Kiel
Leipzig
Dresden
GERMANY
Elbe
Oder
Cologne
Frankfort
Prague
Cracow
Lemberg
Dniester
Vienna
Buda Pest
AUSTRIA
HUNGARY
Galatz
RUMANIA
Bucharest
Belgrade
Danube
Varna
Sofia
BULGARIA
Philippopolis
Turkey
SERBIA
Nish
Sarajevo
Trieste
Venice
Milan
Munich
Zurich
Basel
Bern
SWITZERLAND
Strassburg
Metz
Luxemburg
Brussels
Antwerp
Ghent
Dover
Calais
Boulogne
English Chan.
Le Havre
Paris
Orleans
Loire
Seine
Rhine
Brest
FRANCE
Bay of Biscay
C. Ortegal
C. Finisterre
Coruña
Bordeaux
Garonne
Lyons
Geneva
Turin
Genoa
Florence
Nice
Marseilles
Bayonne
Oporto
Duero
Ebro
Tagus
Lisbon
Madrid
SPAIN
PORTUGAL
Barcelona
Valencia
Guadiana
C. St. Vincent
Cadiz
Cartagena
Gibraltar
BALEARIC IS.
MINORCA
MAJORCA
IVIZA
CORSICA
ELBA
SARDINIA
Cagliari
Rome
Naples
Brindisi
Durazzo
Cetigne
Scutari
ALBANIA
ADRIATIC SEA
ITALY
Palermo
SICILY
Catania
IONIAN IS.
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
MALTA
AFRICA
ATLANTIC OCEAN
Irish Sea
Belfast
Dublin
IRELAND
Liverpool
Manchester
Birmingham
WALES
ENGLAND
London
Plymouth
Lands End
Glasgow
Edinburgh
Newcastle
SCOTLAND
BRITISH ISLES
NORTH SEA
THE W.-N. WORKS, BUFFALO, N.Y.

CHAPTER XXVII

THE WORLD WAR, 1914–1918[1]

199. Beginning of the War, 1914

"THE Day" soon dawned. On June 28, 1914, the archduke Francis Ferdinand, heir to the Hapsburg throne, and his wife were assassinated at Sarajevo, the capital of Bosnia. The two murderers, who were Bosnians and therefore Austrian subjects, belonged to a Serbian secret society which aimed to separate Bosnia and Herzegovina from the Dual Monarchy and add them to Serbia. The Austrian government, after conducting an investigation, alleged that they had been aided by Serbian officials, with the connivance of the government of Serbia. This accusation has never been proved. No doubt exists, however, that the Sarajevo assassination was a political crime, the natural outcome of the propaganda among the South Slavs (Jugoslavs) for the expulsion of Austria from the Balkans as she had been expelled from Italy and Germany.

The Sarajevo assassination

Nearly a month passed. Then on July 23 Austria-Hungary sent a note to Serbia, harsh, peremptory, and, except in name, an ultimatum. It demanded that Serbia suppress anti-Austrian publications and organizations, dismiss from the army or the civil service all those implicated in the anti-Austrian propaganda, eliminate anti-Austrian teachers and textbooks from the public schools, and consent to "the collaboration in Serbia of representatives of the Austro-Hungarian government for the suppression of the subversive move-

Ultimatum to Serbia

[1] Webster, *Readings in Medieval and Modern History*, chapter xxxv, "Diplomacy of the Great War." Webster, *Historical Source Book*, No. 31, "Wilson's Fourteen Points, 1918"; No. 32, "Declaration of Independence of the Czecho-Slovak Nation, 1918."

ment directed against the territorial integrity of the monarchy." Forty-eight hours only were granted for the unconditional acceptance or rejection of the ultimatum.

Serbia replied on July 25. She agreed to all the Austrian demands except those which required the presence on Serbian soil of representatives of the Dual Monarchy. Such an arrangement, Serbia pointed out, would violate her rights as a sovereign state — would make her, in fact, an Austrian vassal. She concluded by offering to submit the entire dispute to arbitration by the international tribunal at The Hague or to the mediation of the great powers. Austria-Hungary rejected the Serbian reply as unsatisfactory and on July 28 declared war upon her little neighbor.

Serbia's reply

Russia, the protector of the Slavs of the Balkans, could not look on without concern while a great Teutonic power destroyed the independence of a Slav state. But if Russia intervened to aid Serbia, by making war on Austria-Hungary, then Germany, as the latter's ally, would surely attack Russia; and France, bound to Russia in firm alliance, would be obliged to attack Germany. Efforts to preserve the peace of Europe began at once. The Triple Entente first asked Austria-Hungary to extend the time limit for the answer from Serbia. Austria-Hungary declined to do so. Great Britain and France then urged Serbia to make her answer to the ultimatum as conciliatory as possible. After the Serbian reply had been delivered, Great Britain, through Sir Edward Grey, Minister for Foreign Affairs, suggested that the four great powers not directly involved should hold a conference in London to adjust the Austro-Serbian difficulty. France, Italy, and Russia accepted the suggestion. Germany rejected it, saying that she could have nothing to do with bringing her ally before a European tribunal. Finally, Great Britain invited Germany herself to propose some method of mediation, but the German government declared that the whole dispute concerned only Austria-Hungary and Serbia and that Russia should not interfere in it. If Russia did interfere, Germany would back her ally.

Ineffective peace proposals

We know now why these and other peace proposals during that last fateful week of July, 1914, were ineffective. Austria-Hungary and Germany had already decided upon aggressive action against Serbia. Their reason was the situation in the Balkans. The First and Second Balkan Wars[1] had brought an enormous accession of strength to Serbia and Montenegro, whose people now looked forward with increasing assurance to the liberation of their brothers in the Jugoslav provinces of the Austrian Empire.[2] This situation, threatening the integrity of the Empire, threw the Viennese diplomats into a state of panic so great that they actually drafted and presented a memorandum to Berlin, on the necessity of crushing Serbia, *before* the assassination of the archduke. The assassination only supplied a convenient pretext for the punitive measures which had already been decided upon by the Austrian government. The German government sanctioned these measures in advance, without, apparently, being aware of their exact nature. The kaiser and his advisers thus gave Austria a "blank check" to be filled in as Austria pleased.

Attitude of Austria-Hungary and Germany

How it was filled in we also know now. The present republican government of Austria published in the latter part of 1919 an official volume[3] of documents found in the archives of the former imperial government, from which it appears that a ministerial meeting held in Vienna, July 7, 1914, took the momentous decision to force war on Serbia. This was to be done by sending a note with such impossible demands that the Serbian government would be compelled to reject them. An Austro-Hungarian declaration of war would then follow in due course. The Foreign Minister, Count Berchtold, who presided at the meeting and afterward signed the note to Serbia, declared to the ministers that the kaiser had "emphatically" assured him of the "unconditional

The "blank check"

[1] See pages 530–531 and 712–713.

[2] See page 497 and the map on page 498.

[3] *Diplomatic Documents on the Antecedents of the War of 1914*, Part I, Vienna, 1919. State Printing Office.

support of Germany in case of a warlike complication with Serbia." Germany was thus prepared to support Austria-Hungary to the uttermost.

Prince Lichnowsky's memorandum

One of the most severe indictments of Austro-German policy in 1914 came from no less a personage than Prince Lichnowsky, who was the ambassador of Germany to Great Britain before the outbreak of the conflict. His memorandum, prepared originally for private circulation among friends but afterward published in 1918, declared that "we" encouraged Count Berchtold to attack Serbia, although no German interest was involved; that when Russia emphatically declared that Serbia must not be overrun "we" rejected the British proposals for mediation, although Serbia had accepted almost the whole ultimatum; and that "we" replied to Russia's mere mobilization by a declaration of war, thus deliberately destroying all possibility of a peaceful settlement. "In view of these indisputable facts, it is not surprising that the whole civilized world outside Germany attributes to us the sole guilt for the World War."

The international situation

The international situation in the summer of 1914 clearly favored aggressive action by the Central Powers. Each of the Entente Powers faced serious domestic difficulties. Russia was embarrassed by industrial troubles culminating in the proclamation of a general strike and preparations for street fighting in the capital. France was disturbed by popular opposition to a new law which extended military service from two to three years. Even Great Britain apparently stood on the brink of civil conflict in Ireland. If war was to come, it could not come at a better time for the Central Powers than the summer of 1914.

Attitude of Russia

Russia had yielded to the Central Powers in the Balkan crises of 1908 and 1912–1913. Would she yield once more in 1914? The Central Powers apparently believed that she would do so, when confronted with the grim prospect of war. The tsar's government, however, disappointed their calculations of an easy diplomatic victory. As soon as news came that the Austrians were attacking Serbia,

Russia started a partial mobilization of her armies along the Austrian frontier. This was soon extended into a general mobilization upon the entire western border of the Russian Empire. Russia thus served notice on the Central Powers that she would fight rather than look on supinely while they deprived Serbia of independence and annihilated Russian influence in southeastern Europe. War, if it broke out, was not to be "localized" in the Balkans.

Russian mobilization provided the leaders of the German war party with the pretext that was essential to them. They must not allow Russia to gain while peace continued an advantage that might prove disastrous to Germany after hostilities began. If Germany were to take up arms, she must reap the full advantage of her military preparedness; she could not afford to wait until her slower-moving antagonist had brought gigantic forces into the field. The kaiser's government, accordingly, sent an ultimatum to Russia ordering that country to start demobilization within twelve hours or accept the consequences (July 31). Russia did not reply to this peremptory demand. The kaiser, exercising his right to make "defensive warfare," immediately signed the document declaring that a state of hostilities existed between Germany and Russia (August 1).

Germany at war with Russia

Asked by Germany what was to be her attitude in the coming struggle, France replied that she "would do that which her interests dictated," and began to mobilize. Germany then declared war on France (August 3). It is now known[1] that had France decided to remain neutral, repudiating her treaty with Russia, the German government intended to demand the surrender of the fortresses of Toul and Verdun as a pledge of French neutrality until the close of the war. Germany thus showed herself so anxious to embroil France in the conflict that she made demands which that country could not and was not expected to accept.

Germany at war with France

Germany also tried to learn the attitude of Great Britain.

[1] Revelations of M. Pinchon, Minister for Foreign Affairs, at the Sorbonne, Paris, March 1, 1918.

The German Chancellor, Bethmann-Hollweg, promised that if Great Britain would stand aloof, Germany would agree not to take any European territory from France, but he refused to give assurances as to the French colonies. Sir Edward Grey retorted that Great Britain could never conclude such a disgraceful bargain with Germany at the expense of France. The British Foreign Minister, however, made it clear that Great Britain would not be drawn into a Franco-German War unless France and Russia rejected "any reasonable proposal" for peace put forward by the Central Powers. After the German declaration of war on Russia and the German invasion of neutral Luxemburg,[1] Great Britain promised France the help of the British fleet in case the German fleet operated against the unprotected western coast of France. The British government felt that it could not do less, for, in accordance with the Anglo-French *entente*, France since 1912 had concentrated her fleet in the Mediterranean so that the British fleet might be concentrated in the North Sea against the possibly hostile German navy.

Attitude of Great Britain

WILLIAM II

The neutrality of Belgium was guaranteed by the European powers, including France and Prussia, both in 1831 and 1839;[2] furthermore, the Second Peace Conference in 1907, with Germany consenting, expressly declared the territory of neutral states to be inviolable. The French government on August 1 announced its intention to respect Belgian neutrality. The next day, however, Germany addressed a note to Belgium demanding permission to move

Violation of Belgian neutrality

[1] See page 374 and note 1.

[2] See page 374.

troops across the country into France and threatening, in case of a refusal, to leave Belgium's fate to the "decision of arms." The Belgian government, under King Albert, declined to "sacrifice the honor of the nation and betray its duty toward Europe." On August 4 the German army invaded Belgium. Bethmann-Hollweg frankly admitted before the Reichstag, the same day, that the invasion was "a breach of international law," — "necessity knows no law," said Bethmann-Hollweg — and the kaiser, in a cable message to President Wilson,[1] acknowledged that Belgian neutrality "had to be violated by Germany on strategical grounds."

Strategic importance of Belgium

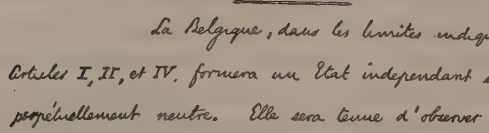
An invasion of Belgium was, in fact, vital to the success of the German plan of campaign, which involved a swift, crushing blow at the French before Russian mobilization could be completed. No rapid movement against France was possible from the east, first, because the high bluffs and narrow river valleys in this part of the country made defense easy; and, second, because the eastern frontier had been protected, since the Franco-German War, by fortresses all the way from Verdun to Belfort. An attack from the northeast presented fewer difficulties, for a comparatively level plain, well provided with roads and railways, stretches from Germany through Belgium and France to the environs of Paris. Furthermore, France had not strongly fortified her frontier on the side of Belgium, having trusted to the neutrality of that country for protection.

Germany at war with Great Britain

The neutrality of Belgium has been a cardinal point in British foreign policy since the Middle Ages. It seems essential to Great Britain that the Belgian coast shall not be occupied by a strong military power, thus menacing British control of the Channel. Over this question she fought with Philip II of Spain in the sixteenth century and later with Louis XIV and Napoleon. Great Britain, moreover, had her explicit treaty obligations to Belgium, obligations which no honorable nation could fail to respect. When, therefore, news came that German troops were

[1] Sent August 10, 1914.

entering Belgium, the British government, at this time controlled by the Liberals under Mr. Asquith, sent an ultimatum to Germany, requiring assurances by midnight, August 4, that Bel-



Article VII

La Belgique, dans les limites indiquées aux Articles I, II, et IV, formera un Etat independant et perpétuellement neutre. Elle sera tenue d'observer cette même neutralité envers tous les autres Etats

FACSIMILE OF ARTICLE VII OF THE TREATY OF 1839

"Belgium, within the limits specified in Articles I, II and IV, shall form an independent and perpetually neutral state. It shall be bound to observe such neutrality towards all other states."

gian neutrality would be respected. Germany refused, and Bethmann-Hollweg, in his final interview with the British ambassador at Berlin, complained that Great Britain was about to fight a kindred nation just for "a scrap of paper." About midnight Great Britain declared war on Germany.

HERBERT H. ASQUITH

Responsibility for the war

The primary responsibility for kindling the great conflagration must be shouldered by the former governments of Austria-Hungary and Germany. The one government, by its ultimatum to Serbia, precipitated a grave international crisis. The other government, by its unconditional support of its ally, nullified every effort to avert a conflict put forth by Great Britain, France, and Italy, and even by Russia. After 1871 the opposing interests of the European powers had again and again threatened to result in war. Peace, nevertheless, remained unbroken, because there was a mutual desire to

keep it. In 1914 two of the powers refused to tread further the path of peace. They flung a flaming torch into the powder magazine of Europe.

200. The Western Front

The war quickly converted the Triple Entente into a Triple Alliance. Great Britain, France, and Russia engaged not to make peace separately and to accept a general peace only on terms agreeable to all of them. The instinct of self-preservation, which had united Europe against France under Louis XIV and Napoleon, was now aroused against the military domination of Germany under the kaiser. As on previous occasions, Great Britain, with her fleet, her money, and eventually her army, formed the keystone of the coalition.

The Allies, 1914

Germany and Austria-Hungary, though less populous and wealthy than their antagonists, held a better geographical position, and at the outset they possessed a superiority both in the number of trained soldiers and in guns, munitions, and equipment. Above all, they were prepared. Austria-Hungary had already massed part of her army against Serbia, while Germany, by means of her strategic railroads, could move and concentrate troops on her eastern or western frontier with greater speed than either Russia or France. Should it prove to be a short war, the Central Powers seemed likely to win an overwhelming victory.

The Central Powers, 1914

Hostilities began on the western front with the converging advance of the Germans through Luxemburg and Belgium. They occupied the tiny grand duchy without resistance and then threw themselves upon the Belgians. The fortresses of Liège and Namur, supposedly impregnable, were smashed to pieces by the huge German siege guns, and Brussels itself was captured. Nevertheless, the Belgian resistance — heroic, unexpected[1] — delayed by at least twelve days the arrival of the Germans on the frontiers of France. The French gained time to complete mobilization and the British to send an expeditionary force of one hundred thou-

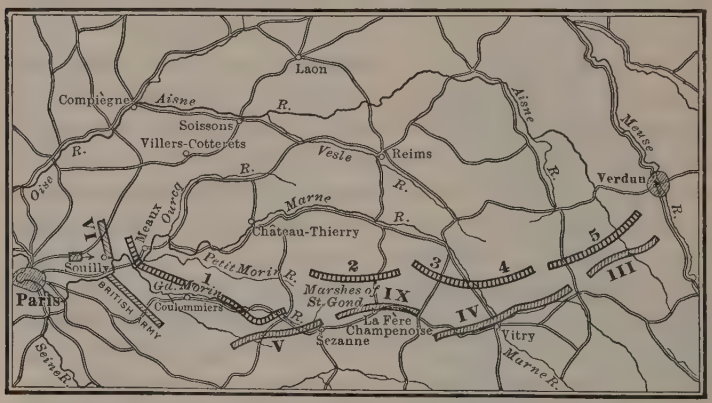
The German advance

[1] *Fortissimi sunt Belgæ* (Cæsar, *Gallic War*, i, 1).

sand men. After the first clash at Mons, the Anglo-French armies retired southward, fighting delaying actions all the way. The invaders soon crossed the Marne and at one point came within fifteen miles of Paris. The opposing forces were now extended in an immense semi-circle, one hundred and fifty miles in length, from the vicinity of the French capital to below Verdun.

Battle of the Marne, September 6–12, 1914

The retreat of the Allied armies stopped at the Marne. "The hour has come," said General Joffre in a stirring message to his soldiers, "to advance at all costs, and to die where you stand rather than give way." The battle of the Marne, lasting an entire week, was not a single conflict, but a whole series of conflicts, in which 2,500,000 men participated. On the extreme west of the line the French and British attacked the invaders near Paris; on the extreme east the French repulsed them from the fortresses between Verdun and Belfort. At the same time General Foch's



PLAN OF THE BATTLE OF THE MARNE

British army (Field-Marshal French).
VI. French army (Manoury).
V. " " (Franchet d'Esperey).
IX. " " (Foch).
IV. " " (Langle de Cary).
III. " " (Sarrail).
1. German army (Von Kluck).
2. " " (Von Bulow).
3. " " (Von Hausen).
4. " " (Duke of Würtemberg).
5. " " (Crown Prince of Prussia).

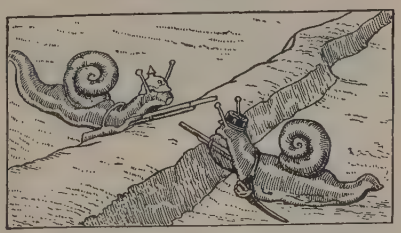
magnificent assault drove in the German center on both sides of the marshes of St.-Gond. The weight of the combined movement hurled the enemy back in confusion, and with heavy losses of men and material, across the Aisne River. The Germans had been out-generaled and out-fought; German plans for a speedy triumph had been upset; and Paris had been saved.

The race to the sea

Both sides now bent every effort to extend their lines northward to the sea. The Germans hoped to seize Dunkirk and Calais, two important Channel ports, and thus to interrupt the direct line of communication between Great Britain and France; but the Allies reached the Channel first and further north at Nieuport. Then followed in October and November, 1914, the first battle of Ypres, when the Germans, by massed attacks, tried vainly to break through the British lines. Near the coast the Belgians cut the dikes of the river Yser, flooding the lowlands and stopping any further advance in this direction. Trench warfare now began to replace open fighting all along the western front from the North Sea to the Swiss frontier, a distance of six hundred miles.

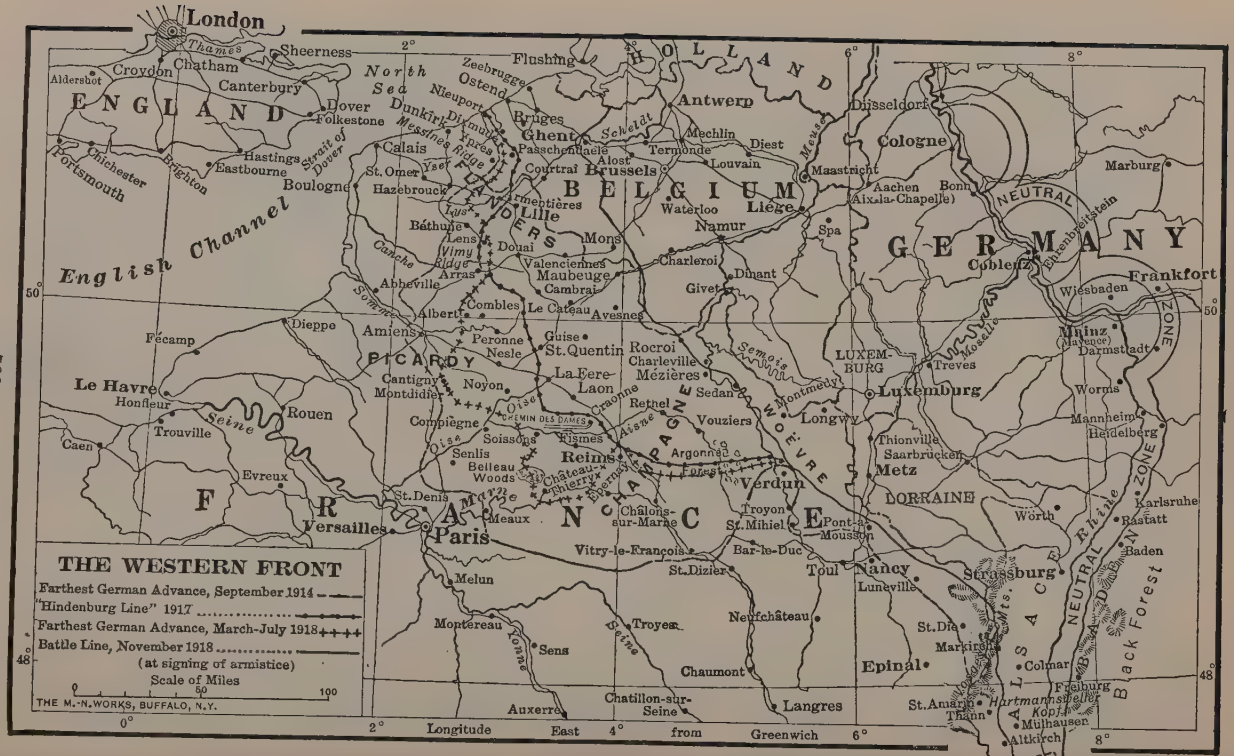
The deadlock

Repeated efforts to break the deadlock on the western front marked the year 1915. Both French and British made some progress in clearing enemy trenches by means of concentrated shell-fire, but as yet the production of high-explosive shells was insufficient for prolonged "blasting operations." The Germans, on their part, employed poison gas in the second battle of Ypres, during April and May. The situation was critical for a time, until the French and British manufactured gas masks to overcome the choking fumes. The Allies were eventually obliged themselves to use this hideous device against the enemy.



"The Advance on Paris and Berlin"

The first half of 1916 was marked by the German assault upon Verdun, the most important French stronghold on the


London
Thames
Sheerness
Chatham
Croydon
Aldershot
Canterbury
ENGLAND
Dover
Folkestone
Hastings
Eastbourne
Chichester
Portsmouth
Brighton
Strait of Dover
English Channel
Boulogne
Calais
St. Omer
Hazebrouck
Béthune
Lens
Lille
Douai
Arras
Abbeville
Amiens
Albert
Dieppe
Fécamp
Le Havre
Honfleur
Rouen
Trouville
Caen
Evreux
Seine
Somme
Canche
Lys
Messines Ridge
Ypres
Dunkirk
Nieuport
Ostend
Zeebrugge
Flushing
North Sea
Bruges
Ghent
Passchendaele
Courtrai
Brussels
Alost
Termonde
Mechlin
Antwerp
Scheldt
Meuse
Diest
Louvain
Maastricht
HOLLAND
BELGIUM
Waterloo
Liége
Namur
Mons
Charleroi
Dinant
Givet
Valenciennes
Maubeuge
Cambrai
Le Cateau
Avesnes
Combles
Albert
Peronne
Guise
Nesle
St. Quentin
Roeroi
Charleville
Mézières
La Fere
Laon
Cantigny
Montdidier
Noyon
Compiègne
Soissons
Senlis
Belleau Woods
Château-Thierry
Marne
Meaux
St. Denis
Versailles
Paris
FRANCE
Oise
Aisne
Chemin des Dames
Crozonne
Rethel
Sedan
Vouziers
Longwy
Montmedy
Semois
Woëvre
Argonne
Forest
Verdun
Troyon
St. Mihiel
Pont-à-Mousson
Vitry-le-François
Bar-le-Duc
St. Dizier
Toul
Nancy
Luneville
Metz
Thionville
Saarbrücken
LORRAINE
LUXEMBURG
Luxemburg
Treves
Mosel
Düsseldorf
Cologne
Aachen (Aix-la-Chapelle)
Bonn
Coblenz
Rhine
Marburg
NEUTRAL ZONE
GERMANY
Spa
Frankfort
Wiesbaden
Mainz (Mayence)
Darmstadt
Worms
Mannheim
Heidelberg
Karlsruhe
Rastatt
Baden
Worth
Strasburg
Rhine
Black Forest
Neutral Zone
ALSACE
Colmar
Epinal
St. Dié
Markirch
Mts. des Vosges
Hartmannsweiler Kopf
Mülhausen
Altkirch
Freiburg
St. Amarin
Thann
Belfort
Gap
Montbéliard
Langres
Chaumont
Neufchâteau
Troyes
Sens
Montereau
Melun
Auxerre
Chatillon-sur-Seine
Yonne
Seine
Marne
Ourcq
Meuse
Longitude East from Greenwich
THE WESTERN FRONT
Farthest German Advance, September 1914
"Hindenburg Line" 1917
Farthest German Advance, March-July 1918
Battle Line, November 1918
(at signing of armistice)
Scale of Miles
0 50 100
THE M.-N. WORKS, BUFFALO, N.Y.

eastern frontier. The siege of the city lasted nearly five months and cost the lives of at least half a million men on both sides. The Germans, led by the crown prince, Frederick William, were determined to take the place at any cost. The French, commanded by General Pétain, were equally determined to keep it at any cost. "They shall not pass!"[1] became the battle-cry of all France. They did not pass. More than that, in the fall of 1916 the French resumed the offensive and within seven hours drove the Germans back almost to their original lines. Ruined Verdun, like ruined Ypres, thus remained in Allied hands.

Siege of Verdun, February–July, 1916

What more than anything else relieved the pressure on Verdun was the Anglo-French attack against the German lines along the river Somme. Great Britain by this time had adopted conscription and had built up a magnificent army commanded by Sir Douglas Haig. The Allies now possessed more heavy guns and munitions than the Germans, and in the "tanks" a weapon destined to prove its value in breaking the trench deadlock. The Allied advance took place on a front of twenty miles to a maximum depth of about nine miles. It was finally checked by German counter-attacks and by bad weather.

Battle of the Somme, July–November, 1916

British Recruiting Poster

To forestall another attack, the Germans in the spring of 1917 retired on a wide front to the shorter and more defensible

[1] *Ils ne passeront pas!*

Hindenburg Line. The territory evacuated by them was laid completely waste, every building being destroyed, vineyards uprooted, and orchards cut down. The Allies advanced over this wilderness and from April to December conducted a steady offensive, which brought them appreciable gains. The Hindenburg Line still held, however, when the approach of winter put an end to active operations.

The Hindenburg Line

GUILD HALL, YPRES

The Guild Hall of the Cloth Merchants (begun 1201, completed 1304) was the chief edifice of the sort in Belgium and one of the finest examples of secular Gothic architecture in Europe. The façade measured 460 feet and had two ranges of painted windows. At each end rose a turret and in the middle the massive belfry.

The military treatment of Belgium and northern France aroused the horror of the civilized world. Deliberate, systematic massacres of the civil population to prevent or punish resistance, the looting and burning of entire villages, the destruction of Louvain with its famous university, the shelling of the Guild Hall of Ypres and the cathedral of Reims, the imposition of excessive taxes and heavy fines on Belgian and French cities, the robbing of Belgium and northern France of coal, metals, machinery, and raw materials, finally, the forcible deportation of tens of thousands of civilians, both men and women, for forced labor in Germany — these were some of the wartime practices which characterized military treatment of the conquered territory. The inhabi-

Military Wartime Practices

tants would have perished had it not been for the efficient system of relief organized by an American, Mr. Herbert C. Hoover, who enlisted the help of the Allies and of the United States in providing food, clothing, and other necessaries of life for the invaded districts.

201. The Eastern Front

There was no deadlock on the eastern front. The Russians mobilized more rapidly than had been expected and put large forces in the field, under the general command of the grand duke Nicholas, an uncle of the tsar. Their plan of campaign involved a simultaneous advance against the Germans in East Prussia and the Austrians in Galicia. The Russian armies which entered East Prussia, a difficult country of lakes, marshes, and rivers, were surprised and well-nigh annihilated by Hindenburg at the battle of Tannenberg (August, 1914). The following January, when the Russians again ventured into this part of Germany, Hindenburg won another overwhelming victory at the battle of the Mazurian Lakes.

The Russians in East Prussia, 1914–1915

The Grand Duke Nicholas

The Russians met better luck in Galicia. They overran all this Austrian province and by the spring of 1915 began to penetrate the Carpathian passes into Hungary. These successes had the further result of causing the withdrawal of German troops from the western front, with a consequent weakening of Germany's offensive power against the French and British.

The Russians in Galicia, 1914–1915

The summer of 1915 saw some of the most tremendous engagements of the entire war. Hindenburg now assumed command of the eastern armies of both the Central Powers and started a terrific "drive" in Poland and Galicia. The Germans made full use of poison gas and a smothering fire of high-explosive shells, while the Russians were hampered by lack of guns and ammunition. The result of the fighting is best traced on the accompanying map, which shows the enormous territory reoccupied or newly acquired by the Central Powers. At the end of 1915 the battle-line on the eastern front stretched from the Gulf of Riga to the Rumanian frontier.

Hindenburg's "drive," 1915

HINDENBURG

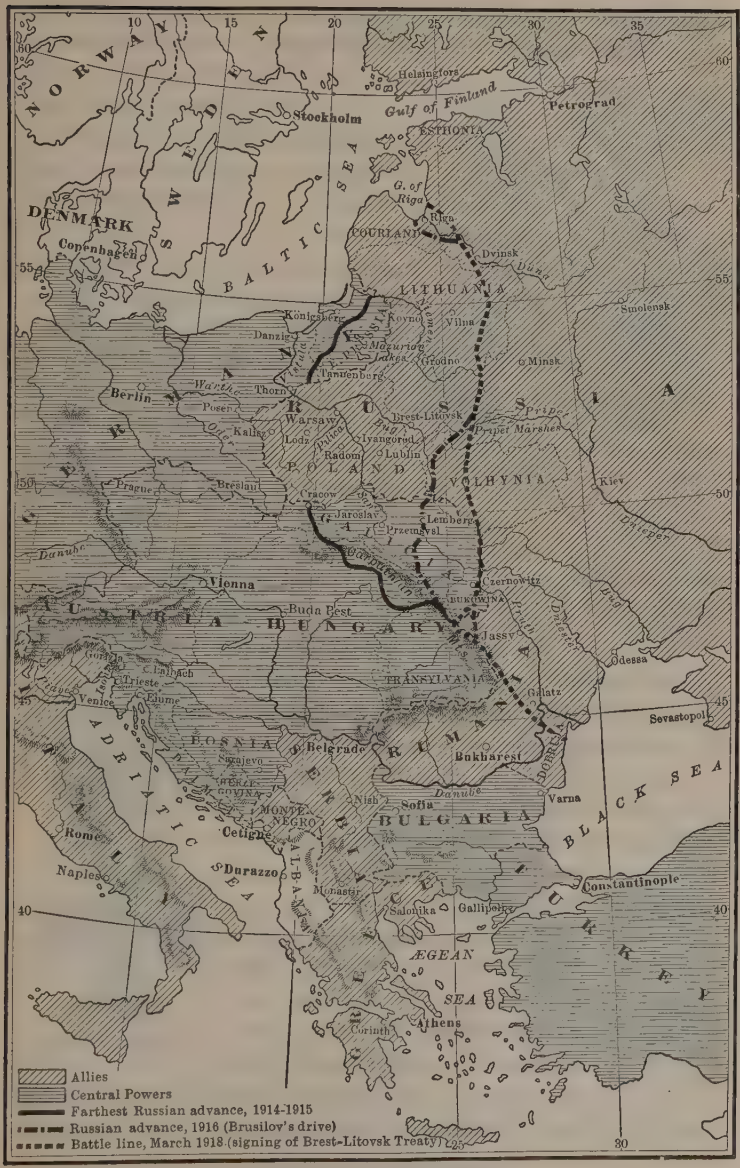
Russia's recuperative power was strikingly exhibited the following year. General Brusilov attacked the Austro-German armies on a wide front between the Pripet Marshes and Bukowina, pushing them back from twenty to fifty miles and making huge captures of men and supplies. The outbreak of the Russian Revolution, early in 1917, made it impossible to continue the offensive. From this time there was little more fighting on the eastern front. Nevertheless, Russia's part in the World War should not be minimized. The sacrifices which she made without stint during the first three years of the struggle were essential to the ultimate victory of the Allies.

Brusilov's "drive," 1916

202. The Balkan and Italian Fronts

As soon as the war broke out, Montenegro made common cause with Serbia. The three other Christian states of the Balkans at first did not declare themselves. Bulgaria had no love for Austria-Hungary, but she cordially hated Serbia, her most successful foe in the Second

Neutrality of the Balkans



The Eastern Front

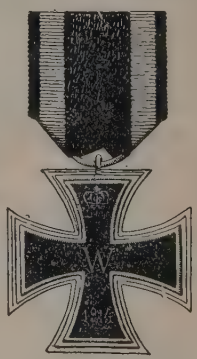
Balkan War. Rumania was friendly neither to Austria-Hungary nor to Russia, for both possessed provinces which she wished to "redeem" from alien rule.[1] Public opinion in Greece, as voiced by Venizelos, the prime minister, favored the Allies. The pro-German King Constantine and the court party managed, however, to preserve a nominal neutrality.

THE VICTORIA CROSS

Established in 1856 for acts of bravery in battle. It is a bronze Maltese cross with the royal crest (lion and crown) in the center and below it a scroll inscribed "For Valour."

Turkey, largely controlled by Germany and fearful of Russia's designs on Constantinople, soon espoused the cause of the Central Powers. Her entrance did not at first appreciably affect the situation, for she was still cut off from her associates by a neutral Bulgaria and a hostile Serbia. The sultan proclaimed a holy war of extermination against the "enemies of Islam." Contrary to German hopes, the Moslems of North Africa, Egypt, and India, instead of revolting, loyally supported France and Great Britain. An Anglo-French fleet in 1915 tried without success to force the Dardanelles and thus to open the way to Constantinople. No greater success attended the heroic efforts of the "Anzacs" (Australians and New Zealanders) to secure a footing on the peninsula of Gallipoli, and the troops were finally withdrawn from this graveyard of Allied hopes.

Turkey joins the Central Powers, October, 1914



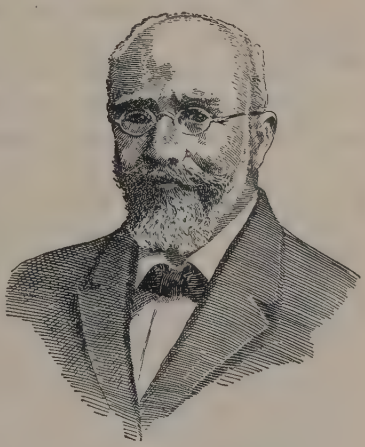
THE IRON CROSS

Bulgaria, after long hesitation, also threw in her lot with the Central Powers. The situation in the Balkans now changed overnight. Brave little Serbia, who earlier in the war had twice expelled the Austrians, quickly collapsed under the double attack of Austro-Germans from the north

Bulgaria joins the Central Powers, October, 1915

[1] Transylvania, Bukowina, and Bessarabia.

and Bulgarians from the east. Montenegro, Serbia's ally, was likewise conquered, together with northern Albania. The triumph of the Central Powers had the important result of opening up railway communication between Berlin and Constantinople.



Eleutherios Venizelos

Military operations in the Balkans were not yet over. Influenced by the success of Brusilov's "drive" on the eastern front and the Anglo-French victories at Verdun and on the Somme in the West, Rumania decided to join the Allies. Her armies promptly invaded Transylvania. A German-Austrian-Bulgarian counter-stroke drove them out and led to the speedy conquest of two-thirds of their own territory. The Rumanian collapse brought enormous advantages to the Central Powers, who now had access to the grain fields and oil wells of Rumania. It also shortened their battle-front by five hundred miles and facilitated their communications with Bulgaria and Turkey.

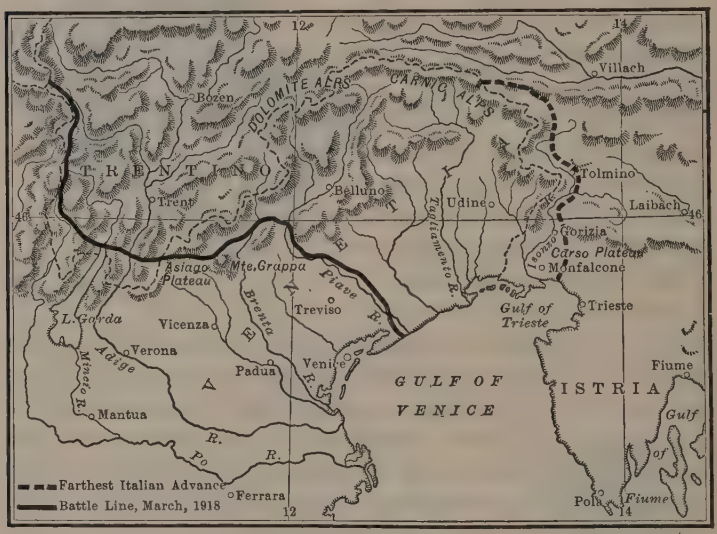
Rumania joins the Allies, August, 1916

After the failure of the Dardanelles campaign a large Anglo-French force had been gathered behind the defenses of Salonika in Greece, partly as a threat to Turkey and Bulgaria and partly to prevent King Constantine from bringing Greece into the war on the side of the Central Powers. He was finally deposed by the Allies, who placed his second son, Alexander, on the throne. Venizelos, whom Constantine had dismissed from office, became prime minister once more and immediately took steps to insure the coöperation of his country with the Allies. The Balkan front henceforth extended westward from the Ægean to the Adriatic.

Greece joins the Allies, June, 1917

Italy declared neutrality in 1914, giving the same reason which she had given in 1913,[1] namely, that the terms of the Triple Alliance did not bind her to assist the Central Powers in an offensive war. But Italy was unable to remain neutral. Union with the Allies meant an opportunity to secure *Italia Irredenta*, those regions around Trent and Trieste still "unredeemed" from the grasp of Austria-

Italy joins the Allies, May, 1915



THE ITALIAN FRONT

Hungary. There were other glittering prospects. Great Britain, France, and Russia, in order to secure her aid, promised by a secret treaty that she should be allowed to annex part of the Dalmatian coast, besides a share of Turkish territory, if the Ottoman Empire were partitioned as a result of the war. The pressure of national interests thus helped to range Italy with the Allies, but even more compelling, perhaps, was the conviction on the part of the Italian people that the Allies were fighting in a just cause for everything that mankind holds dear. Italy, an ancient home of civilization, would aid her Latin sister

[1] See page 713.

France in defending civilization against what seemed a fresh inroad of the Teutonic barbarians.

The entrance of Italy [1] added another front and almost completed the encirclement of the Central Powers. Italian armies marched against Trieste and the Trentino, but for a long time made slow progress. The Austrians held the crest of the mountains and the passes, and the Italians had to force their way upward in the face of the enemy. During the summer of 1916 they finally crossed the Isonzo River and occupied Gorizia on the way to Trieste. The break-up of Russia after the revolution freed large forces of the Central Powers for service against Italy. An Austro-German attack, late in 1917, undid all that the Italians had accomplished in more than two years of hard fighting and forced them back as far as the Piave River. There, with some aid from French and British troops, the Italians checked their foes.

Italian campaigns

The military situation in Europe at the end of 1917 clearly favored the Central Powers. On the western front they held Luxemburg, nearly all of Belgium, and a broad strip of northern France containing valuable coal and iron mines. On the eastern front they held Poland, Lithuania, and Courland, the richest industrial districts of the Russian Empire. They had overrun Serbia, Montenegro, northern Albania, and a large part of Rumania. They had taken most of Venetia from the Italians. Their only territorial losses to the Allies were in southern Alsace and eastern Galicia. A different picture, however, was presented outside of Europe and on the sea.

The Allies and the Central Powers, 1917

203. The War outside of Europe and on the Sea, 1914–1917

The sea-power of the Allies enabled them to capture Germany's colonial possessions. The British and French seized Togo and the Cameroons in West Africa. British troops from the Union of South Africa, assisted by loyal Boers, took German Southwest Africa, and in coöperation with Belgian forces took German East Africa.

Capture of the German colonies

[1] San Marino also has a place in the Allied honor roll.

The German possessions in the Pacific,[1] south of the equator, were conquered by the Australians and New Zealanders, and those north of the equator by the Japanese.

Capture of Kiauchau, 1914

Japan promptly entered the war on the side of the Allies. She had not forgotten the kaiser's slighting references to the "Yellow Peril" nor the fact that Germany had been chiefly instrumental in depriving her of Port Arthur and Liaotung Peninsula, after the Chino-Japanese War in 1895.[2] Moreover, Japan had entered into an alliance with Great Britain providing for mutual support were the territorial rights or special interests of either power in the Far East threatened by another power.[3] Japan's special contribution to the Allied cause was the capture of Kiauchau, the German naval base and stronghold in the Far East.[4]

Freeing of Egypt and Arabia

Germany's ally, Turkey, suffered the loss of her outlying possessions. Great Britain proclaimed a protectorate over Egypt and set up a new ruler, or sultan, who was to be quite independent of the sultan at Constantinople. The British also encouraged a revolt of the Arabs against Turkey. Arab troops secured Mecca and Medina, the sacred places of Arabia, and established the kingdom of Hejaz, which extends along the eastern coast of the Red Sea.

Freeing of Mesopotamia and Palestine

Two other countries, long under the heel of the Turk, owed their liberation to Great Britain. An expeditionary force, largely composed of Indian contingents, invaded Mesopotamia by way of the Tigris River and entered Bagdad in triumph (March, 1917). Another British army, starting from Egypt, invaded Palestine and took possession of Jerusalem (December, 1917). The Holy City, after nearly seven centuries, was again in Christian hands.

Allied control of the sea

The fleets of the Allies quickly swept the merchantmen of the Central Powers from the ocean and compelled their warships to keep the shelter of home ports. The few German raiders which remained at large after hostilities began were either captured or sunk. Once only did the German "High Seas Fleet" slip out of Kiel Harbor, to be met

[1] See page 493, note 1. [2] See page 557. [3] See page 562. [4] See page 492.

by the British battle cruisers off the coast of Jutland (May 31, 1916). Both sides suffered heavy losses in the engagement which followed. With the approach of darkness, however, the German ships returned to their safe anchorage and did not emerge again during the remainder of the war.

Allied control of the sea led to an immediate blockade of Germany and Austria-Hungary. Three results followed. The Allies were able freely to import food and raw materials from their colonies and neutral states. They kept the ocean lanes safe for the transportation of troops from Africa, India, Australia, and Canada, meanwhile preventing the return of Austro-German reservists from the United States and other countries. Finally, the Allies extinguished the commerce of the Central Powers, who were henceforth hard pressed to find the necessary sinews of war for their armies and food for their civilian population.

The blockade

The Allied blockade became more and more stringent. At first, it prevented the importation into Germany only of munitions and other materials used for military purposes. In February, 1915, Great Britain also declared foodstuffs contraband, and as such liable to seizure if carried from neutral countries in neutral ships to Germany. The British justified their action on the ground that the German government had already commandeered the stocks of grain in private hands to insure the feeding of its armies, in other words, had itself treated foodstuffs as practically indispensable to the conduct of the war.

Extension of the blockade

The Central Powers relied on submarines (U-boats) to break the blockade. During the first months of the war the submarines attacked only enemy warships, but before long they began to destroy without warning enemy merchantmen. This was in flagrant defiance of international law, which requires that a cargo or a passenger ship, under either an enemy or a neutral flag, shall be warned before being attacked and every effort made to safeguard human lives. After the British action in making food contraband, Germany went so far as to declare the waters around the British Isles

Submarine warfare

a "war zone," where all enemy merchantmen would be sunk, whether or not passengers and crews could be rescued. Neutral vessels were also warned against trespassing within the zone. It goes without saying that this declaration constituted only a "paper blockade," of the sort that had been already prohibited by the Declaration of Paris in 1856.[1] The attempt to enforce the blockade by piratical means brought about the entrance of the United States into the World War.

German Barred Zone (February 1, 1917)

204. Intervention of the United States

The United States as a neutral

President Wilson announced the neutrality of the United States immediately upon the outbreak of hostilities. No other course seemed possible, in view of our traditional policy of non-interference in European affairs and our peaceful temper. The President also asked for neutrality of sentiment on the part of the American

[1] See page 629.

people, so that the United States, as the one great nation at peace, might in time be able to mediate between the warring countries. While the government did remain neutral, American citizens could not avoid taking sides. The Central Powers had

THE "LUSITANIA"

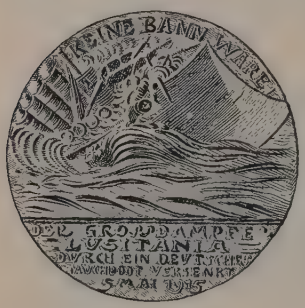
many active sympathizers, especially among those of German birth or parentage. Public opinion, however, favored the Allies; above all, France, who had helped us so much in the Revolutionary War, and Belgium, so innocent and so cruelly wronged. But as yet there was little thought of our active participation in the war.

The United States, before long, was drawn into diplomatic controversies with the belligerents. President Wilson made repeated and vigorous protests to Great Britain regarding alleged infringements by that country of our neutral rights at sea, especially the detention of American ships in British ports to determine whether or not the ships carried contraband goods. But Germany's proclamation of a "war zone" raised a much more serious issue. President Wilson protested at once, declaring that the United States would hold the German government to a "strict accountability" for American ships destroyed or American citizens killed. Germany disclaimed all responsibility for "accidents" which might occur. U-boats proceeded to torpedo the great British liner *Lusitania* with the loss of over one hundred American men, women, and children (May 7, 1915),[1] and also attacked American ships and

Submarine atrocities

[1] In all, 1195 persons were drowned.

those of other neutral nations. A "war of notes" between the United States and Germany finally extorted a German pledge not to sink merchant vessels without warning, unless they attempted to escape or offered resistance (May, 1916). Germany never intended to keep her pledge any longer than convenient, as the frank Bethmann-Hollweg afterwards admitted in a public statement. At the end of January, 1917, she notified the American government of her purpose to sink at sight all ships, both enemy and neutral, found within certain areas adjoining the British Isles, France, and Italy, and in the Mediterranean. Only narrow "safety lanes" to one British port and to Greek waters were left open for a limited amount of neutral traffic inside the barred zone. Germany thus proposed to violate every right to the freedom of the seas for which the United States had ever contended. President Wilson then severed diplomatic relations with the German government. This act did not necessarily mean war, but it prepared the way for war.



THE GERMAN "LUSITANIA" MEDAL

The obverse, shown here, bears under the legend *Keine Bannware* ("No Contraband") a representation of the sinking ship. The designer of the medal has added guns and airplanes, which, however, the *Lusitania* did not carry.

Intrigues and conspiracies

Submarine atrocities combined with Austro-German intrigues and conspiracies throughout the United States to arouse the warlike temper of the American people. Official and non-official representatives of the Central Powers had done all they could to destroy munition plants and steel factories supplying the Allies. Funds were sent to the German ambassador for use in bribing Congress to declare an embargo on the traffic in munitions. Spies were multiplied throughout the country. Efforts were made to foment ill feeling in the United States against Japan and in Mexico against the United States. When Germany was about to proclaim unrestricted submarine warfare and believed the intervention of the United States would follow, she even invited Mexico to

S. J. Res. 1. (PUBLIC RESOLUTION....NO. 1 ....65th CONGRESS.)

Sixty-fifth Congress of the United States of America;

At the First Session,

Begun and held at the City of Washington on Monday, the second day of April, one thousand nine hundred and seventeen.

JOINT RESOLUTION

Declaring that a state of war exists between the Imperial German Government and the Government and the people of the United States and making provision to prosecute the same.

Whereas the Imperial German Government has committed repeated acts of war against the Government and the people of the United States of America: Therefore be it

Resolved by the Senate and House of Representatives of the United States of America in Congress assembled, That the state of war between the United States and the Imperial German Government which has thus been thrust upon the United States is hereby formally declared; and that the President be, and he is hereby, authorized and directed to employ the entire naval and military forces of the United States and the resources of the Government to carry on war against the Imperial German Government; and to bring the conflict to a successful termination all of the resources of the country are hereby pledged by the Congress of the United States.

C. Champ Clark,

Speaker of the House of Representatives.

Thos. R. Marshall

Vice President of the United States and President of the Senate.

Approved 6 April, 1917

Woodrow Wilson

THE UNITED STATES DECLARATION OF WAR

enter an alliance with her, promising aid in helping that country recover the American Southwest. Such actions convinced our people that Germany and her satellites were running amuck under irresponsible rulers and that national safety, no less than national honor, required us to take the side of the Allies.

American intervention soon became an accomplished fact. The President, in an address before a special session of Congress, urged that since Germany had repeatedly committed hostile acts against the United States, we should formally accept the status of belligerent thus thrust upon us. Congress responded by declaring war on Germany (April 6, 1917). Similar action was taken as to Austria-Hungary in December of the same year. Diplomatic relations with Turkey and Bulgaria were also broken.

The United States as a belligerent

The people of the United States, the President said, had no quarrel with the people of the Central Powers, who had been led blindly into the war by their autocratic governments. Our quarrel was with these governments alone. The United States, in consequence, asked nothing for herself — neither annexations nor indemnities. She fought to uphold the freedom of the seas, to defend the rights of small nations and oppressed nationalities, to put down divine-right monarchy, secret diplomacy, and militarism, to promote among mankind that ordered liberty under law which she had long enjoyed, and to make the world "safe for democracy." In such a cause American citizens were privileged to spend their lives and their fortunes.

A world "safe for democracy"

The United States prepared on a colossal scale for the war. Part of the navy was immediately sent to Europe, including a number of torpedo boats and destroyers to fight the German submarines. The American navy, with some assistance from that of Great Britain, also planted more than 70,000 mines in the North Sea for a distance of 240 miles from the Orkney Islands to the coast of Norway. This deadly marine barrage was laid down in 1918. It effectually shut out German submarines from ingress into the Atlantic, for the narrow strait of Dover had already been closed by mines

War preparations in the United States

and nets. The government adopted conscription as the most rapid and democratic method of raising an army, and two months after the declaration of war over ten million young men were

North Sea Mine Fields

registered for service. Officers' training camps were established, and thirty-two cantonments — virtual cities, each housing forty thousand men — were set up within ninety days to accommodate the private soldiers under training. Congress made huge appropriations for the construction of airplanes, for building cargo ships to replace those sunk by the enemy, for loans to the Allies, and for the purchase of immense quantities of food,

clothing, rifles, machine guns, artillery, munitions, and all the other equipment of a modern fighting force. The money was raised partly by increased taxation, partly by borrowing (the Liberty Loans). Other features of the American war program included fuel control, food control, under the efficient direction of Mr. Herbert C. Hoover, and government operation of railroads, express companies, and telegraph and telephone lines. American engineers in France also constructed docks, storage depots, barracks, and even entire railways for the reception of America's armies.

Latin America and the World War

Public opinion in Latin America very generally approved of the action of the United States in entering the conflict against Germany. During 1917 Brazil, Cuba, and Panama ranged themselves by the side of the United States; during 1918 Costa Rica, Guatemala, Honduras, Nicaragua, and Haiti followed the same course. Five countries — Santo Domingo, Ecuador, Peru, Bolivia, and Uruguay — broke off diplomatic relations with Germany. The seven remaining countries — Mexico, Salvador,[1] Venezuela, Colombia, Chile, Argentina, and Paraguay — continued their formal neutrality. The Mexican government showed itself pro-German throughout the war. Chile and Argentina kept neutral largely as the result of clever German propaganda. Brazil was thus the only one of the larger Latin-American republics to aid the Allies. She took this step because of her traditional friendship for the United States, and also because she wished to give to her foreign policy, at a critical moment of the world's history, a practical form of "continental solidarity."

205. The Russian Revolution

"Dark forces" in Russia

The Russian Revolution, beginning on the eve of American intervention, revealed the war more clearly than ever as no mere conflict for the preservation of power in Europe, but as a world-wide struggle between democracy and autocracy. Popular uprisings in Russia between 1905 and 1906 had compelled the tsar to grant

[1] Salvador declared a benevolent neutrality toward the United States.

a national legislature (Duma), without, however, seriously weakening the position of the government.[1] The war disclosed how inefficient, weak, and even corrupt that government was. Late in 1916 the pro-German party at the court secretly began negotiations with the Central Powers for a separate peace. Patriotic Russians in the Duma passed a resolution that "dark forces" in high places were betraying the nation's interest. Nevertheless, the intrigue went on, and the demoralization of Russia proceeded apace.

A severe shortage of food in Petrograd brought matters to a crisis. Rioting broke out, and the troops were ordered to suppress it with bullet and bayonet in the usual pitiless fashion. But the old army, so long the prop of autocracy, languished in German prison camps or lay underground. The new army, mostly recruited from peasants and workingmen since the war, refused to fire on the people. Autocracy found itself helpless. The Duma then induced the tsar to sign the penciled memorandum which ended the Romanov dynasty after three hundred and four years of absolute power.[2]

Abdication of the tsar, March 15, 1917

The revolutionists set up a provisional government, headed by the executive committee of the Duma. Nearly all the members belonged to the party of Constitutional Democrats, representing the middle class, or *bourgeoisie*. Many liberal reforms were announced: liberty of speech and of the press; the right of suffrage for both men and women; a general amnesty for all political offenders and Siberian exiles; and a constituent assembly to draw up a constitution for Russia. The United States and the western Allies promptly recognized the new government.

Rule of the Constitutional Democrats

Socialists did not rest satisfied with these measures. They planned to give the revolution an economic rather than merely a political character. Throughout Russia they organized *soviets*, or councils representing workingmen and soldiers. The most important of these bodies was the Petrograd Council of Workingmen's and Soldiers' Delegates.

Soviets

[1] See page 514.

[2] See page 198.

The socialistic propaganda for a general peace on the basis of "no annexations and no indemnities" also made rapid headway with the army at the front. The troops began to elect their own officers, to fraternize with the enemy, and to desert in large numbers. The Petrograd *soviet*, having won the support of the army, then abolished the Duma as a stronghold of the *bourgeoisie* and replaced the Constitutional Democrats in the provisional government with socialists.

Alexander Kerensky

The socialist leader was a young lawyer named Alexander Kerensky. His impassioned oratory gave him great influence, and by July, 1917, he had become practical dictator. But Kerensky turned out to be neither a Cromwell nor a Napoleon, at a time when Russia required a combination of both for her salvation. A moderate socialist, he did not please the Constitutional Democrats, and he pleased the radical socialists still less. In November, 1917, a second revolution in Petrograd overthrew him and the provisional government which he headed.

Lenin and Trotsky

The two men at the head of the revolutionary movement were Nicholas Lenin and Leo Trotsky. They belonged to the Bolsheviki,[1] an organization of radical socialists. Lenin was born of Russian parents and was brought up in the Orthodox faith. He received an education in economics and law at the university of Petrograd. His socialistic activities soon resulted in a three years' exile to Siberia. After his release he went abroad and became prominent in the revolutionary circles of many European capitals. Trotsky, a Russian Jew, also suffered exile to Siberia as an undesirable agitator, the first time for four years, the second time for life. Having managed to escape, Trotsky went to western Europe and later to the United States. After the Russian Revolution both men returned to their native country and engaged in socialistic propaganda, with the results that have been seen. Lenin became premier and Trotsky foreign minister (subsequently minister of war) in the new government.

[1] A Russian word meaning "majority men."

The Bolsheviki now made peace with the Central Powers. They agreed to recognize the independence, under German auspices, of both Finland and the Ukraine. Poland, Lithuania, and Courland, conquered by Germany in 1915, were surrendered to that country, together with Livonia and Esthonia. This humiliating treaty deprived Russia of about a third of her population and a third of her territory, including the richest agricultural lands, the chief industrial districts, most of the iron mines and coal mines, and many of the principal railways of the former empire. Had the Brest-Litovsk Treaty endured, Germany would have been the real winner of the World War, whatever might have been the outcome of the conflict elsewhere in Europe.

Treaty of Brest-Litovsk, March 3, 1918

206. War Aims of the Allies

The issues at stake in the World War became clearer as the struggle proceeded. When, on August 1, 1917, Pope Benedict XV proposed that the belligerent nations negotiate with one another on the basis of conditions existing before 1914, President Wilson answered, for both the United States and the Allies, that no enduring peace could be arranged with the autocratic and irresponsible German government. On December 2, 1917, the Bolshevist envoys at Brest-Litovsk brought forward their own proposals for ending the war through a congress of delegates chosen by the parliament of each country. Then on January 5, 1918, Mr. Lloyd George, in a speech before the Trade Union Conference at London, set forth more specifically than ever before the purposes of the Allies. Permanent peace could not come, the British premier declared, until three conditions were fulfilled: first, the sanctity of treaties must be reëstablished; second, territorial settlements must be based on the right of self-determination of nationalities, or the consent of the governed; and third, some international organization must be created to limit the burden of armaments and diminish the probability of future conflicts.

Peace proposals

This speech was followed on January 8, 1918, by President Wilson's address to Congress, setting forth a program for a just

ARCTIC OCEAN
PACIFIC OCEAN
INDIAN OCEAN
ATLANTIC OCEAN
NORTH AMERICA
SOUTH AMERICA
EUROPE
ASIA
AFRICA
AUSTRALIA
NEW ZEALAND
JAPAN
INDIA
BRITISH ISLES
FRANCE
PORTUGAL
GREECE
LIBERIA
CUBA
HONDURAS
NICARAGUA
PANAMA
COSTA RICA
GUATEMALA
ECUADOR
PERU
BOLIVIA
BRAZIL
BR. GUIANA
DU. GUIANA
URUGUAY
ARCTIC CIRCLE
TROPIC OF CANCER
EQUATOR
TROPIC OF CAPRICORN
Allies
Central Powers
States severing diplomatic relations with Germany

and lasting settlement. While the President spoke only for the United States, his "Fourteen Points" met general acceptance in Great Britain, France, and Italy as embodying the war aims of the Allies. The "Fourteen Points" included: abolition of secret diplomacy; freedom of the seas; removal of economic barriers between the nations; reduction of armaments; impartial adjustment of colonial claims, evacuation by Germany of all conquered territory and the restoration of Belgium and Alsace-Lorraine; readjustment of Italian frontiers along the lines of nationality; an independent Poland; self-government for the different peoples of Austria-Hungary and the Ottoman Empire; and, finally, the formation of a general association of nations. In detail, they were as follows:

The "Fourteen Points"

1. Open covenants of peace, openly arrived at, after which there shall be no private international understandings of any kind, but diplomacy shall proceed always frankly and in the public view.

2. Absolute freedom of navigation upon the seas, outside territorial waters, alike in peace and in war, except as the seas may be closed in whole or in part by international action for the enforcement of international covenants.

3. The removal, so far as possible, of all economic barriers and the establishment of an equality of trade conditions among all the nations consenting to the peace and associating themselves for its maintenance.

4. Adequate guarantees given and taken that national armaments will be reduced to the lowest point consistent with domestic safety.

5. A free, open-minded, and absolutely impartial adjustment of all colonial claims, based upon a strict observance of the principle that in determining all such questions of sovereignty the interest of the populations concerned must have equal weight with the equitable claims of the government whose title is to be determined.

6. The evacuation of all Russian territory and such a settlement of all questions affecting Russia as will secure the best and freest coöperation of the other nations of the world in obtaining for her an unhampered and unembarrassed opportunity for the independent determination of her own political development and national policy and assure her of a sincere welcome into the society of free nations under institutions of her own choosing; and, more than a welcome, assistance also of every kind that she may need and may herself desire. The treatment accorded Russia by her sister nations in the months to come will be the acid test of their good will, of their comprehension of her needs as distinguished from their own interests, and of their intelligent and unselfish sympathy.

7. Belgium, the whole world will agree, must be evacuated and restored, without any attempt to limit the sovereignty which she enjoys in common with all other free nations. No other single act will serve, as this will serve, to restore confidence among the nations in the laws which they have themselves set and determined for

the government of their relations with one another. Without this healing act the whole structure and validity of international law is forever impaired.

8. All French territory should be freed and the invaded portions restored, and the wrong done to France by Prussia in 1871 in the matter of Alsace-Lorraine, which has unsettled the peace of the world for nearly fifty years, should be righted, in order that peace may once more be made secure in the interest of all.

9. A readjustment of the frontiers of Italy should be affected along clearly recognizable lines of nationality.

10. The peoples of Austria-Hungary, whose place among the nations we wish to see safeguarded and assured, should be accorded the freest opportunity of autonomous development.

11. Rumania, Serbia, and Montenegro should be evacuated; occupied territories restored; Serbia accorded free and secure access to the sea; and the relations of the several Balkan states to one another determined by friendly counsel along historically established lines of allegiance and nationality; and international guarantees of the political and economic independence and territorial integrity of the several Balkan states should be entered into.

12. The Turkish portions of the present Ottoman Empire should be assured a secure sovereignty, but the other nationalities which are now under Turkish rule should be assured an undoubted security of life and an absolutely unmolested opportunity of autonomous development; and the Dardanelles should be permanently opened as a free passage to the ships and commerce of all nations under international guarantees.

13. An independent Polish state should be erected, which should include the territories inhabited by indisputably Polish populations, which should be assured a free and secure access to the sea, and whose political and economic independence and territorial integrity should be guaranteed by international covenant.

14. A general association of nations must be formed under specific covenants for the purpose of affording mutual guarantees of political independence and territorial integrity to great and small states alike.

207. End of the War, 1918

Situation at the beginning of 1918

The satisfaction with which the western Allies greeted the overthrow of autocracy in Russia turned to dismay when that country, within a year, embraced radical socialism and withdrew from the war. The Treaty of Brest-Litovsk gave the Central Powers a free hand in the West. Great Britain, France, and Italy recognized this fact and prepared to remain on the defensive until the United States should be able to throw the full weight of its resources into the struggle. The Allies, now under the resolute leadership of Lloyd George in Great Britain, Clemenceau in France, and Orlando in Italy, could afford to wait. To the Central Powers a prolongation of the war spelled ruin. "Frightfulness" on the

ocean had not broken the blockade or starved Great Britain or interrupted the stream of transports carrying American troops in ever larger numbers to Europe. Germany realized that her supreme effort for world dominion must be made in 1918, or never. "If the enemy does not want peace," declared the kaiser, "then we must bring peace to the world by battering in with the iron fist and shining sword the doors of those who will not have peace." [1]

"Von Pot und Von Kettle"

After a cartoon in *Punch*. The German general and the German admiral are blaming each other for the failure to stop the Americans either by sea or on the land.

Having gathered every available man and gun, Field Marshal Hindenburg and his associate, General Ludendorff, on March 21, 1918, started a "drive" along the line from Arras to La Fère. Their plan was obvious: to split the Anglo-French forces at the point of juncture on the Oise River; to roll each army back, the British upon the Channel, the French upon Paris; and then to destroy each army separately. The battle which followed surpassed in intensity every previous engagement on the western front. By terrific massed attacks, the Germans regained in a few days all the ground so slowly and painfully won by the Allied offensives in 1916 and 1917. The British were pushed back twenty-five miles, bringing the enemy within artillery range of Amiens and its important railway connections. The critical condition of affairs led the Allies to establish unity of military action by putting all their forces

German "drives"

[1] Address to the Second German Army in France, December 22, 1917.

under the command of General Foch, an admirable strategist, who shared with Joffre the glory of the Marne battle. Before this step was taken, General Pershing had already offered the entire American army to be used wherever needed by the Allies. The Germans in April launched another "drive" to the north, between Arras and Ypres, against the British guarding the road to the Channel ports. The enemy again drove a deep wedge into the British line. It was at this dark hour of the struggle that Sir Douglas Haig issued his historic order: "With our backs to the wall, and believing in the justice of our cause, each one of us must fight to the end. The safety of our homes and the freedom of mankind depend alike upon the conduct of each one of us at the critical moment." French reinforcements arrived on the scene in time to check the German advance. A third "drive" at the end of May, between Soissons and Reims, brought the Germans back once more to the Marne at Château-Thierry, only forty-three miles from Paris, but French and American troops again halted the advance. Renewed German efforts in June and July to pierce the Allied line and reach Paris were fruitless. And now the tide turned.

ERIC VON LUDENDORFF

General Foch, always an advocate of the offensive in warfare, found himself by midsummer able to put his theories into practice. He now possessed the reinforcements sent by both Great Britain and Italy to help hold the long line from the sea to Switzerland, together with more than a million American soldiers — "Pershing's crusaders" — whose mettle had been already tested and not found wanting in en-

The turn of the tide

MARSHAL JOFFRE

MARSHAL FOCH

GENERAL PERSHING

SIR DOUGLAS HAIG

Portraits © Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.

gagements at Cantigny, in the Belleau Woods, and at Château-Thierry. July 18, 1918, is a memorable date, for on that day the Allies began the series of rapid counter-strokes, perfectly coördinated, which four months later brought the war on the western front to a victorious conclusion. How the French and Americans pinched the Germans out of the Marne salient; how the Americans, in their first independent operation, swept the enemy from the St.-Mihiel salient, south of Verdun, thus getting within range of the great fortress of Metz, and started an advance east of the Argonne Forest which carried them to Sedan; how the British, with French and American assistance, broke the "Hindenburg Line"; how the Belgians, British, and French liberated Flanders — these are only the outstanding events of a period unsurpassed in interest and importance since the dawn of history.

With disaster impending on the western front, Germany could no longer support her confederates in the other theaters of the war. Bulgaria was the first of the Central Powers to collapse. A vigorous offensive, begun during September by British, Greek, Serbian, French, and Italian troops in the Balkans, split the Bulgarian armies apart, thus opening the way for an immediate advance upon Sofia. Bulgaria then surrendered unconditionally. Tsar Ferdinand abdicated shortly afterward.

Armistice with Bulgaria, September 29, 1918

Turkey, now isolated from Germany and Austria-Hungary, was the second of the Central Powers to collapse. The campaign against the Turks during September and October formed an unbroken succession of victories. British forces, keeping close touch with their Arab allies, advanced northward from the neighborhood of Jerusalem. They took Damascus, the capital of Syria, and soon entered Aleppo, close to the railway between Constantinople and Bagdad.[1] The British at the same time captured the Turkish army on the Tigris. Nothing remained for Turkey but to sign an armistice which demobilized her troops and opened the road to Constantinople for the Allies.

Armistice with Turkey, October 30, 1918

[1] See the map on page 710.

Simultaneously, Austria-Hungary collapsed. What Italians call the battle of Vittorio Veneto began at the end of October, when General Diaz, the Italian commander, struck a sudden blow at the Austrian armies and hurled them back along the whole front from the Alps to the sea. The battle soon assumed the proportions of a disaster perhaps unequaled in the annals of war. The Italians chased the Austrians out of northern Italy, occupied Trent and Trieste, and captured six hundred thousand prisoners and seven thousand guns. Austria-Hungary then signed an armistice which, as in the cases of Bulgaria and Turkey, amounted to an unconditional surrender.

Armistice with Austria-Hungary, November 3, 1918

The military overthrow of the Dual Monarchy quickly led to its disintegration. Separate states arose, representing the various nationalities formerly subject to the Hapsburgs. Emperor Charles I bowed to the inevitable and laid down the imperial crown which he had assumed in 1916 upon the death of Francis Joseph I. Such was the end of the Hapsburg dynasty, rulers of Austria since the latter part of the thirteenth century.[1]

Revolution in Austria-Hungary

The Hohenzollerns also disappeared from the scene. As Germany during that fateful summer and autumn of 1918 began to taste the bitterness of defeat, the popular demand for peace and democratic government became an open summons to the kaiser to abdicate. He long resisted, vainly making one concession after another, until the red flag had been hoisted over the German fleet at Kiel, and Berlin and other cities were in the hands of revolutionists. Then he abdicated, both as emperor and king, and fled to Holland. The other German crowns quickly fell, like overripe fruit. Germany soon became a socialist republic, controlled by the Social Democrats.[2]

Revolution in Germany

The armistice, which practically ended the war, was concluded by the Allies and the United States with the new German government. It formed a long document of thirty-five clauses, covering every aspect of the military situation and making it

[1] See page 207.

[2] See pages 487 and 647.

impossible for Germany to renew hostilities before the peace settlement. Germany agreed to return all prisoners of war; to surrender her submarines, the best part of her fleet, and immense numbers of cannon, machine guns, and airplanes; to evacuate Belgium, Luxemburg, France, and Alsace-Lorraine; and to allow the joint occupation by Allied and American troops of the Rhinelands, together with the principal crossings of the Rhine (Mainz, Coblenz, and Cologne) and bridgeheads at these points on the right bank of the river. A neutral zone was reserved between the occupied territory and the rest of Germany.[1] The German government signed the armistice on the understanding that the final peace settlement would accord with President Wilson's "Fourteen Points," which had been accepted by the Allies as a summary of their war aims.

Armistice with Germany, November 11, 1918

The sudden termination of hostilities found the greater part of Europe in confusion. The former empires of the Romanovs, Hapsburgs, and Hohenzollerns promised to break up into a large number of independent states, with new governments and a new distribution of population. The problems for solution by the peace conference included, therefore, not only the necessary arrangements for indemnities in money and territory to be paid by the Central Powers and the disposition of Germany's colonial possessions, but also the creation of a number of new sovereign countries with boundaries so drawn as to satisfy all legitimate national aspirations. The World War was to be followed by a World Settlement.

Situation at the end of 1918

Studies

1. Summarize in essay form (about five hundred words) what seem to you to have been the fundamental causes of the World War. 2. Define the following: ultimatum, mobilization, reservists, blockade, contraband of war, and salient. 3. Enumerate the more important countries that remained entirely neutral during the World War. 4. Compare the World War, as to its epoch-making character, with (*a*) the Thirty Years' War; (*b*) the Seven Years' War; and (*c*) the revolutionary and Napoleonic wars. 5. Show that the assassination of the Austrian crown prince furnished an excuse rather than a reason for war. 6. What were the "strategical grounds" for the German invasion of Belgium? 7. Is it likely that Great Britain

[1] See the map, page 732.

would have become a belligerent if Belgian neutrality had not been violated? 8. What made the capture of Paris seem so vitally important to the Germans at the outset of the war? 9. The battle of the Marne has been called "one more decisive battle of the world." Comment on this statement. 10. How did the Austro-German victories on the eastern and Balkan fronts contribute to the realization of "Middle Europe"? 11. Did Japan have sufficient reason for declaring war against Germany? 12. On what grounds did President Wilson adopt a policy of neutrality? 13. Show that the United States, as a neutral, could not properly place an embargo on the exports of arms and munitions to the Allies. 14. Compare the German policy of unrestricted submarine warfare with Napoleon's Continental System. 15. Enumerate the principal reasons for the entrance of the United States in the war against Germany and Austria-Hungary. 16. Why did not the United States declare war on Bulgaria and Turkey? 17. How did the revolution in Russia lead to the disintegration of the country? Contrast its results in this respect with the French Revolution. 18. What gave special significance to President Wilson's "Fourteen Points" as a statement of Allied war aims? 19. On an outline map indicate the territory surrendered by Russia according to the Treaty of Brest-Litovsk. 20. Account for the rapid collapse of the Central Powers in the latter part of 1918. 21. On the basis of the statements in the text, give some account of the origin, character, and extinction of the Hapsburg, Hohenzollern, and Romanov dynasties.

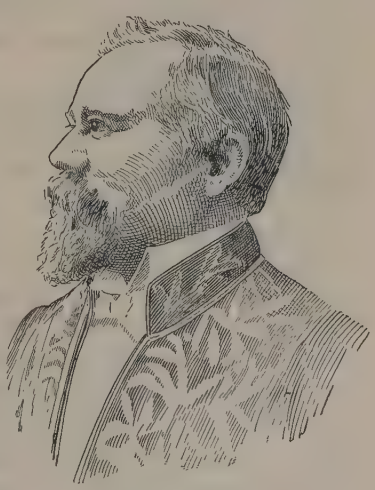
CHAPTER XXVIII

THE WORLD SETTLEMENT, 1919–1920

208. The Peace Conference

On January 18, 1919, forty-eight years to a day from the proclamation of the German Empire in the palace of Louis XIV at Versailles, the Peace Conference assembled at Paris. It was a gathering which dwarfed into insignificance the Congress at Vienna or those still earlier congresses of Utrecht and Westphalia. They met to settle the affairs of Europe; this one met to settle the affairs of the world.

Meeting



Raymond Poincaré

The seventy official delegates to the conference represented all the Allied and Associated countries (except San Marino, Montenegro, Costa Rica, and Russia) and those which had severed diplomatic relations with the Central Powers (except Santo Domingo). Poland, Czecho-Slovakia, and Hejaz, three states which had been formed during the war and had been recognized by the Allies, also sent delegates to Versailles. Neutral states were admitted to the conference only when matters affecting their particular interests came up for discussion. Enemy states were altogether excluded, for, in the words of President Poincaré's opening address, "You have thought

Membership

that the terms of peace ought to be arranged among ourselves before they are communicated to those against whom we have fought the good fight."

Organization

The number of delegates was fixed as follows: five each for the United States, Great Britain, France, Italy, and Japan; three each for Belgium, Brazil, and Serbia; two each for Greece, Rumania, Poland, Czecho-Slovakia, Portugal, China, Siam, the kingdom of Hejaz, India, Australia, South Africa, and Canada; and one each for the remaining countries. Committees of the delegates, together with other representatives of the powers, were appointed to investigate and report on such subjects as the League of Nations, responsibility for the war, reparation by the enemy, and international labor legislation. Over a thousand experts upon geography, history, race conditions, international law, commerce, and other technical matters coöperated with the delegates. Premier Clemenceau of France was unanimously chosen chairman of the conference.

The Supreme Council

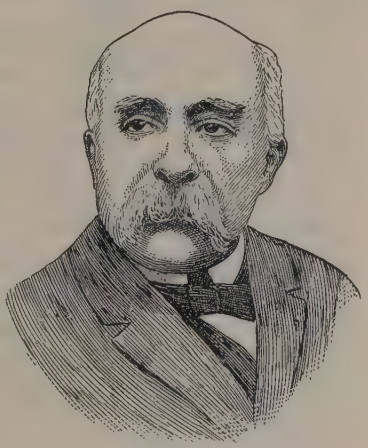
The direction of affairs naturally fell to the United States, Great Britain, France, Italy, and Japan. The two ranking delegates[1] from each of these five powers constituted a Supreme Council to discuss and formulate the business of the conference. As time went on, the difficulty of reconciling the many diverse interests and of reaching a settlement satisfactory to all made it necessary to reduce the original council of ten members to one of five. Finally, both Japan and Italy dropped from the inner circle, and the "Big Three," namely, premiers Clemenceau and Lloyd George, and President Wilson, decided among themselves the most important questions. Very few of their decisions were made public. This apparent relapse into the ways of the old and discredited "secret diplomacy" aroused criticism at the time, especially from those

[1] United States: Woodrow Wilson, President, and Robert Lansing, Secretary of State; Great Britain: David Lloyd George, Prime Minister, and A. J. Balfour, Foreign Secretary; France: Georges Clemenceau, Prime Minister, and Stephen Pinchon, Foreign Minister; Italy: Vittorio Orlando, Prime Minister, and Baron Sonnino, Foreign Minister; Japan: the Marquis Saionji, formerly Prime Minister, and Viscount Chinda.

who did not realize the magnitude of the task before the conference and the urgent need of haste in concluding its labors.

Meanwhile, the drafting of the peace treaty with Germany proceeded steadily. Early in May it was delivered to the German delegates, who had been summoned to Versailles for the occasion. They were given a maximum period of fifteen days within which to present their written observations on the entire document. The time limit, however, was subsequently extended.

The treaty delivered



Georges Clemenceau

A long interchange of notes followed. The German government, declaring that the terms of the treaty violated President Wilson's "Fourteen Points," tried hard to secure a radical modification of the Allied demands. The Supreme Council, in reply, made a number of concessions, none of them vitally important. The treaty as thus amended (the changes being written on the margins in red ink) was again delivered to the German delegates, who were allowed five days to declare their purpose of signing it. In default of such declaration, the Allies would consider the armistice terminated and would "take such steps as they thought needful to enforce their terms."

The treaty amended

This ultimatum and the peremptory refusal of any further extension of time meant that Germany had the choice between immediate acceptance of the treaty without reservations and renewal of the war. Germany chose to accept it, and her decision brought a relief to tense nerves everywhere. The historic ceremony of signing occurred on June 28 in the Hall of Mirrors at Versailles.

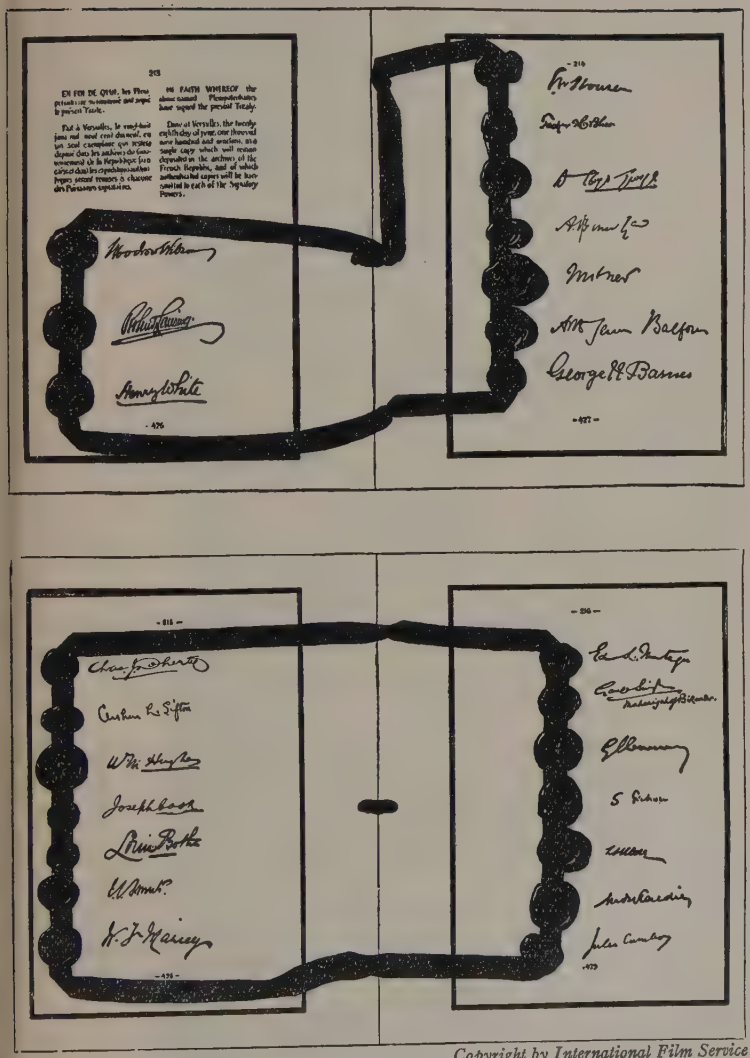
Signing of the treaty, June 28, 1919

The last article of the treaty provided that it should become effective when ratified by Germany on the one hand and by three of the principal Allied and Associated powers on the other hand. Germany ratified it early in July, and similar action was taken during the following months of 1919 by Great Britain, France, and Italy. The exchange of ratifications took place on January 10, 1920, in the Clock Hall of the French Foreign Ministry at Paris. From this day, therefore, the Allied powers and Germany were once more at peace.

Exchange of ratifications, January 10, 1920

An Associated power still remained technically at war with Germany. The United States had not ratified the treaty owing to opposition in the Senate, which, according to the Constitution, must concur by a two-thirds vote in all treaties made by the President. Senatorial criticism was especially directed against certain features of the League of Nations, as inserted in the treaty. The chief stumbling-block was Article X of the covenant, which reads as follows: "The members of the league undertake to respect and preserve as against external aggression the territorial integrity and existing political independence of all members of the league. In case of any such aggression, or in case of any threat or danger of such aggression, the Council shall advise upon the means by which this obligation shall be fulfilled." Many senators believed that this article, by putting the military and naval forces of the United States at the disposal of the league, impaired the constitutional right of Congress to declare war, and might also result in foreign entanglements which it has always been the American policy to avoid. Attempts were made to amend the treaty by writing into it various reservations indicative of the precise obligations which the United States was willing to accept under it. On both occasions (November, 1919, and March, 1920) when the amended treaty came to a vote in the Senate, it failed to pass by the necessary two-thirds majority. The rejection of the treaty made the League of Nations in its existing form the chief issue in the presidential campaign of 1920. The Republicans opposed the league and the Democrats upheld

The United States and the treaty



Copyright by International Film Service

SIGNATURES ON THE PEACE TREATY WITH GERMANY

it. The Republican victory, resulting in the election of Senator Harding, was followed in the summer of 1921 by the passage of a congressional resolution which declared the war of the United States with Germany at an end. This resolution was promptly signed by the President. Treaties of peace negotiated by the administration, not only with Germany, but also with Austria and Hungary, were subsequently ratified by the Senate.

209. Peace with Germany

Character of the treaty

The peace treaty with Germany is the longest document of the sort ever drawn. It contains about eighty thousand words, divided into four hundred and forty articles. The text is in English and French on opposite pages. After the preamble and the list of the high contracting parties, comes the Covenant of the League of Nations. Then follow the articles specifically devoted to Germany.

Germany's western frontier

The Versailles treaty made the following modifications of Germany's western frontier. First of all, she gave back Alsace and Lorraine to France. German misgovernment of these two provinces since 1871 and the evident desire of most of their people to be reunited to France furnish sufficient justification for the action of the Peace Conference. The possession of Alsace-Lorraine, practically uninjured by the ravages of war, helps to compensate France for the destruction wrought in her northern provinces. It also restores the Rhine, to a great extent, as the frontier-line between France and Germany. Second, Germany ceded to France absolutely the coal mines in the Saar Basin (north of Lorraine).[1] This area, which was taken from France in 1815, is to be governed by the League of Nations until a plebiscite is held at the end of fifteen years to determine whether the inhabitants prefer French or German sovereignty. Third, Germany agreed that northern Schleswig should return to Denmark in case a majority of the inhabitants voted for the change.[2] By this action the

[1] See the map on page 415.

[2] See the map on page 411. The results of the two plebiscites taken in the spring of 1920 gave a large part of northern Schleswig to Denmark.

Copyright, Press Illustrating Service

THE PEACE CONFERENCE

After a painting by Jacquelin, the official artist. The Peace Conference took place at the French Ministry of Foreign Affairs on the Quai d'Orsay, overlooking the Seine. The sessions were held in the handsome chamber known as the Salle de l'Horloge (Hall of the Clock).

Copyright, Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.

HALL OF MIRRORS, VERSAILLES

This splendid apartment contains thirty-four arches, half of them filled with windows overlooking the gardens, and half with large mirrors. Louis XIV used the gallery as a throne room. Here the German Empire was proclaimed in 1871, and here in 1919 the Peace of Versailles was signed.

Allies sought to repair the injury done by Prussia to Denmark in 1864. Fourth, Germany relinquished certain small districts on her western frontier to Belgium.

The restoration of Poland to a place among the nations necessitated sweeping changes in the eastern frontier of Germany. She gave up the Polish districts in Prussia, namely, Posen, most of West Prussia, and a part of Upper, or Southern, Silesia. She renounced all rights over Danzig, which, with its environs, became a free city under the protection of the League of Nations. Poland enjoys special commercial rights in Danzig and thus secures uninterrupted access to the Baltic down the valley of the Vistula River. The narrow strip of territory, or "corridor," which connects Danzig with Poland, also serves to separate East Prussia from the rest of Germany. Finally, Germany lost Memel in East Prussia, an important outlet on the Baltic that was subsequently acquired by Lithuania. These territorial losses in the east were borne by the Prussian kingdom, which, in consequence, will no longer so completely overshadow the other German states. The Peace Conference thus undid much of Frederick the Great's work for the exaltation of Prussia.

Germany's eastern frontier

Germany's name on a far-flung empire was blotted from the map. All her possessions overseas were taken from her. German East Africa went to Great Britain. German Southwest Africa went to the Union of South Africa. Togo and the Cameroons were divided between France and Great Britain. These territories are to be administered under mandates from the League of Nations. The mandate for the German Pacific islands north of the equator [1] is held by Japan, and that for the islands south of the equator,[2] by Australia. New Zealand, however, received the mandate for German Samoa. Germany also renounced, in favor of Japan, all her rights in Kiauchau and the Chinese province of Shantung.

The German colonies

Responsibility for all damages done to Allied civilians, both on the land and at sea, was assumed by Germany and her associates

[1] Pelew, Caroline, Ladrone, and Marshall Islands.

[2] German New Guinea, Bismarck Archipelago, and northern Solomon Islands.

in the war. Germany therefore agreed to make good in money and in materials and in labor the injuries done by her armies in the countries overrun by them. She undertook to replace ton by ton the merchant vessels lost or damaged by her cruisers and submarines. She promised, furthermore, to bear the cost of the Allied armies of occupation in the Rhinelands.

Reparation

The amount of reparation to be collected in money and commodities was not fixed at first, owing to the difficulty of reckoning the claims against Germany and also because of disturbed financial conditions in that country. The Allies set up a Reparation Commission, with power to inquire into Germany's resources and to fix the time and manner of her contributions. The German government in 1921 agreed to pay over a series of years the equivalent of 132,000,000,000 gold marks (about $33,000,000,000), plus the amount of the Belgian debt to the Allies, but less sums already paid on the reparation account or subsequently to be credited to it. The failure of Germany to make regular payments under this arrangement led to the seizure by French and Belgian troops of the rich industrial district of the Ruhr. Matters thus stood at a deadlock for a time: the Germans declared themselves practically bankrupt and unable to pay the colossal sum levied against them; the French and Belgians declared that they would continue their armed occupation of German territory until their demands for compensation had been satisfied.

Amount of reparation

The deadlock was broken in 1924, when the Reparation Commission appointed a committee of economic experts (headed by General Charles G. Dawes, the former Director of the Budget of the United States), to devise some plan for the financial rehabilitation of Germany. The "Dawes Plan," as it came to be called, was promptly accepted by the French, British, and German governments. It provides for an international loan to Germany of $200,000,000 to establish a new German state bank, stabilize the fluctuating and depreciating currency, and make the first reparation payments. All subsequent payments are to be made through this bank,

The "Dawes Plan"

from a mortgage on the railroads and industries of Germany and from the proceeds of special taxes levied for the purpose. If Germany fails to pay, the Allies may keep the tax money collected in the country. In short, Germany agrees to pawn her principal resources so that she may discharge at least a part of her indebtedness to the Allies. Military evacuation of the Ruhr, by France and Belgium, will follow as soon as Germany gives evidence of her intention faithfully to abide by the "Dawes Plan."

The military, naval, and air clauses of the treaty were intended to make Germany innocuous. They include the abolition of conscription, the reduction of the German army to 100,000 men, including officers, and the destruction of the fortifications west of the Rhine, those in a thirty-mile zone on the east bank of the Rhine, those controlling the Baltic, and those on Helgoland. All importation, exportation, and nearly all production of war material was prohibited. The German fleet was reduced to a few ships without submarines. Airplanes, seaplanes, and dirigible balloons are not to be maintained for purposes of war. Germany also surrendered her submarine cables. These drastic requirements should pave the way for a general limitation of armaments by all nations.

Reduction of armaments

The treaty contained a clause arraigning "William II of Hohenzollern, formerly German Emperor, for a supreme offense against international morality and the sanctity of treaties." The Allies and the United States proposed to set up a tribunal for the trial of the kaiser, but Holland refused to surrender him to his foes. Another clause of the treaty related to the punishment of Germans accused of having committed acts in violation of the laws and customs of war. The Allies demanded from Germany no less than eight hundred and ninety "war criminals," among whom were the crown prince, Tirpitz, the advocate of ruthless submarine sinkings, Hindenburg, and many other generals of high rank. The German government declared itself unable to meet this demand, without provoking a popular uprising. The Allies,

Penalties

accordingly, accepted the German counter-proposal for a trial of the accused persons before the Supreme Court at Leipzig. Most of them were either acquitted or were given light sentences quite incommensurate with the offenses for which they were tried.

Mr. Lloyd George declared that the terms of the peace treaty were terrible but just. President Wilson, in a message from Paris to the American people, said: "It is a severe treaty in the duties and penalties it imposes upon Germany; but it is severe only because great wrongs done by Germany are to be righted and repaired; it imposes nothing that Germany cannot do: and she can regain her rightful standing in the world by the prompt and honorable fulfillment of its terms." The contrary view was expressed from the Allied side by General Smuts, at that time premier of South Africa, who asserted that the treaty had not secured the real peace which the world wanted. "The promise of the new life, the victory of the great human ideals for which the peoples have shed their blood and their treasure, the fulfillment of their aspirations toward a new international order and a fairer, better world are not written in this treaty."

Judgment of the treaty

210. Peace with Austria, Hungary, and Bulgaria

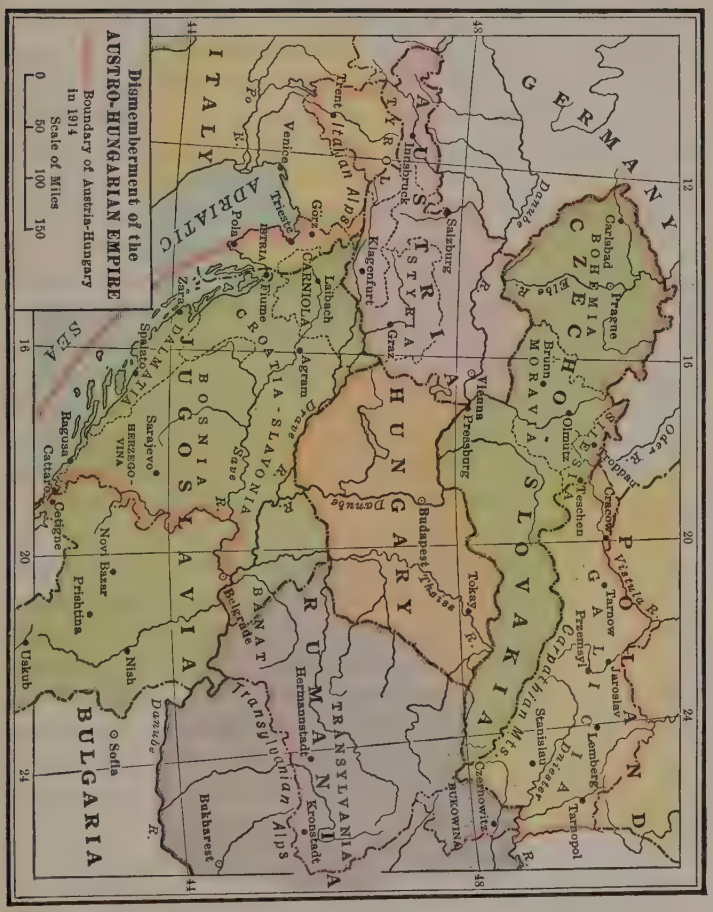
The treaty with Austria was signed in September, 1919, at St.-Germain, near Paris. The St.-Germain Treaty did little more than record an accomplished fact, namely, the disintegration of the Dual Monarchy. Austria ceded territory to Czecho-Slovakia and Jugoslavia and recognized their independence. Other parts of the former Austrian Empire were transferred to Italy (South Tyrol, the Trentino, the city of Trieste, and most of the peninsula of Istria), to Poland (Galicia), and to Rumania (Bukowina).[1] The treaty also embodied stringent provisions relating to reparation and disarmament.

Treaty of St.-Germain

[1] Rumania has also acquired Transylvania from Hungary and Bessarabia from Russia, thus becoming the largest of the Balkan states.

Austria is a republic. It came into being immediately after the downfall of the Hapsburg monarchy, at the close of the war. The new Austria is a small, inland state, German in culture and chiefly German in population. The Allies, however, have refused to allow the Austrians to

Republic of Austria



unite with their great Teutonic neighbor. Such a union, quite apart from the increase of German man-power, would produce

an enlarged Germany extending from the Alps to the Baltic and thus would cut off western from central Europe.

The treaty with Hungary was signed in June, 1920, at the Trianon, Versailles. It reduced Hungary to another small state inhabited almost entirely by Magyars. Czecho-Slovakia secured that part of northern Hungary containing a predominantly Slovak population; Rumania, the Rumanian district of Transylvania; and Jugoslavia, the Slovenian and Croatian territories of Hungary. The demands made upon Hungary for reparation and disarmament were substantially identical with those of the treaty with Austria.

The Trianon Treaty

A republic was established in Hungary shortly after the signing of the armistice. It lasted only a few months and then gave way to a Bolshevist régime, which was equally short-lived. A national parliament in 1920 chose as regent of the country Admiral von Horthy, a member of an old and distinguished Magyar family. The former emperor, Charles I, who made two unsuccessful efforts to regain his crown, was finally exiled by the Allies to the Madeira Islands, where he died in 1922. Hungary is now a monarchy in name, but the throne is unoccupied. The Allies will not permit the restoration of the Hapsburg dynasty.

Kingdom of Hungary

The treaty with Bulgaria, as signed in November, 1919, at Neuilly, slightly rectified the western frontier of that state in favor of Jugoslavia. The frontier with Rumania remains as before the war. The most important boundary change is on the south, where Bulgaria relinquished part of Thrace to Greece. Bulgaria thus lost an outlet on the Ægean. She was also obliged to limit her army to 20,000 men, to surrender all warships and aircraft, and to pay a total indemnity of $445,000,000.

Treaty of Neuilly

211. Peace with Turkey

The disposition of the decrepit Ottoman Empire presented one of the thorniest problems before the Peace Conference. A treaty with Turkey was signed at Sèvres, near Paris, in

August, 1920, but it was never ratified, owing to the opposition of a new and vigorous Turkish government that had been set up at Angora in Asia Minor. The Nationalists, as the patriotic Turks called themselves, would not accept a treaty which, besides depriving them of the territories overrun by the Allies in the war, also gave to Greece a further slice of Turkey in Europe (Eastern Thrace) and the city of Smyrna and its environs in Asia Minor. This part of Asia Minor had belonged to ancient Hellas and still contained a considerable Greek population.

Treaty of Sèvres

The Nationalists found an able leader in Mustapha Kemal, a Turkish officer who had won distinction in the Gallipoli campaign. He organized a strong army, drove the Greeks out of Smyrna, and took possession of Constantinople and Eastern Thrace. The Allies, confronted with this *fait accompli*, which their disagreements and bickerings with one another did so much to make possible, had to consent to a new treaty far more favorable to Turkey than the one originally framed. The Treaty of Lausanne was signed in July, 1923. It allowed the Turks to retain both Eastern Thrace and Smyrna and also recognized Turkish sovereignty over the waterways leading from the Mediterranean to the Black Sea. The treaty further provided for the compulsory exchange of Greeks living in Asia Minor for Turks living in Greece, so that each country might henceforth be freed from the alien element in its population.

Treaty of Lausanne

Having triumphed over the Allies, the Nationalists proceeded to remake the Turkish government. They deposed the sultan, because he had consented to the humiliating Treaty of Sèvres, expelled him and his family from the country, and declared the sultanate abolished. They also did away with the caliphate, or spiritual authority which the Turkish rulers had asserted over the Moslem world. A National Assembly in 1923 declared Turkey a republic. The first president is Mustapha Kemal. The capital is Angora (ancient Ancyra) in Asia Minor. Constantinople remains, however, the cultural center of the republic. As their name indicates, the

Republic of Turkey

Nationalists are ardent patriots. Their policy of "Turkey for the Turks" has resulted in a wholesale withdrawal of Christians and Jews from Asia Minor. The Nationalists have also got rid of the so-called "Capitulations," or rights formerly enjoyed by foreigners in Turkey to be subject to the laws of their respective countries and not to Turkish laws. The new republican government aims to develop the economic resources of the country by building railroads and fostering agriculture, to promote education along Western lines, and, in general, to place Turkey among progressive nations.

In spite of their diplomatic victory at Lausanne, the Turks paid heavily for allying themselves with the Central Powers.

Countries freed from Turkey

They surrendered all claim to the non-Turkish provinces of Kurdistan,[1] Syria, Palestine, Mesopotamia, and Arabia, thus losing about a third of the population and about half of the area included in the Ottoman Empire of 1914.[2]

The French hold Syria under a mandate from the Supreme Council of the Allies. Syria now comprises all the territory

Syria

between Turkey on the north, Mesopotamia on the east, Arabia (Transjordania) and Palestine on the south, and the Mediterranean on the west. The bulk of the population is of Arabic origin, Arabic is the prevailing language, and Islam is the leading religion. The interests of France in this part of the Levant are chiefly commercial, though there is a sentimental tradition dating back to Napoleon and even to the crusades. French schools and missions are also very numerous in the country. There is need of France in the Near East to maintain orderly government and gradually to lift its backward peoples to a higher level of civilization. Great Britain alone is unequal to such a task.

The British received the mandate for Palestine. They are pledged to develop the Holy Land as a national home for the

[1] The mountain region in eastern Asia Minor about the headwaters of the Tigris River. It is inhabited mainly by the nomadic and semi-barbarous Kurds. See the map facing page 518.

[2] See the map facing page 522.

Jews — a people without a country for nearly eighteen hundred years. A good many "Zionists," or Jewish nationalists, are now emigrating to Palestine, but Jews do not constitute as yet more than one-eighth of the total population. The inhabitants are mainly Arabs. **Palestine**

Great Britain, having been made the mandatary for Mesopotamia, placed the country under an Arab king subject to British control. Iraq, as the new kingdom is called, is naturally one of the most favored regions in the world. British administration ought to redeem it from the long blight to which it has been subjected for centuries by Turkish misgovernment. With scientific agriculture and irrigation Iraq should soon become such a granary of the Near East as Babylonia was in ancient times. **Iraq**

The Arab kingdom of Hejaz testifies to a new birth of Islam. The Young Turks, in their efforts to "Ottomanize" all the peoples of the Ottoman Empire,[1] only succeeded in alienating the Arabs, who have never forgotten that from their land came the Prophet, that in it are the holy cities of Mecca and Medina, and that Arabic is the sacred language of the Koran. An Arab revolt against Turkey broke out in 1916, under the leadership of Husein, a descendant of Mohammed and official head (*sherif*) of Mecca.[2] He was promptly recognized as king of Hejaz, or western Arabia, by the Entente Powers. Husein in 1924 had to abdicate, in consequence of a revolt of the Wahabis, a militant sect of Moslem Arabs. The political situation in Hejaz and Arabia generally promises to be unsettled for a long time to come. **Hejaz**

The slaughter of the Christian Armenians by the Turks is the blackest deed in all the record of the war. The victorious Allies proposed to group the Armenians who survived into a new and independent state, protected by the League of Nations. The plan was never carried into effect, owing to the revival of Turkish power under the Nationalists and the opposition of the Bolsheviki. Turkey recovered some of the Armenian districts. The remainder now form a **Armenia**

[1] See page 530.

[2] See page 742.

small republic in the Caucasus, in alliance with and subject to Soviet Russia.

212. The New Nations in Central and Eastern Europe

The victorious struggle against the Central Powers led to the establishment of many new nations in central and eastern Europe. The proper delimitation of their frontiers was a difficult task. The Peace Conference gave much attention to nationality as a guide to a just settlement. Plebiscites, or popular votes, were held in various disputed areas, in order to determine what were the real wishes of the inhabitants. The need of respecting historic rights likewise required consideration, together with the necessity of securing strategic frontiers and access to the sea for the new states about to be created. Racial, historical, geographical, and economic factors thus combined to complicate the boundary problems before the conference.

Boundary problems

One of these problems concerned the Serbo-Croats and Slovenes, who form the group of South Slavs, or Jugoslavs.[1] In 1914 the Serbo-Croats were distributed chiefly in the independent states of Serbia and Montenegro and in the following provinces of Austria-Hungary: Bosnia and Herzegovina, Dalmatia, and Croatia-Slavonia. The Slovenes were found in the province of Carniola.[2]

The Jugoslavs

The state of Jugoslavia represents a voluntary union of all these peoples. In order to establish it, both Serbia and Montenegro gave up their separate governments and united with the former Jugoslav provinces of Austria-Hungary. The first ruler of the kingdom of the Serbs, Croats, and Slovenes — to use the official title — is Alexander I, former crown prince of Serbia. Belgrade is the capital.

Jugoslavia

The formation of the new kingdom led to a long and bitter dispute between the Jugoslavs and the Italians. Not satisfied with the extension of Italy into the Tyrol, the Trentino, and around Trieste,[3] Italian nationalists

Italy and Jugoslavia

[1] See page 497. [2] See the map on page 498.

[3] "Unredeemed Italy" before the World War. See pages 404 and 740.

30°
20°
10°
0°
10°
60°
30°
20°
50°
40°
10°
ICELAND
Reykjavik
Note: Spitsbergen given to Norway.
FAROE IS. (Danish)
SHETLAND IS.
ORKNEY IS.
HEBRIDES
BRITISH ISLES
SCOTLAND
Glasgow
Aberdeen
Edinburgh
Londonderry
Belfast
IRELAND
Dublin
Cork
Irish Sea
Newcastle
Manchester
Hull
Liverpool
WALES
ENGLAND
London
Bristol
Southampton
Plymouth
NORTH SEA
Amsterdam
The Hague
Antwerp
Bruges
Ghent
BELGIUM
Bergen
Stavanger
Christiansand
Skagerrack
Christiania (Now Oslo)
Trondhjem
Sundsvall
Göteborg
Kalmar
DENMARK
Copenhagen
Malmö
Helsingborg
Kiel
Kiel Canal
Hamburg
Bremen
Hanover
Stettin
Berlin
Elbe
Weser
Posen
Danzig
Dresden
Leipzig
Cologne
Coblenz
Frankfort
Mainz
Nuremberg
Prague
CZECHO-SLO
Stuttgart
Munich
Vienna
AUSTRIA
Basle
Berne
SWITZ.
Lyons
Geneva
St. Etienne
Milan
Turin
Genoa
Nice
Trieste
Venice
Graz
Klagenfurt
Rhone
Po
Marseilles
Leghorn
Florence
Rome
Naples
Brindisi
Palermo
Messina
Cagliari
CORSICA
Ajaccio
Str. of Bonifacio
SARDINIA
BALEARIC IS.
Barcelona
Toulouse
Bordeaux
Nantes
Tours
Orleans
Paris
Lille
Havre
Brest
CHANNEL IS.
English Channel
Luxemburg
Strasbourg
LORRAINE
SAAR BASIN
FRANCE
Bay of Biscay
C. Ortegal
C. Finisterre
Coruña
Vigo
Oporto
Santander
S. Sebastian
Bilbao
Ebro
Valladolid
Saragossa
Madrid
Toledo
Guadiana
Cordova
Seville
Cadiz
Cartagena
Granada
Gibraltar (British)
Lisbon
PORTUGAL
SPAIN
Valencia
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
ADRIATIC SEA
Fiume
Pola
ISTRIA
SAN MARINO
JUGO
Algiers
Tunis
MOROCCO
ALGERIA
TUNIS
AFRICA
MALTA (British)
ATLANTIC OCEAN
Longitude East from Greenwich

EUROPE

after the Peace Conference at Paris, 1919-1920.

Boundaries Settled — Boundaries Unsettled

International Territory — Plebiscites

Principal Railroads — Ship Canals

Scale of Miles

0 100 200 300 400 500

THE MATTHEWS-NORTHRUP WORKS, BUFFALO, N.Y.

pressed for the annexation of the important port of Fiume, which is predominantly Italian in population. The Jugoslavs, on the other hand, felt that Fiume should belong to them, as an outlet for their new state. The dispute was finally settled by making Fiume a free city (like Danzig), but closely attached to Italy. Jugoslavia, however, obtained the Dalmatian coast, to which Italy had set up a claim during the war.

Albania

The Albanian principality created by the European powers in 1913[1] disappeared completely soon after the opening of the World War. Albania now forms an independent republic. The country is still very backward, lacking good highways, railroads, newspapers, and post offices, while the antipathy between its Christian and Moslem inhabitants makes for dissension.

The Czecho-Slovaks

How unwillingly the Czechs and the Slovaks fought for the Dual Monarchy in the war is a matter of common knowledge. More than one hundred thousand Czecho-Slovaks surrendered to the Russians, and many of them promptly enlisted in the tsar's armies. After the Russian Revolution it was the Czecho-Slovaks in Siberia who held that vast country for the Allies against the Bolsheviki. Czecho-Slovaks from Great Britain, France, Italy, and the United States also volunteered in large numbers for service on the western front. There are few finer episodes in history than this spontaneous uprising of a whole nation.

Czecho-Slovakia

The collapse of the Dual Monarchy was followed almost immediately by the setting-up of a Czecho-Slovak state. It embraces Bohemia, Moravia, and Austrian Silesia, which together formed an independent kingdom until its annexation by Austria in 1526,[2] and also Slovakia. The latter country, once a part of Moravia, had been a Magyar dependency for centuries. Czecho-Slovakia is a republic with a constitution patterned after that of France, but with suffrage for both men and women. The new state occupies a central position between the Baltic and the Adriatic. It is rich in natural resources, is advanced in agriculture, trade, and manu-

[1] See pages 530 and 713.

[2] See page 497.

facturing, and is well provided with common schools. Czecho-Slovakia has every assurance of a prosperous and happy future. The first president is T. G. Masaryk, formerly a university professor. The capital is Prague.

POWDER GATE, PRAGUE

One of the finest Gothic towers in Central Europe. Begun in 1475 and completed in 1506.

The Poles

Hard, indeed, was the fate of the Poles during the World War. Those in Russian Poland had to fight against their brothers in Galicia, Posen, and West Prussia. Much of their country formed a fiercely contested battle-ground, and destruction, famine, and death followed everywhere in the wake of the contending armies. In 1914 the tsar, Nicholas II, promised autonomy to all the Poles, both those in Russia and those to be liberated from Austrian and German rule. Germany also proposed to set up a Polish state under German tutelage. It was reserved for the Peace Conference, however, to create the free and independent Poland of 1919.

Poland

Restored Poland includes much of the territory taken from that country by Austria and Prussia in the partitions of the eighteenth century.[1] Disputes with Soviet Russia about the eastern boundary of Poland led to hard fighting between the Poles and the Bolsheviki during 1920. As the outcome of negotiations with the Soviet government, Poland finally acquired considerably more territory than had been allotted to her by the Peace Conference. Like her Czecho-Slovak neighbor, Poland is a republic with universal suffrage.

[1] See the maps on pages 218 and 375.

She has bound herself by a special treaty with the Allies to maintain free institutions, under the ægis of the League of Nations. The first president of Poland is General Pilsudski. The capital of the country is Warsaw.

Lithuania

The grand duchy of Lithuania, which united with Poland in 1569, became a part of the Russian Empire after the partitions of Poland in the eighteenth century.[1] The tsar's government made every effort to "Russify" the inhabitants, extinguish their sense of nationality, and force upon them the Orthodox Church. Such was the situation when the World War broke out. The Germans overran Lithuania during their great offensive of 1915, only to evacuate it three years later after the signing of the armistice. Lithuania then proclaimed its independence as a republic.

Latvia

The Letts, who call themselves Latvis, dwell for the most part in the former Russian provinces of Courland and Livonia, around the Gulf of Riga. They too had to fight for freedom against both German armies and the Bolsheviki. Latvia is a small but progressive republic.

Esthonia

The provisional government of Russia in 1917 granted Esthonia a parliament, or Diet, to be elected by universal suffrage. After the triumph of the Bolsheviki in Russia, the Diet proclaimed Esthonian independence. The Germans subsequently occupied the country, but their dream of annexing it went the way of the other Pan-German schemes. The republic of Esthonia has signed a peace treaty with the Soviet government, by which Russia abdicates all rights over her former Baltic possession.

Finland

The Swedes conquered Finland in the twelfth century and retained it until 1809.[2] Finland, with the Åland Islands, then entered the Russian Empire as a semi-independent grand duchy. The Finnish parliament in 1917 declared for complete separation from Russia. The Finns had to contend with both the Bolsheviki and the Germans, but Germany's collapse gave them their liberty. Finland was soon recognized as a republic by the principal Allied powers.

[1] See pages 215–216 and 503. [2] See pages 204 and note 1, 356, and 501.

213. Socialist Germany

Socialists assumed the leadership of the revolutionary and republican movements in many European countries. There are two types of socialism, however. Moderate socialists rely on the ballot to abolish capitalism and introduce state ownership of the means of production: they are democrats in their political thinking and accept the democratic principle of majority rule. Radical or extreme socialists advocate a violent revolution to overthrow the capitalistic middle class, the hated *bourgeoisie*, and bring in a dictatorship of the urban proletariat. These socialists, therefore, preach "class conflict"; they would employ "direct action" as the only effective method of reconstructing society. The contrast between the two socialistic parties is well marked in Germany, where the principles of Karl Marx and his followers first became popular among workingmen.

The socialistic upheaval

The moderate socialists (Social Democrats) before the war were the chief opponents of militarism and autocracy in Germany, and even in 1914 a bold minority of them resisted the war fever then sweeping over the country. The events of 1918 strengthened their hands; both the army and the navy became saturated with the revolutionary spirit; and a few days before the signing of the armistice in November a mutiny broke out among the sailors in the fleet at Kiel. It spread swiftly to the great ports of Bremen, Lübeck, and Hamburg, and next to Potsdam and Berlin. The government could not prevent an uprising, for the soldiers in the capital refused to obey orders and some of them went over to the revolutionists. The kaiser then fled. Prince Maximilian, the imperial chancellor, resigned office. A socialist saddler, Friedrich Ebert, became head of a provisional government. The German Republic was born.

The German Republic

The Social Democrats immediately encountered the opposition of the radicals, who planned to deprive the *bourgeoisie* of all power and to set up a proletarian régime. The

Spartacans,[1] as they called themselves, were well supplied with arms and munitions. There were bitter conflicts between them and the republican troops. Law and order finally triumphed, after much bloodshed. The republicans also foiled several attempts by reactionary monarchists to restore the old government.

The Spartacans and monarchists

Ebert and his associates convoked a national assembly, which met at Weimar in 1919 and drafted a constitution. This was speedily ratified by a popular vote. The new Germany is essentially a federative republic, though still described by the old name *Reich*, or Empire. Foreign affairs, colonies, immigration and emigration, military organization, coinage, tariffs, and posts, telegraphs, and telephones are reserved to the nation as a whole. The eighteen confederated states may legislate on many other matters, subject, however, to the prior right of legislation by the nation. Every state must have a republican form of government.

Constitution of the German Republic

President Ebert

The constitution retains certain time-honored forms and features of the old government.[2] The Imperial Council (Reichsrat), which replaces the Bundesrat, consists of delegates from the confederated states. Each state has at least one vote, and in the case of the larger states one vote is accorded to every million inhabitants. No state, however, may have more than two-fifths of all the votes in the Reichsrat. This clause of the constitution should prevent the control of the council by Prussia.

The Reichsrat

[1] Spartacus was a celebrated gladiator, who in 73 B.C. organized a formidable revolt of slaves, outlaws, and starving peasants against the Roman Republic.

[2] See pages 484–488.

Long impotent under the old imperial régime, the Reichstag now becomes the supreme law-making body. The Reichsrat may, indeed, refuse assent to a measure passed by the Reichstag, but its veto can be overridden by a two-thirds vote of the latter assembly. Members of the Reichstag hold office for four years.

The Reichstag

The president of Germany is elected by the entire people for a term of seven years. He is eligible to reëlection. The president makes treaties, selects public officials, commands the military forces, and appoints and dismisses the chancellor, together with other members of the ministry. The constitutional provision requiring that the chancellor and his associates shall hold office only as long as they retain the confidence of the Reichstag gives to Germany substantially cabinet government.

President and chancellor

The Weimar Assembly of 1919, more successful than the Frankfort Assembly of 1849,[1] made Germany a genuinely democratic state. All Germans are declared equal before the law. All privileges, whether of birth, class, or creed, are abolished. The right of suffrage is bestowed on all citizens, both men and women. The republic enjoys the support, not only of the moderate socialists, but also of the more liberal and progressive elements throughout Germany.

German democracy

214. Soviet Russia

The Brest-Litovsk Treaty, which the Bolsheviki concluded with Germany early in 1918, did not long endure. The victorious Allies compelled Germany to repudiate it, thus making possible the creation of the republics of Finland, Esthonia, Latvia, Lithuania, and Poland, out of territories that had been forcibly incorporated in the Russian Empire. The Bolsheviki recognized the independence of these countries in accordance with the principle of self-determination of nationalities. They also acquiesced, reluctantly, in the transfer of Bessarabia to Rumania. Russia thus lost most of

Russia a national state

[1] See pages 385–386.

its subject and alien peoples in Europe and became a national state, inhabited almost entirely by Russians.[1] The capital now went back from Petrograd [2] to Moscow.

ARCTIC OCEAN
Murmansk
White Sea
Archangel
Petchora R.
Dvina R.
Onega
L. Ladoga
Leningrad (Petrograd)
Helsingfors
Gulf of Bothnia
SWEDEN
FINLAND
G. of Finland
ESTHONIA
Reval
Dorpat
Pskov
Riga
LATVIA
Dvinsk
LITHUANIA
Kovno
EAST PRUSSIA
BALTIC SEA
Vilna
WHITE RUSSIA
Vitebsk
Minsk
Smolensk
Pinsk
Warsaw
POLAND
Lemberg
Kiev
Kharkov
UKRAINIA
Ekaterinoslav
Kishinev
BESSARABIA
RUMANIA
Dniester R.
Odessa
CRIMEA
Sevastopol
Black Sea
Danube R.
S. of Azov
Rostov
Don R.
Yaroslav
Moscow
Nijni-Novgorod
Vyatka
Perm
Kazan
Ufa
Samara
Saratov
Orenburg
Volga R.
CENTRAL
ASIA
Astrakhan
CASPIAN SEA
Derbend
Baku
CAUCASIA
GEORGIA
Tiflis
ARMENIA
Erivan
AZERBAIJAN
SIBERIA
Ob R.
Irtish R.
DISMEMBERMENT OF THE
RUSSIAN EMPIRE
Boundary of Russian Empire (1914)
Soviet Russia (1924)
Territories controlled by Russia
Territories separated from Russia
Scale of Miles
0 100 200 300 400 500
10
20
30
40
50
60
70
80
90
100
110
120
130
140
150
160
170
180
190
200
210
220
230
240
250
260
270
280
290
300
310
320
330
340
350
360
370
380
390
400

state in the federation is Soviet Russia, or, as the Bolsheviki prefer to call it, the Russian Socialist Federated Soviet Republic. This includes all the area occupied by Great Russians in Europe, together with the former Asiatic provinces of the tsar's empire. The second member of the federation is White Russia. The third is Ukrainia, which comprises those areas where Little Russians predominate. The federation also contains three small republics in the Caucasus, namely, Georgia, Azerbaijan, and Armenia. Soviet Russia grants to the other states in this union some degree of independence in local concerns, but requires them to maintain a Bolshevist government and controls their foreign relations. The new federation is declared to be a decisive step toward the "union of the toilers of all countries into one world Soviet Socialist Republic."

The Soviet federation

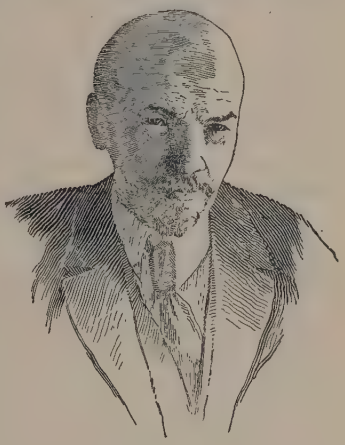
The Bolsheviki for a time encountered serious opposition on the part of Russian liberals and Russian reactionaries, who joined forces to overthrow the Soviet government. Their hostile attitude was natural enough, since the Bolshevist program provided for the elimination of the aristocracy and the *bourgeoisie*. A civil war, waged with great ferocity on both sides, continued for several years. The decisive victories of the "Red" armies in 1919–1920 firmly established Bolshevist rule over all the territories of Russian race and language. The triumph of the Bolsheviki seems to be due chiefly to the fact that their opponents repeated the mistake of the *émigrés* during the French Revolution and called in foreign assistance from Great Britain, France, Japan, and the United States. This action had the effect of arousing the patriotic sentiment of the Russian people, who were now ready to support Lenin and Trotsky in repelling the invaders of their country.

Anti-Bolshevism in Russia

Russia possesses a so-called constitution, framed in 1918 by the Congress of Soviets, which takes the place of a national parliament. The constitution grants the franchise to men and women over eighteen years of age, if they are "productive" laborers. This means, in practice, that all

Constitution of Russia

business men, professional men, merchants, and bankers, as well as peasants who employ other peasants on their farms, cannot vote or hold any public office or serve in the army. They are not citizens, according to the Bolshevist definition of citizenship. Clergymen and monks are also excluded from political rights. The Bolsheviki have disestablished the Orthodox Church and have deprived it of state support.



LENIN

The Bolshevist régime

Lenin, Trotsky, and the other Bolshevist leaders were radical socialists. They abolished private property in land and allowed the peasants to take over and divide up the great estates, without compensation to the former owners. They "nationalized" railways, banks, forests, and mines. They seized the factories, which were to be operated henceforth by the workingmen and for the workingmen. They conscripted laborers from the hated middle and upper classes, drove them to work like chattel slaves, and even had them executed for "industrial desertion." These things were done by a small party of communists or socialists, whose numbers, according to official figures, never exceeded half a million. In short, the Bolshevist régime was — and still is — not a dictatorship of the proletariat, but rather a dictatorship over the great mass of the Russian people. It was — and still is — supported by terrorism, which takes the form of exiling, imprisoning, or killing all who oppose them, just as the old tsarist government disposed of its enemies. Individual liberty is non-existent in Soviet Russia.

Not satisfied with their efforts in Russia, the Bolsheviki spread socialistic propaganda in foreign countries. Their flag is the red flag; their war cry is "Workers of the World unite!";

their ultimate aim is a revolution by the proletariat everywhere. Accordingly, they have organized the "Third International," as a successor to two other international organizations of socialists which had been founded by the followers of Karl Marx in the nineteenth century. This organization, though centering in Moscow, has its agents and adherents in various European capitals and also in the United States.

The "Third International"

Closed factories, disorganized railroads, and starving cities were some of the immediate results of the social experimentation of Lenin and his associates. The whole system of production and transport broke down, and, coupled with serious failure of crops, brought famine and death to many Russians. Under these circumstances the Bolsheviki began to compromise between socialism and capitalism, so far as to permit private business enterprise and private property in land. Russia, in fact, appears to be reverting gradually to the economic system of the rest of the civilized world. The Allies have now adopted a policy of non-intervention in Russian affairs. Diplomatic intercourse is being reëstablished between them and the Soviet government, and commercial relations are also being resumed. Russia, whose life was so disrupted by the war, by the subsequent Allied blockade, and by the activities of the Bolsheviki, requires western capital to revive its drooping industries. The rest of Europe likewise needs to draw on the rich natural resources of Russia for economic reconstruction.

The Russian situation

215. Contemporary European Politics

The treaties concluded by the Allies with Germany at Versailles, with Austria at St.-Germain, with Bulgaria at Neuilly, with Hungary at the Trianon, and with Turkey at Sèvres and Lausanne, together with the diplomatic arrangements entered into between the Allies themselves, constitute the Peace of Paris. The territorial changes made by the peace affected directly or indirectly every Continental state except Spain and Portugal. A new map of Europe was drawn.

The new map of Europe

The new map is based, in large part, on the principle of self-

determination, as applied to nationalities. It had received little or no consideration in the great treaties of Westphalia, Utrecht, and Vienna. Germany after her unification and Austria-Hungary and Turkey throughout the nineteenth century systematically opposed nationalism as a force disruptive of their empires. Russia upheld the same policy for the same reason. Each of these countries contained numerous "submerged nationalities," governed against their will by those whom they regarded as foreigners. The defeat of the Central Powers and the Russian Revolution offered, therefore, a unique opportunity to make over Europe in the name and in the interest of all its peoples great and small.

National self-determination

Germany, Turkey, and Russia, shorn of their alien elements, became essentially national states. Austria and Hungary arose as national states, each with a homogeneous population. New national states appeared in Jugoslavia, Albania, Czecho-Slovakia, Poland, Lithuania, Latvia, Esthonia, and Finland. Other countries completed their national unification: France, by the acquisition of Alsace-Lorraine; Italy, by securing *Italia Irredenta;* and Rumania, by the incorporation of Bukowina, Transylvania, and Bessarabia. Whether or not all these territorial changes prove to be permanent, they certainly recognized, as never before, the principle of self-determination.

National states

One obvious outcome of the war and the peace settlement was the lengthening of the zones of possible friction in Europe. Eight thousand miles of old boundary lines on the Continent were increased to ten thousand miles, a considerable part of this total representing newly located boundaries. Will the states whose resources and territory have been diminished be content with their new frontiers? Will the states that have secured an increase of resources and territory be satisfied with their gains? We may raise these questions, though we cannot now answer them. Germany, still outside the League of Nations and inspired with an intense hatred of France, may yet flame forth in a war of liberation or revenge. She cannot always be kept disarmed

Zones of friction in Europe

and impotent. Russia, losing her revolutionary ideals and reasserting her old imperialist aspirations, may sometime try to win back by force her former Baltic provinces and open once more that "window" on Europe which Peter the Great secured for her. Nor is the existing political situation in the Balkans and central Europe without elements of anxiety. The qualities of selfish ambition and envy are deep-seated, and as long as they exist they must complicate the relations of European peoples to one another.

Autocracy versus democracy

When the World War began, two-thirds of Europe was under autocratic rule. Germany, which refused to accept either the principles or the practice of democracy, found natural support in reactionary Austria-Hungary, Bulgaria, and Turkey. Autocratic Russia, it is true, fought on the side of the Allies, but the Russian Revolution promised to enroll that country among liberal states. The triumph of the Central Powers would not only have dashed the hopes of the "submerged nationalities" in Europe; it would have imperiled the existence of democratic government everywhere. Germany and her satellites flung down a challenge to the liberties of mankind.

Sovereigns dethroned

All know how that challenge was met. Two emperors, those of Germany and Austria; two tsars, those of Russia and Bulgaria; six kings, those of Prussia, Saxony, Bavaria, Würtemberg, Hungary, and Greece; one sultan, and a crowd of princes, dukes, and grand dukes renounced their hereditary rights and sought refuge either in obscurity or in exile. More than a score of sovereigns dethroned represents part of the balance sheet of the war.

Absolutism and divine right discredited

With the emperors, kings, princes, dukes, and grand dukes went the whole theory of absolutism and divine right. Monarchy itself disappeared in most of central and eastern Europe, only Hungary and three Balkan states (Rumania, Bulgaria, and Jugoslavia), retaining a semblance of one-man rule.[1] The war revealed, clearly enough, what ruin might be caused by the

[1] Turkey became a republic in 1923 and Greece in 1924.

vanity, selfishness, and ambition of a few persons. They had long menaced the peace and happiness of the world. At last, the world is done with them.

The republics and democracies that have sprung up in so much of Europe bid fair to be permanent. Their stability has sometimes been threatened by the radical socialists, or communists, who form an appreciable element of the population in many states. In Germany, as has been noted, the communists started the Spartacan uprising, which was bloodily suppressed. An attempt by Bela Kun, a pupil of Lenin and Trotsky, to foment a communist revolution in Hungary likewise ended in failure. The efforts of the communists to duplicate in Italy the conditions prevailing in Bolshevist Russia led to the formation of the so-called Fascisti,[1] a party which opposed the physical violence of the communists with still greater violence. The Fascisti found a leader in Benito Mussolini, a former Italian soldier in the war. He became a sort of temporary dictator of Italy in 1923, controlling both parliament and king, and carried through many governmental reforms. The French communists have a considerable representation in the Chamber of Deputies. The Labor Party, which for a time in 1924 controlled the British government, consists chiefly of moderate socialists, but with a fringe of radicals who support the communist movement.

Democracy and communism

The spread of political democracy has resulted in the making of many new constitutions. These are generally liberal documents. They establish manhood suffrage and often woman suffrage as well.[2] They separate Church and State, where the two had previously been united.[3] They also provide for a system of common schools, so that the people may understand and appreciate democratic institutions. Other noteworthy features of the constitutions are the insistence on ministerial responsibility to parliament — cabinet government — and the adoption of proportional representation,[4] in order that

Liberal constitutions

[1] The *fasces* in Old Rome were a bundle of rods wrapped about an ax and carried before the highest magistrates as an emblem of authority.

[2] See pages 661–662. [3] See page 667. [4] See pages 477–478.

European Governments

Country	Capital	Ruler	Parliament
Albania	Durazzo	Republic	Diet
Austria	Vienna	Republic	Bundesrat and Nationalrat
Belgium	Brussels	Albert I (1909–)	Senate and Chamber of Representatives
Bulgaria	Sofia	Boris III (1918–)	National Assembly, or Sobranje
Czecho-Slovakia	Prague	Republic	Senate and Chamber of Deputies
Denmark	Copenhagen	Christian X (1912–)	Rigsdad (Landsthing and Folkething)
Esthonia	Reval		State Assembly
Finland	Helsingfors	Republic	House of Representatives
France	Paris	Republic	Senate and Chamber of Deputies
Germany	Berlin	Republic	Bundesrat and Reichsrat
Great Britain	London	George V (1910–)	House of Lords and House of Commons
Greece	Athens	Republic	Bulé (Council of State and Chamber of Deputies)
Holland	The Hague	Wilhelmina (1890–)	Estates-General (First Chamber and Second Chamber)
Hungary	Budapest		
Iceland	Reykjavik	Christian X (1912–)	Althing (Upper House and Lower House)
Italy	Rome	Victor Emmanuel III (1900–)	Senate and Chamber of Deputies
Jugoslavia	Belgrade	Alexander I (1919–)	National Assembly, or Naroda Skupshtina
Latvia	Riga		Parliament or Saeima
Lithuania	Vilna	Republic	
Norway	Christiania	Haakon VII (1905–)	Storthing (Lagthing and Odelsthing)
Poland	Warsaw		Parliament, or Seym
Portugal	Lisbon	Republic	National Council and Second Chamber
Rumania	Bukharest	Michael I (1927)	Senate and Chamber of Deputies
Russia	Moscow		Congress of Soviets
Spain	Madrid	Alfonso XIII (1886–)	Cortes (Senate and Congress)
Sweden	Stockholm	Gustav V (1907–)	Diet (First Chamber and Second Chamber)
Switzerland	Berne		Ständerat and Nationalrat
Turkey	Constantinople	Republic	Senate and Chamber of Deputies

ARCTIC OCEAN
Greenland
ASIA
Alaska
ARCTIC CIRCLE
DOMINION OF CANADA
Labrador
NORTH AMERICA
UNITED STATES
MEXICO
CENT AM
WEST INDIES
TROPIC OF CANCER
EQUATOR
PACIFIC
OCEAN
COLOMBIA
VENEZUELA
GUIANA
ECUADOR
PERU
SOUTH AMERICA
BRAZIL
BOLIVIA
PARAGUAY
ARGENTINE
TROPIC OF CAPRICORN
NEW ZEALAND
ANTARCTIC CIRCLE
ATLANTIC
OCEAN
ICELAND
BRITISH ISLES
FRANCE
GER.
AUS.
SWITZ.
ITALY
PORTUGAL
SPAIN
ALG.
MOR.
TURKEY
LIBYA
EGYPT
SAHARA
Sudan
AFRICA
ARABIA
PERSIA
INDIA
RUSSIA
EUROPE
ARCTIC OCEAN
NOVA ZEMBLA
Siberia
ASIA
CHINA
JAPAN
PACIFIC
OCEAN
PHILIPPINES
SIAM
BORNEO
SUMATRA
JAVA
NEW GUINEA
INDIAN
OCEAN
MADAGASCAR
UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA
AUSTRALIA
TASMANIA
GOVERNMENTS OF THE WORLD
Federative Republics
Centralized Republics
Constitutional Monarchies
Despotic Monarchies
Colonies, Dominions and Protectorates in lighter color
160 180 160 120 80 40 0 40 80 120 Longitude West 80 from Greenwich 40 0 40 Longitude East 80 from Greenwich 120
80
40
0

small parties and minorities may secure representation in the legislature. The presidents of the new republics have far less authority and influence than the sovereigns whom they displaced. Their position rather resembles that of the head of the French Republic.

The World War and the Peace of Paris made an end of the political system that developed between 1871 and 1914. A Triple Alliance no longer confronted a Triple Entente. The proud dynasties of the Hohenzollerns, the Hapsburgs, and the Romanovs had disappeared, and with them their imposing empires. Germany, indeed, kept her unity and most of her territory, but the Allied requirements for disarmament and reparation reduced her, for a time at least, to the position of a second-rate power. Austria-Hungary was resolved into a congeries of states, each independent, each ambitious, each jealous of its liberties. Russia was now separated from the rest of Europe by Rumania, which had more than doubled in size, by a revived and powerful Poland, and by the new Baltic republics.

Break-up of the Triple Alliance

There remained Great Britain, Italy, and France. The three countries after the war had neither the resources nor the desire to impose their will upon the rest of Europe. Great Britain, occupied with urgent problems of reconstruction and burdened with new responsibilities in Africa and Asia, avoided Continental entanglements. Italy centered her interests in southeastern Europe and the Mediterranean. France, on the other hand, once more found herself the leading state on the Continent. She kept up the largest and most efficient standing army, in order to enforce the terms of the peace settlement upon Germany, and she made an alliance with Poland so that the Polish republic might serve as a buffer state between Germany and Russia. France thus recovered something of her former ascendancy under Louis XIV and Napoleon.

Great Britain, Italy, and France

The general control of all matters springing out of the treaties was vested, originally, in the "Principal Allied and Associated Powers." The failure of the United States to ratify the treaties

and the abstention of Japan from European affairs reduced the group of powers practically to Great Britain, Italy, and France.

Coöperation of Great Britain, Italy, and France

They have coöperated, though not without friction, through councils of premiers and cabinet ministers from the different countries. Some important and difficult international questions have been referred by the three powers to the League of Nations for settlement. Their continued and friendly coöperation is essential, if Europe is to recover from the war and enjoy lasting peace.

Studies

1. Where are Iraq, Hejaz, Anatolia, Kurdistan, Albania, Saar Basin, Schleswig, Upper Silesia, Istria, Eastern Thrace, Fiume, Danzig, Memel, Smyrna, and Angora? 2. On the map between pages 6–7, locate the areas occupied by Lithuanians, Letts, Esthonians, Poles, Czechs, Slovaks, Ruthenians (Little Russians), Slovenians, and Serbo-Croats (Serbs and Croatians). 3. Indicate on an outline map the new boundaries of Germany and of Russia in Europe. 4. Indicate on an outline map the boundaries of Poland, Czecho-Slovakia, and Jugoslavia. 5. Explain the use in this chapter of the expressions: secret diplomacy, self-determination, plebiscite, mandate, and free city. 6. Mention some instances of plebiscites, mandates, and free cities provided for by the peace treaties. 7. Explain briefly: Reparation Commission; "Dawes Plan"; "Third International"; Article X of the Covenant of the League of Nations. 8. Compare the Peace Conference at Paris with the Congress of Vienna as to membership, purpose, and accomplishment. 9. Indicate on the map between pages 778–779, the districts lost by Germany and Bulgaria, respectively. 10. On the same map indicate what territories have been "redeemed" by Italy and Rumania, respectively. 11. What independent states were set up by non-Russian peoples formerly in the Russian Empire? 12. Compare the boundaries of the new Poland with those of Poland before its partition (map on page 218). 13. Name and locate the principal colonial acquisitions of Great Britain and France at the expense of Germany. 14. Contrast the government of socialist Germany with that of the German Empire. 15. Contrast the government of Soviet Russia with that of the Russian Empire. 16. What did Mr. Lloyd George mean by saying, "This is a war of nationalities"? 17. What did President Wilson mean by saying, "The world must be made safe for democracy"? 18. Show how the World War and the Peace of Paris contributed to the realization of both nationalism and democracy in Europe. 19. What European states have a republican form of government? What ones are democratic monarchies? 20. How many independent countries were there in Europe in 1914? How many are there now? 21. Name and locate the capitals of the new European states.

CHAPTER XXIX

THE WORLD TO-DAY[1]

216. The Cost of the World War

The World War deserved its name. It cast a dark shadow over almost the entire globe. Nothing like it had ever happened before. Twenty-eight countries, with their colonial dependencies, took up arms, while five Latin-American countries severed diplomatic relations with Germany. Only sixteen countries (Spain, Switzerland, Holland, Denmark, Norway, Sweden, Abyssinia, Persia, Afghanistan, Mexico, Salvador, Colombia, Venezuela, Chile, Paraguay, and Argentina), with less than one-sixteenth of the world's population, remained neutral. Even neutrals, however, could not escape the dislocations resulting from a war of such magnitude.

A world war

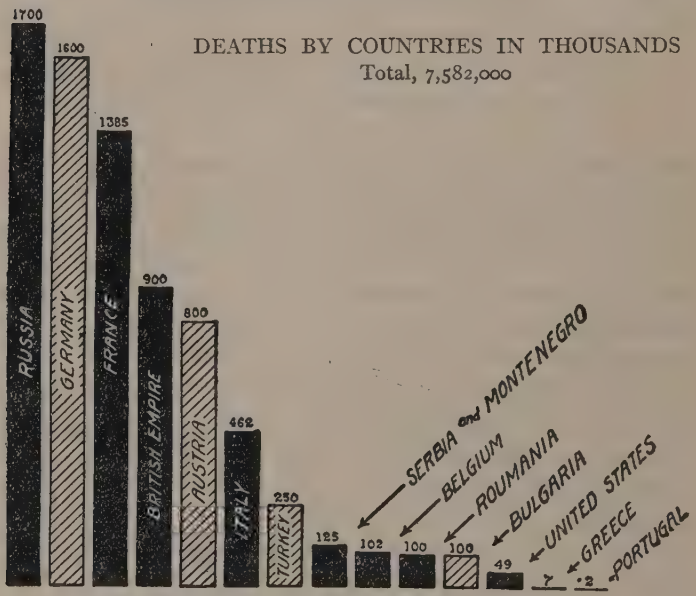
The Allies mobilized about forty million men and the Central Powers about twenty million men, making a grand total of sixty million combatants from beginning to end of the struggle. It is impossible to give an exact statement of the casualties. Probably ten million soldiers lost their lives in battle or as a result of wounds, accidents, and disease. Probably twenty million soldiers were wounded, perhaps a quarter of them being permanently disabled in body or in health. The death loss among non-combatants, as the result of pestilence, famine, and massacres, has been estimated at twenty millions. The total mortality directly traceable to the World War would thus amount to thirty millions. These appalling figures must be greatly increased if account is taken of the loss of population due to the decline of the normal birth-rate and the increase of the normal death-rate among European peoples. Not more than five million lives were lost in battle in all the wars from the time of the French Revolution to 1914.

Blood cost

[1] Webster, *Historical Source Book*, No. 20, "Holy Alliance, 1815"; No. 33, "Covenant of the League of Nations, 1919."

The war and the race

The ten million soldiers who fell in the war were mostly picked men. They had passed tests for physical and mental fitness; they were in the prime of life and health and strength; they should have been the virile fathers of the next generation. France, who lost altogether 1,750,000 soldiers, had sixty per cent of her young men killed in



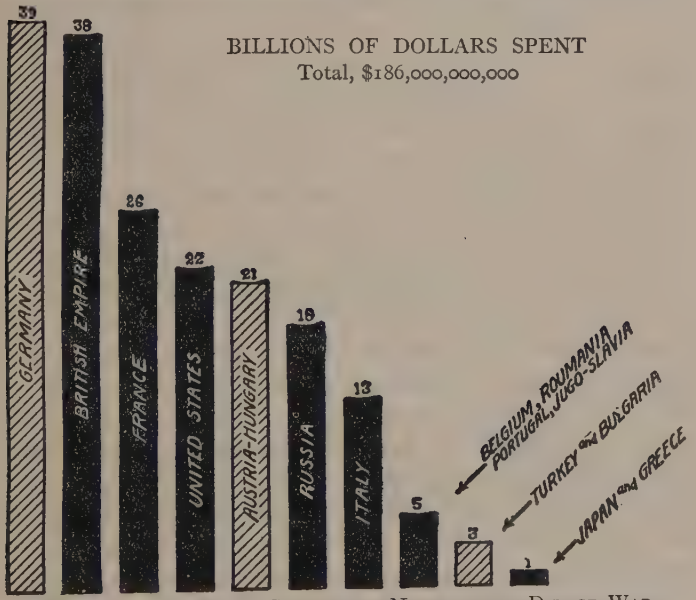
From "The War with Germany," published by U. S. War Department.

battle or as the result of battle. The mortality among the youth in the German, British, and other European armies doubtless reached almost as high a figure. This is necessarily the outcome of the system of selective conscription,[1] where the fittest go to the slaughter and the weaklings remain at home. The war, therefore, injured the race fiber of the principal European nations. Its effects in this direction may make themselves felt for many decades, possibly for centuries.

[1] See pages 714, 733, and 749.

A conservative estimate of the direct money cost of the war to the belligerent nations is $186,000,000,000. This sum, colossal as it is, does not take into account the indirect cost, including the destruction of property on land and sea, the depreciation of capital, the interruption of trade, the loss of production due to the employment of the

Money cost



MONEY COST TO THE COMBATANT NATIONS FOR DIRECT WAR EXPENSES, TO THE SPRING OF 1919

From "The War with Germany," published by U. S. War Department.

world's workers in military activities, the payments for war relief, and the expenditures of neutral nations. Such items, in the aggregate, would amount to many more billions. However, any estimate of either the direct or the indirect cost is more or less fallacious, unless it allows for the tremendous and rapid depreciation of the currencies in all European countries during the war period. Measured in dollars the total expenditure was one thing; measured in terms of labor and commodities it was another and lesser thing. The figure given above for the

direct cost must be halved, if it is to be adjusted to the purchasing power of currencies before the war began. But even $93,000,000,000 is a sum so great as almost to defy the imagination. It is a thousand dollars for every mile of the distance between our earth and the sun. All the wars from the time of the French Revolution to 1914 cost not more than $25,000,000,000.

War finance

The war was financed to some extent by increased taxation, especially in Great Britain and the United States, but chiefly by borrowing. The nations, in the first place, issued vast quantities of paper money. Such forced loans are easily made on the Continent, where the governments control the banks and possess a monopoly of note issue. The enormous sums thus put into circulation are a primary cause of the rise of prices abroad, increasing several times over the cost of labor and commodities as measured in terms of the money unit. One of the financial problems confronting Europe is the speedy withdrawal of a large part of these notes from circulation. In the second place, the nations sold their bonds, or promises to pay, to all who would buy them. The amounts raised were far greater than had been supposed possible. The people bought the bonds out of their savings, for the war taught lessons of thrift to almost every one and made it a patriotic duty for the citizen to save that his country might have more to spend. The bonds will be mostly funded into long-time obligations running many years before maturity.

Finance after the war

The end of the war left the whole financial world in chaos. All the belligerents had to impose heavy additional taxation, in order to meet the interest on their huge debts and repair the destruction caused by the struggle. Many of them found it difficult to avoid bankruptcy. Great Britain and the United States were the only important belligerents which from the start balanced their budgets and did not show a large gap between income and expenditure. Some of the countries, particularly Germany and Russia, indulged for a time in an orgy of paper-money inflation, with the result that both the mark and the ruble became practically worthless. Even the French franc depreciated to about a fourth of its pre-war value.

THE BELLIGERENTS

THE ALLIES, WITH COLONIES AND DEPENDENCIES

Country	*Date of Entrance*	*Population*	*Men Mobilized*	*Casualties among Combatants*
Serbia	1914	4,550,000	707,000	450,000
Russia	1914	175,000,000	12,000,000	9,150,000
France	1914	87,500,000	7,500,000	4,506,000
Belgium	1914	22,500,000	267,000	90,000
British Empire	1914	440,000,000	7,500,000	3,089,000
Montenegro	1914	516,000	50,000	20,000
Japan	1915	74,000,000	800,000	1,000
Italy	1915	37,000,000	5,500,000	2,800,000
San Marino	1915	12,000		
Portugal	1916	15,000,000	100,000	10,000
Rumania	1916	7,500,000	750,000	400,000
United States	1917	113,000,000	4,272,000	274,000
Cuba	1917	2,500,000		
Panama	1917	427,000		
Greece	1917	5,000,000	230,000	100,000
Siam	1917	8,150,000		
Liberia	1917	1,800,000		
China	1917	320,000,000		
Brazil	1917	25,000,000		
Haiti	1918	2,000,000		
Guatemala	1918	2,500,000		
Nicaragua	1918	746,000		
Costa Rica	1918	455,000		
Honduras	1918	605,000		
		1,345,761,000	39,676,000	20,890,000

CENTRAL POWERS, WITH COLONIES AND DEPENDENCIES

Country	*Date of Entrance*	*Population*	*Men Mobilized*	*Casualties among Combatants*
Austria-Hungary	1914	50,000,000	6,500,000	5,211,000
Germany	1914	80,600,000	11,000,000	6,066,000
Turkey	1914	21,000,000	1,600,000	1,000,000
Bulgaria	1915	5,000,000	400,000	264,000
		156,600,000	19,500,000	12,541,000

The financial burden which our own and future generations must carry is shown by the gigantic national debts. These now total nearly ten times what they were before the war. Seven belligerents alone — Bulgaria, Belgium, France, Germany, Greece, Italy, and Portugal — owed in 1920 no less than $128,000,000,000, as compared with $14,000,000,000 in 1913. The debt of Great Britain, at the peak in 1920, was $40,000,000,000; that of the United States, at the peak in 1919, was in excess of $26,000,000,000. Both these countries are now paying off their indebtedness — the United States doing so at the rapid rate of about a billion a year. During the war the Allies borrowed about $10,000,000,000 from the United States. Great Britain, Poland, and some of the smaller Continental states have begun to meet the interest charges on what they owe and to liquidate the principal. It is expected that the British debt to the United States will be completely extinguished in sixty years. Payments made by other European countries to the United States will likewise be spread over a long period of time. The Russian debt, both internal and external, which had reached a high figure at the time of the Revolution, was repudiated by the Bolsheviki. The Turkish Nationalists, by repudiating the indebtedness which the old Ottoman Empire contracted abroad, have taken the same short and easy, if dishonorable, step toward financial rehabilitation.

National debts

The general economic situation in Europe has been summed up by the Supreme Council as follows: "The process of recovery of Europe must necessarily be a slow one, which cannot be expedited by short cuts of any description. It can be most seriously hampered by the dislocation of production, by strikes, lockouts, and interruption of work of all kinds. The civilization of Europe has indeed been shaken and set back, but it is far from being irretrievably ruined by the tremendous struggle through which she has passed. The restoration of her vitality now depends on the whole-hearted coöperation of all her children, who have it in their own power to delay or accelerate the process of reconstruction."

Reconstruction

217. Lessons of the World War

No competent historian has ever held Austria-Hungary and Germany entirely responsible for the World War. Long before 1914 mighty forces making for war had been operative in the international world, forces that needed only to be released to precipitate a conflict. What these were we have already learned. First, there was extreme nationalism,[1] a sentiment which had gained ground all through the nineteenth century. It bred ill-will between European peoples. It made difficult any real sympathy or understanding between them. Each people developed an exaggerated sense of "national honor" and, like a duellist, professed its readiness to fight "at the drop of the hat" on any occasion of the slightest insult to the government or even to a single citizen. Second, there was economic imperialism,[2] producing European expansion, annexations of foreign territory, and the struggle for markets, concessions, investments, and spheres of influence in new and undeveloped regions. Such advantages were often gained by sheer force or by diplomatic pressure backed by armies and navies. Third, there was secret diplomacy, and connected therewith, the whole system of entangling alliances.[3] Enormous power was thus placed in the hands of ambassadors and foreign-office ministers. They often made the most serious and binding agreements without the knowledge of the people at large or even the knowledge of parliaments. Fourth, there was militarism, and the wasteful, fear-producing competition in armaments.[4] Still other forces made for international hostility. The presence in Europe of so many "submerged nationalities," longing for independence and self-government, constituted a grave danger. The numerous territorial and boundary disputes, resulting from previous wars and ill-made peace treaties, also contributed to the general insecurity. Clearly enough, no one nation, or group of nations, could be wholly blamed for this international situation. Austria-

International responsibility for modern warfare

[1] See pages 387–389, 700.
[2] See pages 533–534, 708.
[3] See pages 701–703.
[4] See pages 713–715.

Hungary and Germany did indeed hurl the flaming torch that kindled the great conflagration, but Europe was a powder house in 1914.

The World War involved Europe, the largest part of North America and South America, much of Africa, two-thirds of Asia, and most of Oceania. Improved methods of transportation and communication have brought all civilized peoples so close together that a shot fired in the Balkans soon provoked an international crisis and at length produced an international conflict. The nations, while remaining politically independent, are now economically and socially interdependent. Their isolation is forever ended. What concerns one concerns all. The fate of one becomes the fate of all. It was impossible to localize the last war; it will be equally impossible to localize the next war.

Modern warfare world-wide

Everything indicates that the next war, if on the scale of the last one, will be still more destructive of life and property. Airplanes, submarines, battleships, and armament are being rapidly improved. We now have an automatic cannon which fires one hundred and twenty shells a minute, and a sixteen-inch gun which hurls a projectile weighing more than a ton for a distance of twenty-seven miles. Demolition bombs, four hundred pounds in weight, were occasionally used during the last war; now four thousand-pound bombs are available. One of these bombs, skillfully dropped from an airplane, would wreck the Woolworth Building. "Tanks" are evolving into land battleships, equipped with field guns as well as machine guns. Poison gases of incredible malignity, powerful enough to disable or kill thousands of people at one time, have been discovered and perfected. Nor does the ghastly catalogue end here. Disease germs, capable of polluting the water supply of whole areas, blight to destroy crops, anthrax to slay horses and cattle, and plague to sweep away entire populations are being prepared in the chemical laboratories of more than one great country. There is even the possibility of the discovery of some lethal electric ray which can be projected into space with deadly effect. Modern warfare,

Modern warfare suicidal

by utilizing all the agencies of modern science, threatens to become a sort of collective suicide of the nations. Whole populations will take part in it, men, women, and children doing their utmost, and all exposed to the fury of the enemy. Every means to beat down the foe and enforce a decision will be employed. Mr. Lloyd George spoke soberly when he declared that another war will be against civilization. He might have added, it will destroy civilization.

218. The Peace Movement

Christianity introduced into Europe an exalted conception of the sacredness of human life. It condemned homicide of any kind, and therefore regarded war as unlawful under any circumstances. Had not Christ declared that "all they that take the sword shall perish with the sword"?[1] The Christian Church formed, in fact, the first peace society and launched the first peace movement. This pacifist attitude could not be maintained, at a time when the Roman Empire was assailed on almost every side by barbarian invaders. The Church had to accommodate her teaching about war to the practice of a warlike age. She began by admitting the legitimacy of defensive warfare, but erelong sanctioned aggressive warfare as well. After Christianity became the official religion of the Empire in the fourth century, the militarization of the Church proceeded apace. The use of the cross on the standards of the imperial army testified to the change that had come over the spirit of Christianity.

Early Christianity and warfare

The Church in the Middle Ages, while by no means a pacifist organization, in general cast its influence on the side of peace. It deserves credit for establishing the Truce of God and for many efforts to stamp out private warfare between feudal nobles. The Church, however, encouraged public warfare against heretics and infidels. Medieval Christians believed that it was a religious duty to exterminate these enemies of God. The institution of chivalry and the military orders of monks, such as Templars and

The medieval Church and warfare

[1] *Matthew*, xxvi, 52.

Hospitalers, illustrate the union between Christianity and militancy.

Protestantism and warfare

The rise of Protestantism did not produce a change in the position of official Christianity toward war. Most of the Protestant churches were state churches, and their ministers, considering themselves as in the service of the state, usually supported whatever war their government undertook. Nevertheless, Christian sects arose which reprobated all war. The English Lollards in the fourteenth century taught that homicide in war is forbidden by the New Testament. The sixteenth-century Anabaptists, who had many adherents in Germany and other countries, believed that Christians should not bear arms or offer forcible resistance to wrongdoers or wield the sword. The Society of Friends (commonly called Quakers), likewise took an attitude of uncompromising pacifism.[1]

Peace agencies

Strong protests against war were voiced at various times by isolated reformers, for instance, by Erasmus, Voltaire, and Tolstoy. The nineteenth century saw the rise of peace societies, numbering several hundreds throughout the world. Their first international congress took place as early as 1843. These societies held regular meetings and maintained a permanent bureau at Bern, Switzerland. They helped to arouse public sentiment in favor of compulsory arbitration, the restriction of armaments, and the removal of the causes of war. Useful work for peace was also done by such unofficial bodies as the Institute of International Law and the Inter-Parliamentary Union. The Pan-American Union, founded in 1890, had for its purpose the furtherance of good relations among all the twenty-one republics of the New World. The peace movement was also promoted by private benefactors. Alfred Nobel, the Swedish inventor of dynamite and other explosives, who left his fortune for the establishment of international prizes, directed that one of these should be annually awarded to the person or society rendering the greatest service to the cause of human brotherhood. Andrew Carnegie gave ten million dollars as an endowment to hasten the abolition of

[1] See page 283.

international war, "the foulest blot on our civilization." The endowment was particularly intended to encourage studies in economics, history, and international law, so that the world's peoples might know one another better and so avoid many sources of friction between them.

What is called international law arose as an attempt to frame rules acceptable to all nations and binding upon them in their relations with one another. These rules at first had most to do with the conduct of war. Hugo Grotius, the venerated founder of international law, lived during the Thirty Years' War and wrote his truly epoch-making treatise, *On the Law of War and Peace*, to lessen the horrors of that conflict. "I saw prevailing throughout the Christian world a license in making war of which even barbarous nations would have been ashamed. Recourse was had to arms for slight reasons or no reason; and when arms were once taken up, all reverence for divine and human law was thrown away, just as if men were henceforth authorized to commit all crimes without restraint." [1] After the time of Grotius, the field of international law steadily widened until not only the regulation of warfare, but also the preservation of peace became the ideal of statesmen, publicists, and all lovers of mankind.

International law

HUGO GROTIUS

After the portrait by Miervelt of Grotius at the age of forty-nine.

The catastrophe of 1914–1918 has given new strength to the peace movement. Thoughtful men are now impressed, as never before, by the horrors of past conflicts. They are apprehensive of fresh horrors to come. They are aware that no limits, except the habitable globe itself, can be

Abolition of war

[1] Grotius, *On the Law of War and Peace*, Prolegomena, 28.

set to the possible scope of another conflict. They realize that the roots of war sink deep into the soil of the past and that all countries are responsible, in greater or less degree, for its existence. They ask, therefore, if the time has not come to end forever armed conflict between the nations. Cannot it be abolished, as cannibalism, human sacrifice, blood revenge, witchcraft, slavery, and other anti-social practices have been abolished by the common sense of mankind? If this is to be done, we now perceive that it can only be done by international organization.

219. International Organization

Early peace projects

The idea of maintaining peace by international agreements is not new. Several great wars have been followed by projects for the prevention of future conflicts. After the religious struggles of the sixteenth century in France came the "Grand Design" of Henry IV, inspired, it is said, by his minister Sully. The development of this plan for a European Confederation or Christian Republic was frustrated by the assassination of the French king. Near the close of the seventeenth century, William Penn wrote a prophetic *Essay towards the Present and Future Peace of Europe* (1692). Penn argued that an international Diet or Parliament, obeying "the same rules of justice and prudence by which parents and masters govern their families, magistrates their cities, estates their republics, and princes and kings their principalities and kingdoms," could abolish warfare between the nations. The French revolutionary wars produced Immanuel Kant's *Toward Perpetual Peace* (1795). In this work the great German philosopher declared that perpetual peace might be secured by an international union of states and that such a union would become feasible when autocracies gave way to democracies.

The Holy Alliance

It was the autocrats, however, who made the first attempt at a League of Nations. In 1815, after Europe had been exhausted by the struggle against Napoleon, the tsar, Alexander I, joined with Francis I of Austria and Frederick William III of Prussia in a so-called Holy Alliance. The three rulers pledged themselves "in the name of the Most

Holy and Indivisible Trinity" to take for their sole guide henceforth "the precepts of justice, Christian charity, and peace." They further promised to remain united "by the bonds of a true and indivisible fraternity," and "on all occasions and in all places" to lend each other aid and assistance. Several other European sovereigns later signed this pledge, conspicuous exceptions being the Pope, the Sultan, and George IV, the British Prince Regent. Though a praiseworthy attempt to apply much needed principles of morality to international relations, the Holy Alliance never had any real importance. Most statesmen agreed with Metternich's characterization of it as a "loud-sounding nothing." It soon faded into oblivion, being replaced by the far more practical Concert of Europe.[1]

The European Concert

The five great powers, Great Britain, France, Prussia, Austria, and Russia, who formed the Concert, did not keep peace throughout the nineteenth century. Their conflicting interests and especially their nationalistic aspirations more than once led to hostilities between them. Nevertheless, the idea of a Concert persisted, and from time to time the great powers imposed their will upon the whole of Europe. They neutralized Switzerland in 1815 and Belgium in 1839. At the Congress of Paris in 1856, which concluded the Crimean War, they signed the Declaration of Paris, providing rules for the conduct of maritime warfare.[2] By the Geneva Convention in 1864 they undertook to ameliorate warfare by land and organized the International Red Cross, with branches in every civilized country.[3] In 1878 the great powers, now including Great Britain, France, Germany, Austria-Hungary, Italy, and Russia, met in the Congress of Berlin for the settlement of the Eastern Question. Nor was the Concert confined to Europe. It organized the Congo Free State[4] under international guarantees, neutralized the Suez Canal,[5] coöperated with Japan and the United States to suppress the Chinese "Boxers,"[6] and held the Algeciras Conference[7] to deal with the Moroccan problem.

[1] See pages 361–362. [2] See page 629. [3] See page 660. [4] See page 540. [5] See page 546. [6] See page 558. [7] See page 709.

The nations also began to resort increasingly to arbitration as a means of adjusting differences between them. Great Britain and the United States, for instance, arbitrated the *Alabama* claims after the Civil War and in the same way ended a boundary dispute between British Guiana and Venezuela, which threatened for a time to involve the two great English-speaking peoples in fratricidal strife. Over two hundred awards were made by arbitral courts during the nineteenth century, and every one was executed. After 1900 many leading countries concluded treaties with each other, pledging themselves to submit to arbitration all controversies except those affecting national honor or vital interests (such as independence).

International arbitration

International arbitration received a great impetus at the two Hague conferences of 1899 and 1907.[1] The assembled powers could not agree to limit armaments, but besides revising the laws of war they set up a court of arbitration, to which the nations might resort. Though without authority to enforce its decrees, the Hague Tribunal did settle a number of controversies which in earlier days might have led to war. It thus marked a distinct advance toward international peace.

The Hague conferences

Then came the World War. Austria-Hungary and Germany abruptly withdrew from the European Concert, rejected every proposal for arbitration or mediation, and, after hostilities began, proceeded to violate treaty obligations and the recognized usages of warfare, both by land and sea. The Allies, in consequence, became the defenders of international law, as well as the champions of nationality and democracy. Their enormous sacrifices during the struggle promised to be in vain, unless some means could be found to preserve the sanctity of treaties and prevent future aggressive wars. An international league began to seem, not a utopian scheme, but rather a practical necessity for the peace and security of mankind. Such thoughts as these were repeatedly expressed by responsible statesmen among the Allies, especially by Mr. Lloyd George and President Wilson.

An international league

[1] See page 716.

220. The League of Nations

As soon as the Peace Conference opened at Paris, a committee representing the Allied and Associated governments began work on the various proposals which had been put forward from time to time for an international league. The committee presented the first draft of a constitution to the conference in February, 1919. Various modifications of it were made as the result of world-wide discussion, and the amended document was then inserted in the peace treaty with Germany. The signing of that treaty and its subsequent ratification set up the League of Nations in active operation.

Formation of the league

The constitution, or Covenant, of the League of Nations was written in large part by President Wilson. It is a short, simple, and dignified document. The objects of the organization are thus stated in the preamble: "The High Contracting Parties, in order to promote international coöperation and to achieve international peace and security, by the acceptance of obligations not to resort to war, by the prescription of open, just, and honorable relations between nations, by the firm establishment of the understandings of international law as the actual rule of conduct among governments, and by the maintenance of justice and a scrupulous respect for all treaty obligations in the dealings of organized peoples with one another, agree to this Covenant of the League of Nations."

Covenant of the league

The League of Nations consists of an Assembly, in which each member has one vote and not more than three representatives; a Council, made up of representatives of Great Britain, France, Germany, Italy, and Japan, together with representatives of nine other members of the league; and a permanent Secretariat at Geneva. The Assembly holds a meeting once a year at Geneva, for the admission of new members and for the discussion of matters of international interest. Such power as the league possesses is in the hands of the ten members of the Council, who meet every few months and decide on action to be taken in the name of the league.

Organization

ARCTIC OCEAN
GREENLAND
ARCTIC CIRCLE
ASIA
Alaska
NORTH AMERICA
EUROPE
Russia
United States
ATLANTIC
OCEAN
Mexico
TROPIC OF CANCER
PACIFIC
OCEAN
EQUATOR
Ecuador
SOUTH AMERICA
AFRICA
Turkey
INDIAN OCEAN
TROPIC OF CAPRICORN
AUSTRALIA
THE LEAGUE OF NATIONS
Members
Colonial Possessions of Members and Protectorates
Non-Members in white
MEMBERS OF THE LEAGUE OF NATIONS
1. Abyssinia; 2. Albania; 3. Argentina; 4. Austria; 5. Australia; 6. Belgium; 7. Bolivia; 8. Brazil; 9. Bulgaria; 10. Canada; 11. Chile; 12. China; 13. Colombia; 14. Costa Rica; 15. Cuba; 16. Czecho-Slovakia; 17. Denmark; 18. England; 19. Esthonia; 20. Finland; 21. France; 22. Greece; 23. Guatemala; 24. Haiti; 25. Holland; 26. Honduras; 27. Hungary; 28. India; 29. Irish Free State; 30. Italy; 31. Japan; 32. Jugo-Slavia; 33. Latvia; 34. Liberia; 35. Lithuania; 36. Luxemburg; 37. New Zealand; 38. Nicaragua; 39. Norway; 40. Panama; 41. Paraguay; 42. Persia; 43. Peru; 44. Poland; 45. Portugal; 46. Rumania; 47. San Salvador; 48. Siam; 49. Spain; 50. Sweden; 51. Switzerland; 52. Union of S. Africa; 53. Uruguay; 54. Venezuela; 55. Kingdom of Hejaz; 56. Germany.

All important decisions of the Council require a unanimous vote.

Forty-one nations[1] were represented by delegates at the first meeting of the Assembly of the league in 1920. Accessions to the league were made at subsequent meetings, until in 1928 its membership included fifty-six nations. For the future, any self-governing state, dominion, or colony may be enrolled by a two-thirds vote of the members. Any member may, after two years' notice, withdraw from the league, if at the time of withdrawal it has fulfilled all its international obligations.

Membership

The only important countries remaining outside the league are Turkey, Russia, Mexico, and the United States. The Central Powers were excluded at first as having been so recently enemy states. Russia and Mexico were not invited to join because they had not set up stable governments. The reasons why the United States refused membership in the league have been mentioned in the preceding chapter.[2] The abstention of these great and powerful countries seriously limits the authority of the league. It cannot function with entire efficiency in European affairs until Russia is admitted and assigned a seat on the Council. Nor can it become in the fullest sense a world organization as long as the United States continues to be a non-member.

Non-members

Some important duties arising out of the Peace of Paris were intrusted to the league. It administers the internationalized areas, including the Saar Valley, Danzig, and Fiume.[3] It also supervises the government of mandated territories, comprising the former colonies of Germany and the countries in the Near East liberated from Turkey.[4] The mandatory system represents a praiseworthy departure from the usual method of disposing of enemy territories conquered in war. These territories, instead of being annexed, will be governed by the conquerors as trustees, at their own expense

Duties

[1] Canada, Australia, New Zealand, the Union of South Africa, and India are each represented in the Assembly of the league, as well as the United Kingdom. The Irish Free State is also a member of the league.

[2] See page 766.] [3] See pages 768, 769, 779.] [4] See pages 769, 776–777.]

and without any definite benefit to themselves. They must submit an annual report to the league, which has final authority to pass judgment on the discharge of their trusteeship. The mandatory system rests on the principle that backward and undeveloped countries, unable as yet to achieve or preserve independence, ought to be treated as international responsibilities, not as opportunities for national profit and aggrandizement. Such countries should be governed in the interest of the inhabitants and for the common advantage of the world. If these good intentions are realized, a step will have been taken in getting rid of some of the evils of "imperialism."

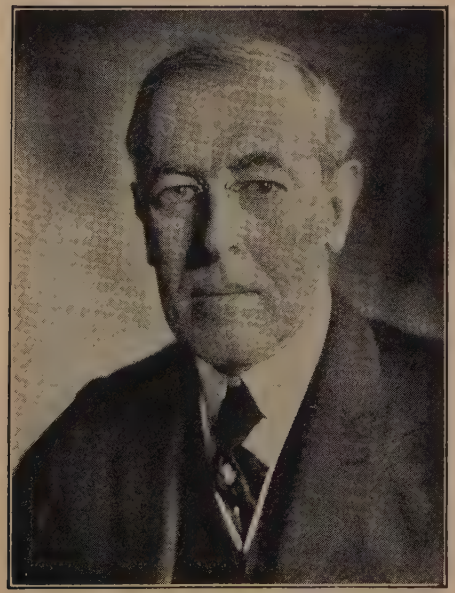
The league and international coöperation

The league serves as a convenient agency for dealing with matters that concern all its members, such as the prevention and control of disease, the regulation of the traffic in dangerous drugs, and, in conjunction with the Red Cross, the mitigation of suffering throughout the world. In the first eight months of 1924 there were no less than seventy-six of these international gatherings at Geneva. A very important department of the league, the International Labor Office, is concerned with the betterment of industrial conditions in the various countries.[1] The league also has a Committee on Intellectual Coöperation, made up of distinguished European *savants*. They hold meetings from time to time, in order to promote a common understanding among scholars and scientists everywhere. One of the provisions of the Covenant requires that any treaty or international engagement concluded by league members shall be registered with the Secretariat and published. Unless so registered it shall not be binding. This regulation, if faithfully observed, should do away with the old "secret diplomacy."

The league and international peace

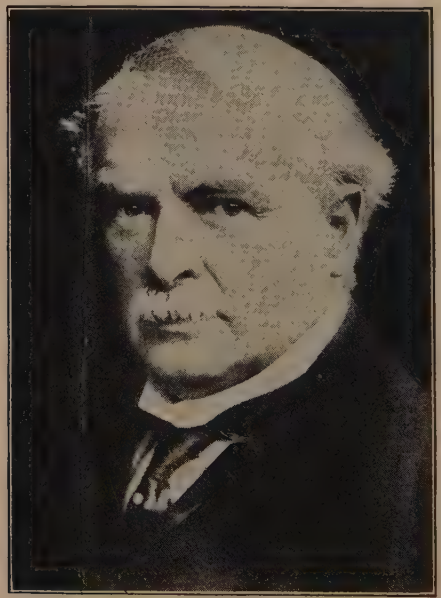
The Covenant, in its present form, declares that a war or even a threat of war is a matter of concern to the whole league. The members promise to submit any dispute likely to result in a rupture either to arbitration or to inquiry by the Council. If the dispute is submitted to arbitration, they pledge themselves to carry out in good faith

[1] See page 640.



© *Harris-Ewing*

WOODROW WILSON



© *Underwood & Underwood*

DAVID LLOYD GEORGE

any award that may be rendered and not to resort to war. If the dispute is submitted to inquiry by the Council and the report of that body is unanimously agreed to by all the members (except those that are parties to the dispute), they also pledge themselves not to resort to war. In case the Council's report is not unanimous, they agree not to go to war until three months after the report has been made. Should a member take up arms, in disregard of these agreements, it will be considered as having committed an act of aggression toward all other members. They must then sever trade and financial relations with it, thus subjecting it to economic ostracism — a sort of international boycott. The Council of the league may further recommend (but not require) that the members contribute military, naval, or air forces for use against the recalcitrant state. No occasion for the use of such measures to protect the Covenant has yet arisen. The obligations of league members are further defined by the famous Article X,[1] which declares that they will respect and preserve "as against external aggression" by non-member states the territory and independence of one another.

Accomplishments of the league

The league was five years old in 1925. Up to that time it had headed off or snuffed out at least six wars between European countries. These would have been minor wars at the start, but no one can tell how great they might have become before they ended. The league settled a serious dispute between Sweden and Finland as to the ownership of the Åland Islands;[2] it gave the islands to Finland, and Sweden acquiesced in the decision. The very troublesome question of the division of Upper Silesia[3] between Germany and Poland was referred to the league for solution; its award, drawing a new frontier line, was accepted by both countries. The league has aided in the rehabilitation of Austria and Hungary by means of international loans to these almost bankrupt countries and by the supervision of their finances. The humanitarian activities of the league are numerous. It has returned to their homes about three hundred thousand prisoners of war in Russia and other countries. It has checked an epidemic of typhus and

[1] See page 766. [2] See page 781. [3] See page 769.

bubonic plague in eastern Europe that might easily have spread over the entire Continent. It is engaged in efforts to stamp out the traffic in opium, a drug which has become such a curse in Oriental countries. It provided for the holding in 1925 of a conference of the principal nations to frame a convention with respect to the international trade in arms, munitions, and implements of war. The treaties signed by various nations of central Europe, to remove discrimination against racial and linguistic minorities within their borders, form still another accomplishment of the league.

The league to-day

The league is by no means perfect. The Council probably has too much authority and the Assembly too little authority. The great states have undue influence in it; the smaller but more numerous states deserve more recognition than they have yet received. The league, in other words, needs to be made more democratic. Its gravest weakness, however, is due to the fact that several major countries do not belong to it. Rejected by the United States, scorned by Soviet Russia, distrusted by Germany, and not always trusted by the Allied governments themselves, the league still lacks both power and resources to deal finally with the larger political issues confronting Europe. The league, nevertheless, has justified its existence, if only because of its functions in regard to internationalized areas and mandated territories. Its services as a clearing-house for the whole world, in matters economic and humanitarian, are likewise of great importance. Finally, by its labors in the cause of peace, the league is gradually accustoming the nations to accept some measure of supervision over their foreign relations. As long as the nations considered themselves entirely sovereign, able to fight when and how and whom they pleased, there was nothing to prevent a strong country from attacking and perhaps conquering a weak country. This is "international anarchy," the tap root of all modern warfare. The league has begun to deal with these anarchical conditions, not only through the provisions of the Covenant, but also by the establishment of a "World Court" and by an agreement, or Protocol, for the outlawry of war.

221. The "World Court" and the Locarno Pacts

The Covenant of the league provided for the establishment of a Permanent Court of International Justice to facilitate the settlement of disputes between the nations. Such a "World Court" was set up at The Hague, Holland, in 1922. It consists of eleven judges and four deputy judges chosen by the Council and the Assembly of the league and representing diverse races, languages, nationalities, and legal codes. All of the major countries, except Russia, Turkey, and the United States, and most of the minor countries, have signified their adherence to this organization. The United States seems likely to join at an early date. The Republican platform of 1924, besides pledging American coöperation with the league in humanitarian matters, approved the court and promised American membership therein. The "World Court" is, indeed, as essential an accompaniment of international union as is the Supreme Court of our union of states.

A supreme court of the nations

The Hague Tribunal[1] is not a court in the proper sense of the word, being merely a panel of names from which arbitrators may be selected when desired by various governments. The "World Court," on the contrary, is a body of permanent judges holding regular sessions in a definite place and at definite times. It may hear and determine any justiciable question (one relating to the interpretation of a treaty or to a matter of international law), which is submitted to it by the parties concerned. It does not have compulsory jurisdiction, however, unless the parties agree in advance to accept such jurisdiction. In this respect the "World Court" resembles the Hague Tribunal. The court also acts as a legal adviser to the League of Nations, being empowered to give an advisory opinion upon any dispute or question referred to it by the Council or by the Assembly.

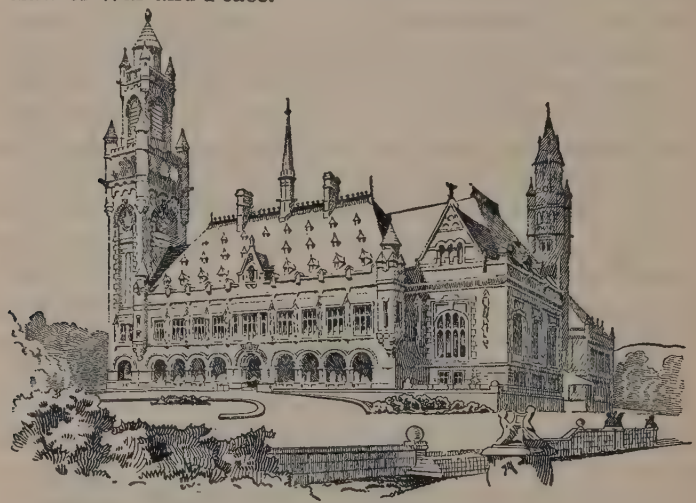
The court and the Hague Tribunal

The "World Court" can act only according to international law, and there are many subjects in regard to which no such law is at present applicable. Some of the great jurists of the world

[1] See pages 716 and 808.

are now engaged in the preparation of an enlarged and improved international code. When completed, it will probably be submitted to the different governments, and, if approved by them, it will then become the basis of decisions by the court. This new code promises to carry forward the work of Grotius and his successors on the "Law of War and Peace."

The court and international law



THE PEACE PALACE AT THE HAGUE

A gift of Andrew Carnegie for the use of the Hague Tribunal and for international conferences. It is also the seat of the new "World Court."

An encouraging step toward the formation of a future "United States of Europe" was taken in 1925, when representatives of Great Britain, France, Germany, Italy, and other countries, assembled in conference at the Swiss town of Locarno, entered into a series of agreements, or pacts, intended to lessen the danger of a future European war. These include a treaty by which France and Germany promised to arbitrate all difficulties which cannot be settled by the usual methods of diplomacy. The two countries (and also Belgium) further agreed that the frontiers between them as fixed at Versailles in 1919 should be inviolable, and that they would never again resort to war against each other. Great Britain and Italy

The Locarno pacts

guaranteed this treaty, promising to use their influence and, if necessary, their military force against any one of the three nations which should violate it. The two signatory powers are not to take such action until an alleged violation of the treaty has been referred to the Council of the League of Nations for a decision whether, in fact, it has been violated. This agreement, if maintained, should remove the Rhineland area (Alsace-Lorraine) out of the realm of international controversy and protect Belgium from aggression on the part of her powerful neighbors. Other treaties were also signed at Locarno to provide for arbitration of disputes between Germany and Poland and Germany and Czecho-Slovakia.

222. Disarmament and the Abolition of War

All lovers of peace realize that the setting up of such agencies as the League of Nations and the "World Court" must be accompanied by partial or complete disarmament of the nations, if war is to be forever abolished from the civilized world. The United States became the pioneer in this movement by organizing a Conference on the Limitation of Armament. In response to President Harding's invitation, delegates of nine nations (the United States, Great Britain, France, Italy, Belgium, Holland, Portugal, Japan, and China) met at Washington in November, 1921, to deal with limitation of naval armament and, as connected therewith, the policy of the powers in the Far East. The conference continued in session until February, 1922. Its deliberations were so successful that the assembled powers agreed to a similar meeting eight years later, and also to frequent consultation, through commissions and other international bodies, on matters affecting their common interests. The chief results of the conference may be summarized as follows.

The Washington Conference

The delegates adopted the proposal of Secretary Hughes for a limitation of navies. The five principal naval powers agreed to scrap or convert to peaceful uses sixty-eight capital ships, and so to limit future construction that after a ten-year building holiday Great Britain and the

Limitation of navies

hand, Great Britain, France, and Italy all emerged from the war with additional foreign territories. Great Britain obtained the bulk of the German colonies and assumed the government of Palestine and Iraq (Mesopotamia). She confirmed her sovereignty over the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan, established a veiled protectorate over the new Arab state of Hejaz, and enlarged her sphere of influence in Persia and Afghanistan. France secured part of the German colonies in Africa, together with the former Turkish province of Syria, and now ranks next to Great Britain as an imperialist power. The gains of Italy abroad were less considerable, though she increased somewhat her three African colonies.[1]

Japan as an imperialist power

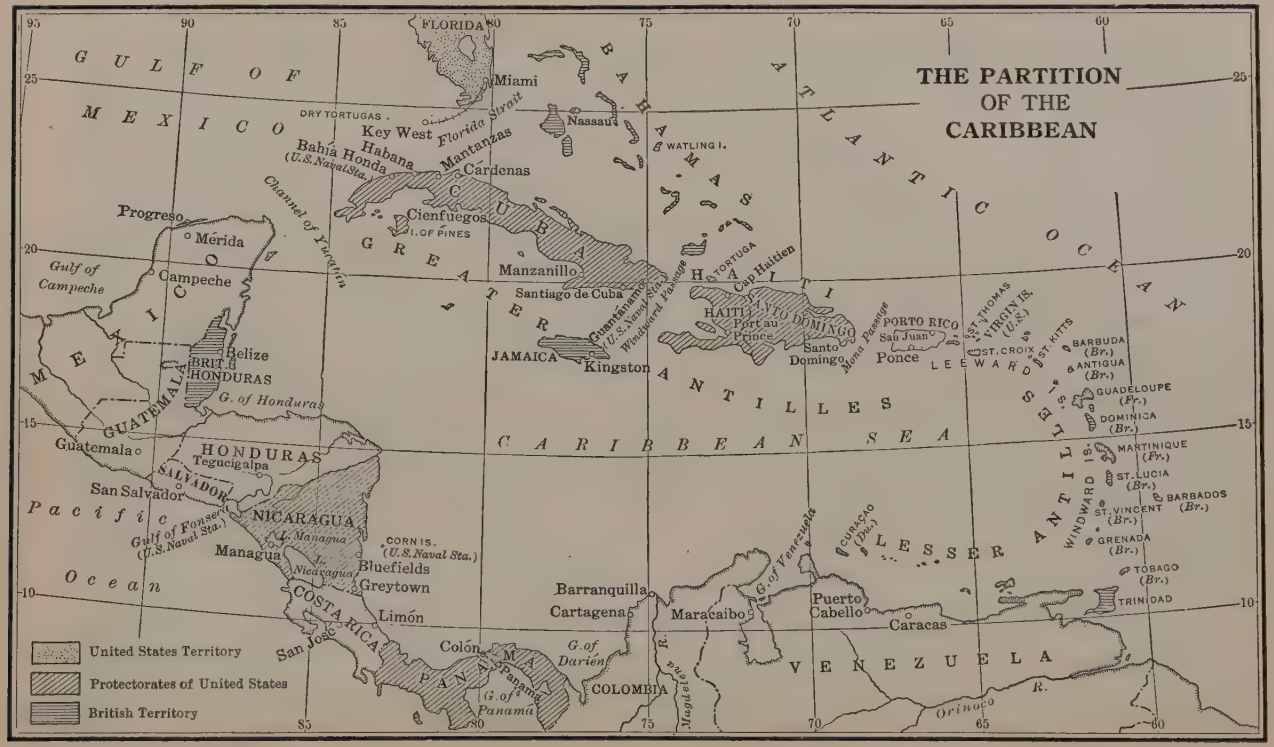
The war gave Japan almost a free hand in the Far East, for her allies were busy elsewhere and China was vexed with internal disorders. Japan used the opportunity thus presented to strengthen her position in southern Manchuria and eastern Mongolia. Both of these territories nominally belong to China. Korea, shortly before the war, had been annexed to the Japanese Empire under the name of Chosen.[2] Japan is now a continental power, with extensive and valuable holdings on the mainland of Asia. Her insular possessions have also been increased as the result of her mandate over the former German colonies north of the equator.

The United States as an imperialist power

The United States gained no new territory as a result of the war. Nevertheless, the war marked her coming of age as a world power. The Peace Conference incorporated in the Covenant of the League of Nations a statement that nothing in the Covenant should be deemed to affect the validity of "regional understandings like the Monroe Doctrine," thus giving formal international recognition of the doctrine. At the Washington Conference the United States likewise secured recognition of her special interests in the Pacific and the Far East, because of her possession of the Hawaiian Islands and the Philippines. It was during the war period that the United States purchased the Danish West Indies and set up protectorates over Nicaragua,

[1] See page 540.

[2] See page 562 and note 1.


THE PARTITION OF THE CARIBBEAN
GULF OF MEXICO
ATLANTIC OCEAN
CARIBBEAN SEA
Pacific Ocean
FLORIDA
Miami
DRY TORTUGAS
Key West
Florida Strait
Nassau
BAHAMAS
WATLING I.
Bahía Honda (U.S. Naval Sta.)
Habana
Mantzanas
Cárdenas
CUBA
GREATER ANTILLES
Channel of Yucatan
Progreso
Mérida
Cienfuegos
I. OF PINES
Gulf of Campeche
Campeche
Manzanillo
Santiago de Cuba
Guantánamo (U.S. Naval Sta.)
Windward Passage
TORTUGA
Cap Haitien
HAITI
Port au Prince
SANTO DOMINGO
Mona Passage
PORTO RICO
San Juan
Ponce
Santo Domingo
JAMAICA
Kingston
MEXICO
BRIT. HONDURAS
Belize
GUATEMALA
G. of Honduras
Guatemala
HONDURAS
Tegucigalpa
SALVADOR
San Salvador
NICARAGUA
L. Managua
Managua
L. Nicaragua
Gulf of Fonseca (U.S. Naval Sta.)
CORN IS. (U.S. Naval Sta.)
Bluefields
Greytown
Limón
COSTA RICA
San José
Colón
PANAMA
Panama
G. of Panamá
G. of Darién
COLOMBIA
Barranquilla
Cartagena
Magdalena R.
Maracaibo
G. of Venezuela
Puerto Cabello
Caracas
VENEZUELA
Orinoco R.
CURAÇAO (Du.)
LESSER ANTILLES
WINDWARD IS.
LEEWARD IS.
ST. THOMAS
VIRGIN IS. (U.S.)
ST. CROIX
ST. KITTS
BARBUDA (Br.)
ANTIGUA (Br.)
GUADELOUPE (Fr.)
DOMINICA (Br.)
MARTINIQUE (Fr.)
ST. LUCIA (Br.)
BARBADOS (Br.)
ST. VINCENT (Br.)
GRENADA (Br.)
TOBAGO (Br.)
TRINIDAD
United States Territory
Protectorates of United States
British Territory
95
90
85
80
75
70
65
60
25
20
15
10

Haiti, and Santo Domingo. These developments, in connection with the earlier acquisition of the Panama Canal Zone and Porto Rico and the practical protectorate over Cuba, show clearly that the United States has become dominant in the Caribbean.

Imperialism and war

The imperialistic policies of European nations have in recent times caused many wars. Leading instances are the South African War (1899–1902), the Russo-Japanese War (1904–1905), and the Turko-Italian War (1911–1912).[1] These policies, if persisted in, may cause other wars. We delude ourselves if we suppose that all elements of anxiety have been eliminated from the international situation. There are still danger spots outside of Europe — in North Africa, where Spain, France, and Italy are rivals, in Egypt and the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan, in Central Asia, and in China. Meanwhile, the southward expansion of the United States continues to excite apprehension in Latin America. The United States is sometimes represented by Latin Americans as a giant nation destined to absorb during the next century whatever of Mexico, Central America, and the West Indies she has not taken within the last one hundred years. These and other problems presented by modern imperialism are not insoluble. They can be solved if only there is international comity and good will to do so, if, in the words of the late President Harding, the "torches of understanding" can be made "to glow and encircle the globe."

National self-determination in the Orient

The war and the peace treaties enabled the European map to be redrawn on the basis of national self-determination. Old states were reduced or enlarged, new states were formed, and oppressed or subject peoples received their freedom according to this principle. It could not be recognized in Europe without evoking demands for its recognition outside of Europe. The imperialist powers are now confronted with a nationalist movement in one dependency after another, among black and yellow races, as well as the white race, and among Moslems, Brahmanists, and Buddhists, as well as Christians. Great Britain, so far, has done most to comply with the demands of the nationalists. She ter-

[1] See pages 540, 542, and 562.

minated her protectorate over Egypt in 1922 and proclaimed that country a sovereign state. Iraq, which she supervises under a mandate, has been made a kingdom under an Arab ruler and with a liberal constitution. The Government of India Act, passed by the British Parliament in 1919, accords India representative institutions. It does not completely satisfy the extreme nationalists, led by Mahatma Gandhi and other agitators, who dream of complete Indian independence. The nationalist movement is also penetrating into French Indo-China, into Korea, and into the Philippines.

Radical socialism, or Bolshevism, has not only triumphed in Russia since the war, but has also spread widely in the Orient. The Soviet government started out by promising the former Asiatic subjects of Russia complete freedom to set up states of their own. This liberal policy did not last long. It was soon modified by the requirement that the new states accept Bolshevism and affiliate closely with the government at Moscow. The result is seen to-day in the existence throughout the Caucasus, Siberia, and Central Asia of a large number of sovietized provinces and so-called "republics." These are as much under Russian domination as they were in the days of the tsars. The Bolshevist propaganda of communism and atheism, which seeks to undermine the foundations of European civilization, also commends itself to the anti-European elements in such countries as Persia, Afghanistan, India, China, and the East Indies. Like the nationalist movement, with which it is often associated, Bolshevism promises to complicate the future relations of Occident and Orient.

Bolshevism in the Orient

As far as European expansion has been truly an ethnic conquest, it must be permanent. The intrusive whites in South Africa, Australia, New Zealand, and the two Americas have either exterminated the aboriginal inhabitants or else have imposed on them their languages, laws, customs, and religion, together with (in Latin America) a considerable strain of their blood. European expansion in the tropical parts of Africa, Asia, and Oceania means merely political

Future of imperialism

conquest, which has no necessary permanence. In the long run — how long a run no one can say — dependent countries not peopled by savage or barbarous tribes seem likely to secure home rule and, ultimately, complete freedom. The World War, which so effectively disposed of the colonial ambitions of both Germany and Russia, the establishment of the League of Nations, with its system of mandates for the government of the former German possessions and Turkish provinces, and the agreements between the great powers at the Washington Conference may result in a wiser and more considerate attitude on the part of imperialist states toward their dependencies.

The relations between Europeans and non-Europeans seem likely to be influenced more and more by the factor of religion.

The factor of religion

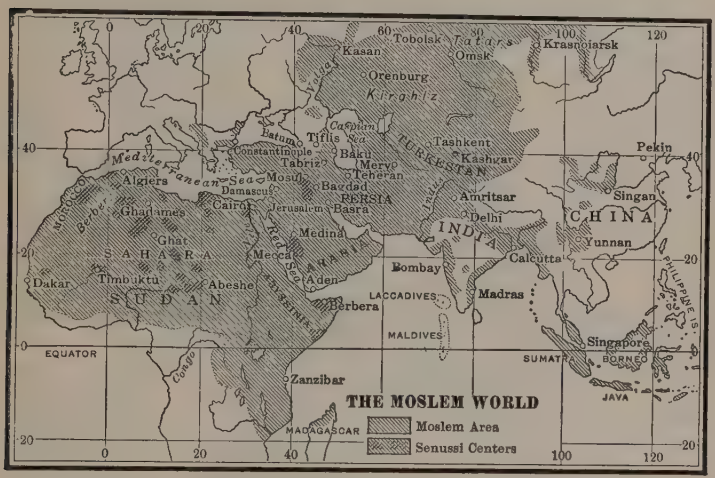
We sometimes forget that Christianity has as yet made little impression on the civilized world outside of Europe and America. We do not always realize how numerous are the Moslems of Africa, Asia, and Oceania, the Brahmanists (or Hinduists) in India, and the Buddhists in China, Japan, and other Oriental countries.[1]

Religion, through its use by ambitious rulers or peoples, may assume political importance. Islam has always been feared in this respect, because Moslems are required to convert unbelievers by force, as well as by peaceful persuasion. It is a fanatical, aggressive religion, which gains every year millions of new followers, not only among the crowded populations of Asia, but also among the negroes of Central Africa. Both yellow men and black men respond to its teachings. Its power is persistent, for no people, once converted to Islam, has ever accepted another faith. The World War produced an immense stirring among Moslems. Spain had trouble in Morocco, France in Syria, and Great Britain in Egypt and India, while all the European powers have been faced by a revived and truculent Turkey. There has even been a movement to unite all the Moslem world, at present divided into many hostile sects, through a program of political solidarity called Pan-Islamism. The movement has not gone far enough

Pan-Islamism

[1] See page 669.

to make it likely that Christendom will have to meet some day another combined attack by the followers of the Prophet, such as Arabs and Turks launched in earlier centuries. Pan-Islamism is not a menace to the peace of the world, but the imperialist states will find it increasingly necessary to adjust their colonial policy to the wishes, and perhaps also the prejudices, of their Moslem subjects.



The relations between Europeans and non-Europeans are further affected by the factor of color. Classified by races, the world's population may be roughly estimated as 800,000,000 for the Caucasian or White race; 600,000,000 for the Mongolian or Yellow race; and 200,000,000 for the Negro or Black race. While these figures are only approximate, they do show that the yellows and the blacks together equal and possibly outnumber the whites.

The factor of color

The World War, in which both yellow men and black men participated, has heightened their racial consciousness. It has made them less ready than before to acquiesce in the white man's claim to superiority on the ground of color. Religious hatreds and Bolshevist propaganda have contributed to the same result, all along the great borderland of

Racial consciousness

the Occident and Orient from northern Africa to the interior of Asia and still farther east in China and Japan.

Meanwhile, the assumed menace of the "Yellow Peril," as it is called, has led to various restrictions upon the entrance of Orientals into English-speaking countries. This attitude is defended on the general ground that yellow men do not readily assimilate with whites, and on the

Exclusion acts

EXPANSION OF BUDDHISM

special ground that their lower standard of living enables them to displace whites in the labor market and thus reduces wages or creates unemployment. The United States excluded Chinese as early as 1882 and Japanese as recently as 1924. Legislation to limit or entirely prohibit Oriental immigration has also been adopted by Canada, the Union of South Africa, Australia, and New Zealand. In Latin America, where Chinese and Japanese

are not numerous, the danger from the "Yellow Peril" has seemed too remote to produce a general exclusion movement. It may be noted that Japan herself excludes Chinese laborers, alleging that Chinese can live on less than Japanese and consequently can work for lower wages.

Peaceful intercourse between the Orient and that Occident to which America belongs as much as Europe, depends more than ever before on racial concord. If the League of Nations or some similar organization is to be successful, white men, yellow men, and black men must coöperate in the task of making a better world. Not the popular refrain "East is East and West is West," but the Golden Rule and the saying attributed to the Chinese Confucius, "All men between the four seas are brothers," express the true spirit of modern internationalism.

Racial concord

Studies

1. Explain: Pan-American Union, Holy Alliance, Concert of Europe, Hague Tribunal, Covenant of the League of Nations, "World Court," and Geneva Protocol. 2. Mention four leading causes of European wars during the last century. What other causes might be mentioned? 3. Trace the attitude of official Christianity toward war from the first Christian centuries to the present time. 4. What did Lord Bryce mean by saying, "If we do not destroy war, war will destroy us"? 5. What were some of the historical antecedents of the League of Nations? 6. Explain the present organization and functions of the league. 7. Why did not the United States join the league? What other important countries are non-members? 8. How does the Covenant of the league attempt to prevent war between league members? 9. What do you understand by international law? How does it differ from ordinary law? 10. Compare the abolition of private warfare toward the close of the Middle Ages with recent movements to abolish public warfare. 11. How far did the Washington Conference limit armaments? 12. Name the five great imperialist powers of to-day. 13. Discuss briefly some of the problems of contemporary imperialism. 14. How have Oriental countries been affected by nationalist movements and Bolshevist agitation? 15. Comment on the significance in contemporary international politics of the factor of religion and the color factor.

SUPPLEMENTARY CHAPTER

I. INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

THE treaty of peace with Germany was signed at Versailles in June, 1919, and was brought into operation by the exchange of ratifications between the signatory powers in January, 1920. More than ten years have thus passed since the formal conclusion of the World War. Considering the length, magnitude, and cost in blood and treasure of the war, the achievements in reconstruction during the first decade of peace must be considered little less than phenomenal. Much has been done, both economically and politically, to rebuild shattered Europe.

Aftermath of the World War

The economic reconstruction of Europe has been closely bound up with the problem of reparations. The Versailles treaty placed on Germany the moral responsibility for all damage done to the population of the Allied countries, but did not assess the amount that was due or the method and time of paying it. The Reparations Commission in 1921 announced their assessment at 132,000,000,000 gold marks (about $33,000,000,000). This sum was soon seen to be far in excess of Germany's capacity to pay even over a long series of years. Meanwhile, the threatened collapse of German finance led to the appointment of a committee of economic experts, who in 1924 formulated the so-called "Dawes Plan" for balancing the budget and stabilizing the currency of Germany. It was accepted by the governments concerned and was immediately put into successful operation under the direction of an American Agent-General, Mr. S. Parker Gilbert.

Reparations

The "Dawes Plan" did not determine the total amount of reparations. For this purpose a new committee of experts was set up in 1929. Mr. Owen D. Young, one of the two unofficial representatives from the United States, served as chairman. The "Young Plan," as formally

The "Young Plan"

accepted by the various governments, calls for annual payments (annuities) by Germany over a period of fifty-nine years, these payments representing the interest on a capital sum of approximately $9,000,000,000. This amount is between a third and a fourth of what was originally demanded by the Allied powers. The long controversy over reparations has thus reached a definite conclusion. Germany knows now what her indebtedness is and how and when it must be repaid.

The "World Bank"

The acceptance of the "Young Plan" has involved the supersession of the Reparations Commission by a new agency to handle all future financial transactions between Germany and the Allied powers. The new agency is the Bank for International Settlements — more shortly, the "World Bank" — which was established in 1930, with headquarters at Basel (Basle), Switzerland. The authorized capital of the bank is fixed at about $100,000,000, represented by shares of equal value. Fifty-six per cent of the shares is alloted in equal amounts to Great Britain, France, Germany, Italy, Belgium, Japan, and the United States. These seven countries consequently retain a controlling interest in the bank, even though the remaining shares (forty-four per cent) may be assigned to other participating countries. The bank will receive from Germany the sums to be paid over as reparations and distribute these sums to her creditors in the proportions fixed by the "Young Plan." How much more it may do in the field of international finance no one can now foresee. By promoting economic coöperation between the members it may become a truly "World Bank" and develop into a financial counterpart of the League of Nations.

War debts

Settlement of the reparations problem should facilitate adjustment of the war debts of the various European countries. France, who is the biggest reparations creditor of Germany, will get enough from that country to discharge her indebtedness to both Great Britain and the United States, while Great Britain, with the sums received from various Continental countries, will be enabled to repay her indebtedness to the United States. All the European governments, except

that of Russia, have now completed arrangements for the settlement of their war obligations to this country. The capital sums owed by them reach a total of $11,500,000,000, but when interest payments for the next sixty-odd years are computed the total will be almost twice as much. The British and French debts comprise by far the principal items in our foreign indebtedness. The sums received by the United States from abroad are applied to the public debt, which has now been reduced from its maximum in 1919 of $26,596,000,000 to $16,300,000,000 (on January 1, 1930). Against this amount should be set the $11,500,000,000 owed to the United States, or over seventy per cent of the total indebtedness.

War costs

Figures for national debts afford only a partial idea of the cost of militarism. The financial burden which it entails is best appreciated in the light of the annual expenditures of the great powers. In submitting the Federal budget for 1930–'31 President Hoover took occasion to point out that almost three-fourths of the estimated expenditures of the government, or seventy-two cents out of every dollar, will be devoted to payments of principal and interest on the national debt, the maintenance of the army and navy, pensions, and veterans' compensation and hospitalization. The annual budgets of Great Britain and France would reveal much the same situation. It may be said that all the great nations of the world (save disarmed Germany) spend the larger part of their income in paying for past wars and in preparing for future wars. Relief for the taxpayer can come only with the reduction of armaments, either by each nation on its own initiative or by concerted international action.

Disarmament

The problem of general disarmament, or at least of greatly reducing the land, air, and naval forces of the principal countries, bristles with difficulties. Before 1914 little had been done in this direction and that little only by countries geographically remote from the rest of the world. Some South American republics entered into treaties providing for reduction of armaments, and the United States and Great Britain, as far back as 1818, agreed to dismantle forts and reduce naval

armaments on the waterways separating American from Canadian territory. Again, in 1905, when Norway and Sweden separated and became independent kingdoms, the frontier between them was neutralized. But no success whatever attended efforts by the leading nations to reach an agreement for general disarmament, as for example, at the two Hague Conferences of 1899 and 1907. The first effective application of the principle of disarmament was to the countries defeated in the World War. Under the peace treaties Germany, Austria, Hungary, and Bulgaria were obliged to accept an immense reduction of the armed forces which they had respectively maintained. It was a one-sided arrangement, of course, but the Treaty of Versailles held out the prospect of a future limitation of the military forces of all countries. Article 8 of the Covenant of the League of Nations, asserting that "the maintenance of peace requires the reduction of national armaments to the lowest point consistent with national safety and the enforcement by common action of international obligations," pledges the league to formulate plans for such reduction. The Geneva Protocol of 1924, which declared war "an international crime," would have made general disarmament possible, but the Protocol failed to secure sufficient acceptance by the leading governments to bring it into effect. Failure likewise attended efforts to summon an International Conference for the Reduction of Armaments, which had been scheduled to meet at Geneva in 1925. However, the League of Nations has a Preparatory Commission at work studying the whole subject in order to pave the way for a conference in the near future. Infinite patience and years of ceaseless toil by statesmen and publicists will be required before the nations agree to live henceforth on a peace footing and not on a war footing. The nations must feel themselves safe against attack by their neighbors before they will abolish or cut down materially the military forces on which they have always relied for protection. The problem of general disarmament is thus bound up with that of security.

An encouraging step in the direction of security was taken in 1925, when representatives of Great Britain, France, Germany,

Italy, and other countries, assembled in conference at the Swiss town of Locarno, entered into a series of agreements, or pacts, intended to lessen the danger of future warfare in Europe. The pacts include a number of separate treaties: a Rhineland treaty of mutual guarantee between France and Germany and between Belgium and Germany, which is further guaranteed by Great Britain and Italy; and four arbitration treaties between Germany and France, Germany and Belgium, Germany and Poland, and Germany and Czechoslovakia. The Rhineland treaty provides that the German-Belgian and German-French frontiers as fixed at Versailles in 1919 shall be inviolable; that Germany, Belgium, and France shall never attack, invade, or wage war against one another except in "legitimate defense" or as a result of their obligations to the League of Nations; and that they shall settle their disputes by pacific means. To reinforce this treaty Great Britain and Italy promise to use their influence and, if necessary, their military force, against any one of the three nations violating it. These two signatory powers are not to take such action until an alleged violation of the treaty has been referred to the Council of the League of Nations for a decision whether, in fact, it has been violated. The several arbitration pacts are intended to solve present and future disputes, particularly relating to the boundaries between Germany and her neighbors in both western and eastern Europe. The Locarno pacts, if maintained, should remove the Rhineland area (Alsace-Lorraine) out of the realm of international controversy and protect Belgium from aggression on the part of her powerful neighbors. Furthermore, by setting up the machinery of arbitration and conciliation they should establish the strongest safeguards against the recurrence of hostilities that Europe has ever known.

The Locarno pacts

On June 20, 1927, Aristide Briand, the French Minister for Foreign Affairs, proposed to Frank B. Kellogg, the American Secretary of State, the conclusion of a pact between France and the United States renouncing war as "an instrument of policy." To this proposal Secretary Kellogg replied that such an agreement ought not to be

The Pact of Paris

confined to two countries, but should be multilateral in character and open to the civilized world. Subsequent diplomatic correspondence on the subject of a multilateral treaty resulted in the formulation by the government of the United States of a General Pact for the Renunciation of War. It was signed at Paris, August 27, 1928, by duly accredited plenipotentiaries in behalf of fifteen of the leading nations (Australia, Belgium, Canada, Czechoslovakia, France, Germany, Great Britain, India, the Irish Free State, Italy, Japan, New Zealand, Poland, South Africa, and the United States). It is a brief document, containing only three Articles of which the first and the second are here quoted:

1. The High Contracting Parties solemnly declare in the names of their respective peoples, that they condemn recourse to war for the solution of international controversies, and renounce it as an instrument of national policy in their relations with one another.

2. The High Contracting Parties agree that the settlement or solution of all disputes or conflicts of whatever nature or of whatever origin they may be, which may arise among them, shall never be sought except by pacific means.

The third and concluding Article of this document provided for ratification by the fifteen signatory powers. All such ratifications having been duly made, the pact was proclaimed in operation by President Hoover on July 24, 1929. It was further provided that the pact should remain open as long as might be necessary for acceptance by all the other powers of the world. Forty-one of these powers have now adhered, while others have taken steps toward their adherence or have signified their intention to do so in the near future. Only Argentina and Brazil, of the nations invited to adhere to the pact, have failed to take affirmative action in regard to it. With these two exceptions, all civilized peoples have been brought or are being brought within the scope of the pact, a degree of universality without a parallel in the history of the peace movement.

Adherences to the Pact of Paris

The Pact of Paris contains no "sanctions" or guarantees such

as were provided at Locarno. There is no force, save moral force, behind it. Moreover, it does not entirely eliminate resort to war, for military action under the Covenant of the League of Nations or under the Locarno pacts is not prohibited. Furthermore, the right to conduct a war of self-defense is not taken away, and since "self-defense" is an extremely flexible term, a loophole is left for evasion of the obligations imposed by the pact. A nation anxious to fight can always declare that it is acting in self-defense, as Germany did in 1914 when it declared war on Russia. There are those, therefore, who consider the pact to be but an empty mockery and as futile a measure as was the Holy Alliance made by the European autocrats. The future alone can show whether such gloomy predictions are justified. It would seem, rather, that the Pact of Paris should be regarded as an extraordinary manifestation of the desire for peace on the part of civilized men and as an expression of their growing repugnance toward armed conflict in any form. The question of the outlawry or abolition of war is indeed at bottom a moral question. Conferences of statesmen and diplomats, pacts, treaties, and other engagements will not of themselves secure permanent peace. That depends on a public sentiment which condemns war as a crime against humanity. We must "seek peace and pursue it," as the Psalmist said. When the world's peoples agree to follow in their dealings with one another the rules of morality which they obey among themselves, international relations must become more and more like those between citizens of the same nation, with law, order, justice, and peace prevailing among men of good will.

Significance of the Pact of Paris

The signing of the Pact of Paris has led to renewed efforts for limitation and reduction of armaments, so as to prevent the military competition which in the past has so often bred wars. It will be recalled that the Washington Conference of 1921–'22 brought about an agreement by the five principal naval powers, Great Britain, France, Italy, Japan, and the United States, to limit the construction of capital ships (battleships and heavy cruisers) over a period of ten years.

The London Conference

The Washington Conference failed to secure any limitation of naval armament as respects light cruisers, submarines, or aircraft, all of which seem likely to play an important part in future naval warfare. In order to prevent rivalry in these arms a second conference was convened by President Coolidge at Geneva in 1927, but the representatives of Great Britain, the United States, and Japan, who attended the meeting, were unable to reach any satisfactory agreement. Since then competition for the mastery of the seas has continued, and Great Britain and the United States, though possessing naval strength far in excess of any other nation, have found themselves building against each other. During the fiscal year ending June 30, 1929, the United States spent upon her navy $375,000,000, while Great Britain, in her last fiscal year, spent $275,000,000. Inspired in part by this rivalry between the two great English-speaking peoples, France, Italy, and Japan have been adding to their building programs and consequently to their armament burdens. To deal with the new situation which has thus arisen, another international conference began its sessions in London in January, 1930. Invitations to it were extended by the British government, in collaboration with that of the United States, and these were accepted by the governments of France, Italy, and Japan. The conference has assembled in an atmosphere of good will created by the visit to the United States in October, 1929, of the British Premier, J. Ramsay MacDonald, and by his meeting with President Hoover at Washington. The two executives issued a joint statement in which they declared that many obstacles in the way of naval reduction on the part of their respective countries seem to have been removed and that they felt justified, accordingly, in asking the other three powers to meet with them and try to reach with them a common agreement on naval armaments. "We hope and believe," they concluded, "that the steps we have taken will be warmly welcomed by the people whom we represent as a substantial contribution to the efforts universally made by all nations to gain security for peace — not by military organization but by peaceful means rooted in

public opinion and enforced by a sense of justice in the civilized world."

The League of Nations celebrated its tenth birthday in January, 1930. The members now number fifty-four. The non-members, in addition to Russia, Turkey, Mexico, and the United States, include Egypt, Afghanistan, Hejaz, Brazil, Costa Rica, and Ecuador. Brazil recently withdrew from the league, and Argentina, though still a member, does not participate in its deliberations. These defections are offset by the admission of Germany (after Locarno), with a permanent seat on the Council. Hitherto that body had included no belligerents in the World War except those on the Allied side. The number of non-permanent members of the Council has also been increased from six to nine, thus making it more representative of the smaller states in the league.

League of Nations

Though still far from universal in character, the league becomes with every year more deeply rooted in the life of the world. Some of its accomplishments in averting minor wars, in contributing to the economic recovery of various countries, and in social betterment have been already referred to. Such useful work would itself amply justify the league's existence. Less obvious but perhaps even more important is the gradual development of the league into an institution through which, and not outside which, the governments deal with one another, keep in touch with one another, and coöperate with one another. All this should be compared with the situation before the World War, when no regular agency for contact between them existed. Thus the league is doing much to replace the traditional attitude of suspicion and hostility in international intercourse with a new attitude of understanding and friendliness.

Work of the League of Nations

The Permanent Court of International Justice becomes every year more truly a "World Court." Fifty-three nations have now signed the statute for the establishment of the court and have agreed to accept its jurisdiction. The nations not at present members are Afghanistan,

The "World Court"

Egypt, Russia, Turkey, Argentina, Nicaragua, Peru, Ecuador, Mexico, and the United States.

The United States and the "World Court"

The United States, by sponsoring the Pact of Paris and thus condemning, with the other signatories, "recourse to war for the solution of international controversies," would seem morally bound to adhere to the "World Court." American membership had been delayed, principally because of the fear that this country would thereby become involved in legal relations with the League of Nations, which set the court in operation and keeps it going. The Senate in 1926 finally consented to American adherence, but with reservations intended to preserve our traditional policy of isolation and also to permit our withdrawal from the court at any time. There was also a reservation declaring that the court would entertain no request for an advisory opinion touching any dispute or question in which the United States has or claims an interest. This last reservation proved to be especially difficult for the other nations to accept, since it seemed to put the United States in a privileged position before the court. However, through the efforts of various jurists, among them Mr. Elihu Root, a former Secretary of State, the so-called "Root Protocol," or formula, was drawn up for American adherence. It practically accepts the Senate's reservations, but provides that if a request is made by the League of Nations for an advisory opinion of the court and the United States claims an interest in the matter and will not, after free and frank discussion, abandon its position, then this country may withdraw from the court without any imputation of unfriendliness or unwillingness to coöperate in the promotion of international peace and good will. Believing that this compromise removes the American objections to membership, President Hoover in December, 1929, authorized a representative at Geneva to sign the statutes of the court. Ratification of his action must still be secured from the Senate and from the nations already belonging to the court before the United States becomes a member of this great international organization.

The eleven judges and four deputy judges comprising the

"World Court" hold regular annual sessions in the beautiful Peace Palace provided by Andrew Carnegie at The Hague. They have already heard, considered, and passed judgment on a number of contested international cases, besides giving many advisory opinions in matters of international concern. The judgments and opinions rendered were accepted as final by the contestants, thus settling in a reasonable and legal way many disputes which otherwise might have been left to force and the arbitrament of the sword. The statute creating the "World Court" does not require the member nations to accept in advance its jurisdiction, but thirty-three, including Germany, France, and Great Britain, have signed the so-called "optional clause," whereby they agree to do so in disputes about the interpretation of a treaty or any question of international law. In other words, the nations that have signed this clause are now bound to refer many controversies to the court for decision: they may not deal with these henceforth by private negotiations or in any other manner. The compulsory jurisdiction thus granted to the court may be compared with that enjoyed by the Supreme Court of the United States under the Constitution (Article III, Section 2).

Work of the "World Court"

The World War and the peace treaties following it have left twenty-nine sovereign states in Europe.[1] All have customs tariffs that convert every frontier into a trade barrier, and nearly all have different money systems, postage stamps, passport regulations, and immigration restrictions. When to these international aggravations are added those arising from the differences between the states in government, language, religion, law, and general culture, it will be realized how many and serious are the obstacles to business and social intercourse. Europe has always been disunited; since 1914 she has been more disunited than ever. It is the price she pays for exaggerated nationalism.

The Disunited States of Europe

[1] In addition to the five principalities of Andorra, Liechtenstein, Monaco, San Marino, and Vatican City, the grand-duchy of Luxembourg, and the free city of Danzig. Iceland and the Irish Free State are included in the above list of sovereign states.

Nevertheless, there is progress in the direction of European union. A network of banking organizations is extending across national boundaries. Many large industrial enterprises are spreading from one country to another. Efforts are made to secure international arrangements in the use of railways, canals, and river transportation. International congresses of specialists in science, education, and public health constantly take place. There are important international labor movements and similar movements among university students. Most of all, there is the League of Nations, with its numberless international gatherings and agencies for international coöperation. Back of such organizations lies a growing consciousness of the economic waste and social friction involved in the present disunion. It is not surprising, therefore, that statesmen begin to look forward to some form of European federation and that proposals for the creation of a United States of Europe should have been made seriously at Geneva in 1929.

The United States of Europe

The close association of European countries, preventing the outbreak of war between them and leading to their more cordial and intimate relations, is a matter for future development. There are, however, actually in existence two international associations which have found in federation the means of combining states and peoples under a central government, while at the same time keeping all that is desired or desirable in the way of local independence. One is the British Commonwealth of Nations, a more appropriate term than the old name "British Empire," when applied to the federation of Great Britain and her six self-governing colonies, or Dominions (Canada, Newfoundland, Australia, New Zealand, South Africa, and the Irish Free State). How real and how strong that federation is we have already seen.

The British Commonwealth of Nations

The other great international association is the United States of America. The framers of the Constitution did not make the authority of the Federal Government dependent upon the good will of the states, as the authority of the League of Nations depends upon the good will of the nations in the league. Con-

gress enacts laws binding on citizens throughout the Union. The President executes these laws through federal officials and courts in every state. The Supreme Court (which might be called the earliest Permanent Court of International Justice) settles disputes between states or between them and the Federal Government, and when Congress passes any law in excess of the powers granted to it by the Constitution, declares that law null and void. The Constitution thus established much more than a league of states; it established a real federation.

The United States of America

There were in 1789 only thirteen states occupying the Atlantic seaboard westward to the Alleghenies. There are now forty-eight states, and they reach to the Pacific. In 1789 and for many years thereafter they were acutely jealous of one another and of the Federal Government. The attempt to preserve "state's rights" led to the secession of the slave-holding states and the Civil War of 1861–'65. The triumph of the North in that war gave a new value and meaning to the principle of federalism. It meant that there were not to be in central North America two independent countries with customs barriers between them, competition in armaments, rivalries, antipathies, and possible wars, such as have long vexed Europe. The United States was to continue to be one country — an "international nation."

The United States an "international nation"

The British Commonwealth of Nations may be likened to a family, with all the close ties that exist between members of a family but without fixed rules controlling it. Up to the present the ties of affection and common interest have been strong enough to keep the Dominions faithful to the mother country, but there is nothing to prevent them from withdrawing and setting up as independent states. They would probably do so, were Great Britain to oppose them on some serious matter of policy. The United States, on the other hand, affords an example of a federation with a definite constitution and body of laws regulating the relations of the Federal Government to the several states. The Union so formed is perpetual, and no state may

British and American federalism compared

secede from it. These two great federations of English-speaking peoples have thus developed along very different lines.

II. CONTEMPORARY POLITICS

European governments

The twenty-nine sovereign states of contemporary Europe, as respects their governmental systems, are either republics or monarchies. Fifteen are republics. The Irish Free State, Germany, Austria, Czechoslovakia, Poland, Lithuania, Latvia, Esthonia, Finland, Greece, Soviet Russia, and Turkey (as far as it is a European power) have been added to the republican column, which before the World War included only France, Switzerland, and Portugal. Fourteen are monarchies, the new ones being Iceland, Hungary, Jugoslavia, and Albania. They are constitutional monarchies, however, similar to those found in other parts of Europe.

Dictatorships

Both the republics and monarchies of Europe recognize in theory the principle of popular sovereignty, but in fact democratic institutions have been repeatedly overthrown during recent years by dictatorships. Seven European countries are now governed by dictators. There is the Soviet dictatorship in Russia, that of Mussolini and his Fascisti in Italy, that of Primo de Rivera in Spain, that of Marshal Pilsudski in Poland, that of Admiral Horthy in Hungary, that of King Alexander in Jugoslavia, and that of King Zogu in Albania. To this list might be added the dictatorship of Mustapha Kemal in Turkey, for Turkey still has a small territorial interest in Europe. Dictatorship means governing without responsibility to a parliament, continuance in office without recall by a parliament, and suppression of free speech and a free press. Such elements of dictatorship occur in all the instances mentioned, though the degree of personal rule varies from country to country. In general, a dictatorship represents a break-down of the parliamentary system in countries where the system has not become deeply rooted and does not form an essential part of the political tradition, as, for example, in Great Britain. By its very nature a dictatorship represents only a temporary solution

of the problem of government; sooner or later it must pass away.

The Fascist dictatorship in Italy, headed by Mussolini, is now in its eighth year. Constitutional forms have been preserved. Victor Emmanuel III still sits on his throne. The Italian legislature continues to meet and outwardly performs legislative duties. But neither king nor parliament enjoys real authority. All candidates for parliamentary office must first be passed upon by the Grand Council of the Fascist Party, which, in turn, is appointed by Mussolini himself. The list of acceptable candidates is then submitted to the electorate for approval. Balloting is not secret, and those who vote against men approved by Mussolini soon feel the weight of his displeasure. Parliament thus consists of Mussolini's followers. Its powers, furthermore, have been strictly limited. Only the prime minister (Mussolini) may initiate measures; he may issue regulations which have the force of laws; and he and the other cabinet ministers are freed from all responsibility to parliament. It should be added that Mussolini controls all state employees, whom he may remove for not supporting him with sufficient ardor or for other reasons, and that he appoints and holds responsible to himself the principal officials of the towns and cities. Without going into further details, it may be said that personal freedom and democratic institutions have disappeared under the Fascisti. Mussolini himself admits this, declaring that liberty and democracy are outworn doctrines. It is a far cry from the Italy of Mazzini, Garibaldi, and Cavour to the Italy of Mussolini.

Mussolini

Nevertheless, Mussolini and his Black-Shirt militia can point to much material progress during the seven years of the Fascist régime. The condition of workingmen has been improved, and strikes and lockouts have been virtually eliminated. The national resources of Italy in minerals and water power have been developed. Much progress has been made in the reclamation of marsh and waste land and of malarial regions such as the Roman Campagna. Peasant proprietorship has been encouraged by the breaking up of large estates. The

The Fascist régime

railways have been reorganized and made more efficient. The currency has been stabilized. New foreign markets for manufactures have been opened up. Emigration to relieve the superabundant population has been stimulated, partly to the Italian colonies in North Africa and partly to Latin-American countries. In short, Fascist Italy is now in process of rapid industrialization and modernization — a belated effort to catch up, economically, with the other great powers. Italian foreign policy is also marked by a new aggressiveness. The Fascisti are determined that henceforth Italy shall play a more prominent rôle throughout the Mediterranean, thus reviving, in some measure, the ancient domination of Rome. Naturally, this attitude has aroused the fears of all of Italy's neighbors. The combination of a military dictatorship with imperialism is a dangerous one, which has often involved the Continent in strife. Whether it will do so under Mussolini time alone can tell.

Church and State in Italy

One noteworthy feature of Mussolini's dictatorship was the signing in 1929 of a treaty of conciliation (Concordat) between the Italian kingdom and the Papacy. The first Article of the treaty abrogates the Law of Papal Guarantees, which had never been recognized as legal by any of the popes. Other Articles acknowledge the sovereignty of the pope over the "Vatican City," including St. Peter's, and various churches, palaces, and institutions within the limits of Rome. He is no longer the "prisoner of the Vatican," but a temporal sovereign free to go at will throughout Italy and enjoying, wherever he goes, immunity from the laws of Italy. The pope (Pius XI), on his side, acknowledges the Italian kingdom, with the city of Rome as its capital and the house of Savoy as the reigning dynasty. This Concordat would seem to mark the end of a politico-religious question which has complicated and vexed Italian politics for more than half a century.

The Reich

The republic of Germany (Deutsches Reich) has had many problems to solve, both at home and abroad, during the past decade. One of these was the inflation of the currency after the war. Paper money, issued by the government in enormous quantities, rapidly depreciated in value,

until a dollar in gold came to be worth two and one-half billion paper marks. This worthless currency was at length withdrawn from circulation, being replaced by an issue of "gold marks" at par. The return to normal currency stimulated German trade and industry. Fixation of the amount of reparations due to the Allied powers disposed of a second troublesome problem. Still another problem is in process of solution, with the ending of the occupation of the Rhineland by foreign troops. The British and Belgian soldiers have already gone; the last French soldiers are expected to go in 1930. Under an able foreign minister, Stresemann (died, 1929), Germany has steadily pursued a policy of conciliation with her former foes, the results of which are seen in her entrance into the League of Nations and the "World Court" and in her signatures to the Locarno pacts and the Pact of Paris. She has also resumed relations with Russia, recognizing the Soviet government and concluding with that government a treaty for the friendly settlement of all future disputes. Germany is thus regaining the position in the European world to which her size and importance entitle her. Since Ebert's death in 1925 the presidency of the republic has been held by Field-Marshal von Hindenburg.

Soviet Russia

The Bolshevists remain masters of Russia, but under new leadership. Lenin's death in 1924 and the downfall and exile of Trotsky three years later have left Joseph Stalin, the general-secretary of the Communist party, as the most powerful figure in the government. Bolshevism, or Communism, with all that it implies in the way of revolutionary economics and politics, seems to be firmly established; at any rate, the Bolshevists are more numerous, better disciplined, and more determined than ever to impose their system throughout the length and breadth of Russia. There has been no relaxation, but rather an intensification, of their dictatorship. In foreign affairs the Soviet government follows a pacific policy, advocating general disarmament by land and sea and air, adhering to the Pact of Paris, and making treaties of friendship with Persia, Turkey, and other Asiatic countries. Great Britain, France, and other Western powers have now entered into diplomatic rela-

tions with the Soviet government, but the United States continues to withhold its recognition of the new régime in Russia.

Turkey under Mustapha Kemal

The Turkish republic continues under the presidency of Mustapha Kemal, who exercises a practical dictatorship. His task is one of Westernization, of bringing Turkey into step with the twentieth century. Some of his reforms suggest those of Peter the Great in Russia; for instance, the abolition of the fez, the national headdress for men, and the optional discontinuance of the veil for women. These sartorial innovations have been accompanied by sweeping changes in the educational system. The study of the English language is now compulsory for schools. The cumbrous Oriental characters of the Turkish language are being replaced by simpler Latin characters and Arabic numeral signs by Western numerals. Mustapha Kemal himself sets the example; he now writes only in Latin script, reads his Turkish newspapers in Western style, and with his ministers and heads of departments daily attends an A-B-C class. Another radical measure provides for the disestablishment of Islam. No longer the state religion, it becomes henceforth merely a recognized faith like Christianity and Judaism, and without the influence in the government which it formerly possessed. The laws relating to marriage, divorce, and inheritance are also secularized, and polygamy, which Islam sanctions, is now prohibited. Economically, the new republic makes progress, with the construction of highways and railroads and by the transformation of Angora from a dingy Oriental hamlet into a worthy capital city. The new Turkey is a state territorially compact, as the result of the loss of the non-Turkish provinces of the old Ottoman Empire, while the withdrawal of Greeks, Armenians, and Jews from Asia Minor (Anatolia) also makes it a state almost exclusively Turkish in population. Mustapha Kemal and the Nationalist government which he heads have thus been highly successful in realizing their policy of "Turkey for the Turks; and efficient Turks for Turkey."

The mandates from the League of Nations, under which France took over the administration of Syria and Great Britain

that of Palestine, continue to the present time. British control of Palestine is complicated by the ill-feeling between Arabs and Jews, with an outcome in civic disturbances and massacres. The Moslem Arabs, who greatly outnumber the Jews, object strenuously to the declared British policy of converting Palestine into a national Jewish home; in this attitude they are supported by the Christian population as well. Their aim is rather the complete independence of Palestine. Independence has been practically secured by the Arab kingdom of Iraq, for Great Britain has agreed to give up her mandate over the country and to recommend its admission into the League of Nations in 1932.

The Near East

Popular agitation in India for the ending of British rule increases rather than lessens with the years. The Indian Nationalist Congress, which is controlled by Gandhi, appointed in 1927 a commission to draft a constitution for the country; in 1929 the constitution was adopted by the various political parties and was laid before the British authorities. The constitution is designed to serve for India either as a Dominion of the British Empire or as an independent country. The Labor Government of Great Britain, according to recent statements in official quarters, contemplates the eventual attainment of a "Dominion status" by India. As a Dominion that country would enjoy home rule, but not the independence which extreme Nationalists demand. That Great Britain will ever voluntarily concede Indian independence seems improbable, for reasons that have been already set forth.

Nationalism in India

Almost two decades have passed since the Chinese Revolution overthrew the decrepit Manchu dynasty and set up a republican government with a constitution and a presidency on Western models. The new republic entered the family of nations with bright prospects, which, however, were soon blasted. National unity could not be secured. The Chinese are not really one people, for the inhabitants of the northern provinces differ from those of the southern provinces in physique, speech, and customs. These differences always kept the two sections more or less apart, and since the revolution they have

The Chinese Republic

been intensified. To intermittent civil wars between North and South have been added constant struggles between ambitious military governors and much brigandage and lawlessness in the interior districts. The first fruits of the revolution are therefore greater disorder than China has known for centuries. At the present time the new republic, which centers in Nanking, seems to be making some headway in solving its problems. But the strife of factions, the personal jealousies of leaders, and the desperate state of the finances deprive it of much authority. Patriotic Chinese do not lose heart, however, for they recognize that the lessons of self-government cannot be learned all at once. They still look forward to the creation of a united and democratic nation, able to rule itself and also strong enough to preserve its rights and territories against the encroachments of foreign powers.

"China for the Chinese"

It will be recalled that the nine powers represented at the Washington Conference signed a Far Eastern Treaty which meant, on their part, the adoption of a policy of "China for the Chinese." They agreed, henceforth, to respect the sovereignty and independence of China, to maintain the principle of equal opportunity there for the commerce and industry of all nations — the principle of the "open door" — and to refrain from seeking for themselves special concessions in that country. The obligations thus assumed have been loyally observed, for the most part. Foreigners in China still possess the privilege of extraterritoriality, by which they are exempted from the jurisdiction of Chinese courts and are subject only to the control of their own courts or consuls. It was first granted by the old imperial government in 1844, by treaties with the United States and France, and was afterward extended to many other Western nations. Extraterritoriality represents a very important limitation of the sovereignty of China, a denial of the right enjoyed by every independent country of governing all those within its borders. Great Britain, France, Japan, and the United States refuse to waive the privilege, however, on the ground that under existing conditions in China the lives and property of their citizens there

cannot safely be trusted to Chinese laws and courts. The new republican government declares that beginning in 1930 extraterritoriality will not be recognized and that foreigners henceforth will no longer enjoy a privileged position in the country. Whether the great powers will acquiesce in this action remains to be seen.

Institute of Pacific Relations

The Institute of Pacific Relations is an unofficial organization devoted to the study of the vital international issues affecting all the countries which border on the Pacific. Three conferences have been held (Honolulu, 1925 and 1927; Kyoto, 1929) attended by several hundred delegates from Great Britain, the United States, Canada, Australia, New Zealand, the Philippines, Japan, and China. The conference members include diplomats, publicists, educators, and business men. Not being appointed by any government, they are able to express themselves with the utmost freedom on all the problems which involve the relations between Pacific countries. Their frank and friendly discussions make clear the position of each side, suggest possible solutions of the problems raised, and, in general, promote a better understanding all around. This makes for an enlightened public opinion and that, in turn, for enlightened public policy.

Pan-Americanism

Still another instance of international coöperation is afforded by the Pan-American movement, which aims to establish and maintain more cordial relations between the United States and Latin America. Pan-Americanism rests on the fact that the northern republic and her southern neighbors, however unlike in many ways, are one in their independence of Europe and detachment from European concerns, in their governmental system, and in their political ideals. They form a distinct family of nations and ought to work together for the promotion of their common interests. Six Pan-American Conferences (the last at Havana in 1928) have now been held for this purpose. Their work is supplemented by the permanent organization of the Pan-American Union at Washington, whose declared aim is the "development of commerce, friendly intercourse, good understanding, and the preservation of peace"

among all American countries. In 1929 the United States and nineteen Latin-American nations negotiated treaties providing for the compulsory arbitration of all issues between them, except those which have a purely domestic character or involve third parties. Neither the Monroe Doctrine nor "national honor" was excluded from the scope of the engagements. They await ratification by the Senate before becoming effective. The six international conferences, the Pan-American Union, and the nineteen arbitration treaties form a very practical expression of Pan-Americanism.

The Monroe Doctrine and Latin America

The participation of so many countries of Latin America in the League of Nations witnesses to their growing unity. At the same time, the failure of the United States to join the league emphasizes the international isolation of that country, not only as respects Europe, but also as respects her American neighbors. The Covenant of the league provides for the settlement of controversies among members through the agency of its Council. Should Latin-American nations at any time accept the jurisdiction of the league in settling their disputes with European countries, rather than the jurisdiction of the United States, a situation might arise imperiling the Monroe Doctrine. Article 21 of the Covenant declares that nothing in the Covenant shall be deemed to affect the validity of "regional understandings like the Monroe Doctrine," but that Doctrine has never been exactly defined or interpreted. What seems to be needed, therefore, is its restatement in terms acceptable to Latin America, as well as to the United States. It will then express more clearly than ever the solidarity of all the American nations. It will then be another name for Pan-Americanism.

TABLE OF EVENTS AND DATES

B. C.

776 **First recorded celebration of the Olympian games.** Greek chronology begins to be precise from this date.

753 (?) **Rome founded.** Traditional date.

606 **Destruction of Nineveh.** End of the Assyrian Empire, which had long dominated the Near East.

586-539 **Captivity of the Hebrews in Babylonia.**

568 (?)-488 (?) **Gautama Buddha.**

551 (?)-478 **Confucius.**

509 (?) **Roman Republic established.** Traditional date.

490 **Marathon, 480 Salamis, and 479 Platæa and Mycale.** The four battles which preserved Greece from Persian domination and European culture from submergence in that of Asia.

451-450 **Laws of the Twelve Tables published.** The basis of all later Roman law.

390 (?) **Rome captured by the Gauls.**

338 **Battle of Chæronea.** The triumph of the Macedonian Kingdom over the disunited city-states of Greece.

333 **Issus and 331 Arbela.** The two battles which overthrew the Persian Empire and established Macedonian supremacy throughout the Near East.

214 **Great Wall of China begun.**

202 **Battle of Zama.** Ended the Second Punic War and left Rome without a rival in the western Mediterranean.

146 **Carthage and Corinth destroyed by the Romans.**

58-50 **Conquest of Gaul by Julius Cæsar.** Opened up much of western Europe to Græco-Roman civilization.

31 **Battle of Actium.** Ended civil war between Antony and Octavian, leaving the latter supreme in the Roman state.

4 (?) **Birth of Christ.**

70 A. D. **Jerusalem captured and destroyed by the Romans.**

135 **Dispersion of the Jews.**

212 **Edict of Caracalla.** Extended Roman citizenship to all free-born men in the Roman Empire.

284 **Reorganization of the Roman Empire by Diocletian.** The imperial system henceforth became an undisguised absolutism of the Oriental type.

313 **Edict of Milan.** Granted general religious toleration and placed Christianity on a legal equality with the other religions of the Roman world.

325 **Council of Nicæa.** Framed the Nicene Creed, which is still the accepted summary of Christian doctrine in Roman Catholic, Greek, and most Protestant churches.

330 **Constantinople (New Rome) made the capital of the Roman Empire.**

451 **Battle of Chalons.** Saved western Europe from being conquered by the still barbarous Huns.

476 **Deposition of Romulus Augustulus.** Extinction of the line of Roman emperors in the West.

496 **Clovis adopted Catholic Christianity.** Paved the way for intimate relations between the Franks and the Papacy.

529 (?) **Rule of St. Benedict.** Established the form of monasticism which ultimately prevailed everywhere in western Europe.

529-534 **Codification of Roman law.** The *Corpus Juris Civilis* formed perhaps the most important contribution of Rome to civilization.

622 **The Hegira (Flight) of Mohammed from Mecca to Medina.** Marks the beginning of the Mohammedan era.

732 **Battle of Tours.** The victory of the Franks under Charles Martel stemmed the farther advance of the Moslems into western Europe.

800 **Charlemagne crowned Emperor of the Romans.** Formation of the so-called Holy Roman Empire.

843 **Treaty of Verdun and 870 Treaty of Mersen.** Marked important stages in the dissolution of Charlemagne's dominions.

962 **Otto I, the Great, crowned Roman Emperor.** Revival of the so-called Holy Roman Empire.

982 **Greenland discovered by the Northmen.**

988 **Christianity introduced into Russia.** The Russian Slavs henceforth came under the influence of the Greek Church and Byzantine civilization.

1054 Final rupture of the Greek and Roman Churches. Destroyed the religious unity of European Christendom.

1066 Battle of Hastings. Resulted in the Norman Conquest of England.

1095 Council of Clermont. Beginning of the crusades.

1122 Concordat of Worms. A compromise arrangement between the Papacy and the Holy Roman Empire.

1206-1227 Conquests of Jenghiz Khan. Brought a large part of Asia and eastern Europe under Mongol sway.

1215 Magna Carta. Defined the rights of Englishmen and inspired their later struggles for political liberty.

1271-1295 Travels of Marco Polo. Polo's narrative of his travels greatly increased the interest of Europeans in the Far East.

1275 "Model Parliament" of Edward I. A regularly elected Parliament which for the first time included representatives of all classes of the English people.

1309-1377 "Babylonian Captivity" of the Papacy. The removal of the popes to Avignon weakened their political authority.

1348-1349 Black Death in Europe. Hastened the decline of serfdom and the emancipation of the peasantry.

1378-1417 The "Great Schism." Weakened the spiritual supremacy of the popes over western Christendom.

1396 Greek first taught at Florence, Italy. The revival of Greek studies in western Europe formed an important aspect of the Renaissance movement.

1453 Constantinople captured by the Ottoman Turks. End of the Byzantine Empire and beginning of the Eastern Question.

1456 First book printed at Gutenberg's press in Mainz, Germany.

1487 Cape of Good Hope rounded by Diaz. The final step in the Portuguese exploration of the western coast of Africa.

1492 Discovery of America by Columbus.

1498 India reached by Vasco da Gama. The Portuguese thus opened up an ocean passage from Europe round Africa to the Far East.

1517 Luther's Ninety-five Theses posted. Beginning of the Protestant Reformation in Germany.

1519-1522 Magellan's circumnavigation of the globe.

1543 **Publication of Copernicus's treatise "On the Revolutions of Celestial Orbits."** Resulted in the adoption of an entirely new system of astronomy, by which man's outlook on the universe has been fundamentally changed.

1545 **Silver Mines of Potosí in Bolivia discovered.** The enormous output of silver from these mines greatly enlarged the supply of money in western Europe, thus stimulating industrial and commercial enterprise.

1545-1563 **Council of Trent.** An important agency in the Catholic Counter Reformation.

1577-1580 **Drake's voyage around the world.**

1588 **Defeat of the Spanish Armada.** Gave to England control of the sea and made possible English colonization of North America.

1598 **Edict of Nantes issued by Henry IV of France.** A noteworthy step in the direction of religious toleration.

1607 **Settlement of Jamestown.** The first permanent English colony in America.

1611 **Authorized Version of the Bible published.** The translation still in ordinary use among Protestants throughout the English-speaking world.

1648 **Peace of Westphalia.** Ended the religious wars.

1687 **Newton's "Principia" published.** One of the most important contributions ever made to physical science.

1688-1689 **The "Glorious Revolution."** Completed the work of the Puritan Revolution by overthrowing absolutism and divine right in England.

1704 **Battle of Blenheim.** Defeated the attempt of Louis XIV to make France supreme in western Europe.

1762 **Rousseau's "Social Contract" published.** Its democratic teachings were put into effect by the French revolutionists.

1763 **Peace of Paris.** Ended the Seven Years' War and gave to England a colonial empire in India and North America at the expense of France.

1768-1779 **Voyages of Captain James Cook.** Greatly increased geographical knowledge of the Pacific Ocean and its archipelagoes.

1769 **Arkwright's "water frame," 1770 Hargreaves's "spinning jenny," 1779 Crompton's "mule," and 1785 Cartwright's power loom.**

1776 Declaration of Independence.

1781-1782 Watt's steam engine patented. The steam engine had previously served only for pumping; henceforth it could be applied to manufacturing and transportation.

1783 Peace of Paris and Versailles. Ended the War of the American Revolution.

1787 Constitution of the United States framed.

1789 Meeting of the Estates-General in France. The first step toward the French Revolution.

1803 Louisiana Purchase. Made possible a greater United States.

1804 The Code Napoléon promulgated. The most lasting memorial of the Napoleonic era.

1807 Fulton's steamboat, the "Clermont," in successful operation.

1814-1815 Congress of Vienna. Remade the map of Europe after the revolutionary and Napoleonic era.

1815 Battle of Waterloo. Brought about the final overthrow of Napoleon Bonaparte.

1823 Monroe Doctrine enunciated. Has prevented European interference in the affairs of the New World.

1825 Stockton and Darlington Railway opened. The first line over which passengers and freight were carried by steam power.

1826 Independence of the Spanish-American colonies recognized by Spain.

1830-1831 The "July Revolution" in Europe. Overthrew absolutism and divine right in France and created modern Belgium.

1832 Reform Act in Great Britain. The first step in democratizing the British government.

1833 Abolition by Great Britain of slavery in the British West Indies.

1837 Morse's first telegraph instrument exhibited.

1838 The Atlantic Ocean crossed by the "Great Western." The first steamship to make the trip without using sails or recoaling on the way.

1839 Lord Durham's Report. Embodied liberal proposals for colonial self-government, which were subsequently adopted by Great Britain for Canada and other overseas possessions.

1848-1849 The "February Revolution" in Europe. Made France again a republic and led to revolutionary upheavals in Italy, Germany and the Austrian Empire.

1851 **Crystal Palace Exhibition at London.** The first of the great international expositions.

1854 **Treaty between Japan and the United States.** The first step in breaking down Japan's traditional isolation.

1858-1861 **Russian serfdom abolished by Alexander II.**

1859 **Darwin's "Origin of Species" published.** Presentation of the evolutionary theory.

1863 **Lincoln's Emancipation Proclamation.**

1864 **International Red Cross Society founded.** Has become the greatest humanitarian organization in the world.

1866 **Atlantic Cable laid.** The first of the many cables which now electrically bridge all the oceans.

1869 **Suez Canal opened.**

1870 **Rome occupied by Italian troops.** Unification of Italy completed.

1871 **German Empire proclaimed at Versailles.**

1874 **International Postal Union established.** An important agency in internationalization.

1875 **First telephone patented by A. G. Bell.**

1899 **Meeting of the First Hague Peace Conference.**

1900 **Trans-Siberian Railway completed from Petrograd to Vladivostok.**

1903 **S. P. Langley's airplane and 1908 Wright Brothers' airplane.**

1909 **North Pole reached by Robert E. Peary and 1911 South Pole reached by R. Amundsen.**

1912 **China becomes a republic.**

1914 **Panama Canal opened.**

1914-1918 **World War.**

1917 **The Russian Revolution and establishment of Bolshevism in Russia.**

1919 **Peace Conference at Versailles.**

1920 **First meeting of the League of Nations.**

1921 **Washington Conference on the Limitation of Armament.**

1922 **"World Court" organized.**

1925 **Locarno Pacts.**

1928 **Pact of Paris.**

1930 **London Conference on Limitation of Naval Armament.**

INDEX AND PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY

NOTE. — The pronunciation of most proper names is indicated either by a simplified spelling or by their accentuation and division into syllables. The diacritical marks employed are those found in Webster's *New International Dictionary* and are the following:

ā as in āle.
å " " senåte.
â " " câre.
ă " " ădm.
ă " " ăccount.
ä " " ärm.
å " " åsk.
à " " sofà.
ē " " ēve.
ĕ " " ĕvent.
ĕ " " ĕnd.
ẽ " " recẽnt.
ē " " makēr.
ī " " īce.
ĭ " " ĭll.
ō as in ōld.
ǒ " " ǒbey.
ô " " ôrb.
ŏ " " ŏdd.
ō̆ " " sō̆ft.
ŏ " " cŏnnect.
ū " " ūse.
ŭ " " ŭnite.
û " " ûrn.
ŭ " " ŭp.
ŭ " " circŭs.
ü " " menü.
o͝o as in fo͝od.
o͝o " " fo͝ot.
ou " " out.
oi as in oil.
ch " " chair.
g " " go.
ng " " sing.
ŋ " " iŋk.
t͟h " " t͟hen.
th " " thin.
tu " " nature.
d͡u " " verd͡ure.
ʜ for ch as in Ger. ich, ach.
ɴ as in Fr. bon.
y " " yet.
zh for z as in azure.

Abdul-Hamid (äb-do͝ol-hȧ-mēd′), II, 529, 710 and note 1.
Absolutism, royal, 105, 106, 151, 152, 154, 155, 158, 160, 164, 168, 182, 183, 200, 211, 277, 292, 316, 353, 648. *See also* Divine right of kings.
Abukir (ä-bo͞o-kēr′) Bay, battle of, 325.
Abyssinia (ăb-ĭ-sĭn′ĭ-*a*), 470, 534, 536, 540.
Academy, French, the, 192, 455.
Adowa (ä′dō-wä), battle of, 470.
Ægean (ē-jē′ăn) Sea, 30.
Ægeans, the, 31, 32.
Af-ghan-i-stan′, 548, 550, 707, 820.
Africa, Portuguese exploration of, 125, 126; physical and racial, 535, 536; opening-up of, 536, 537; Christian missions in, 538; partition of, among European powers, 538–545, 769.
Africa, North, conquered by Ottoman Turks, 206; Italian and French possessions in, 540, 541, 820.
Africa, South, Boers and English in, 229, 230, 541, 542; Union of, 542, 543.
"Agadir (äg-ȧ-dēr′) incident," the, 709.
Agriculture, medieval, 86–88; modern, 176, 250, 439, 629, 631.
Aguinaldo (ä-gē-näl′dō), 564.
Airplane, the, 609, 610.
Airship, the, 610, 611.
Aix-la-Chapelle, Peace of, 214, 234.
Alabama claims, the, 808.
Åland Islands, 781, 813.
Alaska, 273, 582, 583.
Al-ba′ni-a, 530, 531, 712, 713, 739, 741, 779.
Albanians, the, 516, 517.
Albany Congress, the, 255.

Albert I, king of Belgium, 476, 727.
Alexander I, king of Jugoslavia, 778.
Alexander I, tsar of Russia, 338, 343, 344, 352, 375, 504, 506, 806; II, 412, 508–510, 633; III, 511–513, 527.
Alexander the Great, 16, 41.
Alexandria, 43, 45, 55.
Alfonso XII, king of Spain, 471; XIII, 471, note 3.
Algeciras (Span. pron. äl-hä-thē′-räs) Conference, the, 707, 807.
Algeria, 463, 464, 540, 709.
Alma, battle of the, 525.
Alphabet, the, 20, 21, 32, 47.
Alps Mountains, 26, 27, 394.
Alsace (ål-säs′), 150, 185, 186, 349, 415, 416, 701, 703, 741, 761, 768. *See also* Lorraine.
America, Northmen in, 75; discovery of, 128; Europe and, 133–135.
America, Central, republics of, 578.
America, North, the Dutch in, 230, 231; English settlement of Virginia and Massachusetts, 235–242; the Thirteen Colonies, 242–255; French settlements in, 256–259; rivalry of France and England in, 259–262; revolt of the Thirteen Colonies, 263–270; formation of the United States, 270–272; British, 585–588.
America, South, Spain in, 572, 573; revolt of the Spanish and Portuguese colonies in, 573, 574; the South American republics, 574–577.
American Federation of Labor, the, 588, 636.
American Revolution, the, 263–270.
Amiens (å-myăN′), Peace of, 331, 336.
Amundsen (ä′mŭn-sĕn), Captain Roald, 589, note 1, 590.
Amur (ä′mo͝or) Valley, 547, 557.
Anabaptists, the, 804.
Anglicanism, 139, 140, 142, 152, 156, 159, 164, 169, 247, 283, 667.
Anglo-Russian Convention, the, 548, 550, 706.
Anglo-Saxons, the, 66, 67.
Angora, 775.
Anne, Queen, 171, 172, 173, 174, 187, 221, 432.
Antarctic exploration, 589, 591.
Anthony, Susan B., 661, 662.
Anti-Corn-Law League, the, 626.
Anti-Saloon League, the, 658.
Arabs, the, 69, 70, 742, 777.
Arbitration, international, 808, 812, 813.
Architecture, 19, 38, 39, 56, 107, 117, 118, 177, 191, 192, 680.
Arctic exploration, 589.
Argentina, 576, 577, 750.
Aristotle (ăr′ĭs-tot′l), 40, 120.
Arkwright, Richard, 596.
Armada (ăr-mā′dȧ), the Spanish, 146, 147.
Armenia, 777, 778, 786.
Armies, modern, 714.
Armistice with Germany, terms of the, 760, 761.
Art, Oriental, 19, 21; Greek, 38; Roman, 56; medieval, 107; Renaissance, 117, 118; modern, 177, 191, 192, 679–681. *See also* Architecture, Painting, Sculpture.
Articles of Confederation, the, 271, 272.
Artois (är-twä′), province, 185.
Ar′yans, the, 10, note 1, 15, 16.
Asia, geography and peoples of, 10–12; the Far East in antiquity, 12–16; the Near East in antiquity, 17–23; the Polos in, 123, 124; opening up and partition of, 547–563.
Asia Minor, 711, 775.
Asquith, H. H., 441, 728.
Assignats (å-sē-nyȧ′), the, 310, 311.
Assuan (äs-swän′) Dam, the, 544.

As-syr'i-a, 18.
Astronomy, modern, 119, 671.
Athens, 35–41.
Augsburg (ouks'bo͝orĸ), Peace of, 144, 148, 666.
Au-gus'tus, Roman Emperor, 52, 65.
Ausgleich (ous'glīĸ), the Austro-Hungarian, 494, 495, 498.
Austerlitz (ous'tĕr-lĭts), battle of, 337, 338, 339, 391.
Australasia, 566.
Australia, exploration of, 273; colonization of, 566; in the British Empire, 567; labor legislation in, 639, 640.
Austria, rise and growth of, 207; under Maria Theresa, 208, 209, 213, 214; shares in the partitions of Poland, 220; under Joseph II, 293, 294; wars of, with France, during the revolutionary and Napoleonic era, 316, 317, 319, 323, 324, 325, 331, 337, 343, 346, 347; territorial acquisitions of, by the Vienna settlement, 356; predominance of, in Germany and Italy, 358; in the Concert of Europe, 361–365; revolutionary movements of 1848 in, 380–384; loss of Lombardy and Venetia by, 401, 404; eliminated from the Germanic Confederation, 411–413; relations of, with Hungary, 493–495; becomes a republic, 760, 773, 774; the St.-Germain Treaty with, 772. *See also* Austria-Hungary.
Austria-Hungary, government of, 494, 495; nationalities in, 496–499; between 1871 and 1914, 701, 702, 703, 711, 713; in the World War, 721–724, 729, 738, 739, 741, 760.
Austrian Netherlands, 187, 194, 219, 324, 356. *See also* Belgium.
Austrian Succession, War of the, 213, 214, 234.
Austro-Prussian War, the 404, 412, 413, 701.
Austro-Sardinian War, the, 400, 401.
Azerbaijan (ä-zĕr-bī-jän'), 786.
Azores (ā-zōrz'), the, 125, 474.

Baber (bä'bĕr), 233.
Bab-y-lo'ni-a, in antiquity, 17–23.
Bacon, Francis, 177, 532.
Baden (bä'dĕn), 339, 361, 385.
Bagdad (bäg-däd'), 711, 742.
Ba-la-kla'va, battle of, 525.
Balance of power, the, in Europe, 186, 195, 214, 336, 358, 700, 707.
"Balance of trade," the, 227.
Balkan Peninsula, the, 516.
Balkan wars (1912–1913), the, 530, 531, 713, 723.
Ballot Act, the, 429.
Baltic Sea, 202.
Banking, 101, 232, 354, 621, 622, 693.
Baptists, the, 169, 247, 283, 669.
Basel (bä'zĕl), Treaty of, 321.
Bastille (bȧs-tēl'), the, capture of, 305, 422.
Batavian Republic, the, 321, 339.
Bavaria, 213, 331, 339, 357, 361.
Bazaine (bȧ-zĕn'), General, 414.
Beaconsfield, Lord. *See* Disraeli, Benjamin.
Beauharnais (bō-ȧr-nĕ'), Eugène de, 339 and note 1.
Bec-ca-ri'a, Marquis di, 656.
Beethoven (bā'tō-vĕn), Ludwig van, 679.
Belgian Congo, the, 478, 540.
Belgium, becomes an independent and neutral state, 374; government of, 476–478; colonial possessions of, 476, 539, 540; in the World War, 726, 727, 728, 729, 731, 734, 741; acquires German territory, 769.
Bel-grade', 712, 770.
Bell, Alexander G., 612, 613.
Benedict XV, pope, 469, 753.
Benedictine Rule, the, 83, 84.

Bengal (bĕn-gôl′), 235.
Ber′bers, the, 463.
Berchtold, Count, 723, 724.
Bering, Vitus, 274, 298.
Berlin, 191.
Berlin Decree, the, 340; Treaty, 526, 701, 712.
Berlin-to-Bagdad Railway, the, 710, 711.
Bernadotte (bĕr-nȧ-dŏt′), Marshal, 480.
Bessarabia, 356, 501, 527, 738, note 1, 784.
Bethmann-Hollweg, (bāt′män-hôl′-vāĸ), Theobald von, 726, 727, 728, 746.
Bible, the, 21, 22, 62, 140, 142.
Bicameral system, the, 253, 254, 271.
Bill of Rights, the, 171, 172, 221, 312.
Bimetallism, 623.
Bismarck, Otto von, 410–417, 488, 490, 491, 492, 639, 647, 700, 701, 702, 704, 705, 707, 709.
"Black Hole" of Calcutta, the, 234.
Black Sea, 197, 201, 206, 525, 628, 711.
Blanc (bläN), Louis, 645.
Blenheim (blĕn′ĭm), battle of, 187.
Blücher (blü′ĸĕr), 347.
Boers (bo͝ors), the, colonize South Africa, 230, 541; at war with Great Britain, 542; in the World War, 543, 741.
Bohemia, national movements in, 381, 497, 779.
Boleyn (bo͝ol′ĭn), Anne, 139, 140.
Bolívar (Span. pron. bŏ-lē′vär), Simón de, 573, 574.
Bol-she-vi-ki′, the, in Russia, 752 and note 1, 753, 784–788.
Bolshevist propaganda, 785, 786, 823.
Book of Common Prayer, the, 140, 164, 169.
Booth, William, 659.
Bor-o-di′no, battle of, 344.
Borussi, the, 209, 210, 503.
Bosnia, 517, 528, 701, 712, 721.
"Boston Tea Party," the, 266.
Botha (bō′tä), Louis, 543.
Boulanger (bo͞o-läN-zhā′), General, 459.
Bourbons (bo͝or′bo͝ons), the, Spanish, 186, 187, 354; French, 347, 353, 354, 369, 371 and note 1.
Bourgeoisie (bo͝or-zhwȧ-zē′), the, 94, 280 and note 1, 296, 300, 315, 318, 321, 359, 370, 378, 388, 645, 646, 751, 752, 786.
"Boxers," the, 557, 558, 708, 718, 807.
Boyne, battle of the, 438, 442.
Braganza (brä-gän′zȧ) dynasty, the, 473.
Brahmanism, 16, 553, 669.
Brandenburg (bränʹdĕn-bo͝orĸ), 150, 189, 209, 210, 211, 214, 491. *See also* Prussia.
Brazil, 131, 342, 363, 473, 574, 750.
Brest-Litovsk (brĕst′lyĕ-tôfsk′), Treaty of, 753, 756, 784.
Bright, John, 626.
British East Africa, 543.
British Empire, the, 443–451, 532, 541–545, 550–554, 566, 567, 581, 585–588.
British Guiana, 583, 808.
British Isles, unification of, 102.
British West Indies, 581, 655.
Brusilov, General, 736, 739.
Brussels, 347, 373, 729.
Buddha (bo͝od′ȧ), Gautama, 16.
Buddhism (bo͝od′ĭz′m), 16, 553, 554, 556, 560, 669.
Bukharest (bo͝o-kȧ-rĕst′), Treaty of (1913), 530, 531, 713.
Bukowina (bo͝o-kŏ-vē′-nä), 527, 736, 772.
Bulgaria, rise of, 528, 529; in the Balkan wars, 530, 713; in the World War, 736, 738, 759; Treaty of Neuilly with, 774.
Bulgarians, the, 517.
Bundesrat (bo͝on′dĕs-rät), the, 484, 485, 486, 783.
Bunyan, John, 178.

Burke, Edmund, 265, 422.
Burma, 550, 552, 554, 556.

Cabinet system, the, 221, 272, 367, 368, 435, 436, 791.
Cabot, John, 133, 235.
Cæsar (sē′zär), Julius, 51, 52.
Cahiers (kȧ-yā′), the, 301, 302.
Calais (Fr. pron, kȧ-lĕ′), 612, 731.
California, 582, 623.
Calmar, Union of, 202, 479, 480.
Calverts, the, 242, 243.
Calvin, 138, 139, 147.
Calvinism, 139, 142, 145, 148, 150, 152.
Cameroons, the, 540, 741, 769.
Campo Formio, Treaty of, 324, 331, 338, 405.
Canada, French explorations in, 133, 256; Jesuit missions in, 256, 257; conquered by England, 260–262; the "Tories" settle in, 267, 585; Upper and Lower, 585; in the War of 1812–1814, 586; receives self-government, 586, 587; Dominion of, 587, 588.
Canals, 445, 446, 447, 581, 584, 585, 606, 628.
Canning, George, 364.
Cape Colony, 355, 541, 542.
Capetian (kȧ-pē′shăn), dynasty, the, 681.
Cape-to-Cairo Railway, the, 545, 546.
Car-a-cal′la, Roman emperor, 52.
Car-bo-na′ri, the, 396, 397, 521.
Carlsbad Decrees, the, 360, 361.
Carnegie (kär-nĕg′ĭ), Andrew, 665, 804.
Carnot (kär-nō′), Lazare, 321, 323.
Carolinas, the, 243, 247, 248, 250.
Car-o-lin′gi-an dynasty, the, 681.
Carthage, 51.
Cartier, Jacques (kär-tyā′, zhȧk′), 133, 256.
Cartwright, Edmund, 598.
Castes, Hindu, 16, 553.
Castles, medieval, 78.
Catherine II, tsarina of Russia, 205, 206, 207, 219, 220, 292.
Catholic Church. *See* Greek Church, Roman Church.
Caucasian race, the, 8, 9, 568, 825.
"Cavaliers," the, 162 and note 1, 170.
Cavour (kȧ-vo͝or′), Camillo di, 398–404, 417, 469, 524.
Celts, the, 437, 438.
Censorship of the press, in Great Britain, 158, 173, 284; in France, 298, 325; in Spain, 354; in Germany, 361; in Russia, 507, 508, 513.
Ceylon, 229, 355, 554.
Chambord (shäɴ-bôr′), Count of, 458.
Champlain (shăm-plān′), Samuel de, 256.
Charlemagne (shär′lē-mān), 70, 72, 75, 76, 334, 335, 339, 681.
Charles I, emperor of Austria, 496, 760, 774.
Charles I, king of England, 156–164, 240, 241, 242; II, 168–170, 241, 243, 245, 353, 691.
Charles I, king of Rumania, 526, 712.
Charles V, Holy Roman Emperor, 129, 137, 140, 144, 145; VI, 208.
Charles X, king of France, 369, 370, 378.
Charles XII, king of Sweden, 203, 204.
Charles Albert, king of Sardinia, 383, 384, 466.
Charters, colonial, 235, 237, 240, 241, 242, 243.
Chartism, 426, 427.
Chatham (chăt′ăm), Earl of. *See* William Pitt.
Chateau-Thierry (shä-to′-tyĕ-rē′), 757, 758.
Chemistry, modern, 176, 671, 673.
Chile, 576, 577, 750.
China, history of, in antiquity, 12–14; visited by the Polos, 123,

124; geography and people of, 555; civilization of, 555, 556; during the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, 556–559, 719, 819, 820.
Chino-Japanese War, the, 557, 561.
Chosen. *See* Korea.
Christianity, rise and triumph of, 60–63; influence of, 63, 64; adoption of, by the Germans, 67. *See also* Greek Church, Orthodox Church, Protestants, Roman Church.
Church and State, relations of, 283, 284, 310, 313, 314, 332, 666, 667.
Cisalpine Republic, the, 324, 339.
Cities, Greek, 33; Hellenistic, 42, 43; Roman, 55, 56; medieval, 91–101; modern, 616.
City-states, Greek, 33–35, 37, 41.
Civilization, dawn of, 5–8; in the Far East, 12–16; in the Near East, 17–23; Ægean, 31; Greek, 32; Etruscan, 46, 47; Athenian, 35–41; Hellenistic, 43–46; Roman, 56, 57; medieval, 106–113; modern, 652–669.
Civil War, American, 427.
Clemenceau (klā-mäN-sō′), Georges, 756, 764.
Clive, Robert, 234, 550.
Coalitions against France: First, 319, 320, 321; Second, 325, 331; Third, 327, 328.
Cobden, Richard, 626.
Code Napoléon, the, 331, 332, 351, 354, 396, 662.
Colbert (kōl-bâr′), 189, 190, 191, 257.
Colombia, 574, 576, 585.
Colonial policy, Portuguese, 130; Spanish, 131; British, 263, 264, 270, 448.
Colonies and dependencies, Portuguese, 130, 131, 474 and note 1, 538, 574; Spanish, 131, 133, 342, 364, 472, 473 and note 1, 538, 563, 564, 572–574; Dutch, 228–231, 245, 355, 478, 479, 565, 581; French, 233–235, 256–258, 260–262, 463, 464 and note 1, 540, 541, 550, 566, 581, 709, 769, 776; British, 233–246, 260–270, 355, 443–451, 532, 541–545, 550–554, 566, 567, 581, 585–588, 708, 740, 769, 776, 777; Italian, 470, 540; Belgian, 478, 539, 540; Danish, 480, 481, 581; German, 492, 493 and note 1, 540, 543, 566, 741, 742, 769; American, 564, 565, 566, 581, 582, 820.
Colonization, motives for, 226, 534, 535, 572.
Columbus, 127–129, 580.
Combination Acts, the, 634, 635.
Commerce, 98, 123–125, 133–135, 226–228, 619–621.
Common Law, the, 106, 253, 431, 634.
Commons, House of, 162, 164, 165, 166, 173, 223, 224, 253, 368, 422–425, 432, 433, 435.
Commonwealth, the, in England, 165–167.
"Communards," the, 457, 683.
Commune of Paris, the, 306, 457.
Communism. *See* Socialism.
Companies, trading, 227, 228, 229, 230, 233, 235, 236, 237, 238, 245, 447.
Compass, mariner's, 122, 123.
Concert of Europe, the, 361–365, 470, 476, 807.
Concordat, French, 232 and note 1, 354, 460, 667.
Confucius (kŏn-fū′shĭ-ŭs), 14, 556, 560, 685.
Congo Free State, 478, 540, 807.
Congo River, 538.
Congregationalism, 164, note 1, 169, 247.
Conscription, military, development of, 320, 321, 345, 409, 714, 796.
Conservative Party, British, 426, 428, 429, 437 and note 1, 440, 441, 449.

Constantine (kŏn′stăn-tīn) the Great, 57, note 1, 63, 65.
Constantine I, king of Greece, 522, note 2, 712, 738, 739.
Constantinople, 57 and note 1, 69, 115, 206, 338, 524, 526, 738, 759, 775.
Consulate, Napoleon's, 329–334.
Continental Congress, the, 266, 270.
Continental System, Napoleon's, 340, 341, 342, 344, 585.
Cook, Captain James, 273, 274, 565, 566, 591.
Co-per′ni-cus, 119.
Corn Laws, the, repeal of, 626, 627.
Cor′pus Ju′ris Ci-vi′lis, the, 54, and note 1.
Corvée (kôr-vā′), the, 281, 300.
Cossacks, the, 197 and note 2, 198, 204, 345.
Costume, old Russian, 199; in eighteenth-century France, 301; modern, 652.
Cotton, manufactures of, 597, 598, 604.
Counter Reformation, the, 142–144.
Coup d'état (kōō-dā-tä′), Napoleon Bonaparte's, 326; Louis Napoleon's, 391.
Courland, 503, 741, 753, 781.
Craft guilds, 95, 96, 176, 280, 281, 283, 300, 601, 602, 634.
Cranmer, Archbishop, 140.
Crete, 18, 30, 31.
Crimean War, the, 394, 399, 524, 525.
Criminal code, the, reform of, 655–657.
Crises, commercial, 624, 625.
Crispi, Francesco, 470.
Croatia-Slavonia, 494, 497, 778.
Crompton, Samuel, 597.
Cromwell, Oliver, 160, 162–168.
Crown colonies, British, 447.
Crusades, the, 123.
Cuba, 472, 581.
Curaçao (kōō-rä-sō′), 231, 581.
Curie (kü-rē′), Marie, 673.
Custozza (kös-tōd′zä), battle of, 383.
Czechs (chěks), the, 381, 497, 779.
Czecho-Slovakia, 772, 774, 779, 780.

Da Gama, Vasco, 126, 127, 130.
Daimios (dī′myōz), Japanese, 560, 561.
Dalmatia, 497, 740, 778.
Danish West Indies, 481, 581, 820.
Dante (dän′tā), 115.
Danton (dăN-tôN′), Georges Jacques, 315, 317, 319, 320, 322.
Danzig (dän′tsĭĸ), 769, 779, 811.
Dar-da-nelles′, the, 207, 596, 775.
Davy, Sir Humphry, 600.
"Dawes Plan," the, 770, 771.
Deák (dā′äk), Francis, 494.
Decembrist uprising, the, in Russia, 506, 507, 508.
Declaration of Independence, the, 266, 267, 270, 288.
Declaration of Paris, the, 629, 744, 807.
Declaration of the Rights of Man, the, 311, 312, 666.
Deists, the, 287, 288, 289, 290, 293.
Delcassé (dĕl-kä-sā′), Théophile, 706.
De′li-an League, the, 36.
Demarcation Line, the, 128, 129 and note 1.
Democracy, absence of, in the Orient, 23; Græco-Roman, 34, 35, 36, 37, 58; the Church and, 86; during the revolutionary and Napoleonic era, 326, 327, 349, 350; disregard of, by the Congress of Vienna, 353; modern, 366–369; the Industrial Revolution and, 592, 593; the World War and, 748, 790, 791, 793.
Denmark, in the Union of Calmar, 202; allied with Napoleon, 340, 357; loses Norway to Sweden, 357, 479; loses Schleswig-Hol-

stein, 412, 479; government and colonies of, 480, 481; northern Schleswig returned to, 768 and note 2.
Départements, French, 309, 310, 331, 463.
Diaz (dē′äts), Armando, 760.
Diaz (dē′äth), Porfirio, 579.
Directory, French, 322–326.
Disarmament conferences, 817–819.
Disestablishment, religious, 440, 460, 473, 666, 667.
Disraeli (dĭz-rā′lĭ), Benjamin, 428, 429, 449, 527, 546, 704.
Dissenters, the, 169 and note 1, 172, 248.
Divine right of kings, the, 152, 155, 172, 179, 183, 210, 288, 316, 326, 353, 354, 369, 790, 791. *See also* Absolutism.
Divorce laws, 662, 663.
Domestic system, the, 602.
Dom Pedro II, 574, 575.
Don Carlos, Spanish pretender, 471.
Drama, Athenian, 38, 39; modern, 677, 678.
Dravidians, the, 12, 555, 553, 568.
Dual Alliance, the, 703, 707.
Dual Monarchy, the. *See* Austria-Hungary.
Duma, the, 574, 575, 751, 752.
Dunant, Henri, 659, 660.
Dupleix (dü-plĕks′), 233, 234.
Durazzo (dōō-rät′sō), 712, 713.
Durham, Lord, *Report* of, 586, 587.
Dushan, Stephen, 520.

Eastern Question, the, 207, 399, 524, 528, 531, 709–713, 807.
Eastern Rumelia, 528.
East India Company, Dutch, 229, 230, 565; French, 233; English, 233, 234, 551, 552.
Ebert, Friedrich, 783.
Edict of Milan, 63.
Edison, Thomas A., 613.
Education, medieval, 108–110; modern, 248, 249, 332, 345, 663–665, 791.
Edward I, king of England, 100, 102; VI, 140; VII, 432, 705, 706.
Egypt, in antiquity, 17–23; Napoleon in, 325; British occupation of, 544; British rule over, 544, 545, 711, 742, 822, 823.
Einstein, Albert, 672, 673.
Elba, Napoleon at, 347, 352.
Elizabeth, queen of England, 140, 146, 154, 177, 233, 235.
Emigration and immigration, 245, 246, 576, 577, 585, 587, 588, 616, 826.
Émigrés (ā-mē-grā′), the, 313, 321, 332, 786.
Ems (Ger. pron. āms) dispatch, the, 414.
Encyclopedists, the, 291, 299.
England, during the Middle Ages, 102, 106; the Reformation in, 138, 139; under James I and Charles I, 154–164; the Commonwealth and the Protectorate, 165–168; under Charles II and James II, 168–172; under William III and Anne, 172–174; union of, with Scotland, 173; in the seventeenth century, 174–178; at war with Louis XIV, 185, 186, 187; in the War of the Austrian Succession and the Seven Years' War, 214, 215, 223; under the first three Georges, 221–225; rivalry of, with France in India and North America, 233–235, 259–262; loss of the Thirteen Colonies by, 263–270; at war with revolutionary and Napoleonic France, 319, 325, 331, 336, 337, 340, 341, 342, 347, 348; territorial acquisitions of, by the Vienna settlement, 355; in the Concert of Europe, 361, 362; geography and productions of, 418, 419; parliamentary reform

in, 421–431; government of, 431–437; the Irish Question, 437–443; the British Empire, 443–451, 532, 541–545, 550–554, 566, 567, 581, 585–588; the Industrial Revolution in, 593, 594, 604, 605; commerce of, 619, 620; adopts free trade, 625–627; land tenure in, 630–632; trade unionism in, 634, 635; labor legislation in, 637–639; between 1871 and 1914, 704–707, 715; in the World War, 726, 727, 728, 729, 730, 731, 733, 734, 738, 741, 742, 743, 757, 758, 759; after the World War, 793, 794, 817, 818, 819, 820.
"Enlightened despots," the, 292–294.
Entente cordiale (äN-täNt′ kôr-dyäl′), the, 706, 726.
E-ras′mus, 116.
Estates-General, French, 182, 194, 301–304, 690.
Es-tho′ni-a, 202, 503, 753, 781.
Etruscans, the, 46, 47, 48, 49.
Eugénie (û-zhā-nē′), Empress, 393 and note 1, 456.
Europe, prehistoric times in, 2–5; geography of, 25–27; peoples of, 27–29.
Exclusion acts, 826, 827.
Exploration and discovery, 45, note 1, 123–130, 133, 235, 272–274, 536–538, 588–591.
Expositions, universal, 393, 653.

Factory Acts, British, 637, 638.
Factory system, the, 602, 604, 636, 644, 645, 649.
Fairs, medieval, 97, 98.
Fascisti (fä-shē′stē), the, 791.
"Fashoda incident," the, 704.
"February Revolution," the, 379, 380, 645.
Fenian Brotherhood, the, 440.
Ferdinand I, emperor of Austria, 377 and note 1, 381, 382.
Ferdinand I, king of Rumania, 526, note 1.
Ferdinand I, tsar of Bulgaria, 529, 530, 711, 759.
Ferdinand VII, king of Spain, 342, 354, 365, 364, 470, 573.
Feudalism, medieval, 75–80, 93, 105; Polish, 219; remnants of, abolished in revolutionary France, 307.
Field, Cyrus W., 612.
Filipinos, the, 563–565, 669.
Finland, a dependency of Sweden, 202, 204; acquired by Russia, 204, note 1, 338, 356, 501; independence of, 753, 781.
Finns, the, 501, 502.
Fiume (fyōō′mā), 779, 811.
Flanders, 185, 759.
Flemings, the, 207, 372, 476.
Florence, 100, 101, 114, 115.
Florida, 256, 262, 270, 582.
Foch (fōsh), Ferdinand, 730, 758.
Formosa, 557, 562, 563.
Four-Power Treaty, the, 818, 819.
"Fourteen Points," Wilson's, 755, 756, 761, 765.
Fox, George, 283.
France, unification of, 103; Huguenot wars in, 147, 148; under Richelieu and Mazarin, 179, 180; under Louis XIV, 180–193; in the War of the Austrian Succession and the Seven Years' War, 213, 214; rivalry of, with England in India and North America, 233–235, 259–262; alliance of, with the Thirteen Colonies, 267–269, 301; under Louis XV, 297, 298; the French Revolution, 298–327; the Napoleonic era, 329–351; restoration of Louis XVIII, 347, 353, 354, 369; in the Concert of Europe, 361–365; under Charles X, 369, 370; the "July Revolution," 370, 371; under Louis Philippe, 378, 379; the "February Revolution," 379, 380; un-

der Napoleon III, 389–394; acquires Savoy and Nice, 400, 401, 402; land and people of, 452–455; under the Third Republic, 455–460; government of, 460–463; colonial possessions of, 463, 464, 540, 541, 550, 566, 581; commerce of, 620; land tenure in, 632; between 1871 and 1914, 700, 701, 703, 704, 709; in the World War, 725, 726, 727, 729, 730–734, 757–759; territorial acquisitions of, 768, 769, 776, 820; after the World War, 793, 794.
Franche-Comté (fränsh'kôn-tā'), 185, 719 and note 1.
Francis I, emperor of Austria, 352, 358, 806.
Francis Ferdinand, Austrian Crown Prince, assassination of, 721.
Francis Joseph I, emperor of Austria, 382, 383, 400, 401, 493, 494, 495, 496, 579, 701, 760.
Franco-German War, the, 351, 404, 414, 415, 700, 701.
Frankfort Assembly, 384, 385, 784; Treaty, 415, 457, 701.
Franklin, Benjamin, 246, 254, 255, 271, 297.
Franks, the, 66, 67, 70.
Frederick II, the Great, king of Prussia, 212–215, 219, 220, 223, 292, 293, 409, 718, 769; III, 490, 491.
Frederick William, the Great Elector, 211, 718.
Frederick William I, king of Prussia, 212; III, 352, 359, 361, 806; IV, 377 and note 1, 384, 385, 386, 409, 487.
Freemasonry, 396, 669.
Free trade, adoption of, by Great Britain, 625–627.
"French and Indian War," the, 255, 260–262.
French Revolution, the, 296–327.
Friars, the, 84, 85.
Friedland (frēt'länt), battle of, 338.
Fry, Mrs. Elizabeth, 656, 657.
Fulton, Robert, 606, 611.

Galicia (gȧ-lĭsh'ĭ-ȧ), 219, 356, 375, 735, 736, 741, 772.
Galileo (găl-ĭ-lē'o), 119.
Gal-lip'o-li, 738.
Gambetta (Fr. pron. gäN-bĕ-ta'), Léon, 456, 458, 459, 701.
Garibaldi (gä-rē-bäl'dē), Giuseppe, 402, 403.
Gaul (gôl), conquest and Romanization of, 51.
Geneva Convention, the, 660, 807.
Genoa, 100, 151, 324, 338, 354, 396, 398, note 1. *See also* Ligurian Republic.
Geology, 671, 672.
George, David Lloyd, 441, 632, 650, 667, 753, 756, 764, 772, 803, 808.
George I, king of England, 174, 221; II, 221, 245; III, 223, 224, 264, 265, 274, 378, 421, 422, 629, 697; IV, 422; V, 432.
George I, king of Greece, 522.
Georgia, American state, 245, 250, 266; European state, 786.
German East Africa, 540, 543, 741, 769.
German Southwest Africa, 540, 543, 741, 769.
Germanic Confederation, the, 357, 358, 406, 411, 413.
Germans, the, early culture of, 64, 65; their invasions, 66, 67; fusion of, with the Romans, 67.
Germany, physical features of, 66; political condition of, during the Middle Ages, 73; the Reformation in, 136–138; the Thirty Years' War, 148–150; disunited condition of, 151, 404, 405; during the revolutionary and Napoleonic era, 321, 324, 339, 345, 346, 351; the Vienna settlement of, 357; suppression of liberalism in, 359–361; revolutionary move-

ments of 1830 and 1848 in, 376, 377, 384–386; unification of, 404–416; land and people of, 482–488; imperial government of, 484–488; between 1871 and 1914, 488–491; colonies of, 492, 493 and note 1, 540, 543, 566, 741, 742, 769; commerce of, 620; labor legislation in, 639; between 1871 and 1914, 700–702, 705; in the World War, 721–761; the German Revolution, 760, 782; peace treaty with, 765, 766, 768–770; republic of, 782–784.
Gi-bral'tar, fortress of, 187, 188, 269.
Girondists (jĭ-rŏn'dĭsts), the, 318, 322.
Gladstone, William E., 427, 428, 429, 441, 449, 527, 543, 625, 667.
"Glorious Revolution," the, 171, 172, 259, 265.
Good Hope, Cape of, 126, 229, 230.
Gordon, Charles, 543.
Granada, 105.
Grand Duchy of Warsaw, the, 339, 340.
Great Britain. *See* England, Ireland, Scotland, Wales.
Great Elector, the, 211, 718.
Great Fire, the, at London, 177, 622, 690, 691.
Greece, ancient, 31–41; independence of, 521, 522; territorial growth of, 523, 530; in the World War, 738, 739.
Greek Church, the, 200, 205, 218, 282, 292, 517, 521.
Greeks, the, 31–33, 47.
Greenland, 75, 235, 589, 590.
Grey, Earl, 424.
Grey, Sir Edward, 706, 722, 726.
Grotius (grō'shĭ-ŭs), Hugo, 805, 816.
Guam (gwäm), 566, 582.
Guiana, Dutch, 231, 355 and note 1; British, 355, 808.
Guizot (gē-zō'), 379.
Gunpowder, 122.
Gustavus Adolphus, 149, 202, 245.

Haakon (hô'kŏn) VII, king of Norway, 480.
Habeas Corpus Act, the, 169, 170, 221.
Hague Peace Conference, the, 716, 726, 808.
Hague Tribunal, the, 722, 808, 815.
Haig (hăg), Sir Douglas, 733, 758.
Haiti (hā'tĭ), 572, 581 and note 1.
Hamburg (hăm'bo͝orĸ), 94, 484 and note 1.
Hamitic-speaking peoples, 9, 10.
Hampden, 158, 159, 160, 162.
Han'o-ver, 172, 357, 376, 405 and note 1, 412, 413.
Hanoverian dynasty, the, 174 and note 1, 221.
Hapsburg (häps'bo͝orĸ) dynasty, the, 151, 179, 180, 186, 187, 207 and note 1, 358, 496, note 1, 760, 774.
Hardenberg (här'dĕn-bĕrĸ), Chancellor, 345, 346.
Harding, President, 768, 817, 822.
Hargreaves, James, 596.
Hawaiian Islands, 274, 566, 570, 582, 818, 819.
Hebrews. *See* Jews.
Hejaz (hĕj-äz'), kingdom of, 742, 777, 820.
Helgoland (hĕl'gō-länt), 355, 715, 771.
Henry, Prince, the Navigator, 125.
Henry IV, king of France, 148, 191, 256, 806.
Henry VII, king of England, 133, 235; VIII, 139, 140, 690, 691.
He-rod'o-tus, 39, 40.
Herzegovina (hĕr-tsĕ-gō-vē'nä), 517, 522, 701, 712, 721, 778.
Hesse (hĕs), 413 and note 2.
Hesse-Cassel, 413.
Hindenburg (hĭn'dĕn-bo͝orĸ), General von, 735, 736, 757, 771.
Hindus, the, 552, 553.
History, study of, 1, 2, 676, 677.

Hohenlinden, battle of, 331.
Hohenzollern (hō′ĕn-tsōl-ĕrn) dynasty, the, 189, 209 and note 1, 491, 760.
Holland, becomes independent of Spain, 145, 146; wars of Louis XIV with, 185, 186, 231; in the War of the Austrian Succession, 214; colonial empire of, 228–231; at war with Great Britain, 231, 269, 270; during the revolutionary and Napoleonic era, 319, 321, 339; the Austrian Netherlands united with, 356, 572; separation of Belgium from, 572; government of, 478; colonies of, 478, 479 and note 1, 565.
Holstein (hōl′shtīn), 405, 411, 412, 413. *See also* Schleswig.
Holy Alliance, the, 806, 807.
Holy Roman Empire, the, 72, 73, 151, 185, 186, 339, 340, 405, 406.
Holy Synod, the, in Russia, 200, 501, 511.
Home Rule, Irish, 440–443.
Homeric poems, the, 32, 33, 34.
Hoover, H. C., 735, 750.
Horthy, Nicholas von, 774.
Hudson, Henry, 230.
Huguenots (hū′gē-nŏts), the, 147, 148, 176, 191, 211, 230, 245, 284, 300, 666.
Humanism, 116 and note 1.
Humboldt, Alexander von, 589.
Hungary, revolt of, against Austria, 382, 383, 493; the *Ausgleich*, 494, 495; government of, 495; nationalities in, 497, 498; becomes an independent state, 760, 774; Treaty of the Trinaon with, 774. *See also* Austria-Hungary.
Huns, the, 196, 718.
Husein, king of Hejaz, 777.

Iceland, 73, 480.
Il-lyr′i-an Provinces, the, 339, 356.
Imperial Federation movement, the, 448–451.
Imperialism, aspects of, 533–535; the Industrial Revolution and, 592; nationalism and, 707, 708; present aspects of, 819–824.
Inclosures, 630, 631.
Indemnity, French, 415, 458, 701.
Independents, the, 164 and note 1, 166, 169, 237, 238.
India, in antiquity, 14–16; under the Moguls, 233; rivalry of France and England in, 233–235; government of, 446; a part of the British Empire, 550–552, 554; peoples of, 552, 553; religions and castes of, 553, 554; Indian nationalism, 554, 823.
Indians, American, 568, 669, 670.
Indies, East, 229, 270; West, 481, 580, 581.
Indo-China, 550.
Indo-European languages, 10, 29 and note 1.
Indulgences, 136, 137.
Industrial Revolution, the, 592–618.
Industry, government regulation of, 636–641.
Infallibility, papal, dogma of, 667, 669.
Initiative, the, in Switzerland, 475.
Inkermann, battle of, 525.
Inquisition, the, 143, 144, 145.
Institute of France, the, 192, 687, 686.
Instrument of Government, the, 167.
Insurance, development of, 621, 622; State, 638, 639.
Internationalism, ancient, 46, 56, 57; modern, 652–654.
International Labor Office, the, 640, 812.
International Postal Union, the, 613, 614, 654.
International Red Cross, the, 654, 659, 660, 807, 812.

Inter-racial problems, 568–571, 823–825.
Invention, modern, 120–123.
Ionian Islands, 355, 519, 523.
Iraq. *See* Mesopotamia.
Ireland, 102, 166, 420, 437–443, 667, 724.
Isabella of Castile, 105, 128, 129.
Islam (ĭs'lăm), 538, 553, 556, 669, 824, 825.
Istria, 772.
Italia Irredenta, 404, 740, 789.
Italian-Turkish War, the, 470, 540.
Italy, geography and early peoples of, 46–48; under Roman rule, 49, 50; political condition of, during the Middle Ages, 73; the Renaissance in, 114–118; states of, in 1648, 151; during the revolutionary and Napoleonic era, 323, 324, 331, 334, 339, 340, 395; the restorations in, 354, 355, 396; the Vienna settlement of, 357; the revolutionary movements of 1830 and 1848 in, 376, 383, 384; unification of, 394–404; government of, 466, 467; relations of, with the Papacy, 467, 469; colonial possessions of, 470, 540; between 1871 and 1914, 702, 708; in the World War, 740, 741, 760; territorial acquisitions of, 772, 778, 820.
Italians, the, 47, 48.
Ivan, 520.
Ivan the Great, 197.

Jacobins (jăk'ō-bĭns), the, 314, 316, 317, 322, 323, 371.
"Jacobites," the, 222, note 1.
James I, king of England, 155 and note 1, 156, 172, 173, 177, 235, 237, 238; II, 170, 179, 222, note 1, 241, 245, 259, 370, 420, 438, 442.
Jamestown, settlement of, 236, 237.
Japan, geography and people of, 559; civilization of, 560; during the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, 560–563, 707; in the World War, 742, 769, 820.
Je-ho'vah, 22.
Jena (yā'nä), battle of, 338.
Jerusalem, 742.
Jesus, 60 and note 1.
Jews, the, 10, 22, 60, 62, 81, 100, 172, 211, 248, 284, 503, 512, 669, 777.
Joffre (zhŏff), Joseph, 730, 758.
John VI, king of Portugal, 363, 473.
Joseph II, Holy Roman Emperor, 293, 294.
Joseph Bonaparte, 339, 342, 573.
Joséphine, Empress, 343, 581, 690.
Jugoslavs, the, 497, 721, 778.
Jugoslavia, 772, 774, 778, 779.
"July Revolution," the, 370, 441.
Junkers (yōōn'kĕrs), Prussian, 210, 310, 486, 487, 719.
Jus-tin'i-an, 54.
Jutland, battle of, 742, 743.

Kant (känt), Immanuel, 806.
Karageorge, 520.
Kepler, 119.
Kerensky, Alexander, 752.
Khartum (kär-tōōm'), 543, 544, 704.
Kiauchau (kyou-chou'), 492, 557, note 1, 742, 769.
Kiel Canal, the, 628, 715, 720.
Kitchener, Herbert, 543, 544, 704.
Knighthood and chivalry, 79, 80.
Königgrätz (kû-nĭĸ-grĕts'), battle of. *See* Sadowa.
Korea, 13, 557, 562 and note 1.
Kosciuszko (Polish pron. kōsh-chyōōsh'kō), Tadeusz, 219, 220.
Ko'so-vo, battle of, 520.
Kossuth (kŏsh'ōōt), Louis, 382, 383, 493.
Kruger, Paul, 541, 542.
Kun (kūn), Bela, 791.
Kurdistan, 776 and note 1.

Labor legislation, 636–641.
Labor movement, the, 634–636, 640, 641.

Labor Party, British, 437.
Lafayette, Marquis de, 269, 297, 304, 306, 307, 309, 371.
Laissez-faire (lĕ′sā-fâr′), doctrine of, 285, 286, 637, 642, 643.
Land Purchase Acts, Irish, 440, 632.
Land tenure, systems of, 250, 280, 439, 440, 630–633.
Langley, S. P., 610.
Language, Greek, 33, 42; Latin, 54, 55, 110; French, 111; English, 111, 112, 246, 653.
Languages, classification of, 9, 10; Romance, 54, 55, 110, 111; Teutonic, 111; universal, 653.
Laplace (là-pläs′), Marquis de, 675, note 1.
La Salle (là sål′), Robert de, 258.
Latin America and the World War, 750.
Latvia, 781.
Laud, Archbishop, 158, 159, 160, 240.
Lausanne (lō-zàn′), Treaty of, 775.
Law, Roman, 53, 54; international, 628, 629, 805, 808, 815, 816.
League of Nations, the, 764, 766, 768, 769, 789, 792, 809–814, 824, 826.
Legitimists, the, 378, 458.
Leipzig (līp′sĭĸ), battle of, 346, 360; German supreme court at, 488, 772.
Lenin (lyĕ′nĕn), Nicholas, 752, 785, note 2, 787, 788.
Leningrad, 785, note 2.
Leo XIII, pope, 467, 469.
Leopold I, king of Belgium, 476; II, 476, 478, 539, 540.
Lepanto (lā-pän′tō), battle of, 206.
Lesseps (lĕ-sĕps′), Ferdinand de, 546, 585.
Lettres de cachet (lĕt′r′ dĕ kà-shĕ′), 298, 305.
Letts, the, 503, 781.
Lhasa (läs′ä), 549, 550.
Liaotung (lĕ-ou-tōōng′) Peninsula, 557, 562, 742.
Liberal Party, British, 426, 428, 429, 437, 441, 449.
Liberia, 538.
"Liberty, Equality, Fraternity," 291, 326, 327, 338, 349, 350, 422.
Libya, 470, 540.
Lichnowsky, Prince, 724.
Ligny (lēn-yē′), battle of, 347.
Ligurian Republic, 324, 338.
Li Hung Chang, 558.
Lim′burg, 374 and note 1.
Liquor traffic, the, abolition of, 658, 659.
Lisbon, 228, 229, 342.
Lister, Joseph, 674.
Literature, Greek, 39, 40; Roman, 56; medieval, 112; Renaissance, 116, 117; English, in the seventeenth century, 177, 178; French, under Louis XIV, 192; modern, 677, 678.
Lithuania, 151, 216, 503, 633, 741, 753, 781.
Lithuanians, the, 209, 216, 503.
Livingstone, David, 537.
Livonia, 202, 503, 753, 781.
Lo-car′no pacts, the, 816, 817.
Locomotive, the, 607, 608, 609.
Lollards, the, 804.
Lom′bar-dy, 356, 357, 401.
London, 174, 175, 177, 690–697.
London Company, the, 235, 236, 237, 238, 239, 253.
Lords, House of, 154, 165, 422, 424, 425.
Lorraine (lŏ-rān′), 150, 185, 186, 297, 349, 415, 416, 701, 703, 719, 761, 768. *See also* Alsace.
"Lost Provinces," the, 415, 416.
Louis XIII, 179, 180; XIV, 180–193, 194, 195, 233, 258, 259, 277, 321, 335, 336, 346, 455, 681, 686, 687, 691, 727; XV, 47, note 1, 258, 297, 298, 683; XVI, 298–319, 322, 683; XVII, 347, note 1; XVIII, 347, 353, 354, 359, 371.

Louis Bonaparte, 389, 390.
Louis Napoleon. *See* Napoleon III.
Louis Philippe (lōō-ē′ fē-lēp′), king of France, 370, 371, 376, 378, 379, 381.
Louisiana, 190, 258, 262, 581, 582.
Louvre (lōō′vr′), the, palace of, 118, 192, 308, 686.
Loyola (lȯ-yō′lä), St. Ignatius, 143, 282.
Lublin, Union of, 216.
Lucca, 151, 357, 401, note 2.
Ludendorff, General, 757.
Lunéville, Treaty of, 331, note 2.
Lu-si-ta′ni-a, the, 745 and note 1.
Luther, Martin, 136–138, 152.
Lutheranism, 138, 142, 144, 145, 148, 150, 152, 218, 283.
Lux′em-burg, 374 and note 1, 726, 729, 741, 761.
Lyell (lī′ĕl), Sir Charles, 671.
Lyon, Mary, 661.

Macedonia (mäs-ē-dō′nĭ-*ȧ*), 41, 42, 530, 713.
MacMahon (mȧk-mȧ-ôN′), Marshal, 414, 458, 459.
Ma-gel′lan, Ferdinand, 129, 130, 272.
Magenta (m*ȧ*-jĕn′t*ȧ*), battle of, 400.
Mag′na Car′ta, 106, 158, 168, 169, 171, 182, 431, 690.
Magyars (mŏd′yȯrs), the, 358, 383, 493, 497, 498, 774.
Mahdi (mä′dē), the, 543.
Malay Archipelago, 565 and note 1.
Malay Peninsula, 550.
Malays, the, 563, 565, 568.
Manchuria, 555, 562.
Mandatory system, the, 811, 812.
Manila Bay, battle of, 564.
Manorial system, medieval, 86–91; survivals of, 176, 281.
Manufacturing, inventions in, 594–601.
Marat (mȧ-rȧ′), 315.
"March Laws," the, 382.
Marconi, Guglielmo, 613.
Marengo, battle of, 331.
Maria Louisa, 343.
Maria Theresa (tē-rē′s*ȧ*), 208, 213, 214, 219, 220, 293, 299.
Marie Antoinette (ăN-twȧ-nĕt′), 299, 300, 309, 314, 315, 318, 322, 683.
Marlborough, Duke of, 187.
Marne (märn), the, battle of, 730, 731, 758.
Marx, Karl, 645–647, 782, 788.
Mary (wife of William III), 171 and note 2.
Mary Tudor, 140.
Maryland, 242, 243, 247, 248, 250, 251, 252, 254.
Massachusetts, settlement of, 240–242; one of the Thirteen Colonies, 247, 248, 249, 252, 253, 255.
Mathematics, modern, 176.
Maximilian, emperor of Mexico, 496, 579.
Mayflower Compact, the, 239, 240.
Mazarin (mȧ-zȧ-răN′), Cardinal, 180, 182, 185, 687.
Mazurian Lakes, the, battle of, 735.
Mazzini (mät-sē′nē), Guiseppe, 384, 396, 397, 398, 399, 403.
Mecca, 711, 742.
Medicine, modern, 674.
Medina (mȧ-dē′nä), 711, 742.
Mediterranean Sea, 29, 30, 46.
Mehemet Ali (mā′hĕ-mĕt ä′lē), 544.
Mercantile system, the, 226, 227, 285, 533, 534.
Merchant guilds, 95.
Mer-o-vin′gi-an dynasty, the, 681.
Mes-o-po-ta′mi-a, 711, 742, 759, 777, 820, 823.
Metals, the, introduction of, 5, 6, 19, 31.
Methodists, the, 283, 655, 669.
Metternich (mĕt′ĕr-nĭĸ), Prince, 352, 357, 359, 360, 362, 363, 372, 380, 506, 582.
Metternichismus, 358–361, 363, 377.

Metz, 150, 185, 414, 415.
Mexico, 578–580, 746, 748, 750.
Michael Romanov, 198.
Middle Ages, the, 69, 70.
"Middle Europe," 565, 569, 571.
Michelangelo (Ital. pron. mē-kĕl-än'jä-lō), 117.
Mikado, the, 560, 561.
Milan Decree, 340.
Militarism, 183, 184, 211, 713–717.
Milton, John, 177, 178, 284.
Mi-nor'ca, 187, 270.
Mir, the Russian, 633.
Mirabeau (mē-rà-bō'), Count of, 302, 304, 310, 311, 314.
Missions, Christian, 256, 538, 563, 564, 669, 670.
Modena (mō'dâ-nä), 151, 357, 376, 383, 401.
Mo-guls', the, rule of, in India, 233.
Mohammedanism. *See* Islam.
Molière (mō-lyâr'), 192.
Moltke, Hellmuth von, 409, 410, 411, 414.
Mo-luc'cas. *See* Spice Islands.
Monarchists, the, in France, 458, 459, 462.
Monasticism, 83, 84.
Money, 98, 134, 623, 624.
Mongolia, 555.
Mongolian race, the, 8, 12, 563.
Mongols, the, 123, 196, 197, 215.
Monroe Doctrine, the, 364, 582, 583, 708, 820.
Montcalm (môN-kàlm'), Marquis de, 223, 262.
Mon-te-ne'gro, 151, 206, 519, 520, 527, 713, 723, 736, 739, 741.
Montesquieu (môN-tĕs-kē-ū'), 289, 291, 292, 296.
Moràvia, 381, 779.
Mo-re'a, the, 516, 522.
Moreau (mō-rō'), General, 331.
Morocco, 538, 541, 706, 708, 709, 807.
Morse, Samuel F. B., 611.
Moscow (mŏs'kō), 199, 201, 204, 344, 345, 350, 500, 785.
Music, 118, 678, 679.
Mussolini (mùs-sō-lē'nē), Benito, 791.
Mustapha Kemal (mùs'tä-fä kĕ-mäl'), 775.
Mut-su-hi'to, emperor of Japan, 560 and note 1, 561.

Nansen, Fridtjof, 589.
Nantes (nänt), Edict of, issued, 148; revoked, 176, 191, 230, 245, 284.
Naples, 187, 339, 354, 363, 403.
Napoleon I, Bonaparte, 322–326, 329–351, 388, 389, 395, 405, 406, 681, 685, 687, 689; III, 380, 385, 389–394, 400, 401, 402, 412, 413, 456, 496, 517, 524, 578, 579, 581, 583, 681, 683.
Naseby (nāz'bĭ), battle of, 163.
National Assembly, French, 303, 304, 309–312, 317.
National Convention, French, 317–322, 332.
Nationalism, rise of, 106; during the revolutionary and Napoleonic era, 341, 342, 345, 350, 388, 389; disregard of, by the Congress of Vienna, 355, 358, 406; sentiment of, 387–389; the Industrial Revolution and, 593; internationalism and, 700; imperialism and, 708; after the World War, 788, 789, 822, 823.
Nationalist Party, Irish, 437, 441.
Nationalists, Turkish, 775.
Na-va-ri'no, battle of, 522.
Navigation Acts, the, 264, 627.
Navy. *See* Sea-power.
Nebular hypothesis, the, 675 and note 1.
Negro race, the, 8, 9, 536, 568, 825, 826.
Nelson, Horatio, 325, 337, 693.
Ne-o-lith'ic Age, the, 4, 5.
Netherlands, 145, 146. *See also* Holland.
Neuilly (nû-yē'), Treaty of, 774.
Neutrality, Swiss, 357, 807; Belgian, 374, 726, 727, 728, 807.

New England, colonization of, 237–242; religious conditions in, 247, 248; educational system of, 249; economic development of, 249, 250; slavery in, 252; political development of, 253, 254, 255; United Colonies of, 255.
Newfoundland, 235, 260, 262, 585, 587, 706.
New Guinea, 492, 565, 568, 591.
New South Wales, 567.
Newton, Sir Isaac, 176, 177.
New York, state, 245, 247, 248, 250, 252, 253.
New Zealand, exploration of, 273; colonization of, 567; labor legislation in, 639, 640.
Nicæa (nī-sē′*a*), Council of, 63.
Nice (nēs), 324, 354, 400, 402.
Nicholas, prince and king of Montenegro, 520.
Nicholas, Russian grand duke, 735.
Nicholas I, tsar of Russia, 375, 376, 383, 506–508, 522, 523, 524; II, 513–515, 715, 716, 751, 780.
Niemen River, 215, 338, 345.
Niger (nī′jēr) River, 537.
Nightingale, Florence, 525.
Nihilism, Russian, 509–511, 512.
Nile River, sources of, 537.
Nobel (nō-bĕl′), Alfred, 804.
Nobility, feudal, 75–78; British, 278, 432, 434; French, 279, 334.
Normans, the, 75 and note 1, 79.
North German Confederation, the, 413, 416.
North, Lord, 224, 225, 336, 421.
Northmen, the, 72, 73.
North Pole, the, discovery of, 589.
Northwest Passage, the, 589 and note 1.
Norway, in the Union of Calmar, 202; allied with Napoleon, 340; united with Sweden, 356, 357, 479; separates from Sweden, 480; government of, 480.
Novara (nō-vä′rä), battle of, 383.
Nova Scotia, 260, 585, 587.
Novgorod (nôv′gŏ-rŏt), 197.

Oceania, opening up and partition of, 563–567, 708, 769.
O'Connell, Daniel, 440.
Old Régime, the, 276–294.
Om′dur-man, battle of, 544.
Orange, house of, 356.
Orangemen, the, 442.
Orders in Council, British, 341, 585.
Orlando, Vittorio, 756.
Orléanists, the, 458.
Orléans (ôr-lā-äN′), Duke of, 322.
Orléans monarchy, the, 378, 379.
Orthodox (Russian) Church, 200, 205, 292, 501, 509, 512, 517, 667, 787.
Otto I, the Great, 72, 73.
Ottoman Turks, 69, 105, 115, 151, 517, 518, 519. *See also* Turkey.
Owen, Robert, 644.

Pacific Ocean, exploration of, 272–274.
Pact of Paris, the, 819.
Painting, Renaissance, 117, 118; modern, 177, 681, 682.
Pa-læ-o-lith′ic Age, the, 2–4.
Pale, the Irish, 438.
Palestine, 742, 776, 777.
Panama, 578, 585, 750.
Panama Canal, 445, 581, 584, 585, 628.
Pan-Americanism, 583, 584.
Pan-American Union, the, 584, 804.
Pan-Germanism, 717–720.
Pan-Islamism, 824, 825.
Papacy, medieval, 81, 82.
Papal Guarantees, Law of, 469.
Papal States. *See* States of the Church.
Paris, revolutionary, 304, 306, 307, 309, 315, 317, 322, 370, 371; siege of, 414, 415; described, 681–690.
Paris, Count of, 458.
Paris, Peace of (1763), 215, 225,

262, 297; Peace of (1783), 269; Treaty of (1856), 394, 400, 525, 526; Peace of (1919–1923), 764, 788; Pact of (1928), 819.
Parliament, British, under the Tudors, 154; under James I and Charles I, 155–158; reforms of the Long, 160; the "Rump," 164–167; under Charles II and James II, 168, 170; under William III, 172, 173; in the nineteenth century, 422–431; organization of, 432–437.
Parliament Act of 1911, the, 434.
Parma, 151, 357, 376, 383, 401.
Parnell, C. S., 441.
Parties, British, 437; French, 462; Italian, 467; German, 486, 487.
Pasteur (pȧs-tûr′), Louis, 673, 674.
Peace Conference, the, 763–766.
Peace movement, the, 715, 716, 803–808.
Peary, Robert E., 589.
Peasantry, the, in the Middle Ages, 88, 90, 91; in eighteenth-century Europe, 281, 285, 306, 307.
Peel, Sir Robert, 625.
Peking (pē-kĭng′), 558.
Penal code, the, reform of, 656–658.
Peninsular War, the, 342, 343.
Penn, William, 242, 245, 248, 666, 806.
Pennsylvania, 243, 245, 247, 248, 249, 251, 252, 254, 666.
Pershing, General J. J., 758.
Persia, 18, 22, 35, 41, 548, 820.
Peter I, king of Serbia, 521, 712.
Peter the Great, 198–201, 204, 205, 274, 277, 282, 790.
Petition of Right, the, 157, 158, 168, 171, 221.
Petrarch (pē′trärk), 115.
Petrograd (pē′trō-grȧd), 201, note 1, 785 and note 2.
Philip II, king of Spain, 144, 145, 146, 147.
Philippine Islands, 129, 131, note 1, 472, 563–565, 582.
Philosophy, Athenian, 40; French, in the eighteenth century, 288–291; modern, 675, 676.
Phœnicia (fē-nĭsh′ĭ-ȧ), 18, 21, 32.
Physiocrats, the, 285, 286, 299.
Piedmont, 338, 354, 363, 398 and note 1.
Pilgrims, the, 237–240, 247.
Pitt, William (Earl of Chatham), 222–224, 265, 336.
Pitt, William (the Younger), 336, 337, 339, 421, 422, 625.
Pius IX, pope, 383, 384, 397, 398, 469, 667.
Plassey, battle of, 234.
Plato, 40.
Plebiscites, 330, 334, 349, 404, 768 and note 2, 778.
Plehve (plā′vē), 511, 512, 513, 514.
Plevna, 527.
Plymouth, settlement of, 238–240.
Pobêdonostsev (pȧ-bĕ-dȧ-nôs′tsĕf), 511, 512, 513, 514.
"Pocket" boroughs, 423, 425, 427.
Poetry, medieval, 112; modern, 677, 678.
Poincaré (pwăN-kȧ-rā′), President, 763.
Poland, kingdom of, 151, 204, 215–219; partitions of, 219, 220; Grand Duchy of Warsaw, 340, 356; in the Vienna settlement, 356, 375; revolts of, in the nineteenth century, 376 and note 1; in the World War, 736, 741, 753, 780; republic of, 769, 772, 780, 781, 793.
Poles, the, 215, 497, 503, 772.
Polignac (pō-lēn-yȧk′), Prince de, 370.
Political economy, science of, 285, 286.
Polo, Marco, 123, 124, 128.
Pol-ta′va, battle of, 204.
Polynesians, the, 563, 568.
Pom-e-ra′ni-a, western, 203, 204, 210, 356, 405; eastern, 210.
Pope, the, loses temporal power,

404, 469; infallibility of, 667, 669. *See also* Papacy.
Popular sovereignty, doctrine of, 152, 288, 291, 297, 326, 349, 354.
Population, statistics of, 29, 453, 568, 615, 616, 825.
Port Arthur, 557 and note 1, 562, 742.
Porto Rico, 472, 581, 582.
Portsmouth, Treaty of, 562.
Portugal, acquires a colonial empire, 130, 131; a member of the Grand Alliance against Louis XIV, 186; French invasion of, 342; revolutions in, 363, 473; becomes a republic, 473, 474; colonial possessions of, 474 and note 1, 538, 574.
Posen, 356, 375, 769.
Potato Famine, the, in Ireland, 439, 626.
Pragmatic Sanction, the, 208, 209.
Prague, Treaty of, 413.
Prehistory, 2–5.
Presbyterianism, 163, 164, 169, 247, 283.
Pressburg, Treaty of, 338, note 1.
"Pride's Purge," 164.
Printing, invention of, 120–122.
Proletariat, the, 281 and note 1, 315, 317.
Proportional representation, 477, 478 and note 1.
Protective system, the, 190, 627.
Protectorate, the, in England, 167, 168.
Protestant Episcopal Church, the, 140, 247.
Protestants, doctrines of, 140–142; sects of, 142, 169, 247, 283, 284, 669.
Protocol of Troppau, the, 362, 363.
Prussia, origin of, 209, 210; becomes a kingdom, 210; under the Great Elector, 211; under Frederick the Great, 213–215, 292, 293; shares in the partitions of Poland, 220; wars of, with France, during the revolutionary and Napoleonic era, 316, 317, 319, 321, 337, 340, 346, 347, 348, 349; acquisitions of, by the Vienna settlement, 356; in the Concert of Europe, 361–363; revolutionary movement of 1848 in, 384–385; as the unifier of Germany, 408, 409; wars of, with Denmark and Austria, 412, 413; forms North German Confederation, 413; at war with France, 414, 415; heads new German Empire, 416, 487; government of, 416, 417.
Prussia, East, 210, 214, 218, 633, 735, 769; West, 210, 220, 633, 759.
Ptolemy (tŏl'ĕ-mĭ), 45, note 1.
Public debts, statistics of, 800.
Public ownership, 641–643.
Public school system, the, 249, 663–665.
Punic Wars, the, 51 and note 1.
Puritan Revolution, the, 160–168.
Puritans, the, rise of, 156; persecuted by Laud, 159; divide into Presbyterians and Independents, 163, 164 and note 1; reaction against, 169; establish themselves in Massachusetts, 240–242.
Pym, John, 160, 162.

Quakers, the, 169, 247, 283, 654, 669, 804.
Quebec, city, 256, 258, 262; province, 587.
"Queen Anne's War," 187, note 1.
Queensland, 567.

Races of man, 8–10, 568, 825.
Radetzky (rä-dĕts'kē), Marshal, 383.
Railroads, 545, 546, 548, 576, 607, 608, 643.
Raleigh (rô'lĭ), Sir Walter, 235.
Rationalism in the eighteenth century, 287, 288, 290, 293.

Referendum, the, in Switzerland, 475.
Reform Acts: First, 424, 425; Second, 428, 429; Third, 429.
Reformation, the, 135–142.
Reichsrat (rīĸs′rät), 783.
Reichstag (rīĸs′täĸ), the, 485, 486, 487, 727, 783, 784.
Reign of Terror, the, 321, 322, 683.
Religion, Palæolithic, 4; Oriental, 14, 16, 22, 23; Græco-Roman, 33, 60. *See also* Brahmanism, Buddhism, Christianity, Islam.
Religions, world, statistics of, 669.
Renaissance (rĕ-nā′săns), the, 114–118.
Reparation, German, 769–771.
Representation, 37, 51, 253, 367, 422–425, 427, 429, 430, 485, 487, 488, 495, 511, 514, 515, 530, 791, 793.
Revolutionary War, American, 267–269.
Rhenish Palatinate, the, 245, 385.
Rhine River, 185, 405, 628, 768.
Rhinelands, the, Allied occupation of, 761, 770, 771.
Rhode Island, 242, 247, 248, 271, 666.
Rhodes, Cecil, 542, 543, 546.
Rhodesia, 447.
Richelieu (rē-shĕ-lyû′), Cardinal, 149, 179, 180, 181, 185, 192, 257.
"Rights of man," the, 311, 312, 326, 349.
Rigveda, the, 15, 16.
Robespierre (rō-bĕs-pyâr′), 316, 319, 320, 322.
Romagna (rō-mäN′yä), 401 and note 3.
Roman Catholics, 172, 243, 248, 282, 284.
Roman Church, the, in the Middle Ages, 80–86; the Reformation and Counter Reformation, 135–144; in the eighteenth century, 282; disestablishment of, in Europe, 667.
Romanov (rō-mä′nôf) dynasty, the, 198, 205, 751.
Roman Republic, Mazzini's, 384, 398, 403.
Rome, founding of, 48, 49; expansion of, 49–51; the Roman empire, 52–60; becomes the capital of the Italian kingdom, 404.
Rom′u-lus Au-gus′tu-lus, 57.
Roon, Albrecht von, 409, 410, 412, 414.
Roosevelt, Theodore, 562, 708.
"Roundheads," the, 162 and note 1, 170.
Rousseau (rōō-sō′), Jean Jacques, 290, 291, 316, 323, 475, 687.
Royal Society, the, 177.
Rudolf of Hapsburg, Count, 207.
Ruhr, the, occupation of, 770, 771.
Rumania, rise of, 526, 527; in the World War, 738, 739, 741; territorial acquisitions of, 772 and note 1, 774, 793.
Rumanians, the, 383, 498, 517.
Rump Parliament, the, 164, 165, 166.
Russia, before Peter the Great, 151, 195–198; under Peter the Great, 198–201; under Catherine the Great, 205–207, 292; in the Seven Years' War, 214; shares in the partitions of Poland, 219, 220; during the revolutionary and Napoleonic era, 325, 331, 337, 338, 344, 345, 346; territorial acquisitions of, by the Vienna settlement, 356; in the Concert of Europe, 361–365; peoples of, 500–503; during the nineteenth century, 504–515; land tenure in, 633; between 1871 and 1914, 701, 702, 703, 704, 712, 715; in the World War, 722, 724, 725, 735, 736, 753; the Russian Revolution, 750–753, 784–788.
Russians, the, 500, 501.
Russo-Japanese War, the, 562.

Russo-Turkish War, the, 526, 527.
Ru-the'ni-ans, the, 497, 500.

Saar (zär) Basin, 768, 811.
Sadowa (sä'dō-vä), battle of, 413.
St. Benedict, 83.
St. Dominic, 84.
St. Francis, 84.
St.-Germain, Treaty of, 772.
St. He-le'na, Napoleon at, 348.
St. Paul, 60, 62.
St. Petersburg, 201 and note 1. *See also* Petrograd.
Salisbury (sôlz'bĕr-ĭ), Lord, 704.
Sa-lo-ni'ka, 739.
Salvador, 578, 750, note 1.
Salvation Army, the, 659.
Samoa, 566, 582, 769.
San Marino (mä-rē'nō), 93, 763.
San Stefano (stä'fä-nō), Treaty of, 522.
Santo Domingo, 581 and note 1, 763.
Sarajevo (sä'rä-yä-vô), 721.
Saratoga, battle of, 269.
Sardinia, 187, 189, 320, 323, 324, 354, 357, 383, 384, 398, 399, 400, 401, 403.
Savoy, 151, 187, 189, 324, 354, 398, 400, 401.
Saxony, 214, 338, 339, 356, 357, 376, 385, 412, 641.
Scandinavia, the Reformation in, 138.
Schleswig (shlāz'vĭĸ), 411, 412, 413 and note 1, 626 and note 2. *See also* Holstein.
Science, Oriental, 21; Hellenistic, 45, 46; Renaissance, 119, 120; development of, in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, 196, 197, 296, 287; modern, 670–675.
Scotch-Irish, the, 245.
Scotland, 102, 155, 173, 419. 420.
Scott, Captain, R. F., 591.
Sculpture, 21, 38, 117, 118, 679.
Scu'ta-ri, 712, 713.
Sea-power, British, 146, 235, 260, 331, 337, 341, 444, 445, 742, 743, 818.
Sedan (sĕ-dăN'), battle of, 414, 455.
Semitic-speaking peoples, 10.
Sepoy Mutiny, the, 551.
"September massacres," the, 317.
Serbia, 520, 521, 527, 530, 712, 713, 721, 722, 723, 724, 725, 736, 738, 739, 741, 778.
Serbo-Croats, the, 383, 497, 517, 778.
Serfdom, 90, 91, 94, 281, 307, 345, 351, 508, 633.
Settlement, Act of, 173, 174, 221.
Sevastopol, siege of, 524, 525.
"Seven Weeks' War." *See* Austro-Prussian War.
Seven Years' War, the, 214, 215, 235, 293, 297.
Sèvres (sȧ'vr'), Treaty of, 774, 775.
Shackleton, Sir Ernest, 591.
Shaftesbury, Earl of, 637, 638.
Shakespeare, 117.
Shantung (shän'tŏŏng'), 492, 769, 809.
"Ship-money," 158, 159, 160.
Shogun (shō'gōōn), Japanese, 560.
Siam (sī-ăm'), 550, 706.
Siberia, 56, 405, 406, 637, 681.
Sicily, 46, 50, 51, 69, 75, 81, 189, 354, 403.
Sieyès (syā-yĕs'), the Abbé, 302, 308, 326.
Si-le'si-a, Prussian, 213, 214, 215, 769, 813; Austrian, 779.
Sinn Fein (shĭn'fān'), the, 437, 442.
Six Points, the, 426, 427.
Slavery, Oriental, 23; Græco-Roman, 37, 53, 58; medieval, 64, 85, 86, 90; introduction of, into the Thirteen Colonies, 251, 252; abolition of, 655.
Slave trade, the, abolition of, 654, 655.
Slovakia, 779.
Slovaks, 497, 779.
Slovenes (slŏ-vēns'), the, 497, 778.

Smith, Adam, 285, 286, 449, 592, 604, 623, 642.
Smith, Captain John, 238.
Smuts, General, 772.
Smyrna, 775.
Sobieski (Polish pron. sō-byĕs′kē), John, 206.
Socialism, rise and spread of, 643–648; in Russia, 751, 752, 787, 788; in Germany, 782, 783, 791; communistic movements, 791.
Socialist parties, 487, 647, 648.
Society of Jesus, the, 143, 256, 257, 282 and note 2, 369.
Soc′ra-tes, 40.
Solferino (sŏl-fē-rē′nō), battle of, 400, 659.
So-ma′li-land, Italian, 540; French, 541.
Somme (sôm) River, the, battle of, 733.
Sonderbund (zōn′dĕr-bŭnt), the, 474.
Sophia, Electress of Hanover, 172, 174.
South African War, the, 450, 451, 542, 705.
South Pole, the, discovery of, 449.
Soviets, Russian, 609, 610.
Spain, unification of, 103, 105; acquires a colonial empire, 131, 133; cedes territories to France, 185; allied with France in the War of the Spanish Succession, 186; in the War of the Austrian Succession, 213, 214; at war with Great Britain, 269, 270; during the revolutionary and Napoleonic era, 319, 321, 340, 342; the Bourbon restoration in, 354; revolutions in, during the nineteenth century, 363, 364, 470, 471; under Alfonso XII and Alfonso XIII, 471, 472; government of, 472; colonial possessions of, 472, 473, 563, 564, 572–574.
Spanish-American colonies, the, revolt of, 342, 364, 472, 573, 574.
Spanish-American War, the, 472, 581, 582.
Spanish Netherlands, 145, 150. *See also* Austrian Netherlands.
Spanish Succession, War of the, 186, 187, 189, 210.
Spartacans, 783 and note 1, 791.
Spencer, Herbert, 676.
Spice Islands, 129, 229.
Spinning wheel, the, 595.
Spitzbergen, 480, note 1.
Stamp Act, the, 265.
Stanley, Sir Henry M., 537, 538, 539.
States of the Church, the, 82, 151, 339, 354, 357, 376, 383, 384, 394, 404.
Steamboat, the, 606, 607.
Steam engine, Watt's, 599, 600.
Stein, Baron vom, 345, 352, 357, 406.
Stephenson, George, 607, 608.
Strafford, Earl of, 158, 159, 160.
Stuart dynasty, the, 155 and note 1, 174, note 1.
Submarine boat, the, 611, 743, 756, 818, 819.
Submarine cable, the, 612.
Sudan, Anglo-Egyptian, 543, 544, 704.
Suez Canal, 546, 547, 628, 711, 807.
Suffrage, manhood, 253, 369, 380, 391, 392, 423, 425, 427, 429, 430, 467, 472, 476, 477, 478, 480, 495, 514, 515, 791; woman, 430, 477, 478, 480, 661, 662, 791.
Supremacy, Act of, 139.
Supreme Council, the, 764, 765.
Supreme Court, the, of the United States, 272.
Surgery, modern, 674.
Su-ri-nam′, 231, 355, note 1.
Sweden, growth and decline of, 150, 202, 204; in the Seven Years' War, 214; joins the Third Coalition against France, 327; loses Finland to Russia,

328, 356; union of, with Norway, 356, 357, 479; separation of, from Norway, 480; government of, 480.
Switzerland, 138, 139, 150, 340, 355, 474–476, 807.
Syndicalism, 648.
Syria, 325, 711, 759, 776.

Taille (tä′y′), the, 280.
Talleyrand (tȧ-lĕ-räN′), 352, 353.
Tannenberg, battle of, 735.
Tasman, Abel, 273.
Tasmania, 273, 566, 567.
Taxation, under the Old Régime, 281, 285, 298, 300.
Telegraph and telephone, 611, 612, 613.
Temporal power of the Papacy, 82, 354, 394, 404, 327, 669.
"Tennis Court Oath," the, 303, 311.
Teutonic Knights, the, 204, 210, 213, 503.
Thiers (tyâr), L. A., 379, 457, 458.
Third Estate, the, 94, 280, 281, 302, 303, 304.
"Third International," the, 788.
Third Section, Russian, 507, 509.
Thirteen Colonies, the, established, 235–246; civilization of, 246, 247; economic development of, 249–252; political conditions in, 253–256; become independent, 263–270; establish the United States, 270–272.
Thirty Years' War, the, 148–150, 179, 202, 381, 805.
Thrace, 522, 775.
Tibet (tĭ-bĕt′), 549, 550, 707.
Tientsin (tē-ĕn′tsēn), 548.
Tilsit, Peace of, 338, 339, 340.
Tithes, church, in France, 281, 307.
Togo, 540, 741, 769.
Toleration, religious, 142, 148, 150, 172, 191, 248, 284, 287, 292, 293, 332, 665, 666.
Toleration Act, the, 172, 248, 284.
Tolls, 281, 625, 628.
"Tories," the, 267, 585.
Torture, use of, 656.
Tory Party, the, origin of, 170 and note 1; in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, 222, 224, 421, 422, 424, 426. *See also* Conservative Party.
Toulon (to͞o-lôN′), 320, 323, 325.
Townshend Acts, the, 365.
Trade routes, medieval, 124, 125.
Trade unions, 634–636.
Traf-al-gar′, Cape, battle of, 337, 338, 340.
Trans-Andean Railway, 576, 608.
Transportation, inventions in, 605–611.
Trans-Siberian Railway, the, 548, 608, 703.
Transvaal (trănz-väl′), the, 541, 542.
Transylvania, 498, 739, 772, note 1, 734.
Trent, Council of, 143.
Trentino (trĕn-tē′nō), the, 404, 741, 772, 778.
Trieste (trē-ĕs′tā), 404, 740, 741, 760, 772, 778.
Triple Alliance, the, 701, 702, 703, 707, 793.
Triple Entente, the, 706, 707, 729, 793.
Trip′o-li, 470, 540, note 1, 362.
Troppau (trŏp′ou), Congress of, 362.
Trotsky, Leo, 752, 787.
Tuileries (twēl-re′), palace of the, 308.
Tunis, 464, 541, 702.
Turenne (tü-rĕn′), 183.
Turgot (tür-gō′), 299, 300, 307, 448.
Turkey, expansion of, 206; decline of, since 1683, 206, 207, 519; loses Montenegro, Serbia, and Greece, 520–523; in the Crimean War, 524, 525; loses Rumania, 526; in the Russo-Turkish War, 527; loses Bulgaria, 528; Young Turk Revolution

in, 529, 530; in the First and Second Balkan wars, 530, 531; Germany and, 709–711; in the World War, 738, 742, 759; peace treaty with, 774–776.
Turks. *See* Ottoman Turks.
Tuscany, 151, 357, 383, 401 and note 2.
Two Sicilies, kingdom of the, 75, 79, 151, 354, 357, 363, 383, 403.
Tyrol, 772, 778.
Tze-hsi (tsĕ-shē′), empress-dowager of China, 557, 558.

U-boat warfare, German, 743, 744, 745, 746.
Ukrainia, 197 and note 1, 204, 753, 786.
Ulm (o͞olm), 337, 338.
Ulster, 438, 441, 442.
Union, Acts of: England and Scotland, 173, 420; Great Britain and Ireland, 420, 440, 442.
Unionist Party, British, 437, note 1.
Unitarians, the, 172, 248, 283, 284.
United Colonies of New England, the, 255, 270.
United Kingdom, formation of, 420; government of, 431–437.
United Netherlands. *See* Holland.
United States, the, formation of, 270–272, 581, 582; colonial possessions of, 564, 565, 566, 581, 582; commerce of, 620, 621; trade unionism in, 635, 636; labor legislation in, 639; in the World War, 744–750, 757, 758, 759; fails to ratify the Peace Treaty with Germany, 766, 768; as an imperialist power, 820, 822.
Universities, 109, 110, 665.
U′ral Mountains, 11, 198.
Usury, 98–100.
Utrecht (ū′trĕkt), Peace of, 187, 189, 260, 654; Union of, 145, 368.

Valmy (vål-mē′), battle of, 399.
Vatican Council, the, 667.
Vauban (vō-bäN′), 183, 184.
Vendée (väN-dā′), La, 320.
Venetia, 356, 357, 401, 404, 412, 413, 741.
Venezuela, 573, 583, 708, 808.
Venice, republic of, 100, 151, 194, 324, 337, 338, 339, 383.
Venizelos (vā-nē-zā′lōs), Eleutherios, 523, 738, 739.
Verdun (vĕr-duN′), 150, 185, 725, 727, 733.
Versailles (vĕr-sā′y), palace of, 181, 182, 297, 299, 301, 303, 304, 309, 416, 689, 763.
Versailles, Treaty of (1783), 269, 270; Treaty of (1919), 768–772.
Victor Emmanuel II, king of Italy, 384, 398, 399, 401, 403, 404, 524.
Victoria, queen of England, 426 and note 1, 432, 450, 490, 552, 705.
Vienna, 206, 207, 324, 337, 343, 381, 382.
Vienna, Congress of, 352–358.
Vikings. *See* Northmen.
Villafranca, armistice of, 401.
Virginia, settlement of, 235–237; one of the Thirteen Colonies, 247, 248, 249, 250, 251, 252, 253.
Virgin Islands, 481, 582, 820.
Vittorio Veneto, battle of, 760.
Vla-di-vos-tok′, 547, 548.
Voltaire (vōl-târ′), 289, 290, 291, 292, 293, 299, 331, 687, 804.

Wagner (väg′nĕr), Richard, 679.
Wagram (vä′gräm), battle of, 343.
Wales, 102, 420, 667.
Wallachia (wŏ-lā′kĭ-*a*), 526.
Wallachs (wŏl′*ă*ks), the, 517.
Walloons, the, 207, 372, 476.
Walpole, Sir Robert, 223, 336, 422.
Warfare, medieval, 79, 85; modern, 714, 801–803; attitude of Christianity toward, 803, 804; abolition of, 805, 806, 816, 817.
War of Liberation, Prussian, 346, 361, 407.
War of 1812–1814, the, 585, 586, 628.

Warsaw, 216, 350, 375.
Wartburg (värt'bo͝orĸ), Festival, the, 360.
Washington, George, 267, 271, 630.
Waterloo, battle, of, 347, 348.
Watt, James, 598, 599.
Weaving, improvements in, 595, 598.
Weihaiwei (wā'-hī-wā'), 557, note 1, 809.
Weimar (vī'mär) Assembly, the, 783, 784.
Wellington, Duke of, 342, 347, 348, 352, 424, 427, 693.
Wesley, John, 283, 655.
West India Company, Dutch, 230, 245.
West-pha'li-a, Peace of, 149, 150, 180, 185, 195, 203, 353, 355.
Whig Party, the, origin of, 170; in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, 221, 222, 224, 422, 423, 424. *See also* Liberal Party.
Whitney, Eli, 598, 599.
White Russia, 786.
Wilberforce, William, 655.
Wilhelmina, Queen, 478.
Willard, Frances E., 658.
William I, king of Prussia and German emperor, 409, 410, 413, 414, 416, 488, 490, 690; II, 491, 702, 705, 708, 709, 710, 718, 723, 725, 727, 757, 760, 771.
William III, king of England, 171 and note 1, 172, 173, 185 and note 1, 186, 187, 221, 259, 438; IV, 424 and note 1.
William, Prince of Orange. *See* William III.
William the Conqueror, 75, 102.
William the Silent, 145, 146, 185.
Williams, Roger, 248, 666.
Wilson, Woodrow, 727, 744, 745, 746, 748, 753, 764, 772, 808, 809.
Windischgrätz (vĭn'dĭsh-grĕts), Prince, 381.
Wireless telegraphy and telephony, 613.
Witchcraft delusion in the Thirteen Colonies, 247.
Wolfe, James, 262.
Women, emancipation of, 660–662.
Workshops, national, in France, 645.
World congresses, 653, 664.
"World Court," the, 815, 816.
World War, the, origin of, 721–729; course of, 729–761; casualties in, 795, 796; money cost of, 797, 798; how financed, 798.
Wren, Sir Christopher, 177, 693.
Wright, Orville and Wilbur, 610.
Writing, 1, 2, 14, 21, 31, 46.
Würtemberg (vür'tĕm-bĕrĸ), 339, 357, 361.

X-rays, the, 673.

"Young Italy," 396, 397, 402.
Young Men's Christian Association, the, 659.
Young Turks, the, 529, 530, 712, 777.
Ypres (ē'pr'), battles of, 731.
Yser River, 731.

Zambesi River, 537.
Zemstvos (zĕmst'fōs), Russian, 508.
Zeppelin (tsĕp-ĕ-lēn'), Count, 610.
Zollverein (tsōl'fĕr-īn), the, 408, 411.
Zoroaster (zō-rō-ăs'tĕr), 22.
Zwingli (Ger. pron. tsvĭng'lē), 138, 139.